



# REMINISCENCES AND ADVENTURES IN CIRCULATION RESEARCH

*By* CARL J WIGGERS, M D

Professor Emeritus of Physiology Western Reserve Uni-  
versity School of Medicine Honorary Professor of  
Physiology Frank E Bunts Educational Institute  
Cleveland Ohio



GRUNE & STRATTON New York and London 1958

Copyright © 1958  
GRUNF & STRATTON INC  
381 Fourth Avenue  
New York 16 NY

*In memory of my parents  
George and Margaretha Wiggers  
who inculcated attributes essential  
for my academic research career—  
diligence perseverance prudence  
honesty thrift*





# Contents

## Foreword

ix

## BOOK I REMINISCENCES

I	A Son Was Born	2
II	The Rising Sap	10
III	Search for a Career	26
IV	Training in Medical Sciences (1901-1903)	32
V	Drift Toward an Academic Career	42
VI	Development of a Physiologist	48
VII	Maturation and Trend Toward Cardiology	58
VIII	Auxiliary and Economic Influences in a Research Career Impacts of World War I	71
IX	Western Reserve and its Medical School	81
X	Prosperity Retrenchment World War II and Expansion	93
XI	People Places and Projects	116
XII	Circulation Research in Europe Two International Congresses	132
XIII	Adventures at Home and Abroad	146
XIV	World War II and Research Activities	161
XV	Twilight of a Career in Circulation Research (1947-1953)	168
XVI	Medical Writing and Editorship	181

## BOOK II ADVENTURES IN CIRCULATION RESEARCH

XVII	Vascular Control of Cerebral Coronary and Pulmonary Circulations	190
XVIII	Studies of Internal Hemorrhages	200
XIX	Cardiodynamic Problems and Optical Recorders	205

XX	Registration of Heart Sounds and Murmurs	217
XXI	Advances in the Study of Basic Cardiodynamic Problems	228
XXII	Determinants of Myocardial Responses	243
XXIII	Interrelations of Electrographic, Excitatory and Dynamic Events during the Cardiac Cycle	259
XXIV	Evolution of a Research Program, Studies on Abnormal Ventricular Rhythms	271
XXV	Dynamics of Valvular Lesions, Hypertension and Arteriosclerosis	290
XXVI	Extrinsic Influences on the Circulation	311
XXVII	Special Hemodynamic Problems	327
XXVIII	Coronary Circulation and Coronary Occlusion	346
XXIX	Experimental Shock	362
Appendices		
	Degrees Memberships and Honors, 377 Citations and Letters, 379 Books and Contributions, 383 Staffs Fellows and Trainees—Department of Physiology, Western Reserve University School of Medicine, 384 Former Members of Department of Physiology Who Achieved Distinction as Department Heads or Research Directors 388 Distinguished Foreign Visitors Recorded in Guest Book of Department of Physiology 390	
	Index	392

## Foreword

IN THIS monograph the author endeavors to recapture some of the incidents and accidents that have molded his career, to recall some adventures in cardiovascular research and teaching and to record some impressions of people places institutions and organizations that have played a part in the advancement of the medical sciences during the past half century. To do this wholly objectively is admittedly an impossible task. However a conscientious attempt has been made to approach such an ideal by employing a number of expedients. Memory, of course, can play tricks. It is not an exact recall of transpired events but is susceptible to imaginative reconstruction to fit them into current thinking. Therefore every effort has been made to verify the reliability of recollections by the rereading of written and printed documents of the past. Moreover, the author early acquired the habit of occasionally relaxing and meditating upon what he had done seen and heard. This established practice of reviewing known actions and happenings rather than speculating upon those of an uncertain future has proved to be highly rewarding. The more frequent and longer periods of meditation made possible in the five years since retirement from active experimentation and teaching in 1953 naturally developed into a contemplation of events that took place in various periods of a satisfying life. I trust the reconstructions of incidents made during the past five years should fade again. The author periodically made notes of these seances with the past.

BOOK I endeavors to relate how environmental influences of the home and public schools caused a boy reared in a Mississippi River town to develop traits essential to a future scientific career. how the interest of science teachers in a high school directed him toward the study of medicine. how the fortunate selection of the Medical School of the University of Michigan diverted him from the contemplated practice of obstetrics into physiologic research and teaching. how his observations of good and bad teaching practices led to development of a code of teaching principles. how contacts with leaders in medical science at Cornell Medical College in New York City and in Munich Germany eventuated in a career in basic circulation research. how perseverance in directing experimental work toward practical clinical use led to his advent in scientific cardiology.

BOOK I also outlines the principles adopted to start members of the staff on successful careers of their own. It relates the author's activities and experiences in scientific educational and administrative fields. It tells

of his journeys to foreign countries and his impressions of men and their work. It recalls expedients through which research output was actually enhanced during the vicissitudes of the depression of 1933 and World War II.

The sketches of former associates, pupils and acquaintances among men of science are in some cases brief biographic notes; more often they are intended to portray personalities and their impacts on research. If there are misjudgments of personalities, this reflects solely on the author's analytic capacity, for, unfortunately, the human brain with its sensory receptors, like an inadequate pulse pressure recorder, tends to magnify some components, attenuate others and introduce artifacts that may make the characterization unreal.

BOOK II gives an account of the diversified cardiovascular researches in which the author and his associates have been engaged for the past 50 years. Some of these were basic in nature; others had clinical or practical trends. They include studies planned to establish laws of cardiac behavior, experiments to test previously conceived concepts or to harmonize conflicting evidence and investigations opened up through the introduction of new tools and methodologies.

It is almost gratuitous to restate that a career investigator may be motivated by a spirit of pursuing a set project; he may be well equipped with the means for overcoming anticipated obstacles in his adventure, but he will most certainly encounter barriers that cannot be penetrated or circumvented with the equipment and knowledge at his disposal. He then has a choice of battering away patiently with available equipment; of pausing to devise new types of tools; or of abandoning the attempt at least temporarily while he explores other fields. The author has found that the latter plan often opened areas of research which were even more interesting and rewarding than the adventure originally planned.

The successive chapters of BOOK II are not arranged in the chronologic sequence in which the investigations were pursued. Rather, each chapter gives a complete account of achievements in specific areas of circulation research. This arrangement, it is believed, will prove advantageous for the reader interested in the background of a particular area of cardiovascular study.

In conclusion, the author acknowledges with gratitude a grant in aid from the Cleveland Area Heart Society and the collaboration of the publishers, Grune and Stratton, Inc., which together have made possible the publication of these *Reminiscences and Adventures in Circulation Research*.

CARL J. WIGGERS

Cleveland, Ohio  
June 1958

*Reminiscences and  
Adventures in  
Circulation Research*



BOOK I  
REMINISCENCES



## A Son Was Born

I STARTED to be born on May 24th, 1883, but not until the 28th did I pass 'the arch, under which all aspirants for immortality must pass' (Goethe) The slow transit to an independent existence resulted primarily from my objection to being catapulted into unknown situations head first My stubbornness could not be overcome by the efforts of a midwife, engaged out of prudery and economy I could not be compelled to execute a prenatal somersault Finally a general practitioner successfully delivered a lusty 9 pound boy However as might be expected this accomplishment brought with it the sequela of a prolonged maternal sepsis, recorded in family history as 'brain fever' So I was fortunate, first, in being born at all, and secondly in having a mother who survived

It is customary in biographies to describe the family tree that bore the fruit Actually I have never been greatly interested in family trees, perhaps I feared the possibility of discovering that the best part was under the ground Consequently, my assessment of family background is based on remembrance and conversations I do know that both of my parents were born and reared in Dithmarschen, in the Duchy of Holstein Father on February 26, 1856 near the village of Eddelak, and Mother on January 12 1859 near the village of St Michaelisdonn While our family always considered itself to be of German extraction this appears to be true only as regards ethnic origin Factually, Germany as a consolidated nation, did not exist until February 18 1871 when King Wilhelm I of Prussia was declared Kaiser or Emperor of Germany in Versailles following the Franco Prussian War

The two Duchies Schleswig and Holstein, had been parts of the Danish Dominions since early in the eighteenth century The inhabitants of Schleswig were mainly, and of Holstein exclusively of Germanic descent In fact King Frederick I of Denmark who died in 1533 lies buried in the church in Bordesholm, Holstein However Danish rule was apparently not entirely satisfactory for in 1848, the inhabitants agitated for an independent constitution and by enlisting the support of Prussia, won sufficient power so that, in 1852, Schleswig-Holstein gained some degree of independence It was understood that Danish and German populations should have equal rights and privileges However according to historic accounts this agreement was violated hence in 1855 Schleswig-Holstein again came under Danish control Technically, therefore my parents were born under the

Danish crown British guarantees to protect the integrity of Danish territories encouraged the King of Denmark to adopt impolitic and unjust measures. In 1863 he assimilated Schleswig and disarmed Holstein. Taxes were imposed that were not approved by her estates. An effort was made to blot out the Germanic characteristics of the duchies which the inhabitants were determined to retain. Failure to agree on a satisfactory settlement brought on the Danish Austro-Prussian War in 1864, which ended that same year in victory for Austria and Prussia. Schleswig thus became a Prussian province and Holstein came under Austrian sovereignty when Father was nine years old and Mother six.

Dithmarschen as shown in figure 1, constitutes the west coastal area of Holstein between the Elbe River on the south and the Eider River on the north.

Most of the inhabitants were remotely descended from Frisian pagan tribes (Frisie) who for 2000 years before the Roman conquest inhabited the borders of the North Sea between the Scheldt and the Elbe Rivers. The tribes gradually migrated northward as far as the coast of Jutland. They were spoken of as a virile, sea faring race motivated by strong sentiments of freedom. They were governed by a number of chieftains and had a pagan religious center in Heligoland some four miles offshore. After 200 years of struggle with the Franks the Frisians were finally subjugated by Charlemagne and gradually became Christianized. Some of the Frisians settled in England while the majority concentrated in the Frisian Islands off the coast of the Netherlands and Flanders some however remained in the northern part of Germany.

The Frisians spoke a dialect called Old Friesic. Modified by Old Saxon and Anglo-Saxon the dialect developed into what is now called Old Low German. With more modification there arose such dialects as modern North East and West Friesic Dutch Flemish and Low German in its present restrictive sense (*Plattdeutsch*). Low German thus became the common language of Holstein as well as other regions of North Germany. The *Plattdeutsch* or literally *flat German* was further modified by Danish infiltrations indeed such influence is evidenced throughout Schleswig-Holstein by the persistence of Danish names such as Eddelak and Itzehoe in the vicinity of my parents' birthplaces.

It was common in my youth for persons of Prussian descent to attach an opprobrious or uncomplimentary connotation to the words Low German. This was as unfair as to read a base meaning into a sign in the Boston Public Library. Only Low Conversation Permitted. On the contrary an investigation of the facts reveals that there is reason to be proud of a Low German lineage. The Low German dialect once attained the dignity



FIG. 1 Map of Holstein Dithmarschen denoted by stippled area

of a literary tongue. It counts among its literature the humorous and delightful stories of Fritz Reuter (1810-1874), the tales and poetry of Klaus Groth (1819-1899) and the poetry of Count von Schack (1815-1894) and of Gustav Frenssen. Hochdeutsch or High German became the official language of Germany because it was promulgated by the Prussian Chancery, and because Luther chose it for his translation of the Bible. In other words, modern classical German originated as a book language and to this day it is spoken with widely different dialects in various sections of Germany.

Dithmarschen was the birthplace of distinguished writers, dramatists, historians, artists, architects, musicians and surgeons. It suffices perhaps to recall the names of Johannes Brahms, of Alfred Dührsen (gynecologist) and of Friedrich von Elmarch (surgeon).

I was able to reconstruct a picture of the topography of Dithmarschen and of the character and life of its inhabitants partly from conversations between my parents and partly from personal recollections of a visit to my grandparents in 1896. A revisit during 1936 impressed upon me the charming character of the landscape of a section of Germany little explored by tourists. The coastal region of Dithmarschen is marshland, but it has several unpretentious seaside resorts. My first visit to a coastal beach was at Busum. Here, as a lad, I joined in the common sport of walking bare foot over the wide expanse of soft sands uncovered by the receding tides (*Wattenlaufen*) stopping now and then to gather a variety of seashells. Here I also had my first taste of the small variety of shrimp and called my only venture in a sailboat.

Beyond the coast the lowlands are protected from the enormous tides by dikes and inland waterways. I was informed that currently there are 125 miles of dikes and 30,000 miles of drainage canals. Thus the country is virtually broken up into multiple islands of fertile soil suitable for raising grain and vegetables and for rearing of livestock. Dithmarschen still remains the truck garden of Germany. Thatched roofed houses, characteristic windmills, historic monuments, distinctive churches and decorative town halls add to the picture of the lowlands. Forests and historic castles add charm to the not distant highlands.

It is in the low farm lands that my parents were born and reared. Most of the lands were divided into small tracts. These were farmed intensively with diversified crops among which potatoes, cabbage, turnips and sugar beets dominated. Farm dwellings consisted of attached quarters for humans and stock animals. On the thatched roofs an occasional stork perched picturesquely. The combined human and animal quarters conserved heat in the cold winters while the straw roofs kept out heat in the summer. But the odor of fowls, pigs, cattle and horses tended to diffuse into the living quarters. In winter additional heat was provided by a corner porcelain stove seemingly designed for ornament rather than for radiation of heat. Peat was used as fuel. It was excavated cut into bricks and dried in the sun. Sleeping arrangements consisted of double beds built into the side of the common living and dining room. They were fitted with doors that could be closed during the day. In a Door beds are obvious, not a new invention. Beds were amply feathered above and below the sleeper.

In such environment my grandparents on both sides seemed to have been comparatively successful as farmers. Product of hard work during the

long summer days of that latitude, by pressing their children into service and by utmost thrift and economy, both grandfathers had become *Bauern* (farmers). We revisited Grandfather's farm in 1896, which I should say comprised perhaps 30 to 50 acres. However, the rewards of farming were far from commensurate with the energy expended. The increasing size of families, the imposed taxes and demands for manpower to implement a succession of European wars created strains that became increasingly more difficult to withstand.

History records how in 1866, the growing military power of Prussia under Bismarck threatened Austria's aspirations to form one enormous empire from the Baltic to the Adriatic. History also records how, in seven short weeks, Prussia vanquished Hanover, Hesse and Saxony, moved into Bohemia, and annihilated the Austrian army at Sadowa. Austria was forced to recognize her exclusion from Germany, and Holstein was ceded to Prussia. In fact, Prussia organized all states north of the River Main into the North German Confederation. Such success only intensified the ambitions of Bismarck to extend the domains of a united Germany with Prussia at its head. Military power for the next war, which all Europe foresaw would be with France, was strengthened systematically. Napoleon III after not wholly successful ventures in Italy and Mexico similarly felt it important to establish the military supremacy of France in Europe. The dispute over the succession of a Hohenzollern to the throne of Spain furnished an issue. At a time when success could still be expected France declared war on Prussia. The disastrous defeat of the French at Sedan caused King Wilhelm I of Prussia to be proclaimed Emperor of Germany in 1871.

Historians are inclined to stress the diplomatic strategy of statesmen and the brilliant campaigns of generals that bring about such changes. Orators proclaim about them for generations and poets set forth feats in rhyme. But historians, orators and poets say little of the hardships, strains and cruelties inflicted on populations directly affected by wars. We who are now concerned with the outcome of international tensions and are worried about the fate that may be in store for our descendants fail to realize that similar conditions prevailed in Europe for the greater part of the last three centuries.

My parents and grandparents often recounted the ways in which the succession of wars affected the inhabitants of Holstein. With the increasing power of Prussia the internal organization of the country was gradually changed. Even while Holstein was still in the domain of Austria Prussia started to infiltrate the country. She maintained effective military organizations at the seaports of Kiel on the Baltic and at Brunsbüttel on the

North Sea with a plan of ultimately constructing a canal across Holstein. Brunsbüttel was not far from my grandfather's farm and in 1896 I witnessed the parades of international ships at the opening of the canal which virtually passed through the back yard of an uncle's home. Following the Austro-Prussian war telegraph, postal and railway systems were taken over by the German government. Calls for military service increased as the new German army was strengthened for the impending war with France. I gather from Father's reminiscences that the idea of being forced into military service by the Prussian state to be used for its advantage created much the same reaction as did the principle of taxation without representation in our own colonial days. The inhabitants were not ready for a loss of their identity and freedom in the interest of creating a unified German Reich.

It cannot be denied that the progressive consolidation of the Teutonic race under a strong monarchical government had many advantages for the German Empire. It led to its prosperous and leading position in industry, commerce and agriculture as well as in cultural arts and sciences. The benefit of wise and generous governmental support of literature, art, opera, churches and universities was recognized everywhere. The monarchical form of government also exercised a commanding influence in strengthening the so-called basic foundations of society, such as respect for family and government, property, education and the church. However, it tended to curb individualism on the theory that if left unchecked it is prone to interfere with the functions of the five basic institutions enumerated above. The family, not the individual, was regarded as the basic social unit with the Father as the unquestioned head. Marriage was consummated with the understanding that for better or worse until death do us part was not a mere ceremonial phrase. Even infidelity or inebriety rarely resulted in divorce; the unfortunate partner stuck it out. The family was a company to which every offspring was expected to contribute from early age until maturity. Schooling—often part time so as not to conflict with family obligations—was obligatory only until the age of 12. Children in their teens were considered to be economic assets, not liabilities. Each child had his assigned chores at a much earlier age. Men who lived on farms expected their wives and daughters as well as their sons to help with the stock and in the field as necessary. My father often spoke of the hardships of boyhood life and the use of the rod when tasks were not satisfactorily performed. However, like all adults, he was probably inclined to exaggerate childhood hardships and failed to appreciate how much parental discipline contributed to the development of his potentialities. As one grows older, one wonders whether ill-considered methods of upbringing lead

Miss Nell Benton, chief librarian of the Bowman Gray School of Medicine, deserves great credit for the meticulous care with which she checked the references used in this book. A final tribute goes to Mrs. Edward Jackson—for years my secretary, editorial adviser, and severest critic. She has edited every chapter, including my own (indeed, especially my own), with ruthless disregard for its author's parental pride, but with the determination that the organization of each, as well as the meaning of every sentence and phrase, would be as clear as she could possibly make it.

W M J

*Winston Salem*

It involves two apparently opposite processes that take place simultaneously growth or evolution and atrophy or involution. The first is more evident throughout the first 20 years. The two processes are fairly well balanced until the decade between 40 and 50 after which the second predominates. Was it not Victor Hugo who once said that 40 "is the old age of youth 50 the youth of old age"?

The aging process proceeds at a much slower rate in mature years than in childhood. This distinction is particularly notable in the brain which may actually improve with use until the sixth or even the seventh decade is reached.

One's occupation may make considerable difference in his awareness of approaching age. The combat flier is at his best before he is old enough to vote and has passed his greatest usefulness by the mid twenties. Athletes are recruited from the younger generation. A prize fighter a tennis player or a football player is considered a veteran at 30 while a doctor or lawyer at that age is a mere fledgling.

There is consolation however in the knowledge that as strength diminishes endurance increases almost to the middle of life. While all the records for the 100 yard and 200 yard dashes have been held by youngsters most of the records for the marathon runs were made by men between 38 and 45.

The late Dr. Carl Weller reminded us that man is one of the long lived animals that there is a definite life pattern for every species including man and that "Alteration of the pattern is an unbelievably slow process." Since the life pattern includes a maximum life span it is natural to wonder how this statement can be reconciled with the fact that man's life span in this country has increased from 47 years in 1900 to almost 70 today. The answer is that the increase is in the *average* rather than the *maximum* life span and has been achieved largely by the conquest of infectious diseases such as pneumonia typhoid fever dysentery diphtheria and tuberculosis. Advances in surgery are also a contributory factor. In spite of the remarkable improvement in man's average life expectancy the maximum life span has not been materially altered and probably will remain at 90 years with considerable individual variation for the next few centuries at least. While man's life expectancy at birth has almost doubled in the past century his life expectancy at the age of 60 has increased by only one year (Fig 11).



( word, thought, or science ) Webster defines it as The scientific study of the phenomena of old age

At least three medical journals are devoted entirely to the problems of old age. *The Journal of the American Geriatrics Society* published in Baltimore by Williams & Wilkins, *Geriatrics*, published in Minneapolis by Lincet Publications and the *Journal of Gerontology*, published quarterly by the Gerontological Society in St. Louis.

A National Conference on Aging, sponsored by the Federal Security Agency, was held in Washington in August, 1950, and the proceedings of the eleven sessions involved were published under the title *Man and His Years*.<sup>\*</sup> The national conference was followed by many state conferences, and in many states permanent committees have been set up to continue the study.

In 1955 the American Medical Association recognized the medical importance of our aging population by appointing a committee which was first called the Committee on Geriatrics. At their first meeting, however, the members of the committee voted to recommend that the name be changed to the more comprehensive title Committee on Aging.

In August 1957, the United States Public Health Service announced a grant of \$300,000 a year for five years to Duke University for the development of a regional center to study the problems of old age. The medical research will be supplemented by studies in psychology, sociology and economics.

It is unlikely for at least two reasons that many physicians will ever limit their practice entirely to geriatrics. The first reason is that many elderly people dislike being considered old and would not care to advertise their age to the world by going to an old folks doctor. The second and more important reason is that the best time to prepare for old age is in the full vigor of maturity, hence the general practitioner or internist is the logical one to practice geriatrics—which even more than pediatrics may be considered a specialty of general practice.

## THE BIOLOGY OF AGING

Aging begins before birth and continues through life at different rates for different individuals and for different parts of the body.

It involves two apparently opposite processes that take place simultaneously—growth or evolution and atrophy or involution. The first is more evident throughout the first 20 years. The two processes are fairly well balanced until the decade between 40 and 50, after which the second predominates. Was it not Victor Hugo who once said that 40 "is the old age of youth, 50 the youth of old age"?

The aging process proceeds at a much slower rate in mature years than in childhood. This distinction is particularly notable in the brain, which may actually improve with use until the sixth or even the seventh decade is reached.

One's occupation may make considerable difference in his awareness of approaching age. The combat flier is at his best before he is old enough to vote, and has passed his greatest usefulness by the mid twenties. Athletes are recruited from the younger generation. A prize fighter, a tennis player, or a football player is considered a veteran at 30, while a doctor or lawyer at that age is a mere fledgling.

There is consolation, however, in the knowledge that as strength diminishes, endurance increases almost to the middle of life. While all the records for the 100 yard and 200 yard dashes have been held by youngsters, most of the records for the marathon runs were made by men between 35 and 45.

The late Dr. Carl Weller reminded us that man is one of the long-lived animals, that there is a definite life pattern for every species, including man, and that alteration of the pattern is an unbelievably slow process. Since the life pattern includes a maximum life span, it is natural to wonder how this statement can be reconciled with the fact that man's life span in this country has increased from 47 years in 1900 to almost 70 today. The answer is that the increase is in the *average* rather than the *maximum* life span, and has been achieved largely by the conquest of infectious diseases such as pneumonia, typhoid fever, dysentery, diphtheria, and tuberculosis. Advances in surgery are also a contributory factor. In spite of the remarkable improvement in man's average life expectancy, the maximum life span has not been materially altered, and probably will remain at 90 years, with considerable individual variation, for the next few centuries, at least. While man's life expectancy at birth has almost doubled in the past century, his life expectancy at the age of 60 has increased by only one year (Fig 11).

( word thought or science ) Webster defines it as The scientific study of the phenomena of old age

At least three medical journals are devoted entirely to the problems of old age *The Journal of the American Geriatrics Society* published in Baltimore by Williams & Wilkins, *Geriatrics* published in Minneapolis by Lincet Publications, and the *Journal of Gerontology*, published quarterly by the Gerontological Society in St. Louis

A National Conference on Aging sponsored by the Federal Security Agency, was held in Washington in August, 1950, and the proceedings of the eleven sections involved were published under the title *Man and His Years* \* The national conference was followed by many state conferences, and in many states permanent committees have been set up to continue the study

In 1955 the American Medical Association recognized the medical importance of our aging population by appointing a committee which was first called the Committee on Geriatrics At their first meeting, however the members of the committee voted to recommend that the name be changed to the more comprehensive title Committee on Aging

In August 1957 the United States Public Health Service announced a grant of \$300,000 a year for five years to Duke University, for the development of a regional center to study the problems of old age The medical research will be supplemented by studies in psychology, sociology, and economics

It is unlikely, for at least two reasons that many physicians will ever limit their practice entirely to geriatrics The first reason is that many elderly people dislike being considered old and would not care to advertise their age to the world by going to an old folks doctor The second and more important reason is that the best time to prepare for old age is in the full vigor of maturity, hence the general practitioner or internist is the logical one to practice geriatrics—which even more than pediatrics may be considered a specialty of general practice

## THE BIOLOGY OF AGING

Aging begins before birth and continues through life at different rates for different individuals and for different parts of the body

the ability to learn depreciates very slowly if the will to learn is retained

## ATTITUDES TOWARD AGING

The *older's* attitude toward the aging process may be resentful, resigned, or realistic. The first two attitudes are hardest to deal with. The *resentful* patient is apt to be immature in spite of his years. Often he has been spoiled in childhood, accustomed to getting what he wanted by temper tantrums. Later, as a parent and spouse, he—or often she—has achieved the same aim by the technique of domineering or of clinging. Such individuals need understanding and a certain amount of sympathy, but not the sort of sympathy that makes them a prey to self-pity and encourages their childish resentment against life.

The *resigned* older makes no effort to keep up with current events or to contribute his best efforts to worthy causes. He is prone to use his age as an excuse to decline invitations to participate in social or community affairs. He is quite willing to accept financial support as a debt owed him by the government or his children. Such people need to be encouraged to find something useful to do, and to maintain an interest in living.

The *realistic* person accepts aging as a natural phenomenon and looks for the good in it as well as for the bad. He learns without adopting a "Pollyanna" attitude (familiar to the older generation) that old age has its compensations.

## THE OLDER AND HIS DOCTOR

The doctor who deals with many older patients will learn to recognize their reactions to age and will often be able to help them develop the right attitude. In order to win their confidence, he will need to be sympathetic, sincere, and sensible. His sympathy should be of the practical sort that does not expend its force in pitying the patient but looks for means to relieve his doubts and fears. He will need to use a modern term, empathy, as well as sympathy.

His sincerity should be so evident that he will not need to proclaim it with a trumpet. The older instinctively senses the doctor's

Dr Weller divides the aging process into four components (1) nutrition and metabolism, (2) motility, (3) reproductive power and (4) mental and spiritual development

The need for nutrition is greatest in infancy, when growth and development are most rapid. It declines rapidly to about 20, remains nearly constant until about 70, then gradually falls until the end of life.

Motility (muscular power and co ordination) is at its lowest level at birth, rises rapidly until the third decade, then declines gradually during the rest of life. Athletes usually reach their peak of motor activity and control between 20 and 30.

The reproductive function, lacking in the infant and young child, reaches its peak in the middle twenties, then declines in

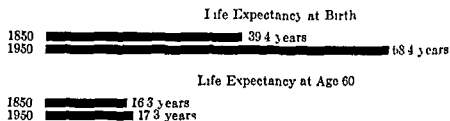


FIG. 1.1 Life expectancy at birth and at 60 years of age. These data are from the Statistical Department of the Metropolitan Life Insurance Company, New York. (From Weinberg M. 1957.)

females until it ceases with the menopause usually about the age of 45. This pattern enables the mother to bear her children after she should be mature enough to guide them, and ensures that she will live long enough—barring accident or disease—to care for her children during the years when they need her most. Apparently Nature does not consider the father's role in providing for his children as particularly important, since men are capable of procreation until an advanced age.

The pattern of cerebral (or mental) function and spiritual development differs widely from the other three components of the aging process. It rises rapidly from the first year to the third decade, then continues to ascend more gradually for another 20 to 35 years. Between 50 and 65 this function begins to decline at different rates for different individuals. Scientific tests have proved that a person is capable of learning until he reaches the age of senility, and that

the ability to learn depreciates very slowly if the will to learn is retained

## ATTITUDES TOWARD AGING

The oldster's attitude toward the aging process may be resentful, resigned, or realistic. The first two attitudes are hardest to deal with. The *resentful* patient is apt to be immature in spite of his years. Often he has been spoiled in childhood, accustomed to getting what he wanted by temper tantrums. Later, as a parent and spouse, he—or often she—has achieved the same aim by the technique of domineering or of clinging. Such individuals need understanding and a certain amount of sympathy, but not the sort of sympathy that makes them a prey to self-pity and encourages their childish resentment against life.

The *resigned* oldster makes no effort to keep up with current events or to contribute his best efforts to worthy causes. He is prone to use his age as an excuse to decline invitations to participate in social or community affairs. He is quite willing to accept financial support as a debt owed him by the government or his children. Such people need to be encouraged to find *something useful to do* and to maintain an interest in living.

The *realistic* person accepts aging as a natural phenomenon and looks for the good in it as well as for the bad. He learns without adopting a "Pollyanna" attitude (familiar to the older generation) that old age has its compensations.

## THE OLDSTER AND HIS DOCTOR

The doctor who deals with many older patients will learn to recognize their reactions to age and will often be able to help them develop the right attitude. In order to win *their* confidence, he will need to be sympathetic, sincere, and sensible. His sympathy should be of the *practical* sort that does not expend its force in pitying the patient, but looks for means to relieve his doubts and fears. He will need to use a modern term, *empathy*, as well as sympathy.

His sincerity should be so evident that he will not need to proclaim it with a trumpet. The oldster instinctively senses the doctor's

attitude. If it be patronizing or impatient, he will almost certainly withdraw into his shell. It is necessary to make him feel that, for the time, he has the doctor's undivided attention.

The older patient also wants his doctor to be sensible in discussing his problems, whether they be physical, mental or even spiritual. He will resent evasive answers or sugar-coated reassurance that all is well, when he knows that all is *not* well. The average intelligent oldster appreciates a clear explanation of such conditions as hypertrophic arthritis and angina pectoris or even of a small cerebral thrombosis. It is important, however, for the doctor to select his words with care, avoiding such dead terms as hardened arteries, cancer, and stroke.

The doctor should himself look for the good things about maturity and help the oldster to appreciate them. Among these are the relative rarity of rheumatoid arthritis or rheumatic fever, freedom from migraine, better resistance to infectious diseases and for women release from the nuisance of menstruation.

In medical practice at its best, no one factor is more important than the proper relation between doctor and patient. This factor assumes particular significance in dealing with older patients. So much of pediatric practice consists of giving routine immunizations, recording weights and measurements and prescribing formulas for various ages that a well-trained nurse can take over a great many of the pediatrician's duties. The doctor can usually stay in the youngster's good graces by giving him a lollipop or a bright piece of cardboard after the nurse has done the duty work of puncturing his skin.

The oldster, however, is not so easily managed. The years have taught him caution in bestowing his confidence, and his diseases are apt to be of a chronic or recurrent nature. A satisfactory relation with his doctor is most important to his well-being and peace of mind. Such a relation is most often one that has developed over many years. The advice of a doctor who is himself well-matured is often more acceptable to the elderly patient than that of a younger man. It is frequently true, however, that a young doctor who really likes people—and no man who does not like people should be a family doctor or an internist—can win the confidence and even the affection of his older as well as his younger patients. Whether a doctor be young or old, he will need special reserves of

patience and equanimity in dealing with many of his elderly patients

## REFERENCES

- 1 SPECTER I J *Geriatric Medicine* Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1943 p 20
- 2 WEINBERG M Geriatrics— a definition *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 5:345 1957
- 3 WEINBERG C V "Biologic Aspects of the Aging Process" in TIMMERS C (ed) *Living Through the Older Years* Ann Arbor University of Michigan Press 1951



attitude. If it be patronizing or impatient, he will almost certainly withdraw into his shell. It is necessary to make him feel that, for the time, he has the doctor's undivided attention.

The older patient also wants his doctor to be sensible in discussing his problems, whether they be physical, mental, or even spiritual. He will resent evasive answers or sugar-coated reassurance that all is well, when he knows that all is *not* well. The average intelligent oldster appreciates a clear explanation of such conditions as hypertrophic arthritis and angina pectoris, or even of a small cerebral thrombosis. It is important, however, for the doctor to select his words with care, avoiding such dread terms as hardened arteries, cancer and stroke.

The doctor should himself look for the good things about maturity and help the oldster to appreciate them. Among these are the relative rarity of rheumatoid arthritis or rheumatic fever, freedom from migraine, better resistance to infectious diseases and for women release from the nuisance of menstruation.

In medical practice at its best, no one factor is more important than the proper relation between doctor and patient. This factor assumes particular significance in dealing with older patients. So much of pediatric practice consists of giving routine immunizations, recording weights and measurements, and prescribing formulas for various ages that a well-trained nurse can take over a great many of the pediatrician's duties. The doctor can usually stay in the youngster's good graces by giving him a lollipop or a bright piece of cardboard after the nurse has done the dirty work of puncturing his skin.

The oldster, however, is not so easily managed. The years have taught him caution in bestowing his confidence and his diseases are apt to be of a chronic or recurrent nature. A satisfactory relation with his doctor is most important to his well-being and peace of mind. Such a relation is most often one that has developed over many years. The advice of a doctor who is himself well-matured is often more acceptable to the elderly patient than that of a younger man. It is frequently true, however, that a young doctor who really likes people—and no man who does not like people should be a family doctor or an internist—can win the confidence and even the affection of his older as well as his younger patients. Whether a doctor be young or old, he will need special reserves of

tinguish the appearance of a youthful from that of an old person. The two chief layers of the skin are unlike in structure, the surface one or epidermis being a stratified squamous epithelium while the layer underlying it the dermis is made up of connective tissue. The latter has in it all the vascular supply for the former since epidermis does not contain blood vessels but depends upon tissue fluid passing through vessel walls into connective tissue and so to epithelial cells. The dermis of course also contains the nerve fibers which pass to sensory endings in the epidermis. Thus changes in either layer undoubtedly affect the other.

The subject of age changes in the skin has been recently reviewed by Andrew (1955a). While changes in the dermis, and particularly in its connective tissue fibers have been studied by a number of investigators and had been described even before the beginning of the present century (Unna, 1896) the present state of knowledge about such changes is not very complete. Several investigators however including Ejiri (1937) Dick (1947) and Ma and Cowdry (1950) have found a degeneration of elastic fibers.

While the general question of elasticity of the skin is a complicated one and it is undoubtedly true that we should not expect to be able to tie it too closely with the morphologic state of the elastic connective tissue, the simple fact is of course that skin *does* lose some of its elasticity with advancing age. If one lifts up a fold of skin on the dorsum of the hand and then releases it the skin of a young person will return promptly to its original position while the skin of an older person will take some time to return to its place. Studies on the physical property of elasticity of skin have been made on necropsy specimens (Bönninger 1905) biopsy specimens (Evans, Cowdry and Nielson 1943) and on the intact skin of living persons (Kirk and Kvarning 1949). By all these methods a decrease has been demonstrated. There is interesting evidence that localized massage of the skin of aged women with estrogen in oil leads to some restoration of elasticity (Chueffi, 1950). The same was not true for old men whose skin was massaged with androgen containing oil.

The epidermis at least in many regions of the body shows marked changes in old age. This fact seems rather surprising at first thought since the epidermis represents an epithelial layer, the cells of which are constantly being pushed toward the surface,

## CHAPTER 2

# Anatomic Changes with Age

WARREN ANDREW

By the term anatomic changes in this chapter I refer to alterations in structure whether of a type visible to the naked eye, or microscopic or even submicroscopic (visible through the electron microscope)

One would expect that the general picture of aging would long since have been well defined. Millions of human beings in all age groups are as it were available for observations as living specimens while deaths are frequent enough to furnish vast numbers of autopsy records. Surprisingly enough however, it is difficult to make generalizations in this field and point to structural changes that are common in all old persons or can be disengaged from the thousand ills to which flesh is heir.

In spite of the advances in radiology that permit us to see the framework of the body and many of its organs in the living state and in spite of the development of the phase microscope and other methods for studying living cells and tissues the chief material for anatomic study remains the dead body and the prepared sections of tissues that have been killed by fixation.

Our present picture of the anatomic changes with age is probably very incomplete and at least some of the alterations attributed to age will be found later to be disease conditions of widespread occurrence among older persons.

## THE SKIN AND SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUES

The skin is one of man's most conspicuous features and has long been used, not only in medicine but in many other fields to dis-

tinguish the appearance of a youthful from that of an old person. The two chief layers of the skin are unlike in structure, the surface one or epidermis being a stratified squamous epithelium while the layer underlying it the dermis is made up of connective tissue. The latter has in it all the vascular supply for the former, since epidermis does not contain blood vessels but depends upon tissue fluid passing through vessel walls into connective tissue and so to epithelial cells. The dermis of course also contains the nerve fibers which pass to sensory endings in the epidermis. Thus changes in either layer undoubtedly affect the other.

The subject of age changes in the skin has been recently reviewed by Andrew (1955a). While changes in the dermis, and particularly in its connective tissue fibers have been studied by a number of investigators and had been described even before the beginning of the present century (Unna 1896), the present state of knowledge about such changes is not very complete. Several investigators however including Ejiri (1937), Dick (1947) and Ma and Cowdry (1950) have found a degeneration of elastic fibers.

While the general question of elasticity of the skin is a complicated one and it is undoubtedly true that we should not expect to be able to tie it too closely with the morphologic state of the elastic connective tissue the simple fact is of course, that skin does lose some of its elasticity with advancing age. If one lifts up a fold of skin on the dorsum of the hand and then releases it, the skin of a young person will return promptly to its original position while the skin of an older person will take some time to return to its place. Studies on the physical property of elasticity of skin have been made on necropsy specimens (Bonniger 1905) biopsy specimens (Evans, Cowdry and Nielson, 1943), and on the intact skin of living persons (Kirk and Kivornig 1949). By all these methods a decrease has been demonstrated. There is interesting evidence that localized massage of the skin of aged women with estrogen in oil leads to some restoration of elasticity (Chieffi 1950). The same was not true for old men whose skin was massaged with androgen containing oil.

The epidermis at least in many regions of the body shows marked changes in old age. This fact seems rather surprising at first thought since the epidermis represents an epithelial layer, the cells of which are constantly being pushed toward the surface,



FIG. 21 Abdominal skin of young and old individuals. Section cut at  $6\mu$  Mission's stain ( $\times 540$ ) (Top) Eighteen year old female. Rete pegs are prominent. In the three dimensional aspect these form a pattern of ridges (Bottom) Seventy six year old female. Rete pegs are absent

dying or being transformed and being replaced by "younger" cells from below. Nevertheless taking the epidermis as a whole we see in senile skin a loss of the "rete pegs" or ridges of its lower surface and thus a "smoothing out" of the boundary line at the dermoepidermal junction (Evans Cowdry and Nielson 1943 Thuringer and Cooper 1950 Andrew 1955a) (Fig 21). This seems to be accompanied by a thinning of the main portion of the epidermis.

I have found both in animals and in human beings (Andrew 1955a) more aberrant cells present in the stratum germinativum of older individuals. Such cells include some with hypertrophied nucleoli, some with lobed or double nuclei and some with a tendency to separate from neighboring cells. Thuringer and Cooper (1950) have reported the curious fact that more mitotic figures are seen in the epidermis of senile human subjects than of young ones and we have presented evidence for such a condition in the skin of the rat (Andrew and Andrew 1956). The presence of aberrant cells and of more frequent mitotic activity may be related to the more common occurrence in old age of hyperplastic lesions such as senile keratosis (Cowdry and Andrew 1950) and even carcinoma (Cooper 1952).

The appendages of the skin—the hairs, nails and cutaneous glands—are of epidermal origin. Loss of pigment from the cortex of the hair shaft leads to graying or whitening of the hair, one of the conspicuous "signs" of aging, although such loss of color may be brought about also by endocrine changes or physiologic disorders that are not a part of normal aging. The cutaneous glands are said to undergo atrophy in old age and Mackinnon (1954) has shown a decrease in the number of sweat glands on the palmar aspects of the digits. On the other hand Kirk (1948) has given evidence for a progressive increase in the amount of lipid secreted by the skin on the forehead up to an advanced age.

## THE MUSCULAR SYSTEM

One of the conspicuous changes of old age is a gradual decrease in the strength and accuracy of muscular action, often progressing to a state of extreme feebleness. How much of this seemingly muscular change is due to alterations in the nervous system and

what part is played by changes in the joints ligaments, and tendons are questions difficult to answer. It is obvious, however, in many elderly individuals that muscle size is decreased.

Since the heart itself is a muscle, although of a particular histologic type, the nature of the changes in muscle brought about by aging is a point of great significance. Whether microscopic changes occur in many of the muscles, and whether some of the muscle tissue is replaced by inert tissue types such as adipose and fibrous connective tissue, are important questions.

Berg (1956), working with rats, found a high incidence of muscular dystrophy in the senile animals. The range in age of the older animals was from 500 to 1 186 days.

He pointed out the similarity of this degenerative condition to that seen in rats on a vitamin E deficient diet, and suggested that perhaps old rats require more vitamin E. It is not yet clear how these studies may be related to the increasing weakness of muscles in the aging human being. The very high incidence of muscle degeneration in these senile rats may indicate that such changes are commonly associated with the aging process whether or not a specific vitamin deficiency is also involved.

Other muscular changes less dramatic but of much interest have been described as phenomena of aging. Buccirante and Luria (1934) made an extensive study of skeletal muscle and concluded that in senility the size of individual fibers is increased. The muscles studied were those of the tongue larynx, and uvula the extraocular muscles and the sternocleidomastoid. They found in all the muscles studied an increase in the interstitial connective tissue both the collagenous and the elastic type. The amount of reticular tissue was not changed. In the extraocular muscles there was an increase of pigment in the fibers chiefly in the region of the nucleus.

Dogliotti (1931) in studying 200 apparently normal human hearts found an increase in the diameter of fibers up to about 50 years, then an atrophy or decrease in size. He stated that elastic tissue in the ventricles increases with age although individual variations are great. The collagenous and reticular tissues of the heart do not seem to change in amount with age.

Aging causes a conspicuous increase in the pigment of cardiac muscle. This substance making its first appearance even before puberty increases throughout life and is, in general, most abundant

in senility Javne (1950) has described this increase in a series of 135 human subjects

As yet no adequate work has been done on changes in smooth muscle with advancing age, a subject which might be of particular importance in relation to the walls of blood vessels

The relative importance of changes in the cardiac muscle *per se* as compared with changes in the vascular supply of the heart might be studied in animal forms where vascular change is less common than in man At the present time it is very difficult to assess the role of the different types of changes that occur in the aging human heart

## THE SKELETAL SYSTEM

The skeleton like other parts of the body is under a number of influences nutritional endocrine and genetic With the increasing variation of these different factors among aging individuals goes an irregularity in the degree and type of skeletal change Thus while we can describe certain types of changes in the skeleton as "senile in nature" we cannot expect them to occur with the uniformity and regularity of changes that occur earlier in the life span

From a study of large collections of skeletal material such as those at Western Reserve University and Washington University it becomes apparent that gross differences exist between some of the bones of old and of young persons In the pubis an erosion of the surface and a breakdown of the ventral margin begin to appear during the sixth decade (Todd 1920 1921) In the seventh decade the entire surface is generally eroded in an irregular fashion

The times of closure of the sutures in the skull show a large degree of variation in different individuals Some of them are not completely closed until an advanced age The sphenoparietal suture for example generally begins to close in the fourth decade and moves steadily to about three quarters closure by 46 years but does not exhibit complete union until 65 years of age

The texture of the cranium changes from the ivory like smoothness that it possesses in the young adult to assume a slightly roughened or matte appearance usually somewhere between the ages of 30 and 50 Later the surface may become more coarsely roughened Places of muscle attachment in the temporal and occipital regions



become ridged after the age of 25 years, but no further changes seem to occur in later life.

It is often stated that age causes an increase in the depth and extent of the depressions for the arachnoid villi but no significant change has been found (Cobb 1952). There is, however, a deepening of the grooves for the meningeal veins and a sharpening of their margins. Todd (1924) found no characteristic changes in thickness of any of the bones of the vault with advancing years. Crural thickness in general showed a slight increase up to 60 years, with no change thereafter.

Harris (1933) stated that the venous channels of the diploe of the skull become obliterated by bony deposits in women after the menopause and in men during the late fifties. Since these channels are not fully developed until the thirties it appears that they serve as a kind of safety valve in middle life for the circulation in the cerebrum since they form a communication between the venous sinuses of the dura mater and the veins outside the cranium. This safety factor is lost in older persons.

Hysteresis (osteomalacia) in the free and cranium, a wasting away of the calcium salts of bone, is often mentioned in relation to age and certainly is of frequent occurrence in older persons. It is difficult, however, to assess the role of vitamin lack and other nutritional deficiencies in this condition.

Changes in the skull, such as the diminution in size of the mandible and its change of shape, not only change the appearance of aging individuals but may markedly alter the classic relationships described for various organs. Thus, in the cranium of a 96-year-old woman dissected in our laboratory the submandibular gland was completely out from under cover of the mandible.

Bones of the skeleton other than the skull show definite changes with age. The scapula (Gives 1922) shows changes in its vascular pattern and surface texture as well as atrophic alteration in localized areas where the surface becomes depressed and the bone appears patchy spotted or moth eaten when held up to the light. In senility demineralization may become severe.

Lipping, clinically called hypertrophic arthritis refers to an ligamentous ossification or new bone formation at the capsular line of a joint. It is common in many of the joints of old persons but is practically nonexistent until the age of 35 years. The lumbar

vertebrae are especially subject to such change. This phenomenon seems to be due to a metabolic change which leads to ossific deposits in locations where they do not occur in younger persons.

The density of bone in general decreases with old age so that it tends to become light and porous, loses much of its elasticity and capacity of resistance and is considerably more subject to fracture (Fig. 2-2). This type of change occurs to a different degree in different parts of the skeleton and other factors make it difficult to tell how important the atrophic change is. Thus in spite of this tendency in spite of the enlargement of sinuses and in spite of the loss of alveolar bone associated with the edentulous condition the skull generally increases in weight with advancing age.

The hemopoietic functions of the marrow in the cavities of bones are gradually reduced so that in adult life the chief sites are the bodies of the vertebrae, the ribs, sternum and innominate bones. As age progresses the red marrow of these bones tends to be replaced by yellow (fatty and inactive) marrow. Fat however does not intrude far up the vertebral column and generally is conspicuous only in the sacrum and lower lumbar vertebrae (Piney, 1922).

From the structural aspects changes in bone tissue with old age include an increase in diameter of the haversian canals (Fig. 2-3). Nevertheless there is evidence (Amprino and Burati, 1936) that phenomena of appositional growth and of functional adaptation persist although at a decreased rate in old age for even in old individuals the lacunae or spaces of resorption in compact bone show deposition of apparently new lamellae by osteocytes.

Calcification of cartilage may occur in young adults and has been shown to be widespread in costal cartilages by the early 20's. Calcification and ossification in certain individual cartilages however are seen as phenomena of advanced age. Actual bone formation frequently occurs in the cartilages of the larynx of very old persons (Noback, 1949). Scanty ossification of costal cartilages in old rats has been described by Dawson and Spark (1928).

Elastic cartilage of the ear and epiglottis shows an increase in fibers throughout life but with an accompanying decrease in the degree of elasticity (Amprino and Bairati, 1933).

Fibrous cartilage appears to undergo fewer natural regressive changes than hyaline or elastic cartilage. Beyond 60 years however the intervertebral discs and the fibrocartilage of the pubic

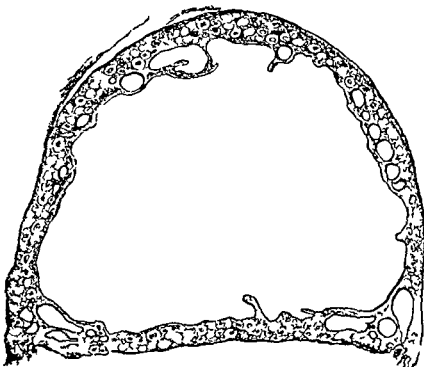
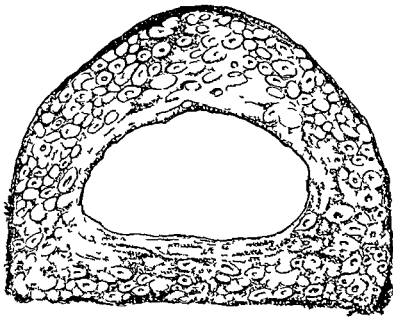


FIG 2 2 Age changes in bones (Top) Diaphysis of the phalanx of a woman of 39 years cross section (Bottom) Diaphysis of the phalanx of a woman of 90 years cross section Marked senile osteoporosis is present (Redrawn from Amprino and Burati 1936 )

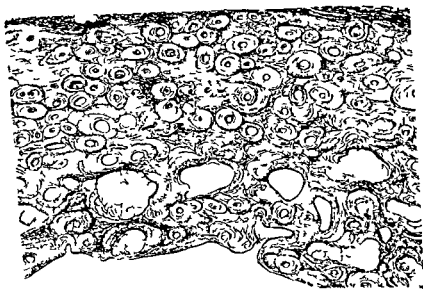


FIG. 23 Age changes in bone tissue (Top) Cross section of the diaphysis of the femur from a woman 23 years ( $\times 26$ ) (Bottom) Cross section of the diaphysis of the femur from a woman of 79 years ( $\times 23$ ) Dilatation of the Haversian canals and the appearance of lacunae of reabsorption are prominent features (Redrawn from Amprino and Barati, 1936)

symphysis show degenerative alterations which include penetration by connective tissue and blood vessels, calcification, necrosis and hemorrhage (Amprino and Burati, 1934b)

A comprehensive study of the cartilages of the knee joint was carried out by Bennett Waine, and Bauer (1942). Roughening of the surface, fraying and splitting occur in the articular cartilage and the menisci. Later, widespread thinning is seen and sometimes even complete denudation of the articular surfaces, but the degree of these changes even in individuals of advanced age varies considerably.

From the cellular aspect the changes in cartilage associated with old age appear to be of two different types: (1) phenomena of proliferation and of further differentiation in which chondrocytes can be transformed into osteoblasts, and (2) phenomena of regression. The phenomena of regression include asbestiform and albuminoid types of degeneration. Asbestiform degeneration consists in the development of masses of parallel apparently rigid fibers in the matrix and usually is found only in advanced age. Albuminoid degeneration consists in the deposit of protein granules in the matrix and may be accompanied by the death of cells, fluidification of cartilage substances, and development of cavities.

### THE BLOOD-VASCULAR SYSTEM

It is difficult if not impossible to separate changes of normal aging in the blood vascular system from those of a pathologic nature. Vernant (1955) however believes that some changes in the heart can be called those of senescence rather than disease.

The general rule for the old heart is a *decreased size* although arterial disease produces large hearts in a good many senile subjects. There is an increase of age pigment at the poles of the nuclei of the cardiac fibers (Fig. 24). This is probably either identical with or very similar to the pigment that is found in large amounts in many parts of the nervous system in old age. The clarity of the striations of the cardiac fibers is diminished particularly in the neighborhood of the nuclei. The volume of the individual nuclei appears to increase and they stain more deeply. According to Dogliotti (1931) the amount of elastic connective tissue in the myocardium increases considerably in old age.



FIG 2.4 Cardiac muscle from the apex of the left ventricle of human subjects to show the increasing amount of pigment with age A Twenty five year old woman B Fifty one year old woman C Seventy five year old man (After Jayne 1950)

The changes in the walls of the blood vessels are of tremendous practical importance in geriatrics. The conditions which we include within the term arteriosclerosis form so large a part of this field however, and there is so much doubt as to whether this is a pathologic condition or a phenomenon of normal aging that it will be treated in a separate chapter.



FIG. 25 Ectopic tissue from the periportal region of the liver of a senile male mouse (733 days of age) ( $\times 1352$ ). Cells of various types other than small lymphocytes are seen.

A change in the adventitia and surrounding connective tissue both of arteries and of veins has been described (Andrew 1956b) as a phenomenon frequently observed in old age. This is the appearance of aggregations of mesenchymal cells, a kind of ectopic lymphoid tissue that forms cuffs partially or wholly surrounding the vessels (Fig. 25). Study of the cell population of such tissue indi-

cates that it contains not only motile infiltrating cells but stable elements such as fibroblasts. There also is evidence that some of the many small lymphocytes of this tissue are differentiating into hemocytoblasts and other types of cells not found in the blood stream. In addition, formed structures strongly resembling Hassall's corpuscles have been found within such tissue (Fig. 2.6). Other

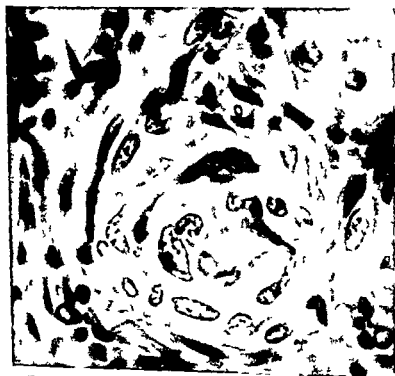


FIG. 2.6 A formed structure strongly resembling a Hassall's corpuscle seen in a mass of ectopic lymphoid tissue in the kidney of a 27 month old rat ( $\times 1352$ )

changes in the walls of blood vessels excluding those of frank arteriosclerosis include the appearance of vacuolated areas in the smooth muscle of the media. These have been described in the arteries of the brains of senile rats (Kuhlenbeck 1954) and also in the renal vessels of such animals (Andrew and Pruett 1957). Recently in arteries from the gastrocnemius muscle of senile rats studied in collaboration with Dr. Nathan Shock, we have been able to observe the origin of these vacuoles within the individual smooth



muscle cells. Their chemical nature is not known although they probably are lipoidal.

The relation of these two kinds of changes, development of ectopic lymphoid tissue and vacuole formation in the media to the functional changes in aging arteries is still obscure but they do indicate that general changes take place in and about the vessels with advancing age—changes that may well be connected with the phenomena of arteriosclerosis.

### LYMPHOID TISSUE

Because of its widespread distribution in the body, its role in defense and in the production of new multipotent cells, and its known ability to respond to stimuli such as infection, lymphoid tissue would seem to be of major importance to the whole organism.

Human lymph nodes show a decrease in the quantity of tissue in the cortex after puberty. In late maturity and old age the lymphoid tissue frequently shows atrophy, particularly in the superficial nodes. The *volume* of the node, however, is generally maintained since adipose tissue or fibrous connective tissue replaces the lost lymphoid tissue (Denz, 1947).

The palatine, pharyngeal and lingual tonsils show simple atrophy in old age. It is rare, however, for the palatine tonsils to be completely lacking. There is a slight and temporary enlargement of the palatine tonsils around the sixth decade, which seems to correspond to a similar period before puberty (Kekmen, 1943).

The chief point of interest concerning the thymus gland in old age is that, contrary to common opinion, it seldom undergoes complete involution. It undergoes regression sooner than any other lymphoid organ, but its fate appears to be bound up in some way with the development of the sex glands; its maximum weight is found at the time of their rapid increase in size and the differentiation of the germinal tissues.

Extensive study of the human spleen in relation to age has been made by Krumbhaar and Lippincott (1939) who included in their series a large number of spleens removed from persons who had met accidental deaths so that the picture was not clouded by any known pathologic condition. The maximum amount of follicular (lymphoid) tissue is seen between 16 and 20 years of age, after

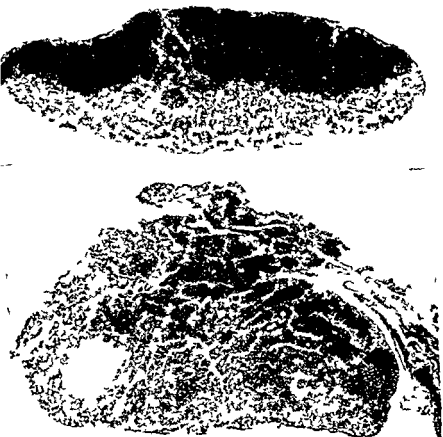


FIG. 27 Age changes in deep cervical lymph nodes of Wistar Institute rats (Top) Lymph node of a 302 day old female rat Low power view. In this approximately mid line section the medulla occupies about half of the total area. Reaction centers are seen in the cortex (Bottom) Lymph node of a 1 000 day old female rat Low power view. A large cavity is seen in the tissue at the far left. The sinusoids of the node are wide and distinction between cortex and medulla is difficult. Reaction centers are not seen (After Andrew and Andrew 1948 )

which it slowly decreases until the most advanced age. Germinal (reaction) centers of the follicles are best developed between 1 and 10 years and are generally lost in old age.

Similar age changes in the spleen were found in the Wistar Institute rat (Andrew 1946). In addition the red pulp was observed to pass from a predominantly compact nature in young and middle aged animals to a predominantly sinusoidal one in old

animals. Studies on the spleens of 42 human subjects dying of various causes suggested that a similar change in the red pulp takes place in man.

The data on the diffuse lymphatic tissue, such as that in the mucosa of the alimentary and of the respiratory tracts, are somewhat conflicting. While some authors believe that it undergoes

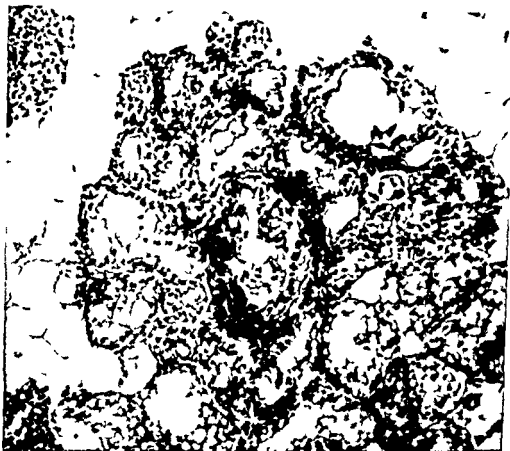


FIG. 28 Portion of a parotid gland of a Wistar Institute albino rat in early senility, aged 700 days ( $\times 100$ ). A massive fatty degeneration is occurring in this area. (After Andrew, 1949.)

atrophic change during senescence of the blood vessels, an increase of diffuse lymphoid tissue about the vessels occurs in a number of organs. Lymphoid nodules are more common in the bone marrow of old than of young persons (Williams, 1939). These nodules in the marrow apparently have no pathologic significance. In the appendix the lymphoid nodules decrease with age and as a rule are not present after the age of 75 years (Stefanelli, 1936). Since this organ

is a vestigial one however it would be worthwhile to have counts of follicles at different ages made in other parts of the intestinal tract

## THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

### The Alimentary Tract

In 80 per cent of subjects past 50 years the gastric mucosa shows some alterations. Its thickness is diminished. In the pyloric region "intestinal metaplasia" is of frequent occurrence while the fundic glands show some dedifferentiation. The lymphoid follicles are described as hyperplastic, and increased numbers of mononuclear wandering cells are found in the submucosa. These age differences have been studied on autopsy material, and it would be desirable to have biopsy studies if feasible. Studies on animals also are needed.

The muscle and mucosa of the intestine and particularly of the colon are said to show atrophy in old age. The appendix even in the absence of preceding inflammation is often reduced to a solid fibrous cord difficult to find at autopsy.

Portis and King (1952) studying the small intestine by systematic radiography found in 59 per cent of the older subjects a less regular outline of the mucosa. This fact had been noted by Jungmann and Cosin (1948) who had found also a generally hypertonic state of the intestine in old persons.

The influence of the aging process on the frankly pathologic conditions of the alimentary tract is discussed in Chapter 17 of this book.

### The Accessory Glands

The salivary glands in man undergo varying degrees of atrophy in old age the parenchyma being replaced to a considerable extent by adipose tissue. Another type of change occurring in the salivary glands of aged individuals is the appearance of large atypical cells singly or in groups—the so called oncocytes. Hamperl (1952) has described such cells in a number of glandular organs.

The human pancreas in old age shows an accentuation of its lobulation, considerable atrophy and replacement of parenchyma

animals. Studies on the spleens of 42 human subjects dying of various causes suggested that a similar change in the red pulp takes place in man.

The data on the diffuse lymphatic tissue, such as that in the mucosa of the alimentary and of the respiratory tracts, are somewhat conflicting. While some authors believe that it undergoes

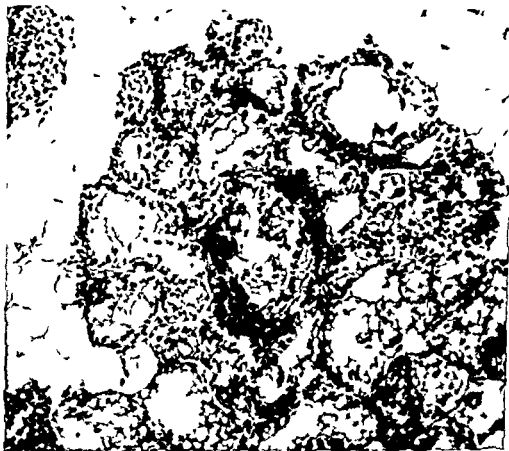


FIG. 28. Portion of a parotid gland of a Wistar Institute albino rat in early senility, aged 700 days ( $\times 100$ ). A massive fatty degeneration is occurring in this area. (After Andrew, 1949.)

atrophic change during senescence of the blood vessels, an increase of diffuse lymphoid tissue about the vessels occurs in a number of organs. Lymphoid nodules are more common in the bone marrow of old than of young persons (Williams, 1939). These nodules in the marrow apparently have no pathologic significance. In the appendix the lymphoid nodules decrease with age and as a rule are not present after the age of 75 years (Stefanelli, 1936). Since this organ

is a vestigial one however it would be worthwhile to have counts of follicles at different ages made in other parts of the intestinal tract

## THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

### The Alimentary Tract

In 60 per cent of subjects past 50 years the gastric mucosa shows some alterations. Its thickness is diminished. In the pyloric region "intestinal metaplasia" is of frequent occurrence, while the fundic glands show some dedifferentiation. The lymphoid follicles are described as hyperplastic and increased numbers of mononuclear wandering cells are found in the submucosa. These age differences have been studied on autopsy material and it would be desirable to have biopsy studies if feasible. Studies on animals also are needed.

The muscle and mucosa of the intestine and particularly of the colon are said to show atrophy in old age. The appendix even in the absence of preceding inflammation is often reduced to a solid fibrous cord difficult to find at autopsy.

Portis and King (1952) studying the small intestine by systematic radiography found in 59 per cent of the older subjects a less regular outline of the mucosa. This fact had been noted by Jungmann and Cosin (1948) who had found also a generally hypertonic state of the intestine in old persons.

The influence of the aging process on the frankly pathologic conditions of the alimentary tract is discussed in Chapter 17 of this book.

### The Accessory Glands

The salivary glands in man undergo varying degrees of atrophy in old age the parenchyma being replaced to a considerable extent by adipose tissue. Another type of change occurring in the salivary glands of aged individuals is the appearance of large atypical cells singly or in groups—the so called oncocytes. Hamperl (1952) has described such cells in a number of glandular organs.

The human pancreas in old age shows an accentuation of its lobulation considerable atrophy and replacement of parenchyma



FIG. 29 Metaplasia in an interlobular duct of the pancreas of a 77 year old man ( $\times 540$ ). One small area of simple columnar epithelium is seen the remainder having become stratified squamous in type (After Andrew 1914)

by adipose tissue and in the interlobular ducts a metaplasia of the epithelial lining (Fig 29) which often changes from a simple columnar to a stratified squamous type

In the liver, some changes occur rather consistently in old age. These however do not include any considerable degree of paren-

chymal degeneration unless vascular changes are marked, nor is there any large amount of fibrotic change such as occurs in some glandular organs in senility.

The periportal spaces in old age, both in laboratory animals and in man are very often the site of a lymphocytic infiltration (Andrew Brown and Johnson, 1943). Perhaps the most interesting thing about such infiltration is that the masses of cells about the

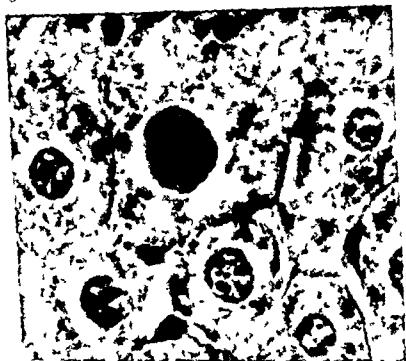


FIG. 2 10 A giant nucleus in the liver of a senile female mouse ( $\times 1200$ ). There are many nucleoli and the entire nucleus stains deeply. The cell body is seen to be much larger than that of surrounding cells. (After Andrew Brown and Johnson 1943.)

blood vessels seem actually to constitute a permanent tissue containing a number of cell types not found in the blood such as fibroblasts and hemocytoblasts (Andrew 1956b). Well formed nodules may develop.

Other changes are found in the hepatic cells themselves—not in the entire cell population but in scattered cells. Generally a few cells in each section of a lobule show hypertrophy with the nucleus particularly large and containing several times the normal number of nucleoli (Fig 2 10).





FIG. 29 Metaplasia in an interlobular duct of the pancreas of a 77 year old man ( $\times 540$ ) One small area of simple columnar epithelium is seen the remainder having become stratified squamous in type (After Andrew 1914)

by adipose tissue and in the interlobular ducts, a metaplasia of the epithelial lining (Fig 29) which often changes from a simple columnar to a stratified squamous type

In the liver, some changes occur rather consistently in old age. These however do not include any considerable degree of paren-

chymal degeneration unless vascular changes are marked nor is there any large amount of fibrotic change such as occurs in some glandular organs in senility.

The periportal spaces in old age both in laboratory animals and in man, are very often the site of a lymphocytic infiltration (Andrew Brown and Johnson 1943). Perhaps the most interesting thing about such infiltration is that the masses of cells about the



FIG. 2 10 A giant nucleus in the liver of a senile female mouse ( $\times 1200$ ). There are many nucleoli and the entire nucleus stains deeply. The cell body is seen to be much larger than that of surrounding cells. (After Andrew Brown and Johnson 1943.)

blood vessels seem actually to constitute a permanent tissue containing a number of cell types not found in the blood such as fibroblasts and hemocytoblasts (Andrew 1956b). Well formed nodules may develop.

Other changes are found in the hepatic cells themselves—not in the entire cell population but in scattered cells. Generally a few cells in each section of a lobule show hypertrophy with the nucleus particularly large and containing several times the normal number of nucleoli (Fig 2 10).

Such large nuclei often contain inclusions in the form of rounded or ovoid refractive bodies

## THE RESPIRATORY TRACT

I have mentioned in the discussion of skeletal changes some of the alterations that take place in the larynx in old age. The pharynx and palate often show a wasting of their muscular components. The palatine tonsils, while seldom completely absent are of very small size and largely replaced by fibrous tissue. In the nasal cavity and nasopharynx a dry type of chronic inflammation occurs in many old people and, perhaps as a result metaplasia of the pseudostratified ciliated epithelium to a stratified squamous type is common.

As was stated above, some parenchymal atrophy of the salivary glands occurs with age. The general dryness of the mucosa combined with muscular atrophy makes difficulty in swallowing and the accidental aspiration of food common problems in old age.

The stooped posture assumed by many old people alters the thorax as a whole. This tendency to stoop probably is due to a combination of weakened back musculature and skeletal changes. Rolleston (1932) described changes in the skeletal muscles including loss of cross striations, deposit of large fat globules among the muscle fibers and accumulation of brown pigment in the vicinity of the muscle nuclei. Among the skeletal elements the intervertebral discs are thinned and contracted. In very old age the cartilage is partly replaced by bone. Necrosis and hyalinization occur and tears of the annulus are frequent. Kountz and Alexander (1931) believe that senile emphysema is generally due to the postural changes produced by these changes in the discs. The ribs become flattened laterally and are less resilient. Thus the "senile chest" is longer anteriorly, flattened at the sides, and foreshortened posteriorly.

The larynx and trachea seem to "settle caudally" in the aged so that the bifurcation of the trachea may move downward several vertebrae. Calcification appears to be common in the trachea much less so in the bronchi (Ashoff 1938).

The lungs are so constantly exposed to potentially injurious influences that the recurring problem of assessing the relative roles of pathologic change and senile alteration is unusually difficult. There does, however, appear to be an actual senile atrophy of the lungs

in animals and man. Lungs of old subjects do not show the prompt retraction and deflation seen in those of young subjects at the autopsy table and they present less crepitation. Alveolar emphysema especially in the peripheral areas, is common in old age.

The amount of lymphoid tissue along the respiratory tract is increased in old age in contrast with the atrophy of lymphoid tissue that occurs in many parts of the body.

## THE URINARY SYSTEM

Three main types of gross changes are described as occurring in the senile human kidney: (1) atrophy, (2) capsular thickening and adhesion and (3) production of surface irregularities. Histologic changes described are: (1) glomerular alterations which range from simple congestion to hyaline or fibrous transformation, (2) changes in the tubules particularly distention and atrophy of the epithelium, (3) vascular changes most marked in the small arteries and (4) interstitial changes primarily sclerosis of cortical connective tissue. It should be emphasized that there are marked individual variations in the extent and degree of these changes in different persons. In fact it is felt by some authors (Howell and Piggott 1948) that the classical senile kidney actually is the exception rather than the rule in old persons.

Studies on the kidneys of Wistar Institute rats indicate that age changes in these animals are marked and consistent (Andrew and Pruett 1957). In senile rats quantities of colloid like material apparently plasma proteins are present in the tubules and may occur anywhere in the lumen from Bowman's capsule to the larger collecting tubules (Fig. 2-11). Aberrant cells with greatly hypertrophied nuclei occur in various segments of the nephron. They resemble the oncocytes which have been described for the salivary glands. There is in these animals little fibrosis of glomeruli and only a moderate amount of change in the arterial wall. Accumulations of lymphocytes and plasma cells and deposits of calcium appear in the adventitia of the arteries. A peculiar but clear cut fact is an increase in size of the individual glomeruli in the senile rat over that seen in the middle aged one. The basement membrane of Bowman's capsule is thicker and more pronounced and the glomerular capillaries are wider in old animals.

Such large nuclei often contain inclusions in the form of rounded or ovoid refractive bodies

## THE RESPIRATORY TRACT

I have mentioned in the discussion of skeletal changes some of the alterations that take place in the larynx in old age. The pharynx and palate often show a wasting of their muscular components. The palatine tonsils, while seldom completely absent, are of very small size and largely replaced by fibrous tissue. In the nasal cavity and nasopharynx a dry type of chronic inflammation occurs in many old people and, perhaps as a result, metaplasia of the pseudostratified ciliated epithelium to a stratified squamous type is common.

As was stated above, some parenchymal atrophy of the salivary glands occurs with age. The general dryness of the mucosa combined with muscular atrophy makes difficulty in swallowing and the accidental aspiration of food common problems in old age.

The stooped posture assumed by many old people alters the thorax as a whole. This tendency to stoop probably is due to a combination of weakened back musculature and skeletal changes. Rolleston (1932) described changes in the skeletal muscles including loss of cross striations, deposit of large fat globules among the muscle fibers and accumulation of brown pigment in the vicinity of the muscle nuclei. Among the skeletal elements the intervertebral discs are thinned and contracted. In very old age the cartilage is partly replaced by bone. Necrosis and hyalinization occur and tears of the annulus are frequent. Kountz and Alexander (1931) believe that senile emphysema is generally due to the postural changes produced by these changes in the discs. The ribs become flattened laterally and are less resilient. Thus the senile chest is longer anteriorly, flattened at the sides and foreshortened posteriorly.

The larynx and trachea seem to settle caudally in the aged so that the bifurcation of the trachea may move downward several vertebrae. Calcification appears to be common in the trachea much less so in the bronchi (Ashoff 1938).

The lungs are so constantly exposed to potentially injurious influences that the recurring problem of assessing the relative roles of pathologic change and senile alteration is unusually difficult. There does, however, appear to be in actual senile atrophy of the lungs

involutionary changes in the testis are the result of an endocrine deficiency. If spermatogenesis is continued into old age however it seems to indicate the maintenance of a good hormone level. In at least half the male population in the sixties and seventies such sperm formation is present. When it has ceased and when the testis shows degenerative change in the tubules with increasing fibrosis there remains the question as to whether the hormone level has become inadequate or whether because of intrinsic age changes the target organ the testis now refuses to respond as formerly.

The histologic changes in the testis seen most often in old age are thickening of the basement membrane of the tubules and increase of the fibrous tissue in the interstitial regions. The interstitial cells themselves the endocrine portion of the testis apparently have been inadequately studied in relation to aging of the individual. Many men remain fertile far into old age. According to Farris (1950) many cases of fertility in octogenarians are known and fertility has been demonstrated in a 94 year old man.

With the exception of the prostate gland the male secondary sexual organs have been studied but little in relation to age. The prostate shows specific histologic changes in the majority of men past 40. Nodular hyperplasia occurs so commonly that it is perhaps hardly correct to speak of it as a "disease". The primary site of proliferation appears to be the periurethral stroma with the epithelium of the gland becoming involved secondarily. While the etiology of prostatic hypertrophy is obscure a disturbance of the androgen-estrogen balance is suspected of being the principal cause.

## Female

In the aging female the menopause comes as a relatively dramatic phase marking the end of the period of active cyclic growth and change in the reproductive system. As follicles cease to develop fibrotic change occurs in the stroma of the ovary. The residual structures in the aged human ovary are masses of hyaline and collagenous connective tissue. Yet stagnation and fibrosis are not the only aspects of the aging process for the germinal epithelium and the epithelium of the ovarian rete tubules often exhibit prolif

Very few studies have been made on age changes in parts of the urinary tract other than the kidney, but it seems probable that tissue elements in the walls of the urinary tract show some of the

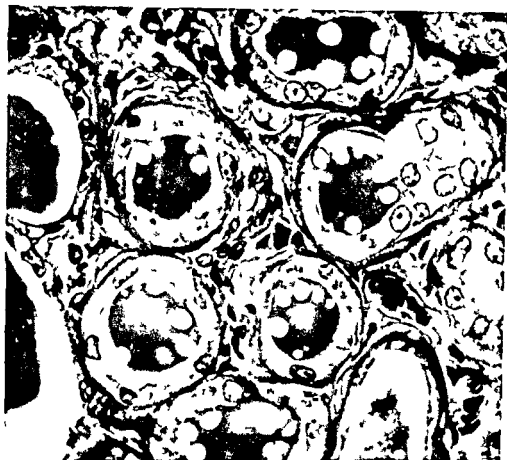


FIG. 211 Tubules in the medulla of the kidney of an 1170 day old female albino rat ( $\times 470$ ) A dense appearing material of colloid appearance is present in the lumen of most of the tubules (After Andrew and Pruett 1957)

atrophic and fibrotic alterations so commonly associated with aging

## THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

### Male

In spite of the known close relationship between the hypophysis and the gonads there is no adequate evidence that in old age

involutionary changes in the testis are the result of an endocrine deficiency. If spermatogenesis is continued into old age however it seems to indicate the maintenance of a good hormone level. In at least half the male population in the sixties and seventies such sperm formation is present. When it has ceased and when the testis shows degenerative change in the tubules with increasing fibrosis there remains the question as to whether the hormone level has become inadequate or whether because of intrinsic age changes the target organ the testis now refuses to respond as formerly.

The histologic changes in the testis seen most often in old age are thickening of the basement membrane of the tubules and increase of the fibrous tissue in the interstitial regions. The interstitial cells themselves the endocrine portion of the testis apparently have been inadequately studied in relation to aging of the individual. Many men remain fertile far into old age. According to Farris (1950) many cases of fertility in octogenarians are known and fertility has been demonstrated in a 94 year old man.

With the exception of the prostate gland the male secondary sexual organs have been studied but little in relation to age. The prostate shows specific histologic changes in the majority of men past 40. Nodular hyperplasia occurs so commonly that it is perhaps hardly correct to speak of it as a disease. The primary site of proliferation appears to be the periurethral stroma with the epithelium of the gland becoming involved secondarily. While the etiology of prostatic hypertrophy is obscure a disturbance of the androgen-estrogen balance is suspected of being the principal cause.

## Female

In the aging female the menopause comes as a relatively dramatic phase marking the end of the period of active cyclic growth and change in the reproductive system. As follicles cease to develop fibrotic change occurs in the stroma of the ovary. The residual structures in the aged human ovary are masses of hyaline and collagenous connective tissue. Yet stagnation and fibrosis are not the only aspects of the aging process for the germinal epithelium and the epithelium of the ovarian rete tubules often exhibit prolif



erative changes, become projections

As the primary sex epithelial linings of the to cyclic changes. The undergo fibrotic changes of their epithelial lining thin, while the vaginal co presenting less resistance and vaginal outlet to become vulvitis

### THE ENDO

The cellular changes described are slight. They include some eosinophils and slight fibrosis in. Payne (1949) has shown very slight alterations leading to death of large some degenerative changes occur in cells

In the thyroid gland the chief changes apparently following some parenchymal cells and the appearance of foci of hyperplasia of various sizes

In the adrenal gland also degeneration has been shown (Payne, 1949; Jayne 1957) primarily in the medulla (Verkle 1947)

Only one group of workers in recent times (Paris, and Benjamin 1950) seems to have attempted to study senescence by means of hormones. They used with estrogenic, androgenic and thyroid hormone that, while some rejuvenative effects may be obtained, there are many dangerous aspects because of our lack of understanding the fundamental nature of senile changes. Harmful effects occurring after treatment were depression, myocardial lesions and the development of tumours in the liver, adrenals, thyroid, parathyroids and pancreas. The authors warned against hasty application

to 40 years. While it has been suggested that in the ear, particularly a change in the articulation of the oval window, may play some part the changes are very great that the deafness of aging is in the inner ear. Various authors assign causes to (1) the stria vascularis and (2) the basilar membrane and (3) the nerves. The degeneration of cells in the cochlear ganglion is considered changes in the ganglion proceeding from the organ of Corti in the brain are believed to undergo changes in all these portions of the ear. These are factors in the impairment of hearing but it is perhaps too early to consider them as primary or secondary. Another factor in the cochlear ganglion is

### THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

The nervous system occupies a large part of the ageing process. (1) The nervous system will degenerate with the rather rapid rate of the nervous system. (2) There are other types of degeneration in the life span.

In respect, there is a study in the literature. The page is 100.

perimental results for therapeutic treatment—a warning which is particularly applicable in the field of aging

## THE SENSE ORGANS

The individual end organs of sensation in man are of many and varied types. With the exception of the eye and ear, only a beginning has been made in the study of their changes with age.

Most of the studies on the sensory organs of wide distribution such as those in the skin, bone and ligaments have been physiologic in nature. Green and Bender (1953) have shown that the percentage of error in cutaneous tactile perception is definitely increased in the aged. They used the method of applying stimuli simultaneously to the face and the back of the hand, asking the patient with eyes closed to localize them. Birren (1947) concluded that the vibration sensibility of bone is diminished with age. The relationship of these functional alterations to possible anatomic changes has not been ascertained.

The threshold of taste for various substances has been shown to be raised in old age. Mochizuki (1939) carried out a study on the foliate papillae of Japanese subjects and found a reduction in the number of taste buds with age. Smith (1942) found evidence of atrophy in the olfactory fibers of older human subjects.

For the human eye, the phenomena of cataract and of macular degeneration constitute particularly serious alterations in the aged.

The aqueous and vitreous humors have a physicochemical structure which is susceptible to a loss of equilibrium with the passage of time by mechanisms that are still obscure. Changes in the colloidal phase of these humors and in the crystalline lens lead to a more opaque condition. The arcus senilis, an opaque ring at the corneal margin, is a common sign of senility.

The special vascular arrangement of the retina leaves its outer layers—the layer of pigmented epithelium and the layer of rods and cones—without capillaries. They receive their nourishment from capillaries of the choroid coat which appear to be particularly delicate and subject to injury in the region of the macula—a susceptibility that explains the great frequency of degeneration in this region of the eye.

The ear begins to show functional impairment at a relatively early

erative changes, becoming hyperplastic and forming papilliferous projections

As the primary sex organ, the ovary, ceases its activity, the epithelial linings of the uterus and vagina are no longer subject to cyclic changes. These structures decrease in size, their walls undergo fibrotic changes, and there is an end to the cyclic changes of their epithelial linings. The vaginal epithelium becomes very thin, while the vaginal contents change from acid to alkaline thus presenting less resistance to infection. The tendency of the vulva and vaginal outlet to become dry and keratinized may lead to senile vulvitis.

### THE ENDOCRINE ORGANS

The cellular changes described for the human pituitary gland are slight. They include some vacuolization of basophils and eosinophils and slight fibrosis in old age. In the fowl, however, Payne (1949) has shown very striking changes, with mitochondrial alterations leading to death of large numbers of basophils, while some degenerative changes occur in all three types of epithelial cells.

In the thyroid gland the chief changes are fibrotic alterations apparently following some parenchymal degeneration in the follicles and the appearance of foci of hyperplastic change which lead to adenomas of various sizes.

In the adrenal gland also degeneration of epithelial elements has been shown (Payne 1949; Payne 1957), along with hyperplasia primarily in the medulla (Verkel 1947).

Only one group of workers in recent times (Korenchevsky, Paris, and Benjamin, 1950), seems to have attempted a treatment of senescence by means of hormones. They used progesterone along with estrogenic, androgenic and thyroid hormones. They conclude that, while some rejuvenative effects may be obtained, the process has many dangerous aspects because of our lack of knowledge concerning the fundamental nature of senile changes. Among the harmful effects occurring after treatment were depression of thyroid activity, myocardial lesions and the development of adenoma-like structures in the liver, adrenals, thyroid, parathyroids, thymus and pancreas. The authors warned against hasty application of ex-

meninges (pia mater and arachnoid) become thickened and tend to adhere to one another and to the surface of the brain. Hypertrophy of arachnoid villi may occur. Deposits of calcium salts are frequent in the meninges of older persons although it is probable that in many instances these may be pathologic phenomena. In the senile brain the lateral ventricles are often increased in size and in

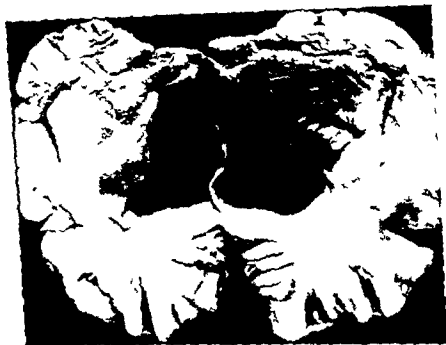


FIG. 2-12. Cross section of the brain of a subject with senile dementia showing atrophy of the cerebral cortex with corresponding expansion of the lateral ventricles. Lesser degrees of cerebral atrophy are common in the "normal" senile brain (After Andrews, 1958).

cases of senile dementia this change may be marked (Fig. 2-12). It apparently is due to atrophy of the brain substance.

Under the microscope we find that degenerative changes predominate in the aging human nervous system. These include the accumulation of inert material such as pigment and fat (Fig. 2-13); a decrease in Nissl material, the basophilic substance in the cytoplasm which seems to be essential to the functioning of nerve cells; a change in the staining quality of the nucleus so that the "nuclear sap" is less clear and the nucleolus less distinctly stained,

age generally by 40 to 45 years. While it has been suggested that alterations in the middle ear particularly a change in the articulation of the stapes bone at the oval window, may play some part, the weight of evidence now is very great that the deafness of aging is due primarily to change in the inner ear. Various authors assign the leading role to alterations in (1) the stria vascularis and labyrinthine secretion (2) the basilar membrane and (3) the nerves themselves. Some hold that the degeneration of cells in the cochlear ganglion is primary, others consider changes in the ganglion secondary to those in the fibers proceeding from the organ of Corti. Finally, the cochlear nuclei in the brain are believed to undergo degeneration. Probably some changes in all these portions of the inner ear and the nervous pathways are factors in the impairment of hearing that comes with senescence, but it is perhaps too early to attempt to designate the roles as primary or secondary. Anatomically, evidence of degeneration in the cochlear ganglion is seen most clearly.

### THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

For two chief reasons the nervous system occupies a position of special importance in the study of the aging process. (1) changes in this governing and communicating system will affect many organs in other systems and interfere with the rather precisely set balance of function. (2) the units of the nervous system, the nerve cells or neurons, differ from most other types of cells in that they do not reproduce and hence have a life span barring premature death as long as that of the individual.

Because of its unique character in these respects the nervous system has long been an object for anatomic study in relation to the aging process and many investigators have written on this subject. Their contributions deal not only with the nervous system of man but also with those of the apes, dogs, guinea pigs, rats, mice, and other animals, and even with the nervous systems of insects such as the honeybee and the housefly.

Gross changes in the brain of man include some loss of weight with an atrophy or narrowing of the cerebral gyri and a widening and deepening of the sulci. The color of the gray matter is said to be deeper in many older brains than in young ones. The lepto-

and finally, the death and dissolution of some of the neurons in different parts of the nervous system the microglia and oligodendroglia often tending to proliferate and to aid in removal of debris



FIG. 214 Multinucleate cells from the supraoptic nuclei of aged subjects (Approximately  $\times 1000$ ) (Top) Binucleate cells showing differences in the two nuclei (Middle) Binucleate cell in the first two pictures different foci of a trinucleate cell in the last three pictures (Bottom) A cell with four nuclei shown at different foci (From Andrew 1956a after Buttar Brentano 1954)

It would be wrong however to portray the microscopic changes with age as being of a simple type or uniformly present throughout the nervous system Oskar and Cecile Vogt (1946) have contributed much to this field and have demonstrated clearly that nerve cells in different parts of the brain seem to age, not only at different rates but even in rather specific ways depending upon



FIG. 2.13 Large pyramidal cells of layer V of the motor cortex ( $\times 2000$ ) (*Left*) From a 30 year old human subject. No pigment is visible. (*Right*) From an 81 year old subject. A large mass of pigment has altered the shape of the cell. (After Andrew 1955c courtesy of Professor Oskar Vogt.)

- special reference to the occurrence of oncocytes in senility *Am J Anat* 83 157 1949
- 8 ANDREW W Age changes in the skin of Wistar Institute rats with particular reference to the epidermis *Am J Anat* 89 283 1951
- 9 ANDREW W *Cellular Changes with Age* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas 1952
- 10 ANDREW W The anatomy and histology of aging skin *J Soc Cosmetic Chemists* 6 299 1953a
- 11 ANDREW W Amitotic division in senile tissues as a probable means of self preservation of cells *J Gerontol* 10 1 1955b
- 12 ANDREW W Structural alterations with aging in the nervous system *Assoc Research Nervous Mental Disease Proc* 35 129 1955c
- 13 ANDREW W "The Mitochondria of the Neuron" in BOURNE C H and DANIELLI J F (eds) *International Review of Cytology* New York Academic Press 1956i v 5 p 147
- 14 ANDREW W Mesenchymal cell aggregations in various organs in old age *J Gerontol* 11 435 1956b (Abstract)
- 15 ANDREW W and ANDREW N V Age changes in the deep cervical lymph nodes of 100 Wistar Institute rats *Am J Anat* 82 105 1948
- 16 ANDREW W and ANDREW N V An age difference in proportions of cell types in the epidermis of abdominal skin of the rat *J Gerontol* 11 8 1956
- 17 ANDREW W BROWN H M and JOHNSON J B Senile changes in the liver of mouse and man with special reference to the similarity of the nuclear alterations *Am J Anat* 72 199 1943
- 18 ANDREW W and INLETT D Senile changes in the kidneys of Wistar Institute rats *Am J Anat* 100 51 1957
- 19 VITZ L Zur Pathologie des elastischen Gewebes der Haut *Arch f Dermat u Syph* 118 465 1913
- 20 ANDREY I Zur normalen und pathologischen Anatomie des Greisenalters Berlin Urban und Schwarzenberg 1936
- 21 BINNETT C A WAISE H and BAKER W Changes in the knee joint at various ages with particular reference to the nature and development of degenerative joint disease New York The Commonwealth Fund 1942
- 22 BIRN B A Muscular dystrophy in aging rats *J Gerontol* 11 134 1956
- 23 BRIDGES J F Adrenergic sensitivity in the aged *J Gerontol* 2 267 1947
- 24 BRUNNER M Die elastische Spannung der Haut und deren Beziehung zum Oedem *Ztschr exp Pathol Therap* 1 163 1905
- 25 BUCCHIANI L and LIMA S Trasformazioni nella struttura dei muscoli volontari dell'uomo nella senescenza *Arch ital anat e embriol* 33 110 1934
- 26 BUTTLAR-BRENTANO K von Zur Lebensgeschichte des Nucleus basalis internomillaris supropticus und paracentricularis unter normalen und pathogenen Bedingungen *J Hirnforsch* 1 337 1954
- 27 CAMPER W A investigation of the effects of parenteral and topical ad



their location and biologic tendencies. Particularly interesting is the observation by the Vogts and one of their disciples (Buttler Brentano 1954) that in some parts of the brain such as the supra optic and paraventricular nuclei of the hypothalamus relatively little degenerative change occurs and there seem to be in fact certain defensive or reactive changes by nerve cells which may serve to prevent degeneration. Thus many cells in these regions show a multiplication of nucleoli so that in later life they may be double, triple, quadruple or even sextuple in particular cells in the senile brain. In other cells the nucleus itself may divide (Andrew 1956a) and cells with two, three or four nuclei have been found (Fig. 2.14).

Studies on the nervous system have not been confined to the brain and spinal cord and age changes of various types, apparently all degenerative in nature, have been described in the sensory and autonomic ganglia. They resemble those seen in the central nervous system with the amphyocytes or capsular cells playing in the ganglia the role assumed by the microglia and oligodendroglia in the brain and spinal cord.

## REFERENCES

1. AMBROSIO R. and BAIKATI A. Studi sulle trasformazioni delle cartilagini dell'uomo nell'incremento e nella senescenza. I. Cartilagini ialine. *Z. Zellforsch. u. mikroskop. Anat.* 20: 143, 1933.
2. AMBROSIO R. and BAIKATI A. Studi sulle trasformazioni delle cartilagini dell'uomo nell'incremento e nella senescenza. II. Cartilagini elastiche. *Z. Zellforsch. u. mikroskop. Anat.* 20: 459, 1934.
3. AMBROSIO R. and BAIKATI A. Studi sulle trasformazioni delle cartilagini dell'uomo nell'incremento e nella senescenza. III. Cartilagini fibrose. *Z. Zellforsch. u. mikroskop. Anat.* 21: 115, 1934b.
4. AMBROSIO R. and BAIKATI A. Processi di ricostruzione e di riassorbimento nella sostanza compatta delle ossa dell'uomo. Ricerche su cento soggetti della nascita sino a tarda età. *Z. Zellforsch. u. mikroskop. Anat.* 21: 439, 1936.
5. ANDREW W. Senile changes in the pineal glands of Wistar Institute rats and of man with special regard to the similarity of locale and cavity formation. *Am. J. Anat.* 71: 97, 1941.
6. ANDREW W. Age changes in the vascular architecture and cell content in the spleens of 100 Wistar Institute rats including comparisons with human material. *Am. J. Anat.* 79: 1, 1946.
7. ANDREW W. Age changes in parotid glands of Wistar Institute rats with

- 46 JAYNE E F Histochemical and degenerative changes in the adrenal cortex of the rat with age *J Gerontol* 12 2 1957
- 47 JACGMANN H J and COSIN L Radiology of the small intestine in old age *J Gerontol* 3 397 1948 (Abstract)
- 48 KELEMEN G The palatine tonsil in the sixth decade *Ann Otol Rhin & Laryng* 52 419 1943
- 49 KIRK E Quantitative determinations of the skin lipid secretion in middle aged and old individuals *J Gerontol* 3 251 1948
- 50 KIRK E and KJORNIS S A Quantitative measurements of the elastic properties of the skin and subcutaneous tissue in young and old individuals *J Gerontol* 4 273 1949
- 51 KNOBLOCH H Fingernagelwachstum und Alter *Z Altersforsch* 5 357 1951
- 52 KOUNTZ W B and ALEXANDER A I Emphysema *Medicine* 13 251 1934
- 53 KORENCHENSKY V PARIS S K and BENJAMIN B Treatment of senescence in female rats with sex and thyroid hormones *J Gerontol* 5 120 1950
- 54 KROEMHOLZ E B and LIPPINCOTT S W The postmortem weight of the "normal" human spleen at different ages *Am J M Sc* 197 344 1939
- 55 KUTLENBECK H Some histologic age changes in the rat's brain and their relationship to comparable changes in the human brain *Confinia neuro* 14 329 1954
- 56 MA C K and COWDREY E V Aging of elastic tissue in human skin *J Gerontol* 5 203 1950
- 57 MACKENNOV P C B Variations with age in the number of active palmar digital sweat glands *J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat* 17 124 1954
- 58 MOCIMIZUKI Y Studies on papilla foliata of Japanese number of papillae foliatae *Okajimas Folia Anat Japon* 18 337 1939
- 59 NOBACK G J Correlation of stages of ossification of the laryngeal cartilages and morphologic age changes in other tissues and organs *J Gerontol* 4 329 1949 (Abstract)
- 60 PAYNE F Changes in the endocrine glands of the fowl with age *J Gerontol* 4 193 1949
- 61 PINEY A The anatomy of the bone marrow with special reference to the distribution of the red marrow *Brit M J* 2 792 1922
- 62 PORTIS S A and LA C J G The gastrointestinal tract in the aged *J.A.M.A.* 148 1073 1932
- 63 ROLLESTON H *Medical Aspects of Old Age* (ed 2) London Macmillan & Co 1932
- 64 SMITH C G Age incidence of atrophy of olfactory nerves in man a contribution to the study of the process of ageing *J Comp Neurol* 77 559 1912
- 65 STAVILLI C J Appendicite acuta nei soggetti de eta e nel vecchio *Policlinico (se chir)* 47 844 1936

- ministration of steroids on the elastic properties of senile skin *J Gerontol* 5 17 1950
- 28 CHIEFFI M "Cosmetological Aspects of Ageing" in LANSING A I (ed), *Coudrys Problems of Ageing* (ed 3) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company, 1952 Ch 34 pp 909-923
  - 29 COBB W M "Skeleton" in LANSING A I (ed) *Coudrys Problems of Ageing* (ed 3) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1952 Ch 30 pp 791-856
  - 30 COOPER Z K "Ageing of the Skin" in LANSING A I (ed) *Coudrys Problems of Ageing* (ed 3) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1952, Ch 29, pp 764-790
  - 31 COWDRI E V and ANDREW W Some cytochemical and cytologic features of senile keratosis *J Gerontol* 5 97 1950
  - 32 DAWSON A B and SPARK C The fibrous transformation and architecture of the costal cartilage of the albino rat *Am J Anat* 42 109 1928
  - 33 DENZ F A Age changes in lymph nodes *J Path & Bact* 59 575 1947
  - 34 DICK J C Observations on the elastic tissue of skin with a note on the reticular liver at the junction of the dermis and epidermis *J Anat* 81 201 1947
  - 35 DOGLIOTTI G C La struttura del miocardio dell'uomo nei vari individui e nelle varie età ricerche di anatomia microscopica del miocardio su 200 cuori normali in rapporto alla senescenza ed alla costituzione individuale *Ztschr Anat* 96 680 1931
  - 36 EJMR I Studien über die Histologie der menschlichen Haut III Mitteilung Über die regionären und Altersunterschiede der verschiedenen Hautelemente mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Altersveränderung der elastischen Fasern *Jap J Dermat & Urol* 41 8 1937
  - 37 EVANS R COWDRI E V and NIELSON P E Ageing of human skin I Influence of dermal shrinkage on appearance of the epidermis in young and old fixed tissues *Anat Rec* 86 545 1943
  - 38 FARRIS E J *Human Fertility and Problems of the Male* White Plains N Y The Authors Press Inc 1950 p 94
  - 39 GRAVES W W Observations on age changes in the scapula *Am J Phys Anthropol* 5 21 1922
  - 40 GRIFFIN M A and BENDER M B Cutaneous perception in the aged *AMA Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 69 577 1953
  - 41 HAMPEL H Über das Vorkommen von Onkozyten in Gallenblase und Niere *Ztschr mikroskop-anat Forsch* 59 300 1952
  - 42 HARRIS H A *Bone Growth in Health and Disease* London Oxford University Press 1933
  - 43 HIMMEL J M Zur Kenntnis der senilen Degeneration der Haut *Arch Dermatol u Syphilis* 64 47 1903
  - 44 HOWELL T H and PICCOTT A P The kidney in old age a preliminary communication *J Gerontol* 3 121 1948
  - 45 JAYNE F P Cytochemical studies of age pigments in the human heart *J Gerontol* 5 319 1950

- 46 JAYNE E P Histochemical and degenerative changes in the adrenal cortex of the rat with age *J Gerontol* 12 2 1937
- 47 JUNGMAHY H J and COSBY I Radiology of the small intestine in old age *J Gerontol* 3 397 1948 (Abstract)
- 48 HELENIEN C The palatine tonsil in the sixth decade *Ann Otol Rhin & Laryng* 52 419 1943
- 49 KIRK E Quantitative determinations of the skin lipid secretion in middle aged and old individuals *J Gerontol* 3 251 1948
- 50 KIRK E and KJORNING S A Quantitative measurements of the elastic properties of the skin and subcutaneous tissue in young and old individuals *J Gerontol* 4 273 1949
- 51 KNOBLOCH H Fingernagelwachstum und Alter *Z Altersforsch* 5 357 1951
- 52 KOUNTZ W B and ALEXANDER A L Emphysema *Medicine* 13 251 1934
- 53 KORENCHENSKY V PARIS S K and BENJAMIN B Treatment of senes cence in female rats with sex and thyroid hormones *J Gerontol* 5 120 1950
- 54 KRUMHABER E B and LIPINCOTT S W The postmortem weight of the "normal" human spleen at different ages *Am J M Sc* 197 344 1939
- 55 KUILENBECK H Some histologic age changes in the rat's brain and their relationship to comparable changes in the human brain *Confinia neurol* 14 329 1954
- 56 MA C K and COWDREY E V Aging of elastic tissue in human skin *J Gerontol* 5 203 1950
- 57 MACKINNON F C B Variations with age in the number of active palmar digital sweat glands *J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat* 17 124 1954
- 58 MOCHIZUKI Y Studies on papilla foliata of Japanese number of papillae foliatae *Okajimas Folia Anat Japon* 18 337 1939
- 59 NOBACK G J Correlation of stages of ossification of the laryngeal cartilages and morphologic age changes in other tissues and organs *J Gerontol* 4 329 1949 (Abstract)
- 60 PAYNE F Changes in the endocrine glands of the fowl with age *J Gerontol* 4 193 1949
- 61 PENEY A The anatomy of the bone marrow with special reference to the distribution of the red marrow *Brit M J* 2 792 1922
- 62 FORTIS S A and KING J G The gastrointestinal tract in the aged *J A M A* 148 1073 1952
- 63 ROLLESTON H *Medical Aspects of Old Age* (ed 2) London Macmillan & Co 1932
- 64 SARTRE C G Age incidence of atrophy of olfactory nerves in man a contribution to the study of the process of ageing *J Comp Neurol* 77 589 1942
- 65 STEFANELLI C L Appendicite acuta nei soggetti de eta e nel vecchio *Policlinico (sez chir)* 43 644 1936

ministration of steroids on the elastic properties of senile skin *J Gerontol* 5 17 1950

- 28 CHIEFFI M "Cosmetological Aspects of Ageing" in LANSING A I (ed) *Coudry's Problems of Ageing* (ed 3) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1952 Ch 34 pp 909-923
- 29 COBB W M "Skeleton" in LANSING A I (ed) *Coudry's Problems of Ageing* (ed 3) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company, 1952 Ch 30 pp 791-856
- 30 COOPER Z K "Ageing of the Skin" in LANSING A I (ed) *Coudry's Problems of Ageing* (ed 3) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1952 Ch 29 pp 764-790
- 31 COWDRI E V and ANDREW, W "Some cytochemical and cytologic features of senile keratosis" *J Gerontol* 5 97 1950
- 32 DAWSON, A B and SPARK C "The fibrous transformation and architecture of the costal cartilage of the albino rat" *Am J Anat* 42 109 1928
- 33 DENZ F A "Age changes in lymph nodes" *J Path & Bact* 59 575 1947
- 34 DICK J C "Observations on the elastic tissue of skin with a note on the reticular layer at the junction of the dermis and epidermis" *J Anat* 81 201 1947
- 35 DOGLIOTTI G C "La struttura del miocardio dell'uomo nei vari individui e nelle varie età ricerche di anatomia microscopica del miocardio su 200 cuori normali in rapporto alla senescenza ed alla costituzione individuale" *Ztschr Anat* 96 680 1931
- 36 EJIMA I "Studien über die Histologie der menschlichen Haut III Mitteilung Über die regionären und Altersunterschiede der verschiedenen Hautelemente mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Altersveränderung der elastischen Fasern" *Jap J Dermat & Urol* 41 8 1937
- 37 EVANS R, COWDRI E V and NIELSON P E "Ageing of human skin I Influence of dermal shrinkage on appearance of the epidermis in young and old fixed tissues" *Anat Rec* 86 545 1943
- 38 FARRIS E J *Human Fertility and Problems of the Male* White Plains N Y The Authors Press Inc 1950 p 91
- 39 GRAVES W W "Observations on age changes in the scapula" *Am J Phys Anthropol* 5 21 1922
- 40 GREEN M A and BENDER, M B "Cutaneous perception in the aged" *AMA Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 69 577 1953
- 41 HANFRIE H "Über das Vorkommen von Onkozyten in Collenblase und Niere" *Ztschr mikroskop-anat Forsch* 59 300 1952
- 42 HARRIS H A *Bone Growth in Health and Disease* London Oxford University Press 1933
- 43 HIMMEL J M "Zur Kenntnis der senilen Degeneration der Haut" *Arch Dermatol u Syphilis* 64 17 1903
- 44 HOWELL T H and PICCOTT A P "The kidney in old age: a preliminary communication" *J Gerontol* 3 124 1948
- 45 JAYNE F P "Cytochemical studies of age pigments in the human heart" *J Gerontol* 5 319 1950

## CHAPTER 3

# Diagnosis in Older Patients

WINCATE M JOHNSON

The purpose of this chapter is not to discuss the bedside diagnosis of acute conditions such as influenza gallstone colic or a fractured hip but to outline the more comprehensive diagnostic survey needed for patients who come to the doctor's office for evaluation of their physical condition. Fortunately the custom of having periodic physical check ups especially after middle life is becoming more prevalent. In the course of building a stable practice the physician will save time in the long run by allowing enough time with every new patient to obtain a complete history and perform a thorough physical examination and by recording *and filing* the findings in a permanent form. Such a record will prove invaluable on the patient's subsequent visits.

The history and physical examination are always fundamental to making a diagnosis but their value increases as the patient ages. While the basic principles of history taking and physical examination apply to all mature individuals geriatric practice calls for certain differences in emphasis and approach that will be discussed in this chapter.

### THE HISTORY

In medical practice at its best no one factor is more important than the rapport between doctor and patient. This factor is particularly significant when one is dealing with older patients. A few minutes in the first interview devoted to putting the patient at ease is time well spent. Unless the patient is too senile to give intelligent answers it is almost always better not to have a third person pres-

- 66 THURNCER J M and COOPER Z K The mitotic index of the human epidermis the site of maximum cell proliferation and the development of the epidermal pattern *Anat Rec* 106 255 1950 (Abstract)
- 67 TODD T W Age changes in the pubic bone I The male white pubis *Am J Phys Anthropol* 3 285 1920
- 68 TODD T W Age changes in the pubic bone II The pubis of the male Negro-white male hybrid III The pubis of the white female IV The pubis of the female Negro-white hybrid *Am J Phys Anthropol* 11 1921
- 69 TODD T W Thickness of the male white cranium *Anat Rec* 27 245 1924
- 70 UANA P C *The Histopathology of the Diseases of the Skin* New York The Macmillan Company 1896 pp 976-984
- 71 VERNANT P Le cœur du vieillard in BINET L and BOURNIEU I *Précis de Gerontologie* Paris Masson et Cie 1935 Ch VIII
- 72 VOET C and VOET O Aging of nerve cells *Nature* 158 504 1946
- 73 VOLARELLI F Sulla istologia e sulla pitogenesi delle rughe *Atti Accad fisiocrit Siena* 8 649 1920
- 74 WILLIAMS R J The lymphoid nodules of human bone marrow *Am J Path* 15 377 1939
- 75 YAKEL E H Medullary hyperplasia of the adrenal gland in aged Wistar albino and gray Norway rats *Arch Path* 44 71 1947

After the chief complaints have been enumerated preferably in order of importance they are taken up one by one. Rare indeed is the patient who comes to the doctor's office with only one complaint!

It is often difficult to obtain from the patient an accurate description of his pain but he should at least be asked whether the onset was sudden or gradual what time of day it is felt most what relation it bears to meals whether it is influenced by exertion or by position and whether it is steady or intermittent burning, throbbing or a dull ache. It often helps also to know what means the patient uses to control the pain.

The time element is important in the history. For example how long has a digestive condition lasted? Is it worse before or after meals and does the time of day play a part? Did some emotional trauma precede the onset of digestive symptoms?

Even though a detailed past history is not necessary for the diagnosis of an acute and clear cut illness such as influenza or herpes zoster it is well to obtain such a history including a review of the systems at the first interview with every new patient, particularly if the patient is past middle age. Every doctor eventually works out his own method of obtaining such a history and follows it almost automatically. Such devices as the Cornell questionnaire to be filled out by the patient before he sees the doctor may save a great deal of time. There is some basis however for a recent cartoon portraying an old man who is protesting to the doctor's secretary against filling out such a form on the ground that it is the doctor's job to make the diagnosis. The chief disadvantage of such a questionnaire is that one loses the opportunity to note the patient's reaction to questions. Often a momentary hesitation an overly enthusiastic reply tremor of the hands or lips or even a few tears will tell far more than a page of written answers.

The same objection applies to relying entirely on the history taken by a house officer when the patient is in the hospital. Experience counts more in taking the history than in any other part of the diagnostic study. When the Cornell questionnaire or a house officer's history is used for the patient's record the senior physician should at least check carefully the more important parts of the history and question the patient again about them. Often he will be rewarded by valuable additional information.



ent during an office interview—not even the spouse (often especially not the spouse) The intimate doctor-patient relationship is best nurtured without outside interference It is often helpful however, to check the patient's history with members of the family especially when he shows evidence of failing memory

The relative position of the patient and doctor during the interview seems a minor point but it is an important one The patient's chair should be placed at the end of the physician's desk facing a good light (Fig 31) To have him sit on the opposite side of the desk puts a psychological as well as a physical barrier between doctor and patient.



FIG. 31 Diagram showing the relative positions of doctor and patient during the office interview. A. Wrong way. B. Right way.

The history is of prime importance The history of an elderly patient is naturally longer than that of a younger one since there is so much more ground to cover It is usually begun by listing the patient's chief complaints Instead of using the word "complaints" however, it is more tactful to ask, "What is bothering you?" or "What symptoms do you have?"

Elderly patients are even more prone to ramble in giving the history than are the younger ones Nevertheless they should be allowed to tell their story in their own words although it is often necessary for the physician to guide the conversation in the proper direction by asking key questions Often the first complaint offered is not the most important one

After the chief complaints have been enumerated, preferably in order of importance they are taken up one by one. Rare indeed is the patient who comes to the doctor's office with only one complaint!

It is often difficult to obtain from the patient an accurate description of his pain but he should at least be asked whether the onset was sudden or gradual what time of day it is felt most, what relation it bears to meals whether it is influenced by exertion or by position and whether it is steady or intermittent, burning, throbbing or a dull ache. It often helps also to know what means the patient uses to control the pain.

The time element is important in the history. For example how long has a digestive condition lasted? Is it worse before or after meals and does the time of day play a part? Did some emotional trauma precede the onset of digestive symptoms?

Even though a detailed past history is not necessary for the diagnosis of an acute and clear cut illness such as influenza or herpes zoster it is well to obtain such a history including a review of the systems at the first interview with every new patient particularly if the patient is past middle age. Every doctor eventually works out his own method of obtaining such a history and follows it almost automatically. Such devices as the Cornell questionnaire to be filled out by the patient before he sees the doctor may save a great deal of time. There is some basis however for a recent cartoon portraying an old man who is protesting to the doctor's secretary against filling out such a form on the ground that it is the doctor's job to make the diagnosis. The chief disadvantage of such a questionnaire is that one loses the opportunity to note the patient's reaction to questions. Often a momentary hesitation an overly enthusiastic reply tremor of the hands or lips or even a few tears will tell far more than a page of written answers.

The same objection applies to relying entirely on the history taken by a house officer when the patient is in the hospital. Experience counts more in taking the history than in any other part of the diagnostic study. When the Cornell questionnaire or a house officer's history is used for the patient's record the senior physician should at least check carefully the more important parts of the history and question the patient again about them. Often he will be rewarded by valuable additional information.

Many elaborate forms have been devised for recording the history and physical examination. Their multiplicity suggests that none of them is perfect. Many doctors use a 5 by 8 card which may be preferred when time is at a premium and the patient's problems are comparatively simple. Others prefer the wide-open spaces of blank sheets of paper.

By the free use of abbreviations the history can be recorded while the patient is giving the information with no loss of time. Most doctors soon formulate their own systems of speed writing. In my own system, for example "M 40 yrs" or "M 1910" means married 40 years or married in 1910. "D G" means digestion good. "B R" means bowels regular. "B C" bowels constipated. "Noct 0" that the patient does not have to void during the night. "Noct 1" that he has to void once. If the history is to be used by anyone other than the physician recording it, it will usually be necessary for him to rewrite it or dictate it to a secretary after the patient's visit.

At the risk of being tedious and dogmatic, I will list what I consider the most important information to be obtained from the older patient.

*Chief complaints* (List and discuss these.)

*Family history* (This may be obtained at this point or later in the interview.)

Ages of parents at death and causes of death

Number of brothers and sisters living and their state of health

Number of brothers and sisters dead and causes of death

Hereditary diseases particularly mental illness in any near relatives

(The patient may be asked for information about grandparents but too often this is unknown or unreliable.)

*Past history*

Operations with dates if possible

Serious illnesses and childhood diseases with dates if possible

Menopause date and character (stormy or otherwise)

*Marital history*

Date of marriage

Number of children

State of spouse's health if living date and cause of death if deceased

Dates of subsequent marriages if any (If the patient is divorced he may be questioned about the cause for divorce here or later in the interview )

Sexual relations (The patient should be asked tactfully if they have been or still are satisfactory )

### *Socioeconomic history*

Working hours

Living conditions whether the patient is living in his own home or with someone else whether or not his home life is happy

### *Review of systems*

If there is anything noteworthy about the skin or about the eyes ears nose or mouth it will usually be elicited in the chief complaints and the physical examination

- 1 *The respiratory system* Do you have frequent colds persistent cough or wheezing?"
- 2 *The heart* "Are you short of breath? Do you have pain in your chest with exertion or after a heavy meal? Do your ankles swell? Do you have palpitation? Do you have to prop up in bed or sit up to breathe more easily?"
- 3 *The gastrointestinal system* "How is your appetite? Are your bowels regular or constipated? What laxatives do you take and how often? Is your digestion good? Do you get a balanced diet?" (Often it is well to ask in detail about what is eaten at each meal or one may ask the patient if he eats enough meat green vegetables and fruit and how much milk he drinks )
- 4 *The genitourinary system* Do you have to get up at night to empty your bladder? Do you have any difficulty in doing so? Have you had any attacks of frequency and urgency? Has there been any vaginal bleeding or discharge?"
- 5 *The nervous system* Do you have headaches if so how often? Are you dizzy? Do you have ringing in the ears? Do you have trouble in sleeping? Do you have difficulty in remembering things?
- 6 *The metabolism* Are you more sensitive to heat or to cold (warm natured or cold natured)? Are your hair and skin unusually dry? Has there been any recent weight change? Do you tire more easily now than formerly?"
- 7 *Allergies* Have you ever had eczema hay fever asthma or nettle rash?
- 8 *Habits* "How much coffee or tea do you drink? How much do

you smoke? How much alcohol do you use? What time do you go to bed and what time do you get up in the morning? How much exercise do you take? What do you do for recreation?

At this point I drop my pencil ostentatiously and ask the patient if he has any cause for worry. If this approach elicits no satisfactory response, I ask specific questions. Do you have in-law troubles? How do you and your wife (or your husband) get on? Are the children all happily married and are their wives acceptable?

By the time the patient has answered these questions, the physician should have a reasonably good idea of his personality and emotional stability, and should have succeeded in putting him completely at ease. The physical examination can then be made on a patient who is relaxed and comfortable, and the findings should give a true picture of his usual condition.

### THE PHYSICAL EXAMINATION

The physical examination should be thorough but if it is done systematically it need not take nearly as much time as the history should. An indispensable aid to the physical examination is a set of electrically lighted diagnostic instruments, with a universal handle. Dry batteries may be used to furnish current, but in the office it is much more satisfactory to depend upon the more constant illumination provided by a rheostat plugged into a wall socket. The set should include, as a minimum, a transilluminator, an ophthalmoscope, an otoscope, a nasal speculum, two or three vaginal speculums of different sizes, and a sigmoidoscope.

The individual doctor works out his own system for the physical examination. My own usually begins with getting the patient's height and weight and, where such information seems indicated, measuring the chest on inspiration and expiration and the abdomen at the level of the umbilicus. A limited chest expansion may give the clue to emphysema or spondylitis.

In order to save time and incidentally to keep the patient from talking while the pressure is being taken, I place a thermometer in his mouth just before the blood pressure cuff is applied. The pulse may be counted at the same time. If the blood pressure is taken in a matter of fact way, without comment or concern, the reading in

the second arm—or a second reading in the same arm—will be appreciably lower in a surprising number of patients. If the pressure is taken a number of times I reassure the patient that it is "playing fair" to do this, and to record the lowest reading as the one most nearly accurate.

The tongue, mouth, teeth and throat are next inspected with the aid of a good light and usually a tongue depressor. Pallor of the mucous membranes as well as of the skin may give the clue to anemia. The presence of fissures in the corners of the mouth (*perleche*) may possibly indicate a vitamin deficiency but is more often the result of poorly fitting dentures or sagging skin. The tongue may literally tell something of the patient's condition. The dry, red, slick tongue of pernicious anemia is familiar to every physician; a sore mouth and tongue may indicate the recent use of antibiotics. If the tonsils are still present in older patients, they are usually atrophied and seldom give trouble; in fact it is often difficult to know whether or not they have been removed. Occasionally, however, an unbedded tonsil or tonsil remnant may be a source of recurring sore throats.

Inspection of the nose will usually reveal some deviation of the septum which may or may not interfere with breathing. A boggy nasal mucosa may suggest an allergy. Transillumination of the sinuses often reveals cloudiness of a sinus or antrum suggesting an acute or chronic infection.

Examination of the eyegrounds is followed by inspection of the ears and of the neck and throat. Impacted wax is not infrequently found in the ear canals and may explain a recent hearing impairment. I look for pulsations in the neck vessels and palpate the thyroid gland and the cervical lymph nodes for enlargement and possible tenderness. The skin is under constant inspection during the whole examination.

Before having the patient undress I ask him to hold out both hands with the fingers outstretched. This procedure will disclose tremors and also enlarged finger joints (both distal (Heberden's nodes) and proximal). The flexibility of the fingers is noted. The lower extremities are then inspected for edema, varicosities or deformities and the reflexes are tested. In older patients they are often hypoactive or even absent.

If the patient is a man I have him strip to the waist for the

chest examination before putting him on the examining table. I first outline the heart by percussion (if possible), determine the point of maximal impulse by inspection and palpation, feel for thrills, listen to the heart sounds, and note the rhythm. Then the lungs are examined front and back. In examining the lungs of a man I have found it helpful to have him straddle the seat of a chair with his back to me. This position gives the best exposure with the muscles equally relaxed on each side. Rales at the lung bases may indicate early congestive failure. Emphysema is such a frequent finding in elderly patients that the importance of measuring the chest expansion with a tape measure is worth the emphasis of repetition. After the patient undresses and is put on the examining table the heart is again checked with the patient lying down.

In women the chest examination is usually deferred until the patient is on the examining table. The heart, lungs, and breasts are examined while she sits up, and the examination of the breasts and heart is repeated after she lies down. It is hardly necessary to say that the office nurse or some female attendant should help the woman patient undress and should stay in the room during the examination.

With the patient on the examining table the axillae, elbows, and inguinal regions should be inspected and palpated for enlarged lymph nodes. After the abdomen has been carefully palpated a straight leg raising test is performed. An important part of the examination is palpation of the dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial arteries in each foot. At the same time the color of the skin and temperature of the feet should be noted. A vaginal and rectal examination in a woman and a rectal examination in a man conclude the examination unless the use of the sigmoidoscope is indicated.

In the physical examination one may respect the extreme modesty of many older patients but should not let it prevent a thorough examination. Much depends upon the attitude of the examiner. If he himself feels any embarrassment the patient is likely to sense it. The best course is to proceed with the examination of the breasts and pelvis in the same matter-of-fact manner that one has used in examining the nose and throat. Gentleness and an unhurried approach are essential. Some irrelevant light conversation may help divert the patient's attention.

## ACCESSORY STUDIES

Laboratory procedures that should be done as a routine part of the initial examination include a complete blood count, determination of the sedimentation rate, a urinalysis and possibly a serologic test for syphilis. Some authorities recommend that in women a cervical smear for a Papanicolaou study should be obtained at least once a year if reliable laboratory interpretation is available. Other tests may be indicated by the patient's history; among them, determinations of the blood urea nitrogen (BUN), blood sugar and serum cholesterol and a protein bound iodine (PBI) or iodine uptake test. Except under certain circumstances,\* the latter tests for thyroid activity are far more reliable than the basal metabolism.

Every patient past middle age should have as a part of his initial examination a chest film and an electrocardiogram. These need not be repeated at subsequent visits unless they are indicated by the patient's symptoms, but it is helpful to have them filed away for comparison with any films or cardiograms that might be made in the future.

While the conscientious physician never likes to order diagnostic procedures, especially expensive ones, that are not indicated by the patient's symptoms, there are times when additional x-rays, another electrocardiogram or some laboratory procedure may be necessary as a means of giving the patient reassurance. Patients with cancer phobia, for example, may have their anxiety dispelled for a time at least by a "therapeutic x-ray examination" or by a Papanicolaou smear.

## CONCLUSION

Just as it is rare for the geriatric patient to have only one complaint, it is rare for him to have only one diagnosis. The diagnosis or suspected diagnoses—should be recorded in order of relative importance. In making a diagnosis, the history is far more important than the physical examination and the laboratory findings, though all should be considered. Unfortunately, it is not always possible to arrive at a definite diagnosis even after all the necessary

\* Lucille sources of errors were given in *Journal of the American Medical Association* 158: 1582, 1958.



studies have been made. The clinician must agree with Hippocrates that 'Experience is fallacious and judgment difficult,' but with experience there should come improvement in one's judgment, which may be called wisdom. One of the greatest gifts of experience rightly used is the ability to recognize exceptions to the usual rules of conduct for disease. Oliver Wendell Holmes said, 'The young man knows the rules, but the old man knows the exceptions.'

One source of error is to be too quick to make a definite diagnosis before all the evidence is in. Being human, the doctor hates to admit a mistake, and finds it hard to take an objective view of new evidence after he has committed himself to a definite opinion. Most patients are sensible enough to understand that it is not always possible to make a diagnosis at first glance, and are willing to give the doctor time to digest the facts in the case before he renders his verdict. Furthermore, people no longer expect their doctor to know everything, and will respect him more rather than less if at times he will have the courage to say 'I don't know.'

In explaining to the patient what was found in his case and outlining his treatment, one should use the simplest language possible. The choice of words is so important that logotherapy will be the topic of a section in the next chapter.

## REFERENCE

1. HOLMES, O. W. The Young Practitioner, in *Medical Essays* Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1911, p. 377.

## CHAPTER 4

# Treatment of the Older Patient

WINGATE M JOHNSON

The treatment of the older patient is important enough to justify a discussion of some general principles even though the therapy of specific conditions will be covered in succeeding chapters

### DRUGS

Within a generation therapeutic nihilism has given way to therapeutic optimism which at times may betray the physician into overconfidence in the effectiveness and safety of the modern drugs. A good rule for using the new drugs that are being introduced with bewildering rapidity is found in Pope's time honored couplet

Be not the first by whom the new are tried  
Nor yet the last to lay the old aside

### For Specific Therapy

The specific therapy of infectious diseases which will be discussed more fully in Chapter 8 is virtually the same in adult patients of any age. It should be remembered that the modern "miracle drugs" are ineffective against the viruses\* and hence should not be used to treat upper respiratory infections except in the presence of sinusitis, otitis media or coccal pneumonia. The danger of allergic reactions is always present and the longer an

\*Typhoid was once considered an exception to this rule but recently it has been reclassified as a rickettsial rather than a viral disease (British Medical Journal, 1958)

antibiotic has been in use the greater is the possibility that the patient has become sensitized to it. We are also encountering an increasing number of organisms, especially staphylococci, which are resistant to many if not most of the antibiotics.

Although the antibiotics, when properly used are truly wonder drugs, they should be employed only in conditions for which they are definitely indicated. I believe that one should use as much caution in prescribing a course of antibiotics as in recommending a major operation. Low (1955) has made a good case for more frequent use of the sulfonamides, which are far cheaper and safer than the antibiotics, and in most cases just as effective.

### For Symptomatic Treatment

Sedatives often have bizarre effects in older people. It is not unusual for the geriatric patient to sleep poorly after taking a barbiturate at bedtime, and to be drowsy and confused the next day. The old stand-by, chloral hydrate, is usually a much more satisfactory hypnotic and does not leave a morning after hangover. Its disagreeable taste may now be avoided by giving it in capsule form (0.5 Gm.).

Rauwolfia and its extract reserpine widely used for their hypotensive and tranquilizing effect may cause mental confusion and depression especially in elderly patients. The United States Public Health Service has warned against giving patients of any age more than 0.25 to 0.5 mg. of reserpine daily. As Grollman notes in Chapter 13 older patients with a systolic pressure of 180 to 200 and a diastolic pressure of 80 to 100 do not need hypotensive medication and its use in such patients is likely to cause mental symptoms.

Other tranquilizers have come from pharmaceutical houses with bewildering rapidity. These undoubtedly may help tide many patients over stressful situations. They are too new however to permit critical evaluation of their long term use. There is increasing evidence that they may have undesirable side effects and may be habit forming. In older patients especially there is the danger of producing or increasing confusion or depression.

Another reason for caution in prescribing these drugs is their relative expense. Phenobarbital and amobarbital are far less costly

than the modern tranquilizers. In a double blind study of the comparative effectiveness of four modern tranquilizers amobarbital (Amytal) and a placebo a British group (Raymond *et al* 1957) reported that the patients gave amobarbital the highest rating yet it was the cheapest of the lot not excluding the placebo.

In the past bromides were often prescribed for their sedative effect, and various patent medicines sold for the relief of pain contain them in their formulas. Since they can be sold without a prescription many patients got the habit of using them regularly. Their cumulative effect often aggravates the very symptoms for which they are taken and in some patients produces mental confusion or hallucinations. Fortunately bromides are seldom prescribed now by physicians and are less prominent among the ingredients of "headache powders" but one should still be mindful of the possibility of bromism especially in older patients. Determination of the bromide content of the blood is a relatively simple laboratory procedure and may solve a diagnostic problem. The principal treatment is to discontinue the drug and let it be eliminated from the system a process which usually takes about two weeks. The use of sodium chloride to hasten the process of elimination is being abandoned as useless and possibly harmful.

Older patients are apt to tolerate opiates poorly and to require relatively smaller doses for the relief of pain. Although morphine in doses of 8 to 16 mg ( $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  gr) is a very effective pain reliever and also has in most people a pleasant euphoric effect it frequently produces nausea. Unless a patient is known to tolerate it well its use had best be avoided in coronary occlusion or any condition in which the stress of vomiting would be undesirable or even dangerous. In such situations it is safer to give Dilaudid in doses of 2 to 4 mg ( $\frac{1}{16}$  to  $\frac{1}{10}$  gr) or Demerol (meperidine) in doses of 50 to 100 mg. Another undesirable side effect occasionally associated with the use of morphine (and frequently with hyoscine) is the production of restlessness, confusion and even hallucinations. Fortunately patients who are so affected by morphine usually respond well to hyoscine (scopolamine) and those who tolerate hyoscine poorly are able to take morphine without ill effects. The relief of pain by drugs as well as by nerve blocks and other surgical procedures is fully discussed by Dr Crandell in Chapter 6.

antibiotic has been in use, the greater is the possibility that the patient has become sensitized to it. We are also encountering an increasing number of organisms, especially staphylococci, which are resistant to many if not most of the antibiotics.

Although the antibiotics when properly used are truly wonder drugs, they should be employed only in conditions for which they are definitely indicated. I believe that one should use as much caution in prescribing a course of antibiotics as in recommending a major operation. Yow (1955) has made a good case for more frequent use of the sulfonamides which are far cheaper and safer than the antibiotics, and in most cases just as effective.

### For Symptomatic Treatment

Sedatives often have bizarre effects in older people. It is not unusual for the geriatric patient to sleep poorly after taking a barbiturate at bedtime, and to be drowsy and confused the next day. The old standby, chloral hydrate, is usually a much more satisfactory hypnotic and does not leave a "morning after" hang over. Its disagreeable taste may now be avoided by giving it in capsule form (0.5 Gm.).

Rauwolfia and its extract, reserpine, widely used for their hypotensive and tranquilizing effect, may cause mental confusion and depression especially in elderly patients. The United States Public Health Service has warned against giving patients of any age more than 0.25 to 0.5 mg. of reserpine daily. As Grollman notes in Chapter 13, older patients with a systolic pressure of 180 to 200 and a diastolic pressure of 80 to 100 do not need hypotensive medication and its use in such patients is likely to cause mental symptoms.

Other tranquilizers have come from pharmaceutical houses with bewildering rapidity. These undoubtedly may help tide many patients over stressful situations. They are too new, however, to permit critical evaluation of their long term use. There is increasing evidence that they may have undesirable side effects and may be habit forming. In older patients especially there is the danger of producing or increasing confusion or depression.

Another reason for caution in prescribing these drugs is their relative expense. Phenobarbital and amobarbital are far less costly

such a feeling of security that they may look upon their hospital stay as a happy experience

In treating older patients it is advisable to make some concessions to life long habits such as wearing long handled underwear smoking or taking laxatives Unless there is a valid objection to such habits there is no real reason for changing them When a change seems necessary it is important to make the patient understand the reason for it and to give him all possible moral support while he is trying to alter his ways As Mark Twain has said "Habit is not to be thrown out the window, but coaxed downstairs one step at a time"

Chief among the habits that may be injurious to older people is that of overeating or of eating too much carbohydrate food at the expense of meat and vegetables Another is the abuse of laxatives especially mineral oil Most patients if they cannot be educated to do without laxatives altogether can at least be persuaded to substitute bulk producing substances for mineral oil or harsh cathartics In the presence of arterial disease or pulmonary emphysema smoking is undoubtedly harmful Patients with either of these conditions should be strongly urged to discontinue the use of tobacco in any form It may be possible in some cases to soften the blow by suggesting the use of an alcoholic beverage once or twice a day as a substitute

## LOGOTHERAPY

The choice of words used in talking to older patients is most important In the last edition of his *Care of the Aged* (1946) the late Dr Malford W. Thewlis often used the term "logotherapy," coined from the Greek *to describe treatment by words* If one uses the right words it is possible to explain almost any illness to a patient without alarming him For example instead of telling a patient that he has hardening of the arteries one can say "Your blood vessels are less elastic than they once were" To tell a patient that a clot has blocked one of the small vessels of his brain is far more merciful than saying bluntly "You have had a stroke" "You have more mileage on your motor than when you cast your first vote and need something to make it's stroke more effective" is less

In prescribing drugs, especially for prolonged use, one should be mindful of the expense. If an opiate is to be required over a long period because of inoperable cancer, morphine is much cheaper than codeine or other substitutes.

As a general rule, the older person requires smaller doses of all remedies, except possibly laxatives.

## DIET AND GENERAL HYGIENE

When the older patient has fever, or after he has had an operation, his diet should be light but well balanced. Liquids are easier to swallow than solids, but such solid foods as scraped steak, lamb chops, chicken, tender vegetables, cooked cereals, gelatin, custard applesauce, and ice cream are usually well tolerated. Personal experience convinced me that, in our hospital, at least, selections from the so called soft or bland diet are more acceptable to the palate of a postoperative patient than the regular house diet.

One of the greatest advances made recently in medical and surgical practice is early ambulation following an operation or an illness. Patients who have had operations before and after early ambulation come to be the accepted practice are especially grateful for the advantages afforded by the modern method. Even after a myocardial infarction it has become almost universal practice to allow the patient to use a bedside commode rather than a bedpan for a bowel movement. This method really puts less strain on the heart and favors the expulsion of gas.

As Dr. Bradshaw points out in Chapter 7, a patient nowadays is not denied the benefit of needed surgery merely because he is no longer young. Hospitals have become such popular places since the advent of prepayment plans that much of the prejudice against them has been lost even by the older generation. There are still a good many elderly people, however, who are pathetically afraid of going to a hospital for an operation or for the treatment of a severe illness. Such patients, who may not have slept away from their own homes in years, need the tender loving care that is so often recommended for pediatric patients. In most hospitals fortunately, the members of the nursing and medical staffs accept the challenge to make such oldsters feel welcome and to give them

such a feeling of security that they may look upon their hospital stay as a happy experience

In treating older patients it is advisable to make some concessions to life long habits such as wearing long handled underwear smoking or taking laxatives Unless there is a valid objection to such habits there is no real reason for changing them When a change seems necessary, it is important to make the patient understand the reason for it and to give him all possible moral support while he is trying to alter his ways As Mark Twain has said Habit is not to be thrown out the window but coaxed downstairs one step at a time

Chief among the habits that may be injurious to older people is that of overeating or of eating too much carbohydrate food at the expense of meat and vegetables Another is the abuse of laxatives, especially mineral oil Most patients if they cannot be educated to do without laxatives altogether can at least be persuaded to substitute bulk producing substances for mineral oil or harsh cathartics In the presence of arterial disease or pulmonary emphysema smoking is undoubtedly harmful Patients with either of these conditions should be strongly urged to discontinue the use of tobacco in any form It may be possible in some cases to soften the blow by suggesting the use of an alcoholic beverage once or twice a day as a substitute

## LOGOTHERAPY

The choice of words used in talking to older patients is most important In the last edition of his *Care of the Aged* (1946) the late Dr Malford W Thewlis often used the term logotherapy, coined from the Greek to describe treatment by words If one uses the right words it is possible to explain almost any illness to a patient without alarming him For example instead of telling a patient that he has hardening of the arteries one can say, "Your blood vessels are less elastic than they once were To tell a patient that a clot has blocked one of the small vessels of his brain is far more merciful than saying bluntly "You have had a stroke "You have more mileage on your motor than when you cast your first vote and need something to make its stroke more effective" is less



alarming than you have signs of congestive heart failure and need digitalis.

It is especially important to clarify the distinction between hypertrophic or degenerative arthritis and the rheumatoid variety.

One of the most debated questions in medicine is whether or not to tell a patient that he has an inoperable cancer or some other fatal disease. I agree with Dr. Walter Alvarez that it is usually best to tell the patient the truth, even though members of the family may insist that he should not be told. The patient usually knows more about his condition than he admits to the family, so that deception is practiced on both sides. It is often a great relief to have the veil of secrecy pulled aside.

The choice of words used in telling a patient that he has an incurable illness is extremely important. As a witty Scotchman once said, "You can at least put a bathing suit on truth." One should not shut the door completely against all hope. Cancers may often be truthfully described as progressing slowly, especially in older patients. Cirrhotic livers are now much more amenable to treatment by diet and other measures. A patient with leukemia can be told that the prognosis in pernicious anemia was once hopeless, but that Minot's discovery of the therapeutic value of liver has made it possible for a patient with this condition to live out his full life expectancy; certainly it is not inconceivable that the intensive work now being done in leukemia may soon lead to an equally rewarding discovery.

## CONCLUSION

Within the past two or three decades the great advances made in the diagnosis and treatment of disease have made the practice of medicine more satisfactory than ever before. Yet the public has become increasingly critical of the medical profession. One of the criticisms most often voiced is that doctors are no longer interested in the patient as an individual but regard him simply as "a case."

The importance of treating the patient—and often the whole family—as well as the disease cannot be emphasized too strongly. By understanding and practicing this principle the doctor can win that confidence which is so important in treatment. And Minthie (1929) has well said that a doctor's secret of success is the ability

to inspire confidence and that the doctor who possesses this gift can almost raise the dead while one who does not possess it will have to submit to the calling in of a colleague for consultation in a case of measles

### REFERENCES

- 1 Editorial Antiviral chemotherapy *Brit M J* 1 1290 1958
- 2 MONTIE AXEL *The Story of San Michele* New York E P Dutton and Company 1929
- 3 RAYMOND M J et al A trial of five tranquilizing drugs in psychoneurosis *Brit M J* 2 63 1957
- 4 THEWLIS M W *Care of the Aged (Geriatrics)* (ed 5) St Louis C V Mosby Company 1946
- 5 YOW E M A re evaluation of sulfonamide therapy *Ann Int Med* 43 323 1955

## CHAPTER 5

# Nutrition of the Geriatric Patient

DAVID CAYER

The significant effect of nutrition on the aging of tissue as well as on its growth and development has become increasingly apparent in recent years. Adequate nutrition throughout life provides the best chance of minimizing degenerative changes in later life. The evaluation of a geriatric patient's diet requires consideration of more than the psychologic, social, economic, and physiologic factors, and the relationship of appetite and intake to the home situation. One must determine also whether the patient has any food fixations and prejudices such as often originate in therapeutic diets imposed because of relatively benign disturbances associated with aging. In some instances the use of antibiotics may prevent the synthesis of B complex vitamins and vitamin K by intestinal bacteria. The physiologic activity of vitamin C and vitamin K may be depressed by acetylsalicylic acid and sodium salicylate.

The diet of aging people tends to become oversimplified and they often lose interest in diversification of meals. It therefore becomes necessary to reinstruct the patient and reemphasize the importance of a varied diet utilizing nonprocessed or enriched foods. In order to select an adequate diet, one must have reliable information on the subject of nutrition.

In order to prevent gastric disturbances that decrease appetite elderly patients should be instructed to maintain adequate chewing surface and to chew their food well, being careful not to wash down inadequately chewed foods with liquids. They should be cautioned not to eat when nervous or fatigued. Meals should be bland, condiments should be avoided, and fluids should not be excessively hot or cold. In many elderly patients gastric distress may

be produced by fruit juice iron vitamins, or yeast In the absence of contraindications older persons should be encouraged to take 2 000 to 3 000 cc of fluid per day Outside interests and purposeful activity should be encouraged in order to maintain the appetite

Requirements for calories diminish with increasing age At the age of 65 an individual's caloric requirements are roughly 80 per cent of his needs at 25 A person's caloric expenditure is determined largely by the amount of his physical activity A diet of 1500 to

TABLE 5-1a SUGGESTED DIETS FOR ACHIEVING AND MAINTAINING OPTIMAL WEIGHT IN GERIATRIC PATIENTS

	Calories		
	800	1500	1900
<b>Breakfast</b>			
Fruit or fruit juice fresh or unsweetened	1 serving	1 serving	1 serving
Cereal	None	None	$\frac{1}{2}$ C cooked or $\frac{3}{4}$ C dry
Whole wheat or enriched bread	1 slice	1 slice	1 slice
Eggs boiled or poached Do not fry	1	2	2
Butter or margarine	1 tsp	1 tsp	1 tsp
Cup bacon	None	1 strip	1 strip
Whole milk	None	None	1 C
<b>Lunch</b>			
Lean meat fish or poultry broiled baked or stewed	2 ounces	2 ounces	3 ounces
or eggs boiled or poached	2	2	3
or cottage cheese made from skim milk	$\frac{1}{2}$ C	$\frac{1}{2}$ C	$\frac{3}{4}$ C
or yellow cheese	2 slices	2 slices	3 slices
Milk	1 C skim or buttermilk	1 C whole	None
Whole wheat or enriched bread	None	1 slice	1 slice
15 or 20" vegetables	None	None	$\frac{1}{2}$ C
and 10" vegetables	As desired	As desired	As desired
Butter or margarine	None	1 tsp	2 tsp
Fruit fresh or unsweetened	1 serving	1 serving	1 serving
<b>Supper</b>			
Lean meat fish or poultry broiled baked or stewed	2 ounces	3 ounces	3 ounces
Milk	1 C skim or buttermilk	1 C whole	1 C whole
Whole wheat or enriched bread	None	1 slice	2 slices
15 or 20" vegetables	None	$\frac{1}{2}$ C	$\frac{1}{2}$ C
and 10" vegetables	As desired	As desired	As desired
Butter or margarine	None	1 tsp	2 tsp
Fruit fresh or unsweetened	1 serving	1 serving	1 serving

\* Select vegetables from attached lists Cook vegetables without fat and use vinegar or lemon juice rather than salad dressing

## CHAPTER 5

# Nutrition of the Geriatric Patient

DAVID CAYER

The significant effect of nutrition on the aging of tissue as well as on its growth and development has become increasingly apparent in recent years. Adequate nutrition throughout life provides the best chance of minimizing degenerative changes in later life. The evaluation of a geriatric patient's diet requires consideration of more than the psychologic, social, economic and physiologic factors, and the relationship of appetite and intake to the home situation. One must determine also whether the patient has any food fixations and prejudices such as often originate in therapeutic diets imposed because of relatively benign disturbances associated with aging. In some instances, the use of antibiotics may prevent the synthesis of B complex vitamins and vitamin K by intestinal bacteria. The physiologic activity of vitamin C and vitamin K may be depressed by acetylsalicylic acid and sodium salicylate.

The diet of aging people tends to become oversimplified and they often lose interest in diversification of meals. It therefore becomes necessary to reinstruct the patient and re-emphasize the importance of a varied diet utilizing nonprocessed or enriched foods. In order to select an adequate diet one must have reliable information on the subject of nutrition.

In order to prevent gastric disturbances that decrease appetite, elderly patients should be instructed to maintain adequate chewing surface and to chew their food well, being careful not to wash down inadequately chewed foods with liquids. They should be cautioned not to eat when nervous or fatigued. Meals should be bland, condiments should be avoided, and fluids should not be excessively hot or cold. In many elderly patients gastric distress may

TABLE 5-1c GENERAL DIRECTIONS FOR REDUCTION

- 1 Do not eat between meals except as ordered
- 2 Eat all the foods listed for each meal but do not eat any foods that are not ordered
- 3 In selecting fruits and vegetables try to observe the following rules
  - a One citrus fruit or tomato every day
  - b One raw vegetable every day
  - c One green or yellow vegetable every day
 Have one serving of liver every week  
 Have one serving of fish every week
- 4 You may have all the tea or coffee desired but do not use cream or sugar
- 5 You may use salt and pepper to season food
- 6 Bouillon or broth may be used in moderate amounts if the fat is skimmed off and it is made from nothing but meat
  - (1) Do not use gravies or creamed food Do not add flour meal or cornstarch to any food
- 8 Do not use dried fruits or fruits canned with sugar
- 9 Meas are all foods carefully using a standard measuring cup and standard measuring spoon
- 10 Do not use sugar or any foods made with sugar such as candy jelly marmalade syrup molasses pies cakes puddings honey chewing gum soft drinks alcoholic beverage and ice cream
- 11 Saccharin Sucaryl or any other artificial sweetener may be used to sweeten foods
- 1 Do not eat food foods or use fat (butter margarine cream salad oil shortening or pork) in cooking
- 13 Weigh yourself once a week on the same day and at approximately the same time of day Keep a record of your weight every week

In all probability protein requirements decrease with age. The dietary protein however should be of high biologic availability, and special attention should be given to allowing some protein at each meal. The use of high protein diets or protein supplements in elderly patients is justified only for replacement of tissue loss resulting from illness or previous dietary imbalance. Such measures are not justified in healthy individuals beyond the age of 60 since the excess nitrogen needed for normal growth in children is neither necessary nor desirable for the metabolic processes of the aged.

Many estimates concerning nutritional inadequacies in geriatric patients are based on approximations of food intake and must be interpreted with caution. In all probability the protein and caloric needs of this group are 20 to 30 per cent lower than the safe levels recommended by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council (Table 5-2). While it is true that some elderly persons who are debilitated cannot be maintained in positive nitrogen balance on diets containing only 0.5 Gm of protein per kilogram of body weight attempts to increase the daily protein

TABLE 5 1b VEGETABLE VALUES AND FRUIT PORTIONS

5% Vegetables	15% Vegetables	Fruit portions	
Asparagus	Artichokes	Apple	1 small (2" diam)
Broccoli	Lima beans	Apple juice	1 cup
Brussels sprouts	Oyster plant	Apple juice	1 1/4 cup
Cabbage	Parsnip	Apricots	2 medium
Cauliflower	Peas (fresh)	Banana	
Celery		Berries	
Cucumbers	20% Vegetables	Blackberries	1 cup
Eggplant	Corn	Blueberries	2 1/2 cup
Greens	Crits	Raspberries	1 cup
Lettuce	Macaroni	Strawberries	1 cup
Green pepper	Noodles	Cantaloupe	1 1/4 (6" diam)
Dill pickles	Black ved peas	Cherries Bing	10 large
Ridishus	Potatoes Irish	Cherries Royal	
Rhubarb	Potatoes sweet	Anne	12 small
Sauerkraut	Rice	Figs	2 large
Snap beans	Spaghetti	Fruit cocktail	1 cup
Spinach		Grapefruit	1 1/2 small
Marrow squash		Grapefruit juice	1 1/2 cup
Crooked neck squash		Grape juice	1 1/4 cup
Tomatoes		Grapes	12
		Honeydew melon	1 1/8 (7" diam)
10% Vegetables		Orange	1
Beets		Orange juice	1 1/2 cup
Carrots		Peach	1 medium
Okra		Pear	1 small
Onions		Pineapple	1 1/2 cup
Peas (canned)		Pineapple juice	1 1/3 cup
Pumpkin		Plums	2 medium
Hubbard squash		Tangerine	1 large
Turnips		Tomato juice	1 cup
		Watermelon	1 cup

1800 calories (Table 5 1) will maintain most persons beyond the age of 70 in positive protein balance. In all probability, the vitamin and mineral requirements of healthy old people differ little from those of younger adults. As people age, it is essential that they make each calorie carry its share of minerals, vitamins, and proteins.

Older people should therefore avoid excesses of sugar, alcohol, fat, and nonenriched cereals, and should take enough exercise to permit adequate nutrition without an increase in body weight. To do so may require training and self-discipline. Diets for older persons should be designed to provide protective foods rather than an excess intake of high-calorie foods. They must also be highly individualized, taking into the account the patient's food likes and dislikes, eating habits, customs, background, and economic situation.

TABLE 5-1c GENERAL DIRECTIONS FOR REDUCTION

- 1 Do not eat between meals except as ordered
- 2 Eat all the foods listed for each meal but do not eat any foods that are not ordered
- 3 In selecting fruits and vegetables try to observe the following rules
  - a One citrus fruit or tomato every day
  - b One raw vegetable every day
  - c One green or yellow vegetable every day
  - d Have one serving of liver every week
  - e Have one serving of fish every week
- 4 You may have all the tea or coffee desired but do not use cream or sugar
- 5 You may use salt and pepper to season foods
- 6 If oil or broth may be used in moderate amounts if the fat is skimmed off and it is made from nothing but meat
  - a Do not use gravies or creamed foods Do not add flour meal or cornstarch to any food
- 7 Do not use dried fruits or fruits canned with sugar
- 8 Measure all foods carefully using a standard measuring cup and standard measuring spoons
- 9 Do not use sugar or any food made with sugar such as candy jelly marmalade syrup molasses pie cakes puddings honey chewing gum soft drinks alcoholic beverages and ice cream
- 10 Saccharin Sucaryl or any other artificial sweetener may be used to sweeten foods
- 11 Do not eat fried foods or use fat (butter margarine cream salad oil shortening etc.) in cooking
- 12 Weigh yourself once a week on the same day and at approximately the same time of day Keep a record of your weight every week

In all probability protein requirements decrease with age. The dietary protein however should be of high biologic availability and special attention should be given to allowing some protein at each meal. The use of high protein diets or protein supplements in elderly patients is justified only for replacement of tissue loss resulting from illness or previous dietary imbalance. Such measures are not justified in healthy individuals beyond the age of 60 since the excess nitrogen needed for normal growth in children is neither necessary nor desirable for the metabolic processes of the aged.

Many estimates concerning nutritional inadequacies in geriatric patients are based on approximations of food intake and must be interpreted with caution. In all probability the protein and caloric needs of this group are 20 to 30 per cent lower than the "safe levels" recommended by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council (Table 5-2). While it is true that some elderly persons who are debilitated cannot be maintained in positive nitrogen balance on diets containing only 0.5 Gm of protein per kilogram of body weight attempts to increase the daily protein



TABLE 5 1b    VEGETABLE VALUES AND FRUIT PORTIONS

<i>5% Vegetables</i>	<i>15% Vegetables</i>	<i>Fruit portions</i>	
Asparagus	Artichokes	Apple	1 small (2 diam)
Broccoli	Lima beans	Apple juice	1 cup
Brussels sprouts	Oyster plant	Apple juice	1 1/4 cup
Cabbage	Parsnip	Apricots	2 medium
Cauliflower	Pears (fresh)	Banana	
Celery		Berries	
Cucumbers	<i>20% Vegetables</i>	Black berries	1 cup
Eggplant	Corn	Blueberries	2 3/4 cup
Greens	Crisp	Raspberries	1 cup
Lettuce	Macaroni	Strawberries	1 cup
Green pepper	Noodles	Cantaloupe	1 1/4 (6 diam)
Dill pickles	Blackeyed peas	Cherries Bing	10 large
Radishes	Potatoes Irish	Cherries Royal	
Rhubarb	Potatoes sweet	Anne	12 small
Sauerkraut	Rice	Figs	2 large
Snap beans	Spaghetti	Fruit cocktail	1 1/2 cup
Spinach		Citrus fruit	1 small
Marrow squash		Citrus fruit juice	1 cup
Crooked neck squash		Citrus juice	1 1/4 cup
Tomatoes		Citrus	12
		Honeydew melon	1 1/8 (7 diam)
<i>10% Vegetables</i>		Orange	1
Beets		Orange juice	1 1/4 cup
Carrots		Leach	1 medium
Okra		Leaf	1 small
Onions		Pineapple	1 1/2 cup
Pears (canned)		Pineapple juice	1 1/4 cup
Pumpkin		Plums	2 medium
Hubbard squash		Tangerine	1 large
Turnips		Tomato juice	1 cup
		Watermelon	1 cup

1800 calories (Table 5 1) will maintain most persons beyond the age of 70 in positive protein balance. In all probability the vitamin and mineral requirements of healthy old people differ little from those of younger adults. As people age it is essential that they make each calorie carry its share of minerals, vitamins, and proteins.

Older people should therefore avoid excesses of sugar, alcohol, fat, and nonenriched cereals, and should take enough exercise to permit adequate nutrition without an increase in body weight. To do so may require training and self-discipline. Diets for older persons should be designed to provide protective foods rather than an excess intake of high-calorie foods. They must also be highly individualized, taking into the account the patient's food likes and dislikes, eating habits, customs, background, and economic situation.

TABLE 5-1c GENERAL DIRECTIONS FOR REDUCTION

- 1 Do not eat between meals except as ordered
- 2 Eat all the foods listed for each meal but do not eat any foods that are not ordered
- 3 In selecting fruits and vegetables try to observe the following rules
  - a One citrus fruit or tomato every day
  - b One raw vegetable every day
  - c One green or yellow vegetable every day
 Have one serving of liver every week  
 Have one serving of fish every week
- 4 You may have all the tea or coffee desired but do not use cream or sugar
- 5 You may use salt and pepper to season foods
- 6 Broth or broth may be used in moderate amounts if the fat is skimmed off and it is made from nothing but meat  
 Do not use gravies or creamed foods Do not add flour meal or cornstarch to any food
- 8 Do not use dried fruits or fruits canned with sugar
- 9 Measure all foods carefully using a standard measuring cup and standard measure markings
- 10 Do not use sugar or any foods made with sugar such as candy jelly marmalade syrup in sauces pies cakes puddings honey chewing gum soft drinks alcoholic beverages and ice cream
- 11 Saccharin, sucaryl or any other artificial sweetener may be used to sweeten foods
- 1 Do not eat fried foods or use fat (butter margarine cream salad oil shortening or lard) in cooking
- 13 Weigh yourself once a week on the same day and at approximately the same time  
 Try to keep a record of your weight every week

In all probability protein requirements decrease with age. The dietary protein, however, should be of high biologic availability and special attention should be given to allowing some protein at each meal. The use of high protein diets or protein supplements in elderly patients is justified only for replacement of tissue loss resulting from illness or previous dietary imbalance. Such measures are not justified in healthy individuals beyond the age of 60 since the excess nitrogen needed for normal growth in children is neither necessary nor desirable for the metabolic processes of the aged.

Many estimates concerning nutritional inadequacies in geriatric patients are based on approximations of food intake and must be interpreted with caution. In all probability the protein and caloric needs of this group are 20 to 30 per cent lower than the "safe levels" recommended by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council (Table 5-2). While it is true that some elderly persons who are debilitated cannot be maintained in positive nitrogen balance on diets containing only 0.5 Gm. of protein per kilogram of body weight, attempts to increase the daily protein

TABLE 5 1b VEGETABLE VALUES AND FRUIT PORTIONS

<i>5% Vegetables</i>	<i>15% Vegetables</i>	<i>Fruit portions</i>	
Asparagus	Artichokes	Apple	1 small (2" diam)
Broccoli	Lima beans	Apple juice	1/2 cup
Brussels sprouts	Oyster plant	Appleauce	1/4 cup
Cabbage	Parsnip	Apricots	2 medium
Cauliflower	Pears (fresh)	Banana	
Celery		Berries	
Cucumbers	<i>20% Vegetables</i>	Blackberries	1 cup
Eggplant	Corn	Blueberries	2/3 cup
Greens	Grits	Raspberries	1 cup
Lettuce	Macaroni	Strawberries	1 cup
Green pepper	Noodles	Cantaloupe	1/4 (6" diam)
Dill pickles	Blackeyed peas	Cherries Bing	10 large
Radishes	Potatoes Irish	Cherries Royal	
Rhubarb	Potatoes sweet	Anne	12 small
Sauerkraut	Rice	Figs	2 large
Snap beans	Spaghetti	Fruit cocktail	1 cup
Spinach		Grapefruit	1/6 small
Summer squash		Grapefruit juice	1/2 cup
Hooked neck squash		Grape juice	1/4 cup
Tomatoes		Grapes	12
		Honeydew melon	1/8 (7" diam)
<i>10% Vegetables</i>		Orange	1
Beets		Orange juice	1/2 cup
Carrots		Leach	1 medium
Olra		Lear	1 small
Onions		Pineapple	1/4 cup
Pears (canned)		Pineapple juice	1/3 cup
Pumpkin		Plums	2 medium
Hubbard squash		Tangerine	1 large
Turnips		Tomato juice	1 cup
		Watermelon	1 cup

1800 calories (Table 5 1) will maintain most persons beyond the age of 70 in positive protein balance. In all probability, the vitamin and mineral requirements of healthy old people differ little from those of younger adults. As people age it is essential that they make each calorie carry its share of minerals, vitamins, and proteins.

Older people should therefore, avoid excesses of sugar, alcohol, fat, and nonenriched cereals, and should take enough exercise to permit adequate nutrition without an increase in body weight. To do so may require training and self discipline. Diets for older persons should be designed to provide protective foods rather than an excess intake of high calorie foods. They must also be highly individualized, taking into the account the patient's food likes and dislikes, eating habits, customs, background, and economic situation.

intake of such persons to 15 Gm per kilogram have definite limitations. The tendency toward increased nitrogen retention under such circumstances suggests that a high protein diet over an extended period may actually be detrimental to the elderly particularly if renal or hepatic disease is present.

A diet containing sufficient amounts of adequate protein as well as essential mineral elements is best provided by one pint of milk, whole or skim, one serving of cheese, meat, poultry or fish, duly one to two eggs, two slices of enriched bread with two teaspoons of butter or fortified margarine, two leafy green vegetables and one yellow vegetable (these may be cooked or raw), one whole grain cereal and freshly prepared citrus fruit or fruit juice.

Studies on the relationship of cholesterol and fat to blood lipids and the genesis of arteriosclerosis have encouraged the prescribing of low fat diets. The evidence that such diets will significantly decrease the incidence of atherosclerosis is still not convincing although the desirability of maintaining normal weight in elderly patients often requires a decrease in fat intake. Reduction of the fat content of the diet or the substitution of plant fats (which are usually liquid at room temperature) for animal fats is occasionally associated with a lowering of serum cholesterol levels. Lipid changes in the arterial intima begin in childhood however and serum cholesterol levels bear only a rough relationship to atherogenesis. The science of nutrition has not yet advanced to the point where it is possible to determine the precise quantity and type of fat intake required for optimal health and longevity. Lipotropic factors have no proved value at the present time either in preventing atherosclerosis or in mobilizing lipid deposits already present in blood vessels.

In the light of our present knowledge emphasis should be on the prevention of excessive caloric intake in the form of either carbohydrate or fat and on the provision of adequate quantities of biologically adequate proteins together with adequate minerals and vitamins.

## OBESITY

Work with experimental animals of short life span has indicated that longevity is inversely related to obesity. Obesity in itself pre-

TABLE 5 2 DAILY DIETARY ALLOWANCES RECOMMENDED BY THE FOOD AND NUTRITION BOARD  
OF THE NATIONAL RESEARCH COUNCIL (REVISED 1958)

Age Years	Weight Kg	Weight Lbs	Height Cm	Height In	Calories	Protein Gm	Calcium Cm	Iron Mg	Vit 1 IU	Thiamine Mg	Riboflavin Mg	Niacin mEq	Ascorbic acid Mg
Men	65	70	154	175	69	250*	70	0 8	5000	1 3†	1 8‡	18§	75
Women	65	58	128	163	64	1800*	58	0 8	5000	1 0†	1 5‡	17§	70

\* Calorie allowances apply to individuals usually engaged in moderate physical activity. For persons in sedentary occupations they are excessive.

† Thiamine allowances are based on 0 5 mg per 1000 calories consumed, since the need for this vitamin is related to the total calories of the diet. Adult intakes should not be less than 1 mg per day.

‡ Riboflavin allowances for larger individuals should be increased by 0 025 mg for each kilogram above the reference body weight.

§ Allowances for niacin are expressed as niacin equivalents assuming 60 mg of the amino acid tryptophane may be converted to 1 mg of niacin in the body. Adult allowances are based on requirements calculated according to body weight and calorie intake and increasing the value by 50 per cent.

## Nutrition of the Geriatric Patient

ducing diet is unsuccessful an 800 calorie high protein diet (Table 5-1) may be utilized. Drugs are not necessary as a rule. Although one of the amphetamine preparations such as methamphetamine in a daily dosage of 25 to 50 mg may be of help in patients with voracious appetites. In patients having associated constipation use of 1 to 2 teaspoons of a bulk laxative in a full glass of hot water 30 minutes to one hour before meals often provides a feeling of satiety.

The patient must be acquainted with the importance and seriousness of the problem and must be motivated. It is probably advisable to provide a maintenance vitamin preparation for patients who are following a diet markedly reduced in calories.

### THE IMPORTANCE OF PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION OF THE PATIENT'S NUTRITIONAL STATUS

A patient's nutritional status is often a prime factor in determining his fitness for surgical operation. Patients with nutritional deficiencies, particularly of protein, tolerate surgery poorly. Proteins are essential to cellular function, maintenance of osmotic pressure of the blood, regulation of blood volume and control of fluid exchange; they also aid in the maintenance of acid-base balance, arterial blood pressure and the vital functions of healing and resistance to infection.

Protein deficiency may be brought about in various ways: inadequate intake, blood loss and inadequacies of absorptive capacity and synthesis. In patients with hypoproteinemia the labile body water is first utilized in the synthesis of hemoglobin; hence the association of anemia and hypoproteinemia indicates a poor prognosis for surgery. It should be remembered, however, that deficiencies in blood volume and hemoglobin may be masked by dehydration; indeed, considerable protein deficiency may exist in the presence of relatively normal plasma levels. Such blood abnormalities are common in elderly patients with digestive diseases and it is essential that they be corrected preoperatively.

All patients who have had vomiting, diarrhea or a history of inadequate food intake prior to admission should have a preoperative study, including blood chemistry, to determine the

disposes to some diseases and complicates many others. It results in an increased mortality rate, and must be considered a serious abnormality. Mechanically it produces awkwardness and it increases the likelihood of osteoarthritis and injury to the large joints. It influences the development of diabetes, hypertension, heart disease, gallbladder disease, hernia, and varicosities. The mortality following surgical procedures is higher in obese patients, and current concepts of the pathologic physiology of weight gain indicate that the incidence of neurosis in fat people is high.

In approximately 10 per cent of patients hospitalized for chronic illness, obesity is a significant problem. Frequently the physician himself is in part to blame since many patients under prolonged medical observation in an institution are maintained on a hospital diet under conditions of restricted activity that permit considerable increase in weight. Many elderly patients hospitalized for chronic conditions eat a diet consisting chiefly of fruit, coffee cream and sugar bread and butter potatoes, pastry, and cereal. The amount of protein in the diet is negligible.

Obese patients present numerous complaints many of which are undoubtedly related to their overweight. These include central symptoms of dizziness and headache, respiratory symptoms of dyspnea, chest pain and fatigability, gastrointestinal symptoms of gas, belching and indigestion, and endocrine symptoms of intolerance to heat, hypertrichosis, and nervousness. A high percentage of such patients have elevated systolic and diastolic blood pressures which often respond to a reduction in weight. Despite the obviously excessive caloric intake a dietary imbalance evidenced by anemia and clinical signs of vitaminosis is not uncommon.

From the practical standpoint, obesity is the result of overeating or excessive caloric intake, or both. Treatment should include careful study and personality evaluation, insight into domestic problems, and analysis of the daily routine eating habits and motivations. Although disturbances of the endocrine or central nervous system are rarely etiologic factors, they should be treated when present.

The majority of patients will lose weight on a 1280 calorie diet consisting of 60 Gm. of protein, 150 Gm. of carbohydrate and 50 Gm. of fat. Under some conditions the protein content may be increased and the carbohydrate decreased. When the standard re-

ing diet is unsuccessful an 800 calorie high protein diet (Table 1) may be utilized. Drugs are not necessary as a rule although one of the amphetamine preparations such as methamphetamine at a daily dosage of 2.5 to 5 mg. may be of help in patients with voracious appetites. In patients having associated constipation the use of 1 to 2 teaspoons of a bulk laxative in a full glass of hot water 30 minutes to one hour before meals often provides a feeling of satiety.

The patient must be acquainted with the importance and seriousness of the problem and must be motivated. It is probably advisable to provide a maintenance vitamin preparation for patients who are following a diet markedly reduced in calories.

### THE IMPORTANCE OF PREOPERATIVE EVALUATION OF THE PATIENT'S NUTRITIONAL STATUS

A patient's nutritional status is often a prime factor in determining his fitness for surgical operation. Patients with nutritional deficiencies, particularly of protein, tolerate surgery poorly. The proteins are essential to cellular function, maintenance of osmotic pressure of the blood, regulation of blood volume, and control of fluid exchange; they also aid in the maintenance of acid-base balance, arterial blood pressure, and the vital functions of wound healing and resistance to infection.

Protein deficiency may be brought about in various ways: inadequate intake, blood loss, and inadequacies of absorption and synthesis. In patients with hypoproteinemia the labile body stores are first utilized in the synthesis of hemoglobin; hence the association of anemia and hypoalbuminemia indicates a poor prognosis for surgery. It should be remembered, however, that serious deficiencies in blood volume and hemoglobin may be masked by dehydration; indeed, considerable protein deficiency may exist in the presence of relatively normal plasma levels. Such blood deficiencies are common in elderly patients with digestive diseases, and it is essential that they be corrected preoperatively.

All patients who have had vomiting, diarrhea, or a history of inadequate food intake prior to admission should have careful preoperative study, including liver function tests for detecting and anticipating cellular liver damage and evaluation of the non-



disposes to some diseases and complicates many others. It results in an increased mortality rate, and must be considered a serious abnormality. Mechanically it produces awkwardness and it increases the likelihood of osteoarthritis and injury to the large joints. It influences the development of diabetes, hypertension, heart disease, gallbladder disease, hernia, and varicosities. The mortality following surgical procedures is higher in obese patients and current concepts of the pathologic physiology of weight gain indicate that the incidence of neoplasia in fat people is high.

In approximately 10 per cent of patients hospitalized for chronic illness obesity is a significant problem. Frequently the physician himself is in part to blame, since many patients under prolonged medical observation in an institution are maintained on a hospital diet under conditions of restricted activity that permit considerable increase in weight. Many elderly patients hospitalized for chronic conditions eat a diet consisting chiefly of fruit, coffee cream and sugar, bread and butter, potatoes, pastry, and cereal. The amount of protein in the diet is negligible.

Obese patients present numerous complaints many of which are undoubtedly related to their overweight. These include central symptoms of dizziness and headache, respiratory symptoms of dyspnea, chest pain and fatigability, gastrointestinal symptoms of gas, belching and indigestion, and endocrine symptoms of intolerance to heat, hypertrophicosis and nervousness. A high percentage of such patients have elevated systolic and diastolic blood pressures which often respond to a reduction in weight. Despite the obviously excessive caloric intake a dietary imbalance evidenced by anemia and clinical signs of vitaminosis is not uncommon.

From the practical standpoint obesity is the result of overeating or excessive caloric intake or both. Treatment should include careful study and personality evaluation, insight into domestic problems, and analysis of the daily routine, eating habits and motivations. Although disturbances of the endocrine or central nervous system are rarely etiologic factors they should be treated when present.

The majority of patients will lose weight on a 1250 calorie diet consisting of 60 Gm of protein, 150 Gm of carbohydrate and 50 Gm of fat. Under some conditions the protein content may be increased and the carbohydrate decreased. When the standard re-

even when given rapidly. When potassium depletion is marked, potassium chloride (available in ampules containing 20 and 40 mEq) may be added to the fluid given. If possible, serial electrolyte determinations and electrocardiograms should be done to guide the physician.

When the primary loss is electrolytes the extracellular fluid is hypotonic. The kidney excretes more water, decreasing the volume of extracellular fluid and leading to low sodium, potassium or chloride syndromes. Both electrolytes and water are required for treatment. Chronic diarrhea or habitual purgation in the elderly, for example, may deplete the body's store of potassium, causing disturbances in renal and myocardial function. In such cases the parenteral or oral replacement of potassium together with discontinuance of laxatives is usually all that need be done.

There is little risk of producing pulmonary, peripheral, or cerebral edema by relatively large amounts of plain water given orally. For the administration of parenteral fluids, an intravenous polyethylene catheter may be required. Fluids can then be given at a slow, constant rate so as not to overtax the circulatory system; this slow drip also decreases thirst and irritability most satisfactorily.

## REFERENCES

1. ELLISON E. H., ZOLLINGER R. M., CEDARS N. and BRITT C. I. Value of blood volume determinations in gastrointestinal disease. *A.M.A. Arch. Surg.* 66:669, 1953.
2. KEYS A. Nutrition for the later years of life. *Pub. Health Rep.* 67:484, 1952.
3. LAYNE J. A., SCHENK F. R. and CAMARA A. A. The importance of simultaneous correction of plain water deficits and extracellular fluid volume loss when replacing fluid and electrolyte loss from the gastrointestinal tract. *Gastroenterology* 27:531, 1954.
4. RUFFIN J. M., CAYER D. and PERLZWEIG W. A. The relationship between the clinical picture of a mild or early vitamin deficiency and laboratory determinations of vitamin levels. *Gastroenterology* 3:340, 1944.

protein nitrogen, urinary function, and serum electrolytes. When the results of such screening tests are suggestive or positive, additional determinations of liver functions should be done. The findings may indicate that major surgery will be hazardous and unwise, and that the type of hepatic insufficiency present may respond to diet, transfusions, antibiotics, and vitamins.

## FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE DISTURBANCES

Patients with gastrointestinal disturbances may lose large amounts of water and electrolytes as a result of vomiting, diarrhea, fistulas, or intubation and suction. The loss of water produces hypertonic extracellular fluid and a deficit of cellular water, often leading to oliguria, azotemia, a decreased blood volume, and shock. Acute diarrhea is commonly associated with a loss of water in excess of electrolytes, if it is allowed to persist, serious dehydration with cellular hyperosmolality may lead to mental confusion, convulsions, and even death. Since the administration of salt increases the hypertonicity of the extracellular fluid, a hypotonic solution (two parts of 5 per cent dextrose in water to one part of 5 per cent dextrose in normal saline) should be used for replacement therapy. The use of hypertonic solutions in patients having increased extracellular fluid, with pleural effusion, ascites, or edema may result in retention of excess water and further expansion of extracellular volume.

For the replacement of abnormal losses of fluid and electrolytes from the gastrointestinal tract, Layne and his co-workers (1951) advocate the use of hypotonic or isotonic electrolyte solutions by vein with adequate amounts of plain water and dextrose. For example, 0.45 per cent of sodium chloride in a 5 per cent solution of dextrose can be used for rehydrating the cells, restoring extracellular fluid, and providing expendable fluid as well as some calories. When there is a greater proportional need for sodium than for chloride, 40 to 80 mEq of molar sodium lactate may be added to 1 l. of 5 per cent dextrose in water. When there is a greater proportional need for chloride than for sodium, ammonium chloride (4.5 Gm. in a liter of 2 per cent dextrose) may be administered intravenously. Acidifying salts, however, do not replace potassium which is an important cation. Most commercial solutions do not contain enough potassium to produce serious myocardial effects.

Perception of pain is a physiopathologic process. The pain perception threshold is constant for a given individual. A specific stimulus will produce pain only after a threshold is reached. Anatomically, pain perception is the result of a specific receptor, a conduction system and an interpretation area in the cerebral cortex. In contradistinction to the perception of pain, reaction to a painful stimulus varies from individual to individual and even in the same individual from time to time. The pain reaction is dependent upon many factors such as age, sex, race, environmental circumstances, past experience, central nervous system irritability, emotional state and mental attitude. No definite localized anatomic apparatus is responsible for the function of pain reaction.

### THE USE OF DRUGS TO CONTROL PAIN

Analgesic and sedative drugs exert their pain relieving effect by raising the threshold for the perception of pain by altering the pattern of reaction to pain or by both methods. The peripheral nerves and sensory receptors are not affected by morphine or other narcotics. It is thus obvious that the analgesic effects of the narcotics are the result of their action on the central nervous system. Recent investigation has demonstrated that narcotics have more effect on pain reaction than on pain perception. The major function of the opiates, particularly morphine, is to alter the reaction to pain. The pain is still perceived but the patient is capable of tolerating it.

Any physician who has a license to do so can prescribe narcotics for pain but their proper use is an art. Patients deserve more intelligent methods of pain relief than routine and haphazard administration of narcotics. For each individual patient there is one specific narcotic that is particularly suitable for the control of pain. By trying different types of narcotics one can determine the drug best suited for a particular patient. The cerebral effects of morphine may be desirable in patients whose pain has a high psychogenic component. In others the euphorogenic effect may prove to be an uncomfortable sensation. While morphine is considered by many physicians to be the analgesic of choice for the pain of acute myocardial infarction, it is inconceivable that a physician would knowingly expose a cardiac patient to the risk of repeated episodes

## CHAPTER 6

# The Relief of Pain

D LeROY CRANDELL

It is difficult to think of a pathologic condition that is not associated with some degree of discomfort or pain. Pain, with all its complexities, is a problem that the physician encounters daily in his medical practice. Its control gives rise to more problems now than formerly for more people are being temporarily retrieved from death and are enduring longer, more drawn-out terminations of their illnesses.

Pain is a subjective phenomenon with objective manifestations. This fact alone accounts for the difficulty encountered in the control of pain. Leitch (1939) wrote: "Physical pain is not a simple affair of an impulse traveling at a fixed rate along a nerve. It is the resultant of the conflict between a stimulus and the whole individual." Our failures to control pain in the past have been partly the result of failure to recognize the psychosomatic aspects of pain. Intractable pain produces psychologic as well as physical depletions. Too often attention is focused on the interruption of the pain pathways without sufficient thought to the psychogenic aspects of the problem. Psychologic factors can modify pain at any level of intensity. The psychologic implications in the pain experience are probably more important, although less understood than any other facet of the problem. The employment of psychotherapeutic measures such as patience, sympathetic understanding, moral encouragement, and confident reassurance are vital to success in relieving pain.

Pain consists of two components: (1) the physical perception of pain and (2) the psychologic reaction to pain. Both components must be considered in the clinical approach to the problem of pain. The dissociation of these two components is one of the basic approaches to its control.

long or by what means the patient has been treated elsewhere the first prerequisite to the successful management of chronic pain is a complete history and physical examination to determine the etiologic mechanism and neural pathways involved. Anyone experienced in dealing with the problems of pain can cite cases in which previous medical treatment of the pain had been misdirected and a simple procedure based on a thorough history and physical examination resulted in complete relief. The history and physical examination also allow the examiner to become acquainted with the patient to evaluate his tolerance to pain and to form an opinion as to the psychic components present. Once the physician has accurately identified the neural pathways involved whether of the autonomic or the somatic nervous system, he will be able to formulate a plan for interrupting the pain pathways by appropriate surgical or chemical measures. In many cases regional nerve blocks with local anesthetic agents will break the pain cycle and effect complete relief. If the stimuli are persistent, as in malignant disease interruption of the neural pathways with a neurolytic agent or by a surgical procedure will have a more lasting effect.

It must never be forgotten that the patient's confidence in the physician based on the physician's enthusiastic yet sympathetic approach is of prime importance in determining the effectiveness of any method of managing pain. The importance of psychotherapy in the management of pain is emphasized by a recent investigation which showed that in fully one third of the patients studied post operative pain was relieved by a placebo (Papper, Brodie and Rovenstine 1952).

The major types of pain and their therapy in the geriatric patient will now be considered.

### Acute Somatic Pain

Somatic pain is characterized by sharpness and accurate localization. Pain fibers of somatic origin course through spinal nerves to reach the central nervous system. The interruption of peripheral afferent somatic pain pathways by blocking the appropriate regional nerves with a local anesthetic such as lidocaine (1 to 2 per cent), tetracaine (0.15 to 0.25 per cent) or Metycaine (1.5 per

of violent retching and vomiting such as frequently result from the administration of morphine

Methadone hydrochloride, a heptanone derivative, has an analgesic potency equivalent to morphine. Dilaudid has five times the analgesic potency of morphine. Either Methadone or Dilaudid provides analgesia equivalent to that obtained with equipotent doses of morphine, and produces less euphoria and fewer side effects such as nausea, vomiting and constipation. This advantage over morphine is an important consideration in prescribing narcotics for the relief of pain. In some conditions the spasmogenic effect of morphine is to be avoided. Demerol, because of its spasmolytic action, is preferred in these cases. Despite the claims for Pantopon, it is nothing more than an expensive form of morphine.

The best pain relief is afforded when the narcotic is administered intravenously. When the intravenous route is used, small doses of morphine (4 to 8 mg) or Demerol (25 to 50 mg) act more effectively and rapidly and cause less circulatory and respiratory depression than larger doses given subcutaneously. In the first 4 to 6 hours after operation the intravenous administration of one half to one fourth of the usual dose of narcotic will prevent depression of vital physiologic mechanisms. Too often, however, postoperative restlessness and delirium are manifestations of cerebral hypoxia, a condition in which narcotics are contraindicated.

Although the barbiturates, tranquilizers and other sedatives are not analgesics they are valuable adjuncts in the treatment of pain since they modify the psychic reaction to the painful stimulus. These drugs, as well as the narcotics, dissociate the perception of pain from the reaction to it, and thus effect a temporary pharmacologic prefrontal lobotomy. By combining a barbiturate or tranquilizer with a small dose of a narcotic the adverse pharmacologic effects of large doses of narcotics can be avoided. When the psychic components of pain such as apprehension and fear are prominent factors in the pain experience, a barbiturate or tranquilizer alone may suffice.

### OTHER METHODS FOR THE CONTROL OF PAIN

Pain may be acute or chronic. Acute pain is more amenable to treatment than the prolonged or chronic type. No matter how

long or by what means the patient has been treated elsewhere the first prerequisite to the successful management of chronic pain is a complete history and physical examination to determine the etiologic mechanism and neural pathways involved. Anyone experienced in dealing with the problems of pain can cite cases in which previous medical treatment of the pain had been misdirected, and a simple procedure based on a thorough history and physical examination resulted in complete relief. The history and physical examination also allow the examiner to become acquainted with the patient, to evaluate his tolerance to pain, and to form an opinion as to the psychic components present. Once the physician has accurately identified the neural pathways involved, whether of the autonomic or the somatic nervous system, he will be able to formulate a plan for interrupting the pain pathways by appropriate surgical or chemical measures. In many cases regional nerve blocks with local anesthetic agents will break the pain cycle and effect complete relief. If the stimuli are persistent as in malignant disease, interruption of the neural pathways with a neurolytic agent or by a surgical procedure will have a more lasting effect.

It must never be forgotten that the patient's confidence in the physician based on the physician's enthusiastic yet sympathetic approach is of prime importance in determining the effectiveness of any method of managing pain. The importance of psychotherapy in the management of pain is emphasized by a recent investigation which showed that in fully one third of the patients studied postoperative pain was relieved by a placebo (Papper, Brodie and Rovenstone, 1952).

The major types of pain and their therapy in the geriatric patient will now be considered.

### Acute Somatic Pain

Somatic pain is characterized by sharpness and accurate localization. Pain fibers of somatic origin course through spinal nerves to reach the central nervous system. The interruption of peripheral afferent somatic pain pathways by blocking the appropriate regional nerves with a local anesthetic such as lidocaine (1 to 2 per cent), tetracaine (0.15 to 0.25 per cent) or Metycaine (1.5 per



of violent retching and vomiting such as frequently result from the administration of morphine

Methadone hydrochloride, a heptanone derivative, has an analgesic potency equivalent to morphine Dilaudid has five times the analgesic potency of morphine Either Methadone or Dilaudid provides analgesia equivalent to that obtained with equipotent doses of morphine, and produces less euphoria and fewer side effects such as nausea, vomiting, and constipation This advantage over morphine is an important consideration in prescribing narcotics for the relief of pain In some conditions the spasmogenic effect of morphine is to be avoided Demerol, because of its spasmolytic action, is preferred in these cases Despite the claims for Pantopon, it is nothing more than an expensive form of morphine

The best pain relief is afforded when the narcotic is administered intravenously When the intravenous route is used, small doses of morphine (4 to 8 mg) or Demerol (25 to 50 mg) act more effectively and rapidly and cause less circulatory and respiratory depression than larger doses given subcutaneously In the first 4 to 6 hours after operation the intravenous administration of one half to one fourth of the usual dose of narcotic will prevent depression of vital physiologic mechanisms Too often, however, postoperative restlessness and delirium are manifestations of cerebral hypoxia a condition in which narcotics are contraindicated

Although the barbiturates, tranquilizers, and other sedatives are not analgesics they are valuable adjuncts in the treatment of pain, since they modify the psychic reaction to the painful stimulus These drugs as well as the narcotics dissociate the perception of pain from the reaction to it, and thus effect a temporary pharmacologic prefrontal lobotomy By combining a barbiturate or tranquilizer with a small dose of a narcotic, the adverse pharmacologic effects of large doses of narcotics can be avoided When the psychic components of pain such as apprehension and fear, are prominent factors in the pain experience a barbiturate or tranquilizer alone may suffice

## OTHER METHODS FOR THE CONTROL OF PAIN

Pain may be acute or chronic Acute pain is more amenable to treatment than the prolonged or chronic type No matter how

long or by what means the patient has been treated elsewhere the first prerequisite to the successful management of chronic pain is a complete history and physical examination to determine the etiologic mechanism and neural pathways involved. Anyone experienced in dealing with the problems of pain can cite cases in which previous medical treatment of the pain had been misdirected and a simple procedure based on a thorough history and physical examination resulted in complete relief. The history and physical examination also allow the examiner to become acquainted with the patient to evaluate his tolerance to pain and to form an opinion as to the psychic components present. Once the physician has accurately identified the neural pathways involved, whether of the autonomic or the somatic nervous system, he will be able to formulate a plan for interrupting the pain pathways by appropriate surgical or chemical measures. In many cases regional nerve blocks with local anesthetic agents will break the pain cycle and effect complete relief. If the stimuli are persistent as in malignant disease interruption of the neural pathways with a neurolytic agent or by a surgical procedure will have a more lasting effect.

It must never be forgotten that the patient's confidence in the physician based on the physician's enthusiastic yet sympathetic approach is of prime importance in determining the effectiveness of any method of managing pain. The importance of psychotherapy in the management of pain is emphasized by a recent investigation which showed that in fully one third of the patients studied postoperative pain was relieved by a placebo (Papper, Brodie and Roenstine 1952).

The major types of pain and their therapy in the geriatric patient will now be considered.

### **Acute Somatic Pain**

Somatic pain is characterized by sharpness and accurate localization. Pain fibers of somatic origin course through spinal nerves to reach the central nervous system. The interruption of peripheral afferent somatic pain pathways by blocking the appropriate regional nerves with a local anesthetic such as lidocaine (1 to 2 per cent) tetracaine (0.15 to 0.25 per cent) or Metycaine (1.5 per

of violent retching and vomiting such as frequently result from the administration of morphine

Methadone hydrochloride, a heptanone derivative, has an analgesic potency equivalent to morphine. Dilaudid has five times the analgesic potency of morphine. Either Methadone or Dilaudid provides analgesia equivalent to that obtained with equipotent doses of morphine, and produces less euphoria and fewer side effects such as nausea, vomiting and constipation. This advantage over morphine is an important consideration in prescribing narcotics for the relief of pain. In some conditions the spasmogenic effect of morphine is to be avoided. Demerol, because of its spasmolytic action, is preferred in these cases. Despite the claims for Pantopon, it is nothing more than an expensive form of morphine.

The best pain relief is afforded when the narcotic is administered intravenously. When the intravenous route is used, small doses of morphine (4 to 8 mg) or Demerol (25 to 50 mg) act more effectively and rapidly and cause less circulatory and respiratory depression than larger doses given subcutaneously. In the first 4 to 6 hours after operation, the intravenous administration of one half to one fourth of the usual dose of narcotic will prevent depression of vital physiologic mechanisms. Too often however postoperative restlessness and delirium are manifestations of cerebral hypoxia, a condition in which narcotics are contraindicated.

Although the barbiturates, tranquilizers, and other sedatives are not analgesics they are valuable adjuncts in the treatment of pain since they modify the psychic reaction to the painful stimulus. These drugs, as well as the narcotics, dissociate the perception of pain from the reaction to it and thus effect a temporary pharmacologic prefrontal lobotomy. By combining a barbiturate or tranquilizer with a small dose of a narcotic the adverse pharmacologic effects of large doses of narcotics can be avoided. When the psychic components of pain such as apprehension and fear are prominent factors in the pain experience a barbiturate or tranquilizer alone may suffice.

## OTHER METHODS FOR THE CONTROL OF PAIN

Pain may be acute or chronic. Acute pain is more amenable to treatment than the prolonged or chronic type. No matter how

obtained by sympathetic blockade with local anesthetic agents. If a thoracic viscus is the source of pain, paravertebral block of the upper five or six sympathetic ganglions may be effective. For pain arising from abdominal viscera, a block of the splanchnic nerves or celiac ganglion is done. The vagus nerve does not conduct pain.

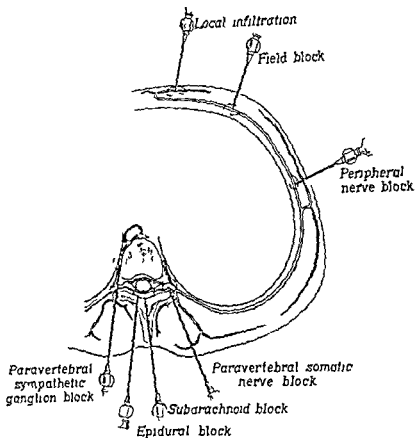


FIG. 63. A diagrammatic illustration showing the various sites at which a typical thoracic spinal nerve may be blocked.

sensations from the abdominal viscera. The afferent pain fibers to the bladder, rectum, and uterus come through the sacral parasympathetic nerves. Since most of the viscera, with the exception of the kidneys, ureters, and ascending and descending colon, have bilateral innervation, a bilateral nerve block usually must be done.

Pain of both visceral and somatic origins may be referred to a

cent) has given consistently good results. A few examples of this method of therapy are brachial plexus block for the relief of acute brachialgia, suprascapular nerve block for the relief of subacromial bursitis, and cervical block for the relief of acute torticollis and pain in the greater occipital nerve. In traumatic and postoperative pain regional nerve blocks are of value where early ambulation is desired and the adverse circulatory and respiratory effects of narcotics are to be avoided. Often the interruption of the pain cycle will long outlast the duration of the local anesthetic. In many cases, only one to three blocks are needed to provide permanent relief from acute somatic pain.

The utilization of intercostal block for the relief of pain due to multiple rib fractures or costochondral separations is of great value in the geriatric patient. In these situations pain leads to impaired pulmonary ventilation, with retention of secretions and the subsequent deleterious effects of infection, hypoxia and hypercarbia. When pain relief is afforded by immobilization and narcotics pulmonary ventilation and the elimination of secretions are further impaired. An appropriate intercostal nerve block not only relieves pain but promotes rather than impedes pulmonary ventilation and in addition preserves the cough reflex and ciliary activity for the elimination of secretions.

The intravenous administration of dilute solutions of procaine (500 mg. in 500 cc. of 5 per cent dextrose in water) or a 5 per cent solution of alcohol has been efficacious for the relief of pain associated with generalized pruritic dermatoses and thermal injuries.

In conjunction with physiotherapy, the intravenous administration of curare under the supervision of an anesthesiologist has been beneficial in the treatment of painful muscle spasms. The muscle spasms associated with torticollis, trauma and arthritis have been especially responsive to this form of therapy.

### **Visceral Pain**

In contrast to somatic pain, visceral pain is deep, dull and poorly localized. Pain fibers of visceral origin course through the autonomic nerves (sympathetic and parasympathetic) before entering the dorsal spinal roots and the central nervous system.

Gratifying results in the treatment of visceral pain have been

and trophic changes. The pain and vasomotor changes are often improved or completely abolished by interruption of the involved sympathetic pathways in conjunction with physiotherapy. The sympathetic pathways to the upper extremity are interrupted by stellate ganglion block and those to the lower extremity by blocking the paravertebral lumbar sympathetic ganglion.

### Pain of Peripheral Vascular Disease

As people exercise less and live longer, more alterations in the function of the peripheral vascular system are being seen.

In peripheral vascular disease the obstruction to blood flow is the result of two components present in varying degrees: (1) organic occlusion and (2) functional vasospasm. Vasospasm is the factor that is controllable and most responsive to therapy. In Raynaud's disease and phenomenon the vasospastic element predominates. Thromboangiitis obliterans exhibits a decreasing vasospastic element as the organic occlusive element progresses. In arteriosclerosis obliterans the occlusive element predominates, but some vasomotor spasm is often present.

In many cases abolishment of the vasospastic element by sympathetic inhibition will produce improvement in the circulation and relief of pain. The more severe and extensive the organic occlusive element, however, the less are the chances for improvement by interruption of the sympathetic pathways.

By sympathetic block of an extremity it is possible to determine whether alterations in blood flow to the extremity are due to generalized obstruction of the arteries and arterioles or to spasm of the vessels. For best results, the constant temperature room and a constantly recording thermometer should be used. For an upper extremity the stellate ganglion and the second, third, and fourth thoracic sympathetic ganglia on the corresponding side must be blocked. The results are checked by utilizing the sympathogalvanic reflex (Lewis, 1955) although one must realize that the production of a Horner's syndrome does not necessarily mean that complete sympathetic blockade has been accomplished. For a lower extremity sympathetic blockade of the first, second, and third lumbar ganglia is accomplished through a paravertebral approach. If anti-

corresponding cutaneous segment, but pain of the latter origin is more clearly localized. The reflex arcs of hyperalgesia, muscle tenderness and spasm, sweating, vasomotor changes, and increased pilomotor activity usually associated with visceral pain may aid in determining the viscus from which the pain is arising. When cutaneous pain is of visceral origin, the interruption of somatic pain pathways will not relieve it.

Intractable angina pectoris is frequently relieved following a block of the upper five thoracic ganglia, either through the left paravertebral approach or by a left stellate ganglion block. A bilateral sympathetic block is avoided for fear of producing vagal cardiac arrest. Newer operative procedures aimed at increasing the coronary blood flow through anastomotic collateral vessels may prove to be more valuable in the management of angina pectoris.

In such visceral disorders as acute pancreatitis and the post cholecystectomy syndrome, pain relief may be accomplished by interrupting the splanchnic nerve pathways with subarachnoid, epidural or paravertebral blocks. Best results have been afforded by the injection of a 0.15 per cent solution of tetracaine hydrochloride every four to six hours through an indwelling polyvinyl catheter inserted into the epidural space.

The pain of acute pancreatitis is associated with reflex spasm of the duodenum, the sphincter of Oddi and the pancreatic ducts. Morphine augments these adverse effects. Demerol and the pure sympatholytic drugs such as atropine exert a beneficial spasmolytic action. Blocking the splanchnic nerve or celiac plexus not only relieves pain but abolishes the reflex visceral spasm. If splanchnic block is effective but does not relieve the pain permanently, a neurolytic agent such as phenol in a 6 per cent solution may be injected, or surgical interruption may be performed.

### **Pain of Autonomic Imbalance**

Causalgia and other reflex sympathetic dystrophies such as the shoulder-hand syndrome and phantom limb pain are produced by autonomic imbalance. The reflex pain does not conform to any segmental or peripheral nerve distribution, and is associated with hyperalgesia and hyperesthesia, and with vasomotor sudomotor

and trophic changes. The pain and vasomotor changes are often improved or completely abolished by interruption of the involved sympathetic pathways in conjunction with physiotherapy. The sympathetic pathways to the upper extremity are interrupted by stellate ganglion block and those to the lower extremity by blocking the paravertebral lumbar sympathetic ganglion.

### **Pain of Peripheral Vascular Disease**

As people exercise less and live longer more alterations in the function of the peripheral vascular system are being seen.

In peripheral vascular disease the obstruction to blood flow is the result of two components, present in varying degrees: (1) organic occlusion and (2) functional vasospasm. Vasospasm is the factor that is controllable and most responsive to therapy. In Raynaud's disease and phenomenon the vasospastic element predominates. Thromboangitis obliterans exhibits a decreasing vasospastic element as the organic occlusive element progresses. In arteriosclerosis obliterans the occlusive element predominates but some vasomotor spasm is often present.

In many cases abolishment of the vasospastic element by sympathetic inhibition will produce improvement in the circulation and relief of pain. The more severe and extensive the organic occlusive element, however, the less are the chances for improvement by interruption of the sympathetic pathways.

By sympathetic block of an extremity it is possible to determine whether alterations in blood flow to the extremity are due to generalized obstruction of the arteries and arterioles or to spasm of the vessels. For best results the constant temperature room and a constantly recording thermometer should be used. For an upper extremity the stellate ganglion and the second, third and fourth thoracic sympathetic ganglia on the corresponding side must be blocked. The results are checked by utilizing the sympathogalvanic reflex (Lewis 1955) although one must realize that the production of a Horner's syndrome does not necessarily mean that complete sympathetic blockade has been accomplished. For a lower extremity sympathetic blockade of the first, second and third lumbar ganglia is accomplished through a paravertebral approach. If anti-



coagulant therapy is to be instituted, a polyvinyl catheter may be inserted into the lumbar epidural space for continuous sympathetic blockade.

The most common peripheral vascular disease encountered in the geriatric patient is arteriosclerosis obliterans. In the patient with this condition who is a candidate for sympathectomy, an appropriate sympathetic block will indicate the increase in blood flow that may be expected from surgery. Digits revealing a decrease in temperature and increased pain following sympathetic block may become gangrenous following sympathectomy. This paradoxical effect occurs when much of the circulating blood is shunted away from the distal portion of the extremity through dilated arterioles proximal to an area of obstruction in the main artery. Sympathectomy is obviously contraindicated when this phenomenon appears following a sympathetic block. If temperature studies following sympathetic blockade indicate the presence of vasomotor tone a surgical sympathectomy should be beneficial.

The disease entities commonly associated with various degrees of vasospasm in the geriatric patient are accidental trauma (such as crush injuries and those due to cold and refrigerant gases), surgical trauma (such as that associated with the repair of vessels injured by the newer graft procedures for arterial obstruction), postembolic spasm and reflex vasospasm associated with acute thrombophlebitis.

The functional changes and concomitant vasospasm in the inflamed or traumatized vascular system obstruct the blood flow and increase the pressure in small vessels locally. The degree of change occurring will be inversely proportional to the amount of collateral circulation that is available. If the original lesion is obstruction, spasm soon follows producing increased capillary permeability and edema and thus forming a vicious self-perpetuating cycle. The important phase in this cycle is spasm. When this is abolished by sympathetic blockade the whole cycle is broken. Elevation of the extremity for gravity drainage then becomes a really effective tool. Pain due to ischemia is relieved by the resultant improvement in circulation. In more than one case following an embolus to the popliteal or femoral artery sympathetic blockade has made it possible to avoid amputation of the leg or has allowed an amputation to be performed at a lower level.

## Chronic Pain

The intractable pain associated with inoperable malignant lesions is frequently encountered in geriatric patients. There is no greater challenge in medicine than that afforded by the problem of intractable pain. It is vitally important to institute rational methods of pain management before a central pain pattern develops or the patient becomes addicted to narcotics.

Reliance on narcotics for the management of intractable pain requires increasing doses given at closer intervals with diminished effectiveness. The best solution is offered by *early* surgical or chemical interruption of the pain pathways. The results following such a procedure will be discouraging if a central pain pattern or addiction to narcotics has developed. In such cases the interruption of the pain pathways may only serve to reduce the narcotic requirement. It is unbelievable that some physicians would force a patient to choose between narcotics and chordotomy or would evaluate the success of a chordotomy by the rapidity with which narcotics can be discontinued.

Preliminary block with local anesthetics is a valuable adjunct in planning a surgical procedure for the relief of intractable pain and should be used with greater frequency. When a chordotomy is contemplated, subarachnoid block to determine the level of sensory analgesia required to produce relief of pain may provide the neurosurgeon with valuable information.

When pain of visceral origin remains localized, it can best be controlled by blocking the paravertebral sympathetic ganglion with a 6 per cent solution of phenol. This solution is preferred to alcohol for peripheral nerve blocks because neuritis is a serious and frequent complication following the injection of alcohol. Since metastasis and spread to adjacent organs are characteristic of malignant lesions, subarachnoid block may become necessary. The effectiveness of subarachnoid alcohol block in relieving pain is explained by the fact that all pain fibers, whether visceral or somatic, enter the spinal cord through the posterior roots. The best results with subarachnoid alcohol block are obtained when the pain is in the trunk. If in such cases the block is properly performed, relief from pain can be provided without the danger of complications such as weakness of the lower extremities or paralysis of the bladder and rectal

coagulant therapy is to be instituted, a polyvinyl catheter may be inserted into the lumbar epidural space for continuous sympathetic blockade.

The most common peripheral vascular disease encountered in the geriatric patient is arteriosclerosis obliterans. In the patient with this condition who is a candidate for sympathectomy, an appropriate sympathetic block will indicate the increase in blood flow that may be expected from surgery. Digits revealing a decrease in temperature and increased pain following sympathetic block may become gangrenous following sympathectomy. This paradoxical effect occurs when much of the circulating blood is shunted away from the distal portion of the extremity through dilated arterioles proximal to an area of obstruction in the main artery. Sympathectomy is obviously contraindicated when this phenomenon appears following a sympathetic block. If temperature studies following sympathetic blockade indicate the presence of vasomotor tone, a surgical sympathectomy should be beneficial.

The disease entities commonly associated with various degrees of vasospasm in the geriatric patient are accidental trauma (such as crush injuries and those due to cold and refrigerant gases), surgical trauma (such as that associated with the repair of vessels injured by the newer graft procedures for arterial obstruction), postembolic spasm, and reflex vasospasm associated with acute thrombophlebitis.

The functional changes and concomitant vasospasm in the inflamed or traumatized vascular system obstruct the blood flow and increase the pressure in small vessels locally. The degree of change occurring will be inversely proportional to the amount of collateral circulation that is available. If the original lesion is obstruction, spasm soon follows, producing increased capillary permeability and edema, and thus forming a vicious self-perpetuating cycle. The important phase in this cycle is spasm. When this is abolished by sympathetic blockade, the whole cycle is broken. Elevation of the extremity for gravity drainage then becomes a really effective tool. Pain due to ischemia is relieved by the resultant improvement in circulation. In more than one case following an embolus to the popliteal or femoral artery, sympathetic blockade has made it possible to avoid amputation of the leg or has allowed an amputation to be performed at a lower level.

## Intractable Pain

The intractable pain associated with inoperable malignant lesions frequently encountered in geriatric patients. There is no greater challenge in medicine than that afforded by the problem of intractable pain. It is vitally important to institute rational methods of pain management before a central pain pattern develops or the patient becomes addicted to narcotics.

Reliance on narcotics for the management of intractable pain requires increasing doses given at closer intervals with diminished effectiveness. The best solution is offered by *early* surgical or chemical interruption of the pain pathways. The results following such a procedure will be discouraging if a central pain pattern or addiction to narcotics has developed. In such cases the interruption of the pain pathways may only serve to reduce the narcotic requirement. It is unbelievable that some physicians would force a patient to choose between narcotics and chordotomy or would evaluate the success of a chordotomy by the rapidity with which narcotics can be discontinued.

Preliminary block with local anesthetics is a valuable adjunct in planning a surgical procedure for the relief of intractable pain and should be used with greater frequency. When a chordotomy is contemplated subarachnoid block to determine the level of sensory analgesia required to produce relief of pain may provide the neurosurgeon with valuable information.

When pain of visceral origin remains localized it can best be controlled by blocking the paravertebral sympathetic ganglion with a 6 per cent solution of phenol. This solution is preferred to alcohol for peripheral nerve blocks because neuritis is a serious and frequent complication following the injection of alcohol. Since metastasis and spread to adjacent organs are characteristic of malignant lesions subarachnoid block may become necessary. The effectiveness of subarachnoid alcohol block in relieving pain is explained by the fact that all pain fibers whether visceral or somatic enter the spinal cord through the posterior roots. The best results with subarachnoid alcohol block are obtained when the pain is in the trunk. If in such cases the block is properly performed relief from pain can be provided without the danger of complications such as weakness of the lower extremities or paralysis of the bladder and rectal

sphincter Subarachnoid alcohol block should be limited to patients who are in such poor physical condition that surgery constitutes an unjustifiable risk, or whose life expectancy is measured in terms of a few weeks or months. The average duration of pain relief following this procedure is three to five months.

If the patient is in good physical condition, he should be afforded permanent relief by a neurosurgical procedure. The efficacy of rhizotomy, sympathectomy, spinothalamic chordotomy and prefrontal lobotomy in relieving intractable pain is beyond dispute. Even the surgical interruption of the pain pathways however, may be accompanied by serious complications and occasional failures. Prior intrathecal injection with neurolytic agents may complicate the surgical procedure. Because of the adverse personality changes that often develop subsequent to prefrontal lobotomy, spinothalamic chordotomy is generally preferable. In patients with limited life expectancy who do not respond to chordotomy, or in whom chordotomy is not indicated, prefrontal lobotomy may be necessary. Although pain can still be perceived following prefrontal lobotomy, the affective response to pain is modified.

### **Central and Psychogenic Pain**

At this point it must be emphasized that a thorough history and physical examination are mandatory in every patient with the primary complaint of pain. A diagnosis of psychogenic pain should not be made until every effort has been made to discover an organic cause. In the elderly patient who has vague generalized chronic pain without a demonstrable organic basis, attempts to relieve the pain are often disappointing regardless of the method employed. While subarachnoid block may help to determine whether the somatic pain is peripheral or central in origin, failure to abolish pain by this procedure does not definitely indicate that a patient is suffering from central or psychogenic pain. Under certain conditions the sensation of pain may be transmitted over extraspinal pathways.

Psychogenic pain is best treated by psychotherapy. Narcotic addiction may be the basis of psychogenic perpetuation of pain. If the psychic component is not recognized, the patient may be subjected to unnecessary surgery. On the other hand, chronic pain associated with organic disease must be given early treatment with proper and

adequate methods of pain control in order to prevent the development of a central pain pattern that may require prefrontal lobotomy to relieve the patient's suffering

Certain instances of intractable pain may require the combined efforts of the radiologist, orthopedist, internist, neurosurgeon and anesthesiologist. The fact remains, however, that the fundamental basis for the management of pain is recognition of the interplay between the physical perception of pain and the psychic reaction to pain. This fact has been mentioned repeatedly for the purpose of emphasis. In the final analysis, the employment of psychotherapeutic measures for the relief of pain is just as important as the chemical or surgical interruption of the pain pathways.

## REFERENCES

- 1 IERICHIE R. *Surgery of Pain*. YOUNG ARCHIBALD trans and ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins Company, 1939.
- 2 LEWIS L. W. Evaluation of sympathetic activity following chemical or surgical sympathectomy. *Anesth & Analg* 34:334, 1955.
- 3 PAPPER E. M., BRODIE B. B. and ROVENSTINE E. H. Postoperative pain: its use in the comparative evaluation of analgesics. *Surg* 32:107, 1952.

## CHAPTER 7

# Surgical Principles

HOWARD H BRADSHAW

### THE OLDER PATIENT AS AN OPERATIVE RISK

Advanced age undoubtedly increases the risk of operation although the degree of increase has been greatly exaggerated in the past. Until recent years, many surgeons operated on elderly patients only in cases of dire emergency and when death seemed certain without operation. Because the number of persons surviving the Biblical span of three score years and ten is gradually increasing it is inevitable that there will be more older individuals requiring surgery year by year. Every surgeon who has been interested in the surgery of older patients has come to recognize that if proper precautions are taken the risk is not nearly as great as was commonly believed even for extensive operations. From collected data it appears that few if any necessary operative procedures should be refused individuals in this age group. Patients should not be permitted to die merely because they are thought to be too old to live.

Even though surgical procedures can often be carried out safely and successfully in elderly patients, however, they are unquestionably attended by greater dangers in old age than would have been the case in middle life. Many operations on aged patients could have been obviated if correct judgment had been used and the proper treatment urged when they were younger. Notable among the conditions often neglected until surgery becomes imperative in later life are gallstones, recurring duodenal or gastric ulcers, hernias, perianal fissures, varicosities, and bronchiectasis.

With the help of metabolic studies and other tests that provide specific information about the effects of the aging process on in-

individual the surgeon is now better able to prepare the older patient for the ordeal of anesthesia and operative trauma. Among the important changes that may take place in old age are a decrease in the circulating blood volume, a loss of elasticity of the blood vessels, pulmonary fibrosis and emphysema. The functions of the heart, liver and kidneys are often impaired and the metabolic rate is lower. It is impossible to generalize on the problems that older patients may present in addition to the specific problem for which surgery is required. The tissues an individual inherits, the conditions that have surrounded him during his life, his occupation and the diseases he has had may all have left their mark upon him and require consideration in evaluating him as an operative risk. When the function of an organ is impaired the variety of disturbances associated with any operative procedure may cause it to cease work altogether.

It is generally believed that the power of healing diminishes with advancing age. This idea is based almost entirely upon limited studies of the epithelialization of granulating wounds. Most surgeons, however, are concerned more with the tensile strength of sutured wounds which depends on connective tissue rather than epithelial growth. It is true that young growing animals including babies show more efficient and rapid healing or fibroplasia than adult animals. The tensile strength of abdominal wounds, however, is just as great in mature animals. Clinical experience furthermore, has shown that the incisions usually necessary in individuals of advanced age heal just as well as they do in younger patients. While impaired vascularity of the tissues— which is more frequent in the aged— does retard or prevent normal healing, this condition is most apt to affect the extremities. Healing in general is influenced by a great many systemic factors which are present at all ages and which are probably much more important than the age of the individual.

The resistance to infection, especially to infection of the peritoneum, is diminished with advancing age. The compensatory response to hemorrhage is less effective and even moderate hypotension in elderly patients is of serious import. Tissue trauma is more likely to cause circulatory embarrassment in old people than in younger individuals. Adequate blood replacement and gentle handling of the tissues are therefore mandatory. Thrombosis and em-



## CHAPTER 7

# Surgical Principles

HOWARD H BRADSHAW

### THE OLDER PATIENT AS AN OPERATIVE RISK

Advanced age undoubtedly increases the risk of operation although the degree of increase has been greatly exaggerated in the past. Until recent years many surgeons operated on elderly patients only in cases of dire emergency and when death seemed certain without operation. Because the number of persons surviving the Biblical span of three score years and ten is gradually increasing it is inevitable that there will be more older individuals requiring surgery year by year. Every surgeon who has been interested in the surgery of older patients has come to recognize that if proper precautions are taken the risk is not nearly as great as was commonly believed even for extensive operations. From collected data it appears that few if any necessary operative procedures should be refused individuals in this age group. Patients should not be permitted to die merely because they are thought to be too old to live.

Even though surgical procedures can often be carried out safely and successfully in elderly patients, however, they are unquestionably attended by greater dangers in old age than would have been the case in middle life. Many operations on aged patients could have been obviated if correct judgment had been used and the proper treatment urged when they were younger. Notable among the conditions often neglected until surgery becomes imperative in later life are gallstones, recurring duodenal or gastric ulcers, hernias, perineal lacerations, varicosities, and bronchiectasis.

With the help of metabolic studies and other tests that provide specific information about the effects of the aging process on an

individual the surgeon is now better able to prepare the older patient for the ordeal of anesthesia and operative trauma. Among the important changes that may take place in old age are a decrease in the circulating blood volume, a loss of elasticity of the blood vessel, pulmonary fibrosis and emphysema. The functions of the heart, liver and kidneys are often impaired and the metabolic rate is lower. It is impossible to generalize on the problems that older patients may present in addition to the specific problem for which surgery is required. The tissues in individual inherits the conditions that have surrounded him during his life, his occupation and the diseases he has had may all have left their mark upon him and require consideration in evaluating him as an operative risk. When the function of an organ is impaired the variety of disturbances associated with any operative procedure may cause it to cease work altogether.

It is generally believed that the power of healing diminishes with advancing age. This idea is based almost entirely upon limited studies of the epithelialization of granulating wounds. Most surgeons however are concerned more with the tensile strength of sutured wounds which depends on connective tissue rather than epithelial growth. It is true that young growing animals including calves show more efficient and rapid healing or fibroplasia than adult animals. The tensile strength of abdominal wounds, however is just as great in mature animals. Clinical experience furthermore has shown that the incisions usually necessary in individuals of advanced age heal just as well as they do in younger patients. While impaired vascularity of the tissues—which is more frequent in the aged—does retard or prevent normal healing this condition is most apt to affect the extremities. Healing in general is influenced by a great many systemic factors which are present at all ages and which are probably much more important than the age of the individual.

The resistance to infection especially to infection of the peritoneum is diminished with advancing age. The compensatory response to hemorrhage is less effective and even moderate hypotension in elderly patients is of serious import. Tissue trauma is more likely to cause circulatory embarrassment in old people than in younger individuals. Adequate blood replacement and gentle handling of the tissues are therefore mandatory. Thrombosis and em-

bolism are frequent postoperative complications, and pulmonary embolism is one of the commonest causes of death. Pneumonitis atelectasis, and pulmonary edema are other complications which are frequently encountered after operation.

Older patients tend to have less cardiac reserve—but we now believe that very little extra reserve is needed for most operations, even when general anesthesia is used.

While tests of renal capacity show few, if any, changes with advancing years, there is usually definite evidence of impaired renal function after a major operation.

Very little is known of the influence of increasing age on hepatic function. The nutritional intake has an important bearing at all ages, as does the deleterious effect of certain anesthetic agents, notably chloroform, ethyl chloride, and divinyl ether.

### **DIAGNOSIS OF CONDITIONS REQUIRING SURGERY IN THE OLDER PATIENT**

The conditions most commonly requiring operations in older patients are appendicitis, gallstones, prostatic disease, hernia with or without obstruction, cancer, uterine procidentia, gangrene of part of an extremity, and fracture of the femoral neck. The diagnosis of any of these conditions is usually somewhat more difficult in elderly patients for reasons which will be discussed later. Every surgeon, even after years of experience, has either missed the diagnosis of acute appendicitis or delayed in making it. Abdominal tenderness may be practically lacking in old people with appendicitis, and they may not show the characteristic fever and leukocytosis. Their reaction in this, as in other serious intra-abdominal and intrathoracic conditions, is a passive one. They are less apprehensive than younger patients and tend to minimize both their symptoms and the pain produced by physical examination. While this attitude makes diagnosis more difficult, it also minimizes the disturbance produced by the ordeal of surgery.

Even though the diagnosis of a surgical condition may be obscure in older patients, it is a mistake to indulge in prolonged expensive procedures requiring the aid of many consultants in arriving at a plan of action. Even when the definitive diagnosis is not

evident, a decision as to the necessity for operation can usually be made quickly. The necessary preoperative evaluations should be done without a waste of time and with the introduction of as few strangers as is consistent with careful study. Old people are often more frightened by the atmosphere of a hospital and by strange faces than they are by the disease that afflicts them.

### PREOPERATIVE CARE

It is perhaps superfluous to state that patients who are being prepared for surgery should be properly hydrated and that their blood volume and protein reserves should be made adequate. It has been observed that elderly people often have nutritional deficiencies of one type or another, the most important being a protein deficiency. Loss of teeth may cause them to restrict their diets to soft foods or even liquids. Repeated small transfusions of whole blood may be required to build up their protein reserve. They should be encouraged to eat a well rounded diet supplemented with vitamins. They may need concentrated food in the form of a gastrostomy formula or one of the commercial preparations such as Sustagen. If necessary, the feedings may be given through an indwelling gastric tube. Often these older patients have no will to live and want to be left alone to die in peace. This attitude may be the result of poor nutrition.

Now that the pendulum has swung away from giving too little fluid and nourishment preoperatively, there is danger of overloading the circulatory system with various fluids and electrolytes, which can produce edema of the lungs and other tissues. Intravenous fluids must be given very slowly. When there is apprehension about the status of the pulmonary, cardiovascular or renal excretory system, it would seem wise to use the subcutaneous route of fluid administration as much as possible. Even fluids with some caloric value such as glucose and protein hydrolysate can be given safely by the subcutaneous route. Protein can easily be supplied by transfusions of whole blood or plasma, and other fluids and electrolytes can be given subcutaneously. Parenteral fluid by whatever route should be used cautiously.

Elderly patients do not tolerate large amounts of salt, and edema

sometimes develops rapidly and unexpectedly. Perhaps the maximum daily salt intake should be approximately 5 Gm., unless there is need for replacing definite salt losses. If no evidences of dehydration are present, 1,000 cc. of fluid daily, in addition to that contained in food, should suffice for an elderly patient of average size. It is safer to have tissues a little on the dry side rather than run the risk of edema.

Patients should not be allowed to remain in bed preoperatively unless their primary disease requires bed rest. They should be urged to go to the bathroom and to walk about the ward. If tests indicate impairment of any particular organ or organs special attention should be directed toward them. So called tonic doses of digitalis have been out of vogue for many years. Such potent drugs as quinidine and digitalis are not given unless cardiac failure or irregularities exist at the time of operation, or have been known to exist previously. If there is any question about the cardiac status it is wise to have the aid of the family physician or an internist. Patients who have had previous coronary artery disease can undergo anesthesia and surgery with very little added risk provided there has been no recent infarct. Patients with long standing valvular defects if one excludes the aortic valve withstand operations satisfactorily.

A very important part of the preoperative preparation of any patient and especially of the elderly patient is kind and sympathetic attention and a thorough explanation of what is being done, why it is being done and what is to be done further. Previous surgical experiences or the lack of them will greatly influence the patient's attitude. If it can be avoided the life long habits of these older people should not be radically changed while they are in the hospital. The habits, the sleeping pills, the toddy or the tobacco that they have used for many years won't affect the success of the operation and their continued use will contribute much to the patient's peace of mind.

Even in emergencies time must be taken to overcome dehydration and shock preoperatively. It is foolish and hazardous to undertake any major operation such as that for intestinal obstruction for example in the presence of dehydration and shock. Unless these states are corrected first it can be expected that the patient will die on the operating table or shortly after operation.

## ANESTHESIA AND PREANESTHETIC MEDICATION

Much has been written about preanesthetic medication and the different types of anesthetic agents. Because old people require less of any drug to produce a given effect and because they are usually self-disciplined and patient they make especially favorable subjects from the anesthetist's point of view. The dosage of anesthetic agents must depend upon an evaluation of many factors including the patient's age, size, occupation, activity (habitual and recent), hemoglobin, appetite, recent weight loss, pain, and recent use of other sedatives.

The preanesthetic and the anesthetic medication must be coordinated so as to complement each other. The preanesthetic medication should be given in the proper dose by the proper route and at the proper time to obtain its peak effect at the beginning of anesthesia. Since the aging process—as has been stated before—is associated with a decrease in metabolism and often if not always with degenerative changes in the detoxifying and excretory organs, the doses of the drugs used should be reduced accordingly. A small dose of a barbiturate, 0.1 Gm (15 gr) of phenobarbital or secobarbital (Seconal) may be used for psychic sedation. Unless pain is present there is no need for a narcotic. Scopolamine (hyoscine) 0.3 to 0.6 mg ( $\frac{1}{100}$  to  $\frac{1}{100}$  gr) is an excellent drug for most patients but in the presence of advanced cerebral arteriosclerosis it may cause excitement, restlessness, and disorientation. The same objection applies to a lesser degree to any belladonna derivative. Chloral hydrate 0.5 Gm (7½ gr) or some of the newer non-barbiturate hypnotics may be used. If an opiate is to be used because of pain it is probably wiser to avoid morphine unless it is known that the patient can tolerate it without nausea; if it is used the dose is 5 to 10 mg ( $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  gr). Demerol in doses of 50 to 100 mg, methadone in doses of 5 to 10 mg, or Dilaudid in doses of 2 to 4 mg ( $\frac{1}{32}$  to  $\frac{1}{16}$  gr) will relieve pain just as effectively and without the danger of nausea.

The three important components of the anesthetic state are hypnosis, analgesia, and muscular relaxation. Most well-trained anesthesiologists believe it unwise to attempt to produce all three of the anesthetic components with a single drug. They maintain that the use of a single drug will inevitably result in unnecessary de-

pression of important physiologic mechanisms. Although surgeons in general have decried the use of multiple drugs for producing the anesthetic state, it is evident that this practice is on the increase and that more satisfactory anesthesia is being obtained, so that surgery of an increasingly major nature is being done with better and better results. The use of multiple drugs has been blamed for the supposed increase in cardiac arrests during surgery, but proof to substantiate such a claim is lacking.

Baral hypnosis can be produced satisfactorily with the thiobarbiturates such as thiopental or thiamylal. They should be given to the geriatric patient in limited doses, because they can produce cardiovascular and respiratory depression. In the presence of cardiovascular disease, liver dysfunction or an elevated blood urea nitrogen, sensitivity to these drugs is increased. If these drugs alone are used to produce the complete anesthetic state, acute barbiturate poisoning will be the result.

Nitrous oxide is perhaps the best agent for producing primary analgesia, but it will usually need to be supplemented with cyclopropane or ether. If there is a defect in the cardiac conduction system, ether is the better choice. If the electrocutter or electrocoagulation is to be employed, a continuous intravenous drip of meperidine may be used for supplemental analgesia.

Adequate muscular relaxation can be obtained without recourse to deep anesthesia by using succinylcholine as an intravenous drip in a 5 per cent solution of dextrose and water, or d-tubocurarine, 6 to 12 mg. in 2 to 4 cc. of aqueous solution intravenously. With the use of these agents the physiologic mechanisms that compensate for trauma and acute blood loss are preserved. The chief danger from the use of muscle relaxants lies in "covering up" poor anesthesia. The deleterious effects of their misuse may not become evident until the immediate postoperative period.

Techniques for administering various anesthetic agents are changed from time to time. Adequate oxygenation of tissues and the elimination of carbon dioxide are of primary concern. In the older patient, the partial rebreathing or nonrebreathing system is preferable to the completely closed system because there is less change in the intrapulmonary pressure. Increases in intrapulmonary pressure interfere with cardiac filling and are therefore dangerous particularly in patients with a low blood volume and evidence, how

ever mild of cardiovascular failure. An endotracheal tube of the largest compatible diameter aids in reducing the dead space and in maintaining a patent airway.

Whenever practical, regional nerve block or local infiltration anesthesia combined with a hypnotic or analgesia drug, is the method of choice in older patients. These anesthetic methods should be limited to operations on the head, neck, body surface, and extremities. When extensive procedures are done under local or regional anesthesia, the result is often overdosage, with toxic reactions. The quantity and concentration of the anesthetic agent should be reduced in geriatric patients.

Spinal anesthesia for patients in this age group should be restricted to operations below the navel. Higher levels of spinal anesthesia are frequently accompanied by hypotension and a significant reduction in the cerebral and coronary blood flow.

## SURGICAL TECHNIQUE

For many years thoughtful surgeons have been emphasizing preoperative preparation, the anesthetic, the physiologic and the chemical changes induced by surgery, and the prevention of postoperative complications. Consequently, surgical technique has not received the attention that it once did. However, surgeons who are able to operate rapidly and gently and who demand relatively light anesthesia will have a much lower mortality rate than those who operate slowly, who use the rough technique of past decades, and who insist on the deepest planes of anesthesia. While differences in surgical technique are not as decisive in younger patients, any unnecessary increase in local trauma, in blood loss, or in the depth or duration of anesthesia will inevitably lead, in the older age group, to a high mortality from circulatory impairment, infection, thrombosis, and other complications.

## THE POSTOPERATIVE PERIOD

Hypotension, respiratory obstruction or depression, oliguria, and nitrogen and salt retention are the problems most frequently encountered in the immediate postoperative period. Restlessness and delirium are frequent manifestations of hypoxia, and one may be



pression of important physiologic mechanisms. Although surgeons in general have decried the use of multiple drugs for producing the anesthetic state, it is evident that this practice is on the increase and that more satisfactory anesthesia is being obtained so that surgery of an increasingly major nature is being done with better and better results. The use of multiple drugs has been blamed for the supposed increase in cardiac arrests during surgery, but proof to substantiate such a claim is lacking.

Baral hypnosis can be produced satisfactorily with the thiobarbiturates, such as thiopental or thiamylal. They should be given to the geriatric patient in limited doses, because they can produce cardiovascular and respiratory depression. In the presence of cardiovascular disease, liver dysfunction or an elevated blood urea nitrogen, sensitivity to these drugs is increased. If these drugs alone are used to produce the complete anesthetic state, acute barbiturate poisoning will be the result.

Nitrous oxide is perhaps the best agent for producing primary analgesia, but it will usually need to be supplemented with cyclopropane or ether. If there is a defect in the cardiac conduction system, ether is the better choice. If the electrocautery or electrocoagulation is to be employed, a continuous intravenous drip of meperidine may be used for supplemental analgesia.

Adequate muscular relaxation can be obtained without recourse to deep anesthesia by using succinylcholine as an intravenous drip in a 5 per cent solution of dextrose and water or d-tubocurarine 6 to 12 mg in 2 to 4 cc of aqueous solution intravenously. With the use of these agents the physiologic mechanisms that compensate for trauma and acute blood loss are preserved. The chief danger from the use of muscle relaxants lies in covering up poor anesthesia. The deleterious effects of their misuse may not become evident until the immediate postoperative period.

Techniques for administering various anesthetic agents are changed from time to time. Adequate oxygenation of tissues and the elimination of carbon dioxide are of primary concern. In the older patient the partial rebreathing or nonrebreathing system is preferable to the completely closed system because there is less change in the intrapulmonary pressure. Increases in intrapulmonary pressure interfere with cardiac filling and are therefore dangerous particularly in patients with a low blood volume and evidence, how

ever mild of cardiovascular failure. An endotracheal tube of the largest compatible diameter aids in reducing the dead space and in maintaining a patent airway.

Whenever practical, regional nerve block or local infiltration anesthesia combined with a hypnotic or analgesia drug is the method of choice in older patients. These anesthetic methods should be limited to operations on the head, neck, body surface and extremities. When extensive procedures are done under local or regional anesthesia, the result is often overdosage, with toxic reactions. The quantity and concentration of the anesthetic agent should be reduced in geriatric patients.

Spinal anesthesia for patients in this age group should be restricted to operations below the navel. Higher levels of spinal anesthesia are frequently accompanied by hypotension and a significant reduction in the cerebral and coronary blood flow.

## SURGICAL TECHNIQUE

For many years thoughtful surgeons have been emphasizing preoperative preparation, the anesthetic, the physiologic and the chemical changes induced by surgery and the prevention of postoperative complications. Consequently, surgical technique has not received the attention that it once did. However, surgeons who are able to operate rapidly and gently and who demand relatively light anesthesia will have a much lower mortality rate than those who operate slowly, who use the rough technique of past decades and who insist on the deepest planes of anesthesia. While differences in surgical technique are not as decisive in younger patients, any unnecessary increase in local trauma, in blood loss or in the depth or duration of anesthesia will inevitably lead in the older age group to a high mortality from circulatory impairment, infection, thrombosis and other complications.

## THE POSTOPERATIVE PERIOD

Hypotension, respiratory obstruction or depression, oliguria and nitrogen and salt retention are the problems most frequently encountered in the immediate postoperative period. Restlessness and delirium are frequent manifestations of hypoxia and one may be

tempted to give a narcotic for these symptoms. Such drugs are definitely contraindicated, however, for their depressant action may produce a fatality. For the relief of pain, small doses of Demerol or a longer acting narcotic should be given by the intravenous route. This method is more effective than intramuscular administration and will cause minimal circulatory or respiratory depression. In some patients other methods for pain relief, such as regional nerve blocks or the intravenous administration of alcohol and procaine may be preferable to the use of narcotics.

The relatively recent innovation of the recovery room has proved to be a most efficient means for dealing with problems arising in the immediate postoperative period.

The commonest causes of death in the later postoperative period are pulmonary complications such as embolism, pneumonitis, atelectasis or edema. Early exercise and ambulation are most important in preventing these complications. Long before early ambulation became the standard practice, practically every surgeon realized the importance of getting elderly patients up as soon as possible after operation in order to avoid so called hypostatic pneumonia. It is curious that early termination of bed rest was used for older surgical patients at a time when it was considered much too radical to be used for younger patients. Among the benefits of early ambulation should be listed better aeration of the lungs, especially their bases, improvement in muscle tone with a resulting increase in venous flow, and improvement in appetite, digestion and bowel function with lessened abdominal distention from gas.

# Infectious Diseases in Older People

ELLARD M YOW

## TOLERANCE AND SUSCEPTIBILITY

The clinical observation has often been made that the very young and the very old tolerate infections poorly. While we do not know precisely how the mechanisms for handling infections differ among the various age groups we do know that recovery from tuberculosis for example seems to be most rapid between the ages of 5 and 15 years becoming gradually more prolonged with increasing age (Myers 1954). The difficulty that aged patients have in coping with infections has been attributed to poor antibody response and decreased ability to produce leukocytes to combat infection. It has been shown in pediatric patients that gamma globulin levels reach a low point at about 6 months of age but results of comparable studies at the other extreme of life are not available.

There seems to be little doubt that infections ultimately become serious problems in aged patients. Nevertheless there is a difference between susceptibility to an infection and *tolerance* to an infection once it becomes established. While older people often tolerate infections poorly they are less susceptible to attack by many infectious agents. The percentage of individuals with a negative Schick test for example increases with age. Most of the common contagious diseases of childhood produce a prolonged immunity and consequently are rare in elderly individuals. Lifelong immunity follows most of the rickettsial diseases and many bacterial diseases for example scarlet fever brucellosis tularemia typhoid fever and infections with *Hemophilus influenzae*—are associated with relatively long periods of decreased susceptibility. All these infections are less frequent in older persons.

tempted to give a narcotic for these symptoms. Such drugs are definitely contraindicated, however, for their depressant action may produce a fatality. For the relief of pain, small doses of Demerol or a longer acting narcotic should be given by the intravenous route. This method is more effective than intramuscular administration and will cause minimal circulatory or respiratory depression. In some patients other methods for pain relief such as regional nerve blocks or the intravenous administration of alcohol and procaine may be preferable to the use of narcotics.

The relatively recent innovation of the recovery room has proved to be a most efficient means for dealing with problems arising in the immediate postoperative period.

The commonest causes of death in the later postoperative period are pulmonary complications such as embolism, pneumonia, atelectasis, or edema. Early exercise and ambulation are most important in preventing these complications. Long before early ambulation became the standard practice, practically every surgeon realized the importance of getting elderly patients up as soon as possible after operation in order to avoid so called hypostatic pneumonia. It is curious that early termination of bed rest was used for older surgical patients at a time when it was considered much too radical to be used for younger patients. Among the benefits of early ambulation should be listed better aeration of the lungs, especially their bases, improvement in muscle tone, with a resulting increase in venous flow, and improvement in appetite, digestion, and bowel function, with lessened abdominal distention from gas.

## Infectious Diseases in Older People

ELLARD M. YOW

## TOLERANCE AND SUSCEPTIBILITY

The clinical observation has often been made that the very young and the very old tolerate infections poorly. While we do not know precisely how the mechanisms for handling infections differ among the various age groups, we do know that recovery from tuberculosis, for example, seems to be most rapid between the ages of 5 and 15 years, becoming gradually more prolonged with increasing age (Myers 1954). The difficulty that aged patients have in coping with infections has been attributed to poor antibody response and decreased ability to produce leukocytes to combat infection. It has been shown in pediatric patients that gamma globulin levels reach a low point at about 6 months of age, but results of comparable studies at the other extreme of life are not available.

There seems to be little doubt that infections ultimately become serious problems in aged patients. Nevertheless, there is a difference between *susceptibility* to an infection and *tolerance* to an infection once it becomes established. While older people often tolerate infections poorly, they are less susceptible to attack by many infectious agents. The percentage of individuals with a negative Schick test, for example, increases with age. Most of the common contagious diseases of childhood produce a prolonged immunity and consequently are rare in elderly individuals. Lifelong immunity follows most of the rickettsial diseases and many bacterial diseases, for example, scarlet fever, brucellosis, tularemia, typhoid fever, and infections with *Hemophilus influenzae*—are associated with relatively long periods of decreased susceptibility. All these infections are less frequent in older persons.

Studies of pneumococcal pneumonia provide data illustrating the response to infection among different age groups. The incidence of the disease rises from birth to a peak in the third and fourth decades, and then gradually decreases with increasing age. The mortality rate in untreated cases, on the other hand steadily rises from approximately 10 per cent in the first two decades to 50 per cent in the sixth decade and 70 per cent in the eighth (Hessron, 1939).

Clinical and epidemiologic studies made during the 1957-1958 epidemic of Asian influenza provide some interesting observations regarding this viral respiratory infection. Since viral infections have been thought to be followed by a short period of immunity, one would expect the highest attack rates at the extremes of life, where resistance to infection is considered poorest. In this epidemic however, the attack rate was highest in childhood and became progressively lower in older age groups. The most plausible explanation is that relative immunity was conferred on older persons not by highly strain specific antibodies, but by a composite of antibodies built up from repeated exposure to the other antigenic variants of influenza A.

This thesis is supported by studies on pools of serum collected from groups of people divided into two year age intervals. The antibody detectable by complement fixation with Asian virus antigen was not present in persons below the age of 30 years, but was usually present at low levels in those above 30. Of further interest is the observation that 11 of 14 individuals above the age of 80 who were given 250 chicken cell agglutination (CCA) units of Asian influenza virus vaccine showed a rise in antibody titer from less than 1:32 to 1:281. Only 16 of 73 individuals in the middle and younger age groups showed any rise, and in these the titer was never greater than 1:32 (Davenport, 1958).

General data concerning all respiratory infections requiring one or more days in bed including influenza and pneumonia indicate that the greatest increase in incidence during the "Asian flu" epidemic—40 new cases per week per 1,000 persons—occurred in the 5 to 19 year age group. At the same time the lowest incidence was in the age group of 65 and over with less than 10 new cases per week per 1,000 persons (Perrott and Lindler 1958).

Despite the decreased susceptibility of older individuals to respiratory infections, the highest mortality rates during this epi-

demic were in children below the age of 10 and in adults above the age of 45. Of 23 deaths reported by one group only 4 occurred in the 11 to 40 year age group while there were 6 in patients between 41 and 50 and 5 in the 51 to 60 year age group (Herrmann *et al* 1958). Most of the deaths were due to bacterial infections complicating the viral disease. Staphylococcal pneumonia was the cause of death in approximately half the cases. Heart failure, respiratory failure and kidney failure have been significant factors increasing the death rate among older patients.

While the attack rate of tuberculosis is highest in young people this disease is peculiar in that the causative organism persists in the tissues of the untreated patient for many years. The susceptibility to new exogenous infection declines rapidly after adulthood but the tolerance to tuberculosis also decreases with age. In the age group from 5 to 9 years the mortality is less than 5 per 100 000 population but after the age of 50 it is approximately 75 per 100 000 population. It is interesting to note that until the age of 30 the mortality from tuberculosis is the same in men and women but after that age the mortality rate is approximately twice as high in men (Myers 1954).

Infectious processes often complicate noninfectious diseases that occur more commonly in the aged. Some of these diseases are associated with decreased resistance to infection. The dysgammaglobulinemia of multiple myeloma, a disease occurring almost exclusively in individuals above 40, is associated particularly with an increased susceptibility to pneumococcal infection. In some clinics this association has been so striking that myeloma cells are always sought in older people admitted with pneumococcal meningitis (Beeson 1958). Other diseases more common in older age groups—for example nutritional deficiencies, chronic liver diseases, widespread malignancies and uncontrolled diabetes—are also associated with protein deficiencies and poor antibody production.

In older people with degenerative diseases normal mechanical methods of controlling body secretions become less effective. Infections of the lung are more difficult to handle if superimposed on semi-emphysema or anatomic bronchial dilation with stasis of secretions and infected material. Treatment may be even more difficult in individuals with obstructive emphysema just as poor results follow attempts to treat collections of infected material in any



Studies of pneumococcal pneumonia provide data illustrating the response to infection among different age groups. The incidence of the disease rises from birth to a peak in the third and fourth decades, and then gradually decreases with increasing age. The mortality rate in untreated cases, on the other hand steadily rises from approximately 10 per cent in the first two decades to 50 per cent in the sixth decade and 70 per cent in the eighth (Heffron, 1939).

Clinical and epidemiologic studies made during the 1957-1958 epidemic of Asian influenza provide some interesting observations regarding this viral respiratory infection. Since viral infections have been thought to be followed by a short period of immunity, one would expect the highest attack rates at the extremes of life, where resistance to infection is considered poorest. In this epidemic, however, the attack rate was highest in childhood and became progressively lower in older age groups. The most plausible explanation is that relative immunity was conferred on older persons not by highly strain specific antibodies, but by a composite of antibodies built up from repeated exposure to the other antigenic variants of influenza A.

This thesis is supported by studies on pools of serum collected from groups of people divided into two year age intervals. The antibody detectable by complement fixation with Asian virus antigen was not present in persons below the age of 30 years, but was usually present at low levels in those above 30. Of further interest is the observation that 11 of 14 individuals above the age of 80 who were given 250 chicken cell agglutination (CCA) units of Asian influenza virus vaccine showed a rise in antibody titer from less than 1:32 to 1:281. Only 16 of 73 individuals in the middle and younger age groups showed any rise, and in these the titer was never greater than 1:32 (Davenport, 1958).

General data concerning all respiratory infections requiring one or more days in bed, including influenza and pneumonia indicate that the greatest increase in incidence during the "Asian flu" epidemic—40 new cases per week per 1,000 persons—occurred in the 5 to 19 year age group. At the same time the lowest incidence was in the age group of 65 and over, with less than 10 new cases per week per 1,000 persons (Perrott and Linder, 1958).

Despite the decreased susceptibility of older individuals to respiratory infections, the highest mortality rates during this epi-

sultant aortic insufficiency may convert compensated heart disease into severe resistant heart failure

In patients with compensated senile emphysema respiratory infections may lead to decompensated obstructive emphysema. Broncholar obstruction seems to be more frequent in infections due to gram negative bacilli than in such Gram positive infections as pneumococcal pneumonia. Friedlinder's pneumonia is an example of pneumonia due to a Gram negative bacillus that has a predilection for patients of middle age and beyond (Weiss *et al* 1954). Because of the characteristic tenacious exudate produced (if the patient is not too sick to cough up this material), Friedlinder's pneumonia can often be suspected clinically before the bacteriologic diagnosis is made. The bronchial obstruction resulting from this thick exudate and its aspiration into other segments of the lung produces an oxygen deficit out of proportion to the roentgenographic findings. The anoxia is often manifested early by restlessness later by combativeness and finally by shock and coma. In this type of pneumonia tracheotomy should be performed early in order to help the patient eliminate secretions.

Relatively mild infections of the lung and kidney may also be manifested primarily by evidence of functional insufficiency. Acute pyelonephritis superimposed on benign nephroclerosis may precipitate renal decompensation with uremia. Some pathologists have suggested that the transition from benign to malignant nephrosclerosis may be primarily due to an acute interstitial bacterial infection.

Another condition sometimes seen in aging patients as a result of functional decompensation precipitated by infection is gangrene of an extremity. Infection superimposed on decreased arterial blood flow is so often the cause of gangrene in older individuals that amputation should never be considered before the appropriate surgical and medical measures indicated to control the infectious process have been carried out. The infection not only increases local metabolic needs but also decreases the blood supply further aggravating the infection particularly when it is due to anaerobic organisms. If the infection can be controlled the necessity of amputation will often be precluded by the resultant improvement in blood flow.

part of the body without adequate drainage. Infections may aggravate vascular insufficiency of an extremity, a condition which in turn facilitates the spread of infection, so that a vicious circle is established.

### CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The manifestations of infection in older people are frequently altered by decreased functional reserve of the particular system involved. Subacute bacterial endocarditis, in which resistant heart failure may be the major manifestation among geriatric patients, offers an example of this difference. Until recent years endocarditis was rarely recognized in older people, because of the relatively insignificant evidence of sepsis. In an analysis of 8 cases of endocarditis that were not diagnosed prior to autopsy, Clotzer (1953) found that the clinical diagnoses in four adults beyond the age of 40 were heart failure, cerebral infarction, and pulmonary infarction. Bayles and Lewis (1940) in a review of 28 cases in patients beyond the age of 40 found that the correct diagnosis was made in only half the cases. Renal failure was a major problem in 75 per cent of these patients, and heart failure was more common than in younger patients. Zeman (1945) has emphasized the cerebral manifestations of endocarditis in patients over 60.

Forty-seven patients with endocarditis were studied in Houston during the five year period from 1950 to 1955 (Yow, 1957). Approximately half of them were individuals over 40. In most of these older patients the underlying heart disease was arteriosclerotic, and murmurs were less prominent than in younger patients with rheumatic or congenital lesions. The older age group consisted almost entirely of men, and the most frequent source of the bacteremia was instrumentation of the genitourinary tract. Because the genitourinary tract is more important as a focus of infection in older people, prophylactic coverage during manipulative procedures is particularly important in this age group. The frequency of penicillin-resistant enterococci as a cause of endocarditis in older males is explained by their increased susceptibility to urinary infections.

Endocarditis superimposed on calcific aortic stenosis may be associated with perforation of the aortic valve leaflets, and the re-

be treated intensively with the agents having the most potent bactericidal effect against the causative organism. As the patient's mechanism for handling infections becomes less effective, precise bacteriologic diagnosis becomes more important. The desired therapeutic effect is that of a rifle rather than a shotgun.

Infections associated with such chronic anatomic disorders as bronchiectasis, pulmonary emphysema and fibrosis, and prostatic hypertrophy with urinary retention are often due to more than one organism. A very helpful approach to the therapy of these infections is the use of the "direct antibiotic sensitivity test." This is performed simply by streaking the infected body fluid or exudate directly onto a blood agar plate and placing the various antibiotic test discs on the inoculated plate. The antibiotic that inhibits all or most of the organisms on the plate is usually the drug of choice, although its other pharmacologic properties must also be taken into consideration before a final selection is made.

### **Supportive Measures**

While the precise role of the corticoid compounds in the management of infectious diseases has not yet been clearly delineated, they have unquestionable value as anti-inflammatory agents in some cases. The inhibition of inflammation has certain hazards, since the inflammatory reaction is one of the body's chief defense mechanisms against infectious agents. This defense mechanism can be fatal, however, if the inflammatory edema disturbs some vital function. Such a disturbance is most likely to occur in diseases of the tracheobronchial tree, where the swelling may interfere with the exchange of air, and in infections of the central nervous system, where the swelling may produce sufficient pressure to disturb cerebral function.

In older people, simple senile emphysema may be suddenly converted into acute obstructive emphysema when endobronchiolar or interstitial edema is created by a superimposed bacterial or viral infection. Clinical and laboratory studies suggest that some of the organisms most likely to produce bronchiolar narrowing are Gram-negative bacilli such as *Friedlander's bacillus*, the proteus and pseudomonas groups, and *Haemophilus influenzae*. Diffuse viral disease of the lung may involve the interstitial space throughout large

Another characteristic of infection in older people is that it often creates functional insufficiency in organs not directly involved in the infectious process. The most frequent illustration of this effect is the mental confusion associated with febrile diseases in the elderly. This complication often makes it difficult to elicit from the patient specific symptoms that would help the physician localize the infectious process, as a result, treatment is sometimes directed toward symptoms rather than the basic disease. Heart failure and renal failure are other types of functional insufficiency which may become manifest in the presence of fever, even when the heart or kidneys are not directly involved by the infectious process (Hunt 1955).

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF THERAPY

### The Use of Antibiotics

There are certain general principles of therapy that apply particularly to individuals with decreased tolerance to infection. Prophylactic therapy with antibiotic agents should be carefully avoided except where specific indications (such as the prevention of endocarditis) exist. There is scant evidence that administering antibiotics to individuals who are bedridden, paralyzed, or comatose accomplishes more than the conversion of antibiotic sensitive bacterial populations to antibiotic resistant ones (Weinstein 1955). The use of antibiotics in the routine care of patients with indwelling catheters or tracheotomy tubes creates more problems than it solves. The prophylactic administration of antibiotics to individuals with chronic pulmonary disease is open to some debate (Helm, *et al* 1954) but our experience has been that florid shifts occur in prophylactically treated patients making it extremely difficult to manage acute infections when they arise. In institutions housing large numbers of elderly or chronically ill patients it is especially important to avoid the indiscriminate use of antibiotics. A serious hazard would be created by the selective survival of antibiotic-resistant staphylococci and Gram negative bacilli and their spread among patients and hospital personnel.

In older people it is preferable to treat each infection as it occurs and as specifically as possible. Serious or extensive infections should

be treated intensively with the agents having the most potent bactericidal effect against the causative organism. As the patient's mechanism for handling infections becomes less effective, precise bacteriologic diagnosis becomes more important. The desired therapeutic effect is that of a rifle rather than a shotgun.

Infections associated with such chronic anatomic disorders as bronchiectasis, pulmonary emphysema and fibrosis, and prostatic hypertrophy with urinary retention are often due to more than one organism. A very helpful approach to the therapy of these infections is the use of the "direct antibiotic sensitivity test." This is performed simply by streaking the infected body fluid or exudate directly onto a blood agar plate and placing the various antibiotic test discs on the inoculated plate. The antibiotic that inhibits all or most of the organisms on the plate is usually the drug of choice, although its other pharmacologic properties must also be taken into consideration before a final selection is made.

### **Supportive Measures**

While the precise role of the corticoid compounds in the management of infectious diseases has not yet been clearly delineated, they have unquestionable value as anti-inflammatory agents in some cases. The inhibition of inflammation has certain hazards, since the inflammatory reaction is one of the body's chief defense mechanisms against infectious agents. This defense mechanism can be fatal, however, if the inflammatory edema disturbs some vital function. Such a disturbance is most likely to occur in diseases of the tracheobronchial tree, where the swelling may interfere with the exchange of air, and in infections of the central nervous system, where the swelling may produce sufficient pressure to disturb cerebral function.

In older people, simple senile emphysema may be suddenly converted into acute obstructive emphysema when endobronchiolar or interstitial edema is created by a superimposed bacterial or viral infection. Clinical and laboratory studies suggest that some of the organisms most likely to produce bronchiolar narrowing are Gram-negative bacilli such as *Friedlander's bacillus*, the proteus and *Pseudomonas* groups, and *Hemophilus influenzae*. Diffuse viral disease of the lung may involve the interstitial space throughout large

Another characteristic of infection in older people is that it often creates functional insufficiency in organs not directly involved in the infectious process. The most frequent illustration of this effect is the mental confusion associated with febrile diseases in the elderly. This complication often makes it difficult to elicit from the patient specific symptoms that would help the physician localize the infectious process as a result treatment is sometimes directed toward symptoms rather than the basic disease. Heart failure and renal failure are other types of functional insufficiency which may become manifest in the presence of fever even when the heart or kidneys are not directly involved by the infectious process (Flint, 1955).

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF THERAPY

### The Use of Antibiotics

There are certain general principles of therapy that apply particularly to individuals with decreased tolerance to infection. Prophylactic therapy with antibiotic agents should be carefully avoided except where specific indications (such as the prevention of endocarditis) exist. There is scant evidence that administering antibiotics to individuals who are bedridden, paralyzed, or comatose accomplishes more than the conversion of antibiotic-sensitive bacterial populations to antibiotic-resistant ones (Weinstein, 1955). The use of antibiotics in the routine care of patients with indwelling catheters or tracheotomy tubes creates more problems than it solves. The prophylactic administration of antibiotics to individuals with chronic pulmonary disease is open to some debate (Helm et al., 1954) but our experience has been that flora shifts occur in prophylactically treated patients making it extremely difficult to manage acute infections when they arise. In institutions housing large numbers of elderly or chronically ill patients it is especially important to avoid the indiscriminate use of antibiotics. A serious hazard would be created by the selective survival of antibiotic-resistant staphylococci and Gram negative bacilli and their spread among patients and hospital personnel.

In older people it is preferable to treat each infection as it occurs and as specifically as possible. Serious or extensive infections should

be treated intensively with the agent's having the most potent bactericidal effect against the causative organism. As the patient's mechanism for handling infections becomes less effective precise bacteriologic diagnosis becomes more important. The desired therapeutic effect is that of a rifle rather than a shotgun.

Infections associated with such chronic anatomic disorders as bronchiectasis, pulmonary emphysema and fibrosis, and prostatic hypertrophy with urinary retention are often due to more than one organism. A very helpful approach to the therapy of these infections is the use of the "direct antibiotic sensitivity test." This is performed simply by streaking the infected body fluid or exudate directly onto a blood agar plate and placing the various antibiotic test discs on the inoculated plate. The antibiotic that inhibits all or most of the organisms on the plate is usually the drug of choice, although its other pharmacologic properties must also be taken into consideration before a final selection is made.

### **Supportive Measures**

While the precise role of the corticoid compounds in the management of infectious diseases has not yet been clearly delineated, they have unquestionable value as anti-inflammatory agents in some cases. The inhibition of inflammation has certain hazards, since the inflammatory reaction is one of the body's chief defense mechanisms against infectious agents. This defense mechanism can be fatal, however, if the inflammatory edema disturbs some vital function. Such a disturbance is most likely to occur in diseases of the tracheobronchial tree where the swelling may interfere with the exchange of air, and in infections of the central nervous system where the swelling may produce sufficient pressure to disturb cerebral function.

In older people simple senile emphysema may be suddenly converted into acute obstructive emphysema when endobronchiolar or interstitial edema is created by a superimposed bacterial or viral infection. Clinical and laboratory studies suggest that some of the organisms most likely to produce bronchiolar narrowing are Gram-negative bacilli such as *Friedlander's bacillus*, the proteus and pseudomonas groups, and *Hemophilus influenzae*. Diffuse viral disease of the lung may involve the interstitial space throughout large



Another characteristic of infection in older people is that it often creates functional insufficiency in organs not directly involved in the infectious process. The most frequent illustration of this effect is the mental confusion associated with febrile diseases in the elderly. This complication often makes it difficult to elicit from the patient specific symptoms that would help the physician locate the infectious process, as a result treatment is sometimes directed toward symptoms rather than the basic disease. Heart failure and renal failure are other types of functional insufficiency which may become manifest in the presence of fever even when the heart or kidneys are not directly involved by the infectious process (First 1955).

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF THERAPY

### The Use of Antibiotics

There are certain general principles of therapy that apply particularly to individuals with decreased tolerance to infection. Prophylactic therapy with antibiotic agents should be carefully avoided except where specific indications (such as the prevention of endocarditis) exist. There is scant evidence that administering antibiotics to individuals who are bedridden, paralyzed, or comatose accomplishes more than the conversion of antibiotic-sensitive bacterial populations to antibiotic-resistant ones (Wernstein 1953). The use of antibiotics in the routine care of patients with indwelling catheters or tracheotomy tubes creates more problems than it solves. The prophylactic administration of antibiotics to individuals with chronic pulmonary disease is open to some debate (Holt et al., 1954) but our experience has been that flora shifts occur in prophylactically treated patients, making it extremely difficult to manage acute infections when they arise. In institutions housing large numbers of elderly or chronically ill patients it is especially important to avoid the indiscriminate use of antibiotics. A serious hazard would be created by the selective survival of antibiotic-resistant staphylococci and Gram-negative bacilli, and their spread among patients and hospital personnel.

In older people it is preferable to treat each infection as it occurs and as specifically as possible. Serious or extensive infections should

to keep active since physical activity is one of the most effective aids to the elimination of body secretions and excreta

### SUMMARY

1 With advancing age there is a decreased susceptibility to those infectious diseases which confer specific immunity. Infections caused by the normal bacterial flora of the body, however, are not usually associated with prolonged specific immunity and the resistance of older people to these organisms is likely to be decreased by defects in the mechanical and physiologic mechanisms for controlling infection.

2 Once an infection of any type is established in an elderly patient it is often tolerated poorly.

3 The manifestations of infectious diseases are often somewhat different in older people. There may be a less pronounced febrile reaction and a greater alteration in the functional reserve of the involved system.

4 Since infections in older individuals are most often due to microorganisms that are endogenous or are found in the patient's immediate environment, every effort should be made to prevent these organisms from becoming antibiotic resistant. The prophylactic use of antibiotics should be avoided and antibiotic therapy should be specifically directed toward a specific infectious process.

5 Patients who have acute infections producing inflammatory edema great enough to interfere seriously with a vital function may be benefited by the administration of corticoid compounds.

6 Since the functional reserve of homeostatic mechanisms may be decreased in old age, careful attention should be given during infections to the maintenance of normal function in the involved system and also in distal systems.

### REFERENCES

- 1 BAXTER T B and LEWIS W H Jr Subacute bacterial endocarditis in older people. *Ann Int Med* 13:2154 1940
- 2 BRISON P Personal communication 1958
- 3 DAVENPORT F M Role of the Commission on Influenza. *Pub Health Rep* 73:3 1958
- 4 FLINT F J Factor of infection in heart failure. *Brit M J* 2:1018 1954

areas, producing marked hypoxia in severe cases. A recent report by Rogers (1958) emphasized that influenzal pneumonia without significant complicating bacterial infection may in itself be serious or even fatal. In such cases anti-inflammatory steroid compounds by reducing the bronchiolar edema, may sometimes be life saving.

The most obvious danger in using steroid therapy for infections is the risk of local or distal spread of the infection. This risk must be weighed against the deleterious effects of the inflammatory edema. The danger that steroid compounds may permit the infection to spread is not as great if the causative agent can be adequately suppressed by an antibiotic. Since viruses are not susceptible to antibiotics, the only justification for using steroid therapy in viral infections lies in the fact that virtually all viral diseases, even though they may be manifested primarily by an inflammatory reaction in a single organ, are widely disseminated, hence further spread of the infection is not likely. Only in cases of chickenpox developing in children receiving long term steroid therapy for rheumatic fever is such therapy known to have had a harmful effect on the course of a viral infection. A word of caution should be given, however, about another potential danger associated with the use of steroids in virus diseases. Bacterial infections, particularly staphylococcal infections, may complicate viral diseases. If the patient's downhill course is due to such a complication, therapy with specific antibiotics rather than steroids should be instituted.

When the steroid compounds are used in acute illnesses, they should be administered in optimum doses until there is definite evidence of response; then the dose should be rapidly reduced and the drug should usually be discontinued altogether within a week. If the infection is bacterial, specific antibiotic agents should be given with the steroids.

Since the functional reserve of the kidneys, heart, lungs, brain and liver may be decreased in older people, it is especially important to supplement specific therapy of an infection with general measures intended to support the function of these organs. The kidney's selective ability to excrete and retain electrolytes may be impaired, and the physician must exercise more care in maintaining the fluid and electrolyte balance. Every effort should be made to correct protein and vitamin deficiencies and anemia. To the extent that his infectious process allows, the patient should be encouraged

## CHAPTER 9

# Common Dermatologic Problems In Geriatrics

CHARLES M. HOWELL

Dermatologic disorders comprise a sizable part of any general medical practice and are particularly common in geriatric patients. The skin is a reactive dynamic organ that is affected by aging as well as by various external stimuli. An understanding of the aging processes in the skin is of inestimable value in dealing with elderly patients.

### ETIOLOGIC FACTORS

The atrophic changes in the skin that result from aging are almost invariably accompanied by progressively increasing dryness, a basic factor in many of the dermatoses seen in elderly patients.

#### Psychosomatic Factors

The socioeconomic, psychologic, and physical factors responsible for the development of anxiety in older people are discussed in other chapters of this book. Many dermatologic problems, particularly those in which itching is a symptom, are aggravated by anxiety and apprehension. Some dermatoses, such as localized neurodermatitis, may be primarily due to stress. The sensation of itching produced by dryness of the skin in many old people is intensified by tension and may soon lead to a persistent intensely pruritic dermatosis which is aggravated by continual scratching. If the pa-

- 5 GLOTZER S Difficulties in the diagnosis of subacute bacterial endocarditis  
*New York J Med* 53 2796 1953
- 6 HEFFRON R *Pneumonia* New York The Commonwealth Fund 1939  
pp 707-712
- 7 HELM, W H MAY, J R, and LIVINGSTONE J S Long term oxytetracycline (Terramycin) therapy in advanced chronic respiratory infection  
*Lancet* 2 630, 1954
- 8 HERRMANN R E, OGURA G I JOHNSON E S TOLL H W Jr and WHITE, W C Respiratory deaths associated with Asian influenza epidemic  
*JAMA* 166 467, 1958
- 9 MYERS, J A Chronic diseases of the lungs in STIEGLITZ E J (ed), *Geriatric Medicine* (ed 3) Philadelphia, J B Lippincott 1954 pp 314-342
- 10 PERROTT G S and LINDER F E Data on acute upper respiratory diseases  
*Pub Health Rep* 73 121 1958
- 11 ROGERS, D E, LOURIA D, and KILBOURNE E D The syndrome of fatal influenzal virus pneumonia  
*Trans Assoc Am Physicians* 71 260 1958
- 12 WEINSTEIN L The chemoprophylaxis of infection  
*Ann Int Med* 43 287 1955
- 13 WEINSTEIN L Failure of chemotherapy to prevent the bacterial complications of measles  
*New England J Med* 253 679 1955
- 14 WEISS W EISENBERG G M ALEXANDER J D Jr and FLIPPIN H F Klebsiella pulmonary disease  
*Am J M Sc* 228 148 1954
- 15 YOW E M Problems encountered in the management of endocarditis  
*South M J* 50 987 1957
- 16 ZEMAN F D Subacute bacterial endocarditis in the aged  
*Am Heart J* 29 661 1945

## Allergies

Allergic reactions to food and to medications given orally or parenterally, as well as to various external allergens are common in geriatric patients as in the adult population at large. Drugs administered externally or systemically are the most common causes of such allergic conditions. Because the skin of older persons is frequently less tolerant to allergens than that of younger individuals the incidence of so called overtreatment dermatitis is high in geriatric patients. Among the topically applied drugs most apt to cause trouble are the "caine" group of topical anesthetics (such as benzocaine, Nupercaine and Surfacaine) all topical antihistamine drugs, sulfathiazole, penicillin and Furacin. An increasing number of cases of neomycin sensitivity have been described recently. Tar preparations while of much value as keratolytic and antipruritic agents should be used cautiously, particularly at the beginning of therapy.

When any potentially sensitizing topical preparation is to be employed it is usually a good plan to use a prophetic patch test allowing the patch to remain on the skin for 48 hours unless burning or itching is experienced beneath it. In such a case it should be removed immediately. Definite redness with itching at the end of 48 hours is considered a positive reaction; vesiculation indicates an unusually high degree of sensitivity. A false positive reaction may result from contact with the adhesive tape. If the patient gives a history of previous reactions to adhesive tape, cellulose (Scotch) tape may be substituted.

Some elderly people are sensitive to various lubricating lotions and creams which they use to relieve the dryness of their skin. In some cases the perfume in the preparation may be responsible. The resulting dermatitis may be relatively minimal on the extremities and trunk but severe over the periorbital areas of the face. Sensitization to hand lotion for example might first produce a pruritic erythematous scaling of the eyelids.

The possibility of a generalized drug reaction from orally or parenterally administered medication must always be considered. The high incidence of reactions to penicillin is well known. A few minutes devoted to asking the patient about prior reactions to peni-

tient finds that his skin condition commands attention and sympathy from others around him, the vicious circle of itching and scratching becomes even more firmly entrenched. Such a situation calls for patience and resourcefulness upon the part of the patient's family and physician.

### Neurocirculatory Factors

Alvarez has for years emphasized the relatively frequent occurrence of what he terms "little strokes"—nonparalyzing thromboses of small arteries in the brain. Among the symptoms that may follow such small strokes are patches of anesthesia, cruraigia, and other paresthesias on the skin or mucous membrane. The one that perhaps occurs most commonly is burning of the tongue or glossopyrosis. Any bizarre sensation on the skin or mucous membrane should bring to mind the possibility of a minimal cerebral vascular accident, especially if there is a history of hypertension, dizziness, or unexplained syncope.

### Nutrition

All too often an unsubstantiated diagnosis of "avitaminosis" is made to explain some persistent involvement of the skin or mucous membrane. Happily, the day when such a diagnosis was fashionable has passed. While it is true that older people often do not eat an optimum diet, a genuine vitamin deficiency state is relatively rare except in frankly malnourished patients. Unfortunately many elderly people waste precious dollars on expensive vitamin preparations when their money could be spent to much greater advantage elsewhere.

The so-called nutritional eczema, occasionally seen in older patients, is characterized by an eczematoid eruption of the legs and edema of the dependent parts (Waisman 1957). It is usually associated with hypoproteinemia, which may be dietary in origin but is often caused or aggravated in patients with exfoliative dermatitis by persistent generalized oozing from the involved skin surfaces. Successful management depends on finding the cause of the exfoliative dermatitis and instituting appropriate corrective measures.

ago The lessened incidence can probably be attributed to the decreasing use of chewing tobacco and snuff as well as to the marked decline in syphilis Poor dental hygiene and the use of chewing tobacco or snuff are among the known etiologic factors Leukoplakia is often confused with lichen planus involving the oral mucosa The latter condition is characterized usually by a lacy network or by bluish white plaques, which most often occur just opposite the molar teeth in addition the pathognomonic cutaneous signs are almost always present The lesion of leukoplakia is usually not reticulated and is pure white rather than bluish white Lewis (1952) has pointed out that the lesion of leukoplakia is fluorescent under the Wood light (filtered ultraviolet light), whereas the mucosal areas involved by lichen planus are not A simple biopsy usually clarifies the diagnosis since both lesions have distinctive microscopic appearances

The treatment of leukoplakia consists in correcting poor dental hygiene and discontinuing the use of tobacco in any form although the response is slow these measures are often effective Recently large doses of water soluble vitamin A administered by buccal absorption have become popular Tablets containing 150 000 units each are dissolved in the mouth two times daily Although this treatment is still somewhat controversial impressive results have been obtained in some cases

**FORDYCE'S DISEASE** Many elderly people become greatly concerned when they discover numerous small yellow spots about the size of a pinhead on the surface of the lips and buccal mucosa opposite the molars While such patients are often very sure that they have cancer these spots actually represent dilated or ectopic sebaceous glands The condition is termed Fordyce's disease although no actual disease process is present If the patient is unduly apprehensive over this condition a biopsy may be performed for his peace of mind microscopic study usually results in a clear cut diagnosis

**APHTHOUS STOMATITIS** Aphthous stomatitis another common disorder of the oral mucosa is characterized by one or more localized extremely tender ulcerative lesions on the tongue the inner surface of the lips or the gingival or buccal mucosa These lesions usually run a course of some ten days to two weeks despite treatment or the lack of it Formerly the condition was thought to be



cillin is time well spent. One should be particularly cautious when giving injectable penicillin to a patient with an allergic history especially a history of asthma. Other drugs that may cause generalized allergic reactions include sulfonamides, barbiturates, and the newer tranquilizing drugs. Some of the last mentioned group such as meprobamate, may produce a photosensitivity reaction involving predominantly the exposed areas of skin.

### DISEASES OF THE MOUTH

A good observer never fails to examine the oral cavity. Lesions of the mucous membranes occur occasionally or frequently in lichen



FIG 9-1 Leukoplakia of the angle of the mouth and buccal mucosa; this is a precancerous condition.

planus, lupus erythematosus, syphilis, drug eruptions, erythema multiforme, and pemphigus. Oral lesions may be the first evidence of a systemic disease such as pernicious anemia or leukemia.

**LEUKOPLAKIA** Leukoplakia (Fig 9-1) is fairly frequent in the elderly patient, although perhaps not as common as it was 20 years

patient should be warned to be careful in getting in and out of the tub since the baths make the tub slippery.

For itching surfaces a soothing topical preparation such as calamine liniment (N.F.) or an emulsion of equal parts of lime water and olive oil is frequently helpful. Old but effective antipruritic agents are milk of bismuth and simple carbolated vaseline. An ointment or lotion containing one eighth to one half per cent of phenol or menthol alone or in combination also helps to relieve itching. The older generation called phenol the morphine of the skin. Other antipruritic drugs especially the same drugs and topical antihistamines should be applied with caution. This warning is especially applicable to the elderly patient whose skin is potentially more sensitive than that of a younger person.

In cases where localized secondary infection is present a topical antibiotic is indicated. Bacitracin ointment is useful for this purpose as it seldom causes sensitization. As a rule one should never apply topically any antibiotic that might conceivably be needed systemically at some future date. Penicillin should never be applied locally. If the infection is not well localized or if the process is threatening to spread the systemic administration of antibiotics should be considered.

When relatively small areas are involved the local use of hydrocortisone and related compounds often gives dramatic relief from itching and inflammation. Some cases do not respond to this treatment however and the cost remains high.

## PRURITUS

**GENERALIZED PRURITUS** Itching can be said to be an inherent attribute of senile skin. Atrophy of cutaneous structures causes diminished oiliness and decreased hydration of the surface and the resulting dryness of the skin gives rise to itching. This symptom is usually worse during the winter when sweating is reduced and low humidity results in loss of moisture from the epidermis. Frequent bathing in hot water with generous amounts of soap a very common practice among elderly people especially in cold weather is undoubtedly a contributory factor.

Pruritus that is evident only during the winter is called pruritus hiemalis or "winter itch." This condition characteristically occurs

due to a virus similar to that of herpes simplex. Since the development of viral cultural methods, however, the viral etiology has been questioned, and many authorities now feel that a very definite psychogenic factor is involved. Some patients who are subject to recurring lesions of this type have done well on minimal to moderate doses of phenobarbital, while others have shown improvement on the newer tranquilizing drugs. The fact that a diet containing no citric acid or vinegar sometimes craves improvement suggests the possibility of an allergic factor or a nonspecific irritative effect. In sensitive patients the ingestion of certain foods such as chocolate or seafood can produce small ulcerations of the oral mucosa; in such instances the avoidance of these foods will prevent the development of ulcerations.

## DERMATOSES

### Principles of Therapy

The presence of an acute inflammation of the skin characterized by blisters, swelling, and exudation demands soothing treatment. When there is oozing as well as burning or itching, moist compresses prepared from sodium chloride, magnesium sulfate, boric acid, or aluminum acetate, each properly diluted, usually offer the most effective method of treatment. Recently some institutions have been using plain tap water with good results. If no infection is present, the dressings should be cool, since pruritus is usually controlled best by cool or even ice-cold compresses. Ice should not be applied directly to the skin, but may be put in the basin when the solution is made up. If infection is present, however, the compresses should be warm in order to expedite localization of the infectious process. In order to prevent maceration of the treated skin surfaces, such dressings should be applied intermittently rather than continuously. A good plan is to keep them on the infected areas for 20 minutes to two hours, two or three times daily. When the involvement is extensive, compressing may not be feasible. In such cases, colloid baths containing either cornstarch or oatmeal afford a simple method of generalized therapy. A cupful of plain laundry starch or Aveeno (a precooked, preconcentrated oatmeal preparation) to a tubful of warm water makes such a bath. The

patient should be warned to be careful in getting in and out of the tub since the baths make the tub slippery.

For itching surfaces a soothing topical preparation such as calamine liniment (NF) or an emulsion of equal parts of lime water and olive oil is frequently helpful. Old but effective antipruritic agents are milk of bismuth and simple carbolated vaseline. An ointment or lotion containing one eighth to one half per cent of phenol or menthol alone or in combination also helps to relieve itching. The older generation called phenol the morphine of the skin. Other antipruritic drugs especially the same drugs and topical antihistamines should be applied with caution. This warning is especially applicable to the elderly patient whose skin is potentially more sensitive than that of a younger person.

In cases where localized secondary infection is present a topical antibiotic is indicated. Bacitracin ointment is useful for this purpose as it seldom causes sensitization. As a rule one should never apply topically any antibiotic that might conceivably be needed systemically at some future date. Penicillin should never be applied locally. If the infection is not well localized or if the process is threatening to spread the systemic administration of antibiotics should be considered.

When relatively small areas are involved the local use of hydrocortisone and related compounds often gives dramatic relief from itching and inflammation. Some cases do not respond to this treatment however and the cost remains high.

## PRURITUS

**GENERALIZED PRURITUS** Itching can be said to be an inherent attribute of senile skin. Atrophy of cutaneous structures causes diminished oiliness and decreased hydration of the surface and the resulting dryness of the skin gives rise to itching. This symptom is usually worse during the winter when sweating is reduced and low humidity results in loss of moisture from the epidermis. Frequent bathing in hot water with generous amounts of soap a very common practice among elderly people especially in cold weather is undoubtedly a contributory factor.

Pruritus that is evident only during the winter is called pruritus hiemalis or "winter itch." This condition characteristically occurs

due to a virus similar to that of herpes simplex. Since the development of viral cultural methods, however, the viral etiology has been questioned and many authorities now feel that a very definite psychogenic factor is involved. Some patients who are subject to recurring lesions of this type have done well on minimal to moderate doses of phenobarbital, while others have shown improvement on the newer tranquilizing drugs. The fact that a diet containing no citric acid or vinegar sometimes causes improvement suggests the possibility of an allergic factor or a nonspecific irritative effect. In sensitive patients the ingestion of certain foods such as chocolate or seafood can produce small ulcerations of the oral mucosa, in such instances the avoidance of these foods will prevent the development of ulcerations.

## DERMATOSES

### Principles of Therapy

The presence of an acute inflammation of the skin characterized by blisters, swelling, and exudation demands soothing treatment. When there is oozing as well as burning or itching, moist compresses prepared from sodium chloride, magnesium sulfate, boric acid, or aluminum acetate, each properly diluted, usually offer the most effective method of treatment. Recently some institutions have been using plain tap water with good results. If no infection is present, the dressings should be cool, since pruritus is usually controlled best by cool or even ice cold compresses. Ice should not be applied directly to the skin, but may be put in the basin when the solution is made up. If infection is present, however, the compresses should be warm in order to expedite localization of the infectious process. In order to prevent maceration of the treated skin surfaces, such dressings should be applied intermittently rather than continuously. A good plan is to keep them on the infected areas for 20 minutes to two hours two or three times daily. When the involvement is extensive, compressing may not be feasible. In such cases, colloid baths containing either cornstarch or oatmeal afford a simple method of generalized therapy. A cupful of plum laundry starch or Aveeno (a precooked, preconcentrated oatmeal preparation) to a tubful of warm water makes such a bath. The

is another common complaint of elderly patients. Sensitive skin, excessive sweating, and the adherence of bodily excretions to the skin surface all tend to predispose toward an intertriginous inflammatory process. The field is then fertile for the secondary invasion



FIG. 92. Neurotic excoriations in a woman with deep seated emotional problems.

of pyogenic bacteria or yeastlike fungous organisms such as *Candida albicans*.

In many cases, however, no actual eruption is discernible even though the patient complains of intense itching. This condition, which has been termed "essential pruritus," may be produced in various ways. In a person who bathes frequently, the skin surface

over the lower extremities, and appears as a poorly defined, rough scaling area in which multiple linear excoriations may be visible. It is aggravated by bathing and by contact with woolen garments. The increase in itching invariably noted upon removal of the clothing is explained by changes in the cutaneous circulation and stimulation of the nerve receptors by currents of air.

Surprisingly effective relief for itching resulting from simple dryness of the skin can often be obtained by the application of a lubricating film such as petrolatum, olive oil, lanolin or hydrogenated vegetable oil to retard evaporation and restore moisture. Hydrogenated vegetable oil can be obtained at any grocery store or supermarket, and its low cost makes it especially useful when large areas of skin are to be covered. This combined hydrating and lubricating effect can be achieved more simply by adding one ounce of a lubricating agent such as olive oil or mineral oil to the tubful of water before every bath.

If the condition is severe, soap should not be used. Patients with moderate itching might possibly tolerate one of the so-called superfatted soaps such as Allercreme (Texas Pharmaceutical Company) or Dove (Lever Brothers). Bathing should be curtailed appreciably during the winter months; one or two baths weekly may be all that the skin of such patients will tolerate. Relatively quick baths in lukewarm water will cause less itching than prolonged baths in hot water. Pruritus will also often be less noticeable if the patient dons some covering garment immediately after drying off.

Persistent generalized pruritus in the elderly male occasionally responds to oral or intramuscular testosterone, although this treatment is often disappointing. Water-soluble vitamin A, 50,000 to 100,000 units daily by mouth, may give considerable relief from dryness and itching of the skin in old people.

When no objective cutaneous findings are present to explain persistent itching, systemic diseases should be considered. An internal malignancy such as lymphoblastoma sometimes causes itching in elderly patients. Other less frequent causes include diseases of the liver and kidneys, diabetes, reactions to drugs such as phenobarbital, cerebral arteriosclerosis, and psychiatric disorders (Fig. 9-2). A thorough medical investigation is sometimes necessary before the cause of persistent pruritus is determined.

**ANOCYNITAL ITCHING.** Persistent itching of the anogenital areas

The pruritic, patchy erythematous lesions of moniliasis develop most frequently in flexural areas especially beneath the breasts in the obese female and in the groins and gluteal cleft. A topical nystatin containing preparation such as Nivostatin Ointment (Squibb) or 5 per cent ammoniated mercury in hydrophilic ointment is usually effective in the treatment of flexural lesions. All obviously overweight patients should be given a reduction diet, and diabetes must be conclusively ruled out by urinalyses and even glucose tolerance tests.

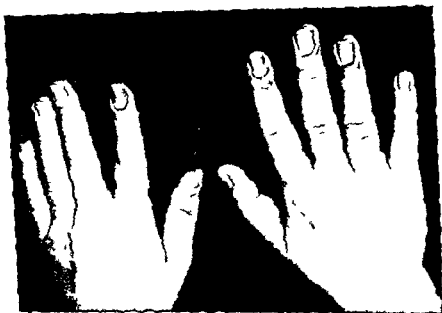


FIG 9-3 Chronic paronychia of both index fingers owing to *Candida albicans*.

Other frequent sites of involvement are the angles of the mouth (so called perleche) and the nails especially the fingernails. Perleche seldom occurs except when the folds at the corners of the mouth are accentuated by loss of teeth or abnormalities of occlusion. Food particles and saliva tend to collect in the crevices forming a perfect culture medium for the yeastlike organism. This condition is frequently misdiagnosed as "vitamin deficiency." Prosthodontia to restore the normal contour of the mouth is an important part of the treatment for this condition.

Paronychia due to *C. albicans* (Fig 9-3) is often seen in house



may become excessively dry, in a person who bathes infrequently, the collection of fecal material and urine may produce itching. Skin tags or hemorrhoids around the anal orifice may cause itching by retaining particles of feces. Proctitis and itching often occur in patients who use laxatives (especially mineral oil) or enemas regularly. A surprisingly common cause of persistent itching of the perianal region is the ingestion of highly seasoned foods. Another possible factor is the use of coarse toilet tissue. Pinworms can cause maddening pruritus of the anal, perineal, and vulvar areas; this usually occurs at night when the parasites migrate. A Scotch tape examination of the anal orifice should be done routinely in all cases of persistent unexplained anogenital itching. When thorough investigation fails to reveal any definite cause for such itching the possibility of a psychogenic origin must be considered.

## FUNGOUS INFECTIONS

**MONILIASIS** The most common fungous infection of elderly people is moniliasis, or candidiasis. Because older people often increase their intake of carbohydrates, the amount of glucose in the skin and sweat is increased. Such individuals are also prone to become obese, providing fertile soil for the growth of the yeastlike organism, *Candida albicans*, which is a normally harmless inhabitant of the mouth, the intertriginous areas, and sometimes of the vagina.

Increased degrees of perspiration seem to predispose to the development of this condition, which is often noted first in warm weather. In addition, the oral administration of broad spectrum antibiotics by changing the intestinal flora permits the rapid and unopposed growth of *C. albicans*. The complaint of persistent perianal itching in a patient who has had some oral antibiotic during the preceding two or three weeks should always suggest the possibility of moniliasis. In such cases scrapings from the involved skin areas will usually reveal evidence of mycelial elements on direct examination of a slide prepared with 15 per cent potassium hydroxide and a culture on Papanicolaou or Sabouraud's medium usually proves the presence of *C. albicans*. The possibility of diabetes should always be investigated in cases of moniliasis, since infections with yeastlike organisms are prevalent in diabetic patients.

**Penicillium** This drug is given orally usually 250 mg four times daily. Results may be almost dramatic although treatment might have to be continued for as long as four to six months in the cases exhibiting nail involvement. More information particularly in regard to permanency of cure and possible side effects is needed before the drug can be adequately appraised. Griseofulvin is said to be ineffective in *C. albicans* infection as well as in the deep fungous infections.

### STASIS DERMATITIS

Stasis or varicose dermatitis, an eczematous eruption affecting the legs below the knees (Fig 9-4) is a common affliction of elderly persons especially those who are obese or who have been in the habit of standing for long periods.

There is apparently a familial predisposition to the development of stasis dermatitis just as there is to the formation of varicose



FIG 9-4 Stasis dermatitis with ulceration. Notice the band of relatively normal skin where the shoe strap has exerted pressure.

wives and mounds whose hands are kept in soapy water a good deal of the time. Characteristically, redness and tenderness develop in the tissues at the base or at the sides of the nail, and are followed by drainage of a drop or two of pustular exudate. When this condition persists, dark green or greenish blue stripes may be seen along the lateral margins of the nail, and the nail surface may become irregular and distorted. Other patients may exhibit partial separation of the nail from the nail bed, along the sides and at the distal edge.

Soaking the finger in water or saline solution only serves to prolong the fungous infection, since the moist crevices form perfect culture sites for growth of the *C. albicans*. Perseverance in treatment is of utmost importance. A simple but effective regimen includes the use of rubber gloves to avoid exposure to soap and water, and the local application of a 1 per cent alcoholic solution of gentian violet twice daily after soaking the involved fingers in potassium permanganate solution (1:8000) for 15 minutes.

**DERMATOPHYTOSIS (ATHLETE'S FOOT)** Dermatomyphosis is a fungous infection affecting the feet and sometimes the hands. It originates as an intertriginous involvement of the interdigital areas but later spreads to the nails, soles, hands and groins. In the inflammatory type which is due to *Trichophyton gypsum* the condition often begins with erythema, soreness and vesiculation on the sides of the toes and the toe webs; fissuring of the affected skin occurs later. Absorption of formed elements may produce a symptomatic inflammatory process (dermatophytid) characterized by vesicles on the sides of the fingers and palms. Almost invariably the contents of these small blisters are sterile.

The chronic type which is due to *Trichophyton purpureum*, may also begin between the toes but is usually characterized by much less inflammation. The soles often exhibit scaling, erythema and thickening. The nails frequently are thickened, yellow, and distorted.

Treatment is difficult, especially in the chronic type, and over-treatment is all too common. Many of the newer fungicidal agents containing fatty acids such as undecylenic and propionic acid are useful as well as relatively nonirritating.

The most recent treatment for the superficial fungous infections is griseofulvin, which is a fermentation product of three species of

efficacious in reducing the inflammatory process and in some cases systemic steroid therapy might be justified. The longer the duration of such a dermatosis the harder it is to treat successfully. Recurrences are common and it is necessary to exercise great care to prevent foci of stasis dermatitis from developing in patients who have had an autosensitization reaction.

## TUMORS OF THE SKIN

### Benign Tumors

*Senile lentigines* are the freckles of older people. These lesions are characterized by brown sharply demarcated slightly raised plaques that may exhibit some degree of scaling on the surface. As a rule they appear only on the exposed areas particularly the backs of the hands, the wrists, and the forearms. *Senile keratoses* often develop on such lesions with the attendant risk of carcinomatous change. In rare cases *senile lentigo* may undergo malignant change to melanoma (melanotic freckle).

*Senile keratoses* occur predominantly in the exposed surfaces of fair skinned individuals who have been exposed excessively to sun light in the past. The development of such lesions is thought to be associated with damage from sunburn. *Senile keratoses* are usually roughened scaling slightly elevated lesions. When the scale builds up a hornlike appearance may be produced. The presence of an inflammatory process at the base of any *senile keratosis* indicates the possibility of malignant change to squamous cell carcinoma. Patients with *senile keratoses* should be cautioned about overexposure to the sun and should apply a lubricating cream to the exposed surfaces once or twice daily.

*Pigmented nevi* (moles) vary markedly in size and appearance. They may be located virtually anywhere on the skin surface and may be flesh colored or dark, raised or flattened, hairy or smooth. Usually these lesions appear before middle life but it is not uncommon for new *nevi* to develop in elderly people.

*Seborrheic keratoses* or *seborrheic verrucae* (warts) appear most frequently in middle age or later although they may be seen in young people. They are among the most common cutaneous neoplasms seen in older patients and often cause considerable alarm.

veins in the lower extremities. Another possible predisposing factor is an injury to the ankle or lower leg that has resulted in persistent swelling of the foot and ankle.

Stasis dermatitis usually appears first in the region of the ankle but frequently spreads to the foot and up over the entire leg. Secondary bacterial invasion, resulting eventually in ulceration is common.

The most important factors in the management of stasis dermatitis are support of the circulation and the prevention of stasis by means of an elastic stocking or bandage properly applied. It is important to see that most of the pressure is exerted around the ankle and lower part of the leg with a gradual lessening of pressure as the bandage is brought up the leg usually to a point just below the knee. If no secondary pyogenic infection is present sterile vaseline or 2 per cent boric acid ointment may be applied to the areas of dermatitis and covered with a dressing. A pad of foam rubber one fourth inch thick may be placed over the dressing and the immediately adjacent normal skin before the elastic bandage is applied; this measure often proves very effective in supporting the circulation and preventing stasis. When the condition is severe and ulceration has occurred bed rest with the extremity elevated may be desirable. Surgical correction of any prominent varicosities may be necessary.

Overtreatment of stasis dermatitis may cause not only local irritation but also an id reaction resulting from systemic absorption of irritating material from the inflamed tissues. This may affect the hands, arms, face and neck or may even become generalized. Topical medications that can produce such an id reaction include antihistamines and antibiotics. It is entirely possible also for such an id phenomenon to result purely from the absorption of certain products of protein breakdown from the area of stasis dermatitis. The entire skin may become allergic to these breakdown products and react explosively to a relatively small area of involvement. This phenomenon which is frequently seen in elderly patients is called autosensitization. In such cases conservative treatment is mandatory. No agent should be employed if there is any question concerning the patient's tolerance to it. For management of the focus the safest initial measure is elevation of the extremity and the use of warm saline compresses. Topical steroid preparations are often

*sebaceous adenomas* and they are composed of hypertrophic sebaceous glands. Their main importance lies in the fact that they are often confused with basal cell carcinomas.

Old people often have small *cutaneous tags* about the neck and axillae. These may appear as tiny papules or pedunculated brown tags. They are especially common in obese persons and may appear immediately after an intertriginous dermatitis has subsided.

"Senile angiomas" also known as cherry angiomas or de Morgan spots are small telangiectatic disturbances of the skin, which are



FIG 96 Seborrheic keratosis. Notice the superficial location of the lesion.

quite common in older persons. It has been estimated that 75 per cent of all individuals past the age of 50 have "senile" angiomas, and the incidence increases with age. These lesions appear as small red masses composed of tiny dilated vascular loops. Diascopic pressure obliterates the spot. The lesions are entirely harmless and the treatment of choice is reassurance.

### Malignant Tumors

Cutaneous cancer is the most common of all malignant neoplasms, and the incidence of this condition increases with age. By far the largest number of skin cancers is seen in areas where expo-

on the patient's part. They may be found in virtually any area, although they are most frequently seen on the trunk (Fig 9 5). The neoplasms are so superficially situated that they have been described as resembling drops of beeswax on the skin surface (Fig 9 6). Their color varies from tan to brown or black, and the papule or nodule is covered with a greasy scale that forms a warty eleva-

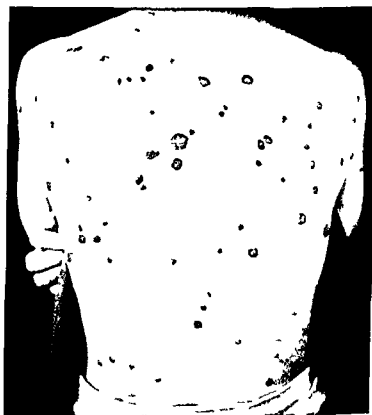


FIG 9 5 Multiple sebaceous keratoses of the trunk. The flat lesion on the left lumbar area proved to be intraepithelial squamous cell carcinoma (Bowen's disease).

tion. Malignant change is rare. Removal of sebaceous verrucae is easily accomplished by scraping the neoplasm off with a dermal curette after the surface has been sprayed with ethyl chloride or Freon 114. The tissue removed may be saved for pathologic study. Scarring seldom results from this method.

Numerous small rounded slightly yellow papules that may be umbilicated are often seen over the forehead and cheeks of elderly persons. These entirely benign lesions have been termed senile

*sebaceous adenomas* and they are composed of hypertrophic sebaceous glands. Their main importance lies in the fact that they are often confused with basal cell carcinomas.

Old people often have small *cutaneous tags* about the neck and axillae. These may appear as tiny papules or pedunculated brown tags. They are especially common in obese persons and may appear immediately after an intertriginous dermatitis has subsided.

"Senile" angiomas also known as cherry angiomas or de Morgan spots are small telangiectatic disturbances of the skin which are

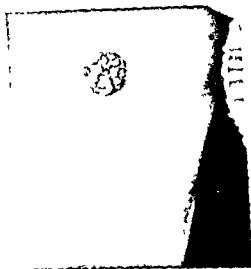


FIG. 9-6 Seborrheic keratosis. Notice the superficial location of the lesion.

quite common in older persons. It has been estimated that 75 per cent of all individuals past the age of 30 have senile angiomas and the incidence increases with age. These lesions appear as small red masses composed of tiny dilated vascular loops. Diascopic pressure obliterates the spot. The lesions are entirely harmless, and the treatment of choice is reassurance.

### Malignant Tumors

Cutaneous cancer is the most common of all malignant neoplasms and the incidence of this condition increases with age. By far the largest number of skin cancers is seen in areas where expo-



sure to sunlight is greatest. In the sunny part of Australia, for example, the incidence of cutaneous cancer may be as high as 90 per cent of all malignancies. Moreover, the exposed areas of the body are involved far more frequently than the covered areas. Older people who move to sunny climates after retirement may unwittingly accelerate the development of skin cancer. There is no doubt that excessive exposure to sunlight prematurely ages the skin, this fact is evident both clinically and microscopically. Physicians could do much to reduce the incidence of cutaneous cancer by explaining



FIG. 97 Squamous cell epithelioma of the rim of the ear. This is a frequent site for this neoplasm.

to their older patients the risks involved in excessive exposure to sunlight.

*Squamous cell epithelioma* (sometimes referred to as prickly cell epithelioma or carcinoma) is locally invasive and may metastasize to internal organs; consequently, it is always a dangerous lesion (Figs. 97-98). It may occur anywhere but is most common on the face, especially on the lower lip. Lesions on the lower lip are seen most often in elderly men, most of whom use tobacco in some form. Chronic irritation from a pipe or a jagged tooth occasionally seems to be a factor. *Squamous cell carcinoma* sometimes develops from a pre-existing senile keratosis (Fig. 99). In other cases it appears abruptly.

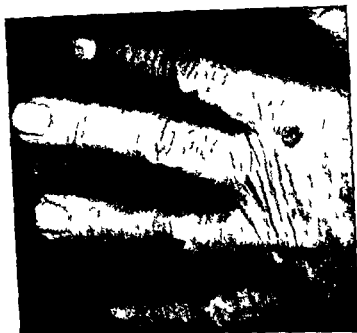


FIG 98 Squamous cell epithelioma of the dorsum of the hand originating in a chronic ulcer of two years duration. A biopsy should be performed on any persistent ulceration no matter where it is located.

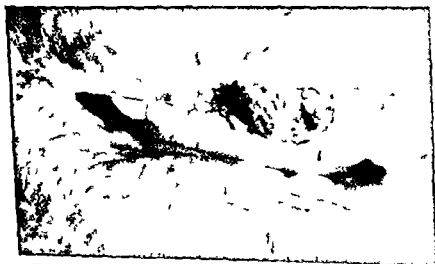


FIG 99 Squamous cell epithelioma of the upper lip originating in a senile keratosis. This lesion is more frequently seen on the lower lip.

The clinical appearance varies greatly. Palpation frequently reveals infiltration. The neoplasm may be raised above the surface of the skin or may be flat, with infiltration beneath the surface, it is extremely difficult to appraise the extent of these latter lesions. A fully developed squamous cell epithelioma frequently shows central ulceration and crusting. By the time this stage is reached metastases may have occurred, and a careful examination of the regional lymph nodes is imperative. Lesions on the lip and on the tongue or other mucous membranes tend to metastasize rapidly.



FIG. 9 10 Basal cell epitheliomas of the forehead and left cheek: the lesion on the forehead is of the morphealike variety while the lesion on the left cheek is typical of so called rodent ulcer.

Superficial squamous cell carcinoma (Fig. 9 5) or *carcinoma in situ* (also called Bowen's disease) is sometimes confused with psoriasis or other eczematoid dermatoses and microscopic study may be necessary to make the diagnosis. Some of these patients give a history of having had some arsenical preparation orally or parenterally perhaps years previously. It is known that administration of arsenic may predispose to the later development of so called arsenical keratoses principally on the palms and soles. Such keratoses are notoriously prone to undergo malignant change.

*Basal cell epithelioma* (Fig. 9 10) is the most easily recognized and least dangerous of all the cutaneous malignancies. Like squa-

squamous cell epithelioma it is seen most often on the face although it too can occur anywhere. Perhaps the most common form is the raised rounded buttonlike type consisting of a firm nodule having a skin colored or waxy appearance. The border is elevated and rounded and umbilication is common. Small telangiectatic vessels are often visible on the surface. The lesion grows slowly and it is not unusual to see only moderate growth over a period of several years. Central ulceration with crusting frequently supervenes sooner or later.

Another fairly common type is the morphealike epithelioma which may initially suggest localized scleroderma. Careful examination under a good light with the suspected skin area put under tension by the thumb and forefinger will usually reveal a definite rolled pearly gray border.

Multiple flat basal cell epitheliomas often resemble an inflammatory dermatosis such as psoriasis and biopsy may be necessary for an accurate diagnosis. Sometimes scores of such lesions are seen scattered over the skin surface of the trunk. Basal cell epithelioma does not tend to metastasize but does locally invade deeper structures including bone. Epitheliomas on the nose around the eyes and on the ears should be handled very carefully since the nature of the underlying tissues makes any malignant invasion hazardous.

When a squamous cell or basal cell carcinoma is suspected complete excision (if the lesion is small) or biopsy with pathologic study is indicated. Treatment will depend on the size, site and type of lesion. Excision, roentgen irradiation and electrodesiccation with curettage all have their applications.

Malignant melanoma or melanocarcinoma is an extremely malignant neoplasm. It is sometimes termed "the black death." The tumor begins invariably as a junction nevus and may grow slowly or rapidly. The lesion is a flat nonhairy neoplasm usually slate blue to black in color although the so called amelanotic melanoma may be flesh colored. Since there may occasionally be considerable growth beneath the surface accurate appraisal of the extent of a melanotic lesion may be difficult. Superficial ulceration with crust formation seldom occurs until the tumor has spread through the lymphatics and blood stream.

Any slate blue or black lesion that is increasing in size or exhibiting evidence of inflammation should be viewed with suspicion.

Since moles located on the soles, palms, and genitalia are especially prone to undergo malignant change, prophylactic excision of such lesions located in these areas should be considered.

Treatment of malignant melanoma is unsatisfactory and the best hope of cure lies in the early removal of any nevus that is undergoing a change in size or appearance. If histologic studies reveal melanoma, wide excision is the treatment of choice. Radical procedures such as amputation are seldom justified.

### REFERENCES

1. LEWIS, G. M. *Practical Dermatology*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1952.
2. WAISMAN, M. Dermatologic problems of elderly persons. *Geriatrics* 12:507-514, 1957.

## CHAPTER 10

# Ocular Problems in Geriatric Practice

R WINSTON ROBERTS

While older patients are subject to virtually all the ocular problems seen in children and young adults there are many diseases and functional problems of the eyes that occur most commonly in the later years. Most of these are degenerative disorders but certain types of infections, neoplasms and other diseases are also encountered most frequently late in life.

### DEGENERATIONS AND ABIOTROPHIC DISORDERS OF THE GLOBE

#### The Conjunctiva

Degenerations of the conjunctiva while seldom of clinical importance are almost universal among elderly patients. These changes may be sufficiently conspicuous to be a matter of concern from the cosmetic aspect.

**PINGUECULA** Perhaps the most frequent and important of the benign degenerations of the conjunctiva is the pinguecula. This is a yellowish slightly elevated thickening of the bulbar conjunctiva that appears on either side of the cornea in the region of the lid aperture. It is composed of *proliferated elastic fibers*, hyaline degeneration of the fibrous tissue and amorphous hyaline material and it is thought to be due to the combination of exposure and scalds. It is not infrequently confused with pterygium but unlike pterygium it is quite harmless. Treatment is required only in rare instances where the yellowish thickening becomes so prominent as to be disfiguring.

**CONCRETIONS** Of almost equal prevalence are firm white concretions in the conjunctiva usually embedded but sometimes slightly elevated. These are composed of epithelial debris and products of old infections in conjunctival glands. They usually cause no trouble, although they are often the center of a focal redness. In some cases, however, the concretions may become elevated above the surface, producing the sensation of a foreign body and occasionally even scratching the globe. In such instances they may readily be excised.

### **The Cornea**

The cornea is also subject to degenerative changes which are usually harmless but may affect its transparency and focusing properties.

**ARCUS SENILIS** Frequently with advancing age a yellowish gray ring develops about the peripheral portion of the cornea composed of particles of lipid material deposits through the stroma of the cornea. It is separated from the periphery by a narrow clear zone which makes it readily distinguishable from harmful marginal degeneration. It never interferes with vision and requires no therapy.

**PTERYGIUM** Pterygium is most prevalent in individuals frequently exposed to the elements and especially to wind and dust. It usually invades from the nasal side of the cornea and almost always begins in the area of a pinguecula. From this area there is a triangular encroachment of the conjunctiva upon the cornea preceded by a zone of gray infiltrate that progresses usually very slowly from the limbus toward the pupillary center. Vision may be impaired by invasion of the pupillary area. The substance of the pterygium may become thickened and markedly vascularized. The true nature of this condition is still not definitely known but pathologic studies show an invasion of hyaline degenerative tissue and granulation like tissue into the region of Bowman's membrane which is partially destroyed and replaced.

True pterygium should be distinguished from pseudo pterygium which is a postinflammatory adherence of the conjunctiva to the cornea occurring at the site of a marginal corneal ulcer, chemical burn or some other inflammatory process. The pseudo pterygium is a bridge of conjunctiva attached to this abnormal corneal site.

The tip of a squint hook can usually be passed beneath it—a maneuver that is not possible with true pterygium

The treatment of pterygium is surgical but recurrence is frequent The use of beta irradiation when recurrence is becoming evident or prophylactically after excision where recurrence is feared has been a major addition to the therapy of this troublesome condition

**CORNEAL DYSTROPHIES** Degeneration of the corneal endothelium occurs in a large number of elderly individuals This endothelial change is called guttate keratopathy and is considered a precursor of endothelial dystrophy of Fuchs which may progress to opacification of the corneal stroma edema and the formation of bullae in the epithelium

Until very recent years we had no satisfactory treatment for epithelial and endothelial dystrophies Now however keratoplasty with large corneal grafts if performed relatively early in the course of the dystrophy may offer lasting corneal transparency and freedom from the discomfort that accompanies the development of epithelial bullae

Less frequent dystrophic opacifications of the cornea include familial corneal dystrophies which are characterized by deposits of whitish hyaline-like material in the superficial layers of the cornea Corneal grafting has been effective in the treatment of these dystrophies

Band keratopathy is a slowly developing gray band sometimes containing calcium deposits in the exposed part of the cornea in the lid aperture It may rarely occur in apparently normal eyes with advancing age but more often occurs after iridocyclitis or some other disease resulting in phthisis

Marginal thinning of the cornea sometimes to a degree leading to ectasia is a condition occasionally seen in the aged It may rarely lead to visual disturbance or even more rarely to rupture of the globe from relatively minor trauma

## **The Lens**

**PRESBYOPIA** Of universal occurrence in early middle age is the loss of elasticity of the crystalline lens leading to progressively diminishing range of focusing power or accommodation In many in



dividuals the loss of ability to read small print appears to strike with disconcerting suddenness. The use of bifocals or reading glasses to overcome this loss of accommodation should be readily accepted by all who are made to understand that this handicap comes to everyone who reaches late maturity.

**CATARACTS** Few conditions as common as cataracts are so poorly understood. While any opacity of the crystalline lens may be technically and accurately called a cataract only opacification sufficient to produce significant impairment of vision is of practical importance. With age the crystalline lens becomes increasingly less transparent in all of us but for reasons not clearly understood cataracts develop much earlier in some people than in others. In some cases the early and occasionally rapid development of cataracts is unquestionably an inherited trait.

There is still no effective medical treatment for cataracts with the possible exception of some early diabetic cataracts that undergo reversal under hormonal treatment of the diabetes. Modern cataract surgery, however, is almost always safe and successful. The proper time for cataract surgery depends primarily on the individual patient's need for good vision. When the poor vision resulting from the cataracts is proving really troublesome the patient should be advised to have his cataracts removed. Bilateral cataract surgery should be recommended for all patients who have had normal binocular vision not only because of the advantages of binocular compared to monocular vision but also in order to avoid the troublesome confusion that often results from the presence of a remaining clouded eye even where its vision is very poor.

## **Retina and Choroid**

**HYALINE BODIES OF BRUCH'S MEMBRANE (DRUSEN)** Among the many degenerative processes affecting the retina and choroid in late middle age and beyond perhaps the most frequent and least harmful is the development of hyaline or colloid excrescences of Bruch's membrane or the *humina vitrea*. Ophthalmoscopically these appear as yellowish white slightly glistening dots or larger circular spots that may be scattered loosely throughout the fundus but tend to form large collections in the region of the macula. Since they

seldom cause visual loss, their chief clinical importance lies in the need to distinguish them from hard or waxy exudates

**MACULAR DEGENERATIONS** Under the term "heredodegeneration of the macula" may be included various types of degenerations of the retina and choroid in the macular area which occur with distressing frequency. These degenerations may begin in the young adult period but are far more common in the latter decades of life. They are invariably bilateral and appear to be virtually always hereditary. As a rule ophthalmoscopic evidence of degenerative change is visible before the patient complains of visual loss. While the ophthalmoscopic appearance varies markedly the usual early picture is a mottling or stippling of the pigment in the macular area with increasing areas of atrophy, loss of the foveal reflex in increasingly large groupings of pigment and degenerative scar formation. The lesion may have a honeycomb appearance and is often large, sharply delimited and virtually round, obliterating the entire macular area. Arteriosclerotic changes are frequently present in both the retinal and choroidal vessels.

The first symptom noted by the patient is usually distortion of vision and the appearance of a misty spot in the center of his fixation area. Visual loss progresses as this spot grows larger and larger though the patient can usually continue to read with the aid of magnification for varying periods. Eventually, however, his central vision may be so greatly diminished as to preclude any discrimination of details. Since peripheral vision is never affected by this type of degeneration the patient may be reassured that he will remain able to get around unaided.

The pathologic picture is one of degenerative change and then complete dissolution of the retinal elements without glial proliferation or other evidences of any reparative activity. The absence of any consistent vascular change suggests that this is a true atrophic disturbance of the cells themselves.

**ANGIOID STREAKS AND DISCIFORM DEGENERATION** Another type of degenerative change that occurs in the fundus is characterized by the presence of irregular, somewhat jagged streakings of the choroid, reddish or reddish brown in color, which are called angioid streaks. These streaks, which vary from only one or two small lines to numerous patterns, represent breaks in Bruch's membrane and

dividuals the loss of ability to read small print appears to strike with disconcerting suddenness. The use of bifocals or reading glasses to overcome this loss of accommodation should be readily accepted by all who are made to understand that this handicap comes to everyone who reaches late maturity.

**CATARACTS** Few conditions as common as cataracts are so poorly understood. While any opacity of the crystalline lens may be technically and accurately called a cataract, only opacification sufficient to produce significant impairment of vision is of practical importance. With age, the crystalline lens becomes increasingly less transparent in all of us, but for reasons not clearly understood cataracts develop much earlier in some people than in others. In some cases the early and occasionally rapid development of cataracts is unquestionably an inherited trait.

There is still no effective medical treatment for cataracts with the possible exception of some early diabetic cataracts that undergo reversal under hormonal treatment of the diabetes. Modern cataract surgery, however, is almost always safe and successful. The proper time for cataract surgery depends primarily on the individual patient's need for good vision. When the poor vision resulting from the cataracts is proving really troublesome, the patient should be advised to have his cataracts removed. Bilateral cataract surgery should be recommended for all patients who have had normal binocular vision, not only because of the advantages of binocular compared to monocular vision, but also in order to avoid the troublesome confusion that often results from the presence of a remaining clouded eye even when its vision is very poor.

## Retina and Choroid

**HYALINE BODIES OF BRUCH'S MEMBRANE (DRUSEN)** Among the many degenerative processes affecting the retina and choroid in late middle age and beyond, perhaps the most frequent and least harmful is the development of hyaline or colloid excrescences of Bruch's membrane or the lamina vitrea. Ophthalmoscopically these appear as yellowish white, slightly glistening dots or larger circular spots that may be scattered loosely throughout the fundus but tend to form large collections in the region of the macula. Since they

No effective treatment of these retinal degenerations is yet available. The patient should be made aware of the usual course of the disease and assured that, while central vision may be gravely impaired, blindness virtually never results. Magnifying devices help these patients to make the most of their eyesight for years after their macular vision has been seriously affected.

**DEGENERATIONS ASSOCIATED WITH RETINAL DETACHMENT** With advancing age, deterioration of the peripheral and equatorial portions of the retina, as well as degenerative change in the vitreous body, occurs with increasing frequency. This fact may be associated with the increased prevalence of retinal detachment in the older age periods. When degenerative change causes the vitreous body to become detached from its normal position filling the posterior segment of the globe, the patient frequently sees recurrent flashes of light followed in many cases by the development of a floating irregular spot or strand in the vision of one eye. This phenomenon, which is commonly called Moore's lightning flashes, is virtually pathognomonic of vitreous detachment. When abnormal vitreous adhesions to the retina are present, the collapsing vitreous may tear loose a little piece of retinal tissue or open a much larger retinal hole, usually of a horseshoe shape. Such frank retinal breaks are usually followed by retinal detachment.

Whenever a patient gives a typical history of Moore's lightning flashes, especially if they are followed by a new vitreous floater, the possibility of impending retinal detachment should be considered. If careful study of the fundus through the widely dilated pupil shows any evidence of a retinal hole or break, surgical sealing of this break is necessary to prevent a frank detachment. Where frank retinal detachment does occur, it must be corrected by a surgical procedure.

## The Sclera

**SCLEROMALACIA PERFORANS** While mild degenerative disorders of the sclera such as fatty degeneration, hyaline degeneration, and calcification are not rare, they are seldom of clinical importance and usually have few effects other than discoloration of the sclera. In scleromalacia perforans, a disorder more frequent in elderly individuals who have had arthritis, the sclera becomes thin and holes

are most frequently found about the optic disc. They are situated *behind* the retinal vessels and should be differentiated from prominent choroidal vessels or ruptures of the choroid. The condition is occasionally associated with the rather rare skin disease *pyoderma elastica*, in which there is a congenital and hereditary malformation of the elastic tissue of the skin. While angioid streaks do not necessarily indicate ultimate visual deterioration, their frequent association with disciform degeneration of the macula (Kühnt-Juvinet degeneration) makes them a serious prognostic sign.

Disciform degeneration characteristically appears as a round or irregularly oval, somewhat elevated, mass in the macular area which is gray, grayish white, or yellowish in color. It usually begins with the development of deep round hemorrhages in the macular area. As these are gradually absorbed, thickening and organization of the blood and transudate occur in the layers between Bruch's membrane and the neuroepithelial layer of the retina. The result is an elevated mass of scar tissue that causes a permanent, dense central scotoma and the loss of ability to see any fine details. When the central mass is well organized, however, the disease generally progresses little further and peripheral vision is retained.

**CIRCINATE RETINOPATHY** A group of related retinal degenerations now lumped together under the general term "circinate retinopathy" are characterized clinically by the presence of a complete or incomplete ring of white or yellowish white hard looking exudates. These most typically surround the macula, but may include extramacular portions of the fundus and often form a large ring that includes both the disc and the macula. Circinate retinopathy may accompany macular degeneration, diabetic retinopathy, Coats's exudative retinopathy, and subclinical incomplete occlusion of the central venous circulation of the retina. While the central vision may be eventually so impaired that the patient is barely able to count fingers, the disease may progress very slowly. Currently it is believed that all circinate retinal degenerations reflect choroidal circulatory inadequacy and anoxia of the retinal elements.

**CHOROIDAL SCLEROSIS** Another infrequent degenerative vascular disease that may markedly reduce vision is choroidal sclerosis. In this condition severe arteriosclerosis of the choroidal vessels is associated with depigmentation and atrophy of the retina.

No effective treatment of these retinal degenerations is yet available. The patient should be made aware of the usual course of the disease and assured that while central vision may be gravely impaired blindness virtually never results. Magnifying devices help these patients to make the most of their eyesight for years after their macular vision has been seriously affected.

**DEGENERATIONS ASSOCIATED WITH RETINAL DETACHMENT** With advancing age deterioration of the peripheral and equatorial portions of the retina as well as degenerative change in the vitreous body occurs with increasing frequency. This fact may be associated with the increased prevalence of retinal detachment in the older age periods. When degenerative change causes the vitreous body to become detached from its normal position filling the posterior segment of the globe the patient frequently sees recurrent flashes of light followed in many cases by the development of a floating irregular spot or strand in the vision of one eye. This phenomenon which is commonly called Moore's lightning flashes is virtually pathognomonic of vitreous detachment. When abnormal vitreous adhesions to the retina are present the collapsing vitreous may tear loose a little piece of retinal tissue or open a much larger retinal hole usually of a horseshoe shape. Such frank retinal breaks are usually followed by retinal detachment.

Whenever a patient gives a typical history of Moore's lightning flashes (especially if they are followed by a new vitreous floater) the possibility of impending retinal detachment should be considered. If careful study of the fundus through the widely dilated pupil shows any evidence of a retinal hole or break surgical sealing of this break is necessary to prevent a frank detachment. Where frank retinal detachment does occur it must be corrected by a surgical procedure.

## The Sclera

**SKLEROMALACIA PERFORANS** While mild degenerative disorders of the sclera such as fatty degeneration, hyaline degeneration and calcification are not rare they are seldom of clinical importance and usually have few effects other than discoloration of the sclera. In *skleromalacia perforans*, a disorder more frequent in elderly individuals who have had arthritis, the sclera becomes thin and holes

appear in it. This condition is not associated with any obvious signs of inflammation.

## INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS OF THE GLOBE

While geriatric patients may suffer any of the infections and inflammatory diseases of the globe that are seen in other patients, certain inflammatory disorders are sufficiently characteristic and frequent in this age period to deserve special attention.

### The Conjunctiva

**CHRONIC CATARRHAL CONJUNCTIVITIS** This usually minor inflammatory reaction is extremely prevalent in elderly patients. The eyes burn and show persistent or recurrent redness, sometimes accompanied by a scanty, stringy discharge. Scrapings from the conjunctiva may reveal no organisms, but nonhemolytic or hemolytic *Staphylococcus aureus* can often be grown. In cases where the conjunctivitis is chiefly a marginal irritation, maximal about the outer corners of the conjunctivae and usually associated with maceration and scaling of the lids in this region, the Morax-Axenfeld bacillus can occasionally be found. If no specific organisms are found, it is very important to look carefully, with the aid of magnification, for ingrowing cilia that may be rubbing against the globe, and also for concretions or cilia impacted in the lacrimal puncta.

**PSEUDO MEMBRANOUS CONJUNCTIVITIS** While elderly patients may occasionally be afflicted with pseudo membranous conjunctivitis caused by streptococci or staphylococci, they are much more often subject to a pseudo membranous type of infection produced by Gram negative organisms of the coliform group. These infections may be particularly chronic and resistant to treatment.

In all these types of conjunctivitis an attempt should be made to identify the causative organism, so that the appropriate antibiotic or chemotherapeutic agent may be used. It is important to treat any concurrent infection of the lid margins. Since infections of the conjunctiva are often recurrent in elderly patients, special consideration should be given to the dangers of causing sensitization to the drug used. Drugs not usually used for systemic infections and relatively nonallergenic should be chosen. It is particularly important

to avoid the use of topical penicillin. Highly soluble sulfonamide preparations such as sodium sulfacetamide and Gantrisin are perhaps most desirable. Among the antibiotics chloramphenicol used either in solution or as an ointment, and combinations of bacitracin, neomycin and polymyxin are very useful.

## The Cornea

**MARGINAL KERATITIS** Marginal infections of the cornea are frequent in elderly patients. They may cause yellowish infiltrates just within the corneal limbus with injection of sectors of the episcleral and conjunctival vessels in the area of these infiltrates. Subepithelial corneal abscesses may form, often becoming excavated marginal ulcers that may include much of the corneal circumference. Such abscesses are most commonly associated with chronic staphylococcal infections of the lid margins.

This type of keratitis requires strenuous topical therapy with sulfonamides or antibiotics to which the staphylococcus is not resistant. Careful attention must be given to the lid margins and the drugs should be used in the conjunctival sac. In many instances desensitization with staphylococcus toxoid is helpful in preventing recurrences.

**NEUROPATHIC KERATITIS** Another inflammatory disease of the cornea, especially common in old age is neuropathic keratitis. Perhaps the two most important causes of this disorder in geriatric patients are trigeminal neuralgia and herpes zoster of the ophthalmic branch of the fifth nerve. The corneal changes associated with herpes zoster, like the other ocular manifestations of this disease, are likely to be seen when the nasociliary branch of the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve is involved. During the active phases of the disease diffuse edema of the corneal epithelium is likely to be present, but the most characteristic lesions are nodular subepithelial infiltrates involving the superficial layers of the corneal stroma and looking much like little snowballs. The epithelium overlying these nodular infiltrates often breaks down into superficial ulcers. This keratitis is frequently very persistent and in some cases leaves permanent opacities.

An effective method of treating herpes zoster still has not been found. Perhaps the most valuable specific treatment for its ocular



appear in it. This condition is not associated with any obvious signs of inflammation.

## INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS OF THE GLOBE

While geriatric patients may suffer any of the infections and inflammatory diseases of the globe that are seen in other patients, certain inflammatory disorders are sufficiently characteristic and frequent in this age period to deserve special attention.

### The Conjunctiva

**CHRONIC CATARRHAL CONJUNCTIVITIS** This usually minor inflammatory reaction is extremely prevalent in elderly patients. The eyes burn and show persistent or recurrent redness, sometimes accompanied by a scanty, stringy discharge. Scrapings from the conjunctiva may reveal no organisms, but nonhemolytic or hemolytic *Staphylococcus aureus* can often be grown. In cases where the conjunctivitis is chiefly a marginal irritation, maximal about the outer corners of the conjunctivae and usually associated with maceration and scaling of the lids in this region, the Morax-Axenfeld bacillus can occasionally be found. If no specific organisms are found, it is very important to look carefully, with the aid of magnification, for ingrowing cilia that may be rubbing against the globe, and also for concretions or cilia impacted in the lacrimal puncta.

**PSEUDO MEMBRANOUS CONJUNCTIVITIS** While elderly patients may occasionally be afflicted with pseudo membranous conjunctivitis caused by streptococci or staphylococci, they are much more often subject to a pseudo membranous type of infection produced by Gram negative organisms of the coliform group. These infections may be particularly chronic and resistant to treatment.

In all these types of conjunctivitis an attempt should be made to identify the causative organism so that the appropriate antibiotic or chemotherapeutic agent may be used. It is important to treat any concurrent infection of the lid margins. Since infections of the conjunctiva are often recurrent in elderly patients, special consideration should be given to the dangers of causing sensitization to the drug used. Drugs not usually used for systemic infections and relatively nonallergenic should be chosen. It is particularly important

episcleral tissues, with a gelatinous type of edema. Corneal involvement of a sclerosing type often occurs, and there is usually severe uveitis. While the etiology is often obscure, this type of scleritis may accompany tuberculous infections or collagen disorders. In many cases it runs a fulminating course leading to loss of the eye.

If a specific infection like tuberculosis can be implicated, specific therapy with antibiotic and chemotherapeutic agents should be vigorously employed. In the majority of cases, however, the use of ACTH or steroids, both topically and in large doses systemically, offers the best chance of preserving the eyes.

### The Uveal Tract and Retina

Inflammatory diseases of the uvea and retina are not prominent afflictions of the elderly and in general do not differ from those seen in younger patients.

**IRIDOCYCLITIS** Perhaps the most common type of uveitis in geriatric practice is nongranulomatous iritis or iridocyclitis, seen as an accompaniment of joint disease, usually some form of rheumatoid arthritis. The usual picture is that of a red, painful, light sensitive eye. The vision may be only slightly reduced or may be very hazy. The chief condition to be considered in the differential diagnosis is acute congestive closed angle glaucoma.

Iridocyclitis of this type is now managed successfully in most cases by frequent topical applications of steroids, together with atropine to prevent the formation of adhesions between the iris and the lens capsule. Salicylates are often given by mouth for their nonspecific effect on inflammatory reactions of this type. Where topical applications of steroids are not adequate, the systemic administration of corticotropin, cortisone, hydrocortisone, or some related steroid is necessary. In the presence of posterior uveitis or chorioretinitis, the topical application of steroids is of no value and they must always be given systemically along with specific therapy for the causative process if this can be determined.

### GLAUCOMA

No ocular problem is of greater importance in the older age groups than the glaucomas, which have as one of their most prominent

complications is the use of immune serum or blood taken from a recent victim of herpes zoster. For the corneal lesions themselves the topical use of steroid solutions appears to minimize pain and corneal damage in effect that is in direct contrast to the exaggeration of the trouble seen from the use of steroids in herpes simplex infections.

The neuropathic keratitis associated with trigeminal neuralgia appears to be a trophic change and is usually seen after excision or injection of the ganglion for tic douloureux. The cornea, in addition to losing its sensitivity, appears to undergo changes resulting in abnormal cellular metabolism. The result is punctate stippling and haze of the corneal epithelium, which may progress to exfoliation or vesiculation and possibly to eventual necrosis.

The ideal treatment for this type of neuropathic keratitis occurring after treatment for trigeminal neuralgia is prophylactic. In some cases the cornea can be kept intact by the use of lubricating solutions such as methyl cellulose but in many cases a tarsorrhaphy must be performed to protect the cornea by covering it completely or partially with the lids.

## **The Sclera**

**NODULAR EPISCLERITIS** This disease is seen chiefly in older people and is usually associated with gout or arthritis. A red or purplish nodule attached to the sclera, develops rapidly in the episcleral tissues. It is tender and painful and may run a recurrent course lasting some weeks. At times it is associated with deeper inflammation of the sclera which may affect a large segment of the globe producing dark red injection, edema, and tenderness. Uveitis is sometimes associated with this type of scleritis.

The first step in treating nodular episcleritis and benign scleritis is to treat the associated systemic disease if effective therapy is available. In addition, however, the use of steroids is helpful. In many cases frequent topical applications of steroids are adequate to control the inflammation but if they fail, systemic steroid therapy will usually be effective. Salicylates are also helpful in controlling symptoms.

**BRAUN'S SCLERITIS** This is a much more virulent form of scleritis occasionally seen in elderly patients. It is characterized by fulminating diffuse inflammation and swelling of the sclera and

are self limited producing brief episodes of somewhat hazy vision transient headaches and often the classic observation of colored haloes about lights. Diagnosis of closed angle glaucoma in its sub acute stage is confirmed by the use of provocative tests that dilate the pupil such as placing the patient in a completely dark room for an hour or administering a mild mydriatic.

Closed angle glaucoma is perhaps the most satisfactory type of glaucoma to treat. The intraocular tension must be lowered quickly if possible by the use of potent miotics such as strong solutions of pilocarpine frequently administered or combinations of physostigmine and an acetylcholine drug such as Mecholyl or Carbachol (carbamylcholine chloride). If the use of miotics plus sedation does not reduce the intraocular tension oral or parenteral administration of Diamox (acetazolamide) will help by suppressing aqueous formation.

When the intraocular tension has been brought to normal or as nearly so as possible surgery should always be done. Since the anatomic potentialities of angle closure are bilateral operations should be performed on both eyes. In most cases peripheral iridectomy will give lasting protection against the danger of further congestive attacks. In cases of subacute closed angle glaucoma prophylactic iridectomy should be done to prevent acute congestive episodes. Only in the patient with a short life expectancy should one rely on the continuous use of miotics to prevent future congestive episodes for such episodes occasionally occur even when miotics are being used.

**SIMPLE GLAUCOMA** This type of primary glaucoma is of much greater clinical importance than closed angle glaucoma not only because it is four to five times more frequent but particularly because the patient seldom has symptoms until his vision has been severely damaged. The insidious nature of this disease makes it mandatory for all physicians especially those dealing with older patients to be constantly on the lookout for it.

The classic signs of simple glaucoma are cupping or glaucomatous atrophy of the optic discs characteristic reduction of the visual fields and elevation of the intraocular tension which is usually of such minor degree that it can be appreciated only by careful measurement with a tonometer. If all internists and general practitioners would become familiar with the use of the tonom-

ment features an elevation of the fluid pressure in the eyeball. They are among the leading causes of blindness in the United States. Various glaucoma detection studies on unselected groups of the population suggest that the incidence of glaucoma in the population above the age of 40 is at least 2 per cent. Since the blinding potential of this group of diseases can be greatly reduced by early diagnosis and treatment, it is important for all practitioners of medicine to maintain a constant watch for new cases, so that they can be treated before the condition has progressed too far.

The glaucomas include primary glaucoma in which the elevation of intraocular tension appears to be of itself a disease process or part of a disease process, in the globe, and the secondary glaucomas in which the elevation of intraocular tension is secondary to some other ocular disease such as an inflammatory process, trauma or a neoplasm. Primary glaucoma is by far the more important of the two major categories. It includes two distinct types: closed or narrow angle glaucoma and simple glaucoma or glaucoma simplex.

**CLOSED ANGLE GLAUCOMA.** This form of glaucoma is the type usually referred to by the word glaucoma. In this condition drainage of the aqueous humor is blocked by apposition of the iris to the posterior surface of the cornea. This type of blockage occurs only in eyes in which there is anatomic narrowness of the chamber angle, narrowness that characteristically increases with advancing age. When the chamber angle is blocked and aqueous drainage is stopped, fluid pressure builds up rapidly and alarming heights may be reached in a short time. Thus the typical picture of closed angle glaucoma is the clinical entity known as acute congestive glaucoma.

In this condition there is a rather sudden onset of headache, severe pain in the eye, blurring of the vision, frequently severe nausea and vomiting, and often profound prostration. The cornea is hazy and the pupil is dilated. In addition there is marked hardening of the globe, which can usually be detected readily by finger palpation. Acute congestive glaucoma constitutes one of the major emergencies in ophthalmic practice, since it causes permanent and irreversible damage to the vision unless the intraocular pressure is reduced within a short period.

Closed angle glaucoma may also occur in a subacute, virtually subclinical form. In this form the angle closure is incomplete, and the increases in intraocular tension are much less pronounced and



FIG. 10.1 Senile ectropion. Lid sagging is accompanied by drying and excoriation of the conjunctiva.



FIG. 10.2 Senile spastic entropion. Inward rolling of the lower lid causes the cilia to rub against the globe.

eter, many more cases of glaucoma would be detected in the early stages. Certainly any patient with unusual cupping of the discs should have an ophthalmologic examination to determine the presence or absence of glaucoma. If the disease cannot be definitely excluded repeated examinations must be done until the diagnosis is confirmed or disproved.

Like the other types of this disease, simple glaucoma should be treated by an ophthalmologist. The current trend is toward medical treatment of simple glaucoma, either with miotics alone or in conjunction with Diamox, with surgery to be resorted to only when medical treatment is not effective. Repeated evaluations of the visual fields are necessary to determine the efficacy of treatment. If it is impossible to prevent deterioration of the visual fields by medical means, surgery should be used in all patients except those with a short life expectancy.

**SECONDARY GLAUCOMA** The eye tolerates secondary glaucoma far better than primary glaucoma. Consequently, therapy should be directed chiefly at the primary disease process which is most often uveitis. Atropine rather than miotics is usually the drug of choice and if the tension rises to alarming levels Diamox may be used to reduce it until the primary disease can be brought under control. If the glaucoma persists after the primary disease becomes quiescent surgery usually is required.

## DISORDERS OF THE OCULAR ADNEXA

### The Lids

Of all the structures about the eye none are more prone to develop senile disorders usually of a degenerative nature, than the lids.

**ECTROPION AND ENTROPION** Ectropion, a very common condition in older people is characterized by sagging and eversion of the lids particularly the lower lid. There may be merely slight eversion of the lid border most often affecting the inner portion and thereby everting the lacrimal puncta but the sagging and eversion may be sufficient to expose almost the entire lower conjunctival sac. Senile ectropion is usually entirely dependent upon loss of tone in the tissues of the lids (Figs 10-1, 10-2).



FIG 10-1 Senile ectropion. Lid sagging is accompanied by drying and excoriation of the conjunctiva.

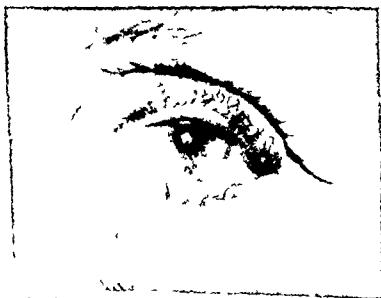


FIG 10-2 Senile spastic entropion. Inward rolling of the lower lid causes the cilia to rub against the globe.



In entropion, which is perhaps even more frequent in elderly patients, there is a tendency for the lid margins to sag or roll inward thereby permitting the cilia to rub against the corner and bulbar conjunctiva. This condition often leads to severe erosion of the corneal endothelium and a chronic conjunctivitis, and causes marked ocular disability from persistent watering of the eyes and difficulty in holding the eyes open.

Surgery is indicated in the treatment of both these conditions, and is extremely effective in correcting them.

**TRICHIASIS** A common and very troublesome disturbance of the cilia is the aberrant and irregular growth of the lashes which we call trichiasis. The lashes instead of being arranged in an orderly fashion pointing outward point in any and all directions. Many of them point inward and rub against the globe producing chronic irritation and disability comparable to that seen in entropion. Trichiasis is most often the result of chronic blepharitis or infection of the lid margins with consequent malformation of the hair follicles and glands.

In some cases trichiasis can be relieved by appropriate chemotherapeutic or antibiotic treatment of the blepharitis, sometimes combined with desensitization therapy or the topical use of ophthalmic corticosteroid preparations. If entropion accompanies trichiasis as is often the case, surgical relief is necessary. In a great many cases the hair follicles must be destroyed by electrolysis.

**BLEPHAROSPASM** A functional disturbance most common in old people is the habit spasm of the orbicularis muscles known as blepharospasm—a squeezing and winking of the eyelids, which may become so severe that the patient cannot hold his eyes open enough to do any useful work. In many cases the blepharospasm is started by a condition that irritates the corner or conjunctiva but almost always it is perpetuated largely by the functional component.

Any source of irritation about the lids or eyes must have careful attention but relief of this condition depends chiefly upon sympathetic and patient psychotherapy supplemented by mild sedation.

**PTOSIS** Although *congenital* ptosis is seen in infants and children, *acquired* drooping of one or both lids is most common in elderly patients. The drooping of the lids may be dependent upon a palsy of the third nerve, but there are two other important causes

of ptosis. These are myasthenia gravis and senile myopathy, which is prone to affect the levator of the lid (Fig 10-3). Although poorly understood, this condition might be called abiotrophic ocular myopathy. In the older age group the most frequent cause of ptosis owing to third nerve palsy is a vascular accident in the brain. If the stroke is small, recovery of function can usually be expected in time. Other neurologic disturbances, such as the demyelinating disorders or intracranial neoplasms, must be ruled out.

The differential diagnosis between myasthenia gravis and abiotrophic myopathy may sometimes be difficult. Myasthenia gravis is perhaps more likely to undergo spontaneous remissions and to



FIG. 10-3. Ptosis from senile myopathy. There is complete loss of muscular tone on the right; partial loss on the left.

show marked variation in severity during the day. Often there are associated palsies of extraocular muscles that cannot be fitted into any cranial nerve pattern. The greatest help in differentiating myasthenia both from third nerve palsy and from abiotrophic myopathy is the use of test doses of Prostigmin—or better still, Tensilon, which will usually produce immediate and dramatic clearing of the ptosis if it is due to myasthenia.

Senile abiotrophic ocular myopathy may also undergo variations in severity at various periods, depending chiefly upon fatigue and the patient's state of well-being. Other extraocular muscles may eventually become involved, producing marked limitation of ocular movements. When the drooping of the lid interferes with vision,

surgical correction by a shortening of the levator of the lid or the use of a frontalis sling procedure is warranted.

**SENILE ATROPHY AND BLEPHAROCALASIS** These two conditions, which are similar and which doubtless overlap to some degree, become increasingly frequent in old people. With senile atrophy the skin of the lids becomes dry, inelastic, and baggy, leading to unsightly pouches in the lower lids and to sagging folds of skin in the upper lids which may even hang over the cornea and interfere with vision. Blepharocalasis, on the other hand, is a poorly understood disorder, possibly of allergic origin, in which the fat and skin of the



FIG 10-4 Xanthelasma. Harmless but unsightly deposits in the lids are sometimes of psychologic importance to the patient.

upper lid undergo inflammatory change and swelling followed by degenerative change, the result is excessive pouching and skin flaps particularly of the upper lids.

In both of these disorders the primary concern is cosmetic unless the excess flaps of skin and tissue actually interfere with vision. Most cases can readily be corrected by rather simple plastic surgery.

**XANTHELASMA** These elevated yellowish cheesy looking masses in the lids become increasingly prevalent with advancing age. Their appearance is often associated with a high level of cholesterol in the blood and a low cholesterol diet may sometimes help prevent their further development (Fig 10-4). Treatment otherwise consists in simple excision of these masses if the patient becomes sufficiently disturbed about the cosmetic blemish which they cause. Unfortunately they often recur.

## The Lacrimal Apparatus

**KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS SICCA** A fairly common disorder of the lacrimal glands in the later years particularly during the menopausal period in women is keratoconjunctivitis sicca. It is characterized by a deficiency of lacrimal secretion both quantitative and qualitative which leads to dryness, scratchy irritation and chronic redness of the eyes and to stippling and at times desquamation of the corneal epithelium. Actual rolled up filaments of epithelium may be seen hanging on the corneal surface (hence the term *filamentous keratitis*) and there is a characteristic dry, stringy, adherent discharge in the conjunctival sac. A diagnosis can usually be made on the basis of the clinical findings and supported by filter paper measurement of the lacrimal secretions.

The usual treatment for keratoconjunctivitis sicca is the use of tear substitutes. The best of these seems to be methyl cellulose in a 1 to 1 per cent solution to which an antibiotic such as chloramphenicol may be added if there is secondary infection. If the disorder is very severe and does not show the usual improvement seen in most cases over a period of a few years the lacrimal puncta may be sealed with a heated probe or cautery in order to utilize more completely what lacrimal secretion may be present.

**CHRONIC DACTYOCESTITIS** Dactyocystitis occurs frequently at both extremes of life in the elderly and in newborn infants. The patient may initially have an acute episode of dactyocystitis often associated with an upper respiratory infection and characterized by pain, redness and swelling about the lacrimal sac. This condition may lead to frank cellulitis or abscess formation. The acute episode can be controlled by the use of antibiotics, local compresses and irrigations and where necessary incision and drainage of the lacrimal abscess. When the infection is sufficiently controlled the nasolacrimal passages should be opened if possible, by the passage of lacrimal probes since blockage of these ducts is almost invariably a factor in dactyocystitis.

In many instances however the swelling and inflammation associated with acute dactyocystitis lead to scarring that causes permanent stenosis of the nasolacrimal passage. As a result of the poor drainage from the lacrimal sac a chronic or subacute infectious process tends to develop in the lacrimal passage causing

surgical correction by a shortening of the levator of the lid or the use of a frontalis sling procedure is warranted

**SENILE ATROPHY AND BLEPHAROCALASIS** These two conditions, which are similar and which doubtless overlap to some degree, become increasingly frequent in old people. With senile atrophy the skin of the lids becomes dry, inelastic, and baggy, leading to unsightly pouches in the lower lids and to sagging folds of skin in the upper lids, which may even hang over the cilia and interfere with vision. Blepharocalasis, on the other hand, is a poorly understood disorder, possibly of allergic origin, in which the fat and skin of the



FIG 10-4 Xanthelasma. Harmless but unsightly deposits in the lids are sometimes of psychologic importance to the patient

upper lid undergo inflammatory change and swelling followed by degenerative change; the result is excessive pouching and skin flaps, particularly of the upper lids.

In both of these disorders the primary concern is cosmetic, unless the excess flaps of skin and tissue actually interfere with vision. Most cases can readily be corrected by rather simple plastic surgery.

**XANTHELASMA** These elevated, yellowish, cheesy looking masses in the lids become increasingly prevalent with advancing age. Their appearance is often associated with a high level of cholesterol in the blood, and a low cholesterol diet may sometimes help prevent their further development (Fig 10-4). Treatment otherwise consists in simple excision of these masses if the patient becomes sufficiently disturbed about the cosmetic blemish which they cause. Unfortunately they often recur.

## The Lacrimal Apparatus

**KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS SICCA** A fairly common disorder of the lacrimal glands in the later years particularly during the menopausal period in women is keratoconjunctivitis sicca. It is characterized by a deficiency of lacrimal secretion both quantitative and qualitative which leads to dryness, scratchy irritation and chronic redness of the eyes and to stippling and at times desquamation of the corneal epithelium. Actual rolled up filaments of epithelium may be seen hanging on the corneal surface (hence the term filamentous keratitis) and there is a characteristic dry, stringy, adherent discharge in the conjunctival sac. A diagnosis can usually be made on the basis of the clinical findings and supported by filter paper measurement of the lacrimal secretions.

The usual treatment for keratoconjunctivitis sicca is the use of tear substitutes. The best of these seems to be methyl cellulose in a  $\frac{1}{4}$  to 1 per cent solution to which an antibiotic such as chloramphenicol may be added if there is secondary infection. If the disorder is very severe and does not show the usual improvement seen in most cases over a period of a few years the lacrimal puncta may be sealed with a heated probe or cautery in order to utilize more completely what lacrimal secretion may be present.

**CHRONIC DACRYOCYSTITIS** Dacryocystitis occurs frequently at both extremes of life in the elderly and in newborn infants. The patient may initially have an acute episode of dacryocystitis often associated with an upper respiratory infection and characterized by pain, redness and swelling about the lacrimal sac. This condition may lead to frank cellulitis or abscess formation. The acute episode can be controlled by the use of antibiotics, local compresses and irrigations and where necessary incision and drainage of the lacrimal abscess. When the infection is sufficiently controlled the nasolacrimal passages should be opened if possible by the passage of lacrimal probes since blockage of these ducts is almost invariably a factor in dacryocystitis.

In many instances however the swelling and inflammation associated with acute dacryocystitis lead to scarring that causes permanent stenosis of the nasolacrimal passage. As a result of the poor drainage from the lacrimal sac a chronic or subacute infectious process tends to develop in the lacrimal passage causing

continuous spilling of tears from the involved eye and continuous or recurrent formation of infected mucus or pus in the lacrimal sac. In time the sac may become greatly dilated, and recurrent cellulitis and pain frequently result.

Since the basic difficulty in chronic dacryocystitis is obstruction of the nasolacrimal passage, with resulting loss of drainage of the lacrimal sac, therapy should be directed toward reestablishing such drainage by surgical means. Removal of the lacrimal sac is seldom justified, since such an operation leaves the epiphora unrelieved, although it may remove the infected site.

## NEOPLASMS

**BENIGN TUMORS OF THE GLOBE** Benign tumors of the globe seen most frequently include nevi and benign melanomas, both of the conjunctiva and sclera and of the choroid. Questionable external pigmented spots or masses can usually be excised for biopsy, while those in the fundus can simply be observed where any doubt about their benign nature exists.

Inclusion cysts of conjunctival glands are not uncommon in elderly patients. When these cause discomfort, they may readily be punctured with a knife point. If they reform after this procedure, they should be excised.

**BENIGN TUMORS OF THE LIDS** Benign neoplasms of the lids are very frequent in elderly individuals. The most important of these are papillomas and nevi or moles. When these have been present for long periods without apparent change in their size and appearance, they may be left alone unless they are cosmetically or psychologically disturbing to the patient. Whenever they show growth or pigmentary change, excision is advisable.

**MALIGNANT TUMORS OF THE GLOBE** Only two malignant tumors of the globe need be mentioned in a discussion of geriatric problems. The more important of these is malignant melanoma of the choroid. This tumor usually makes its presence known first by loss of vision resulting from detachment of the retina. In addition unilateral glaucoma, persistent low grade uveitis and eventually cataract may develop in the affected eye. In the presence of unilateral cataract, malignant melanoma should be considered as a strong possibility. Where the fundus can be visualized, careful ophthalmos-

oscopic examination combined with transillumination, will usually make the diagnosis evident

Metastatic carcinoma is far less frequent. It usually gives some what the same picture as malignant melanoma although glaucoma and cataract seldom develop possibly because most patients do not live long enough. Carcinoma metastatic to the choroid usually originates in either the lung or the breast and may make its appearance years after treatment of the primary tumor. Diagnosis is usually made by ophthalmoscopic observation of a dense whitish mass in the choroid associated with loss of vision.



FIG. 10.5 Epithelioma of the lid. Its location at the inner canthus makes surgical removal difficult; radiation desirable.

The treatment for malignant melanoma is prompt enucleation as soon as the diagnosis can be established. Enucleation is seldom indicated for metastatic carcinoma since it points toward widespread dissemination of the primary tumor.

**MALIGNANT TUMORS OF THE OCULAR ADNEXA** The malignant lesions most frequently seen about the eye are epitheliomas of the lids. Most of these are of the basal cell type and offer excellent opportunity for cure by surgical excision. Since in their early stages they are often indistinguishable from benign papillomas, biopsy should be done on any mass showing change or growth. Malignant melanomatous change may occur also in moles or nevi about the lids and particularly on the lid margins. In the case of pigmented tumors, biopsy usually should include complete removal of the pigmented mass (Fig. 10.5).



Surgical excision is the treatment of choice for malignant lesions on the lids. Where surgery is for any reason contraindicated, radiation therapy is indicated, particularly for the basal cell epithomas.

**MALIGNANT TUMORS OF THE ORBIT** Malignant lesions of the orbit are not rare in elderly people. The presenting sign is usually the development of unilateral proptosis with diplopia. The most frequent tumors are carcinomas that have invaded the orbit by metastasis or by direct extension from nearby primary sites. Lymphomas are not uncommon.

Carcinomas involving the orbit by direct extension may often be successfully treated by exenteration of the orbital contents and other tumor sites. Lymphomatous infiltrates should usually be treated by radiation.

## NEUROLOGIC OCULAR PROBLEMS

Certain types of neurologic disorders that affect the vision and ocular apparatus are fairly common in the older age period.

**EXTRAOCULAR MUSCLE PALSIES AND DIPLOPIA** Perhaps the most frequent ocular disturbances seen in the later years are caused by strokes affecting the nucleus of the third, fourth, or sixth cranial nerve in the brain stem. Palsies of one or more of these nerves may result causing diplopia, which in some cases is present only in certain directions of gaze, but in severe cases is constant and accompanied by gross paralytic strabismus. Careful evaluation of the extraocular movements and study of the diplopia fields usually make it possible to determine which cranial nerves are involved, thus helping to locate the lesion in the brain.

While treatment should always be directed toward the primary disease process, attention to the diplopia will often help the patient over a difficult period. Both his diplopia and his lack of orientation in space can be overcome by keeping one eye covered. The cover should be alternated from one eye to the other. It is important for the patient to use his paralyzed eye in order to avoid, if possible, contractures of the paretic muscles' antagonist, since in most cases function is regained, at least in part. If the return is insufficient or the contracture too severe to permit binocular function, surgery on the extraocular muscles is helpful.

**OPTIC NEURITIS AND ATROPHY** Optic neuritis is by no means rare in the older age period. This disorder causes rapid and often very marked loss of vision and a characteristic central scotoma is invariably found. The size and density of the scotoma increase with the severity of the visual loss.

The demyelinating disorders are of major importance as causes of optic neuritis. Multiple sclerosis is sometimes seen in elderly patients but the disorder most characteristically associated with optic neuritis in the aged is neuromyelitis optica or Devic's disease. In this condition the optic neuritis usually leads to extreme and often permanent visual loss and is associated with cord symptoms though these are not always present simultaneously with the optic neuritis. Additional etiologic processes that must be considered include nutritional deficiencies, toxic neuritis and certain infections such as syphilis. Optic atrophy is frequently seen as a sequel of optic neuritis.

Except in the forms of optic neuritis associated with syphilis and deficiency states, treatment is disappointing. In some cases massive intravenous doses of corticotropin may be effective if given very early in the course of the disease. Where deficiency disease is the cause of optic neuritis, large doses of vitamin B complex usually produce marked improvement and where the condition is due to syphilis of the central nervous system specific therapy is usually effective.

**VISUAL LOSS OF CENTRAL ORIGIN** Occasional patients may complain of intermittent or gradual failure of vision that is central in origin. In some cases such visual failure may be the forerunner of a major "stroke." Transient unilateral loss of vision associated with headache and pain in the eyes often gives warning of impending thrombosis of the internal carotid artery.

**BELL'S PALSY** Temporary paralysis of the facial nerve which is said to be due to inflammation within the stylomastoid foramen is seen rather frequently in older patients. The most serious consequences of the paralysis result from exposure of the eye which may lead to epithelial erosion and corneal ulcers. Treatment should be directed toward the prevention of these eye complications by the use of lubricating solutions such as methyl cellulose. If the facial paralysis is very severe the lids may temporarily be sutured together to protect the cornea.

## RETINOPATHIES

Nothing within the realm of ophthalmoscopy is more useful or important to the medical practitioner than an understanding of the retinopathies. A retinopathy may be defined as a characteristic group of pathologic changes in the retina that result from circulatory inadequacy. The changes of retinopathy include edema, hemorrhages, exudates or transudates, and papilledema. These changes may result from complete occlusion of the venous or arterial circulation in the retina, from slowing of the circulation within the narrowed lumen of the vessels in patients with hypertension and arteriosclerosis, from changes in the vessel walls themselves, or from changes in the blood itself. There is perhaps no other way in which the general circulation can be as effectively studied as by actual observation of the retinal and choroidal circulation with the ophthalmoscope, and accurate evaluation of the changes observed is a clinical aid that cannot be valued too highly.

**HYPERTENSION AND ARTERIOSCLEROSIS** The largest and most important group of vascular changes that lead to retinopathies are those associated with hypertension and arteriosclerosis. Before the actual pathologic changes of retinopathy make their appearance, there is usually evidence of changes in the retinal vessels. The retinal changes associated with hypertension are similar, whatever the cause of the elevated blood pressure. Hypertension initially produces diffuse narrowing of the arterioles, whose diameter is normally two thirds to three fourths as great as that of the branches of the central vein of the retina. This narrowing is especially noticeable in the main branchings near the discs. Diffuse narrowing of the arterioles may be considered to represent active but moderately stable hypertension such as might accompany chronic glomerulonephritis, the degree of narrowing being roughly proportionate to the severity of the hypertension.

Where the hypertension is in an active progressive phase as in severe essential hypertension or toxemia of pregnancy the arterioles are apt to show focal spasm which may produce marked segmental contraction. Narrowing at the points of spasm is sometimes sufficient to obliterate the visible blood column. When hypertension enters this active progressive phase retinopathy usually follows soon afterward with the appearance of retinal edema, hemorrhages, and

fluffy white "cotton wool" exudates or transudates. When papilledema makes its appearance the hypertension has usually entered a malignant phase.

Arterio-sclerotic change in the blood vessels is to a certain extent a part of the aging process in all of us. With the thickening of the vessel walls there develops an increase or widening of the light reflex from the blood column flowing through the artery, increasing tortuosity of the arterioles (especially the small terminal ones which may develop a corkscrew appearance), apparent change of color of the blood vessels, and lastly and perhaps most important arteriovenous constriction or compression at the crossings. This apparent compression of the vein when it crosses beneath the artery is seen as a small zone on either side of the artery in which the vein apparently disappears. It is frequently associated with venous dilatation distal to the crossing and marked angulation at the crossing. It may best be explained as resulting from loss of transparency of the vessel walls, especially where the artery and vein share a common adventitial coat at the crossing. As these vessel walls and shared coats become sclerosed and opaque the blood column can no longer be seen through them. The wideness of the zone of disappearance and the amount of angulation at the crossings are usually proportional to the degree of arteriosclerosis present.

When arteriosclerotic changes occur prematurely or early in old age they may be considered the result of excess wear and tear on the vessel walls which usually results from hypertension. The narrowing and spastic change produced in the arterial walls by short bouts of essential hypertension may be entirely reversible but if the hypertensive episodes are prolonged or severe organic changes in the vessel walls will inevitably result. Careful evaluation of the ophthalmoscopic findings can be of inestimable value in determining the prognosis and the necessity for active therapy in hypertensive cardiovascular disease.

Atherosclerotic plaques or sheathings often localized to a given branch of the arterioles are occasionally seen in the retina. Such organic changes are doubtless comparable to focal atherosclerosis in the aorta or other large arteries in the general circulation.

The retinopathy accompanying arteriosclerotic disease includes the formation of hard waxy and hyaline exudates. These are the

## RETINOPATHIES

Nothing within the realm of ophthalmoscopy is more useful or important to the medical practitioner than an understanding of the retinopathies. A retinopathy may be defined as a characteristic group of pathologic changes in the retina that result from circulatory inadequacy. The changes of retinopathy include edema, hemorrhages, exudates or transudates, and papilledema. These changes may result from complete occlusion of the venous or arterial circulation in the retina, from slowing of the circulation within the narrowed lumen of the vessels in patients with hypertension and arteriosclerosis, from changes in the vessel walls themselves, or from changes in the blood itself. There is perhaps no other way in which the general circulation can be as effectively studied as by actual observation of the retinal and choroidal circulation with the ophthalmoscope and accurate evaluation of the changes observed is a clinical aid that cannot be valued too highly.

**HYPERTENSION AND ARTERIOSCLEROSIS** The largest and most important group of vascular changes that lead to retinopathies are those associated with hypertension and arteriosclerosis. Before the actual pathologic changes of retinopathy make their appearance there is usually evidence of changes in the retinal vessels. The retinal changes associated with hypertension are similar, whatever the cause of the elevated blood pressure. Hypertension initially produces diffuse narrowing of the arterioles whose diameter is normally two thirds to three fourths as great as that of the branches of the central vein of the retina. This narrowing is especially noticeable in the main branchings near the discs. Diffuse narrowing of the arterioles may be considered to represent active but moderately stable hypertension such as might accompany chronic glomerulonephritis, the degree of narrowing being roughly proportionate to the severity of the hypertension.

Where the hypertension is in an active progressive phase, as in severe essential hypertension or toxemia of pregnancy, the arterioles are apt to show focal spasm which may produce marked segmental contraction. Narrowing at the points of spasm is sometimes sufficient to obliterate the visible blood column. When hypertension enters this active progressive phase, retinopathy usually follows soon afterward, with the appearance of retinal edema, hemorrhages, and

When the gradually developing venous occlusion results from progressive organic thickening of the vessel wall little benefit is obtained from any therapy. Some of these venous occlusions however are thrombotic in nature perhaps resulting from focal phlebotic change. In such instances anticoagulant therapy may lead to virtually complete return of vision. It is usually impossible to tell without a trial which cases will respond to anticoagulant therapy. Where response is good such therapy should be continued for long periods with careful attention to the prothrombin level of the blood.

Hypertensive changes in the fundus should always be watched for in cases where collagen disease especially periarthritis nodosa or temporal arteritis is suspected. In approximately 25 per cent of the cases of temporal arteritis blindness eventually develops as a result of central arterial occlusion. If temporal arteritis is recognized before the visual loss occurs the vision can be protected by prolonged therapy with corticosteroids.

**DIABETIC RETINOPATHY** Perhaps no condition produces such a characteristic retinopathy as that associated with diabetes mellitus. The appearance of retinal changes seems to bear no direct relation to the duration or the severity of the disease. In some patients with diabetes of relatively marked severity as judged by the blood sugar level retinopathy does not develop over a period of many years. On the other hand severe retinopathy may develop in cases that show only a minimal elevation of blood sugar but are characterized by a marked vascular component. The earliest and most characteristic changes are tiny red spots and small round hemorrhages found chiefly in the area between the temporal vessels. The spots represent little aneurysmal dilatations of the terminal venules or capillaries which may rupture and bleed to form larger round hemorrhages in the layers of the retina beneath the nerve fibers. In many cases there may also be found hard looking and sharply demarcated small yellowish white to white exudates. These consist of colloid or hyaline material with some lipoids also present. Arteriosclerotic changes in the vessels also appear in a high percentage of diabetics.

Later changes include hemorrhages that rupture into the vitreous and preretinal hemorrhages with a characteristic boat shape. Ultimately proliferation of villike glial or connective tissue out into

result of degeneration in the retina caused by chronic anoxemia or by occlusive phenomena

**VASCULAR OCCLUSIONS** While occlusions of the retinal circulation and particularly of the veins are common with arteriosclerosis, they occasionally occur when no obvious vascular disease is present. The retinopathies seen with vascular occlusions are divided into two main types, depending on whether the occlusion is arterial or venous.

The typical arterial occlusion involves the central artery of the retina and may be spastic, thrombotic, or embolic in origin. Occasionally only a branch of the central artery may be involved. Such an occlusion is one of the really grave ocular emergencies, which must receive immediate attention if any therapy is to be effective. The presenting symptom is always sudden visual loss, which may occur at any hour during the day or be noticed upon awakening. Ophthalmoscopic examination reveals the striking picture of extremely diffuse, milky edema of the retina with the macula standing out as a cherry red spot. There is obliteration or extreme attenuation of the arterial blood tree with either no blood flow or a small, slowly moving, segmented blood column in part of the vessels. A proportionate but less striking loss of the venous blood column is also present. Unless the blood flow in the central artery and its branches can be reestablished in a very short time by the vigorous use of vasodilators sometimes supplemented by parenteral hypotension in the globe, optic atrophy will occur and blindness will be permanent in this eye even though the arterial blood flow may reestablish itself.

Venous occlusions produce a somewhat less fulminating picture. They are often gradual in onset and incomplete and the visual loss (which is the patient's chief complaint) may be much less severe than that seen with arterial occlusions. Ophthalmoscopic examination reveals marked distention and tortuosity of the involved vein (the central vein of the retina or one of its branches), hemorrhages along its course, and retinal edema and exudates. If the central vein itself is occluded, papilledema may be present. No other condition produces a more dramatic picture of retinal pathology than rapid occlusion of the central vein. The entire fundus is filled with diffuse hemorrhages, yellow and white exudates, extreme edema and papilledema.

## CHAPTER 11

# Ear, Nose, and Throat

JAMES A HARRILL

While the aging patient may be troubled with any of the otolaryngologic conditions seen in younger individuals most of his complaints related to the ear nose and throat are based on degenerative changes in the epithelium subcutaneous tissues blood vessels and neural elements This chapter will be limited to a discussion of the more common conditions encountered in this age group

### THE MOUTH AND TONGUE

**DRY MOUTH** Dryness of the mouth may be due to nasal obstruction atrophy of the nasal turbinates vitamin deficiencies drug intoxication diabetes and local or generalized disease of the salivary glands It may represent a reaction to stress emotional upsets or physical stimuli It may also follow acute infectious diseases or irradiation Dryness related to massive irradiation usually lasts for months and is often resistant to treatment The lack of salivary secretions is rarely complete but if complete (aphylism) the condition is usually persistent

Before attempting to treat a patient with the complaint of dry mouth it is important to obtain a careful history with emphasis on the patient's use of drugs Surgery should not be considered for this condition until other therapeutic measures have been given a thorough trial The patient should be instructed in oral hygiene Drugs that may be beneficial include potassium iodide 5 to 10 drops of a saturated solution or 0.3 to 0.6 Gm (5 to 10 gr) of the enteric coated tablets three times a day neostigmine bromide 15



the vitreous, with many new vessels spreading out along these veins may produce the characteristic picture of a proliferative retinopathy. In its terminal form this retinopathy may lead to virtually complete destruction of the retina, and to retinal detachment with blindness. When the stage of proliferative retinopathy is present the patient has probably developed Kimmelstiel-Wilson changes in his kidney.

The management of diabetic retinopathy which is perhaps the most dreaded complication of diabetes is still unsatisfactory. The patient's diabetes should, of course, be well controlled. Unfortunately, however, the retinopathy may progress despite apparently adequate treatment.

**RETINOPATHIES IN DISEASES OF THE BLOOD** Less frequent, but still important, are retinopathies accompanying blood dyscrasias. Leukemia may be associated with engorgement and dilatation of the veins exudates chiefly of the cotton wool type, and hemorrhages that most characteristically contain a white patch in the center and resemble the hemorrhages seen in subacute bacterial endocarditis. When stasis of the circulation becomes marked there may also be preretinal hemorrhages and edema.

Pernicious anemia may cause in addition to pallor of the fundus hemorrhages that may be either flame shaped or round and may have white centers like those seen in leukemia. The hemorrhages and occasional edema seen with anemia are due to slowing of the blood flow and to the lack of oxygenation and the increased bleeding tendency. The ophthalmoscopic picture associated with polycythemia consists mainly of a purplish cyanotic color of the entire fundus with venous dilatation and tortuosity.

With purpura of all types retinal hemorrhages and occasional preretinal hemorrhages may be seen and in some cases cotton wool exudates are also found. The treatment of these retinopathies is entirely dependent upon effective management of the responsible blood dyscrasia.

up Vitamin B is helpful in a few cases. The pain that follows a central vascular lesion seldom responds to treatment but usually becomes a minor complaint after three or four months. Repeated assurance that oral cancer is not present gives relief to many patients.

**LEUKOPLAKIA** For a discussion of leukoplakia see Chapter 9.

**CANCER** Cancer of the oral cavity occurs far more frequently in men than in women, the ratio being about 4 to 1. Leukoplakia and trauma are probably the most common etiologic agents.

Squamous cell carcinoma is the most common malignant tumor found in the mouth. It may appear as a small indurated ulcer or as a fungating friable bleeding mass. The buccal mucosa and alveolar ridges are involved more frequently than the tongue and hard palate. Adenocarcinoma is another tumor often found in the mouth, probably because salivary tissues are distributed in abundance throughout the oral cavity. Tumors arising from salivary tissue may infiltrate extensively and may even involve the regional lymph glands before ulceration of the epithelium occurs. Sarcoma in this area usually arises from the adjacent bony structures or from the lymphoid elements in the back of the oral cavity.

Biopsy is sometimes the only sure method for differentiating carcinoma from leukoplakia and nonmalignant ulcerative conditions involving the mucosa. Finger palpation of the oral cavity and the tongue will often give valuable information. Solitary flat ulcerative lesions present the greatest problem in differential diagnosis. Removal of tissue for a biopsy rarely delays healing of a benign ulcer and may lead to the early diagnosis of a malignant lesion.

Cancer of the mouth and tongue may be treated by irradiation or surgery or a combination of both. Adenocarcinoma and melanosarcoma are resistant to irradiation as are carcinomas that have invaded cancellous bone. Sarcomas are usually not resectable, and respond better to irradiation therapy.

**TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT SYNDROME** Congenital or acquired disturbances of occlusion often cause considerable discomfort. Many older individuals suffer from malocclusion resulting from the removal of teeth. The loss of molar support may cause pain in the region of the temporomandibular joint in the side of the face and even in the neck. A burning sensation may develop within the

mg three times a day, and vitamins A (50 000 units daily) and B<sub>12</sub> in brewer's yeast tablets (3 to 6 daily) Local applications of light mineral oil may also be helpful

**FISSURES** Fissures of the lips are not uncommon in the elderly patient As the aging skin loses its elasticity, stretching often produces fissures of variable size and depth They usually occur in the corners of the mouth where the skin is moist, but may occur anywhere on the lips The chief symptom is pain aggravated by placing the skin in a state of tension The loss of surface continuity may lead to an acute or chronic inflammatory process

These lesions are often slow to heal, partly because of continuation of the original trauma Biopsies should be performed on indurated areas that are suggestive of malignancy Therapeutic measures that may be helpful include bland ointments local applications of silver nitrate, and administration of the vitamin B complex

**GLOSSODYNIA** Painful or burning sensations of the tongue may originate from lesions of local or adjacent structures or may be central in origin The condition is often seen in women of middle age and beyond and is usually associated with cancerphobia

Local lesions of the tongue that produce pain are ulcers, fissures, acute and chronic inflammations, inflamed neoplasms, and herpes Syphilitic and tuberculous lesions are not painful unless secondarily infected Food allergy is responsible for some cases of glossodynia Symptoms referable to the tongue may be produced by disturbances of the temporomandibular joint (Costen's syndrome) resulting from malocclusion due to loss of teeth or ill fitting dentures, by dissimilar dental fillings, and by sensitivity to one or more chemicals used in the older types of dentures Troublesome glossodynia may follow cerebrovascular accidents

In 90 per cent of the cases, examination of the tongue and adjacent structures will reveal no gross abnormalities The local and general physical examination should be thorough Extra time should be spent in examining the mouth, tongue, pharynx, teeth, and temporomandibular joints A routine blood count should be made

If nothing pertinent can be found the patient should be assured that there is no evidence of cancer If malocclusion is present, the normal bite should be restored by dental prosthesis or local build

be employed. Trauma to the nose should be avoided. For the chronic form local applications of ammoniated mercury or antibiotic ointments are helpful. The fissures after being cleansed may be cauterized with a 10 to 50 per cent solution of silver nitrate. When the condition persists roentgen therapy may be necessary.

**CANCER OF THE EXTERNAL NOSE.** Malignant lesions involving the skin of the external nose are usually squamous or basal cell carcinomas. The changes that occur in the skin as a result of age, trauma and exposure to the elements are probably the most important factors in their etiology. Senile keratosis is often the forerunner of a basal or squamous cell carcinoma and for this reason it is essential that keratotic lesions be diagnosed early, treated promptly and observed periodically.

Early carcinoma is often indistinguishable from senile keratosis. The malignant lesion usually is thick and indurated and is often characterized by increased vascularity. Tissue for biopsy should be taken from all lesions that appear at all suggestive of malignancy. Only as the lesion enlarges, ulcerates or infiltrates does the clinical diagnosis become obvious.

Basal cell carcinomas are more common than the squamous cell variety. The adenocystic basal cell carcinoma which probably arises from the skin appendages is seen less frequently.

No hard and fast rules can be formulated for the management of these cases. The type of tumor and the experience of the physician will determine the method of treatment employed. It is the responsibility of the physician to see that treatment is adequate and to make the patient understand that he should stay under observation for years. Small lesions may be removed by surgical excision, irradiation or electrocauterization. Larger lesions may require a combination of these methods followed by skin grafts to correct surgical defects. In most cases that are properly treated the tumor is completely eradicated and satisfactory cosmetic and functional results are obtained.

Tumors of the external nose are associated with a low mortality rate. Most of the deaths can be attributed to neglect on the part of the patient or to improper treatment by the physician, although some are caused by highly malignant tumors.

**CRISTAXIS.** Epistaxis occurs with increasing severity and frequency in individuals over the age of 50. The higher incidence in

throat or tongue. Symptoms referable to the ear include stuffiness, pain, tinnitus, and deafness. Trismus may be present.

The diagnosis should be suspected when molar teeth are missing and when there is tenderness over the temporomandibular joints and over the mandibular nerve. In acute cases following trauma external elastic splinting and local heat should be used. In cases due to malocclusion, the restoration of proper occlusion usually removes the stress and in a large number of cases, though not in all, will give relief. Favorable results have been reported from the injection of hydrocortisone into the temporomandibular joint. Tremor of the masseter muscle has resisted treatment.

## THE NOSE AND SINUSES

**VESTIBULITIS** Dermatitis of the nasal vestibule may occur in either the acute or the chronic form, and is usually associated with staphylococcal infection. The acute form usually follows some type of trauma. Pulling out vibrissae or picking the nose sometimes causes acute infections of the hair follicles which may lead to furunculosis and even to septicemia. The chronic form of vestibulitis is usually associated with a long standing nasal discharge. It may involve the skin on the inner surface of the alae, and even on the upper lip. The acute and chronic forms of this condition are often seen in diabetics and in patients with nasal allergies and infected sinuses.

In the acute form of vestibulitis the tip of the nose is often painful, red, and swollen. A furuncle may form and come to a head within the nasal vestibule. Chronic vestibulitis is characterized by the formation of fissures within the vestibule. These are covered with dried crusts of mucus which often cause the patient to acquire the habit of picking his nose.

The presence of vestibulitis in either the acute or the chronic form should cause the physician to suspect diabetes, as well as allergy and suppurative diseases of the sinuses. Appropriate measures for the diagnosis and if necessary the treatment of these conditions should be carried out.

For the acute form of vestibulitis dry or moist heat should be used locally. If the patient's temperature becomes elevated, systemic treatment with antibiotic or chemotherapeutic agents should

be employed Trauma to the nose should be avoided For the chronic form local applications of ammoniated mercury or antibiotic ointments are helpful The fissures after being cleansed, may be cauterized with a 10 to 50 per cent solution of silver nitrate When the condition persists roentgen therapy may be necessary

**CANCER OF THE EXTERNAL NOSE** Malignant lesions involving the skin of the external nose are usually squamous or basal cell carcinomas The changes that occur in the skin is a result of age, trauma and exposure to the elements are probably the most important factors in their etiology Senile keratosis is often the forerunner of a basal or squamous cell carcinoma and for this reason it is essential that keratotic lesions be diagnosed early treated promptly and observed periodically

Early carcinoma is often indistinguishable from senile keratosis The malignant lesion usually is thick and indurated and is often characterized by increased vascularity Tissue for biopsy should be taken from all lesions that appear at all suggestive of malignancy Only as the lesion enlarges ulcerates or infiltrates does the clinical diagnosis become obvious

Basal cell carcinomas are more common than the squamous cell variety The adenocystic basal cell carcinoma which probably arises from the skin appendages is seen less frequently

No hard and fast rules can be formulated for the management of these cases The type of tumor and the experience of the physician will determine the method of treatment employed It is the responsibility of the physician to see that treatment is adequate and to make the patient understand that he should stay under observation for years Small lesions may be removed by surgical excision irradiation or electrocauterization Larger lesions may require a combination of these methods followed by skin grafts to correct surgical defects In most cases that are properly treated the tumor is completely eradicated and satisfactory cosmetic and functional results are obtained

Tumors of the external nose are associated with a low mortality rate Most of the deaths can be attributed to neglect on the part of the patient or to improper treatment by the physician although some are caused by highly malignant tumors

**EPISTAXIS** Epistaxis occurs with increasing severity and frequency in individuals over the age of 50 The higher incidence in

throat or tongue. Symptoms referable to the ear include stuffiness, pain, tinnitus, and deafness. Trismus may be present.

The diagnosis should be suspected when molar teeth are missing and when there is tenderness over the temporomandibular joints and over the mandibular nerve. In acute cases following trauma, external elastic splinting and local heat should be used. In cases due to malocclusion, the restoration of proper occlusion usually removes the stress and in a large number of cases, though not in all, will give relief. Favorable results have been reported from the injection of hydrocortisone into the temporomandibular joint. Tremor of the masseter muscle has resisted treatment.

## THE NOSE AND SINUSES

**VESTIBULITIS** Dermatitis of the nasal vestibule may occur in either the acute or the chronic form and is usually associated with staphylococcal infection. The acute form usually follows some type of trauma. Pulling out vibrissae or picking the nose sometimes causes acute infections of the hair follicles which may lead to furunculosis and even to septicemia. The chronic form of vestibulitis is usually associated with a long standing nasal discharge. It may involve the skin on the inner surface of the alae and even on the upper lip. The acute and chronic forms of this condition are often seen in diabetics and in patients with nasal allergies and infected sinuses.

In the acute form of vestibulitis the tip of the nose is often painful, red, and swollen. A furuncle may form and come to a head within the nasal vestibule. Chronic vestibulitis is characterized by the formation of fissures within the vestibule. These are covered with dried crusts of mucus which often cause the patient to acquire the habit of picking his nose.

The presence of vestibulitis in either the acute or the chronic form should cause the physician to suspect diabetes as well as allergy and suppurative diseases of the sinuses. Appropriate measures for the diagnosis and if necessary the treatment of these conditions should be carried out.

For the acute form of vestibulitis dry or moist heat should be used locally. If the patient's temperature becomes elevated, systemic treatment with antibiotic or chemotherapeutic agents should

of 60. In elderly patients the symptoms are usually mild and are often associated with house dust. Examination of the nose shows various degrees of boggy and occasionally a nasal polyp within the middle meatal area.

The management of nasal allergy is much the same in patients of all ages. The antihistamines usually give relief though in rare cases desensitization may be indicated. Obstructing polyps should be removed unless this minor surgical procedure is contraindicated by the patient's general condition. Operations on the sinuses should be avoided, if possible.

**SINUSITIS AFTER SIXTY.** Sinusitis may develop at any age although it is uncommon for a patient to have his first attack after the age of 60. The common primary causes of sinusitis such as acute infectious diseases, allergy, nasal polyps and bacterial sensitivities are seldom seen in the aged. Secondary factors often responsible for the onset of the condition in elderly patients include carious teeth, fractures, carcinoma, sarcoma and rarely tuberculosis or syphilis. The physician should always be mindful of the possible relationship between sinusitis and cancer in this age group.

The symptoms of acute sinusitis in this group as in younger patients are usually associated with those of acute rhinitis but are more pronounced. The mucoid discharge from one or both sides of the nose or from the nasopharynx becomes mucopurulent. The patient may experience pain within the region of the involved sinus or sinuses and tenderness may be present over the frontal or maxillary sinuses. In maxillary disease symptoms may be referred to the upper teeth. The temperature may be slightly elevated but is rarely higher than 101 to 102 F. Higher temperatures or chills should make one suspect the onset of a complication. Disturbance of the sense of smell is usual; visual disturbances are rarely seen. Often the only symptom presented by patients in the older age group is a unilateral purulent nasal discharge.

The diagnosis of acute sinusitis is based on the patient's symptoms and on the external and intranasal examination, transillumination of the sinuses and findings on nasopharyngoscopic and roentgen examination. Tenderness may be present over the antrum, over the anterior wall or floor of the frontal sinus or over the anterior medial wall of the orbit. Pressure on one or more of the upper teeth may be uncomfortable. Pressure on the supraorbital and infraorbital



this age group is explained by the pathologic changes occurring in the walls of the blood vessels

Epistaxis may be primary or secondary. The local causes are usually found in the anterior part of the nose. The common site of bleeding is on the anterior portion of the nasal septum. Erosion of the mucosa in Kiesselbach's area as a result of trauma, ulcers, septal perforations, sneezing or violently blowing the nose is a common cause of bleeding. The possibility of a benign or malignant tumor situated within the nose, sinuses, or nasopharynx must be considered. The general or constitutional factors include hypertension, atrophic rhinitis, hereditary multiple telangiectasia, leukemia, purpura, hemophilia, beginning infectious diseases, cardiac conditions, renal diseases, hepatic cirrhosis, tumors of the neck, and such physical changes as are produced by high altitudes.

The physician's first concern in treating epistaxis is to find the source of the bleeding. When the bleeding point is on the nasal septum, gentle pressure with a pledget of cotton saturated with hydrogen peroxide or epinephrine and left in place for 15 or 20 minutes will often stop minor bleeding. After its removal the area should be cauterized with a silver nitrate stick or a chromic acid bead. If this simple measure does not stop the bleeding or if the bleeding is so severe that adequate visualization cannot be obtained the anterior portion of the nose should be packed with dry gauze. When bleeding continues it is often necessary to insert a posterior pack. This should be removed within 48 hours if possible but removal may be delayed four or five days if necessary. In some cases of severe bleeding ligation of the external carotid, internal maxillary, anterior ethmoidal, or sphenopalatine artery may be required.

After the bleeding has been controlled the physician should try to find the underlying cause of the epistaxis. In some cases sedation and blood replacement may be indicated. Two common pitfalls in the treatment of epistaxis are inadequate packing and inadequate sedation.

Death rarely occurs from epistaxis alone. It is important to remember, however, that patients who are accustomed to high blood pressure levels may be in shock when the blood pressure falls as low as 125 systolic, 80 diastolic.

**NASAL ALLERGY** Nasal allergy rarely has its onset after the age

Among the etiologic factors that must be considered are local abnormalities within the nose that interfere with the normal physiology of this structure. The dry air produced in most homes and offices by central heating impairs ciliary activity and increases the viscosity and accumulation of mucus. It is very difficult to maintain in modern buildings an optimum humidity of 40 to 45 per cent. Other factors to be considered are allergy, alcohol, tobacco smoke, emotional stress, metabolic and endocrine disturbances, prolonged local nasal medication, sinusitis and malignant lesions. The presence of a purulent or sanguineous discharge should make one suspect a malignancy of the nose, sinuses or nasopharynx.

In many cases it is extremely difficult to relieve a postnasal drip. The nose and nasopharynx should be examined thoroughly. It is important to consider the patient as a whole and the history and examination should not be limited to the area of the chief complaint. Allergies should be eliminated if possible. The patient should be advised to use alcohol and tobacco only in moderation and should be made aware of the problem of temperature changes and humidity variations. In some cases surgical correction of mechanical abnormalities within the nose will be necessary.

**CANCER OF THE NOSE AND SINUSES** Approximately 90 per cent of the malignant tumors arising within the nose or sinuses are carcinomas. The remaining 10 per cent include sarcomas, lymphosarcomas, angiosarcomas, melanomas, lymphoepitheliomas, cylindromas and neuroblastomas. More than 60 per cent of all these tumors arise within the maxillary sinus.

In the area of the nose and sinuses, as elsewhere, early diagnosis of malignant conditions is important. Unfortunately, the characteristic signs and symptoms of malignant tumors here—bleeding, pain, obstruction, nasal discharge and swelling—may also be produced by benign diseases. Proptosis and nontender external swelling of the cheek or alveolar ridge are late signs of cancer. In some cases the first sign of an intranasal tumor may be an enlarged gland in the neck.

In cases of nasal obstruction, all questionable lesions should be examined pathologically. If the pathologist's diagnosis is not consistent with the clinical impression, more representative tissue should be sent to him. A blood-tinged purulent discharge is extremely suggestive of cancer, as is the finding of a cloudy maxillary

nerves should be avoided. Intranasal examination will determine, in most cases, whether the anterior or posterior group of sinuses is involved. Diagnostic irrigations often yield helpful information. It is especially important to obtain roentgenograms of the sinuses if the patient is having his first attack, or if the symptoms and findings are inconclusive.

In the differential diagnosis, one must always consider a malignant lesion within the nose or sinuses. The signs and symptoms of the two conditions are often the same, though cancer sometimes produces no symptoms except severe pain. When cancer is present the nasal discharge may be blood tinged and may have an odor. External swelling, usually nontender, may be present, and a friable mass within the nasal cavity may be obvious on examination. Tissue for biopsy should be removed from any lesion in the nose that might possibly be malignant. Destruction of one or more of the sinus walls, disclosed by physical examination or by a roentgenogram of the sinuses, should make one suspicious of cancer, especially if the patient has pain.

The general treatment of sinusitis should be directed toward improving ventilation, establishing drainage, making the patient more comfortable and preventing complications and recurrences. In most cases ventilation may be improved by the use of physiologic vasoconstrictor solutions in the nose, in the form of drops, sprays, or packs. The shrinkage of the intranasal tissues enlarges the breathing space and favors drainage from the sinuses. Analgesic drugs and physical measures that add to the comfort of the patient should be maintained throughout the course of the disease. Antibiotics should be used when indicated. As the acute edema within the sinus subsides, sinus irrigations may be helpful. Surgical procedures within the nose are indicated only in recurrent and chronic cases or when signs and symptoms of an impending complication develop. When corrective surgical measures are necessary, they should be as conservative as possible.

**POSTNASAL DRIP** Postnasal drip is a common complaint among adults. It is a symptom rather than a disease, and the etiologic factors are numerous and varied. Postnasal drip by itself is seldom indicative of any significant pathologic condition and in most cases no evidence of increased nasal secretions can be found on examination.

Among the etiologic factors that must be considered are local abnormalities within the nose that interfere with the normal physiology of this structure. The dry air produced in most homes and offices by central heating impairs ciliary activity and increases the viscosity and accumulation of mucus. It is very difficult to maintain in modern buildings an optimum humidity of 40 to 45 per cent. Other factors to be considered are allergy, alcohol, tobacco, smoke, emotional stress, metabolic and endocrine disturbances, prolonged local nasal medication, sinusitis and malignant lesions. The presence of a purulent or sanguineous discharge should make one suspect a malignancy of the nose, sinuses or nasopharynx.

In many cases it is extremely difficult to relieve a postnasal drip. The nose and nasopharynx should be examined thoroughly. It is important to consider the patient as a whole and the history and examination should not be limited to the area of the chief complaint. Allergies should be eliminated if possible. The patient should be advised to use alcohol and tobacco only in moderation, and should be made aware of the problem of temperature changes and humidity variations. In some cases surgical correction of mechanical abnormalities within the nose will be necessary.

**CANCER OF THE NOSE AND SINUSES** Approximately 90 per cent of the malignant tumors arising within the nose or sinuses are carcinomas. The remaining 10 per cent include sarcomas, lymphosarcomas, angiosarcomas, melanosarcomas, lymphoepitheliomas, cylindromas and neuroblastomas. More than 60 per cent of all these tumors arise within the maxillary sinus.

In the area of the nose and sinuses, as elsewhere, early diagnosis of malignant conditions is important. Unfortunately, the characteristic signs and symptoms of malignant tumors here—bleeding, pain, obstruction, nasal discharge and swelling—may also be produced by benign diseases. Proptosis and nontender external swelling of the cheek or alveolar ridge are late signs of cancer. In some cases the first sign of an intranasal tumor may be an enlarged gland in the neck.

In cases of nasal obstruction, all questionable lesions should be examined pathologically. If the pathologist's diagnosis is not consistent with the clinical impression, more representative tissue should be sent to him. A blood-tinged purulent discharge is extremely suggestive of cancer, as is the finding of a cloudy maxillary

sinus on transillumination or roentgen examination. If cytologic examination of the antral washings is negative and no underlying etiologic factor is apparent, the intrum should be opened and directly inspected.

Roentgen examination of the sinuses plays an important part in making the diagnosis of cancer, determining the extent of involvement, and selecting methods of treatment. Destruction of the walls of the sinus, as demonstrated on the regular sinus views or by tomographic study, usually means malignancy. Pain takes on added significance in the presence of bony destruction.

Most malignant tumors of the nose and sinuses are treated by a combination of surgery and roentgen therapy. Surgery followed by the implantation of radioactive cobalt and supplementary external irradiation may prove to be the treatment of choice.

## THE LARYNX

Hoarseness is a common complaint in all age groups. In an elderly patient it must be distinguished from physiologic changes in the voice that occur with the aging process. The voice is often altered by muscular atrophy, thinning of the vocal cords, loss of muscular coordination, and atrophic changes in the resonant cavities and structures.

Hoarseness indicates changes that have interfered with one or several of the necessary laryngeal functions. Any lesion that alters the tension, approximation, or vibration of a vocal cord will produce hoarseness. Hoarseness is often an early symptom of cancer.

**KERATOSIS.** Hyperplasia with keratinization of the epithelium of the larynx is fairly common in elderly patients. Its etiology is not known, though it is generally agreed that long continued laryngeal irritation is a predisposing cause. Except in cases that undergo malignant change, the basement membrane remains intact.

Huskiness or hoarseness is usually the only symptom. Occasionally the patient will complain of a feeling that there is something in the throat, or of an irritating cough.

The treatment consists in removing factors that might cause chronic irritation. Stripping of the vocal cord may be necessary. Frequent biopsies should be made on potentially malignant areas.

and the patient should be closely observed for any suspicious changes

**MALIGNANT NEOPLASMS** With the exception of postcricoid carcinoma, malignant growths involving the larynx are seven times more common in men than in women. Ninety per cent of the cases are squamous cell carcinomas.

The early symptoms depend upon the location of the tumor. For practical purposes the larynx may be divided into the intrinsic and extrinsic portions. The intrinsic portion includes the true vocal cord, the ventricle, and the undersurface of the false cords. The upper surface of the false cords, the aryepiglottic folds, arytenoids, epiglottis, pyriform sinuses, and postcricoid and subglottic areas comprise the extrinsic portion of the larynx. Since most cancers of the larynx arise on the anterior half of the free surface of the true vocal cord, the most common and often the only early symptom of intrinsic cancer is hoarseness. Cough or wheezing may be either a late or an early symptom. Pain, dyspnea, dysphagia, enlarged cervical glands, and loss of weight are late symptoms.

The earliest symptom produced by cancer of the extrinsic portion of the larynx may be nothing more than an uncomfortable feeling in the throat. As the tumor grows, the patient may have difficulty in swallowing, hoarseness, pain in the laryngeal region or the ear, blood-tinged sputum, enlarged cervical glands, or dyspnea.

Constant awareness that hoarseness or an uncomfortable feeling in the throat may mean cancer is the important first step in making the diagnosis of laryngeal malignancy. An indirect examination of the larynx will usually reveal the cause of the hoarseness. If this view is not adequate, a direct examination should be made. All questionable lesions should be examined by biopsy. The trachea and esophagus should be examined if the cause of the hoarseness is not obvious. Roentgen studies of the neck and chest are often helpful. The same diagnostic procedures should be followed when patients complain persistently of an uncomfortable feeling in the throat even without hoarseness. If all findings are negative, these patients should be kept under observation but given all justified reassurance.

Cancer of the larynx should be treated by surgery, roentgen therapy, or a combination of the two methods. The location of the

lesion rather than the grade of malignancy is the factor to be considered in selecting the method of treatment. Early lesions limited to the vocal cord may be ideally treated by either surgery or irradiation. For more extensive lesions when no cervical glands are palpable, the treatment of choice is laryngectomy with elective prophylactic block dissection of the neck. In cases with demonstrable enlargement of the cervical glands, a combination of surgery and irradiation is indicated.

## THE EAR

**CANCER OF THE EXTERNAL EAR** The skin covering the external ear is subject to the same premalignant and malignant conditions that involve the skin elsewhere and especially the skin of the face. The basal cell carcinoma is the most common malignancy of the skin. The same etiologic factors responsible for the development of this lesion on the nose and face apply to the ear. Two thirds of the cases of basal cell carcinoma of the ear occur after the age of 60 and the tumor is three times more common in men than in women.

Malignant tumors of the external ear like those involving the external nose, cannot be treated by hard and fast rules. In both cases adequacy of treatment should take priority over cosmetic results.

Tumors that arise within the external auditory canal, especially squamous cell carcinomas, are difficult to manage. If such a carcinoma reaches the middle ear space cure is rarely obtained.

**EXTERNAL OTITIS AND OTITIS MEDIA** Acute inflammatory diseases of the external and middle ear are more common in youth than in old age. The underlying factors usually responsible for the production of external otitis—swimming, purulent discharge from acute or chronic otitis media, skin allergies and sensitivity to the staphylococcus—are more commonly associated with younger individuals. Less common etiologic factors that might predispose older individuals to disease of the external ear canal include thinning of the epidermis, a decrease in apocrine activity, and diabetes. Since temperature and humidity (as well as trauma) are important factors in the production of external otitis, the incidence of this condition will vary markedly according to local climatic conditions.

The treatment of external otitis is directed to reducing the inflammatory process eliminating the contributing factors and relieving the patient's discomfort. Skin tests may be necessary in some cases of external otitis that are due to contact dermatitis. Diabetes should be considered as a possible etiologic factor.

In cases of acute diffuse external otitis the local application of hot wet boric acid dressings in combination with analgesics by mouth is usually sufficient. Antibiotics are rarely necessary. Impacted cerumen and exfoliated epithelium should be removed as soon as this can be done without maceration of the skin. The local application of hydrocortisone alone or combined with antibiotics produces dramatic cures in some cases of dermatitis. It is especially effective in relieving the itching produced by neurodermatitis of the external ear. When external otitis is due to a chronic bacterial infection the ears should be washed out with alcoholic solutions containing antibiotics. The antibiotic agents should be discontinued after the bacterial infection subsides and the patient should be carefully observed for any evidence of sensitivity to the drug used. The indiscriminate use of antibiotics may permit uncontrolled growth of fungi. Other useful drugs for local application in cases of external otitis are a 2 per cent solution of salicylic acid in alcohol, Cresatin, a 1 per cent solution of thymol in 50 per cent alcohol and a saturated solution of boric acid in alcohol.

Like external otitis, acute otitis media is not often seen in older individuals. Its management in this age group, however, is the same as in younger patients. Nasal ventilation and adequate doses of an antibiotic should be instituted early. Myringotomy may occasionally be necessary.

The incidence of chronic otitis media in older individuals is greater than is generally suspected. Most of these patients have had chronically draining ears since childhood. If acute otitis media is adequately treated the disease will rarely become chronic.

The treatment of chronic otitis media varies with the individual case. Ears presenting central perforations often respond to conservative management. These include local cleansing, antibiotic ear drops containing boric acid and alcohol and the management of contributing factors in the nose or throat.

In patients who present otitic intracranial complications or marginal tympanic perforations with cholesteatoma and in some cases



where conservative management fails, mastoid surgery may be required. When possible, conservative operative procedures designed to return good functional hearing should be employed. In some cases, however, a complete radical procedure is advisable.

**SEROUS OTITIS** The formation of nonpurulent fluid within the middle ear is termed serous otitis. While the condition is most often seen in children, no age group is immune. Its etiology is often obscure. It is often associated with acute or chronic allergic states, with virus infections, acute inflammations of the middle ear, sudden changes in air pressure, blockage of the eustachian tube, or disturbance of the tubal lymphatics. In the adult we should always be mindful of the latter two possibilities especially if the patient is over 50. The condition seems to be on the increase since the advent of the sulfonamide and antibiotic drugs.

Patients with serous otitis complain of a stuffy ear and some loss of hearing. When the middle ear is filled with fluid it is often difficult to recognize the condition. When both fluid and air are present in the middle ear, otoscopic examination may reveal bubbles, a fluid line, or both. The drum may be coppery in color or the only abnormality observed may be that the handle of the malleus appears as a chalky line. A diagnostic myringotomy or aspiration is sometimes warranted.

All patients with this condition should have a thorough examination of the nasopharynx. In the older age group cancer of the nasopharynx is a common etiologic factor.

Serous otitis often resolves spontaneously. Tubal inflations and the local use of agents to shrink the nasal membranes are helpful. Myringotomy or needle puncture of the drum may be necessary. In chronic cases a small polyethylene tube is sometimes inserted through the myringotomy incision. Obstruction resulting from nasopharyngeal tumor is usually relieved by adequate irradiation.

**DISORDERS OF THE INNER EAR** *Tinnitus*, or ringing in the ear, is a common and disturbing symptom in elderly patients. True tinnitus has its origin in the peripheral or central auditory system and is nonvibratory in character. It must be distinguished from vibratory tinnitus, which may originate from the adjacent vessels, muscles, or joints. Although most otologic diseases may be accompanied by tinnitus, the pathologic conditions responsible for tinnitus in elderly patients are usually located in the inner ear or

in the central auditory pathways and are secondary to degenerative changes within the neural and vascular elements of this system

In most cases the only treatment that can be offered is reassurance and mild sedation. Sedatives are especially helpful in those patients who have difficulty in sleeping. A pillow microphone attached to the bedside radio is often helpful. In extreme cases psychiatric consultation may be advisable.

Vertigo or dizziness is probably the most common complaint offered by patients over 65 who consult an otolaryngologist. Attacks of vertigo varying in severity and duration are experienced at some time by 90 per cent of individuals over 65. In a great many of these patients the vertigo is postural in character.

Disturbances that produce vertigo may arise within the labyrinth or its central pathways from conditions affecting the muscle and joint senses or from the ocular apparatus. True vertigo, or Menière's disease, is a disorder of uncertain etiology, characterized by recurring attacks of vertigo associated with tinnitus and deafness. Hydrops of the labyrinth has been demonstrated in these cases. In the early stages of the disease vertigo may be the only symptom. Often the patient complains of a full feeling in one ear. As the disease progresses the vertigo is associated with tinnitus and with fluctuations in auditory acuity. After repeated attacks the hearing loss becomes more pronounced.

Vertigo of either central or peripheral origin is characterized by a sensation that the subject's environment is rotating and is usually associated with ataxia, nystagmus and nausea. The nystagmus when present is in a constant direction.

Ocular vertigo may be secondary to refractive error, to muscle imbalance or to diseases of the retina or central nervous system. The patient has a sensation of giddiness or unsteadiness but not that of rotation. Nystagmus may or may not be present when present it is usually rhythmic in character. Symptoms related to the ear are absent.

Conditions that interfere with the afferent impulses from the muscles and joints such as tabes dorsalis and anesthesia or paresthesia of the soles of the feet may lead to inco-ordination. In the light ocular impulses can correct the false sensations but in the dark the patient experiences considerable difficulty in equilibration. He usually describes this unsteadiness as dizziness.

Circulatory disturbances also may produce dizziness. The syncope associated with alterations in the blood pressure, and with anemias, vasomotor instability, hypothyroidism, Addison's disease, the Stokes Adams and carotid syndromes, and cachectic states may be confused with vertigo.

The type of vertigo most frequently seen in elderly patients is not associated with auditory disturbances, and seldom with demonstrable signs of central nervous system disease. The vertigo is usually postural, and some degree of nystagmus may be present. The lack of significant findings in the auditory and central nervous systems makes it difficult in the majority of cases, to localize the disease process. Positional nystagmus is suggestive of a central origin, but it is probable that many patients may have end plate involvement within the labyrinth.

Other conditions that produce vertigo are upper respiratory and gastrointestinal infections, drug intoxication or sensitivity, inflammatory, degenerative, traumatic and expanding lesions of the central nervous system, infections or irritation of the peripheral vestibular system, organic changes in the peripheral and central blood vessels, and alterations in blood sugar levels.

Vertigo of psychic origin is not rotational and is not associated with nystagmus or ataxia. These patients have difficulty in describing their symptoms.

The treatment of vertigo presents many problems. A complete examination may give some indication as to its possible etiology, but in the majority of elderly patients unfortunately the diagnostic studies will not disclose the location of the responsible pathologic condition.

Diseases of the external and middle ear that give rise to vertigo usually respond to appropriate treatment. The medical therapy for Meniere's disease includes the following measures: restriction of fluids, a sodium free diet with the addition of ammonium chloride intravenous or subcutaneous histamine, intravenous procaine thiamine and nicotinic acid, antihistaminic drugs, and a combination of antihistaminic and anticholinergic drugs with vasodilators. Patients who are incapacitated by Meniere's disease and do not respond to medical treatment may require electrocoagulation of the labyrinth or resection of the eighth nerve.

If the physical examination reveals any local or systemic condi-

tion that may produce vertigo appropriate corrective measures should be instituted. In most other cases the only treatment is reassurance together with small doses of sodium phenobarbital.

Presbycusis or senile deafness results from the inevitable irreversible changes that occur within the aging cochlea. These changes are often superimposed on a previously damaged ear that was giving serviceable hearing.

Observations of the aging cochlea in human beings and in animals have revealed epithelial and neural atrophy beginning in middle life and progressing slowly for years. Degenerative changes may also result from vascular or toxic conditions or from acoustic trauma. These changes decrease the elderly patient's ability to discriminate sounds and to hear high tones.

Because of the decreased ability to discriminate sounds many patients cannot be helped by a hearing aid since increased volume does not increase the intelligibility of words. These problems should be explained to the patient and to members of his family. In severe cases lip reading is often advisable. The patient should be given all possible encouragement and reassurance.

Circulatory disturbances also may produce dizziness. The syncope associated with alterations in the blood pressure, and with anemias, visomotor instability, hypothyroidism, Addison's disease, the Stokes Adams and carotid syndromes, and cachectic states may be confused with vertigo.

The type of vertigo most frequently seen in elderly patients is not associated with auditory disturbances, and seldom with demonstrable signs of central nervous system disease. The vertigo is usually postural, and some degree of nystagmus may be present. The lack of significant findings in the auditory and central nervous systems makes it difficult, in the majority of cases, to localize the disease process. Positional nystagmus is suggestive of a central origin but it is probable that many patients may have end plate involvement within the labyrinth.

Other conditions that produce vertigo are upper respiratory and gastrointestinal infections, drug intoxication or sensitivity, inflammatory, degenerative, traumatic, and expanding lesions of the central nervous system, infections or irritation of the peripheral vestibular system, organic changes in the peripheral and central blood vessels, and alterations in blood sugar levels.

Vertigo of psychic origin is not rotational and is not associated with nystagmus or ataxia. These patients have difficulty in describing their symptoms.

The treatment of vertigo presents many problems. A complete examination may give some indication as to its possible etiology but in the majority of elderly patients, unfortunately, the diagnostic studies will not disclose the location of the responsible pathologic condition.

Diseases of the external and middle ear that give rise to vertigo usually respond to appropriate treatment. The medical therapy for Ménière's disease includes the following measures: restriction of fluids, a sodium free diet with the addition of ammonium chloride, intravenous or subcutaneous histamine, intravenous procaine, thiamine and nicotinic acid, antihistaminic drugs, and a combination of antihistaminic and anticholinergic drugs with vasodilators. Patients who are incapacitated by Ménière's disease and do not respond to medical treatment may require electrocoagulation of the labyrinth or resection of the eighth nerve.

If the physical examination reveals any local or systemic condi-

gallbladder and the appendix. It was often routine procedure in cases of arthritis to remove the tonsils and teeth to drain the sinuses and to massage or enucleate the prostate.

The theory of focal infection was challenged by a few brave souls who considered the nature of arthritis to be more closely akin to a metabolic disturbance in susceptible individuals. Over the years each group gradually gave up unproved or disproved ideas, and finally met on common ground. It is now generally accepted that while infections may possibly initiate or aggravate arthritis individual susceptibility plays a major role (Favour *et al* 1956).

Though the exciting cause of rheumatoid arthritis is not yet known, certain predisposing factors are generally recognized. Among these are fatigue, faulty posture, exposure to cold, trauma, emotional stress, and repeated upper respiratory infections. Attempts to incriminate the diet have not been successful.

The clinical picture of rheumatoid arthritis is very much the same in patients of all ages. The smaller joints—wrists, elbows, and ankles—are more apt to be involved than the larger. The synovial membrane is inflamed, so that motion of the joint is painful. Almost always a number of joints are involved. The inflammation may migrate from one joint to another, but is much more apt to persist in the same joints than is the case with rheumatic fever. The patient usually sleeps restlessly and is often awakened by pain unless he has enough analgesic medication. Remissions and exacerbations of no predictable length may be expected.

**Diagnosis.** The diagnosis is made by the history, physical examination, laboratory findings, and possibly by x-ray studies. The history is one of pain, usually involving many joints, aggravated by motion, and often associated with fatigability.

In the acute stage the physical examination shows swollen, warm, red, tender joints, especially in the hands. There may be some fever, and the pulse rate is nearly always increased. Later the joints may be knobby and deformed, the fingers being deviated to the ulnar side. Often the joints become ankylosed.

The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is increased in 95 per cent of the cases, although the leucocyte count is generally normal. Hypochromic or normochromic anemia is usually present. The serum uric acid is not often elevated.

Roentgenograms show osteoporosis in the surrounding bone, and

## CHAPTER 12

# The Musculoskeletal System

WINGATE M JOHNSON

### BONES AND JOINTS

Although nonmedical people look upon "rheumatism" as a common affliction of old age acute rheumatic fever is a disease of the young and is too rare after middle life to warrant a discussion in this book. Arthritis is a more accurate term for the miseries in the joints suffered by old people. The three important forms of arthritis are (1) rheumatoid infectious, or atrophic arthritis, (2) degenerative hypertrophic or osteoarthritis, and (3) gouty arthritis. Gout is discussed in the chapter on metabolic disorders. Rheumatoid spondylitis occurs too infrequently in the older age group to warrant discussion here.

#### The Arthritides

##### *Rheumatoid Arthritis (Infectious or Atrophic Arthritis)*

While most cases of rheumatoid arthritis begin before 40 10 per cent of its victims are over 60 when they have their first attack. And because it has such a protracted course 20 to 25 per cent of all patients with this type of arthritis are 60 or older (Boland 1958).

Although the disease is sometimes called infectious arthritis its bacterial origin has not yet been proved. A generation ago the consensus was that it was always infectious in origin and could be relieved by removing the focus of infection. The foci most under suspicion were the tonsils, the teeth, the sinuses the prostate the

a short time by a light plaster or aluminum splint that will hold the fingers straight

Heat in the form of an electric pad, an infrared lamp, hot moist compresses, or paraffin baths should be applied to the affected joints two to four times daily for 20 to 30 minutes or the whole body may be immersed in a tub of warm water (102 F) for periods not exceeding 20 minutes. An electric blanket is to be recommended as a means of keeping the body warm at night without the discomfort of heavy bed covers and it may be turned on for hourly intervals two or three times a day. The patient should be warned against becoming chilled. The ambulant patient should wear gloves and warm stockings when he goes outdoors. He should also avoid becoming unduly fatigued.

Even during the acute stage the joints should be given gentle passive exercise. Later, as the pain subsides, they should be moved actively in order to avoid ankylosis. A physiotherapist, a doctor, or an experienced nurse should instruct the patient in suitable exercises and should supervise him until he understands how to take them. Exercises suitable for arthritic patients are described in the "Home Care" booklet already mentioned.

Many drugs have been employed in the treatment of atrophic arthritis but the salicylates have best stood the test of time. Of many forms available, acetylsalicylic acid or aspirin is the most effective pain reliever and is tolerated as well as any salicylate. For most patients 0.65 to 1.3 Gm (10 to 20 gr) of aspirin or sodium salicylate four times a day will give relief. It is best for the patient to take the doses after meals and with a glass of milk at bedtime. Given on an empty stomach, aspirin may produce gastric irritation and even bleeding. The far more expensive buffered tablets of aspirin are widely advertised but controlled tests have shown that they have no advantage over plain aspirin (Batterman 1958). Enteric coated tablets of aspirin or of sodium salicylate 0.65 to 1.3 Gm (10 to 20 gr) may be used if the plain tablets cause irritation though it is possible that they are not as well absorbed.

Because of the dramatic relief from pain provided by the various forms of cortisone or by corticotropin and because every patient knows of these "wonder drugs" the doctor is often strongly tempted to resort to them. This form of therapy, however, should be reserved for the most severe cases of arthritis if indeed it is ever



narrowing of the interspaces. In advanced cases ankylosis and subluxation of the joints may be observed.

**TREATMENT** Ideally, the treatment of a patient with acute rheumatoid arthritis should be begun in a hospital where a trained physiotherapist can instruct the patient and his family in the proper type of exercises to take. If instruction by a physiotherapist is not feasible, the physician must take the responsibility for teaching the patient how to care for himself. Arthritis is somewhat analogous to diabetes in that the more the patient knows about his disease the better he can cope with it. An excellent little booklet for the physician to read and to give his arthritic patients is *Home Care in Rheumatoid Arthritis* (Copies may be obtained from The Arthritis and Rheumatism Foundation, 10 Columbus Circle, New York 19, N. Y.) The doctor who treats many arthritic patients—and what general practitioner or internist does not?—would be wise to keep a supply of these booklets on hand to give his patients.

The objectives of treatment are to prevent crippling and deformity, to enable the patient to resume a reasonable amount of activity, and to stimulate his determination to become or remain useful. The treatment, which is virtually the same for older patients as for younger ones, consists of four components: (1) rest (during the acute stage), (2) heat to the inflamed joints, (3) graduated exercise, and (4) some form of drug therapy. The diet should be well balanced and suited to the needs of the individual. If he is thin and poorly nourished, a high protein, high caloric diet is needed. If he is overweight a reduction diet is in order.

If many joints are affected, the whole body should be put at rest by keeping the patient in bed for a short time. Prolonged or complete bed rest, however, is seldom indicated and may actually retard or prevent recovery. Even if motion is painful, the patient should be encouraged to turn over (or should be turned) frequently, should use a commode or toilet rather than a bedpan, and should sit up for meals and feed himself if possible. He should be taught to keep the joints as straight as possible while in bed, and to resist the tendency to lie with them flexed. Plywood bed boards under a firm mattress are recommended. Since the weight of the cover tends to turn the feet outward, a board 3 or 4 inches wide should be placed on edge across the foot of the bed to keep the covers off the feet. In some cases the hands may be immobilized for

a short time by a light plaster or aluminum splint that will hold the fingers straight

Heat in the form of an electric pad, an infrared lamp, hot moist compresses, or paraffin baths should be applied to the affected joints two to four times daily for 20 to 30 minutes, or the whole body may be immersed in a tub of warm water (102 F) for periods not exceeding 20 minutes. An electric blanket is to be recommended as a means of keeping the body warm at night without the discomfort of heavy bed covers, and it may be turned on for hourly intervals two or three times a day. The patient should be warned against becoming chilled. The ambulant patient should wear gloves and warm stockings when he goes outdoors. He should also avoid becoming unduly fatigued.

Even during the acute stage the joints should be given gentle passive exercise. Later as the pain subsides they should be moved actively in order to avoid ankylosis. A physiotherapist, a doctor, or an experienced nurse should instruct the patient in suitable exercises and should supervise him until he understands how to take them. Exercises suitable for arthritic patients are described in the "Home Care" booklet already mentioned.

Many drugs have been employed in the treatment of *atrophic arthritis*, but the salicylates have best stood the test of time. Of many forms available, acetylsalicylic acid or aspirin is the most effective pain reliever and is tolerated as well as any salicylate. For most patients 0.65 to 1.3 Gm (10 to 20 gr) of aspirin or sodium salicylate four times a day will give relief. It is best for the patient to take the doses after meals and with a glass of milk at bedtime. Given on an empty stomach, aspirin may produce gastric irritation and even bleeding. The far more expensive buffered tablets of aspirin are widely advertised, but controlled tests have shown that they have no advantage over plain aspirin (Batterman, 1938). Enteric-coated tablets of aspirin or of sodium salicylate 0.65 to 1.3 Gm (10 to 20 gr) may be used if the plain tablets cause irritation, though it is possible that they are not as well absorbed.

Because of the dramatic relief from pain provided by the various forms of cortisone or by corticotropin, and because every patient knows of these "wonder drugs," the doctor is often strongly tempted to resort to them. This form of therapy, however, should be reserved for the most severe cases of arthritis, if indeed it is ever

narrowing of the interspaces. In advanced cases ankylosis and subluxation of the joints may be observed.

**TREATMENT** Ideally, the treatment of a patient with acute rheumatoid arthritis should be begun in a hospital where a trained physiotherapist can instruct the patient and his family in the proper type of exercises to take. If instruction by a physiotherapist is not feasible, the physician must take the responsibility for teaching the patient how to care for himself. Arthritis is somewhat analogous to diabetes, in that the more the patient knows about his disease the better he can cope with it. An excellent little booklet for the physician to read and to give his arthritic patients is *Home Care in Rheumatoid Arthritis*. (Copies may be obtained from The Arthritis and Rheumatism Foundation, 10 Columbus Circle, New York 19 N. Y.) The doctor who treats many arthritic patients—and what general practitioner or internist does not?—would be wise to keep a supply of these booklets on hand to give his patients.

The objectives of treatment are to prevent crippling and deformity, to enable the patient to resume a reasonable amount of activity and to stimulate his determination to become or remain useful. The treatment, which is virtually the same for older patients as for younger ones, consists of four components: (1) rest (during the acute stage), (2) heat to the inflamed joints, (3) graduated exercise and (4) some form of drug therapy. The diet should be well balanced and suited to the needs of the individual. If he is thin and poorly nourished, a high protein, high caloric diet is needed. If he is overweight, a reduction diet is in order.

If many joints are affected, the whole body should be put at rest by keeping the patient in bed for a short time. Prolonged or complete bed rest, however, is seldom indicated and may actually retard or prevent recovery. Even if motion is painful the patient should be encouraged to turn over (or should be turned) frequently, should use a commode or toilet rather than a bedpan and should sit up for meals and feed himself if possible. He should be taught to keep the joints as straight as possible while in bed and to resist the tendency to lie with them flexed. Plywood bed boards under a firm mattress are recommended. Since the weight of the cover tends to turn the feet outward, a board 3 or 4 inches wide should be placed on edge across the foot of the bed to keep the covers off the feet. In some cases the hands may be immobilized for

tively small 0.125 to 0.250 Gm daily. Thus far only a very few serious side effects have been noted but it may occasionally depress the bone marrow or cause liver damage.

The spontaneous remissions and exacerbations that characterize rheumatoid arthritis make evaluation of any remedy difficult. Some observers have spoken of "the inevitable 70 per cent improvement" that may be expected to occur when any new remedy for arthritis is tried by a physician who is enthusiastic about its possibilities.

Of supreme importance in treating arthritis is an optimistic attitude on the part of the physician. He must not accept even though he can understand Osler's advice to a young doctor who asked him what to do for arthritis to climb the back fence when a patient with arthritis comes in the front door. Most arthritic patients are almost pathetically grateful for any help. It has been said that even 50 per cent improvement is heaven for many patients with arthritis. They have learned not to expect miracles but they do at least deserve tender loving care.

#### **Osteoarthritis (Degenerative or Hypertrophic Arthritis)**

Degenerative arthritis is found in virtually every person past 60 and in many much younger. It is largely a result of prolonged wear and tear on the joints of the skeletal system. It rarely cripples the victim. The principal etiologic factors in degenerative arthritis are obesity, faulty posture, trauma, and possibly impaired circulation (arteriosclerosis).

The cartilage is the part of the joint chiefly affected. It is worn thin and may be roughened by constant wear. The joint edges may protrude in the form of "spurs." The large weight bearing joints are naturally most apt to be involved, especially those of the lower spine, knees, ankles, shoulders, and neck. A notable exception is the familiar Heberden's nodes of the fingers, which are for some reason far more common in women than in men.

**DIAGNOSIS** The chief manifestations of degenerative arthritis are stiffness on arising, dull aching rather than pain, and slight limitation of motion. The stiffness and soreness are most noticeable after the patient has been lying or sitting still for a time and usually wear off with moderate exercise. Too prolonged exercise however may cause a return of the soreness.

When arthritic spurs cause pressure on dorsal nerve roots of the

justified. Among its unhappy possible consequences are salt retention with edema, the activation of latent infections or of peptic ulcer, moon face, demineralization of the bones with the consequent danger of compression fracture, mental changes and increased blood pressure. By no means the least objection to the use of cortisone and corticotropin is their great expense as compared with aspirin.

A study of the comparative effectiveness of aspirin and cortisone in the long term management of atrophic arthritis has been carried on in Great Britain since 1951. The results of this study, published in the *British Medical Journal* (1957), showed that in most cases, over a long period of time aspirin proved to be more satisfactory than cortisone.

Since cortisone was introduced, its original chemical structure has been changed many times by drug manufacturers. The modifications have eliminated many of the disadvantages of the original preparation, and it is probable that even further improvements will be made. At this writing the most satisfactory substitutes for cortisone are prednisone (Meticorten, Deltra, Deltasone) and prednisolone (Deltra Cortef, Hydeltra, Meticortelone, Meti Derm), triamcinolone (Aristocort, Kenacort), and methylprednisolone (Medrol). It is possible that these newer steroid preparations may modify the conclusion reached by the British research team and that combined therapy with smaller doses of both steroid and salicylates may become more popular.

The intramuscular injection of hydrocortisone (25 to 50 mg in 1 cc of saline solution) or one of its modifications may give striking relief without the dangers associated with the systemic administration of the cortisone derivatives. The injection may be repeated at intervals of three to ten days as indicated.

Gold salts were first used for rheumatoid arthritis in 1924. At that time they were tried for their bactericidal action when it was generally believed that the disease was caused by infection. Although striking improvement may follow gold therapy in some cases, gold salts so often cause liver damage and other untoward effects that their use is seldom justified (Favour, *et al*, 1956).

Recently a number of observers have reported that an antimalarial drug, chloroquine (Aralen Phosphate) has shown promise as a remedy for arthritis. The dosage recommended is compar-

If the patient is overweight he should be strongly advised to get rid of the excess burden he is carrying. This advice should be reinforced by a reduction diet and by follow up supervision. The importance of weight reduction should also be discussed with some responsible member of the family.

A firm mattress and plywood bed boards should be prescribed. The patient should be told that good posture and a reasonable amount of exercise will alleviate stiffness and soreness. The circulation to the affected joints and muscles can be improved by heat.

If the pain is too severe to be ignored salicylates, especially aspirin may be prescribed for relief. Another time honored remedy that may afford considerable relief is iodine in the form of enteric-coated tablets of potassium iodide 0.325 to 0.65 Gm (5 to 10 gr) three or four times a day. For the stiff neck that may result from arthritis of the cervical spine nicotinic acid 50 to 100 mg three times a day 20 to 30 minutes before meals is often as effective as diathermy. The use of steroids should be avoided in all cases.

**MALUM COXAE SENILIS** Advanced osteoarthritis of the hip is designated as *malum* (or *morbus*) *coxae senilis*. It is characterized by marked thinning of the articular cartilage with spurring and encroachment on the joint space. Trauma probably plays a part in this condition which usually affects one hip to a much greater extent than the other. The patient walks with a limp putting more weight on the less affected side. Often crepitation may be felt.

Short of surgery the only therapeutic measure that may give relief is weight reduction for the obese patient. If walking is too painful a crutch or cane may be used to take the weight off the joint. The most severe cases may require arthrodesis which leaves a stiff joint or arthroplasty with a Vitallium cup.

#### Mixed Arthritis

While the term "mixed arthritis" is used perhaps too loosely it is possible for the rheumatoid type of inflammation to attack the synovial membrane of a joint already affected with degenerative arthritis. In such cases one would expect to find increased pain swelling and heat in the joint an elevated sedimentation rate and possibly slight fever. The treatment would be that of uncomplicated rheumatoid arthritis.

spine, pain may be felt along the course of the nerves involved. The nerve roots most often affected are those in the lumbar or lumbosacral area of the back, followed in frequency by the cervical nerves and then those in the mid thoracic area. The pain may be very severe after some unusual movement that results in undue pressure or traction on the nerve root.

Pressure on nerve roots in the lumbar region most often produces pain referred along the course of the sciatic nerve. Pain from nerve roots in the cervical spine may be referred down the arm along the course of the brachial plexus, or into the neck. When nerve roots in the lower cervical and upper thoracic spine are involved pain may be referred to the chest wall and at times may simulate angina pectoris. Pain from nerves arising in the middle or lower thoracic region may be referred to the abdominal wall, at times suggesting biliary or renal colic.

The diagnosis of degenerative arthritis is comparatively easy. The condition should be suspected when a patient beyond middle age gives a history of stiffness or soreness after rest, relieved to some extent by exercise and involving chiefly the larger joints. The presence of Heberden's nodes gives confirmatory evidence of osteoarthritis. Frequently some crepitation can be felt on moving the joint. The absence of anemia or an elevated sedimentation rate helps to distinguish the condition from rheumatoid arthritis (Table 12-1). Roentgenograms of the spine or joints will reveal the characteristic osteophytic spurs.

TABLE 12-1 THE DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF RHEUMATOID AND DEGENERATIVE ARTHRITIS

	Age of onset	Joints involved	Pain	Deformity	Sedimentation rate	Anemia
Rheumatoid arthritis	Usually under 40	Smaller peripheral joints	Severe, increased by exercise	May be severe	Increased	Present
Degenerative arthritis	Usually above 50	Larger weight-bearing joints	Slight, relieved by exercise	None or slight	Normal	None or slight

**TREATMENT** A most important part of the treatment is explaining to the patient the comparatively benign nature of degenerative arthritis. Usually one may reassure him that he will not be crippled, that the condition will not get worse and that it is compatible with a normal life span and with normal activity.

a narrowed intervertebral space and a myelogram may confirm the diagnosis by outlining the protruding nucleus

**TREATMENT** The treatment depends a great deal upon the severity of symptoms. In some cases the pain is not severe enough to be disabling and may be relieved by a firm support, a sacroiliac belt, or even a canvas belt two or three inches wide buckled tightly around the hips just under the iliac crest. More severe pain may require a few days or even a few weeks in bed with a bed board under the mattress and possibly an electric pad to the back. Traction is often used but its efficacy is doubtful. Lying on the face with one or two pillows under the lower part of the abdomen will usually give temporary relief and help restore the nucleus to its normal position.

The more stubborn and severe cases may require operation for removal of the nucleus. The operation may be done either by a neurosurgeon or by an orthopedist. The choice will often depend upon the custom in the community. As a rather arbitrary rule three months of moderately severe pain is enough for the patient to endure before operation. In more severe cases the patient is likely to demand surgical relief after a much shorter time.

Fortunately in most cases two days to two weeks of conservative treatment with bed rest, heat and analgesics will effect remarkable improvement. Opiates are rarely indicated and should be avoided except for brief periods of time. If the pain cannot be controlled by rest and the combinations of aspirin and acetophenetidin (Phenacetin) possibly with a little phenobarbital and codeine added operation should be considered.

### **Cervical Disc**

Herniations of a lumbar disc are much more frequent than those of a cervical disc. According to Spurling (1936) protrusions of a cervical disc occur between the sixth and seventh cervical vertebrae in 70 per cent of the cases, between the fifth and sixth in 24 per cent. Thus in 94 per cent of the cases it is the sixth or seventh cervical nerve root which is compressed.

Protrusion of a cervical disc produces pain that is felt medial to the scapula, sometimes over the pectoral region and down the arm to the forearm, occasionally to the hand and the fingers. It is aggravated by coughing, sneezing or straining. The neck is usually held



## Intervertebral Disc Syndrome

### Lumbar Disc

A fairly common affliction of adults in all age groups is the low backache caused by backward displacement of an intervertebral disc. This is apt to follow unusual strain on the lower spine. Stooping forward instead of squatting to lift a heavy weight, a sudden awkward movement, or a slip or twist may force the intervertebral disc backward. The resultant pressure of the nucleus against the posterior ligament causes pain that is generally felt in the mid line or the superior mid gluteal region. Muscle spasm adds to the discomfort.

In the more severe forms a tear in the annulus allows the nucleus to become herniated with resultant pressure on the dorsal nerve root. When this occurs, the nucleus may become swollen and edematous and the pain really agonizing. It usually radiates down one leg along the course of the sciatic nerve and has been aptly described as 'toothache from hip to heel'. As a rule the pain is most severe in the gluteal region, the calf of the leg and the outer side of the foot. It is aggravated by stooping over, coughing, sneezing or straining at stool. In most cases the patient has had a number of apparently minor episodes of low backache before the annulus tears and herniation occurs.

In 95 per cent of the cases involving the lower spine the herniation occurs between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae or between the fifth lumbar vertebra and the sacrum. These two locations are involved with about equal frequency, and occasionally both interspaces may be affected. When the herniation occurs between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae it is apt to cause numbness along the outer side of the thigh and leg and the anterior surface of the foot. Herniation between the fifth lumbar vertebra and the sacrum usually produces numbness along the back of the leg and the outer side of the foot.

In most cases the patient leans away from the affected side. Straight leg raising is very painful. Both the ankle and the knee jerk—particularly the ankle jerk—may be diminished or lost.

A diagnosis can usually be made on the basis of the history and the physical examination. A roentgenogram of the spine often shows

**Bursa** It is characterized by tenderness over the subacromial bursa and pain on abduction or external rotation of the arm. A useful diagnostic question is "Does it hurt you to comb your hair?" The roentgenogram will frequently show calcium deposits in the tendon.

Bursitis may be acute or chronic. In the acute form actual swelling may be seen over the bursa and the pain may be really agonizing. Cecil says that the calcium deposit forms a sort of cyst, which eventually ruptures into the bursa, giving relief from the pain.

The acute form of bursitis should be treated by rest and analgesic drugs. A sling to support the affected arm may enable the patient to be up and around. In the very severe form however bed rest with a small pillow under the elbow may be needed. Heat gives relief in some cases but in others may increase the pain. In such cases an ice bag may be more soothing. At the height of the pain morphine, methadone, meperidine (Demerol) or Dilaudid may be needed for a short time. Roentgen therapy often shortens the duration of the acute attack although it is not effective in chronic bursitis.

In the chronic form judicious exercise of the shoulder and arm is important. Shrugging the shoulders a few times or performing the shoulder exercises described in the booklet *Home Care in Rheumatoid Arthritis* will help prevent stiffness and possibly a frozen shoulder.

The prognosis for ultimate recovery in either form is good. Chronic bursitis may last for months yet finally disappear.

**THE SHOULDER HAND SYNDROME** The shoulder hand syndrome or reflex muscular dystrophy is characterized by pain and stiffness in the shoulder girdle and swelling and pain in the hand. It is often followed by Dupuytren's contracture of the hand. The elbow almost always escapes (Steinbrocker *et al.* 1948).

Roentgen therapy is helpful in the early stage but not after the condition has existed for several months. Stellate block may be helpful. Cortisone or one of its modifications given orally may afford relief but should not be used for long periods. The patient should be encouraged to exercise the shoulder and the hand gradually increasing the exercise periods and the range of motion. Squeezing a rubber ball in the affected hand helps to prevent contracture.

**ARTHRITIS** Arthritis has already been discussed under a separate heading.

**ADHESIVE PERITENDINITIS** Adhesive peritendinitis ("frozen

away from the affected side. Pressure on the nerve root may cause numbness in the hand from the first to the third digit if the seventh root is compressed, and in the back of the thumb if the sixth is involved. Roentgenograms show loss of the cervical curve and a narrowed interspace.

**TREATMENT** Much relief is obtained by traction on the head using a sling under the chin and a weight of between 5 and 10 pounds suspended by a rope over a pulley (Fig. 12.1). The traction apparatus may be used several times a day for an hour or more at a time, and may be supplemented by a collar brace to be worn when

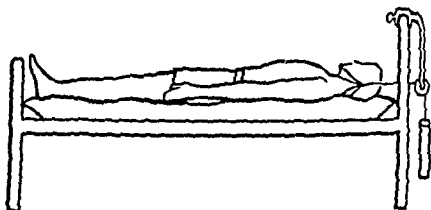


FIG. 12.1 Traction apparatus for use in the conservative management of a herniated cervical disc. (from *Home Care in Rheumatoid Arthritis*.)

the patient is up and around. If conservative treatment fails, surgery is needed to relieve the pressure on the nerve.

### **The Painful Shoulder**

In the older person the shoulder joint is especially vulnerable to painful conditions. Cecil (1955) divides the cases of painful shoulder into four groups:

- 1 Calcific tendinitis (subacromial bursitis)
- 2 Shoulder hand syndrome (reflex muscular dystrophy)
- 3 Arthritis
- 4 Adhesive peritendinitis (frozen shoulder)

**CALCIFIC TENDINITIS** Calcific tendinitis or bursitis is a painful affection caused by calcium deposits in the tendons of the supraspinatus or infraspinatus muscles, on the floor of the subacromial

gestive heart failure. There is no known treatment of the primary disease although the complications must receive appropriate therapy.

### Hyperostosis Frontalis Interna (Metabolic Craniopathy, Morgagni Stewart Morel Syndrome)

*Hyperostosis frontalis interna* a condition in which a deposit of dense bone occurs on the inner surface of the frontal bone, is most often found after the fifth decade (Dann 1951, Bruer and Birtler 1955, Reifenstein 1958, Moore 1955). It was present in 42 of 4200 consecutive patients admitted to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital (Crollman and Rousseau 1944). Only one of these patients was a man and 97 to 98 per cent of the reported cases have been in women.

The most frequent findings in patients with *hyperostosis frontalis interna* are obesity, headache, dizziness, hypertension and multiple neurotic symptoms. Many women give a history of having had irregular menstruation or amenorrhea. The most characteristic part of the picture however is the multiplicity of psychoneurotic complaints which persist in spite of all psychotherapy. The disease is compatible with a normal though rather unhappy life span.

While many writers do not believe that *hyperostosis frontalis interna* is a clinical entity, my own experience has been that virtually every patient with this roentgenographic finding presents such a characteristic clinical picture that the diagnosis can be suspected before skull films are made. I agree with Crollman and Rousseau "From a clinical standpoint the disease does represent a definite entity which when taken in conjunction with specific roentgenologic findings may be differentiated as a distinct disease process."

Unfortunately, no specific treatment for this condition is known. I have found it helpful to tell the patient's family and sometimes the patient that the roentgenogram has revealed a condition that is not dangerous to life but does explain her various symptoms. Aspirin or other analgesics may be used for the headache and mild sedation with phenobarbital or one of the modern tranquilizers may give some symptomatic relief.

shoulder, adhesive bursitis, periarthritis of the shoulder) is caused by adhesions obliterating the subdeltoid bursa and adhesive inflammation between the joint capsule and the articular cartilage. It may originate from inflammation of the long head of the biceps, or may follow trauma or prolonged immobility of the joint. Frequently it occurs as a sequel of myocardial infarction.

The onset is gradual and is characterized by slowly increasing pain and stiffness in the joint, with loss of motion and muscle spasm and atrophy. The roentgenogram shows atrophy of the greater tuberosity. It is sometimes difficult or impossible to distinguish adhesive peritendinitis from the shoulder hand syndrome—and indeed the former may represent an advanced form of the latter.

The treatment of "frozen shoulder" is not too satisfactory. Roentgen therapy seldom helps. In some cases it may be necessary to break up the adhesions under anesthesia and to employ first passive and then active exercises several times a day in order to keep them from reforming. In milder cases, intracapsular injections of hydrocortisone may give enough relief from pain to permit a restoration of function.

### **Paget's Disease (Osteitis Deformans)**

Paget's disease is a comparatively rare condition characterized by increased bone destruction and increased bone formation. It is seldom seen before the age of 35, but the incidence increases after that age. It usually involves the skull and the weight bearing bones—the sacrum, femur, pelvis, and tibia. It is said to be more common in men (Bauer and Bartter, 1955). The etiology is unknown, but the condition is frequently associated with deafness and advanced arteriosclerosis. It is a localized rather than a generalized bone disorder. The increased blood supply required by the bones involved may cause cardiac hypertrophy and eventually lead to congestive failure. The best known clinical manifestations of Paget's disease are bowing of the tibiae and enlargement of the skull. Whether or not there is pain depends upon the site and extent of the disease. The course of the disease is variable. It may be stationary for years or it may rather rapidly cause marked deformity and crippling. The principal complications are spontaneous fracture, sarcoma, and con-

gestive heart failure. There is no known treatment of the primary disease although the complications must receive appropriate therapy.

### Hyperostosis Frontalis Interna (Metabolic Craniopathy Morgagni-Stewart-Morel Syndrome)

*Hyperostosis frontalis interna* is a condition in which a deposit of dense bone occurs on the inner surface of the frontal bone. It is most often found after the fifth decade (Dann 1951; Bauer and Bartter 1955; Reifstein 1958; Moore 1955). It was present in 42 of 4,200 consecutive patients admitted to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital (Grollman and Rousseau 1944). Only one of these patients was a man and 97 to 98 per cent of the reported cases have been in women.

The most frequent findings in patients with *hyperostosis frontalis interna* are obesity, headache, dizziness, hypertension and multiple neurotic symptoms. Many women give a history of having had irregular menstruation or amenorrhea. The most characteristic part of the picture, however, is the multiplicity of psychoneurotic complaints which persist in spite of all psychotherapy. The disease is compatible with a normal though rather unhappy life span.

While many writers do not believe that *hyperostosis frontalis interna* is a clinical entity, my own experience has been that virtually every patient with this roentgenographic finding presents such a characteristic clinical picture that the diagnosis can be suspected before skull films are made. I agree with Grollman and Rousseau: "From a clinical standpoint the disease does represent a definite entity which when taken in conjunction with specific roentgenologic findings may be differentiated as a distinct disease process."

Unfortunately, no specific treatment for this condition is known. I have found it helpful to tell the patient's family and sometimes the patient that the roentgenogram has revealed a condition that is not dangerous to life but does explain her various symptoms. Aspirin or other analgesics may be used for the headache and mild sedation with phenobarbital or one of the modern tranquilizers may give some symptomatic relief.

shoulder,' adhesive bursitis, periarthritis of the shoulder) is caused by adhesions obliterating the subdeltoid bursa and adhesive inflammation between the joint capsule and the articular cartilage. It may originate from inflammation of the long head of the biceps, or may follow trauma or prolonged immobility of the joint. Frequently it occurs as a sequel of myocardial infarction.

The onset is gradual and is characterized by slowly increasing pain and stiffness in the joint, with loss of motion and muscle spasm and atrophy. The roentgenogram shows atrophy of the greater tuberosity. It is sometimes difficult or impossible to distinguish adhesive peritendinitis from the shoulder hand syndrome—and indeed the former may represent an advanced form of the latter.

The treatment of frozen shoulder is not too satisfactory. Roentgen therapy seldom helps. In some cases it may be necessary to break up the adhesions under anesthesia and to employ first passive and then active exercises several times a day in order to keep them from reforming. In milder cases, intra-articular injections of hydrocortisone may give enough relief from pain to permit a restoration of function.

### **Paget's Disease (Osteitis Deformans)**

Paget's disease is a comparatively rare condition characterized by increased bone destruction and increased bone formation. It is seldom seen before the age of 35 but the incidence increases after that age. It usually involves the skull and the weight bearing bones—the sacrum, femur, pelvis, and tibia. It is said to be more common in men (Bauer and Bartter 1955). The etiology is unknown but the condition is frequently associated with deafness and advanced arteriosclerosis. It is a localized rather than a generalized bone disorder. The increased blood supply required by the bones involved may cause cardiac hypertrophy and eventually lead to congestive failure. The best known clinical manifestations of Paget's disease are bowing of the tibiae and enlargement of the skull. Whether or not there is pain depends upon the site and extent of the disease. The course of the disease is variable. It may be stationary for years or it may rather rapidly cause marked deformity and crippling. The principal complications are spontaneous fracture, sarcoma, and con-

rather than aggravated by judicious exercise. So far as possible, sources of tension should be eliminated by psychotherapy.

### Muscle Cramps

A fairly frequent affliction of older people is intense, involuntary tetanic contractions of the muscles, especially those of the legs. These attacks usually occur at night and may awaken the patient. The contractions last from a minute to as long as five or ten minutes.

The etiology is not too well understood. The attacks are more apt to follow unusual or prolonged exercise, chilling, or lying in an uncomfortable position. They may be caused by irritation of the sciatic nerve, as from an osteoarthritic spur or a herniated nucleus. They have been known to be present for some months or years following the removal of a herniated nucleus, and then gradually diminish in frequency and intensity. The patient may obtain temporary relief by grasping the muscle firmly, by forcibly extending or flexing the foot, or by standing or walking for a few minutes.

When muscle cramps recur frequently, quinine 0.325 to 0.65 Gm (5 to 10 gr.) at bedtime may prevent them.

### REFERENCES

1. BATTERMAN, R. C. Comparison of buffered and unbuffered acetylsalicylic acid. *New England J. Med.* 238:213, 1958.
2. BAILEY, W. and BARTTER, F. C. "Hypertosis Frontalis Interna" in CECIL, R. L. (ed.) *Textbook of Medicine* (ed. 9) Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1955, p. 1466.
3. BAILEY, W. and BARTTER, F. C. "Paget's Disease" *idem*, p. 1456.
4. BOLAND, E. W. Adrenocorticosteroids and their synthetic analogs in aging patients with arthritis. *Geriatrics* 18:190, 1958.
5. CECIL, R. L. "The Painful Shoulder" in CECIL, R. L. (ed.) *Textbook of Medicine* (ed. 9) Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1955, p. 1442.
6. DUNN, S. Metabolic cranioopathy: a review of the literature with report of a case with diabetes insipidus. *A.M.A. Ann. Int. Med.* 34:163, 1951.
7. FAIVOR, C. B., RITTS, R. E., JR. and BAILEY, T. B. Arthritis research. *New England J. Med.* 254:1078, 1956.
8. CRAMER, W. "The Fibrositis Syndrome" in CECIL, R. L. (ed.) *Textbook of Medicine* (ed. 9) Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1955, p. 1411.



## MUSCLES

### Fibrositis

Fibrositis is a common condition in older people. It is characterized by soreness, stiffness, and tenderness in the muscles or in the tissues around a joint. If it involves the muscles, it is often called myositis or 'muscular rheumatism'. The areas most often affected are the back of the neck, the shoulders, the intercostal muscles, and the lower back. Fibrositis is often persistent and uncomfortable but it does not endanger life and is seldom disabling.

Although fibrositis is recognized as a clinical entity, its etiology is still not known. Lacking a firm pathologic background and a definite diagnostic boundary, fibrositis has become the most controversial condition in the field of rheumatism' (Graham, 1955). Certain predisposing factors, however, are generally recognized. Among these are fatigue, exposure to cold, prolonged inactivity and nervous tension. Acute infections especially upper respiratory infections often initiate generalized aching that may persist for some time.

Fibrositis may be acute or chronic and it is characterized by periods of remission and exacerbation. The acute attacks often follow unusual exertion (to the point of fatigue), exposure to cold, acute infection or emotional stress. The pain like that of hyper trophic arthritis is commonly worse after rest and may be relieved by moderate exercise.

The diagnosis is usually made from the history, since there are no characteristic clinical findings such as redness or swelling over the affected tissues and no abnormalities detectable by laboratory tests and x ray studies.

The most important part of the treatment is seeing that the patient obtains the proper amount and kind of exercise. Exercise that is too prolonged or strenuous may aggravate the condition. The patient should be taught correct posture and should exercise the affected muscles every day stopping short of fatigue. For relief of the pain nonnarcotic analgesics containing aspirin may be prescribed together with heat. Reassurance is an important part of the treatment. As in cases of degenerative arthritis one should explain to the patient that the condition will not disable him and is helped

rather than aggravated by judicious exercise. So far as possible, sources of tension should be eliminated by psychotherapy.

### Muscle Cramps

A fairly frequent affliction of older people is intense, involuntary tetanic contractions of the muscles especially those of the legs. These attacks usually occur at night and may awaken the patient. The contractions last from a minute to as long as five or ten minutes.

The etiology is not too well understood. The attacks are more apt to follow unusual or prolonged exercise, chilling or lying in an uncomfortable position. They may be caused by irritation of the sciatic nerve as from an osteoarthritic spur or a herniated nucleus. They have been known to be present for some months or years following the removal of a herniated nucleus and then gradually diminish in frequency and intensity. The patient may obtain temporary relief by grasping the muscle firmly, by forcibly extending or flexing the foot or by standing or walking for a few minutes.

When muscle cramps recur frequently, quinine 0.325 to 0.65 Gm (5 to 10 gr) at bedtime may prevent them.

### REFERENCES

1. BATTERMAN R C Comparison of buffered and unbuffered acetylsalicylic acid *New England J Med* 208:213 1958
2. BAUER W and BARTTER, F C "Hyperostosis Frontalis Interna" in CECIL R L (ed) *Textbook of Medicine* (ed 9) Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1955 p 1466
3. BAUER W and BARTTER, F C "Paget's Disease" *idem* p 1456
4. BOWLAND F W Adrenocorticosteroids and their synthetic analogs in aging patients with arthritis *Geriatrics* 13:100 1958
5. CECIL R L "The Painful Shoulder" in CECIL R L (ed) *Textbook of Medicine* (ed 9) Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1955 p 1442
6. DANK S Metabolic cranio-pathy: a review of the literature with report of a case with diabetes insipidus *AMA Ann Int Med* 34:163 1951
7. FAIVOLA C B, RITTS R E Jr and BAYLES T B Arthritis research *New England J Med* 254:1078 1956
8. GRAHAM W "The Fibrositis Syndrome" in CECIL R L (ed) *Textbook of Medicine* (ed 9) Philadelphia W B Saunders Company 1955 p 1411

- 9 GROLLMAN A and ROUSSEAU J P Metabolic craniopathy, clinical and roentgenologic study of so called hyperostosis frontalis interna *JAMA* 126 213 1944
- 10 Long term results in early cases of rheumatoid arthritis treated with either cortisone or aspirin *Brit M J* 1 847 1957
- 11 MOORE, S *Hyperostosis Cranii* Springfield Illinois, Charles C Thomas 1955
- 12 REIFENSTEIN, E C Jr 'Hyperostosis Frontalis Interna' in HARRISON T H (ed) *Principles of Internal Medicine* (ed 3) New York Blakiston Division McGraw Hill Book Company 1958 p 697
- 13 SPURLING G *Lesions of the Cervical Intervertebral Disc* Springfield Illinois Charles C Thomas 1956 p 37
- 14 STEINBROCKER O SPITZER N and FRIEDMAN H H The shoulder hand syndrome in reflex dystrophy of the upper extremity *Ann Int Med* 29 22 1948

# Abnormalities in Blood Pressure Associated with Age

ARTHUR GROLLMAN

Since the blood pressure constitutes a measurement readily obtainable in every physical examination considerable attention is given to deviations from the expected normal for a given individual. This emphasis on the level of the blood pressure is justified since this variable hemodynamic function reflects to a great extent the state of the circulation.

### SIGNIFICANCE OF THE BLOOD PRESSURE

The blood pressure is determined by three hemodynamic functions namely the cardiac output the elasticity of the vascular tree and the peripheral resistance. In the presence of an inadequate cardiac output the blood pressure cannot be maintained without such compensatory changes as vasoconstriction and increased peripheral resistance (Grollman 1957). This fact accounts for the drop in blood pressure often observed in previously hypertensive individuals following a myocardial infarction.

Of particular importance in determining the level of the blood pressure is the elasticity of the arterial tree. With senescence the blood vessels gradually lose their elasticity as a result of arteriosclerosis. When this loss of elasticity is confined to small segments of the vascular tree the effect on the systemic arterial blood pressure will be insignificant. On the other hand when it involves a large part of the circulatory system as is the case in generalized atherosclerosis the resultant effect on the level of the blood pressure is significant. This loss of elasticity involving the arterial and

to a lesser extent, the venous system results primarily in an increased systolic pressure with a normal or slightly decreased diastolic pressure. The condition is designated as systolic hypertension in contrast to diastolic hypertension, which is characteristic of hypertensive cardiovascular disease. The differentiation of these two conditions is important, for they are quite distinct pathogenetically and from the standpoint of prognosis and treatment (Grollman, 1951).

The elevation of blood pressure in generalized arteriosclerosis reflects an inherent change in the vascular tree and may be considered as a compensatory phenomenon. Lowering the blood pressure by hypotensive agents is harmful and undesirable, since it entails either a reduction in cardiac output or other alterations that reduce the blood supply to the peripheral tissues (Grollman, 1958).

The third important factor determining the level of the blood pressure is the peripheral resistance. Increase in this resistance constitutes the basic hemodynamic alteration in hypertensive cardiovascular disease. It is characterized by an elevation in diastolic as well as systolic blood pressure with a normal cardiac output (Grollman, 1951).

### HYPOTENSION

Patients with a blood pressure less than that usually observed in persons of their age are often considered to be suffering from hypotension. This concept is erroneous. As has already been indicated, the elevation in blood pressure associated with the aging process is a reflection of generalized arteriosclerosis and although of frequent occurrence it is nevertheless abnormal (Grollman, 1957). In the absence of generalized arteriosclerosis or hypertensive disease the blood pressure would be expected to remain at the same level in the aged as in the young individual. The finding of a pressure lower than the average for patients in the older age group is therefore not abnormal unless it is accompanied by some disturbance that lowers the blood pressure. To designate such individuals as suffering from hypotension and attribute unrelated symptoms to this condition is obviously in error. Many patients who are apathetic or mentally depressed will have a blood pressure lower than the average for their age. In such individuals the blood pressure is

merely a reflection rather than the cause of their symptoms. One must obviously exclude such conditions as Addison's disease and pituitary or myocardial insufficiency as causes of the observed hypotension.

Sudden hypotension particularly postural hypotension which produces dizziness or faintness when the patient changes to the erect position requires the exclusion of the various conditions responsible for this phenomenon. Pressure on the carotid sinus, intermittent heart block and ventricular asystole often produce such abrupt falls in blood pressure which may cause fainting. Hyperventilation also may induce a similar reaction particularly in patients with heart disease and left ventricular failure who are predisposed to syncope. Exertion may precipitate such syncope especially in patients with aortic stenosis or aortic insufficiency. Failure of the autonomic mechanisms that mediate the adjustments in arterial tone and the response to changes in posture is also common in elderly persons suffering from generalized arteriosclerosis and may result in syncope (Grollman 1957).

### ALTERATIONS OF BLOOD PRESSURE WITH AGE

The relationship of vascular changes to the aging process has long been recognized and is the basis for the familiar statement that "a man is as old as his arteries." The fact that arteriosclerosis increases with age has long been evident from necropsy studies. It is now recognized that this change in the blood vessels begins at birth and may become evident in youth while rarely it may not appear to any significant degree in aged individuals. To what extent this alteration in the blood vessels results from the inevitable aging of protoplasm and to what extent it is influenced by dietary and other factors is not yet entirely defined. That such changes may be accelerated by disease processes such as hypothyroidism and diabetes however is well established. It is also recognized that there is no true parallelism between the vascular changes and senility since many symptoms of the aging process are apparently independent of alterations in the blood vessels (Mueller Deham and Rabson 1942).

Although there is a gradual increase in the level of the blood pressure from childhood to old age the systolic pressure does not

to a lesser extent, the venous system results primarily in an increased systolic pressure with a normal or slightly decreased diastolic pressure. The condition is designated as systolic hypertension in contrast to diastolic hypertension, which is characteristic of hypertensive cardiovascular disease. The differentiation of these two conditions is important, for they are quite distinct pathogenetically and from the standpoint of prognosis and treatment (Grollman 1951).

The elevation of blood pressure in generalized arteriosclerosis reflects an inherent change in the vascular tree and may be considered as a compensatory phenomenon. Lowering the blood pressure by hypotensive agents is harmful and undesirable, since it entails either a reduction in cardiac output or other alterations that reduce the blood supply to the peripheral tissues (Grollman 1958).

The third important factor determining the level of the blood pressure is the peripheral resistance. Increase in this resistance constitutes the basic hemodynamic alteration in hypertensive cardiovascular disease. It is characterized by an elevation in diastolic as well as systolic blood pressure with a normal cardiac output (Grollman 1951).

### HYPOTENSION

Patients with a blood pressure less than that usually observed in persons of their age are often considered to be suffering from hypotension. This concept is erroneous. As has already been indicated, the elevation in blood pressure associated with the aging process is a reflection of generalized arteriosclerosis and although of frequent occurrence it is nevertheless abnormal (Grollman, 1957). In the absence of generalized arteriosclerosis or hypertensive disease the blood pressure would be expected to remain at the same level in the aged as in the young individual. The finding of a pressure lower than the average for patients in the older age group is therefore not abnormal unless it is accompanied by some disturbance that lowers the blood pressure. To designate such individuals as suffering from hypotension and attribute unrelated symptoms to this condition is obviously in error. Many patients who are apathetic or mentally depressed will have a blood pressure lower than the average for their age; in such individuals the blood pressure is

the excretory function of the kidneys remains relatively satisfactory. When arteriosclerosis of the renal vessels involves the arterioles however the resultant interference with the function of the kidney leads to the development of uremia. This condition is observed in about 10 to 15 per cent of patients suffering from hypertensive disease, and is the immediate cause of their death.

## DISORDERS OF THE KIDNEY

Although the theory has not been generally accepted, the available evidence indicates that hypertensive disease is always secondary to a disturbance in renal function (Grollman 1957). According to this view, the kidney in addition to functioning as an organ of excretion is responsible for maintaining the normotensive state. Experimental studies support the view that even the so-called essential hypertension in which excretory function is normal and no disturbance of the kidney is demonstrable morphologically represents a disturbance in the kidney's function of maintaining the normotensive state (Grollman 1957). It is thus logical to include in the present chapter a consideration of disorders of the kidney as they affect the older age group.

In aged persons who are healthy the kidney is relatively normal morphologically, except for a slight decrease in size and a reduction in the number of glomeruli (Mueller Dehnm and Rabson 1942). Functionally however there may be loss of the capacity to form a very concentrated urine. Arterial and arteriolar sclerosis as we have already seen is frequently encountered; the former may give rise to hypertensive disease while the latter may result from long standing hypertension. Nephrosclerosis may induce a loss of renal substance producing the so called "contracted" kidney with albuminuria and variable degrees of renal excretory insufficiency. Polyuria and nocturia reflect the loss of the kidney's concentrating power. Ultimately if the process continues renal failure culminates in uremia.

Renal disorders in the aged present no special problems that are different from those associated with the same disorders in younger patients. The incidence of the various forms of renal disease differs greatly however in the two age groups. As might be expected disorders secondary to such vascular disturbances as nephrosclerosis



normally continue to rise after about the age of 70 nor the diastolic after 65. In general, the systolic pressure in women over 50 is higher than that in men but after the age of 90 the difference is slight. In 95 per cent of persons between the ages of 65 and 100 the systolic pressure ranges from 100 to 212 and the diastolic from 55 to 112 (Master, *et al*, 1958). The gradual slight decline in diastolic pressure and the constancy of the systolic pressure observed after the age of 75 are probably attributable to the selective morbidity and mortality associated with elevated blood pressures. Only those with the lower values would be expected to survive to the higher age brackets.

The arteriosclerosis characteristic of the aging process consists of medial hyperplastic sclerosis with thickening of the medial layers of the larger blood vessels. This condition in itself is relatively asymptomatic; however, the loss of elasticity in the blood vessels increases the systolic blood pressure and adds to the work of the heart. When calcification of this medial layer occurs it is designated as Monckeberg's sclerosis. A similar process involving the smaller arterioles is characteristic of hypertensive cardiovascular disease, and is observed eventually in all patients with sustained hypertension.

Entirely different from the pathologic process just described is intimal sclerosis or atherosclerosis, in which there is thickening of the intimal layer of the vessels and hence narrowing of the lumen. This process may involve certain localized areas such as the coronary arteries in which case it gives rise to coronary infarction, when it involves other vessels it may seriously compromise their circulation and function. When the process affects the kidney, it is designated as nephrosclerosis, a condition which by interfering with the renal circulation may give rise to hypertension (Grollman 1957). Hypertensive disease on the other hand, accelerates the development of medial hyperplastic sclerosis, hence the two conditions tend to aggravate each other and establish a vicious circle (Grollman 1951). This accounts for the fact that one often encounters a combination of arteriosclerosis and hypertensive cardiovascular disease in the same patient.

Sclerosis of the large renal vessels may give rise to atrophy of the parenchyma and fibrous displacement of the parenchymal tissue. This condition is designated as benign nephrosclerosis since

the excretory function of the kidneys remains relatively satisfactory. When arteriosclerosis of the renal vessels involves the arterioles however the resultant interference with the function of the kidney leads to the development of uremia. This condition is observed in about 10 to 15 per cent of patients suffering from hypertensive disease and is the immediate cause of their death.

## DISORDERS OF THE KIDNEY

Although the theory has not been generally accepted, the available evidence indicates that hypertensive disease is always secondary to a disturbance in renal function (Grollman 1957). According to this view the kidney in addition to functioning as an organ of excretion is responsible for maintaining the normotensive state. Experimental studies support the view that even the so-called "essential" hypertension in which excretory function is normal and no disturbance of the kidney is demonstrable morphologically represents a disturbance in the kidney's function of maintaining the normotensive state (Grollman 1957). It is thus logical to include in the present chapter a consideration of disorders of the kidney as they affect the older age group.

In aged persons who are healthy the kidney is relatively normal morphologically except for a slight decrease in size and a reduction in the number of glomeruli (Mueller Deham and Rabson 1942). Functionally however there may be loss of the capacity to form a very concentrated urine. Arterial and arteriolar sclerosis as we have already seen is frequently encountered; the former may give rise to hypertensive disease while the latter may result from long standing hypertension. Nephrosclerosis may induce a loss of renal substance producing the so called contracted kidney with albuminuria and variable degrees of renal excretory insufficiency. Polyuria and nocturia reflect the loss of the kidney's concentrating power. Ultimately if the process continues renal failure culminates in uremia.

Renal disorders in the aged present no special problems that are different from those associated with the same disorders in younger patients. The incidence of the various forms of renal disease differs greatly however in the two age groups. As might be expected disorders secondary to such vascular disturbances as nephrosclerosis

are more common in the aged. On the other hand, acute glomerulonephritis, which is generally accepted as a disease resulting from an allergic response to previous infection, is so rare in the aged as to warrant only mention here. It may occur in a mild transient form following a sore throat or some other streptococcal infection or as a diffuse involvement producing massive albuminuria, hematuria and cylindruria. When chronic nephritis manifests itself for the first time in the aged, it is believed to be a result of unrecognized infection at an early age. The nephrotic syndrome, except as a manifestation of intercapillary glomerulosclerosis, is extremely rare in the aged. Pyelonephritis and other renal infections are not uncommon in old age, but they will be considered in Chapter 18.

Prostatic hypertrophy, common in men over 50, results not only in obstruction to urinary flow but, as Olbrich and his co-workers (1957) have shown, also causes a reduction in renal plasma flow and glomerular filtration. In the absence of urinary tract infection, however, tubular function is not affected. This reduction in renal function produces only a slight elevation in the concentration of urea in the blood. The problem of hydronephrosis, as well as that of renal calculi and hematuria, is discussed in Chapter 18. Other conditions that may interfere with the excretory function of the kidney as well as with its function of maintaining a normal blood pressure are vascular nephritis (including nephrosclerosis, which has already been discussed in relation to hypertension) and other vascular disturbances of the kidney — among them perarteritis and other collagen disorders, and Cushing's disease, which may induce vascular damage.

## TREATMENT

The treatment of hypertension in the aged calls for certain special considerations. As has already been indicated, an elevation in systolic blood pressure reflects generalized arteriosclerosis and should not be treated by hypotensive agents. If these are effective in lowering the blood pressure, they may induce alarming disturbances. The rauwolfia alkaloids, commonly used in younger hypertensive subjects, are particularly apt to elicit undesirable side effects, nightmares, depression, and so forth, in the aged (Crollman, 1960). Attempts to alter the progression of the arteriosclerotic process by such means as the exclusion of cholesterol from the

diet or the administration of hormones and unsaturated fatty acids must still be considered to be in the experimental stage and they are not recommended for general application. At present only symptomatic measures are available for the palliation of disturbances arising from the arteriosclerotic process.

The treatment of hypertensive cardiovascular disease in the aged as in patients of the younger age group, remains empirical (Grollman 1960). Such radical procedures as sympathectomy are generally considered undesirable in patients over 50 years of age. The hypotensive drugs which are widely used in the younger age group fail to modify the basic disturbance responsible for the disorder and merely alter one of the manifestations of the disease namely the elevated blood pressure. The desirability of using these drugs except in the malignant phase of the disease is questionable. Since this stage of the disease rarely occurs in old age the use of the presently available drugs is seldom justified in the aged. When they are used extreme care must be taken to avoid the side effects which may be poorly tolerated by the older patient (Grollman 1958). Until a more basic and specific therapy becomes available the treatment of hypertensive cardiovascular disease in the aged must be directed primarily toward reassurance, the avoidance of potentially harmful stresses and the use of the usual symptomatic measures for such complications as heart failure or other consequences of the disease.

## REFERENCES

- 1 GROLLMAN A. The relation of arteriosclerosis to hypertension as elucidated by studies on the nephrectomized dog. *J Gerontology* 6 (suppl 3) 96 1951
- 2 GROLLMAN A. Alterations in Blood Pressure with Particular Reference to Hypertension. in GROLLMAN A. (ed) *Clinical Physiology The Functional Pathology of Disease*. New York: Blakiston Division McGraw Hill Book Co. 1957
- 3 GROLLMAN A. *Pharmacology and Therapeutics* (ed 4). Philadelphia: Lea and Febiger 1960
- 4 MASTER A M, LASSER R P and JAFFE H L. Blood pressure in white people over 65 years of age. *Ann Int Med* 48 284-299 1958
- 5 MUELLER DEHAM A and RABSON S M. *Internal Medicine in Old Age*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins Company 1942
- 6 OLBRICH O, WOODFORD-WILLIAMS E, IRVINE R F and WEBSTER D. Renal function in prostatism. *Lancet* 1 1322 1957

are more common in the aged. On the other hand acute glomerulonephritis which is generally accepted as a disease resulting from an allergic response to previous infection, is so rare in the aged as to warrant only mention here. It may occur in a mild transient form following a sore throat or some other streptococcal infection or as a diffuse involvement producing massive albuminuria hematuria and cylindruria. When chronic nephritis manifests itself for the first time in the aged it is believed to be a result of unrecognized infection at an early age. The nephrotic syndrome except as a manifestation of intercapillary glomerulosclerosis is extremely rare in the aged. Pyelonephritis and other renal infections are not uncommon in old age, but they will be considered in Chapter 18.

Prostatic hypertrophy common in men over 50, results not only in obstruction to urinary flow but, as Olbrich and his co-workers (1957) have shown also causes a reduction in renal plasma flow and glomerular filtration. In the absence of urinary tract infection however tubular function is not affected. This reduction in renal function produces only a slight elevation in the concentration of urea in the blood. The problem of hydronephrosis as well as that of renal calculi and hematuria is discussed in Chapter 18. Other conditions that may interfere with the excretory function of the kidney as well as with its function of maintaining a normal blood pressure are vascular nephritis (including nephrosclerosis which has already been discussed in relation to hypertension) and other vascular disturbances of the kidney — among them perarteritis and other collagen disorders and Cushing's disease which may induce vascular damage.

## TREATMENT

The treatment of hypertension in the aged calls for certain special considerations. As has already been indicated an elevation in systolic blood pressure reflects generalized arteriosclerosis and should not be treated by hypotensive agents. If these are effective in lowering the blood pressure they may induce alarming disturbances. The rauwolfia alkaloids commonly used in younger hypertensive subjects are particularly apt to elicit undesirable side effects nightmares depression and so forth in the aged (Crollman 1960). Attempts to alter the progression of the arteriosclerotic process by such means as the exclusion of cholesterol from the

Hospital in St. Louis. This report revealed a twentyfold increase in the incidence of myocardial infarction in the decade from 1945 to 1954 as compared with the period from 1910 to 1919.

One can conclude that the over all incidence of coronary heart disease is probably on the increase and that susceptibility of the female past the menopause approaches that of the male.

## Etiology

Coronary artery disease becomes manifest when narrowing of a coronary vessel progresses to such a degree that there is insufficient blood flow to the dependent area of myocardium. Many theories have been offered to explain the development of coronary arterio sclerosis and several hypotheses will be discussed briefly.

**ETHNIC AND GEOGRAPHIC FACTORS** The fact that coronary artery disease has a greater incidence among the Caucasians than among the Negroes is generally conceded. In several large series the incidence of coronary artery disease among the Caucasians was found to be from two to five times greater than that among Negroes. Epstein *et al* (1957) in a study conducted in New York City found the incidence of manifest coronary artery disease almost twice as great in Jewish men (15.8 per cent) as in Italian men of similar social and economic status (7.9 per cent). It is interesting to note that the Jewish group had a higher intake of animal fat and were found to have higher cholesterol values also. This study may support an ethnic factor in the etiology of the disease or on the other hand may only reflect differences in the diets of these two groups.

In Japan, China and certain areas of South Africa and among the Eskimos in Alaska the incidence of coronary artery disease is significantly less than in other sections of the world. An ethnic explanation for this difference has been challenged and some investigators believe that this observed discrepancy in the incidence of coronary artery disease is due solely to dietary factors. Conclusive evidence regarding this matter is still not available although the dietary findings of Keys and others are certainly provocative.

A familial factor in the incidence of coronary artery disease has long been recognized and has been particularly striking in our experience.

# Diseases of the Heart

C GLENN SAWYER and ROBERT N HEADLEY

### ARTERIOSCLEROTIC HEART DISEASE

Heart disease resulting from arteriosclerosis of the coronary arteries is the major cause of disability and death in the older age group, and is the most common form of heart disease in patients past the age of 45

#### Incidence

Master *et al* (1939) in their series found the average age of patients having their first myocardial infarction to be 54 years. Males were affected more frequently than females in a ratio of 3:1. Although it is generally agreed that coronary artery disease has a predilection for the middle aged male, Thomas (1957) reporting on 17,000 autopsies during the period from 1940 to 1951 found that in the older age group women were affected to a greater degree than men. During the same period however the incidence of myocardial infarction was found to be higher in the younger male than in his female counterpart.

Is the incidence of coronary artery disease increasing? It has been suggested that the observed increase is more apparent than real and may be attributed to three factors: (1) increased awareness of the entity on the part of the practicing physician; (2) vastly improved diagnostic techniques; and (3) the increasing life expectancy, resulting in a larger bracket of persons in the older age group. Conflicting with this hypothesis is the report by Lee and Thomas (1956) on 8,183 adult autopsies performed at the Barnes

Keys (1954) has shown that, in Italian firemen and policemen whose average fat intake is 20 per cent of the diet the blood cholesterol no longer continues to rise after the age of 30. In a comparable group of Midwestern businessmen whose fat intake was approximately 40 per cent of their diet the serum cholesterol continued to rise after the age of 30. Keys (1956) also has stated rather dogmatically that more coronary heart disease is encountered in populations where a high serum cholesterol (above 220 mg per 100 cc) prevails in middle aged men. He also has found that blood lipids especially cholesterol  $\beta$  protein fractions appear to be higher in patients with myocardial damage than in normal individuals.

The evidence suggests that the diet especially the fat constituents play some role in the etiology of arteriosclerosis. This issue is still far from being settled however and in the light of present knowledge drastic dietary changes for the general population can not be enthusiastically advocated.

**HORMONES** Some authorities believe that more emphasis should be directed toward endocrine factors in the etiology of coronary arteriosclerosis. It is well known that myocardial infarction is uncommon in women prior to menopause but significantly greater in women who have passed the menopause or who have had bilateral ovariectomy. It has been reported that adrenal thyroid and estrogen preparations will reduce high serum cholesterol levels. In males with high serum cholesterol levels and coronary artery disease good results have been reported from estrogen administration and even castration but these therapeutic methods have not been widely accepted.

One cannot say with certainty which etiologic factor is most important in the genesis of arteriosclerosis. There is good evidence, however that any or all of the above factors can play a role in its production.

### Pathology and Pathogenesis of Arteriosclerosis

By definition arteriosclerosis means hardening of the arteries and is derived from the Greek word *scleros* which means "hard." According to Anderson (1957) three types of arteriosclerosis can be recognized. The degenerative and proliferative changes usually



**HYPERTENSION** Hypertension is a common antecedent of coronary heart disease. It has been stated that hypertension is found in 50 to 75 per cent of the patients with coronary artery disease. In one series reported by Mister, Dack, and Jaffe (1939) 80 per cent of the females with coronary artery disease had hypertension as compared with only 56.5 per cent of the males. The association of coronary artery disease and hypertension is thought to increase with age.

**DIABETES** The development of coronary artery disease is believed to be accelerated in diabetic patients. In the series reported by Mister, Dack, and Jaffe (1939), diabetes was present in 11.2 per cent of the patients with myocardial infarctions, whereas the incidence of diabetics and prediabetics in the general population is approximately 3 per cent.

**OBESITY** It has generally been assumed that obesity predisposes one to heart disease, but recently this assumption has been disputed. Lee and Thomas (1956b) believe that body weight does not materially influence the prognosis of an acute myocardial infarction, nor does it affect the time of onset. Many would disagree with this viewpoint, and it is generally conceded that extreme obesity increases the work load on the heart and would therefore be a detrimental factor in a patient with myocardial insufficiency owing to coronary artery disease.

**DIETARY FACTORS** In recent years emphasis has been placed on dietary factors, especially fat, as being important in the pathogenesis of arteriosclerosis. Page *et al.* (1957) believe that the fat consumption should not exceed 25 to 30 per cent of the caloric intake and that a high percentage of this fat consumption should ideally be in the unsaturated form. They also believe that this high proportional consumption of unsaturated fatty acids as opposed to the saturated fats is necessary for the maintenance of a normal serum lipid value. Ahrens and his group (1957) agree that unsaturated fats in the diet lower the serum cholesterol and serum phospholipid content, but they question the effect of dietary fat intake on atherogenesis.

Furman (1957) reported that when the fat intake exceeds 40 per cent of the day's caloric intake, the serum cholesterol will in time rise above 225 mg per 100 cc and arteriosclerosis will eventually develop.

Keys (1954) has shown that in Italian firemen and policemen whose average fat intake is 20 per cent of the diet the blood cholesterol no longer continues to rise after the age of 30. In a comparable group of Midwestern businessmen whose fat intake was approximately 40 per cent of their diet the serum cholesterol continued to rise after the age of 30. Keys (1956) also has stated rather dogmatically that more coronary heart disease is encountered in populations where a high serum cholesterol (above 220 mg per 100 cc) prevails in middle aged men. He also has found that blood lipids especially cholesterol  $\beta$  protein fractions appear to be higher in patients with myocardial damage than in normal individuals.

The evidence suggests that the diet especially the fat constituents play some role in the etiology of arteriosclerosis. This issue is still far from being settled however and in the light of present knowledge drastic dietary changes for the general population can not be enthusiastically advocated.

**HORMONES** Some authorities believe that more emphasis should be directed toward endocrine factors in the etiology of coronary arteriosclerosis. It is well known that myocardial infarction is uncommon in women prior to menopause but significantly greater in women who have passed the menopause or who have had bilateral ovariectomy. It has been reported that adrenal thyroid and estrogen preparations will reduce high serum cholesterol levels. In males with high serum cholesterol levels and coronary artery disease good results have been reported from estrogen administration and even castration but these therapeutic methods have not been widely accepted.

One cannot say with certainty which etiologic factor is most important in the genesis of arteriosclerosis. There is good evidence however that any or all of the above factors can play a role in its production.

### Pathology and Pathogenesis of Arteriosclerosis

By definition arteriosclerosis means hardening of the arteries and is derived from the Greek word *scleros* which means "hard". According to Anderson (1957) three types of arteriosclerosis can be recognized. The degenerative and proliferative changes usually

**HYPERTENSION** Hypertension is a common antecedent of coronary heart disease. It has been stated that hypertension is found in 50 to 75 per cent of the patients with coronary artery disease. In one series reported by Master, Dack and Jaffe (1939), 80 per cent of the females with coronary artery disease had hypertension as compared with only 56.5 per cent of the males. The association of coronary artery disease and hypertension is thought to increase with age.

**DIABETES** The development of coronary artery disease is believed to be accelerated in diabetic patients. In the series reported by Master, Dack, and Jaffe (1939), diabetes was present in 11.2 per cent of the patients with myocardial infarctions whereas the incidence of diabetics and prediabetics in the general population is approximately 3 per cent.

**OBESITY** It has generally been assumed that obesity predisposes one to heart disease, but recently this assumption has been disputed. Lee and Thomas (1956b) believe that body weight does not materially influence the prognosis of an acute myocardial infarction nor does it affect the time of onset. Many would disagree with this viewpoint, and it is generally conceded that extreme obesity increases the work load on the heart and would therefore be a detrimental factor in a patient with myocardial insufficiency owing to coronary artery disease.

**DIETARY FACTORS** In recent years emphasis has been placed on dietary factors, especially fat, as being important in the pathogenesis of arteriosclerosis. Page *et al* (1957) believe that the fat consumption should not exceed 25 to 30 per cent of the caloric intake and that a high percentage of this fat consumption should ideally be in the unsaturated form. They also believe that this high proportional consumption of unsaturated fatty acids as opposed to the saturated fats is necessary for the maintenance of a normal serum lipid value. Ahrens and his group (1957) agree that unsaturated fats in the diet lower the serum cholesterol and serum phospholipid content but they question the effect of dietary fat intake on atherogenesis.

Furman (1957) reported that when the fat intake exceeds 40 per cent of the day's caloric intake the serum cholesterol will in time rise above 225 mg per 100 cc and arteriosclerosis will eventually develop.

With the progressive narrowing of a vessel lumen the hypoxia of the heart muscle itself, especially during times of increased cardiac demand may stimulate the production of collateral vessels. If at the time of increased cardiac demand the vessel lumen is unable to supply enough blood, anginal pain usually occurs.

### Angina Pectoris

Angina pectoris is heart pain due to myocardial ischemia. It results when there is insufficient coronary flow to an area of the heart and characteristically occurs during exercise or emotional tension. Typical anginal pain is retrosternal in location, radiating usually over the precordium toward the left upper extremity and less commonly to other adjacent areas. It is most often brought on by activity but may be precipitated by emotional stress, ingestion of a heavy meal, cardiac arrhythmias, or exposure to cold. The duration is variable but anginal attacks usually last from a few seconds to a few minutes. Characteristically the pain can be alleviated by nitroglycerin sublingually. It is frequently described as being a tight or compressing type of discomfort rather than a sharp or sticking pain. This discomfort is constant and is aggravated by continuation of the activity. It is usually relieved by rest. The physical changes associated with the acute episode are variable and may even be absent. An elevated blood pressure is detectable sometimes but not always. The pulse rate is frequently accelerated but may be unaltered. Slowing the heart rate by holding the breath or applying unilateral carotid pressure will frequently abate the pain.

The diagnosis of angina pectoris can usually be established by a careful history and physical examination, even in the absence of electrocardiographic changes. When present, the classical electrocardiographic findings in coronary artery disease are depression of the S-T segment and, at a more advanced stage of coronary insufficiency, inversion of the T wave. The standard leads and left precordial leads are the areas of choice for detection of this change.

If the electrocardiogram is normal and if the diagnosis of angina pectoris is uncertain, an exercise test for evaluation of the cardiac reserve can be attempted. In approximately 80 per cent of the cases the classical Master two-step exercise test (1957) will provoke the characteristic changes in the electrocardiogram. The

found in larger arteries consist of lipid and fibrous containing plaques in the intima and are designated atherosclerosis. This term was coined by Marchan in 1904 from the Greek word *athero*, which means mush. It is the most common form of arteriosclerosis and is the type usually seen in the coronary arteries.

The second type of arteriosclerosis is medial calcification of Monckeberg. This affects primarily the muscular arteries, for example the radial, temporal, tibial and femoral arteries. In this type of arteriosclerosis hyaline fatty degeneration can be found in the media of the artery. This change is frequently followed by necrosis and calcium deposition. In the third type arteriolar sclerosis, the intima or media is involved by hypertrophy, hyalinization, or both. Arteriolar sclerotic changes in the myocardium have been incriminated in some cases of idiopathic myocarditis, but a clear cut correlation has not been demonstrated.

It is unfortunate that the coronary vessels are primarily end arteries in all but approximately 9 per cent of the general population. The absence of intercoronary collateral circulation unless this has been previously provoked explains the severe consequences resulting from occlusion of even a small coronary radical. If the occlusion is complete, total infarction of the dependent area results.

### Pathologic Physiology

As arteriosclerotic changes of the coronary arteries take place the blood flow to the myocardium supplied by the involved vessels may be decreased. If the lumen of the coronary vessel becomes so narrowed that the blood flow is not great enough to meet the demands of the dependent area of the heart, coronary insufficiency occurs and anginal pain is experienced. If the arteriosclerotic changes progress so that the vessel becomes occluded, myocardial infarction of the tissue distal to the occlusion occurs. The occlusive episode is frequently precipitated by hemorrhage into an intimal atherosclerotic plaque with resultant thrombosis of the vessel, or more rarely is due to embolization. If sufficient intercoronary anastomoses or collaterals are present, coronary occlusion may take place without myocardial infarction. If occlusion of the nutrient vessel causes anoxia in a sufficiently large area of the heart, death of the myocardium will result.

With the progressive narrowing of a vessel lumen the hypoxia of the heart muscle itself especially during times of increased cardiac demand, may stimulate the production of collateral vessels. If at the time of increased cardiac demand the vessel lumen is unable to supply enough blood anginal pain usually occurs.

### Angina Pectoris

Angina pectoris is heart pain due to myocardial ischemia. It results when there is insufficient coronary flow to an area of the heart, and characteristically occurs during exercise or emotional tension. Typical anginal pain is retrosternal in location radiating usually over the precordium toward the left upper extremity and less commonly to other adjacent areas. It is most often brought on by activity but may be precipitated by emotional stress ingestion of a heavy meal cardiac arrhythmias or exposure to cold. The duration is variable but anginal attacks usually last from a few seconds to a few minutes. Characteristically the pain can be alleviated by nitroglycerin sublingually. It is frequently described as being a tight or compressing type of discomfort rather than a sharp or sticking pain. This discomfort is constant and is aggravated by continuation of the activity. It is usually relieved by rest. The physical changes associated with the acute episode are variable and may even be absent. An elevated blood pressure is detectable sometimes but not always. The pulse rate is frequently accelerated but may be unaltered. Slowing the heart rate by holding the breath or applying unilateral carotid pressure will frequently abate the pain.

The diagnosis of angina pectoris can usually be established by a careful history and physical examination even in the absence of electrocardiographic changes. When present the classical electrocardiographic findings in coronary artery disease are depression of the S-T segment and at a more advanced stage of coronary insufficiency inversion of the T wave. The standard leads and left precordial leads are the areas of choice for detection of this change.

If the electrocardiogram is normal and if the diagnosis of angina pectoris is uncertain an exercise test for evaluation of the cardiac reserve can be attempted. In approximately 80 per cent of the cases the classical Master "two step exercise test" (1957) will provoke the characteristic changes in the electrocardiogram. The

patient is prepared as for a basal metabolism test, and the baseline electrocardiogram is made. The patient is then required to climb two 9 inch steps for a set number of times, and a postexercise electrocardiogram is taken. Depression of the S-T segment, conversion of an upright T wave to a diphasic or inverted T wave, or development of block is a pertinent change. An S-T segment depression of more than 0.5 mm in any lead is considered a positive result. T wave changes would help to confirm the diagnosis but in the absence of an S-T segment depression would be nondiagnostic.

Angina pectoris is sometimes confused with costochondritis, gastrointestinal disturbances, neurocirculatory asthenia, the scalenus anticus syndrome, pericarditis, aneurysm of the aorta, and most frequently, psychoneurosis. Other conditions may occasionally cause difficulty in the differential diagnosis.

The treatment of angina pectoris will be considered in the general discussion of the convalescent stage of myocardial infarction.

### **Coronary Occlusion with Myocardial Infarction**

In this discussion the term coronary occlusion is used to indicate sudden obstruction of a coronary artery as the result of an underlying arteriosclerotic process. When sudden occlusion of a coronary vessel occurs, necrosis of the distal cardiac tissue takes place unless there is sufficient collateral circulation to the area.

The clinical picture of acute coronary occlusion is rather classical. The pain is similar in location to that of angina pectoris but is much more severe and of longer duration. It is classically retrosternal in location with radiation over the precordium frequently to the left upper extremity and not uncommonly to the right upper extremity. Radiation bilaterally into the arms and wrists and up into the neck or jaw is a valuable diagnostic aid. The pain commonly is severe and crushing. Occasionally it is only moderately disabling but is persistent and disturbing in character. If the patient has had angina pectoris he may attribute the pain of coronary occlusion to this condition. A differential feature is the duration of the attack, the pain of myocardial infarction may last for hours unless abated by a generous amount of narcotics. Furthermore, angina

is usually associated with activity or stress such is only occasionally the case with infarction. Myocardial infarction without pain is rare and is thought to occur in less than 5 per cent of all cases of coronary occlusion.

Although pain is the dominant feature in most instances of myocardial infarction coexisting complications are numerous. One of the most frequent is shock. When this occurs, the prognosis is always guarded. During an acute episode of pain the patient may become weak and experience syncope. Upon initial examination the patient may be in profound shock or in the milder cases may only be dizzy or weak, pale, cold and sweaty. Respirations may be shallow and the pulse weak and rapid.

Shortly after the acute episode of coronary occlusion cardiac failure may occur. In such cases physical examination may reveal venous distention, pulmonary rales indicative of pulmonary congestion, hepatomegaly and peripheral edema. If pulmonary congestion is present the patient will be dyspneic, orthopneic and at times cyanotic.

The development of cardiac arrhythmia following an acute coronary occlusion with myocardial infarction is indeed an ominous sign. Any arrhythmia may be encountered but premature ventricular contractions are most common.

Fever generally occurs between 24 and 48 hours after the acute insult. The duration of fever is variable but it usually subsides within two to five days. Prolonged fever may indicate a complication.

Physical examination at frequent intervals following a myocardial infarction is mandatory. No pathognomonic auscultatory findings are encountered after the acute episode but variable systolic murmurs particularly at the base of the heart are described. In our experience transient soft basal diastolic murmurs are not infrequent. The heart sounds may be somewhat muffled or faint. A gallop rhythm usually diastolic in time is significant. In 20 to 30 per cent of the cases a pericardial friction rub is audible usually two to three days after the acute episode. Pericardial rubs may be transient and this is a point of some value in the differential diagnosis of infarction and acute idiopathic pericarditis. With the latter condition the pericardial rub is usually of longer duration.



The blood pressure usually shows a progressive decrease following myocardial infarction and will frequently remain at a lower value after the patient recovers.

Laboratory studies performed on the patient's blood are of variable significance. In our experience, the most useful enzyme procedure has been the determination of lactic dehydrogenase (Mac Donald, *et al* 1957). The advantage of this test is that the enzyme is present as early as 24 hours after the initial episode and persists for 6 to 8 days thereafter. This test is particularly useful when electrocardiographic findings are not diagnostic. The major disadvantage is that elevation of lactic dehydrogenase may also be found in hepatocellular necrosis, metastatic carcinoma, hemolytic anemia, malignant lymphoma, and infectious mononucleosis. One must be careful when the blood sample is drawn to avoid hemolysis of the red blood cells; erythrocytes are high in lactic dehydrogenase content and then hemolysis will produce a falsely high enzyme determination.

Another useful enzyme study is the determination of glutamic oxalacetic transaminase (Ostrow *et al*, 1957). The serum lactic dehydrogenase determination, however, appears to have three distinct advantages over this test: (1) The enzyme level rises promptly and stays elevated longer; (2) it is less sensitive to other sources of error; and (3) it is a less complicated procedure. In the future, a battery of serum enzymatic determinations will probably prove valuable in the differential diagnosis of myocardial infarction.

Other laboratory findings are helpful but not specific for this condition. Leukocytosis is usually detectable within two to three hours after the insult. An increase in the erythrocyte sedimentation rate occurs within two to three days and may persist for weeks. Of lesser diagnostic significance is an increased amount of C reactive protein.

The radiographic findings in acute myocardial infarction are non-specific but a chest film may show cardiomegaly and rarely, abnormal pulsations of the left cardiac border.

Serial electrocardiograms are invaluable when correlated with the clinical observations. Classically, the two major areas of infarction as determined by the electrocardiogram are anterior and posterior. Anatomically, the posterior infarction is more nearly

posteroinferior or diaphragmatic in location. Not infrequently in anterolateral anteroseptal or subendocardial infarction can be detected by the electrocardiogram.

The electrocardiographic findings usually associated with an anterior wall infarction (Q1 — T1 pattern) include elevation of the S T segment in lead 1 and occasionally in lead 2 and depression of the S T segment in lead 3. Subsequently the R wave in lead 1 becomes diphasic or inverted. The diagnostic feature in the electrocardiogram is the appearance of a Q wave in lead 1 and occasionally in lead 2. In a massive anterior infarction a significant Q wave can be found in a variable number of the precordial leads. To be significant the Q wave should be more than 2 mm in depth or greater than 20 per cent of the R wave in the standard leads and at least 0.4 seconds in duration. A significant elevation of the S T segment should be greater than 1 mm in the standard leads and 2 mm in the precordial leads. Generally speaking the elevation of the S T segment is thought to represent current of injury and the T wave change to indicate myocardial insufficiency. The Q wave is thought to signify death of the myocardial tissue.

In the classical posterior wall infarction (Q3 — T3 pattern) there is an elevation of the S T segment in lead 3 and frequently in lead 2 with reciprocal depression of the S T segment in lead 1. In lead 3 and frequently in lead 2 the T wave becomes lower and eventually diphasic or inverted. A significant Q wave appearing in lead 3 is diagnostic and as previously stated indicates myocardial death. Elevation of the S T segment with changes in the T wave and in the appearance of the Q wave may take place in AVF and this is compatible with a posterior myocardial infarction. If the infarction extends laterally into the left ventricle S T and T wave changes may be noticeable in leads V4 to V6 depending on whether the extension is more anterior or posterior.

If the anterior portion of the interventricular septum is involved changes should be evident in the precordial leads primarily V2, V3 and V4.

Death following a myocardial infarction may be due to one or several complications. The most frequent are shock, heart failure with passive congestion, arrhythmia and pneumonia. Myocardial rupture and perforation of the interventricular septum are less common.

The conditions to be ruled out in the diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction are acute pericarditis, angina pectoris dissecting aortic aneurysm pneumothorax, pulmonary embolus, and less frequently, perforated peptic ulcer, acute pancreatitis, and acute cholecystitis

The treatment of an acute myocardial infarction depends upon the specific individual course. Friedberg (1956) emphasizes that the principles of management should include reduction of the cardiac work load until the injured area heals, the alleviation of pain and other discomfort, the prevention and treatment of shock and cardiac failure and the prevention, if possible, of other serious complications. The control of pain and of the patient's apprehension is of utmost importance. Morphine is the most effective narcotic available, and has the additional advantage of producing in most individuals a sense of euphoria. It has, however, the objectionable feature of nauseating a great many patients, and the violent retching sometimes induced puts a real strain on the weakened myocardium. For the patient who has been found by previous experience to tolerate it well, morphine is the drug of choice. However, if the patient's reaction to it is not known or if he has been nauseated by it in the past, Dilaudid (2 to 4 mg) methadone (10 to 15 mg) or Demerol (100 to 150 mg) would be preferable. Any of these drugs as well as morphine may be given intravenously for quicker effect. The continuing periodic administration of narcotics for the control of pain and apprehension is mandatory and around the clock sedation is often necessary to reduce the patient's anxiety and to maintain a near basal state.

If shock is present vasopressor drugs such as Levaterenol (Levo phed) in a solution of dextrose in water may be lifesaving. The rate of infusion should be regulated so as to maintain a satisfactory blood pressure and renal flow. When a vasopressor substance is being administered a competent person should be in constant attendance to regulate the rate of infusion for excessive hypertension at this time might increase the risk of myocardial rupture.

Oxygen is frequently employed during the acute episode and may be beneficial. Because of the refreshing effect on the patient an oxygen tent may be superior to nasal oxygen. Digitalis should not be used at this stage unless cardiac failure develops or is impending. Even then the therapeutic effort is often disappointing.

Sodium restriction is clearly of value and should be invoked. Diuretics will probably be more beneficial in such cases than digitalization. Whereas some authorities consider absolute bed rest imperative, the bed chair regimen advocated by Levine (1952) has gained favor in certain areas. The latter program, which is thought to decrease the risk of thromboembolic episodes and also to decrease the work load of the heart, requires adequate manpower for transport of the patient. The patient should be allowed only restricted activity. He should be fed, bathed, shaved, and assisted with any changes in position. There is disagreement about the wisdom of allowing the use of a bedside commode rather than a bedpan, but the patient should be adequately assisted with either.

Anticoagulant therapy appears to be useful in all patients with a history of previous infarction or with any complications intractable pain, shock, heart failure, or arrhythmias. It is debatable whether anticoagulant therapy is indicated in the so-called "good risk" patient, and this decision is probably up to the individual physician handling the case. Since it is frequently difficult to differentiate clinically between "good risk" and "bad risk" patients, it has been our general policy to employ anticoagulant therapy in all cases of myocardial infarction when no obvious contraindications exist.

The choice of a specific anticoagulant depends on the physician's experience. If anticoagulant therapy is begun soon after the initial insult, the administration of Dicumarol-like drugs is probably satisfactory. If the situation is more acute and rapid anticoagulation is needed, heparin is the drug of choice for initiating therapy, with possibly a subsequent change to a Dicumarol-like anticoagulant. In general, it appears that the latter group of anticoagulants is more easily handled by the average practitioner than is heparin. The physician, however, should acquaint himself with the therapeutic and toxic effects of both heparin and at least one Dicumarol-like anticoagulant so that he can administer either drug with confidence as it is needed.

After the acute stage is passed, the long-term management of a myocardial infarction calls for consideration of more minor details. The consistency of the diet should be varied according to the patient's condition and bowel regularity. Maintaining regular bowel

habits and giving foods of soft consistency will safeguard the patient against unnecessary effort. If he can forego the use of tobacco without undue anxiety, we believe this is desirable. Alcohol given orally, especially in the form of a hot toddy at bedtime often has a sedative effect and provides a treat for the patient. The routine administration of digitalis is not to be used but it should be given if the patient develops cardiac failure. Quinidine is especially useful in the control of ventricular extrasystoles which are usually multifocal, and other arrhythmias known to respond to this drug. The administration of diuretics and antibiotics is dictated by the patient's clinical course.

The management of the convalescent phase is not well defined. Authorities differ on the rapidity of mobilization and no rigid schedule can be advocated in this discussion. It does seem wise however, to restrict the patient's activity rather markedly during the first 14 days since healing of the acute infarction with fibrosis is thought to take place within this time. Following this initial potentially dangerous period, the patient may be allowed first to sit on the edge of the bed and then later to sit in a bedside chair for short periods daily, gradually increasing in duration. After four to five weeks of hospitalization the patient should be ambulatory to the extent that he can be transferred home provided his medical and physical needs can be met there. If he is to remain in bed active movement of the lower extremities should be encouraged in order to reduce the hazard of thrombophlebitis with subsequent embolization. In addition there is clear cut evidence that the incidence of thrombophlebitis and its complications has been significantly reduced by the use of a good anticoagulant program.

No reliable prognosis can be given in a case of myocardial infarction. Various authors place the mortality following the initial attack anywhere from 8 to 50 per cent. It is generally agreed however that previous myocardial infarctions and the presence of cardiac arrhythmias, heart failure, shock, embolization or pneumonia is a poor prognostic sign. Richards, Blind and White (1956) in a study of 200 patients with an initial myocardial infarction found that 162 survived this episode. Of this number 19 per cent were living at the end of 5 years, 31 per cent after 10 years, 14 per cent after 15 years and only 5 per cent after 20 years. If a patient develops either angina or signs of congestive

heart failure following an initial myocardial infarction his prognosis is less favorable

The prevention of subsequent myocardial infarctions presents a challenge to the physician. The aims of a medical approach to this problem might include (1) reduction of the serum cholesterol level if it is elevated (2) alleviation of the symptoms of coronary insufficiency and (3) restoration of the patient to a productive life but with a program of moderation

In those individuals with hypercholesterolemia dietary restriction of fat should be a foremost consideration if a serious attempt at prevention of a subsequent myocardial infarction is to be made. Shapiro, Estes and Hilderman (1957) reported a significant reduction in the serum cholesterol levels of six healthy male interns who were given a diet containing 30 Gm of animal fat and 70 Gm of corn oil. This finding supports the speculation that consistent ingestion of unsaturated fatty acids will lower serum cholesterol values.

Parsons and Flinn (1957) reported the prompt and sustained reduction of blood cholesterol in patients taking nicotinic acid in daily doses of 3 Gm or more. No dietary restrictions were imposed on these patients. The starting dose was 1 000 mg three times a day and this was increased if the serum cholesterol remained at pre-existing levels. Transient reactions to this high dose of nicotinic acid were encountered but were of only brief duration.

Angina pectoris before and after myocardial infarction can at times become an intractable problem. Many preparations for the control of anginal pain are available commercially. Nitroglycerin has stood the test of time and is by far the most efficacious nitrate. Initial doses of 0.3 mg sublingually seem preferable and may be gradually increased if necessary. Occasional patients experience uncomfortable side reactions such as headache, dizziness and even syncope and in such cases other less effective preparations may have to be substituted. Amyl nitrite inhaled briefly may suffice in these instances.

No long acting coronary dilator has been completely satisfactory in our experience but Peritrate (pentaerythritol tetranitrate) given orally three or four times a day seems to be the most useful adjunct for providing sustained alleviation of anginal discomfort. Other long acting coronary vasodilators which have enjoyed transient popu-

larity are Metamine (aminotrite phosphite) and Nitroglyn (sustained action nitroglycerin). Nitroglycerin although effective for only a brief duration, still remains the drug of choice, but selection of a program best suited for each individual is necessary.

The importance of returning the patient to a useful life following a myocardial infarction cannot be overemphasized. The development of a cardiac neurosis following an acute episode is frequent and although the patient should not be allowed too much liberty regarding exercise he should not be restricted and cautioned needlessly. This precaution is wise in dealing with patients of all age groups, but especially with elderly patients, who may already believe that their purpose on earth has been fulfilled and that a vegetative existence is the path of least resistance. Rehabilitation of the elderly postinfarction patient is every bit as important as rehabilitation of the middle aged patient. A basic understanding of this problem is mandatory for the practicing physician.

The advisability of long term anticoagulant therapy following a myocardial infarction is debatable. According to Manchester (1957) anticoagulant treatment should be continued following discharge from the hospital only under three conditions: (1) the patient must be co-operative, (2) frequent prothrombin determinations must be made and (3) the physician must be competent and well acquainted with the pharmacology of the drugs utilized.

If coronary vasodilators fail to relieve the anginal pain the administration of radioactive iodine ( $I^{131}$ ) may be indicated. Blumgart and his co-workers (1957) believe that the administration of radioactive iodine for angina pectoris is necessary in only about 5 per cent of the patients. According to Hartigan and Fitzpatrick (1957) the rationale for administering radioactive iodine to patients with angina is based on the fact that decreasing the thyroid activity reduces the body's metabolic rate thus diminishing circulatory requirements so that they more closely coincide with the limits of the patient's cardiac reserve. The heart therefore performs less work and consumes less oxygen. Blumgart *et al* (1955) reporting on 1,070 patients with angina pectoris or congestive heart failure treated with  $I^{131}$  stated that 75 per cent of the patients with angina and 60 per cent of the patients with congestive heart failure were benefited. The dosage schedule was variable. Six to 20 mc may be

given in divided doses at weekly intervals until the desired result is attained. If myxedema develops desiccated thyroid may have to be administered. Chipman (1952) has stated that the basal metabolic rate should be maintained at  $-25$  to  $-35$  the protein bound iodine at 2 to 3  $\mu\text{g}$  per 100 cc and radioactive iodine uptake at 10 to 20 per cent in 48 hours.

The surgical management of coronary artery disease is in an experimental stage and no definite conclusions have been reached. It has been demonstrated that several procedures are beneficial in a few patients with coronary artery disease. Operative procedures now being tried include pericardial injury, sympathectomy, posterior rhizotomy, omentopexy, pericoronary neurectomy and arterialization of the coronary sinus.

It is our impression that pericardial abrasion and sprinkling of an irritant substance into the pericardial sac may be beneficial in some instances by stimulating the supply of blood vessels to the myocardium. Lilleheis's studies show that ligation of the internal mammary artery distal to the pericardial branch is not of long term benefit (Ffiller *et al* 1957).

Evaluation of the Beck I procedure has produced some glowing reports. This procedure consists of four phases: (1) pericardial epicardial abrasion, (2) partial ligation of the coronary sinus, (3) application of an inflammatory agent and (4) grafting of the mediastinal fat. According to Mozen (1957) the object of this operation is to stimulate production of intercoronary anastomoses. The mortality rate in his series of 71 patients was 14 per cent. 50 per cent of his patients experienced early improvement and approximately 88 per cent became free of anginal pain.

Beck and Brofman (1956) have stated that the Beck I procedure is designed for patients with angina following initial myocardial infarction (usually six months or more after the acute episode) and is rarely employed for prophylaxis. The contraindications to this procedure would be congestive heart failure, marked cardiomegaly or retrogression of the symptoms of coronary insufficiency.

Among the operative procedures that have been described in the literature more recently are the coronary endarterectomy advocated by Buke and anastomosis of the internal mammary artery to the coronary sinus. Neither of these procedures has been proved time



and experience will determine their worth. Many believe that no surgical procedure to date has been as productive of intercoronary anastomoses as has exercise alone.

## RHEUMATIC HEART DISEASE AND CALCIFIC AORTIC STENOSIS

Although rheumatic fever is indeed rare in the older age group there are documented reports of its onset in patients in their seventies (Grifone and Kitchell, 1954). Under these circumstances the disease is almost always atypical and will have to be carefully differentiated from bacterial endocarditis and from occult neoplasm with fever. In the individual with unexplained fever a sustained response to salicylate therapy is suggestive of rheumatic fever. In most cases of rheumatic fever, salicylates are as effective therapeutically as the steroids. Following the acute episode it is important that continuous penicillin prophylaxis be maintained either orally in doses of 200 000 units daily or with a long acting intramuscular preparation (Bicillin) 1.2 million units every four weeks. If the patient is allergic to penicillin, one of the sulfonamide compounds may be substituted.

### Diagnosis of Rheumatic Heart Disease

Most patients with rheumatic heart disease have significant symptoms and many die before the age of 60. Appel and Kossmann (1951) have emphasized that the diagnosis of rheumatic heart disease is frequently missed in the aged. They reported that in 40 per cent of a group of patients with pathologically proved rheumatic heart disease the diagnosis was overlooked during life. A careful history and physical examination, however, should enable one to make the diagnosis with a high degree of accuracy. Several features of the history are worthy of comment. Has the patient had frequent sore throats, tonsillitis, chorea, or spontaneous epistaxis? Systolic murmurs are common in the elderly patient but were any murmurs known to be present before the age of 50? Has chronic atrial fibrillation been present since the age of 45 or earlier? Is there a history of repeated episodes of hemoptysis? Has chronic congestive failure been present for more than two or three years? Have there

been systemic or pulmonary emboli? Have there been repeated syncopeal episodes without observed changes in cardiac rhythm? Affirmative answers to any of these questions should prompt diligent search for physical evidence of rheumatic valvular disease.

Regardless of the patient's age a careful physical examination remains the most valuable aid in the diagnosis of valvular heart disease. It is not our purpose to review the classical findings associated with each of the valvular defects but certain features are worthy of emphasis. If an unequivocal opening snap of the mitral valve is heard, mitral stenosis is present and proper positioning of the patient should enable one to elicit the classic diastolic rumble. In general, mitral insufficiency is not severe unless the systolic murmur is at least a Grade 3 (on a scale of 6) and there is good radiation of the murmur into the left axilla.

The high pitched diastolic diminuendo murmur of aortic valvular insufficiency which is heard best with the patient in maximal expiration and leaning forward may be confused with syphilitic aortic insufficiency, with pulmonary valvular insufficiency secondary to pulmonary hypertension or with the short early diastolic blow often heard in the elderly patient with a tortuous elongated aorta. The last condition can usually be excluded if the murmur is known to have been present for many years and if the patient has a history of rheumatic heart disease. A wide pulse pressure with a collapsing peripheral pulse is compatible with aortic insufficiency and not with pulmonary insufficiency although the murmurs produced by these two conditions may be indistinguishable on auscultation. The history, clinical course and serologic test for syphilis will help to differentiate between luetic and rheumatic aortic valvular insufficiencies.

### Diagnosis of Calcific Aortic Stenosis

Calcific aortic stenosis merits special attention because it is primarily a disease of the elderly, and in some 50 per cent of the cases is preceded by known *rheumatic fever*. Males predominate by a ratio of 3:1. Congestive failure is the most frequent manifesta-

From their classic study of 100 hearts with calcific aortic stenosis, Karsner and Kell (1941) concluded that 98 per cent of the patients had had rheumatic fever.

and experience will determine their worth. Many believe that no surgical procedure to date has been as productive of intercoronary anastomoses as his exercise alone.

## **RHEUMATIC HEART DISEASE AND CALCIFIC AORTIC STENOSIS**

Although rheumatic fever is indeed rare in the older age group there are documented reports of its onset in patients in their seventies (Grifone and Kitchell 1954). Under these circumstances, the disease is almost always atypical and will have to be carefully differentiated from bacterial endocarditis and from occult neoplasm with fever. In the individual with unexplained fever, a sustained response to salicylate therapy is suggestive of rheumatic fever. In most cases of rheumatic fever salicylates are as effective therapeutically as the steroids. Following the acute episode it is important that continuous penicillin prophylaxis be maintained either orally in doses of 200 000 units daily or with a long acting intramuscular preparation (Bicillin) 1.2 million units every four weeks. If the patient is allergic to penicillin, one of the sulfonamide compounds may be substituted.

### **Diagnosis of Rheumatic Heart Disease**

Most patients with rheumatic heart disease have significant symptoms and many die before the age of 60. Appel and Kossmann (1951) have emphasized that the diagnosis of rheumatic heart disease is frequently missed in the aged. They reported that in 10 per cent of a group of patients with pathologically proved rheumatic heart disease, the diagnosis was overlooked during life. A careful history and physical examination however should enable one to make the diagnosis with a high degree of accuracy. Several features of the history are worthy of comment. Has the patient had frequent sore throats, tonsillitis, chorea or spontaneous epistaxis? Systolic murmurs are common in the elderly patient but were any murmurs known to be present before the age of 50? Has chronic atrial fibrillation been present since the age of 45 or earlier? Is there a history of repeated episodes of hemoptysis? Has chronic congestive failure been present for more than two or three years? Have there

been systemic or pulmonary emboli? Have there been repeated syncopal episodes without observed changes in cardiac rhythm? Affirmative answers to any of these questions should prompt diligent search for physical evidence of rheumatic valvular disease.

Regardless of the patient's age, a careful physical examination remains the most valuable aid in the diagnosis of valvular heart disease. It is not our purpose to review the classical findings as associated with each of the valvular defects but certain features are worthy of emphasis. If an unequivocal opening snap of the mitral valve is heard mitral stenosis is present and proper positioning of the patient should enable one to elicit the classic diastolic rumble. In general, mitral insufficiency is not severe unless the systolic murmur is at least a Grade 3 (on a scale of 6) and there is good radiation of the murmur into the left axilla.

The high pitched diastolic diminuendo murmur of aortic valvular insufficiency which is heard best with the patient in maximal expiration and leaning forward may be confused with syphilitic aortic insufficiency with pulmonary valvular insufficiency secondary to pulmonary hypertension or with the short early diastolic blow often heard in the elderly patient with a tortuous elongated aorta. The last condition can usually be excluded if the murmur is known to have been present for many years and if the patient has a history of rheumatic heart disease. A wide pulse pressure with a collapsing peripheral pulse is compatible with aortic insufficiency and not with pulmonary insufficiency although the murmurs produced by these two conditions may be indistinguishable on auscultation. The history, clinical course and serologic test for syphilis will help to differentiate between luetic and rheumatic aortic valvular insufficiency.

### Diagnosis of Calcific Aortic Stenosis

Calcific aortic stenosis merits special attention because it is primarily a disease of the elderly and in some 50 per cent of the cases is preceded by known rheumatic fever.\* Males predominate by a ratio of 3:1. Congestive failure is the most frequent manifesta-

\* From the classic study of 200 hearts with calcific aortic stenosis, Kannel and Abbott (1947) concluded that 98 per cent of the patients had had rheumatic fever.

and experience will determine their worth. Many believe that no surgical procedure to date has been as productive of intercoronary anastomoses as has exercise alone.

### **RHEUMATIC HEART DISEASE AND CALCIFIC AORTIC STENOSIS**

Although rheumatic fever is indeed rare in the older age group there are documented reports of its onset in patients in their seventies (Grifone and Kitchell, 1951). Under these circumstances the disease is almost always atypical and will have to be carefully differentiated from bacterial endocarditis and from occult neoplasm with fever. In the individual with unexplained fever, a sustained response to salicylate therapy is suggestive of rheumatic fever. In most cases of rheumatic fever salicylates are as effective therapeutically as the steroids. Following the acute episode it is important that continuous penicillin prophylaxis be maintained either orally in doses of 200 000 units daily or with a long acting intramuscular preparation (Bicillin), 1.2 million units every four weeks. If the patient is allergic to penicillin one of the sulfonamide compounds may be substituted.

### **Diagnosis of Rheumatic Heart Disease**

Most patients with rheumatic heart disease have significant symptoms and many die before the age of 60. Appel and Kossman (1951) have emphasized that the diagnosis of rheumatic heart disease is frequently missed in the aged. They reported that in 40 per cent of a group of patients with pathologically proved rheumatic heart disease the diagnosis was overlooked during life. A careful history and physical examination, however, should enable one to make the diagnosis with a high degree of accuracy. Several features of the history are worthy of comment. Has the patient had frequent sore throats, tonsillitis, chorea, or spontaneous epistaxis? Systolic murmurs are common in the elderly patient but were any murmurs known to be present before the age of 50? Has chronic atrial fibrillation been present since the age of 15 or earlier? Is there a history of repeated episodes of hemoptysis? Has chronic congestive failure been present for more than two or three years? Have there

been systemic or pulmonary emboli? Have there been repeated syncopeal episodes without observed changes in cardiac rhythm? Affirmative answers to any of these questions should prompt diligent search for physical evidence of rheumatic valvular disease.

Regardless of the patient's age a careful physical examination remains the most valuable aid in the diagnosis of valvular heart disease. It is not our purpose to review the classical findings associated with each of the valvular defects but certain features are worthy of emphasis. If an unequivocal opening snap of the mitral valve is heard mitral stenosis is present and proper positioning of the patient should enable one to elicit the classic diastolic rumble. In general, mitral insufficiency is not severe unless the systolic murmur is at least a Grade 3 (on a scale of 6) and there is good radiation of the murmur into the left axilla.

The high pitched diastolic diminuendo murmur of aortic valvular insufficiency which is heard best with the patient in maximal expiration and leaning forward may be confused with syphilitic aortic insufficiency, with pulmonary valvular insufficiency secondary to pulmonary hypertension or with the short early diastolic blow often heard in the elderly patient with a tortuous elongated aorta. The last condition can usually be excluded if the murmur is known to have been present for many years and if the patient has a history of rheumatic heart disease. A wide pulse pressure with a collapsing peripheral pulse is compatible with aortic insufficiency and not with pulmonary insufficiency although the murmurs produced by these two conditions may be indistinguishable on auscultation. The history, clinical course and serologic test for syphilis will help to differentiate between aortic and rheumatic aortic valvular insufficiency.

### Diagnosis of Calcific Aortic Stenosis

Calcific aortic stenosis merits special attention because it is primarily a disease of the elderly and in some 50 per cent of the cases is preceded by known rheumatic fever.\* Males predominate in a ratio of 3:1. Congestive failure is the most frequent manifesta-

\*From their classic study of 200 hearts with calcific aortic stenosis Karsner and Kjetly (1947) concluded that 89 per cent of the patients had had rheumatic fever.

and experience will determine their worth. Many believe that no surgical procedure to date has been as productive of intercoronary anastomoses as has exercise alone.

## RHEUMATIC HEART DISEASE AND CALCIFIC AORTIC STENOSIS

Although rheumatic fever is indeed rare in the older age group there are documented reports of its onset in patients in their seventies (Grifone and Mitchell, 1954). Under these circumstances the disease is almost always atypical and will have to be carefully differentiated from bacterial endocarditis and from occult neoplasm with fever. In the individual with unexplained fever a sustained response to salicylate therapy is suggestive of rheumatic fever. In most cases of rheumatic fever, salicylates are as effective therapeutically as the steroids. Following the acute episode it is important that continuous penicillin prophylaxis be maintained either orally in doses of 200 000 units daily or with a long acting intramuscular preparation (Bicillin), 1.2 million units every four weeks. If the patient is allergic to penicillin one of the sulfonamide compounds may be substituted.

### Diagnosis of Rheumatic Heart Disease

Most patients with rheumatic heart disease have significant symptoms and many die before the age of 60. Appel and Kossman (1951) have emphasized that the diagnosis of rheumatic heart disease is frequently missed in the aged. They reported that in 40 per cent of a group of patients with pathologically proved rheumatic heart disease the diagnosis was overlooked during life. A careful history and physical examination, however, should enable one to make the diagnosis with a high degree of accuracy. Several features of the history are worthy of comment. Has the patient had frequent sore throats, tonsillitis, chorea or spontaneous epistaxis? Systolic murmurs are common in the elderly patient but were any murmurs known to be present before the age of 50? Has chronic atrial fibrillation been present since the age of 15 or earlier? Is there a history of repeated episodes of hemoptysis? Has chronic congestive failure been present for more than two or three years? Have there

when both can be satisfactorily done, is preferable to long term anticoagulant therapy for the prevention of further emboli

## THYROTOXIC HEART DISEASE

In elderly patients with arteriosclerotic heart disease either clinical or latent thyrotoxicosis of long duration often precipitates congestive heart failure cardiac arrhythmias or angina. The diagnosis of hyperthyroidism is not difficult when the classical clinical features are present. In patients with congestive failure however these features may be masked or absent. The appetite may be diminished because of passive congestion and the loss of body weight may not be recognized because of the retention of fluid. Patients with cardiac failure seldom have intolerance to heat.

The diagnosis of thyrotoxic heart disease should be considered in any patient who has bouts of paroxysmal atrial fibrillation or chronic atrial fibrillation (particularly when rheumatic heart disease is not present) with a ventricular rate that fails to respond to adequate digitalization. When chronic atrial fibrillation is due to thyrotoxicosis reversion to a normal sinus rhythm rarely can be achieved and maintained by the administration of quinidine. Once the thyrotoxicosis is controlled spontaneous reversion to a sinus rhythm is common.

Studies of the radioactive iodine uptake or determination of the protein bound iodine should enable one to confirm the diagnosis of thyrotoxicosis. Since the basal metabolic rate is elevated in patients with congestive failure this test is valueless in assessing thyroid function under these circumstances. Occasionally a therapeutic trial with one of the antithyroid preparations is necessary to substantiate the diagnosis of subclinical thyrotoxicosis.

The diagnostic and therapeutic features of both hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism are discussed in Chapter 20.

## ACUTE PERICARDITIS

Pericarditis is an inflammation of either or both of the covering membranes of the heart—the visceral and parietal pericardium.

In the elderly patient the most frequent causes of pericarditis are uremia and myocardial infarction. Pericarditis may also result



tion, although syncope or other transient manifestations of cerebral ischemia are not unusual. Chest pain is common and often mimics angina pectoris, although it is more apt to be unrelated to exercise or to follow exercise rather than accompany it.

With regard to physical findings, a major misconception is prevalent. A small pulse pressure and plateau pulse are *not* the rule but are infrequent findings. If these are used as criteria for the diagnosis of aortic stenosis, most cases of calcific aortic stenosis will go unrecognized. An aortic systolic murmur of Grade 3 intensity or more, with an accompanying thrill and diminution or absence of the aortic second sound should lead one to suspect the diagnosis. Electrocardiographic or roentgenographic evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy would strengthen this suspicion. If present calcification of the aortic valve which is seen best and sometimes *only* under the fluoroscope is confirmatory.

## Treatment

Surgery for valvular defects resulting from rheumatic heart disease is rarely necessary in the geriatric patient and will never produce the gratifying results seen in the younger individual. Too often there is associated coronary atherosclerosis with myocardial ischemia and areas of fibrosis. Cardiac surgery is technically difficult in old people as the valves are generally calcified. Both valve clearance and restoration of valve mobility are difficult to achieve. If however mechanical valve obstruction is severe and is a threat to life surgery should not be withheld. Catheterization of the left and right sides of the heart may be necessary to assess this disability accurately.

Most of the older patients who are handicapped by rheumatic heart disease can be satisfactorily managed by the measures discussed for congestive heart failure. Several additional features are salient. In order to prevent bacterial endocarditis these patients should receive therapeutic doses of penicillin at the time of any dental or operative procedure. Continuous anticoagulant therapy should be considered when rheumatic heart disease is complicated by either chronic or refractory failure or by multiple emboli. Under the latter circumstance if disabling mitral stenosis is present the performance of a mitral valvulotomy and left atrial appendectomy,

roentgenograms may show a variation in heart size a further radiographic aid in this diagnosis

Electrocardiographic findings in acute pericarditis include diffuse elevation of the S T segment not localizable to a specific portion of the heart and without reciprocal depression of the S T segment. The T waves tend to become flattened or diphasic and the QRS voltage is usually diminished in amplitude Q waves do not develop since death of myocardial tissue does not occur

Treatment is directed at the underlying disease or condition Pericardial aspiration is rarely necessary except in tuberculous pericarditis which may require repeated pericardiocentesis

### CHRONIC CONSTRICTIVE PERICARDITIS

Chronic constrictive pericarditis is a dense fibrotic thickening of the enveloping membranes of the heart resulting in an impediment to normal diastolic filling It is often impossible to establish the etiology of this condition but the agent most frequently incriminated has been tuberculosis Although chronic constrictive pericarditis is uncommon in the older age group we have seen several cases in elderly patients

Congestive heart failure that has been present for several years and is only slowly progressive should immediately suggest the possibility of constrictive pericarditis The manifestations of congestive failure owing to chronic constrictive pericarditis are ascites hepatomegaly and edema of the lower extremities Dyspnea at rest is uncommon and in contrast to patients in chronic congestive failure resulting from arteriosclerotic heart disease the patient is frequently comfortable flat in bed Anorexia weight loss and exertional dyspnea are common complaints Examination may reveal venous engorgement and weak arterial pulsations The heart is smaller than would be anticipated from the degree of incapacity and congestive failure A paradoxical pulse as previously described is frequently found In the late stages of this condition where marked disability and failure exist cyanosis may be present even at rest

The diagnosis of chronic constrictive pericarditis is difficult unless one maintains a high index of suspicion for this condition A

from bacterial or viral infections, from trauma, and rarely from malignant metastases. Benign idiopathic pericarditis is uncommon in the patient past 60.

The acute phase of pericarditis may be manifested by chest pain somewhat similar to the pain of myocardial infarction. Since the pericardium itself has no sensory nerve distribution, this pain is usually pleural in nature and is intensified by coughing and deep breathing. It is frequently relieved by assuming the erect position, whereas the pain of acute myocardial infarction is not affected by position. It is of interest that pain is absent in patients with uremic pericarditis. Other frequent manifestations of acute pericarditis are dyspnea, fever, sweating, weight loss, malaise, anorexia, and chills. At the onset of viral, bacterial, or idiopathic pericarditis the temperature may be 102 F or higher, whereas fever is most infrequent with the onset of a myocardial infarction.

On physical examination, a pericardial friction rub, to and fro in character, is usually detectable along the lower left sternal border. If underlying valvular disease exists, this friction rub may be confused with a heart murmur. A pericardial friction rub can often be heard best by using the diaphragm of the stethoscope with the patient in the sitting position and leaning slightly forward. On percussion, the finding of globular cardiomegaly, especially fullness at the base of the heart, may be indicative of pericardial effusion. If the pericardial effusion is large, an area of dullness and bronchial breath sounds may be detectable below the inferior angle of the left scapula posteriorly (Ewart's sign). The heart sounds themselves may also be muffled and faint. If cardiac tamponade is produced by the pericardial effusion, the venous pressure will be elevated and the arterial pressure lowered. It is interesting that in both constrictive pericarditis and cardiac tamponade a paradoxical pulse may be present. This may be demonstrated as a diminution in pulse amplitude or as a decrease of 10 to 20 mm in the systolic blood pressure during the inspiratory phase of respiration.

Radiographically, a pericardial effusion produces a large globular cardiac silhouette with loss of the angular contour. The supra-cardiac great vessel shadow becomes less elongated and somewhat widened as a result of fluid accumulation in this area. Fluoroscopic examination reveals decreased or absent cardiac pulsations. Serial

gether with indicator dye dilution studies should easily establish the correct diagnosis

To date we have not repaired atrial septal defects in patients past the age of 50 although it is conceivable that surgery might be helpful to the older patient with persistent failure and without extreme pulmonary hypertension. One should not anticipate, however, that elderly patients will show the dramatic postoperative improvement encountered in children.

The presence of a *patent ductus arteriosus* may be suspected when there is a to-and-fro machinery murmur maximal in the second left intercostal space parasternally with radiation beneath the left clavicle and into the axilla. This murmur is so characteristic that the diagnosis is usually made in childhood. Two of our patients, however, were past 50 when satisfactory division and ligation of the ductus was performed.

Occasionally a patient in the geriatric group will be found to have a coarctation of the aorta. The hypertension above the coarcted segment accelerates the arteriosclerotic process and as a result the vessels are very friable. Surgery at this age is hazardous and not advisable.

One may rarely encounter an elderly patient with an *interventricular septal defect* that has been tolerated well during the years. Such defects are usually small in size and produce rather loud coarse systolic murmurs with an accompanying thrill along the left sternal border. Corrective surgery is not advisable or necessary in the elderly patient with a small well-tolerated interventricular septal defect.

### SUBACUTE BACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS

The therapeutic aspects of both acute and subacute endocarditis have been discussed in Chapter 8. More than a third of the patients with subacute bacterial endocarditis are past the age of 45 and in this group the diagnosis is often difficult. When the patient has a heart murmur, embolic phenomena, persistent fever, splenomegaly, a positive blood culture, and petechiae, there is no difficulty in diagnosis; this classical picture, however, may not appear until late in the course of the disease, if at all. Gleckler's report on 10 elderly patients with endocarditis (1958) emphasizes the

relatively small heart as compared to the degree of failure should always suggest chronic constrictive pericarditis. The diagnosis can often be made by the radiographic demonstration of calcification of the pericardium or by the finding of decreased or absent cardiac pulsations on fluoroscopic examination.

The treatment for chronic constrictive pericarditis is surgical and consists in extensive decortication of both ventricles. Rarely do the atria or venae cavae have to be decorticated. Because of the frequent coexistence of arteriosclerotic heart disease with areas of associated myocardial fibrosis and because atrophy of the myocardium results from the chronic compression of the heart, improvement in cardiac function following operation may be slow in the older age groups. Furthermore the chronic inflammatory process itself commonly causes areas of myocardial fibrosis. Despite these factors decortication is mandatory, and in time usually produces gratifying functional results.

### CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

As a result of recent advances in diagnostic and surgical techniques most congenital heart defects are now accurately diagnosed and repaired during the early years of life. The congenital heart lesion most frequently misdiagnosed in the geriatric age group is an *atrial septal defect*. Many patients with this condition have a functional tricuspid stenosis producing a murmur similar to that heard with mitral stenosis. In many instances a diastolic diminution murmur owing to insufficiency of the pulmonary valve can also be heard along the left sternal border and this may be confused with the diastolic diminution murmur that is associated with aortic insufficiency or pulmonary hypertension resulting from rheumatic heart disease. In elderly patients atrial septal defects are often responsible for atrial fibrillation and congestive heart failure conditions that might easily be attributed to the far more common valvular deformities of rheumatic heart disease. Atrial septal defect however would not produce left atrial enlargement and it would be associated with undue prominence of the pulmonary outflow tract and with more pronounced pulmonary vascularity particularly of the larger vessels than that seen with mitral stenosis. If the differential diagnosis is in doubt cardiac catheterization to

nodosa resulting in congestive heart failure pericarditis and even myocardial infarction Libman Sacks disease a cardiac manifestation of lupus erythematosus is a disease of young females and rarely if ever appears after the menopause Scleroderma is usually a cutaneous disease but may infrequently affect the heart Other rare conditions that may cause congestive heart failure are idiopathic myocarditis endocardial fibroelastosis, sarcoidosis amyloidosis involving the heart itself and myxoma of the left atrium

### Acute Failure

Clinically one can divide heart failure into two phases the acute and the chronic Acute congestive heart failure can occur within a matter of minutes or hours and is usually manifested by marked dyspnea cough orthopnea extreme apprehension and frothy pink sputum The objective findings are basilar pulmonary rales distention of the neck veins engorgement of the liver ascites and peripheral edema Most patients with congestive failure are more comfortable either sitting or semivertical since this position permits maximum utilization of the noncongested lung tissue

The treatment of acute congestive failure varies with the predominant manifestations of the individual case Demerol Dilaudid methadone or morphine is especially beneficial in the acute phase in order to allay anxiety slow the respiratory rate, and depress the cough reflex Morphine should be given with caution in older patients with cerebral arteriosclerosis since it may cause irreversible depression of the respiratory center Many physicians believe that atropine given in combination with morphine largely counteracts the opiate's depressing effect on the respiration and also helps relieve the pulmonary edema Nalline is the antidote of choice for an overdosage of morphine In many older patients chloral hydrate is all that is needed to allay anxiety small doses of barbiturates are sometimes useful but occasionally they may actually increase restlessness in this age group The administration of oxygen by catheter tent or mask is of frequent benefit Aminophylline given intravenously is frequently effective in controlling bronchospasm and ameliorating the acute phase of edema Often a mercurial diuretic given parenterally is dramatically beneficial

Rapid digitalization with a quick acting glycoside given intra

difficulty of diagnosis. Only three of the group presented this classical picture, in the remaining patients the presenting complaints were major psychoses (3 cases) and gastrointestinal difficulty, renal insufficiency, wasting without fever during a six week period of observation, and cerebral apoplexy (1 case each). All ten of these patients did have one common finding, a heart murmur. The diagnosis of subacute bacterial endocarditis should be suspected in any adult with an organic heart murmur and unexplained fever of 101 F or above for more than one week (Friedberg 1956).

Whenever the possibility of subacute bacterial endocarditis is suspected, multiple blood cultures should be taken promptly and therapy instituted at once. Bacteriologic cures can be achieved in some 70 to 80 per cent of the cases. Prompter treatment should effect further improvement in both the morbidity and the mortality rates. Relapses later than one month after termination of the treatment are unusual. Despite a bacteriologic cure endocarditis may lead to congestive failure, embolic phenomena and renal insufficiency.

## CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE AND CARDIAC ARRHYTHMIAS

Congestive heart failure is present when the heart is physiologically unable to deliver the body's requirements for oxygen and nourishment. The pathologic physiology of high output failure as contrasted with low output failure will not be discussed here.

### Etiologic Factors in Congestive Failure

Cardiac decompensation without an obvious underlying cause is rarely encountered in the elderly patient. Some of the conditions that often precipitate congestive heart failure or contribute to it are arteriosclerotic heart disease, hypertensive heart disease, primary pulmonary disease with cor pulmonale, hyperthyroidism, rheumatic heart disease, bacterial endocarditis, severe anemia and infrequently congenital heart disease.

In the occasional case where no etiologic factor is evident certain uncommon conditions should be considered in the differential diagnosis. Occasionally one of the collagen disorders may involve the heart. Bickman (1956) has reported cases of periarthritis

ments of the dependent parts particularly the lower extremities are helpful in the prevention of thrombophlebitis

The success or failure of the therapeutic regimen may be dependent on strict adherence to a low salt intake Too often one sees patients "requiring" frequent parenteral doses of mercurial diuretics because they have not received adequate instruction as to what constitutes sodium restriction

Maintenance of digitalization is mandatory in chronic failure however in conditions such as thyrotoxicosis myocarditis constrictive pericarditis anemia, certain avitaminoses and arteriovenous fistulas it is of little or no benefit When there is marked aortic or mitral stenosis surgical correction of the obstruction is necessary in order to achieve maximal benefit These and other conditions should be suspected whenever failure is unresponsive to the usual therapeutic measures

Periodic diuresis is frequently necessary in the management of chronic failure In our opinion mercurials remain the diuretics of choice for severe failure Diuril (chlorothiazide) in daily doses of 2 Gm is almost as effective as Mercurhydrin and has the advantage that it can be administered orally It is particularly useful in smaller dosages (0.5 to 1 Gm daily) for long term management Failure resistant to most diuretics will often respond to aminophylline followed by Mercurhydrin given intravenously In our experience the use of Mictine Rolicton or Diamox alone is effective only in patients with mild failure

Before any diuretic therapy is begun renal insufficiency should be excluded One should be particularly alert for signs of the low salt syndrome or hypochloremic acidosis Frequent diuresis even in patients with normal kidney function often causes chloride and sodium ions to be excreted in excess of water resulting in hypochloremia hyponatremia or both This electrolyte imbalance may be suspected if the patient has rapid shallow respirations with nausea vomiting exhaustion and lethargy and if his edema becomes refractory to diuretic agents Oral doses of ammonium chloride may be necessary to maintain the serum chlorides at a level sufficient for therapeutic response to mercurial diuretics or Diuril Ammonium chloride and other acidifying salts frequently have a potentiating effect on the subsequent mercurial injection



venously is mandatory in the acute phase of congestive heart failure, unless the patient has been taking a digitalis preparation. After the full therapeutic effect has been achieved, daily maintenance doses with a longer acting preparation should be instituted. A cardiac arrhythmia such as atrial fibrillation with a rapid ventricular rate is frequently a factor in the precipitation of congestive failure. In such cases digitalization while it usually will not alter the arrhythmia itself, will help to slow the ventricular rate.

If pulmonary edema persists despite these therapeutic measures and if the patient's hemoglobin level is satisfactory, a bloodless phlebotomy should be performed by means of tourniquets applied to three extremities tightly enough to occlude only the venous drainage. The tourniquets should be rotated clockwise every 15 to 20 minutes. This measure by reducing the venous return to the heart, diminishes the pulmonary cardiac output and frequently decreases the pulmonary congestion. If the bloodless phlebotomy produces improvement but does not end the attack of congestive failure, a surgical phlebotomy may be performed the blood being collected in a sterile vacuum bottle for possible subsequent re-administration to the patient. If the tourniquets produce no improvement however phlebotomy itself will be disappointing therapeutically.

If cardiogenic shock is present in addition to acute congestive failure one of the vasopressor substances may be lifesaving. Phlebotomy is, of course contraindicated in the presence of shock.

Sodium restriction is mandatory in the treatment of cardiac decompensation. If feasible a diet containing no more than 200 mg of sodium should be instituted and drugs containing sodium should be excluded. The restriction of sodium free liquids does not seem justifiable.

### **Chronic Failure**

When despite these measures there persists either pulmonary or systemic edema or both the patient is in chronic congestive heart failure. In such cases rest or at least restriction of activity is beneficial the degree of restriction depending on the severity of the failure. If the patient is confined to bed active and passive move-

ments of the dependent parts particularly the lower extremities are helpful in the prevention of thrombophlebitis

The success or failure of the therapeutic regimen may be dependent on strict adherence to a low salt intake Too often, one sees patients requiring frequent parenteral doses of mercurial diuretics because they have not received adequate instruction as to what constitutes sodium restriction

Maintenance of digitalization is mandatory in chronic failure, however in conditions such as thyrotoxicosis, myocarditis constrictive pericarditis anemia, certain avitaminoses and arteriovenous fistulas it is of little or no benefit When there is marked aortic or mitral stenosis surgical correction of the obstruction is necessary in order to achieve maximal benefit These and other conditions should be suspected whenever failure is unresponsive to the usual therapeutic measures

Periodic diuresis is frequently necessary in the management of chronic failure In our opinion mercurials remain the diuretics of choice for severe failure Diuril (chlorothiazide) in daily doses of 2 Gm is almost as effective as Mercuhydrin and has the advantage that it can be administered orally It is particularly useful in smaller dosages (0.5 to 1 Gm daily) for long term management Failure resistant to most diuretics will often respond to aminophylline followed by Mercuhydrin given intravenously In our experience the use of Mictine Rolicton or Diamox alone is effective only in patients with mild failure

Before any diuretic therapy is begun renal insufficiency should be excluded One should be particularly alert for signs of the low salt syndrome or hypochloremic acidosis Frequent diuresis even in patients with normal kidney function often causes chloride and sodium ions to be excreted in excess of water resulting in hypochloremia hyponatremia or both This electrolyte imbalance may be suspected if the patient has rapid shallow respirations with nausea vomiting exhaustion and lethargy and if his edema becomes refractory to diuretic agents Oral doses of ammonium chloride may be necessary to maintain the serum chlorides at a level sufficient for therapeutic response to mercurial diuretics or Diuril Ammonium chloride and other acidifying salts frequently have a potentiating effect on the subsequent mercurial injection

venously is mandatory in the acute phase of congestive heart failure, unless the patient has been taking a digitalis preparation. After the full therapeutic effect has been achieved, daily maintenance doses with a longer-acting preparation should be instituted. A cardiac arrhythmia, such as atrial fibrillation with a rapid ventricular rate is frequently a factor in the precipitation of congestive failure. In such cases digitalization while it usually will not alter the arrhythmia itself, will help to slow the ventricular rate.

If pulmonary edema persists despite these therapeutic measures and if the patient's hemoglobin level is satisfactory, a bloodless phlebotomy should be performed by means of tourniquets applied to three extremities tightly enough to occlude only the venous drainage. The tourniquets should be rotated clockwise every 15 to 20 minutes. This measure, by reducing the venous return to the heart, diminishes the pulmonary cardiac output and frequently decreases the pulmonary congestion. If the bloodless phlebotomy produces improvement but does not end the attack of congestive failure, a surgical phlebotomy may be performed the blood being collected in a sterile vacuum bottle for possible subsequent re-administration to the patient. If the tourniquets produce no improvement however, phlebotomy itself will be disappointing therapeutically.

If cardiogenic shock is present in addition to acute congestive failure one of the vasopressor substances may be lifesaving. Phlebotomy is of course contraindicated in the presence of shock.

Sodium restriction is mandatory in the treatment of cardiac decompensation. If feasible a diet containing no more than 200 mg of sodium should be instituted and drugs containing sodium should be excluded. The restriction of sodium free liquids does not seem justifiable.

### **Chronic Failure**

When despite these measures there persists either pulmonary or systemic edema or both the patient is in chronic congestive heart failure. In such cases rest or at least restriction of activity is beneficial the degree of restriction depending on the severity of the failure. If the patient is confined to bed active and passive move-

function is especially rewarding in patients with hyperthyroidism which may have been previously unsuspected

Experience has proved that most mild to moderate congestive heart failure can be adequately controlled with rigid sodium restriction restricted physical activity adequate digitalization and the judicious administration of diuretics Only in very severe cases will more drastic measures have to be attempted Management of the elderly patient with congestive failure however requires certain special considerations (1) Widespread coronary artery disease and fibrotic areas resulting from previous coronary occlusions functionally impair the heart action and may thwart therapeutic efforts (2) Electrolyte disturbances and hypoproteinemia secondary to chronic renal or hepatic involvement are more common in aged patients (3) Elderly patients with chronic congestive failure have a decreased cerebral flow and often cerebral hypoxia sometimes resulting in bizarre irrational behavior necessitating special management and diplomatic handling by the physician Consideration of these aspects of management is essential

### Cardiac Arrhythmias

In the elderly patient congestive heart failure is commonly precipitated or aggravated by cardiac arrhythmia Certain basic principles concerning the management of arrhythmias in this age group should be emphasized Aside from extrasystoles atrial fibrillation is the most common problem Conversion of this irregularity to a sinus rhythm is desirable and can be achieved in 55 to 70 per cent of the patients (Sawyer *et al* 1958) by the administration of quinidine Continuous quinidine maintenance therapy is necessary following conversion Despite this some patients will revert to atrial fibrillation In such cases quinidine should be discontinued

Contrary to the advice of many we have always digitalized the patient with congestive failure chronic or impending before attempting to alter his atrial fibrillation No adverse results have been detected from the simultaneous administration of digitalis and quinidine

The patient with atrial flutter should be fully digitalized If atrial fibrillation occurs after digitalization the drug should be discontinued and often conversion to sinus rhythm will occur If

Hypoproteinememia may also be a factor contributing to the refractory nature of some cases of congestive failure. It is rarely necessary to administer hypertonic saline or albumin intravenously in order to restore the electrolyte or colloid balance. When marked hypochloremia and hyponatremia occur during the course of chronic congestive failure, the prognosis is almost always poor.

If the patient is eating well symptoms due to potassium deficit are unusual. There is frequently a gradual loss of potassium however, with chronic congestive failure. Further loss of potassium occurs when a vigorous diuretic program is instituted. Unfortunately this cellular depletion of potassium is often not accurately reflected by the serum potassium level which may be normal. If a deficit is present replacement is essential. This is done preferably by the oral administration of potassium although the drug may be given intravenously if caution is observed. Since patients with failure handle potassium poorly, in terms of both storage and excretion, the possible danger in employing the intravenous route is potassium intoxication. Another serious difficulty that accompanies potassium depletion is increased sensitivity to the toxic properties of digitalis; serious arrhythmias are common.

Chronic congestive heart failure is often associated with collections of fluid in the pleural cavity, and this possibility should always be suspected in the dyspneic individual. When a pleural effusion is present the removal of 500 to 1000 cc of fluid from a pleural space will materially improve the patient's comfort and breathing ability. Although diuretics are useful in the management of ascites they are inadequate when used alone for the management of a large pleural effusion.

It is unwise to use potent hypotensive agents in the elderly patient with arteriosclerotic narrowing of the cerebral vessels. A marked reduction in blood pressure will decrease the cerebral blood flow and may cause deleterious central effects. If hypertension seems to be contributing to the congestive heart failure milder hypotensive agents such as the Rauwolfia alkaloid derivatives may be utilized.

As Blumgart and his co-workers (1955) have emphasized the thyroidectomy or inhibition of thyroid function with radioactive iodine reduces the body's metabolic rate and may improve refractory chronic heart failure of long standing. The inhibition of thyroid

function is especially rewarding in patients with hyperthyroidism which may have been previously unsuspected

Experience has proved that most mild to moderate congestive heart failure can be adequately controlled with rigid sodium restriction, restricted physical activity, adequate digitalization and the judicious administration of diuretics. Only in very severe cases will more drastic measures have to be attempted. Management of the elderly patient with congestive failure, however, requires certain special considerations: (1) Wide spread coronary artery disease and fibrotic areas resulting from previous coronary occlusions functionally impair the heart action and may thwart therapeutic efforts. (2) Electrolyte disturbances and hypoproteinemia secondary to chronic renal or hepatic involvement are more common in aged patients. (3) Elderly patients with chronic congestive failure have a decreased cerebral flow and often cerebral hypoxia, sometimes resulting in bizarre, irrational behavior necessitating special management and diplomatic handling by the physician. Consideration of these aspects of management is essential.

### Cardiac Arrhythmias

In the elderly patient congestive heart failure is commonly precipitated or aggravated by cardiac arrhythmia. Certain basic principles concerning the management of arrhythmias in this age group should be emphasized. Aside from extrasystoles, atrial fibrillation is the most common problem. Conversion of this irregularity to a sinus rhythm is desirable and can be achieved in 55 to 70 per cent of the patients (Sawyer *et al.* 1958) by the administration of quinidine. Continuous quinidine maintenance therapy is necessary following conversion. Despite this, some patients will revert to atrial fibrillation. In such cases, quinidine should be discontinued.

Contrary to the advice of many, we have always digitalized the patient with congestive failure, chronic or impending, before attempting to alter his atrial fibrillation. No adverse results have been detected from the simultaneous administration of digitals and quinidine.

The patient with atrial flutter should be fully digitalized. If atrial fibrillation occurs after digitalization, the drug should be discontinued and often conversion to sinus rhythm will occur. If

flutter persists, quinidine should be given to the limit of tolerance while the patient is still fully digitalized at times, neither measure is effective in converting atrial flutter. In such instances one should attempt to keep the individual fully digitalized in order to control the ventricular rate.

Paroxysmal atrial tachycardia is usually not associated with organic heart disease and the majority of older patients with this type of arrhythmia will give a history of such episodes dating back a number of years. The diagnosis should be confirmed electrocardiographically. Among the measures that are effective in terminating this irregularity are unilateral carotid massage or ocular compression, sedation, rapid digitalization, quinidine, Prostigmin and Mecholyl.

Nodal tachycardia is rare and is usually associated with significant organic disease. It should be managed by measures similar to those used for paroxysmal atrial tachycardia but it is more difficult to revert.

Ventricular tachycardia is most commonly associated with arteriosclerotic heart disease. Unless this arrhythmia is identified early and treated promptly, death usually ensues. Both Pronestyl and quinidine are effective agents. Digitalis glycosides are definitely contraindicated in patients with this irregularity since they are believed to increase ventricular irritability.

Elderly patients often have a slow sinus rhythm even in the presence of congestive failure. If complete or partial heart block is present, digitalis still may be used when needed; however, when a conduction disturbance develops in a person who has been receiving digitalis, one must suspect overdigitalization. In the patient with a conduction disturbance, the administration of quinidine is hazardous.

## REFERENCES

1. ABRAMS, F. H. Jr. *et al*. Dietary control of serum lipids in relation to atherosclerosis. *JAMA* 164:1905, 1957.
2. ANDERSON, W. A. D. *Pathology* (ed. 3). St. Louis: C. V. Mosby Company, 1957.
3. APPLE, S. B. and KOSSMANN, C. E. Rheumatic heart disease in patients over 60 years of age. *JAMA* 146:1474, 1951.
4. BUCKMAN, H. Studies on pericarditis nodosa with special reference to ca-

- diac and renal involvement and possible aetiological factors *Acta med scandinav* 151 441 1956
- 5 BECK C S and BROFMAN B L The surgical management of coronary artery disease background rationale clinical experiences *Ann Int Med* 45 975 1956
  - 6 BLUMGART H L FREEDBERG A S and KURLAND G S Radioactive iodine treatment of angina pectoris and congestive heart failure *Circulation* 16 110 1957
  - 7 BLUMGART H L FREEDBERG A S and KURLAND G S Treatment of incapacitated euthyroid cardiac patients with radioactive iodine *JAMA* 157 1 1955
  - 8 CHAPMAN E M in Cases from the medical grand rounds Massachusetts General Hospital *Am Pract & Digest Treat* 3 752 1952
  - 9 FFFLER D B et al Grand rounds key questions in coronary disease Upjohn Company, 1957
  - 10 EPSTEIN F H BOAS F P and SIMPSON R The epidemiology of atherosclerosis among a random sample of clothing workers of different ethnic origins in New York City 1 Prevalence of atherosclerosis and some associated characteristics *J Chronic Diseases* 5 300 1957
  - 11 FREEDBERG C A *Diseases of the Heart* (ed 2) Philadelphia and London W B Saunders Company 1956
  - 12 FURMAN R H Hormones diet and atherosclerosis *Am Pract & Digest Treat* 8 741 1957
  - 13 GLECKLER W J Diagnostic aspects of subacute bacterial endocarditis in the elderly *AMA Arch Int Med* 102 761 1958
  - 14 GRIFONE J W and KITCHELL J R Active rheumatic heart disease in patients over 60 *JAMA* 154 1341 1954
  - 15 HARTIGAN J D and FITZPATRICK J E Radioactive iodine ( $I^{131}$ ) in refractory heart disease *Nebraska M J* 42 128 1957
  - 16 KARSNER H T and KOLETSKY S *Calcific Disease of the Aortic Valve* Philadelphia J B Lippincott Company 1947
  - 17 KEYS A The diet and the development of coronary heart disease *J Chronic Diseases* 4 364 1956
  - 18 KEYS A et al Studies on serum cholesterol and other characteristics of clinically healthy men in Naples *AMA Arch Int Med* 93 328 1954
  - 19 LEE K T and THOMAS W A Myocardial infarction changing sex ratio and other factors *AMA Arch Int Med* 97 421 1956a
  - 20 LEE K T and THOMAS W A Relationship of body weight to acute myocardial infarction *Am Heart J* 52 581 1956b
  - 21 LEVINE S A and LOWE B "Armchair" treatment of acute coronary thrombosis *JAMA* 148 1065 1952
  - 22 MACDONALD R P SIMPSON J R and NOSSAL E Serum lactic dehydrogenase a diagnostic aid in myocardial infarction *JAMA* 163 35 1957
  - 23 MANCHESTER B The prevention of myocardial infarction *AMA Arch Int Med* 100 959 1957



- 24 MASTER A M, DACK S, and JAFFE, H L Age, sex and hypertension in myocardial infarction due to coronary occlusion *Arch Int Med* 68:767 1939
- 25 MASTER A M, FIELD L E, and DONOSO E Coronary artery disease and the two step exercise test *New York J Med* 57:1051 1957
- 26 MOZEN H E The treatment of coronary artery disease by surgical operation *Surgery* 42:394 1957
- 27 OSTROW B H, TICKTIN H E, and EVANS J M The transaminase test in myocardial infarction *M Ann District of Columbia* 26:8 1957
- 28 PAGE I H, STARR F J, CONCORAN A C, POLLACK H, and WILKINSON C F, JR Atherosclerosis and the fat content of the diet *Circulation* 16:163 1957
- 29 PARSONS W B, JR and FLINN J H Reduction in elevated blood cholesterol levels by large doses of nicotinic acid *JAMA* 165:234 1957
- 30 RICHARDS D W, BLAND E F, and WHITE P D A completed twenty five year follow up study of 200 patients with myocardial infarction *J Chronic Diseases* 4:415 1956
- 31 SAWYER C G, *et al* Atrial fibrillation: its etiology, treatment and association with embolization *South M J* 51:84 1958
- 32 SHAPIRO W, ESTES E H, JR and HILDEBRMAN H L The effects of corn oil on serum lipids in normal active subjects *Am J Med* 21:898 1957
- 33 THOMAS W A Fatal acute myocardial infarction: sex, race, diabetes and other factors *Nutrition Rev* 15:97 1957

## CHAPTER 15

# Diseases of the Blood Vessels

HAROLD D GREEN

The principal diseases of the arteries are vasospastic conditions (Raynaud's phenomenon) obliterative diseases (thromboangitis obliterans and atherosclerosis) embolic phenomena and arteritis. The principal diseases associated with the veins are varicosities, thrombophlebitis and stasis ulceration and pigmentation.

## DISEASES OF THE ARTERIES

### Vasospastic Diseases

Vasospastic diseases are much more common in the period between adolescence and middle age and are almost never seen as primary phenomena in the aged. Raynaud's phenomenon, however, may accompany the obliterative diseases of the aged.

#### Diagnosis

**SYMPTOMS** Symptoms suggestive of arterial vasospasm are attacks of coldness, particularly in the toes and fingers, and associated aching referred to the distal portions of the extremities. Blanching of digits, most often those on the ulnar side—may occur with or without associated coldness. Cyanosis may be prominent and may precede or follow blanching. These symptoms usually occur upon sudden exposure to cold and usually are relieved promptly when the patient returns to a warmer environment. The symptoms may disappear entirely in the summer.

**SIGNS** Physical examination usually does not reveal much of interest unless one happens to see the patient during an attack.

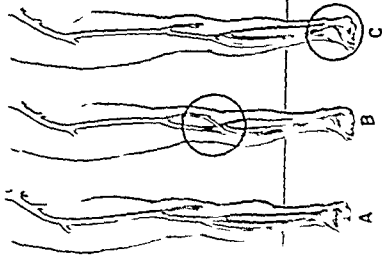
- 24 MASTER A M, DACK S and JAFFE H L Age sex and hypertension in myocardial infarction due to coronary occlusion *Arch Int Med* 68:767 1939
- 25 MASTER A M, FIELD L E and DONOSO E Coronary artery disease and the two step exercise test *New York J Med* 57:1031 1957
- 26 MOZEN H E The treatment of coronary artery disease by surgical operation *Surgery* 42:394 1957
- 27 OSTROW B H, TICKTIN H E and EVANS J M The transaminase test in myocardial infarction *M Ann District of Columbia* 26:9 1957
- 28 PAGE I H, STARE F J, CORCORAN A C, POLLACK H and WILKINSON C F JR *Atherosclerosis and the fat content of the diet* *Circulation* 16:163 1957
- 29 PARSONS W B JR and FLINN J H Reduction in elevated blood cholesterol levels by large doses of nicotinic acid *JAMA* 165:251 1957
- 30 RICHARDS D W, BLAND E F and WHITE P D A completed twenty five year follow up study of 200 patients with myocardial infarction *J Chronic Diseases* 4:415 1956
- 31 SAWYER C G *et al* Atrial fibrillation: its etiology, treatment and association with embolization *South M J* 51:81 1955
- 32 SHAPIRO W, ESTES E H JR and HILDERMAN H L The effects of corn oil on serum lipids in normal active subjects *Am J Med* 23:898 1957
- 33 THOMAS W A Fatal acute myocardial infarction: sex, race, diabetes and other factors *Nutrition Rev* 15:97 1957

FIG. 15 (Physiologic effects of arterial disease. (Left) Sites of segmental occlusions A Normal B In popliteal artery C In distal tibial artery

(Center) Walking time on a treadmill A Patients with normal circulation have no claudication B Patients with segmental occlusions of the popliteal artery usually have insufficient blood supply to the gastrocnemius muscle and therefore have intermittent claudication in the calf after walking one to three minutes C Patients with distal occlusion may have adequate circulation to the calf muscles and therefore have no claudication

(Right upper) Temperatures of toes before and after the administration of 120 cc (4 ounces) of alcohol by mouth A Normal response There is cooling of the toes (vasoconstriction with reduced blood flow) during the preliminary period of exposure to cool rapidly circulating air warming of the toes (vasodilatation with marked increase in blood flow) occurs after the administration of alcohol and warming of the toes B The response of patients with proximal segmental occlusions after the development of adequate collateral circulation is the same as the response of patients with normal circulation C In patients with distal arterial occlusions the absence of a vasodilator response indicates inadequate blood flow (This pattern is also seen in patients with proximal segmental occlusions immediately after arterial obstruction occurs)

(Right lower) Arterial pressure (and pulsations) in the dorsalis pedis artery A In the normal person the artery pulsates (and pulsations) in the dorsalis pedis artery (80 mm of mercury) in the horizontal position B After the development of collateral circulation about the site of a proximal occlusion pulsations may be absent (damped out) but the mean pressure may be adequate (70 mm of mercury) C In the patient with a distal occlusion (and in patients with recent proximal occlusions) pulsations are absent and the mean pressure is too low (30 mm of mercury) to supply adequate blood to the foot



Controlled, inclined walking exercise  
A and C ~ 5 minutes,  
B ~ 1 minute

Relative Temperature Curves



Comparison of Pulse Pressures  
(Dorsal Pedis Artery)

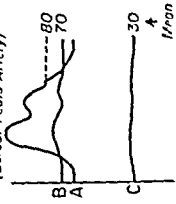


FIG. 13-1 Physiologic effects of arterial disease (*Left*) Sites of segmental occlusions

A None B In popliteal artery C In distal tibial artery  
 (Center) Walking time on a treadmill A Patients with normal circulation have no claudication B Patients with segmental occlusions of the popliteal artery usually have insufficient blood supply to the gastrocnemius muscle and therefore have intermittent claudication in the calf after walking one to three minutes C Patients with distal occlusions may have adequate circulation to the calf muscles and therefore have no claudication

(*Right upper*) Temperatures of toes before and after the administration of 120 cc (4 ounces) of alcohol by mouth A Normal response There is cooling of the toes (as occlusion with reduced blood flow) during the preliminary period of exposure to cool rapidly circulating air warming of the toes (as isolation with warming of the torso B The response of patients with proximal segmental occlusions after the development of adequate collateral circulation is the same as the response of patients with normal circulation C In patients with distal arterial occlusions the absence of a vasodilator response indicates inadequate blood flow (This pattern is also seen in patients with proximal segmental occlusions immediately after arterial obstruction occurs) A In the normal person the artery pulsates and has an adequate mean pressure (80 mm of mercury) in the horizontal position B After the development of collateral circulation about the site of a proximal occlusion pulsations may be absent (damped out) but the mean pressure may be adequate (70 mm of mercury) C In the patient with a distal occlusion (and in patients with recent proximal occlusions) pulsations are absent and the mean pressure is too low (30 mm of mercury) to supply adequate blood to the foot



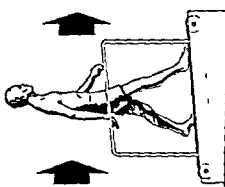
Normal



Occlusion of muscular circulation, collaterals supply skin



Occlusion of cutaneous circulation

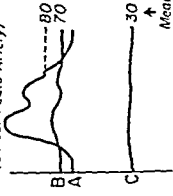


Controlled, inclined walking exercise  
A and C - 5 minutes,  
B - 1 minute

# Relative Temperature Curves



## Comparison of Pulse Pressures (Dorsal Pedis Artery)



obtain a normal rise (Fig 15 1A) in patients whose peripheral pulses are present is strongly suggestive of a severe degree of vasospasm

The vasospastic conditions are not associated with any characteristic changes in either the cellular elements or the chemical components of the blood

### Treatment

Successful treatment of the vasospastic conditions depends primarily upon avoiding exposure to cold. The patient should be cautioned to avoid contact with cold objects and should be instructed to dress more warmly than is comfortable when he goes outdoors in cold weather, wearing warm loose fitting gloves heavy socks under loose fitting shoes and galoshes over his shoes on cold damp days whenever possible he should have his car warm before entering it for a prolonged trip

Drugs are moderately helpful. Those that appear to be most effective include Ildar which can be given in doses of 25 to 50 (occasionally 75) mg before meals and at bedtime. Priscoline which can be given on the same schedule in doses of 25 to 50 mg and Arlidin which can be given four times a day in doses of 6 to 12 mg. When none of these drugs alone is effective a combination of Ildar (25 to 50 mg) before meals and Arlidin (6 to 12 mg) after meals may sometimes relieve the patient's symptoms.

Any vasodilator drug may induce postural hypotension a condition particularly undesirable in elderly patients because of the possibility of a coronary or cerebral thrombosis. The patient should always be instructed to begin with the minimal dose increasing it gradually as necessary over a period of several days to lie down at the slightest sign of weakness dizziness or nausea and if any of these symptoms occur to reduce the subsequent doses. He should be cautioned never to increase the dose after such symptoms have appeared even though the tolerated dosage is only partially effective in relieving his vasospastic phenomena.

In about 2 per cent of patients Ildar induces a drug reaction characterized by chills aching fever and gastrointestinal distress. Characteristically this develops after the patient has been taking the drug for one to two weeks. The patient should be warned of this possibility and should be told to discontinue the drug promptly.



Unless obliterative disease is present simultaneously, the pulses are present and adequate, because of decreased amplitude, however, they may be somewhat difficult to feel during an attack. Impaired nail growth or superficial ulcerations are sometimes present, but are more characteristic of obliterative disease. Mild scleroderma—tightness of the skin, loss of the normal ridges, and tapering of the digits—may be present, but is rare in the aged.

In the dependent position the fingers and toes usually retain their normal pink color, though they may become cyanotic. When the limbs are elevated, the color may vary from moderately blinched to pale pink, the complete whiteness characteristic of obliterative disease is almost never seen except during an attack. When the extremities are returned to heart level, 15 seconds may elapse before color begins to appear in the upper extremity and up to 30 seconds before it returns to the lower extremity only rarely, however, is a longer time required. In the normal person return of color to the upper extremity begins within 5 seconds and is complete within 10 seconds, in the lower extremity it begins within 10 seconds and is complete within 15 seconds.

**SPECIAL TESTS** A better estimate of the presence and severity of vasospasm may be obtained from direct measurement of the circulation in the laboratory, either by plethysmography or by registration of skin temperatures. The latter test can be carried out by placing the patient in a room maintained at a constant temperature of about 20° C (68° F) with a fairly rapid rate of air circulation. In most persons, exposure to this environment will induce a certain amount of vasospasm and an accompanying drop in skin temperature. The torso is then covered with blankets and warmed with electric pads or some other form of heat. In most normal individuals warming of the torso will induce reflex relaxation of the vasospasm in the upper extremities and may relax the vasospasm in the lower extremities. If the temperature in the fingers and toes does not rise promptly to 30° C (86° F) or above, it is advisable to give some vasodilator. Sixty cubic centimeters (2 ounces) of 100 proof whisky repeated in 30 minutes is effective and causes fewer side effects, such as postural hypotension than most other drugs. In all persons with normal circulation the administration of whisky causes a prompt rise in the temperatures of the fingers, and usually in the temperatures of the toes. Failure to

obtain a normal rise (Fig 15 1A) in patients whose peripheral pulses are present is strongly suggestive of a severe degree of vasospasm

The vasospastic conditions are not associated with any characteristic changes in either the cellular elements or the chemical components of the blood

### Treatment

Successful treatment of the vasospastic conditions depends primarily upon avoiding exposure to cold. The patient should be cautioned to avoid contact with cold objects and should be instructed to dress more warmly than is comfortable when he goes outdoors in cold weather wearing warm loose fitting gloves heavy socks under loose fitting shoes and galoshes over his shoes on cold damp days whenever possible he should have his car warm before entering it for a prolonged trip

Drugs are moderately helpful. Those that appear to be most effective include Ildar which can be given in doses of 25 to 50 (occasionally 75) mg before meals and at bedtime, Priscoline which can be given on the same schedule in doses of 25 to 50 mg and Arlidin which can be given four times a day in doses of 6 to 12 mg. When none of these drugs alone is effective a combination of Ildar (25 to 50 mg) before meals and Arlidin (6 to 12 mg) after meals may sometimes relieve the patient's symptoms.

Any vasodilator drug may induce postural hypotension a condition particularly undesirable in elderly patients because of the possibility of a coronary or cerebral thrombosis. The patient should always be instructed to begin with the minimal dose increasing it gradually as necessary over a period of several days to lie down at the slightest sign of weakness dizziness or nausea and if any of these symptoms occur to reduce the subsequent doses. He should be cautioned never to increase the dose after such symptoms have appeared even though the tolerated dosage is only partially effective in relieving his vasospastic phenomena.

In about 2 per cent of patients Ildar induces a drug reaction characterized by chills aching fever and gastrointestinal distress. Characteristically this develops after the patient has been taking the drug for one to two weeks. The patient should be warned of this possibility and should be told to discontinue the drug promptly

if such an attack occurs. If the physician wishes to be certain that such an attack was due to drug sensitivity, he may instruct the patient to take one tablet and wait 24 hours. If the patient has acquired a sensitivity to the drug, a mild repetition of the attack will always occur during this period.

Ganglionic blocking drugs have not proved to be very effective. In extremely severe vasospastic conditions that cannot be relieved by any of the vasodilator drugs, it may occasionally be necessary to resort to sympathectomy. Amputation is almost never necessary.

### **Obliterative Disease and Embolic Phenomena**

The two principal causes of obliterative disease are thromboangitis obliterans (Buerger's disease) and atherosclerosis. Thromboangitis obliterans is an inflammatory condition involving all coats of the arteries in both upper and lower extremities, and sometimes extending to the accompanying veins and nerves. It may begin in adolescence, and the peak incidence occurs in young adults. It is almost never seen as a primary disease in persons over 50, although a patient with thromboangitis obliterans may live into the geriatric age group. The cause is unknown, although there is a definite relationship to smoking; at least 99 per cent of patients with thromboangitis obliterans are smokers. The condition is almost entirely limited to the male.

Atherosclerosis, one of the forms of arteriosclerosis, is characterized by lipid deposits in the intima of the arteries. The lipid may occur anywhere in the aorta or its distributing arteries. It is much more common in the region of the arch and in the region below the mesenteric arteries than in the mid portion of the aorta. The disease usually produces symptoms involving the upper extremities, and its manifestations are usually limited to the cerebral and coronary arteries and to the arteries of the lower extremities.

Instances of atherosclerosis have been reported in childhood, but usually it does not begin to cause symptoms until the age of 40; the peak incidence is reached between 60 and 80. Thus, in contrast to thromboangitis obliterans, it is a geriatric disease. Atherosclerosis is rare in nonhypertensive women prior to the menopause. Following the menopause, the incidence becomes equal in the two sexes. Although the lipid deposits tend to narrow the lumen, symptoms

are usually produced by the tendency for the intima to become roughened allowing a superimposed thrombosis that completely occludes the artery. The thrombus is usually segmental in type and extends over only a few centimeters of the vessel. The mechanism producing obstruction is identical in atherosclerosis and thromboangitis obliterans. In both conditions the vascular insufficiency is due to occlusion of the lumen by thrombosis. In both conditions improvement normally depends solely upon the development of collateral circulation about the site of the segmental occlusion.

In patients with diabetes atherosclerosis tends to occur some 10 to 20 years earlier and some 10 to 20 times more frequently than in nondiabetic individuals. Although the atherosclerotic process may occur at any point it has been my impression that in the presence of diabetes the disease is more likely to involve the smaller more distal arteries of the feet so that diabetic patients are more likely to have cutaneous manifestations rather than claudication.

No clear cut relationship between smoking and the development of atherosclerosis has been demonstrated. Atherosclerotic complications appear to be more frequent in patients whose parents had atherosclerotic disease and in the "well nourished" patient whose dietary intake is heavy in fats. Hypertension appears to be associated with a higher incidence of cerebral and coronary atherosclerosis; the association of hypertension with atherosclerosis in the lower extremities is less clear cut. In most patients with atherosclerosis the serum cholesterol is elevated to 300 mg per 100 cc or above.

Cases have been reported in which a segmental occlusion developed in the tibial or popliteal artery following a faulty step or sitting for a prolonged period with the knee hyperextended. Segmental occlusion of the brachial artery has been noted in individuals who have used a crutch. Such findings suggest that trauma may be a contributing factor in the development of the atherosclerotic lesion.

Embolic occlusion of an artery most commonly accompanies atrial fibrillation. The embolus tends to lodge at a bifurcation of the vessel where the channel suddenly becomes narrowed. In some cases where embolic occlusions have occurred in the upper extremity it has been thought that a thrombus arising at a higher point in the artery—for instance at the site of a cervical rib—may

have become dislodged, resulting in an embolus at the site of the profunda branch of the brachial artery.

### Diagnosis

**SYMPTOMS** The symptoms produced by thromboangitis obliterans, atherosclerosis, and embolic phenomena are similar. In all these conditions, the onset of symptoms is often sudden, corresponding to the occlusion of a cerebral artery (stroke) or of a coronary artery (heart attack). Obstruction occurring at the site of the lower aorta or common iliac arteries is usually accompanied by aching referred to the region of the pelvic girdle, to the greater trochanters, and to the upper thighs. Symptoms are brought on by stooping, lifting, or walking and particularly by walking upstairs or uphill. Initially there may be mild claudication referred to the calf, or symptoms of coldness and blanching in the foot, but these usually disappear rapidly as a result of the fairly prompt development of collateral circulation about the site of the obstruction. Inability to have an erection often accompanies lower aortic thrombosis.

Segmental occlusion involving the femoral artery system most commonly occurs in the region of the adductor canal or the popliteal space. When the occlusion occurs suddenly, it may induce severe pain, aching, coldness, and blanching referred to the foot, ankle, and lower leg; the aching in the foot, lower leg, and calf may be aggravated by walking. The symptoms referable to the foot may gradually disappear, leaving as the only residual symptom the persistence of calf pain (intermittent claudication) on walking; even this symptom may lessen with time.

Occlusions limited to the lower portions of the anterior or posterior tibial arteries, or of both, may give rise to blanching, coldness, and aching in the foot and toes, with aggravation of the pain referred to the region of the heads of the metatarsals on prolonged standing or squatting. Depending on his powers of observation, the patient may or may not notice redness of the foot when it is dependent. With occlusions limited to this area, calf pain on walking or pain referred to the hips and thighs is usually absent. Ulceration may be seen with occlusions higher in the arterial tree, but is usually present only with occlusions involving the distal portions of the tibial arteries.

Segmental occlusions in the upper arm have been limited usually to the brachial artery at the site of the profunda. They are usually accompanied by marked coldness, blanching and aching referred to the whole arm but particularly to the hand. The aching in the hand and forearm is aggravated when the patient attempts to use the extremity.

It has been stated that nocturnal cramps and pain in the thighs or calves are rarely signs of vascular disease. However, such symptoms often precede or even accompany occlusive vascular disease and are most likely to occur in patients with this condition after prolonged and excessive use of the extremities during the daytime. When such pain is accompanied by an actual prolonged contraction or cramp in the muscle it is more suggestive of hyperirritability of motor nerves in the cord than of vascular disease.

**SIGNS** In the presence of segmental occlusion involving the lower aorta all pulses are absent in both extremities. When the common iliac artery alone is involved all pulses in that extremity are absent but the pulses in the opposite leg are usually normal. The presence of a femoral pulse in an extremity with absent popliteal, dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulsations usually signifies a segmental occlusion involving the femoral artery in the adductor canal or popliteal space (Fig 15-1B). Correspondingly, the presence of femoral and popliteal pulses with absence of pulsations in the dorsalis pedis or posterior tibial arteries or in both indicates segmental occlusions involving the more distal arteries in the lower leg (Fig 15-1C).

Adequacy of the circulation to the feet can best be estimated from the color changes. The patient should first be asked to sit with the feet dangling over the edge of the examining table for at least 3 minutes. If the toes become an unusually deep red the patient has dependent rubor. This sign invariably signifies a prolonged ischemia of the skin of the foot owing either to a recent proximal segmental occlusion or to a recent or previous distal segmental occlusion involving the tibial arteries.

The subject should next be examined lying down with the feet elevated as high as possible for 30 seconds. During part of this time the patient should be instructed to move his toes. In patients with adequate circulation the feet may become pale pink while they are elevated but rarely assume the lemon white color characteristic of

have become dislodged, resulting in an embolus at the site of the profunda branch of the brachial artery

### Diagnosis

**SYMPTOMS** The symptoms produced by thromboangitis obliterans, atherosclerosis, and embolic phenomena are similar. In all these conditions, the onset of symptoms is often sudden corresponding to the occlusion of a cerebral artery (stroke) or of a coronary artery (heart attack). Obstruction occurring at the site of the lower aorta or common iliac arteries is usually accompanied by aching referred to the region of the pelvic girdle, to the greater trochanters and to the upper thighs. Symptoms are brought on by stooping, lifting or walking and particularly by walking upstairs or uphill. Initially there may be mild claudication referred to the calf, or symptoms of coldness and blanching in the foot, but these usually disappear rapidly as a result of the fairly prompt development of collateral circulation about the site of the obstruction. Inability to have an erection often accompanies lower aortic thrombosis.

Segmental occlusion involving the femoral artery system most commonly occurs in the region of the adductor canal or the popliteal space. When the occlusion occurs suddenly it may induce severe pain, aching, coldness and blanching referred to the foot, ankle and lower leg; the aching in the foot, lower leg and calf may be aggravated by walking. The symptoms referable to the foot may gradually disappear leaving as the only residual symptom the persistence of calf pain (intermittent claudication) on walking; even this symptom may lessen with time.

Occlusions limited to the lower portions of the anterior or posterior tibial arteries or of both may give rise to blanching, coldness and aching in the foot and toes with aggravation of the pain referred to the region of the heads of the metatarsals on prolonged standing or squatting. Depending on his powers of observation the patient may or may not notice redness of the foot when it is dependent. With occlusions limited to this area calf pain on walking or pain referred to the hips and thighs is usually absent. Ulceration may be seen with occlusions higher in the arterial tree but is usually present only with occlusions involving the distal portions of the tibial arteries.

Segmental occlusions in the upper arm have been limited usually to the brachial artery at the site of the profunda. They are usually accompanied by marked coldness, blanching and aching referred to the whole arm but particularly to the hand. The aching in the hand and forearm is aggravated when the patient attempts to use the extremity.

It has been stated that nocturnal cramps and pain in the thighs or calves are rarely signs of vascular disease. However, such symptoms often precede or even accompany occlusive vascular disease and are most likely to occur in patients with this condition after prolonged and excessive use of the extremities during the daytime. When such pain is accompanied by an actual prolonged contraction or cramp in the muscle, it is more suggestive of hyperirritability of motor nerves in the cord than of vascular disease.

**Signs.** In the presence of segmental occlusion involving the lower aorta, all pulses are absent in both extremities. When the common iliac artery alone is involved, all pulses in that extremity are absent but the pulses in the opposite leg are usually normal. The presence of a femoral pulse in an extremity with absent popliteal, dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulsations usually signifies a segmental occlusion involving the femoral artery in the adductor canal or popliteal space (Fig 15-1B). Correspondingly, the presence of femoral and popliteal pulses with absence of pulsations in the dorsalis pedis or posterior tibial arteries or in both indicates segmental occlusions involving the more distal arteries in the lower leg (Fig 15-1C).

Adequacy of the circulation to the feet can best be estimated from the color changes. The patient should first be asked to sit with the feet dangling over the edge of the examining table for at least 3 minutes. If the toes become an unusually deep red, the patient has dependent rubor. This sign invariably signifies a prolonged ischemia of the skin of the foot, owing either to a recent proximal segmental occlusion or to a recent or previous distal segmental occlusion involving the tibial arteries.

The subject should next be examined lying down with the feet elevated as high as possible for 30 seconds. During part of this time the patient should be instructed to move his toes. In patients with adequate circulation the feet may become pale pink while they are elevated, but rarely assume the lemon white color characteristic of



severe obliterative disease. If the foot has shown marked dependent rubor, there is likely to be considerable ecchymosis represented by an orange pink color. This pigmentation is most readily observed while the foot is elevated and does not disappear upon pressure.

At the end of 30 seconds the feet are brought down to heart level and observed for return of color. Normally, as was indicated in the section on vasospastic diseases, color should begin to return in less than 10 seconds and be complete in 15 seconds. Filling of the veins should be noted in 15 to 30 seconds. In the presence of a recent segmental occlusion involving any portion of the femoral arterial tree 2 to 4 minutes will usually elapse before color begins to return. In patients with more proximal segmental occlusions the time required for return of color may be progressively shortened as collateral circulation develops. Prolonged delay in the return of color is most often seen with distal segmental occlusions involving the tibial arteries.

The degree of intermittent claudication can be estimated to some extent from the patient's history. In addition, however, it is wise to use some objective measure such as having the patient walk in the hospital or in the examining office, preferably upstairs. I use a treadmill operated at about a 6 per cent slope and adjusted to require walking at a fairly rapid gait (approximately 2.2 miles per hour). At this rate the normal individual can walk more than 5 minutes without difficulty (Fig. 15 1A). Patients with occlusions at or above the popliteal space may have severe discomfort within one minute (Fig. 15 1B). As the collateral circulation to the calf muscles improves, such patients may be able to increase their walking time progressively, though it rarely exceeds three minutes.

**SPECIAL TESTS** Except for a moderate elevation of the serum cholesterol in the presence of atherosclerosis and elevation of blood sugar in patients with diabetes, there are no characteristic changes in the chemical composition or cellular elements of the blood.

An objective measure of the circulation to the feet may be made by means of temperature studies such as those described in the section on vasospastic diseases. In the presence of severe obliterative disease the temperatures of the toes drop with unusual rapidity during the initial period of cooling and actually approach room temperature. They fail to show any rise in temperatures following

the administration of a vasodilator substance and do not rise to any significant degree following direct blockade of the lumbar sympathetic nerve with procaine (Novocain). When the toe temperatures of a subject exposed to a room temperature of  $20^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $68^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) remains around  $21$  to  $22^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $70$  to  $72^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) following the administration of adequate vasodilators one may assume that the patient has a severe obliterative condition with a minimal blood supply to the toes (Fig 15-1C). During the months following the segmental occlusion the toe temperatures often rise to  $24^{\circ}$  to  $27^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $75^{\circ}$  to  $79^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) indicating the development of moderate collateral circulation to the foot. A rise in the toe temperatures during vasodilatation to  $31^{\circ}$  to  $33^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $88^{\circ}$  to  $91.5^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) indicates either the presence of a completely normal circulation to the foot or the development of a completely adequate collateral circulation. Persistent intermittent claudication in the calf muscles is not uncommon however even after the collateral circulation has developed to a point where the skin temperature of the toes shows a normal response and physical examination of the feet reveals no dependent rubor or increased time for return of color when the feet are lowered to heart level after a period of elevation (Fig 15-1B).

### Therapy

The therapy of the occlusive diseases particularly during the first few months following the occlusion consists primarily in taking great care to protect the skin of the feet from any trauma that might lead to ulceration since it is highly probable that an ulcer developing at this time would not heal. When the occlusion is in a more proximal artery this danger becomes lessened as collateral circulation develops. With the more distal occlusions however this danger persists for prolonged periods of time.

The patient should be instructed to wear loose comfortable shoes so adjusted that they do not rub. The feet should be washed frequently and dried by patting rather than rubbing. Fungus infections between the toes should be treated promptly. All obstructions that might be struck by the feet in walking about the house should be removed and the patient should be unusually careful in walking about unfamiliar sites so as to avoid falling or striking his foot. A foot board should be used in bed to hold the covers up off the toes.

The patient should be cautioned against lying for a long time in any one position, if he finds it difficult to avoid doing so, a U shaped pad of rubber 2 inches thick should be used to support the weight of the foot on the Achilles tendon. The purpose of this is to prevent prolonged contact of the posterolateral aspect of the heel with the bed, since this often leads to decubitus ulcerations in such patients.

Patients with occlusive disease limited to the tibial arteries frequently note that the pain in the foot that occurs at rest tends to be aggravated at night, when the foot is elevated to heart level. Such patients may obtain relief by letting the foot hang over the edge of the bed and rest on a padded stool, or by elevating the head of the bed 4 to 6 inches. Unfortunately, such procedures frequently lead to the development of moderate edema in the involved foot.

Care should be taken to avoid exposure of the feet to undue cold since any degree of reflex vasoconstriction is likely to aggravate the condition leading to increased pain and furthering the tendency to ulceration. Hot soaks and compresses, on the other hand should also be avoided, since they tend to create a relative ischemia by increasing tissue metabolism more than the blood flow. A neutral temperature is preferable.

The patient should be given one of the vasodilator drugs mentioned in the section on vasospastic conditions even though it may appear initially to be accomplishing no good. The prolonged use of vasodilators appears to stimulate more rapid development of collateral circulation, particularly in the more proximal segmental occlusions. As in the vasospastic conditions however, such drugs must be given with caution in order to avoid postural hypotension, particularly in the aged.

If the underlying condition is diagnosed as thromboangitis obliterans smoking should be avoided at all costs. If atherosclerosis is the causative factor, however—and this is more likely if the condition has developed after the age of 50—we are less inclined to urge the patient to give up smoking unless temperature studies demonstrate that the individual has a vasospastic response to the use of tobacco.

The prolonged use of anticoagulants such as heparin or warfarin (Coumadin) may prove useful particularly during the first month or two following an occlusion. We attempt to keep the prothrombin

time at 25 seconds plus or minus 5 seconds with a control of 11 to 13 seconds. This objective can usually be accomplished by giving the warfarin orally on the following schedule: first day 50 mg., second day 30 mg., third day 20 mg., thereafter 5 to 15 mg. per day. Elevation of the prothrombin time above 35 seconds is frequently accompanied by renal hemorrhage (indicated by dark smoky urine) and hemorrhage into or about a joint.

Sympathectomy may be employed if there is any indication that a vasospastic component is present. I usually reserve this operation however for the patient who is not able to tolerate fairly large doses of vasodilator drugs. Like the vasodilator drugs, sympathectomy speeds the development of collateral circulation about the site of a segmental occlusion. I usually avoid amputation unless the pain resulting from ulceration becomes so intense that narcotics are required over a period of some weeks. In such a situation prompt amputation should be recommended in order to minimize the dangers of addiction and also because severe pain experienced over a prolonged period may tend to increase the likelihood of the phantom limb syndrome following amputation.

In the case of a sudden embolic occlusion of a vessel, embolectomy should be attempted. At the present time I seldom recommend procedures such as intumescence or the substitution of homografts or artificial arterial grafts for the obstructed portion of the vessel. In my experience such surgical attempts have frequently failed and even the successful grafts have rarely remained patent longer than one to three years. However, improvement of surgical techniques in this direction will occur and some clinics now claim a high percentage of success. Such procedures are most apt to be successful in the Leriche syndrome (idiopathic thrombosis of the terminal aorta) or in segmental occlusions of the aorta or common iliac artery. Even in the presence of these conditions I am inclined to be conservative as a result of my experience with a fairly large number of such patients who have been managed without surgery, or with sympathectomy alone. Most of these patients have been almost completely relieved of symptoms by the development of collateral circulation. The only persistent symptom has been claudication pain referred to the pelvic girdle and this is seldom very troublesome. In my experience neither proximal nor distal extension

of a lower aortic thrombosis has occurred with any significant frequency

All patients with arterial obliterative disease should be encouraged to walk as much as possible, up to the point of developing claudication pain. Such walking operates in collaboration with the vasodilator drugs and sympathectomy to stimulate the development of collateral circulation about the site of the segmental occlusion.

When diabetes is present this condition should of course be controlled as well as possible. In some cases ischemic neuritis is responsible for the persistence of paresthetic pains. Attempts to treat these with the various B vitamins, thiamine, nicotinic acid, and B<sub>12</sub> have been disappointing except for an occasional response to thiamine.

### Prognosis

The prognosis following a segmental occlusion that involves one of the larger more proximal arteries (the popliteal artery, the femoral artery in the adductor canal, the common iliac artery, or the lower aorta) is usually favorable. Almost invariably good collateral circulation develops about the proximal segmental occlusions producing progressive improvement and often abolishing most of the patient's symptoms. On the other hand, patients with occlusions involving the distal portions of the tibial arteries rarely improve although they may remain in a fairly satisfactory static condition over periods of months and even years if trauma to the feet and the consequent painful nonhealing ulcers can be avoided.

### Arteritis

Temporal or cranial arteritis, a condition seen in old age, is apparently a relatively localized and comparatively benign variant of polyarteritis nodosa. It is characterized by fever, severe headaches, swelling and tenderness of the temporal arteries, and leukocytosis. The prognosis for life is good, but permanent or temporary blindness has been a complication in a large number of the reported cases.

Cortisone or one of its modifications gives dramatic relief from symptoms although it may not prevent involvement of the retinal vessels.

## DISEASES OF THE VEINS

## Varicose Veins

When varicose veins are present without other complications the patient may complain only of dilated tortuous veins and some heaviness in the legs associated with prolonged standing. This condition is more common in women but may occur in men; in the latter it is somewhat more frequent in the left than in the right extremity.

Mild cases may be treated by the use of an elastic stocking and elevation of the feet but in more severe cases ligation and stripping of the dilated veins is probably the most satisfactory approach.

## Acute Thrombophlebitis

Acute thrombophlebitis may occur at any age and is especially frequent in elderly patients following a period of immobilization after surgery. The only symptom may be a painful area along the site of the vessel or the patient may have swelling, pain and cyanosis involving a portion of the leg or even the entire leg. Because of the swelling it may be difficult to detect the pulses and in such cases differentiation of this condition from acute arterial occlusion is not easy. However swelling rarely if ever accompanies acute arterial occlusion per se and in this condition blanching is more common than cyanosis unless there is accompanying venous disease. The acute localized areas of tenderness may be aggravated by maneuvers that stretch the affected vein. An example is *Homan's sign*, pain produced by dorsiflexion of the foot and referred to the lower portion of the gastrocnemius muscle along the lesser saphenous vein.

Localized areas of migratory thrombophlebitis may occur in the elderly although they are more frequent in younger patients. They are characterized by nodular red tender swellings circular or linear in shape that occur along the course of superficial veins. They last from a few days to a few weeks.

Acute thrombophlebitis rarely results in pulmonary embolism. In the form often designated as *phlebothrombosis* however poorly

of a lower aortic thrombosis has occurred with any significant frequency.

All patients with arterial obliterative disease should be encouraged to walk as much as possible up to the point of developing claudication pain. Such walking operates in collaboration with the vasodilator drugs and sympathectomy to stimulate the development of collateral circulation about the site of the segmental occlusion.

When diabetes is present this condition should of course be controlled as well as possible. In some cases ischemic neuritis is responsible for the persistence of paresthetic pains. Attempts to treat these with the various B vitamins, thiamine, nicotinic acid and Bi have been disappointing except for an occasional response to thiamine.

### Prognosis

The prognosis following a segmental occlusion that involves one of the larger more proximal arteries (the popliteal artery, the femoral artery in the adductor canal, the common iliac artery, or the lower aorta) is usually favorable. Almost invariably good collateral circulation develops about the proximal segmental occlusions producing progressive improvement and often abolishing most of the patient's symptoms. On the other hand patients with occlusions involving the distal portions of the tibial arteries rarely improve although they may remain in a fairly satisfactory static condition over periods of months and even years if trauma to the feet and the consequent painful nonhealing ulcers can be avoided.

### Arteritis

Temporal or cranial arteritis, a condition seen in old age, is apparently a relatively localized and comparatively benign variant of polyarteritis nodosa. It is characterized by fever, severe headaches, swelling and tenderness of the temporal arteries, and leukocytosis. The prognosis for life is good, but permanent or temporary blindness has been a complication in a large number of the reported cases.

Cortisone or one of its modifications gives dramatic relief from symptoms although it may not prevent involvement of the retinal vessels.

## DISEASES OF THE VEINS

## Varicose Veins

When varicose veins are present without other complications the patient may complain only of dilated tortuous veins and some heaviness in the legs associated with prolonged standing. This condition is more common in women but may occur in men; in the latter it is somewhat more frequent in the left than in the right extremity.

Mild cases may be treated by the use of an elastic stocking and elevation of the feet but in more severe cases ligation and stripping of the dilated veins is probably the most satisfactory approach.

## Acute Thrombophlebitis

Acute thrombophlebitis may occur at any age and is especially frequent in elderly patients following a period of immobilization after surgery. The only symptom may be a painful area along the site of the vessel or the patient may have swelling, pain and cyanosis involving a portion of the leg or even the entire leg. Because of the swelling it may be difficult to detect the pulses and in such cases differentiation of this condition from acute arterial occlusion is not easy. However swelling rarely if ever accompanies acute arterial occlusion per se and in this condition blanching is more common than cyanosis unless there is accompanying venous disease. The acute localized areas of tenderness may be aggravated by maneuvers that stretch the affected vein. An example is Homans' sign, pain produced by dorsiflexion of the foot and referred to the lower portion of the gastrocnemius muscle along the lesser saphenous vein.

Localized areas of migratory thrombophlebitis may occur in the elderly although they are more frequent in younger patients. They are characterized by nodular red tender swellings circular or linear in shape that occur along the course of superficial veins. They last from a few days to a few weeks.

Acute thrombophlebitis rarely results in pulmonary embolism. In the form often designated as phlebothrombosis however poorly



of a lower aortic thrombosis has occurred with any significant frequency

All patients with arterial obliterative disease should be encouraged to walk as much as possible, up to the point of developing claudication pain. Such walking operates in collaboration with the vasodilator drugs and sympathectomy to stimulate the development of collateral circulation about the site of the segmental occlusion.

When diabetes is present, this condition should of course be controlled as well as possible. In some cases ischemic neuritis is responsible for the persistence of paresthetic pains. Attempts to treat these with the various B vitamins, thiamine, nicotinic acid, and B<sub>12</sub> have been disappointing except for an occasional response to thiamine.

### **Prognosis**

The prognosis following a segmental occlusion that involves one of the larger more proximal arteries (the popliteal artery, the femoral artery in the adductor canal, the common iliac artery, or the lower aorta) is usually favorable. Almost invariably good collateral circulation develops about the proximal segmental occlusions producing progressive improvement and often abolishing most of the patient's symptoms. On the other hand, patients with occlusions involving the distal portions of the tibial arteries rarely improve, although they may remain in a fairly satisfactory static condition over periods of months and even years if trauma to the feet and the consequent painful, nonhealing ulcers can be avoided.

### **Arteritis**

Temporal or cranial arteritis, a condition seen in old age, is apparently a relatively localized and comparatively benign variant of polyarteritis nodosa. It is characterized by fever, severe headaches, swelling and tenderness of the temporal arteries, and leukocytosis. The prognosis for life is good, but permanent or temporary blindness has been a complication in a large number of the reported cases.

Cortisone or one of its modifications gives dramatic relief from symptoms, although it may not prevent involvement of the retinal vessels.

minimize the development of further stasis ulceration and pigmentation

### MISCELLANEOUS CONDITIONS

Occasionally a patient may be seen with a marked deep pink coloration of the skin of the toes and fingers which may be mistaken for dependent rubor. If the patient has no symptoms and if the pulses are present the condition probably represents simply erythema for which no therapy is necessary. The patient should be reassured that he has no occlusive disease.

Erythermalgia, a condition in which pain in an extremity is often accompanied by a marked increase in the pink coloration of the skin, is presumably due to or at least associated with excessive cutaneous blood flow. This condition is rarely, if ever, seen in geriatric patients.

Various paresthesias—burning, aching, and cold sensations—may be seen in patients of all ages and may be due either to peripheral neuritis or to various cord lesions. They may be suggestive of arterial or venous disease, particularly the former. Primary neural involvement should be suspected whenever the symptoms have a segmental distribution or one corresponding to that of a peripheral nerve, and particularly when they are poorly localized and are not accompanied by tenderness or by objective signs such as loss of pulses, discoloration, delayed return of color after elevation, ulceration, or claudication.

adherent thrombi form in the veins, these may become dislodged and cause a pulmonary embolus.

Most cases of acute thrombophlebitis are best treated by bed rest, with elevation of the lower extremities above the level of the hip and local applications of moist heat. Vasodilator drugs should be given, and in some cases direct lumbar blockade may be advisable. Elastic stockings or firm wrapping of the extremities should be used for a prolonged period after the acute process subsides and ambulation has begun. The itching often responds to salicylates. Anticoagulants, used as recommended in the section on obliterative diseases, are often helpful.

Stasis ulceration and pigmentation are often sequelae of thrombophlebitis. They probably begin with transudation of blood from the capillaries, caused either by reflux of blood in the dilated superficial veins or by this factor plus some obstruction resulting from thrombosis in the deeper vessels. With prolonged extravasation of blood the nourishment of the skin becomes impaired and ulceration frequently occurs. The ulceration is characteristically limited to the region of the lower extremity proximal to the malleolus. Ultimately the skin may become thick and tightly adherent to the underlying tissue and a permanent brown to black discoloration may develop.

In the treatment of stasis ulceration and pigmentation it is necessary to improve the venous return from the leg as much as possible. In the presence of acute inflammation of the skin frequently seen if there is any accompanying fungus infection of the toes surgery must be postponed until the local inflammatory condition can be cleared up. An ointment containing an antibiotic such as bacitracin may be applied to the ulcer and potassium permanganate soaks (in a solution of 1:6,000 to 1:8,000) may be used in conjunction with a pressure bandage from the toes to just below the knee. We use a 3 inch wide Kling bandage wrapped firmly about the foot, ankle and lower leg. The healing process may often be accelerated by the simultaneous use of vasodilator drugs but these should be used only when the patient can lie down with the affected leg elevated for one to two hours after the drug is administered. It is also well to have the patient sleep on a bed with the footposts elevated 4 to 6 inches.

As soon as the acute dermatitis has been alleviated any varicose veins that can be found should be ligated and stripped in order to

minimize the development of further stasis ulceration and pigmentation

### MISCELLANEOUS CONDITIONS

Occasionally a patient may be seen with a marked deep pink coloration of the skin of the toes and fingers which may be mistaken for dependent rubor. If the patient has no symptoms and if the pulses are present the condition probably represents simple erythema for which no therapy is necessary. The patient should be reassured that he has no occlusive disease.

Erythralgia, a condition in which pain in an extremity is often accompanied by a marked increase in the pink coloration of the skin, is presumably due to or at least associated with excessive cutaneous blood flow. This condition is rarely, if ever, seen in geriatric patients.

Various paresthesias—burning, aching, and cold sensations—may be seen in patients of all ages and may be due either to peripheral neuritis or to various cord lesions. They may be suggestive of arterial or venous disease, particularly the former. Primary neural involvement should be suspected whenever the symptoms have a segmental distribution or one corresponding to that of a peripheral nerve and particularly when they are poorly localized and are not accompanied by tenderness or by objective signs such as loss of pulses, discoloration, delayed return of color after elevation, ulceration, or claudication.

# Pulmonary Diseases

II O SIEKER

In view of the recent emphasis on geriatric problems in all phases of medicine and related fields, it is remarkable that little is written or known about the aging lung (Richards 1956). This paucity of information may be due in part to the relatively insignificant anatomic changes observed in the lungs of aged persons without associated diseases. Moreover, the lungs apparently have enough reserve so that in the absence of disease aging of the pulmonary system does not limit the individual's activity. In spite of these facts, pulmonary diseases are among the most important problems in geriatrics. Before the era of antibiotics, pneumonia was the most common cause of death in elderly patients. At the present time, obstructive emphysema and lung tumor are examples of pulmonary disease observed frequently in senescence.

Both genetic and environmental factors play a role in the aging process. In the lung, it is difficult to separate the natural changes associated with aging from those produced by countless insults sustained from the environment. In this discussion, the anatomic changes and physiologic derangements of the aged lung can be considered only briefly. The primary purpose of the chapter will be to examine the pulmonary diseases commonly seen in elderly patients and to emphasize the manner in which senescence alters the clinical picture, contributes to the etiology, and modifies the management.

## ANATOMIC AND PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGES OF THE AGING LUNG

The upper respiratory tract, the entrance to the lung, is exposed to more insults of environment than any other tissue of the body.

Senescence is associated with atrophy of the nasal mucosa and glands decreased ciliary activity viscid secretions and increased fibrous tissue in the submucosa. In the pharynx and larynx muscle weakness is present. The trachea is widened and the bronchi are slightly narrowed. Atrophy of the mucosa and mucous glands is observed most of which is probably caused by insult from the contaminated and unphysiologic air that courses through the tubes and from recurrent infections over the years.

It is doubtful if any autopsy material shows only the normal changes of aging in the lung but certain alterations may be ascribed chiefly to this process (Bickerman 1952). The senile lung is decreased in size and weight and is pale gray, and flabby. Histologically the alveoli are larger than those of young subjects the walls are thin and the elastic tissue is reduced. The pleural surface is thin opaque dry and lusterless. All these changes probably represent dehydration and tissue wasting with loss of elastic tissue in particular. Almost as important as the changes in the lungs themselves are those in the chest wall and pulmonary vascular system. The spine tends to be kyphotic and motion of the rib cage is limited. There is atrophy of the muscles and other superficial covering of the chest wall. Internal or medial changes in the smaller pulmonary arteries are reported to begin between the fifth and seventh decades (Welch and Kinney 1948).

A number of studies (Kaltreider *et al* 1938 Baldwin *et al* 1948 Greifenstein *et al* 1952 Frank *et al* 1957) have dealt with the alterations in pulmonary function observed with advancing age. The vital capacity is slightly decreased and there is a small increase in the residual capacity. A moderate decrease in total lung capacity is observed so that the ratio of residual capacity to total capacity

TABLE 16-1 COMPARISON OF PULMONARY FUNCTION  
IN YOUNG AND OLDER ADULTS  
(Mean and Standard Deviation)

Age	Vital capacity	Functional residual capacity	Efficiency of gas mixing
29	4.81 $\pm$ 1.3	2.91 $\pm$ 0.7	39% $\pm$ 12
41	3.11 $\pm$ 1.1	3.51 $\pm$ 0.5	24% $\pm$ 12

Data from Bates and Christie 1952

# Pulmonary Diseases

II O SIEKER

In view of the recent emphasis on geriatric problems in all phases of medicine and related fields it is remarkable that little is written or known about the aging lung (Richards 1956). This paucity of information may be due in part to the relatively insignificant anatomic changes observed in the lungs of aged persons without associated diseases. Moreover, the lungs apparently have enough reserve so that in the absence of disease aging of the pulmonary system does not limit the individual's activity. In spite of these facts pulmonary diseases are among the most important problems in geriatrics. Before the era of antibiotics pneumonia was the most common cause of death in elderly patients. At the present time obstructive emphysema and lung tumor are examples of pulmonary disease observed frequently in senescence.

Both genetic and environmental factors play a role in the aging process. In the lung it is difficult to separate the natural changes associated with aging from those produced by countless insults sustained from the environment. In this discussion the anatomic changes and physiologic derangements of the aged lung can be considered only briefly. The primary purpose of the chapter will be to examine the pulmonary diseases commonly seen in elderly patients and to emphasize the manner in which senescence alters the clinical picture, contributes to the etiology, and modifies the management.

## ANATOMIC AND PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGES OF THE AGING LUNG

The upper respiratory tract, the entrance to the lung, is exposed to more insults of environment than any other tissue of the body.

Senescence is associated with atrophy of the nasal mucosa and glands decreased ciliary activity viscid secretions and increased fibrous tissue in the submucosa. In the pharynx and larynx muscle weakness is present. The trachea is widened and the bronchi are slightly narrowed. Atrophy of the mucosa and mucous glands is observed most of which is probably caused by insult from the contaminated and "unphysiologic" air that courses through the tubes and from recurrent infections over the years.

It is doubtful if any autopsy material shows only the normal changes of aging in the lung but certain alterations may be ascribed chiefly to this process (Bickerman 1952). The senile lung is decreased in size and weight and is pale gray and flabby. Histologically the alveoli are larger than those of young subjects the walls are thin and the elastic tissue is reduced. The pleural surface is thin opaque dry and lusterless. All these changes probably represent dehydration and tissue wasting with loss of elastic tissue in particular. Almost as important as the changes in the lungs themselves are those in the chest wall and pulmonary vascular system. The spine tends to be kyphotic and motion of the rib cage is limited. There is atrophy of the muscles and other superficial covering of the chest wall. Intimal or medial changes in the smaller pulmonary arteries are reported to begin between the fifth and seventh decades (Welch and Kinney 1948).

A number of studies (Kaltreider *et al* 1938 Baldwin *et al* 1948 Greifenstein *et al* 1952 Frank *et al* 1957) have dealt with the alterations in pulmonary function observed with advancing age. The vital capacity is slightly decreased and there is a small increase in the residual capacity. A moderate decrease in total lung capacity is observed so that the ratio of residual capacity to total capacity

TABLE 16-1 COMPARISON OF PULMONARY FUNCTION  
IN YOUNG AND OLDER ADULTS  
(Mean and Standard Deviation)

Age	Vital capacity	Functional residual capacity	Efficiency of gas mixing
25	4.8 L $\pm$ 1.2	2.9 L $\pm$ 0.7	39% $\pm$ 1%
55	3.5 L $\pm$ 1.2	3.3 L $\pm$ 0.9	46% $\pm$ 1%

Data from Bates and Christie 1950



is slightly increased. The maximal breathing capacity decreases slightly, but is remarkably good. Intrapulmonary gas mixing is less adequate than in younger individuals (Table 16.1). The arterial oxygen saturation drops from 95 per cent at 20 years to 92 to 93 per cent at 70 years. Arterial carbon dioxide tension is unchanged, or only slightly decreased.

## ACUTE PNEUMONIAS

Before the advent of chemotherapy, pneumonia was a very common illness in the older age group. Termed the friend of the aged it was often responsible for the death of patients with other chronic painful and debilitating illnesses (Heffron 1939). Although death from pneumonia is now much less common, Zeman and Willich (1946) have reported a fatality rate of 20 per cent in elderly patients. In a more recent survey by Rhoads (1956) however, there were only 2 deaths in 105 cases of which half were in patients past middle age.

A number of factors in the aged lung contribute to the relatively high incidence of pneumonia in elderly patients. As has already been noted it is difficult to separate the normal aging process from the changes induced by extrinsic factors through years of exposure. The defenses against bacteria passing through the upper airway are weakened by the aging process. In the tracheobronchial tree, ciliary activity is decreased, and the mucus secreted is often viscous and difficult to produce by coughing. The cough reflex is diminished as a result of decreased muscle tone, lowered sensitivity to stimuli and slowing of reflex activity.

In addition the mechanisms for protection against infection in general and pulmonary infection in particular are probably less efficient in older people (Perl and Marmorston, 1941). The capacity to produce antibodies is diminished and the repair processes are impeded. The older patient is often predisposed to pneumonias by the presence of other chronic conditions such as malnutrition, avitaminosis, congestive heart failure, chronic pulmonary disease, cerebral vascular accidents, tumor and liver disease. Steroid therapy and inappropriate antibiotic therapy, as well as immobilization of the chest and bed rest itself may also be responsible for decreased resistance to this type of infection.

Three factors frequently responsible for the development of pneumonia in elderly patients should be emphasized because they can often be prevented. Bacteria often enter the lungs by *aspiration* which occurs most often during a period of altered consciousness such as that produced by sleep, a cerebral vascular accident, anesthesia, or drug intoxication. In the presence of bronchial disease or immobilization of the chest, pneumonia develops in areas of *atelectasis*. In the debilitated patient, congestion and edema in dependent portions of the lungs also provide a favorable site for infection.

In the past the organism most frequently responsible for pneumonia has been the pneumococcus, and approximately one half of the cases reported in a recent series (Zeman and Wallach 1946) were caused by this organism. In the following discussion the characteristics of the various types of pneumonia will be considered individually. It should be recognized that the bacterial flora will often change during the course of the disease and that several organisms may be present at the same time.

### Pneumococcal Pneumonia

The characteristic clinical picture of pneumococcal or lobar pneumonia—sudden onset with a shaking chill, pleuritic chest pain, cough, rusty sputum, and fever—is familiar to most physicians. While such a pattern of symptoms may occur in the elderly patient, it is more common for the course of the illness to be altered in old age. The patient may experience general malaise, fatigue, and irritability associated with coryza over a period of several days to a week. A moderate elevation of temperature and slight chilly sensations may be noted, and a productive cough is often present. Symptoms of respiratory embarrassment such as cyanosis and dyspnea are usually more prominent in the elderly patient, and gastrointestinal symptoms leading to marked prostration may also be noted.

The earliest signs of lobar pneumonia are decreased vocal fremitus, questionable dullness on percussion, and decreased breath sounds over the involved area. After 24 to 36 hours, the more obvious signs of consolidation appear: increased vocal fremitus, dullness on percussion, bronchial breathing, and whispered pectoriloquy. Fine crepitant inspiratory rales are noted initially; these be-

is slightly increased. The maximal breathing capacity decreases slightly, but is remarkably good. Intrapulmonary gas mixing is less adequate than in younger individuals (Table 16.1). The arterial oxygen saturation drops from 95 per cent at 20 years to 92 to 93 per cent at 70 years. Arterial carbon dioxide tension is unchanged, or only slightly decreased.

### ACUTE PNEUMONIAS

Before the advent of chemotherapy, pneumonia was a very common illness in the older age group. Termed the "friend of the aged," it was often responsible for the death of patients with other chronic painful, and debilitating illnesses (Heffron, 1939). Although death from pneumonia is now much less common, Zeman and Wallach (1946) have reported a fatality rate of 20 per cent in elderly patients. In a more recent survey by Rhoads (1956), however, there were only 2 deaths in 105 cases, of which half were in patients past middle age.

A number of factors in the aged lung contribute to the relatively high incidence of pneumonia in elderly patients. As has already been noted, it is difficult to separate the normal aging process from the changes induced by extrinsic factors through years of exposure. The defenses against bacteria passing through the upper airway are weakened by the aging process. In the tracheobronchial tree, ciliary activity is decreased, and the mucus secreted is often viscous and difficult to produce by coughing. The cough reflex is diminished as a result of decreased muscle tone, lowered sensitivity to stimuli, and slowing of reflex activity.

In addition, the mechanisms for protection against infection in general and pulmonary infection in particular are probably less efficient in older people (Perl and Marmorston, 1941). The capacity to produce antibodies is diminished, and the repair processes are impeded. The older patient is often predisposed to pneumonia by the presence of other chronic conditions such as malnutrition, avitaminosis, congestive heart failure, chronic pulmonary disease, cerebral vascular accidents, tumor, and liver disease. Steroid therapy and inappropriate antibiotic therapy, as well as immobilization of the chest and bed rest itself, may also be responsible for decreased resistance to this type of infection.

be modified in elderly patients just as the onset of pneumococcal pneumonia is modified. Cough purulent and blood streaked sputum pleuritic chest pain tachycardia and tachypnea are characteristic features and cyanosis may also be prominent. Physical examination reveals scattered fine inspiratory rales without the signs of frank lobar consolidation.

The leukocyte count is usually higher than that associated with pneumococcal pneumonia. Large numbers of streptococci may be observed on sputum examination and in cultures. The chest roentgenogram usually shows a patchy pneumonitis.

The mortality rate from this infection is high and the most frequent complication is empyema. Streptococcal empyema however is often secondary to pneumonia caused by other organisms or to infarcts or tumors of the lung. The pleural fluid is serosanguineous but becomes thick and purulent with time.

### Staphylococcal Pneumonia

Staphylococcal infections in general present an increasingly serious problem particularly in the elderly patient who is debilitated by a chronic disease. The problem has become even more alarming with the development of resistant staphylococci and the preponderance of these organisms in the hospital environment where the elderly patient is often committed for treatment of some other primary illness. In addition these patients often receive treatment with steroids nitrogen mustard or other agents that alter host defense mechanisms.

The onset of staphylococcal pneumonia is usually insidious and preceded by a chronic illness. It is characterized by remittent fever malaise anorexia and cough productive of purulent sputum which is characteristically bright yellow. On physical examination the patient appears extremely ill and many fine medium and coarse inspiratory and expiratory rales can be heard in the chest.

Leukocytosis may be present although a severe infection may be associated with a normal leukocyte count or even with leukopenia. Many staphylococci can be seen in the Gram stain of the sputum and sputum cultures confirm the diagnosis. The chest roentgenogram shows scattered areas of pneumonitis with multiple small abscesses.

Complications of staphylococcal pneumonia are empyema and

come coarser and louder during the period of consolidation and resolution.

Leukocytosis with an increase in the young polymorphonuclear leukocytes may be one of the laboratory findings. As with any infection in older patients, however, the leukocytosis may be absent or minimal, with white cell counts below 15,000. Severe or fulminating disease may actually be associated with leukopenia. Examination of the sputum reveals the lanceolate shaped diplococci, which on inoculation into the mouse will cause death. Sputum cultures and blood cultures should be obtained to identify the organisms and to detect the presence of bacteremia. Routine typing of pneumococci is not practical and is no longer necessary. Roentgenograms of the chest are useful in establishing the diagnosis and in locating the area of involvement when physical findings are difficult to interpret. The process may extend through more than one lobe or may not involve the lobe in its entirety.

The most frequent complications of pneumococcal pneumonia are pleurisy and empyema. Pleurisy with pleural effusion is very common and empyema may develop in as many as 8 per cent of the cases, especially if treatment is delayed. The empyema fluid usually thin at first gradually becomes thicker until a yellow green pus is obtained. Within several days fluid may accumulate in sufficient quantity to cause serious embarrassment of pulmonary function. Pericarditis sometimes occurs particularly in association with empyema.

Before the days of antibiotics the prognosis for elderly patients with pneumococcal pneumonia was extremely poor. Heffron (1939) reported that the mortality rates ranged from 16 per cent in patients aged 20 to 29 to 66 per cent in those aged 50 to 59 and to 82 per cent in patients over 80. Since the advent of chemotherapeutic measures these figures have been strikingly decreased although deaths still occur in the older age group.

### **Hemolytic Streptococcal Pneumonia**

Streptococcal pneumonia primarily a disease of the younger age groups, occurs in the aged less frequently than pneumococcal pneumonia. It is almost always preceded by influenza, tonsillitis or a similar infection of the upper airway. The onset which is characteristically abrupt with chills, fever, anorexia, and vomiting may

atypical pneumonia is characteristically a disease of younger patients. Ornithosis can occur at any age. Pneumonic involvement occurs in as many as 10 per cent of all patients with the common cold. In an undetermined percentage of these cases, however, the pneumonitis is the result of secondary bacterial infection that follows the viral infection.

In the elderly patient uncomplicated viral pneumonia may follow pre-existing nasopharyngitis. The onset of pneumonia is characterized by fever, chills, a dry hacking cough, deep chest pain, malaise, fatigue, anorexia, headache, and myalgia. Usually signs of consolidation are absent and only a few inspiratory rales are heard.

Leukocytosis does not occur, and as a rule viral pneumonia can be suspected in the presence of a normal leukocyte count and an increase in mononuclear cells. Since older patients do not always show the normal leukocyte response to bacterial infection, however, a diagnosis of viral pneumonia cannot be made on the basis of this point alone. Examination of the sputum shows no characteristic organisms. The chest roentgenogram shows bilateral pneumonic involvement which is usually much more extensive than would be suspected from the clinical picture.

In the debilitated patient viral pneumonia may cause marked asthenia and a prolonged convalescence. In the otherwise healthy older person, however, recovery is uneventful unless the disease is complicated by bacterial infections.

### **Bronchopneumonia or Mixed Bacterial Infection**

Elderly patients often have an atypical pneumonia (bronchopneumonia) for which no specific etiologic organism can be found. This type of pneumonia occurs in areas of atelectasis or pulmonary congestion or follows aspiration. The infecting bacteria are the normal inhabitants of the upper airway. The so-called aspiration and postoperative pneumonias are of this type.

The illness usually follows some primary condition and is heralded by the development of fever, tachycardia, tachypnea, and cough. It may begin suddenly. Cyanosis is present and may be more marked than in other types of pneumonia. The cough may or may not be productive. Examination of the chest reveals signs that vary from fine inspiratory rales to the findings of consolidation.

usual pulmonary abscesses. If a positive blood culture is obtained, serious effort should be made to locate some other source of infection, since staphylococcal pneumonia as a primary illness does not usually result in bacteremia. Before the days of antimicrobial therapy the prognosis in staphylococcal pneumonia was extremely poor, with mortality figures ranging from 50 to 95 per cent. Even at the present time, 15 to 50 per cent of the patients die (Rogers 1956).

### **Friedlander Pneumonia**

This is an uncommon form of pneumonia that occurs primarily in patients past middle age. The incidence is higher in men with marked debility, chronic alcoholism, or chronic pulmonary disease (Barber and Grant, 1952).

The clinical pattern of Friedlander pneumonia varies. It may be an acute illness with a sudden onset of chills, fever, cough, bright red and tenacious sputum, marked prostration, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and delirium. Dyspnea and cyanosis may be marked. The chronic form of the illness is characterized by an insidious onset with low grade fever, malaise, anorexia, weight loss, night sweats, and a cough productive of tenacious sputum that may or may not be bloody. On physical examination in addition to the general signs of either acute or chronic infection fine and medium coarse rales may be heard over the areas of lung involved. Signs of consolidation are usually not striking.

Leukocytosis may be observed. The sputum is typically tenacious and bloody or brown but it may be purulent. The bacilli are identified on the Gram stain and by culture (Weiss *et al*, 1951). Roentgenograms of the chest show scattered dense infiltrates in the areas of lung involved, often cavitation is present.

As in other types of pneumonia, abscesses, empyema, and bacteremia may occur. In aged patients the mortality is extremely high even with antimicrobial therapy.

### **Viral Pneumonias**

A number of viruses have now been implicated as causative agents of pneumonitis in all age groups (Reiman, 1954). Primary

atypical pneumonia is characteristically a disease of younger patients. Ornithosis can occur at any age. Pneumonic involvement occurs in as many as 10 per cent of all patients with the common cold. In an undetermined percentage of these cases, however, the pneumonitis is the result of secondary bacterial infection that follows the viral infection.

In the elderly patient uncomplicated viral pneumonia may follow pre-existing nasopharyngitis. The onset of pneumonia is characterized by fever, chills, a dry, hacking cough, deep chest pain, malaise, fatigue, anorexia, headache, and myalgia. Usually, signs of consolidation are absent and only a few inspiratory rales are heard.

Leukocytosis does not occur, and as a rule viral pneumonia can be suspected in the presence of a normal leukocyte count and an increase in mononuclear cells. Since older patients do not always show the normal leukocyte response to bacterial infection, however, a diagnosis of viral pneumonia cannot be made on the basis of this point alone. Examination of the sputum shows no characteristic organisms. The chest roentgenogram shows bilateral pneumonic involvement which is usually much more extensive than would be suspected from the clinical picture.

In the debilitated patient viral pneumonia may cause marked asthenia and a prolonged convalescence. In the otherwise healthy older person, however, recovery is uneventful unless the disease is complicated by bacterial infections.

### Bronchopneumonia or Mixed Bacterial Infection

Elderly patients often have an atypical pneumonia (bronchopneumonia) for which no specific etiologic organism can be found. This type of pneumonia occurs in areas of atelectasis or pulmonary congestion or follows aspiration. The infecting bacteria are the normal inhabitants of the upper airway. The so-called aspiration and postoperative pneumonias are of this type.

The illness usually follows some primary condition and is heralded by the development of fever, tachycardia, tachypnea, and cough. It may begin suddenly. Cyanosis is present and may be more marked than in other types of pneumonia. The cough may or may not be productive. Examination of the chest reveals signs that vary from fine inspiratory rales to the findings of consolidation.



Variability in chest findings is characteristic of this type of pneumonia

Chest roentgenograms show patchy pneumonitis which may move rapidly from one portion of the lung to another. As in other types of pneumonia leukocytosis is variable, the sputum is purulent often bloody or rusty and contains a mixture of organisms both on smear and on culture.

Bronchopneumonia may be the terminal event of a critical illness. The mortality is over 50 per cent in patients of all ages and for patients over 75 to 80 years of age may be as high as 100 per cent.

### **Treatment**

**GENERAL MEASURES** If the patient is moderately active bed rest is indicated during the acute phase of a pneumonia. Hospitalization is advisable in most cases, although under some circumstances the elderly patient does better in familiar surroundings. The primary aim should be to provide comfort and physical and mental rest.

Good nursing care is essential to the management of the elderly patient with pneumonia. During the acute illness a sponge bath followed by an alcohol rub may be particularly relieving. Oral hygiene is important. Attention to the diet together with the use of mild laxatives or an enema every other day will prevent the complications of fecal impaction and abdominal distention. Because of the danger of thrombophlebitis and pulmonary embolization it is recommended that the patient spend a portion of the day in a comfortable chair such as a cardiac chair by the bedside. If he is too debilitated to move from the bed passive exercise and leg wrapping may prevent circulatory complications. Ambulation and frequent changes of position in bed will also serve to promote expectoration and prevent atelectasis.

No special dietary measures are required. Well cooked simple and nutritious meals are preferable although frequent feedings with liquids such as soup, fruit juice and milk are often better tolerated. Small amounts of an alcoholic beverage before meals may stimulate the appetite. The fluid intake should be maintained. If the patient is nauseated he may be able to retain carbonated bev-

erages. In the presence of severe nausea and vomiting intravenous infusions of isotonic sodium chloride or Ringer's solution along with dextrose in sufficient quantity to provide the caloric requirements may be necessary. Every effort should be made however to have the patient take food and fluids by mouth. On occasion the use of a flexible soft plastic stomach tube may facilitate oral feeding and avoid the problems of an infusion.

**SYMPTOMATIC TREATMENT** Cough can be both troublesome and exhausting. To decrease cough and aid in the expectoration of sputum a steam vaporizer can be used. This measure is especially important during the winter months when the patient has to breathe the dry air of conventionally heated rooms. Cough syrups in variety are available which contain soothing agents antihistamines or iodides. The patient with an especially exhausting cough may be given codeine or one of its derivatives either in a cough syrup or alone. Inhalations of carbon dioxide (5 per cent carbon dioxide and 95 per cent oxygen) are helpful for relieving paroxysms of coughing. Smoking should be prohibited.

If the sputum is tenacious and difficult to expectorate potassium iodide or ammonium chloride will act as a liquefying agent. The very debilitated individual may require mechanical measures such as bronchoscopy to clear the airway. Skillful manipulation of a tracheal catheter will allow aspiration of the tracheobronchial tree. In the debilitated semistuporous or comatose patient a tracheotomy is often necessary. Forced expiration with an exsufflator has also been reported by Barach and Beck (1931) to be beneficial.

Chest pain may be a very annoying symptom. The use of a chest binder although it will relieve the pain should be avoided since fixation of the chest interferes with cough and drainage from the involved area. Local application of heat often gives symptomatic relief. Agents such as morphine and Demerol should be used with caution because these also depress respiration and the cough reflex in the elderly patient. If the pain is particularly severe and pleuritic in nature an intercostal nerve block with procaine may give very striking relief without undesirable side effects.

Hiccoughs and abdominal distention frequently add to the misery of the elderly patient with pneumonia. There is no consistently satisfactory remedy for hiccough. The oral administration of peppermint water, alcoholic beverages, ice water and carbonated

Variability in chest findings is characteristic of this type of pneumonia

Chest roentgenograms show patchy pneumonitis which may move rapidly from one portion of the lung to another. As in other types of pneumonia leukocytosis is variable, the sputum is purulent, often bloody or rusty, and contains a mixture of organisms both on smear and on culture.

Bronchopneumonia may be the terminal event of a critical illness. The mortality is over 50 per cent in patients of all ages and for patients over 75 to 80 years of age may be as high as 100 per cent.

### Treatment

**GENERAL MEASURES** If the patient is moderately active bed rest is indicated during the acute phase of a pneumonia. Hospitalization is advisable in most cases, although under some circumstances the elderly patient does better in familiar surroundings. The primary aim should be to provide comfort and physical and mental rest.

Good nursing care is essential to the management of the elderly patient with pneumonia. During the acute illness a sponge bath followed by an alcohol rub may be particularly relaxing. Oral hygiene is important. Attention to the diet together with the use of mild laxatives or an enema every other day will prevent the complications of fecal impaction and abdominal distention. Because of the danger of thrombophlebitis and pulmonary embolization it is recommended that the patient spend a portion of the day in a comfortable chair such as a cardiac chair by the bedside. If he is too debilitated to move from the bed, passive exercise and leg wrapping may prevent circulatory complications. Ambulation and frequent changes of position in bed will also serve to promote expectoration and prevent atelectasis.

No special dietary measures are required. Well cooked simple and nutritious meals are preferable, although frequent feedings with liquids such as soup, fruit juice, and milk are often better tolerated. Small amounts of an alcoholic beverage before meals may stimulate the appetite. The fluid intake should be maintained. If the patient is nursed he may be able to retain carbonated bev-

sation in the elderly patient Digitalis preparations salt restriction, diuretics, and oxygen therapy are indicated in this situation Occasionally a patient with an overwhelming infection will show signs of circulatory collapse In such cases intravenous infusions of hydrocortisone or norepinephrine may be needed

**SPECIFIC THERAPY** With the advent of chemotherapeutic agents and antibiotics the treatment of acute pneumonias has changed remarkably Particularly in elderly patients these agents have brought about a marked reduction in the mortality from all types of pneumonias Nevertheless certain organisms such as the staphylococcus and Friedlander bacillus still present difficult problems in management

Pneumococcal pneumonia usually responds to a total daily dose of 600 000 units of penicillin This should be continued for 18 to 72 hours after the patient is afebrile Sulfonamides are effective but their action is not as prompt as that of penicillin If the patient has had an untoward reaction to penicillin tetracycline drugs and chloramphenicol are also effective in doses of 1 to 2 Gm daily Streptococcal pneumonia is treated in the same fashion

Because of the development of drug resistant strains staphylococcal infections have become much less responsive to the antibiotics (Spink 1954) Penicillin is the drug of choice and the initial dosage should range from  $1\frac{1}{2}$  million to 2 million units every two hours Often as much as 50 million units per day is required to obtain an effect Erythromycin or chloramphenicol 2 to 4 Gm daily in divided doses is also useful Streptomycin 2 Gm per day may potentiate the effect of penicillin The addition of Bentamid is also helpful in increasing the blood levels of penicillin Newer antibiotics such as bacitracin (15 000 to 25 000 units every 6 hours) ristocetin and kanamycin have been effective in some cases Certain strains of staphylococci are susceptible to the tetracycline drugs which should be used in doses of 2 to 4 Gm a day

Friedlander pneumonia is particularly resistant to treatment At the present time the recommended therapy is a combination of streptomycin 2 to 4 Gm daily with chloramphenicol or tetracycline in doses of 2 to 4 Gm Response to this therapy can be expected within 5 to 7 days and the streptomycin dosage can be reduced at that time Chloramphenicol or tetracycline should be continued for at least two weeks

water may be tried. Inhalation of a 5 per cent concentration of carbon dioxide in oxygen or air sometimes relieves hiccoughs, and inspiration of a distended stomach can be effective. Sedation with chloral hydrate or barbiturates is often required. If the symptom continues unabated over a long period, consideration should be given to phrenic nerve block. Abdominal distention is best prevented by regular bowel movements. Heat to the abdomen will occasionally be helpful. Often, however, the use of a rectal tube or Wingensteen suction is necessary for the relief of lower or upper gastrointestinal distention. Prostigmin may also be tried to promote peristalsis.

For the control of headache and myalgia, codeine is preferred to aspirin because it will not alter the temperature pattern. Often an icebag or hot water bottle applied to the most painful areas will provide relief.

If the patient's temperature is unusually high (in excess of 102 to 104 F), sponge baths may be used several times daily. Aspirin will also lower the temperature. This medication should be used cautiously, however, since the patient may respond to relatively small doses with a marked fall in the blood pressure. Herpes simplex associated with fever may require symptomatic treatment.

With acute infection the elderly individual often has marked restlessness and even delirium. Barbiturates are likely to increase excitability in some patients. Chloral hydrate (0.6 to 1.0 Gm) and paraldehyde (8 cc) are preferred for sedation and morphine is useful in allaying apprehension particularly if there is the complicating element of pulmonary edema. A tranquilizer such as chlorpromazine may also be given. All sedatives should be administered cautiously because depression of respiration in elderly patients with lung disease can result in hypoxia and hypercapnia.

Oxygen therapy is required for the relief of hypoxia in the cyanotic patient. In older people this measure should be used selectively and cautiously since there may be an element of chronic lung disease with poor intrapulmonary gas mixing. The depressant effect of oxygen on respiration may result in hypercapnia and carbon dioxide narcosis in the manner described in the section on Acute Ventilatory Insufficiency.

Lastly, failure of the circulation may require the physician's attention. Pulmonary infection often precipitates cardiac decompensation.

The symptoms associated with an abscess are cough and expectoration of large amounts (one half to one cupful daily) of sputum which is often foul smelling. Hemoptysis occurs occasionally and cyanosis and dyspnea are sometimes features of the illness. Fever, malaise, night sweats and clubbed fingers may also be part of the clinical picture. The recent past history should be carefully reviewed to disclose any situation in which unconsciousness was produced, any recent surgery on the nose or throat or any symptoms of thrombophlebitis. Unless the abscess is near the surface of the lung examination of the chest reveals no positive findings. However the patient may have fever, evidences of weight loss, and pulmonary osteoarthropathy.

A chronic abscess does not usually cause leukocytosis but may be associated with anemia. The sputum is extremely foul smelling and contains a mixture of organisms including cocci, bacilli and in the aspiration type of abscess spirochetes (Brock 1948). In occasional cases one specific organism such as the staphylococcus or Friedländer bacillus may be responsible for the abscess. Culture should be made both aerobically and anaerobically and the sputum should be examined for fungi and tubercle bacilli. The chest film will demonstrate a rounded infiltrate or cystlike area that may have a fluid level. Bronchoscopy is important to reveal any evidence of obstruction.

The results of therapy depend on the amount of time elapsing between the development of the abscess and the institution of treatment (Waterman *et al.* 1955). It is essential that therapy be started as soon as the diagnosis is made. Bed rest and mild sedation are needed. Postural drainage is useful in promoting the removal of pus and secretions. Bronchoscopy will sometimes be necessary for drainage of purulent material. Oxygen may be required if dyspnea and cyanosis are severe.

The etiologic organisms should be identified as soon as possible so that appropriate chemotherapy or antibiotic therapy can be instituted. Many abscesses of the aspiration type are due to anaerobic streptococci and spirochetes in addition to mixed bacterial flora. Penicillin (10 to 20 million units per day) and streptomycin (2 Gm per day) are the most effective combination of antibiotics. After signs of acute infection have subsided, lower maintenance dosages of both drugs are sufficient.

Viral pneumonias usually do not respond to antibiotics, although Terramycin and Aureomycin have been reported to be effective in some cases.

Complications of pneumonia require special attention. Lung abscesses call for long periods of antibiotic therapy, postural drainage and even surgical excision. Empyema is best treated with surgical drainage. The instillation of streptokinase and streptodornase into the pleural space to promote drainage has also been advocated.

### Prevention

Because the elderly are particularly susceptible to all types of pneumonia every effort should be made to maintain the older patient in good health and to prevent other illnesses or conditions that predispose to pneumonia. Specifically the elderly patient should stay as active as possible. If he is not ambulatory he should be turned frequently or moved from the bed to a chair at regular intervals. Deep breathing exercises or inhalation of 5 per cent carbon dioxide for short periods may aid in preventing areas of atelectasis and promoting drainage from the lungs. If it is feasible residence in a warm climate during the winter months is beneficial. Elderly individuals should never expose themselves unnecessarily to persons with upper respiratory or pulmonary infections. Prophylactic antibiotic therapy is not advisable except for the debilitated elderly patient who shows evidence of respiratory tract infection. Specific vaccines for viral infections may be helpful during epidemics.

## CHRONIC PULMONARY INFECTIONS

### Lung Abscess

The elderly debilitated individual is in especially good candidate for a lung abscess. Such an abscess may be caused by septic emboli to the lung or by material aspirated during surgery on the nose and throat or during a period of unconsciousness resulting from a cerebral vascular accident, drugs or anesthesia (Broek 1948). Lung abscess can occur behind an obstruction in the airway or may be produced by the penetration of infection from nearby structures.

The symptoms associated with an abscess are cough and expectoration of large amounts (one half to one cupful daily) of sputum which is often foul smelling. Hemoptysis occurs occasionally and cyanosis and dyspnea are sometimes features of the illness. Fever, malaise, night sweats and clubbed fingers may also be part of the clinical picture. The recent past history should be carefully reviewed to disclose any situation in which unconsciousness was produced, any recent surgery on the nose or throat or any symptoms of thrombophlebitis. Unless the abscess is near the surface of the lung examination of the chest reveals no positive findings. However the patient may have fever, evidences of weight loss and pulmonary osteoarthropathy.

A chronic abscess does not usually cause leukocytosis but may be associated with anemia. The sputum is extremely foul smelling and contains a mixture of organisms including cocci, bacilli and in the aspiration type of abscess spirochetes (Brock 1948). In occasional cases one specific organism such as the staphylococcus or Friedlander bacillus may be responsible for the abscess. Culture should be made both aerobically and anaerobically and the sputum should be examined for fungi and tubercle bacilli. The chest film will demonstrate a rounded infiltrate or cystlike area that may have a fluid level. Bronchoscopy is important to reveal any evidence of obstruction.

The results of therapy depend on the amount of time elapsing between the development of the abscess and the institution of treatment (Witterman *et al* 1955). It is essential that therapy be started as soon as the diagnosis is made. Bed rest and mild sedation are needed. Postural drainage is useful in promoting the removal of pus and secretions. Bronchoscopy will sometimes be necessary for drainage of purulent material. Oxygen may be required if dyspnea and cyanosis are severe.

The etiologic organisms should be identified as soon as possible so that appropriate chemotherapy or antibiotic therapy can be instituted. Many abscesses of the aspiration type are due to anaerobic streptococci and spirochetes in addition to mixed bacterial flora. Penicillin (10 to 20 million units per day) and streptomycin (2 gm per day) are the most effective combination of antibiotics. After signs of acute infection have subsided lower maintenance dosages of both drugs are sufficient.



If the abscess has not decreased in size after 2 to 3 weeks of medical treatment, consideration should be given to surgery. If the abscess has decreased in size, continued antibiotic therapy and bed rest are indicated. Surgical drainage should be considered only if the abscess is associated with infection in the pleural or subdiaphragmatic space. If the abscess fails to respond to appropriate antibiotic therapy or if a residual lesion remains, surgical removal of the lobe or segment involved is advisable. In cases where a cyst remains after the infection has subsided, the elderly patient whose general condition will not allow extensive chest surgery can often be kept symptom free by measures to prevent future infections.

Measures for the prevention of lung abscesses in the elderly or bedridden patient include careful attention to oral hygiene. At surgery and during the postoperative period use of the Trendelenburg position may prevent aspiration. Patients unconscious as a result of cerebral vascular disease or oversedation should be placed with the head dependent or turned to the side. If aspiration occurs, immediate bronchoscopy is necessary to remove foreign material and irritating stomach contents. If the patient is unconscious after the aspiration of foreign material, a tracheotomy must be done to allow repeated removal of secretions from the trachea. In the debilitated person who is a candidate for lung abscess, prophylactic antibiotic therapy is not recommended although it is commonly used.

## **Tuberculosis**

The present incidence and mortality of communicable tuberculosis in the United States are higher after the age of 50 years than at any other time in life (Myers, 1946, Bowen 1950). Actually this situation has probably existed for as long as the disease has been present in mankind. In some series reported active tuberculosis was found three times more often in persons over 40 than in those under that age (Miller and Henderson, 1942). Twenty five to 50 per cent of the patients in tuberculosis hospitals are over 50 years of age (Temple and Temple, 1950), and 65 per cent of these elderly patients are reported to have far advanced disease (Leech 1950). The mortality from tuberculosis has been reported to be eight times greater in patients over 40 than in patients under 20 years of age.

Several explanations may be offered for this high incidence of tuberculosis in the elderly. Members of the present older generation were young at a time when infection with tubercle bacilli was common and few persons escaped such infection. The people who survived the illness in the late decades of the last century and the early decades of this century now compose a large group in our population who harbor the tubercle bacilli, which may break through nature's barriers and invade the surrounding lung tissue. The total number of elderly patients with tuberculosis has been increased also by the increase in our senescent population, the result of medical advances that have added to man's life expectancy. It is also probable that alertness of physicians to the possibility of this disease in the elderly and improved techniques for diagnosis have contributed to the increased incidence in reported surveys.

As a rule, active disease appearing in older patients originates in the site of earlier infection. It is unlikely that it represents contagion from younger individuals in the community who harbor the organism. Human tubercle bacilli are usually responsible for the infection, although occasional cases of bovine infection occur. Tuberculosis in the elderly individual may affect many parts of the body, including the lung, bone, kidney, pleura, and pericardium. Meningitis is not at all rare. This discussion, however, will be concerned primarily with the problem of pulmonary tuberculosis of the chronic fibroid type.

The clinical history of this illness in the elderly individual is variable. Some patients may have active disease and positive sputum for many years without any apparent ill effects. Frequently the only symptom is a chronic cough productive of only small amounts of sputum, which is passed off as bronchitis, "smoker's cough," or asthma. This type of infection in an older member of a household may be responsible for extensive spread of the disease among younger members of a family. It is fortunate when the patient has more obvious signs of illness, such as fever, malaise, night sweats, weight loss, anorexia, diarrhea, myalgia, weakness, and arthralgia. In some cases a productive cough and hemoptysis may signal the onset of active disease.

The patient may show the signs of chronic illness or may appear healthy for his age. On examination of the chest, the signs of old

If the abscess has not decreased in size after 2 to 3 weeks of medical treatment, consideration should be given to surgery. If the abscess has decreased in size, continued antibiotic therapy and bed rest are indicated. Surgical drainage should be considered only if the abscess is associated with infection in the pleural or subdiaphragmatic space. If the abscess fails to respond to appropriate antibiotic therapy or if a residual lesion remains, surgical removal of the lobe or segment involved is advisable. In cases where a cyst remains after the infection has subsided, the elderly patient whose general condition will not allow extensive chest surgery can often be kept symptom free by measures to prevent future infections.

Measures for the prevention of lung abscesses in the elderly or bedridden patient include careful attention to oral hygiene. At surgery and during the postoperative period, use of the Trendelenburg position may prevent aspiration. Patients unconscious as a result of cerebral vascular disease or oversedation should be placed with the head dependent or turned to the side. If aspiration occurs, immediate bronchoscopy is necessary to remove foreign material and irritating stomach contents. If the patient is unconscious after the aspiration of foreign material, a tracheotomy must be done to allow repeated removal of secretions from the trachea. In the debilitated person who is a candidate for lung abscess, prophylactic antibiotic therapy is not recommended, although it is commonly used.

## **Tuberculosis**

The present incidence and mortality of communicable tuberculosis in the United States are higher after the age of 50 years than at any other time in life (Myers, 1946; Beven, 1950). Actually, this situation has probably existed for as long as the disease has been present in mankind. In some series reported, active tuberculosis was found three times more often in persons over 40 than in those under that age (Miller and Henderson, 1942). Twenty five to 50 per cent of the patients in tuberculosis hospitals are over 50 years of age (Temple and Temple, 1950), and 65 per cent of these elderly patients are reported to have far advanced disease (Leech, 1950). The mortality from tuberculosis has been reported to be eight times greater in patients over 40 than in patients under 20 years of age.

Several explanations may be offered for this high incidence of tuberculosis in the elderly. Members of the present older generation were young at a time when infection with tubercle bacilli was common and few persons escaped such infection. The people who survived the illness in the late decades of the last century and the early decades of this century now compose a large group in our population who harbor the tubercle bacilli which may break through nature's barriers and invade the surrounding lung tissue. The total number of elderly patients with tuberculosis has been increased also by the increase in our senescent population, the result of medical advances that have added to man's life expectancy. It is also probable that alertness of physicians to the possibility of this disease in the elderly and improved techniques for diagnosis have contributed to the increased incidence in reported surveys.

As a rule active disease appearing in older patients originates in the site of earlier infection. It is unlikely that it represents contagion from younger individuals in the community who harbor the organism. Human tubercle bacilli are usually responsible for the infection, although occasional cases of bovine infection occur. Tuberculosis in the elderly individual may affect many parts of the body, including the lung, bone, kidney, pleura, and pericardium. Meningitis is not at all rare. This discussion, however, will be concerned primarily with the problem of pulmonary tuberculosis of the chronic fibroid type.

The clinical history of this illness in the elderly individual is variable. Some patients may have active disease and positive sputum for many years without any apparent ill effects. Frequently the only symptom is a chronic cough productive of only small amounts of sputum which is passed off as bronchitis, "smoker's cough," or asthma. This type of infection in an older member of a household may be responsible for extensive spread of the disease among younger members of a family. It is fortunate when the patient has more obvious signs of illness, such as fever, malaise, night sweats, weight loss, anorexia, diarrhea, myalgia, weakness, and arthralgia. In some cases a productive cough and hemoptysis may signal the onset of active disease.

The patient may show the signs of chronic illness or may appear healthy for his age. On examination of the chest the signs of old

residual tuberculosis with cavity formation may be detected. There may be a shift of the trachea, dullness to percussion (particularly at the apices), and bronchial or cavernous breathing and voice sounds. In acute infections, the signs of a pneumonitis may be heard. Rales or wheezes at the apices occasionally suggest active disease. Often, however, the physical findings are not particularly striking and the diagnosis is made only with laboratory help. The disease may be first suspected from a routine chest roentgenogram made in a mass survey, during a hospital stay, or at the time of a visit to a doctor's office (Myers 1956).

A positive diagnosis of active pulmonary tuberculosis can be made only on the basis of laboratory findings. Leukocytosis may or may not be present, but an increase in the number of large lymphocytes suggests active disease. An elevated sedimentation rate and positive C-reactive protein test are general indexes of active disease. The tuberculin test is useful in determining the presence of allergy to the tuberculin protein, and a positive reaction indicates that infection has been present at some time during the patient's life. This test is superior to chest roentgenograms in detecting the presence of a primary lesion, since the latter will fail to show such a lesion in 70 to 80 per cent of the cases. It should be noted that older individuals occasionally do not react to the usual dilutions of tuberculin and larger test doses may be required to demonstrate a positive reaction. The tuberculin test may also be negative in the presence of an overwhelming tuberculous infection. Roentgen examination is helpful in evaluating gross lesions, in detecting their location, and when compared with earlier films in determining the degree of activity. The proof of active disease is established ultimately by finding the tubercle bacilli in the sputum on acid fast smear or by culture. If the patient does not produce sputum, postural drainage may aid in obtaining a specimen, or gastric washings may be required. Occasionally the diagnosis can be made from examination of pleural fluid from biopsy of the pleura or fat pad or at exploratory thoriotomy.

The management of the elderly patient with active tuberculosis has been aided immeasurably by the advent of specific antimicrobial therapy. The depressing and adverse effects of prolonged bed rest in a sanatorium can now be eliminated in most cases. Certainly bed rest is indicated for older patients with evidence of active dis-

ease but this need not be as strict as that required for younger patients or as that practiced before the days of antimicrobial therapy. Isolation particularly from younger individuals is still necessary. Often the patient who lives alone with husband or wife may be cared for satisfactorily at home. Diet should be adequate and depending on the general state of the individual supplemented with vitamins. In addition any associated acute or chronic illness should be handled early and appropriately.

All patients with active disease should receive drug therapy. At the present time there are a number of antimicrobial agents that are effective against the tubercle bacillus. Those most commonly used are streptomycin, para-aminosalicylic acid (PAS) and isoniazid (INH). Cycloserine, Pyrazinamide and viomycin have a definite antimicrobial effect but they are less effective. The combination of isoniazid (300 to 400 mg daily) and para-aminosalicylic acid (12 to 16 Gm daily) offers the best regimen (Tucker and Livings 1955). If the patient cannot tolerate para-aminosalicylic acid which has the advantage of being an oral medication, 1 Gm of streptomycin given intramuscularly twice a week is a satisfactory substitute (Cohen 1956).

Variations in the duration and type of therapy will depend on the response of the lesion and the persistence of positive sputum. If roentgenograms show clearing of the lesion and sputum examinations are consistently negative, treatment with PAS or streptomycin is stopped after 12 months and isoniazid is continued for 6 to 12 additional months. If residual disease persists, some authorities advocate continuation of isoniazid (300 mg per day) indefinitely. It has been reported recently that dosages of isoniazid as high as 600 mg daily may be advantageous. Such large doses may cause peripheral neuritis and for this reason the prophylactic administration of pyridoxine is recommended. If signs or symptoms of peripheral neuritis develop with the dose of 300 to 400 mg per day, consideration may be given to adding pyridoxine to the therapy or to discontinuing isoniazid and substituting another drug. However, isoniazid in combination with any other drug is probably the most effective regimen for tuberculosis.

In unusually resistant infections with persistently positive sputum, pneumoperitoneum or plombage may be considered as a form of collapse therapy. In some instances where the patient has good

residual tuberculosis with cavity formation may be detected. There may be a shift of the trachea, dullness to percussion (particularly at the apices), and bronchial or cavernous breathing and vocal sounds. In acute infections, the signs of a pneumonitis may be heard. Rales or wheezes at the apices occasionally suggest active disease. Often, however, the physical findings are not particularly striking and the diagnosis is made only with laboratory help. The disease may be first suspected from a routine chest roentgenogram made in a mass survey, during a hospital stay, or at the time of a visit to a doctor's office (Myers 1956).

A positive diagnosis of active pulmonary tuberculosis can be made only on the basis of laboratory findings. Leukocytosis may or may not be present, but an increase in the number of large lymphocytes suggests active disease. An elevated sedimentation rate and positive C-reactive protein test are general indexes of active disease. The tuberculin test is useful in determining the presence of allergy to the tuberculin protein and a positive reaction indicates that infection has been present at some time during the patient's life. This test is superior to chest roentgenograms in detecting the presence of a primary lesion, since the latter will fail to show such a lesion in 70 to 80 per cent of the cases. It should be noted that older individuals occasionally do not react to the usual dilutions of tuberculin and larger test doses may be required to demonstrate a positive reaction. The tuberculin test may also be negative in the presence of an overwhelming tuberculous infection. Roentgen examination is helpful in evaluating gross lesions, in detecting their location and when compared with earlier films in determining the degree of activity. The proof of active disease is established ultimately by finding the tubercle bacilli in the sputum on acid fast smear or by culture. If the patient does not produce sputum postural drainage may aid in obtaining a specimen or gastric washings may be required. Occasionally the diagnosis can be made from examination of pleural fluid from biopsy of the pleura or fat pad or at exploratory thoracotomy.

The management of the elderly patient with active tuberculosis has been aided immeasurably by the advent of specific antimicrobial therapy. The depressing and adverse effects of prolonged bed rest in a sanatorium can now be eliminated in most cases. Certainly bed rest is indicated for older patients with evidence of active dis-

branching Gram positive filamentous organism that infects the face and neck. Pulmonary involvement may result from aspiration or hematogenous spread and the lower lobes are usually affected (Garrod 1952). The patient complains of fever, cough and expectoration. The diagnosis is based on the observation of sulfur granules in the sputum. Identification of the organisms in the sputum is not difficult. Penicillin (12 million units per day) and the tetracycline antibiotics (2 to 4 Gm per day) are effective. The treatment should be continued for at least 4 to 6 weeks, and longer courses may be required.

**CRYPTOCOCCOSIS** The infecting organisms are spherical cells that retain Gram stain and are surrounded by a capsule sometimes two to three times larger than the cell proper. The disease is usually generalized involving the nervous system, lungs, bone or skin (Littman and Zimmerman 1956). When the infection is limited to the lungs, the patient is generally free of constitutional symptoms. The chest lesion may be noted on a routine chest roentgenogram. The organism may be identified in sputum cultures or in biopsy material obtained at exploratory thoracotomy. Two hydroxy stilbamidine has been used but its value is uncertain. Amphotericin B has also been recommended.

**BLASTOMYCOSIS** The fungus is a yeastlike budding form which in fresh specimens of sputum has a clear refractile capsule. The infection is generalized and often involves the lungs. Although it appears to be a disease of the younger age group, some of the patients in reported epidemics have been in the seventh and eighth decades of life (Smith *et al.* 1955). Manifestations of pulmonary infection include fever, night sweats and cough productive of sputum. Diagnosis is made by identifying the organisms in the purulent sputum or by isolating them on culture. Material for skin testing is available and a positive test indicates that infection has occurred at some time. Complement fixing antibodies may also be identified. Patients with marked dermal hypersensitivity and low serum titers of complement fixing antibodies have a better prognosis than those with a negative skin test and a high complement fixation titer.

Two hydroxy stilbamidine is extremely effective in this disease and should be given by slow intravenous drip in doses of 225 to 450 mg per day. A total dosage of 12 to 15 Gm may be required and the course can be repeated after several months. Amphotericin



pulmonary function, thoracoplasty may be indicated to convert the sputum and allow him to return to society (Kullqvist, 1955). As in other chest diseases that may require surgery, such as bronchiectasis, lung abscess, or tumor, the present techniques of anesthesia and surgery now permit resection of involved areas of the lung in many elderly patients who would not previously have been able to tolerate the procedure. Most elderly patients in general good health who have persistently positive sputum or large cavities in a localized area may be candidates for resection (Kullqvist 1956). Surgery may be prohibited by concomitant disease that causes some degree of ventilatory embarrassment, either because of the risk at operation or because of the likelihood that severe pulmonary insufficiency will occur after removal of functioning lung.

What will be the status of elderly people in the next generation as regards tuberculosis? Theoretically, if both old and young patients with active tuberculosis can be detected isolated and treated effectively, the disease may be controlled (Miers 1955). Limited experience in specific communities has demonstrated that this is possible. As concepts of the epidemiology of tuberculosis evolve, it probably will be found advisable to treat all younger persons with effective antimicrobial agents as soon as a positive tuberculin test is detected. The finding of a positive tuberculin test during infancy and the early years of childhood is now universally accepted as an indication for treatment. If the present younger generation is protected from infection and active disease is treated at its inception it is conceivable that within one to two generations elderly persons will no longer have an opportunity to contract the disease or have an endogenous source for infection. Our concepts of the geriatric problems of tuberculosis may well be altered in the next half century.

### **Fungous Diseases**

In all age groups pulmonary fungous infections resemble tuberculosis more closely than any other nontuberculous disease. The elderly individual is susceptible to such infection and associated illnesses a debilitated state or therapeutic agents may make him susceptible to fungi not usually pathogenic.

**ACTINOMYCOSIS** The fungus responsible for this disease is a

branching Gram positive filamentous organism that infects the face and neck. Pulmonary involvement may result from aspiration or hematogenous spread and the lower lobes are usually affected (Carrod 1952). The patient complains of fever, cough and expectoration. The diagnosis is based on the observation of sulfur granules in the sputum. Identification of the organisms in the sputum is not difficult. Penicillin (12 million units per day) and the tetracycline antibiotics (2 to 4 Gm per day) are effective. The treatment should be continued for at least 4 to 6 weeks and longer courses may be required.

**CRYPTOCOCCOSIS** The infecting organisms are spherical cells that retain Gram stain and are surrounded by a capsule sometimes two to three times larger than the cell proper. The disease is usually generalized involving the nervous system, lungs, bone or skin (Littman and Zimmerman 1956). When the infection is limited to the lungs the patient is generally free of constitutional symptoms. The chest lesion may be noted on a routine chest roentgenogram. The organism may be identified in sputum cultures or in biopsy material obtained at exploratory thoracotomy. Two hydroxy stilbamidine has been used but its value is uncertain. Amphotericin B has also been recommended.

**BLASTOMYCOSIS** The fungus is a yeastlike budding form which in fresh specimens of sputum has a clear refractile capsule. The infection is generalized and often involves the lungs. Although it appears to be a disease of the younger age group, some of the patients in reported epidemics have been in the seventh and eighth decades of life (Smith *et al* 1955). Manifestations of pulmonary infection include fever, night sweats and cough productive of sputum. Diagnosis is made by identifying the organisms in the purulent sputum or by isolating them on culture. Material for skin testing is available and a positive test indicates that infection has occurred at some time. Complement fixing antibodies may also be identified. Patients with marked dermal hypersensitivity and low serum titers of complement fixing antibodies have a better prognosis than those with a negative skin test and a high complement fixation titer.

Two-hydroxy stilbamidine is extremely effective in this disease and should be given by slow intravenous drip in doses of 225 to 450 mg per day. A total dosage of 12 to 15 Gm may be required and the course can be repeated after several months. Amphotericin

B given orally or intravenously is also reported to be effective. The daily dosage for intravenous administration is 0.25 mg per kilogram of body weight, this can be increased gradually to a maximum of 1.5 mg per kilogram. These agents have produced a remarkable decrease in the previously high mortality rate.

**HISTOPLASMOSIS** Histoplasmosis occurs in large numbers of people in endemic areas, but it is usually asymptomatic. Although the clinical illness affects primarily young individuals it will appear occasionally in older patients. It is differentiated from tuberculosis by finding the fungus in sputum, gastric washings, bone marrow, blood, or biopsy material. A positive histoplasmin skin test indicates present or past infection. The complement fixation test is more likely to be positive only in the presence of active disease. Treatment with chemotherapeutic agents including two hydroxystilbamidine, has not been particularly successful.

**COCCIDIOIDOMYCOSIS** This is a disease endemic to the southwestern states and infections are often completely asymptomatic. A routine chest roentgenogram may show scarring and calcification in the lung and a positive skin test denotes infection at some time in the patient's life. The diagnosis of active disease is made by finding the organisms in the sputum or gastric washings. Results of chemotherapy are not dramatic, although two hydroxystilbamidine and Amphotericin B may be effective. Surgical excision of residual pulmonary foci is indicated if secondary infection or hemoptysis occurs.

**MONILIASIS** Infection of the lungs with *Candida albicans* is most apt to appear in the debilitated person who has some other chronic illness. Often he is receiving steroids or intensive antibiotic therapy (Kligman 1952). Fever, chest pain, cough, sputum, and the findings of a diffuse pulmonary infiltrate in the elderly debilitated patient who is receiving antibiotics or steroids should lead the physician to suspect this illness. If a patient with pulmonary disease shows the lesions of thrush in the mouth and throat moniliasis is to be suspected. Diagnosis is difficult because the organism is a normal inhabitant of the mouth but when several cultures of *Candida albicans* are obtained in the proper clinical setting the diagnosis should be seriously considered. At the present time nystatin appears to be an effective agent for this illness (Wright et al

1956) Potassium iodide and a vaccine made from heat killed *Candida albicans* may be helpful also

## BRONCHITIS AND BRONCHIECTASIS

### Acute Bronchitis

Acute bronchitis may result from infection with various bacteria and viruses as well as from chemical and physical agents. The symptoms usually consist of cough and sputum production. If infection is primarily responsible for the illness purulent sputum, malaise and fever may be noted. On physical examination coarse inspiratory and expiratory rales and wheezes may be heard.

The illness is often self limited and requires only symptomatic treatment. The patient should obtain adequate rest, maintain a good fluid intake and follow a bland diet. The various types of soothing cough syrups and expectorants will also provide symptomatic relief. A humidifier may be necessary during the winter months. In the presence of fever antibiotic therapy is indicated particularly if the patient's general condition makes him a good candidate for pneumonia.

### Chronic Bronchitis

Chronic bronchitis is one of the most common problems of the aged (Sheldon 1948). It is usually associated with a long history of bronchial infections and exposure to dust and other chemical or physical irritants. Recurrent infections of the upper airway such as sinusitis are also contributory. In susceptible patients tobacco smoking may be a primary factor in the development of chronic bronchitis (Clough 1958). The pathologic characteristics of the disease include loss of areas of normal mucosa, infiltration with mononuclear cells, increased fibrous tissue and hypertrophy of the mucous glands.

The primary symptom is a chronic cough with or without expectoration. The sputum may be purulent or gray mucoid in character and hemoptysis is common. In the elderly coughing may occasionally lead to syncope (Derbes and Kerr 1955). Loud in

spiratory and expiratory musical rales may be heard on physical examination, and in many cases findings of obstructive emphysema are also present. The sputum contains a mixture of organisms. A diagnosis of chronic bronchitis should always be critically reviewed by the physician because of the number of illnesses that produce the primary symptoms of cough, expectoration and occasional hemoptysis. The differential diagnosis of cough in the elderly should include acute and chronic pulmonary infections, circulatory disorders, and tumor (Arkin 1956).

Treatment of chronic bronchitis is most successful when the etiologic agent can be identified and eliminated. This is not often easy. If the illness is due to inhalation of various chemical or physical irritants such as dust, fumes or smoke, the patient may be helped to avoid exposure by the use of air conditioning or a mask. When tobacco smoking is a factor, its elimination provides striking relief. Symptomatic treatment consists of the measures mentioned in the preceding section on acute bronchitis. Although it is occasionally necessary to suppress the cough reflex, agents for this purpose should be used cautiously since elimination of secretions will also be inhibited. When signs of infection are present, antibiotic therapy is advisable.

### **Bronchiectasis**

This disease process is characterized by sacular or cylindrical dilations of the bronchi. Bronchiectasis may be limited to one lobe or several lobes may be involved. In three fourths of the patients the disease is located at the lung base. Although bronchiectasis is characteristically a disease of the younger age group, effective therapy permits many patients to survive to old age. Sometimes the earliest manifestations of the disease are evident after 45 years of age. The etiology of bronchiectasis remains unknown. Congenital abnormalities of the bronchi and pulmonary circulation may be responsible and localized bronchiectasis can occur behind an obstruction of the airway. Bronchiectasis is often preceded by other acute or chronic pulmonary disease and in animals the aging process apparently is responsible for a type of bronchiectasis (Saxton *et al* 1946).

Cough and expectoration are the usual symptoms. Although the

quantity of sputum may be small large amounts (as much as one to two pints a day) are characteristic Change of position increases sputum production particularly when the head and thorax are dependent Hemoptysis is frequently severe and most troublesome Bronchiectasis should be suspected in elderly patients with cough and hemoptysis, and in those who have recurrent pneumonia It is a disease frequently attended by general systemic manifestations, which incapacitate the patient Recurrent attacks of pleural pain, fever night sweats weight loss hemoptysis and dyspnea may all contribute to the patient's disability

With acute exacerbation of the disease or as it progresses chronically medium loud inspiratory rales may be heard over the involved areas Clubbing of the fingers and toes is often seen and occasionally there is both clinical and radiologic evidence of pulmonary osteoarthritis

The differential diagnosis of cough expectoration and hemoptysis in older patients include many possibilities Sputum examination and culture are essential to rule out specific bacterial and fungous infections Bronchoscopy is indicated to detect possible obstruction of the airways The diagnosis of bronchiectasis is made by the demonstration of saccular or cylindrical dilatation with bronchography Bronchograms should be done in the aged only when they will be of definite value because they are taxing for the debilitated patient

Both the diagnostic and the therapeutic program for elderly patients should take into account the individual as a whole (Pittman 1955) The symptoms of bronchiectasis can be controlled with a good medical regimen and as in other chronic illnesses adequate rest and good diet are prerequisites to therapy Effective postural drainage practiced two to three times a day is essential The elderly patient often requires assistance with postural drainage and if he is completely bedridden it will be helpful to elevate the foot of the bed The use of a bronchodilator drug and detergent as an aerosol before postural drainage promotes the flow of secretions During acute exacerbations when the patient has fever and other signs of acute infection oral or parenteral antibiotic therapy is indicated A combination of penicillin (0.8 to 1.2 million units per day) and streptomycin (2 Gm per day) is most effective Any of the broad spectrum antibiotic or sulfonamide drugs can be used,

spiratory and expiratory musical rales may be heard on physical examination, and in many cases findings of obstructive emphysema are also present. The sputum contains a mixture of organisms. A diagnosis of chronic bronchitis should always be critically reviewed by the physician because of the number of illnesses that produce the primary symptoms of cough, expectoration and occasional hemoptysis. The differential diagnosis of cough in the elderly should include acute and chronic pulmonary infections, circulatory disorders and tumor (Arkin, 1956).

Treatment of chronic bronchitis is most successful when the etiologic agent can be identified and eliminated. This is not often easy. If the illness is due to inhalation of various chemical or physical irritants such as dust, fumes or smoke, the patient may be helped to avoid exposure by the use of air conditioning or a mask. When tobacco smoking is a factor, its elimination provides striking relief. Symptomatic treatment consists of the measures mentioned in the preceding section on acute bronchitis. Although it is occasionally necessary to suppress the cough reflex, agents for this purpose should be used cautiously, since elimination of secretions will also be inhibited. When signs of infection are present antibiotic therapy is advisable.

### **Bronchiectasis**

This disease process is characterized by saccular or cylindrical dilatations of the bronchi. Bronchiectasis may be limited to one lobe, or several lobes may be involved. In three fourths of the patients the disease is located at the lung base. Although bronchiectasis is characteristically a disease of the younger age group, effective therapy permits many patients to survive to old age. Sometimes the earliest manifestations of the disease are evident after 15 years of age. The etiology of bronchiectasis remains unknown. Congenital abnormalities of the bronchi and pulmonary circulation may be responsible and localized bronchiectasis can occur behind an obstruction of the airway. Bronchiectasis is often preceded by other acute or chronic pulmonary disease and in animals the aging process apparently is responsible for a type of bronchiectasis (Saxton *et al* 1946).

Cough and expectoration are the usual symptoms. Although the

quantity of sputum may be small large amounts (as much as one to two pints a day) are characteristic Change of position increases sputum production particularly when the head and thorax are dependent Hemoptysis is frequently severe and most troublesome Bronchiectasis should be suspected in elderly patients with cough and hemoptysis and in those who have recurrent pneumonia It is a disease frequently attended by general systemic manifestations which incapacitate the patient Recurrent attacks of pleural pain fever night sweats weight loss hemoptysis and dyspnea may all contribute to the patient's disability

With acute exacerbation of the disease or as it progresses chronically medium loud inspiratory rales may be heard over the involved areas Clubbing of the fingers and toes is often seen and occasionally there is both clinical and radiologic evidence of pulmonary osteoarthropathy

The differential diagnosis of cough expectoration and hemoptysis in older patients includes many possibilities Sputum examination and culture are essential to rule out specific bacterial and fungous infections Bronchoscopy is indicated to detect possible obstruction of the airways The diagnosis of bronchiectasis is made by the demonstration of saccular or cylindrical dilatation with bronchography Bronchograms should be done in the aged only when they will be of definite value because they are taxing for the debilitated patient

Both the diagnostic and the therapeutic program for elderly patients should take into account the individual as a whole (Pittman 1955) The symptoms of bronchiectasis can be controlled with a good medical regimen and as in other chronic illnesses adequate rest and good diet are prerequisites to therapy Effective postural drainage practiced two to three times a day is essential The elderly patient often requires assistance with postural drainage and if he is completely bedridden it will be helpful to elevate the foot of the bed The use of a bronchodilator drug and detergent as an aerosol before postural drainage promotes the flow of secretions During acute exacerbations when the patient has fever and other signs of acute infection oral or parenteral antibiotic therapy is indicated A combination of penicillin (0.8 to 1.2 million units per day) and streptomycin (2 Gm per day) is most effective Any of the broad spectrum antibiotic or sulfonamide drugs can be used,



however depending on the circumstances of the illness. Aerosol antibiotic therapy has been used, but it is not as effective as oral or parenteral medication and increases the chance for development of hypersensitivity to the antibiotic. Finally, every effort should be made to prevent respiratory infections. One method is the prophylactic administration of a chemotherapeutic agent such as Gantrisin, in dosages of 1.0 to 1.5 Gm per day.

Surgical removal of the involved areas is the only cure for bronchiectasis. In the past, this has not been considered feasible for most elderly patients. Surgery should certainly not be considered for a patient with extensive bilateral disease coexistent heart disease, or impairment of pulmonary function. However, if the elderly individual is in good health and has localized disease and pulmonary function near the normal for his age, consideration should be given to surgical treatment. Occasionally surgery may be necessitated by severe recurrent hemoptysis.

### ALLERGIC DISORDERS

Allergy is usually defined as the capacity of an individual to react adversely to a foreign substance after initial exposure. Although bronchial asthma is the most important pulmonary disorder of allergic origin, the collagen diseases, Loeffler's syndrome, sarcoid and certain pneumoconioses should be included in this category (Sieker, 1959). Asthma resulting from allergy is predominantly an illness of the younger age group but may continue into the later decades of life. In the elderly individual a different type of asthma develops in association with infection and chronic bronchitis. It has been estimated that almost half the cases of asthma are found after the age of 40.

A number of classifications of asthma have been suggested, but the simplest is to consider the illness as either extrinsic (atopic) or intrinsic (nonatopic). Extrinsic asthma is characterized by paroxysms of wheezing, dyspnea and cough occurring in the young individual with a strong family history of allergic disorders. Intrinsic asthma occurs in older patients, tends to be chronic and may or may not be related to an earlier history of asthma. Definite allergens and infections, physical factors, fumes and emotional stresses may produce asthma in the elderly patient (Howe and

owe 1947 Kern 1951, Forman and Blatt 1954) A type of wheezing and dyspnea called cardiac asthma should not be confused with the bronchial disease being considered in this section. The pathologic physiology of asthma has been the subject of investigation for many years. Three basic processes are involved. These are (1) edema and congestion of the bronchial mucosa, (2) excessive production of tenacious sputum and (3) probably least important bronchospasm or constriction of bronchial muscles. The exact mechanism by which these changes in the airways are produced is complex and not well understood. Histamine, serotonin, acetylcholine and electrolyte derangements have all been implicated but to date none of these factors has been definitely established as the link between etiologic agents and obstruction of the airway.

The elderly patient with asthma usually has a chronic illness. Some degree of wheezing and dyspnea particularly on exertion is present most of the time. Cough productive of clear thick mucoid sputum is also noted. During acute attacks the individual may have extreme respiratory embarrassment with wheezing, dyspnea, cough and cyanosis. During the chronic stage the patient may show the physical findings of emphysema (to be discussed later). In the paroxysm of a severe attack the patient sits upright with all respiratory muscles tensed and characteristically leans forward on his elbows. In addition to the findings of emphysema many loud whistling wheezing rales may be heard throughout both lung fields.

Laboratory findings include eosinophilia in the peripheral blood and Charcot Leyden crystals, Curschmann's spirals and eosinophils in the sputum. Chest roentgenograms during the chronic stage will show the changes of emphysema and in acute paroxysms will show hyperinflation of the lung. The chest film is also useful in ruling out pneumonia and pneumothorax.

Treatment may be divided into measures that are designed simply to relieve an attack of asthma and those designed to prevent attacks (Sheldon *et al* 1954). Epinephrine (1:1000) provides almost immediate relief from an acute attack when given subcutaneously or intramuscularly in doses of 0.2 cc to 0.4 cc. This drug may also be used as an aerosol in a 1:100 dilution. Ephedrine may be given in place of epinephrine but is not as effective in acute attacks. Isuprel (1:200) is a good aerosol medication and

often is combined with Alevure or another liquefying agent. A compressor or oxygen tank may be used with the nebulizer to provide an adequate spray. Aminophylline is an effective medication that may be given slowly by vein in doses of 0.25 to 0.5 Gm. Potassium iodide is an effective oral agent for liquefying the sputum. Sensitivity to iodides is not uncommon, however, and should be suspected whenever increased lacrimation, rhinorrhea, swelling of the parotid gland, fever, or senescent eruption follows iodide therapy. Steam vaporization, particularly during the winter months, will help liquefy the sputum and give subjective relief. Cortisone, the cortisone derivatives and corticotropin have proved to be extremely effective in acute asthma and status asthmaticus. Consideration can be given to long term therapy with corticosteroids in low dosages but the possibility of adverse effects should be recognized. The antihistamine drugs, which are helpful in other allergic disorders, are of no value. An acute attack of asthma may require bronchoscopic drainage and the use of an exsufflator to help clear the airway.

Anxiety is often an important feature of asthma both as a cause and as a result and measures to relieve it are desirable. In general agents such as morphine and Demerol should be avoided and barbiturates may be responsible for drug reactions and increased excitability in the elderly patient. Chloral hydrate is probably the least dangerous sedative for the older person. Reserpine compounds are best avoided in the elderly because of the frequency with which depression occurs. Tranquilizing agents may be useful for the very anxious patient.

While the elderly patient is less responsive to allergens than younger individuals it is advisable for him to avoid any factors to which he has a known sensitivity as determined by the history and skin tests. If the sensitizing agents cannot be avoided consideration should be given to desensitization therapy although this is less effective in old age than in youth. Infection has been recognized as a factor responsible for intrinsic asthma in elderly persons. Prophylactic antimicrobial therapy is favored by some and a sulfonamide drug such as Gantrisin (10 to 15 Gm per day) is preferred to the antibiotics. Bacterial vaccines have been employed but the efficacy of this type of treatment has not been fully established.

Asthma, even in the elderly patient, is a disease associated with

low mortality and high morbidity. The elderly asthmatic can die during an acute paroxysm however, and chronic asthma may lead to the complications of pulmonary fibrosis, emphysema and cor pulmonale resulting in pulmonary insufficiency and cardiac decompensation.

## PULMONARY FIBROSIS AND EMPHYSEMA

### Fibrosis

Pulmonary fibrosis is one of the most common abnormalities found in the lungs of patients over 40 years of age. A number of factors contribute to its development and usually pulmonary emphysema occurs in association with the process. Exposure to fumes and dust, chronic infection and illnesses of unknown etiology such as sarcoid result in fibrosis. Diffuse interstitial fibrosis and the collagen diseases have been recognized more frequently as causes of this condition (Rubin and Lubliner, 1957, Read 1958). Etiologic agents or illnesses are listed in Table 16-2.

Pulmonary fibrosis is usually associated with some degree of emphysema and the symptoms and signs are related to the com-

TABLE 16-2 CAUSES OF PULMONARY FIBROSIS

---

1 Infections	
a Tuberculosis	
b Fungous diseases	
c Bronchiectasis	
2 Pneumoconioses	
a Silicosis	f Talc fibrosis
b Asbestosis	g Siderosis
c Bauxite (Shaver's disease)	h Bagassosis
d Berylliosis	i Byssinosis
e Diatomite fibrosis	j Anthracosilicosis
3 Noxious fumes and gases	
a Sulphur dioxide	d Acetone
b Nitrogen oxides	e Ammonia
c Metal fumes	f Carbon tetrachloride
4 Asthma and bronchitis	
5 Sarcoidosis	
6 Collagen diseases	
Interstitial pneumonia (Hamman Rich syndrome)	
8 Radiation	
9 Farmer's lung (moldy forage)	
10 Lipid pneumonia	

---

bined process. The primary process producing the fibrosis may cause cyanosis and dyspnea, because it impairs diffusion of oxygen across the alveolar capillary membrane. The fibrosis itself may restrict ventilatory movement enough to produce dyspnea and signs of pulmonary insufficiency. Cor pulmonale and heart failure may be serious complications of this process.

From the physiologic standpoint pulmonary fibrosis without emphysema is quite different from the combination of the two (Wright and Filley, 1951). With fibrosis alone vital capacity and total lung capacity are usually reduced. Arterial oxygen saturation is normal, and carbon dioxide tension may be lowered. In more advanced forms of the disease, arterial oxygen unsaturation occurs and the carbon dioxide tension is usually less than 40 mm of mercury. Decrease in oxygen tension occurs primarily because the thickened alveolar walls cause an increase in the alveolar capillary gradient for oxygen.

There is no satisfactory treatment for chronic pulmonary fibrosis. The condition may be prevented if factors such as exposure to silica dust are avoided early in life. There is some evidence that, in such processes as Boeck's sarcoid, steroid therapy provides relief from symptoms, but it is not certain that the development of fibrosis is prevented. If the fibrosis is limited to a lobe or segment of a lobe as in pulmonary tuberculosis, surgical removal may be beneficial.

### **Cystic Disease of the Lung**

Cystic changes in a portion of the lung are fairly common in later life. They may be congenital or may result from disease processes such as tuberculosis, fungous infections, or abscesses. Occasionally cystic changes occur without recognized antecedent pulmonary disease. The cysts usually communicate directly with the tracheobronchial tree and air and fluid pass in and out freely. With distortion or infection of the bronchus obstruction will sometimes produce a tension cyst that collapses a major portion of the lung.

The symptoms of cystic disease are dyspnea, chronic cough, and recurrent pulmonary infection. The diagnosis is usually evident on examination of the chest roentgenogram.

Treatment has two objectives: (1) prevention or correction of

infections in the cystic areas and (2) improvement of ventilation by surgical obliteration of the cysts (Fitzpatrick *et al* 1957) Physiologic studies aid in the selection of patients for surgical removal of blebs with a view to alleviating dyspnea that is troublesome or incapacitating for the individual (Baldwin *et al*, 1950) Significant observations are the measurement of intrapulmonary gas mixing—for example by the open circuit helium method—and determination of arterial carbon dioxide tension In the presence of cysts that are impinging on otherwise good lung function, the helium washout will be prolonged and carbon dioxide tension will be slightly low (less than 40 mm of mercury) Under these circumstances good results can be expected to follow obliteration of the cyst or cysts particularly when they are limited to one region of the lung If the helium washout is prolonged and the carbon dioxide tension is higher than normal a poor result may be expected as far as respiratory symptoms are concerned

### Emphysema

Pulmonary emphysema is another condition prevalent in the geriatric age group The chief anatomic features are pulmonary hyperinflation rupture of alveoli and a decrease in aerating surfaces destruction of the pulmonary capillary bed inflammation and degeneration of the bronchi and obliterative changes in the bronchial circulation Classifications of pulmonary emphysema are based on etiology clinical findings and function alterations So called senile emphysema is hyperinflation of the lungs which is due to change in the chest size and configuration (Kountz and Alexander, 1934) It occurs typically in the elderly obese individual with a pendulous abdomen and a low diaphragm Most pulmonary emphysema of clinical importance is obstructive in type Some cases of pulmonary emphysema associated with large cysts appear to result from primary atrophy of the lung tissue (Richards 1956)

**PATHOLOGIC PHYSIOLOGY** Obstructive emphysema is the result of chronic or recurrent disease of the airway loss of pulmonary elasticity and change in the chest size and configuration (Dayman 1951 Mead *et al* 1955 West *et al* 1951 Ebert 1956) The principal functional derangement is an increase in airway resistance during expiration The bronchi normally narrow to some degree

during expiration, but in conditions producing emphysema this narrowing is exaggerated by thickening of bronchial mucosa, excessive accumulation of mucus, and bronchospasm. The loss of peribronchial elastic tissue, which normally holds the bronchi open, contributes to obstruction of the airway. The obstruction causes hyperinflation of the lungs, with resultant rupture of the alveolar

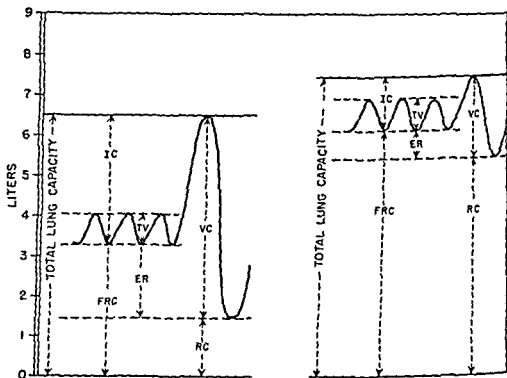


FIG 16.1 (Right) Diagrammatic presentation of subdivisions of lung volume in an elderly patient with emphysema showing a marked increase in total lung volume and residual capacity and a decrease in vital capacity. (Left) Normal subdivisions of lung volume. VC = vital capacity, IC = inspiratory capacity, TV = tidal volume, ER = expiratory reserve, FRC = functional residual capacity, RC = residual capacity.

wall loss of aerating surface, and destruction of the capillary bed. These changes in turn favor progression of the process in the bronchi.

Most of the recent advances in the diagnosis and evaluation of pulmonary emphysema are the result of pathophysiologic studies on the lungs (Baldwin *et al* 1949, Barach and Bickerman 1956, Comroe, 1955). Figure 16.1 shows the changes in lung volumes observed in a case of obstructive pulmonary emphysema as compared to normal values. The total lung volume is usually increased

and the functional residual capacity or the resting lung volume is greatly increased. This change occurs because the thorax through both phases of respiration tends to remain in the position of near maximum inspiration. The residual capacity of the lung (that portion of the lung volume which cannot be changed by maximal expiration) is also greatly increased while the vital capacity is usually decreased. The ratio of residual capacity to total lung volume is above the upper limits of normal (35 per cent).

Because of the change in resistance in the airways particularly during expiration the ventilation rate is altered. The timed vital capacity is decreased with less than 80 per cent of the vital capacity being delivered in the first second. In most cases the maximal breathing capacity normally 80 to 120 liters a minute depending on age and sex is markedly decreased. In addition to this alteration in the normal mechanics of ventilation (Fry *et al* 1954) intrapulmonary gas mixing is much poorer in the presence of pulmonary emphysema than in the normal lung (Courmand *et al* 1941 Hickam *et al* 1954). The diffusion capacity of the emphysematous lung is also decreased and the end results are arterial oxygen unsaturation and carbon dioxide retention. The degree of hypoxemia and hypercapnia is dependent on the severity of emphysema and on any additional embarrassment of ventilation superimposed by acute processes such as infection.

**CLINICAL FINDINGS** The patient with senile emphysema may have no symptoms or may have only slight dyspnea with exertion. In obstructive emphysema the symptoms of the primary process may be responsible for many of the patient's complaints. An emphysematous patient with bronchial asthma for example has primarily the symptoms associated with paroxysms of asthma. When pulmonary emphysema becomes symptomatic the most common complaint is dyspnea first on exertion then as the disease progresses at rest. In contrast to heart failure emphysema is rarely responsible for orthopnea and the patient may find that he is *more* comfortable recumbent or even with the head dependent. When the disease has progressed sufficiently cyanosis may be observed. Usually the illness is prolonged although in some cases pulmonary insufficiency or heart failure develops rapidly after the first signs of the condition appear.

When the disease is moderately advanced the patient appears



thin, dyspneic, and chronically ill. The skin is dry, and pigmentation may be increased. Characteristically the chest is described as barrel shaped, with an increase in the anterior-posterior diameter. Although severe symptomatic emphysema may be present without this apparent change in chest shape. The intercostal spaces are widened and retracted. The patient makes aborted inspiratory movements of the anterior portion of the chest, and by measurement the circumference may change only an inch or less. The chest is hyperresonant to percussion, the diaphragm is low and moves poorly, and breath sounds are distant or absent. Blood pressure varies but in severe emphysema hypotension has been observed. The heart size is difficult to determine accurately. The remainder of the physical findings are dependent on the presence or absence of complications of emphysema. Clubbing of the fingers is occasionally noted in association with hypoxia.

Classically emphysema produces laboratory evidence of polycythemia. This is often not the case, however, especially when carbon dioxide retention has occurred. The chest roentgenogram shows wide intercostal spaces, a low diaphragm and increased radiolucency of the lungs (Fig 16-2). Frequently, however, the appearance of the chest film correlates very poorly with objective measures of pulmonary function. The electrocardiogram may be normal or may show right axis deviation and right ventricular strain.

**TREATMENT** Therapy is aimed primarily at improving efficiency of ventilation and preventing progression of the emphysema (Segal and Dufiono 1953). Vigorous exertion should be avoided. The use of bronchodilator drugs such as Isuprel aerosol, two to three times a day, followed by breathing exercises and postural drainage helps maintain clear airways. A pressure source for the nebulizer or an intermittent positive pressure breathing apparatus provides effective inhalation therapy. To obtain maximum and even distribution of the aerosol it is recommended that the patient inspire and expire slowly. Antibiotics should be used when there is evidence of infection. Prophylactic chemotherapy may also be indicated during the winter months and an agent such as Cintrisin (1 to 15 Cm per day) is suggested. Continuous therapy with small doses of one of the corticosteroids may also be helpful.

A feature that may complicate the illness and its management is

the depression that often occurs in geriatric patients with chronic disease. It is particularly striking in individuals with pulmonary emphysema because of the chronic progressive nature of the illness.



FIG. 16-2 Roentgenogram showing large cysts or bullae in the lungs of an elderly patient with pulmonary emphysema.

the marked disability and the slow response to intensive treatment. Patients should be given repeated encouragement and support, and should be provided with the opportunity to develop interests that do not tax their pulmonary reserve.

In spite of therapy, obstructive pulmonary emphysema is a pro-

thin, dyspneic, and chronically ill. The skin is dry, and pigmentation may be increased. Characteristically the chest is described as barrel shaped with an increase in the anterior posterior diameter, although severe symptomatic emphysema may be present without this apparent change in chest shape. The intercostal spaces are widened and retracted. The patient makes aborted inspiratory movements of the anterior portion of the chest, and by measurement the circumference may change only an inch or less. The chest is hyperresonant to percussion, the diaphragm is low and moves poorly, and breath sounds are distant or absent. Blood pressure varies, but in severe emphysema hypotension has been observed. The heart size is difficult to determine accurately. The remainder of the physical findings are dependent on the presence or absence of complications of emphysema. Clubbing of the fingers is occasionally noted in association with hypoxia.

Classically emphysema produces laboratory evidence of polycythemia. This is often not the case, however, especially when carbon dioxide retention has occurred. The chest roentgenogram shows wide intercostal spaces, a low diaphragm, and increased radiolucency of the lungs (Fig 16-2). Frequently, however, the appearance of the chest film correlates very poorly with objective measures of pulmonary function. The electrocardiogram may be normal or may show right axis deviation and right ventricular strain.

**TREATMENT** Therapy is aimed primarily at improving efficiency of ventilation and preventing progression of the emphysema (Segal and Dulfono 1953). Vigorous exertion should be avoided. The use of bronchodilator drugs such as Isuprel aerosol, two to three times a day, followed by breathing exercises and postural drainage, helps maintain clear airways. A pressure source for the nebulizer or an intermittent positive pressure breathing apparatus provides effective inhalation therapy. To obtain maximum and even distribution of the aerosol, it is recommended that the patient inspire and expire slowly. Antibiotics should be used when there is evidence of infection. Prophylactic chemotherapy may also be indicated during the winter months, and an agent such as Gantrisin (1 to 1.5 Gm per day) is suggested. Continuous therapy with small doses of one of the corticosteroids may also be helpful.

A feature that may complicate the illness and its management is

tube is put in place and breathing is assisted with an automatic respirator such as the Drinker tank respirator an intermittent positive pressure valve with automatic cycling device or a positive negative automatic resuscitator. Oxygen is usually required, and under these circumstances can be administered safely. An intravenous infusion of corticotropin hydrocortisone or a similar derivative of the corticosteroids is necessary. In the presence of hypotension and shock norepinephrine should be given by infusion. Because infection frequently occurs antibiotics should also be started. If evidence of congestive heart failure is present digitalization and the use of diuretics are necessary.

If the patient does not respond within 24 to 36 hours this program should be modified. A tracheotomy may be required to reduce the respiratory dead space and to allow bronchial drainage by aspiration. In these circumstances the tank respirator should then be used to assist breathing.

### Cor Pulmonale

A number of factors operative in pulmonary fibrosis and emphysema contribute to the development of pulmonary hypertension and congestive heart failure (Harvey *et al* 1951). These include (1) a decrease in the pulmonary capillary bed (2) an increase in cardiac output (3) an increase in blood volume and viscosity and (4) hypoxemia and probably hypercapnia. Left ventricular decomposition frequently occurs in combination with right sided failure.

Because the symptoms and signs of cor pulmonale and heart failure are similar to those of progressive pulmonary emphysema recognition of these complications is difficult. In addition to exertional dyspnea the patient with heart failure has orthopnea, ankle edema and ascites. Unfortunately the onset of cardiac decomposition is insidious and the condition may be far advanced before it is recognized.

Physical findings helpful in making the diagnosis include engorgement of the neck veins when the patient is upright, a loud and split pulmonic second sound with a pulmonic shock, gallop rhythm, hepatomegaly and ankle edema. The electrocardiogram shows right axis deviation and the changes of ventricular strain. Venous pressure is elevated but the circulation time is usually normal.

gressive disease, although the rate of progression may vary from case to case. Often the gradual progression is interrupted by the development of acute ventilatory insufficiency, or complicated by cor pulmonale and congestive heart failure.

### Acute Ventilatory Insufficiency

In severe emphysema chronic alveolar hypoventilation produces some degree of hypoxia and hypercapnia. The respiratory center becomes acclimatized to the elevated carbon dioxide with the result that hypoxia is the stimulus for respiration. Acute bronchial or pulmonary infections, congestive heart failure, over sedation or any process that impairs ventilation further may contribute to oxygen unsaturation and carbon dioxide retention. Hypoxia requires the administration of increased concentrations of oxygen but this removes the stimulus for breathing and accelerates the retention of carbon dioxide (Hickam *et al*, 1952).

Ventilatory failure and carbon dioxide intoxication with or without hypoxia may produce a neurologic and circulatory disorder (Sieker and Hickam, 1956), characterized by alterations in the state of consciousness, unreactive pupils, pupilledema, retinal hemorrhages, hyperreflexia or hyporeflexia, abnormal superficial reflexes and circulatory failure with the clinical picture of shock. Death occurs if the process is not halted or reversed.

Carbon dioxide narcosis should be suspected when patients with chronic pulmonary disease become confused, semistuporous or unconscious. In these circumstances a high carbon dioxide combining power in the blood and an acid urine serve to confirm the diagnosis which can be established by the determination of the pH and carbon dioxide tension of the arterial blood.

Treatment of carbon dioxide narcosis requires a combination of measures. If the patient is unconscious hypoventilative and hypotensive aid to ventilation and support of the cardiovascular system are essential. The following therapeutic program has been successful in preventing death of the patient from carbon dioxide intoxication (Sieker and Hickam, 1956). After the possibility of some complication such as a pneumothorax has been eliminated a bronchoscope is passed to relieve obstruction of the airway and to instill bronchodilator drugs deep in the bronchi. Following this an endotracheal

tube is put in place and breathing is assisted with an automatic respirator such as the Drinker tank respirator an intermittent positive pressure valve with automatic cycling device or a positive negative automatic resuscitator. Oxygen is usually required and under these circumstances can be administered safely. An intravenous infusion of corticotropin hydrocortisone or a similar derivative of the corticosteroids is necessary. In the presence of hypotension and shock norepinephrine should be given by infusion. Because infection frequently occurs antibiotics should also be started. If evidence of congestive heart failure is present digitalization and the use of diuretics are necessary.

If the patient does not respond within 24 to 36 hours this program should be modified. A tracheotomy may be required to reduce the respiratory dead space and to allow bronchial drainage by aspiration. In these circumstances the tank respirator should then be used to assist breathing.

### Cor Pulmonale

A number of factors operative in pulmonary fibrosis and emphysema contribute to the development of pulmonary hypertension and congestive heart failure (Harvey *et al* 1951). These include (1) a decrease in the pulmonary capillary bed (2) an increase in cardiac output (3) an increase in blood volume and viscosity and (4) hypoxemia and probably hypercapnia. Left ventricular decompensation frequently occurs in combination with right sided failure.

Because the symptoms and signs of cor pulmonale and heart failure are similar to those of progressive pulmonary emphysema recognition of these complications is difficult. In addition to exertional dyspnea the patient with heart failure has orthopnea, ankle edema and ascites. Unfortunately the onset of cardiac decompensation is insidious and the condition may be far advanced before it is recognized.

Physical findings helpful in making the diagnosis include engorgement of the neck veins when the patient is upright, a loud and split pulmonic second sound with a pulmonic shock gallop rhythm, hepatomegaly and ankle edema. The electrocardiogram shows right axis deviation and the changes of ventricular strain. Venous pressure is elevated but the circulation time is usually normal.

When the physician has reason to suspect congestive failure resulting from cor pulmonale, it is often necessary to treat the patient for this condition even though the diagnosis cannot be unequivocally established. In such cases management of emphysema should be continued as outlined earlier in this section. Hypoxia should be corrected, digitalization, salt restriction, and the use of diuretics are necessary (Harvey *et al*, 1953). The pulmonary blood volume may be reduced by phlebotomy or by the use of vasodilator drugs. It should be emphasized that the patient's response to therapy may be gradual, and that the strict regimen should be followed diligently even though immediate improvement is not obvious.

## PULMONARY EMBOLIZATION AND INFARCTION

Pulmonary embolization is a frequent and serious complication of many chronic illnesses. The incidence of embolization is known to be greatest in the older age group. In approximately 75 to 90 per cent of the cases emboli arise from thrombi in the venous system of the lower extremities and pelvic area; however, they may also originate from the right side of the heart and occasionally from veins of the upper extremities.

### Pathologic Physiology

Three factors are considered important in the development of thrombi in the venous system. These are (1) slowing of the venous circulation, (2) damage to the vein wall, and (3) alterations in the coagulation of blood. Venous stasis often occurs in debilitated elderly patients and may be exaggerated by heart failure, surgery, or hypotension. The factors responsible for damage to the vessel wall are not usually evident, but it is known that immobilization, pressure, infection, and trauma can injure the vein. Coagulation of blood has been shown to be altered in such circumstances as surgery, polycythemia, and cancer. Heart failure, myocardial damage, and arrhythmias are likely to produce thrombi in the right side of the heart. As a rule, the occurrence of embolization is less likely if the thrombus is surrounded by a good deal of inflammation, which promotes organization of the clot.

Once the embolus has arrived in the lung infarction may or may not be produced. The base of the lung, particularly the right lower lobe is the area most frequently involved. The consequences of pulmonary embolization are varied and the exact course of events is not well understood. Mechanical reflexive and humoral factors have been implicated (Parker and Smith 1953). Infarction follows embolization in about half of the recognized cases, and is more likely to occur in the presence of infection or congestion (Roach and Laufman 1955). Immediate death is rare although massive embolization with critical occlusion of the pulmonary artery may result in almost immediate death or in severe shock and signs of acute right sided heart failure.

### Clinical Findings

The clinical signs of pulmonary embolization are extremely varied depending on whether it occurs alone or with infarction (Short 1952 Wolff 1952 Fowler and Ballinger 1954 Wright and Foley 1955 Krause and Silverblatt 1955). Many episodes actually are asymptomatic. Dyspnea is probably the most common complaint. Chest pain which may be pleuritic or substernal in nature is the initial symptom in about one third of the patients. Anxiety restlessness sweating fever and tachycardia may also appear initially. Cough hemoptysis and cyanosis usually focus the physician's attention on the lungs.

If the process is severe the manifestations of circulatory collapse exanthesis fever and tachycardia may be present. Physical findings in the chest will vary. Large infarcts produce signs of consolidation increased vocal fremitus dullness to percussion and bronchial breathing. In addition inspiratory rales and a friction rub may be heard. With small infarcts only decreased breath sounds and scattered rales can be detected. Evidence of pleural fluid is frequently found instead of consolidation or in association with it. In many cases no abnormalities are noted on examination of the chest.

Careful inspection of the legs for evidence of thrombophlebitis is most important when a diagnosis of pulmonary embolization is being considered. Tenderness heat redness and swelling of the leg especially along the course of a vein or in the calf suggest venous disease. Homans sign (1939) and pain produced by the m



flation of a sphygmomanometer about the calf (Lowenberg 1954) are special tests which aid in the diagnosis. It is most important to suspect the diagnosis in a potential candidate for embolization and observe him closely and frequently.

Leukocytosis and elevation of the sedimentation rate are common. The serum bilirubin level is frequently increased. The serum transaminase level (SGOT) may be elevated late in the illness in myocardial infarction, on the other hand, the increase is observed early. The roentgenographic findings are varied, and may be negative (Short, 1951). Within the first 12 hours an area of increased radiolucency may be seen. After this, the involved area shows an increase in density, usually wedge shaped or triangular. There may be evidence of fluid, elevation of the homolateral leaf of the diaphragm, and prominent pulmonary vasculature. Linear, plate-like densities may persist for long periods. Cavitation can occur (Southery and O'Loughlin, 1953). When fluid is present, thoracentesis frequently demonstrates a serosanguineous or bloody pleural effusion. Evaluated with the rest of the clinical picture, this finding is most helpful in establishing the diagnosis. The electrocardiogram shows a variety of changes including the S1 Q3 pattern, depression of the S1 S2 S3 and ST segments, right axis deviation, flattening or inversion of T waves in 2, 3 and precordial leads, peaked P waves, and the appearance of right sided conduction delay. Arrhythmias are frequently observed.

Pulmonary embolism is most often confused with pneumonia and myocardial infarction. In the elderly patient recurrent pulmonary embolization occurring without signs or symptoms may be responsible for intractable heart failure. Recurrent embolization occasionally leads to chronic cor pulmonale which progresses to congestive heart failure.

## Treatment

Acute massive embolization allows little time for treatment. Because death is often sudden. The patient who does not die within a few minutes usually has severe anxiety, evidences of shock and respiratory failure. Demerol is indicated to allay apprehension, oxygen to reduce hypoxemia and norepinephrine to maintain blood pressure. Digitalis may be beneficial when intrinsic heart disease

is responsible for associated failure Antibiotic therapy to prevent infection is advised by some authors

It is now generally agreed that anticoagulation therapy should be instituted in an attempt to prevent further embolization (Marks *et al* 1954 DeLaughter and Anlyan 1956 Olwin *et al* 1958, Hunter 1955) In the immediate postembolic period heparin is the preferred anticoagulant For prolonged anticoagulation therapy in an ambulatory patient one of the coumarin compounds is preferable If the patient has a past history of bleeding particularly from the gastrointestinal tract or if anticoagulants do not increase the clotting time sufficiently it is necessary to consider ligation of the vena cava This is an effective means for preventing embolization from the lower half of the body (Madden 1954 Bowers 1956) Early ambulation the use of elastic stockings and passive exercise or massage of the leg appear to be indicated to prevent venous thromboses although clinical evaluations of these measures have been disappointing

## TUMORS

### Bronchogenic Carcinoma

Carcinoma of the bronchus occurs as frequently as cancer of the prostate or stomach Approximately 80 per cent of primary tumors of the lung are found in patients between the ages of 40 and 70 years men being affected much more often than women The extension of the average life span and the control of many acute illnesses help to explain the increased number of bronchogenic carcinomas diagnosed in recent years but it is generally agreed that a substantial increase has taken place It also has been found that the death rate from lung cancer in older patients is increasing (Hammond and Mackle 1956)

Several types of bronchogenic carcinoma are observed Most frequent is the squamous cell tumor which develops primarily in large bronchi and metastasizes more slowly than others Second is the undifferentiated or anaplastic type which is usually very malignant Least frequent is the adenocarcinoma which occurs in smaller bronchi and metastasizes rapidly Studies on the incidence of carcinoma in groups classified by age sex habits and occupation have

provided some interesting theories as to the cause of bronchogenic carcinoma. At the present time excessive cigarette smoking in inhalation of air polluted with industrial gases and possibly inhalation of radioactive materials are suspected as causative agents (Hammond and Machle, 1956)

**CLINICAL FINDINGS** Unfortunately, there are no very early symptoms of bronchogenic carcinoma, and the first symptoms to appear are often minor and difficult to interpret (Albritton, *et al* 1952 Farber 1954). The patient's first complaints are usually non-specific: slight cough, a localized audible wheeze, or deep dull chest pain. The cough, which is dry and hacking or only moderately productive, is so common a symptom that it is often ignored by the physician. Next to cough the most frequent initial symptom is deep chest pain and discomfort. Expectoration of mucoid material can occur but usually the sputum contains pus or blood. Blood streaking or frank hemoptysis is an infrequent initial symptom, but is likely to occur at some time in the course of the disease.

Dyspnea is a common complaint in the elderly patient. Unsolved or recurrent pneumonia which partially responds to antibiotic therapy is difficult to evaluate in the older age group, however airway obstruction by a tumor should be strongly suspected. It is estimated that one fourth of the lung abscesses observed in men are due to bronchogenic carcinoma. It is not unusual, in the older age group, for the obstructive symptoms produced by lung cancer to be regarded as asthma. When the wheezing is limited to one section of the lung however some type of airway obstruction should be strongly suspected.

Certain general or systemic symptoms occur in bronchogenic carcinoma as in other types of cancer. Arthritis, clubbed digits and osteoarthropathy commonly occur at some stage of the disease and occasionally are the initial symptoms (Vogl *et al* 1955). Other general manifestations are anorexia, fatigue, weakness, night sweats, apprehension and myalgia. It is of interest that neurologic symptoms unassociated with metastasis also occur early; these include neuropathy, myopathy and cerebellar degeneration. As the disease progresses local invasion, infection or metastasis alters the clinical picture and symptomatology.

Examination of the chest may reveal no findings related to the tumor. The usual positive findings are due to local airway obstruction.

tion consolidation and pneumonia abscess formation or pleural fluid Pulmonary osteoarthropathy or evidence of metastatic tumor may direct attention to the lungs Extension of tumor to adjacent thoracic structures may cause Horner's syndrome vocal cord paralysis superior vena cava syndrome dysphagia pleural effusion cardiac involvement, or phrenic paralysis Extrathoracic metastases are found most commonly in the brain kidney bone and liver

Leukocytosis is common with infection and anemia is often present in advanced carcinoma An elevated alkaline phosphatase is suggestive of metastasis to liver or bone

The first indication of tumor is frequently the finding of a lesion on a routine chest film When bronchogenic carcinoma is suspected the roentgenogram is most important as an aid to diagnosis A dense circumscribed lesion near the hilum is most suggestive of carcinoma Areas of pneumonia atelectasis or abscess may be seen Any solitary well defined lesion in the lungs of an older patient should be considered a possible cancer More complete radiologic examination of the body is required to detect metastasis Bronchography and angiocardiology are sometimes useful in evaluating a suspicious lesion Laminagraphy has proved valuable in diagnosis and evaluation for surgery

Since approximately one half of the bronchogenic carcinomas are located in the first 4 to 6 cm of the main bronchi bronchoscopy is mandatory in patients suspected of having this disease In addition to obtaining biopsy material bronchoscopy can yield information concerning operability of the cancer Papanicolaou studies of bronchoscopic washings and of fresh sputum properly prepared have proved useful in the hands of expert cytologists (Farber *et al* 1950) Aspiration biopsy of the lung is not advisable but aspiration or surgical biopsy of metastatic lesions in the neck supraclavicular area bones or subcutaneous tissue may establish the diagnosis without thoracotomy When pleural fluid is present needle biopsy of the pleura and study of cells in the fluid may make the diagnosis and prove that the tumor is inoperable

**TREATMENT** Treatment of bronchogenic carcinoma includes surgical medical and radiologic measures The fundamental concept of surgical treatment is the excision of all neoplastic tissue and the indication for surgery is the known or suspected presence of tumor without extrathoracic metastasis or extensive intrathoracic

provided some interesting theories as to the cause of bronchogenic carcinoma. At the present time, excessive cigarette smoking in halation of air polluted with industrial gases, and possibly inhalation of radioactive materials are suspected as causative agents (Hammond and Machle 1956)

**CLINICAL FINDINGS** Unfortunately, there are no very early symptoms of bronchogenic carcinoma, and the first symptoms to appear are often minor and difficult to interpret (Albritten *et al* 1952, Firber 1954). The patient's first complaints are usually non-specific: slight cough, a localized audible wheeze, or deep, dull chest pain. The cough, which is dry and hacking or only moderately productive, is so common a symptom that it is often ignored by the physician. Next to cough, the most frequent initial symptom is deep chest pain and discomfort. Expectoration of mucoid material can occur, but usually the sputum contains pus or blood. Blood streaking or frank hemoptysis is an infrequent initial symptom, but is likely to occur at some time in the course of the disease.

Dyspnea is a common complaint in the elderly patient. Unsolved or recurrent pneumonia which partially responds to antibiotic therapy is difficult to evaluate in the older age group; however, airway obstruction by a tumor should be strongly suspected. It is estimated that one fourth of the lung abscesses observed in men are due to bronchogenic carcinoma. It is not unusual in the older age group for the obstructive symptoms produced by lung cancer to be regarded as asthma. When the wheezing is limited to one section of the lung, however, some type of airway obstruction should be strongly suspected.

Certain general or systemic symptoms occur in bronchogenic carcinoma as in other types of cancer. Arthritis, clubbed digits and osteoarthritis commonly occur at some stage of the disease and occasionally are the initial symptoms (Vogl *et al* 1955). Other general manifestations are anorexia, fatigue, weakness, night sweats, apprehension, and myalgia. It is of interest that neurologic symptoms unassociated with metastasis also occur early; these include neuropathy, myopathy, and cerebellar degeneration. As the disease progresses, local invasion, infection, or metastasis alters the clinical picture and symptomatology.

Examination of the chest may reveal no findings related to the tumor. The usual positive findings are due to local airway obstruction.

but is supported in large part on the walls of the alveoli. It often causes dyspnea and is characteristically associated with the profuse expectoration of mucoid sputum. In about half the cases both lungs are involved. The chest film shows single or multiple peripheral areas of increased density, not unlike tuberculosis or metastatic carcinoma. Treatment is disappointing except when a single peripheral nodule is found and removed. Neither radiation nor nitrogen mustard affords much palliation when the tumor is disseminated.

*Sarcoma lymphoma* and *Hodgkin's disease* are examples of other malignant diseases that involve the lungs. *Pulmonary metastases* from tumors elsewhere in the body occur more frequently than primary lung cancer. These usually appear as multiple round peripheral masses but occasionally the metastasis—particularly if it is from a melanoma or hypernephroma—may be a large isolated mass. Surgical excision of such a single metastatic lesion may be life saving. Metastatic tumors can involve the bronchus and are sometimes mistaken for primary bronchogenic carcinoma.

Lastly, benign tumors: *adenomas papillomas fibromas lipomas chondromas* and *osteomas* can occur in elderly patients. Symptoms may consist of cough, hemoptysis or local airway obstruction. Roentgen study may show a lesion that cannot be differentiated from malignant tumor. It is important that a tissue diagnosis be made in all cases of suspected lung cancer. If the tumor proves to be benign, surgical excision may be very successful in relieving the symptoms produced by bronchial obstruction.

## REFERENCES

- 1 ALBRECHT, F. F. JR, NELSON, T., GIBSON, J. H. and TEMPLETON, J. Y. III. The diagnosis of lung cancer. *Surg. Clin. North America* 32: 1637, 1952.
- 2 ARKIN, A. Differential diagnosis of chronic cough in the aged. *M. Clin. North America* 40: 79, 1956.
- 3 BALDWIN, E. DE F., COURVAND, A. and RICHARDS, D. W. JR. Pulmonary insufficiency: physiological classification, clinical methods of analysis, standard values in normal subjects. *Medicine* 27: 243, 1948.
- 4 BALDWIN, E. DE F., COURVAND, A. and RICHARDS, D. W. JR. Pulmonary insufficiency. III. A study of 122 cases of chronic pulmonary emphysema. *Medicine* 28: 201, 1949.
- 5 BALDWIN, E. DE F. et al. Pulmonary insufficiency: a study of 16 cases of large pulmonary air cysts or bullae. *Medicine* 29: 169, 1950.

invasion. Anesthetic and surgical techniques now permit surgery in many elderly patients in whom thoracotomy would not previously have been considered. Factors to be evaluated in each individual patient are general pulmonary function and associated cardiopulmonary disease. Most reports indicate that less than half the patients in all age groups are considered for operation, and only a portion of these have resections. Both pneumonectomy and lobectomy are done, and the recent tendency has been to limit the procedure to lobectomy if the tumor can be removed. The over-all incidence of five-year survivals ranges from 5 to 10 per cent (Maier, 1956). Palliative resection may be indicated when a large, necrotic tumor, repeated pulmonary hemorrhage or severe infection is present.

Radiotherapy assumes major importance in the large group of patients whose tumors cannot be removed by resection. The newer techniques now permit radiation therapy as a palliative measure to decrease tumor size, especially when symptoms are produced by pressure or obstruction to the airway or superior vena cava. Radioactive materials, particularly radioactive gold, have been used interstitially, endobronchially and intrapleurally. Lastly, nitrogen mustard and steroids have been employed as palliative measures. Certainly some type of chemotherapy offers our best hope for the future management of lung cancer as well as cancer in general.

Since 90 per cent of patients with lung cancer are incurable, medical management by the family physician becomes most important. Recurrent infection is treated with appropriate antibiotics and supportive measures which have been discussed in the sections on pneumonia and lung abscess. Pleural effusions require frequent aspiration; the instillation of nitrogen mustard or radioactive gold may help prevent their recurrence. Cough is often helped by the measures discussed in the section on bronchitis. Pain requires narcotics, sedation and tranquilizing drugs. Every effort should be made to help the patient live out his short life span comfortably and productively.

### Other Tumors

*Bronchiolar or alveolar cell carcinoma* occurs in 15 per cent of all patients with lung cancer. This tumor arises from the bronchiole,

but is supported in large part on the walls of the alveoli. It often causes dyspnea and is characteristically associated with the profuse expectoration of mucoid sputum. In about half the cases both lungs are involved. The chest film shows single or multiple peripheral areas of increased density, not unlike tuberculosis or metastatic carcinoma. Treatment is disappointing except when a single peripheral nodule is found and removed. Neither radiation nor nitrogen mustard affords much palliation when the tumor is disseminated.

*Sarcoma lymphoma and Hodgkin's disease* are examples of other malignant diseases that involve the lungs. *Pulmonary metastases* from tumors elsewhere in the body occur more frequently than primary lung cancer. These usually appear as multiple round peripheral masses but occasionally the metastasis—particularly if it is from a melanoma or hypernephroma—may be a large isolated mass. Surgical excision of such a single metastatic lesion may be life-saving. Metastatic tumors can involve the bronchus, and are sometimes mistaken for primary bronchogenic carcinoma.

Lastly benign tumors *adenomas papillomas fibromas lipomas chondromas and osteomas* can occur in elderly patients. Symptoms may consist of cough, hemoptysis or local airway obstruction. Roentgen study may show a lesion that cannot be differentiated from malignant tumor. It is important that a tissue diagnosis be made in all cases of suspected lung cancer. If the tumor proves to be benign, surgical excision may be very successful in relieving the symptoms produced by bronchial obstruction.

## REFERENCES

- 1 ALBRITTON F F JR NELSON T GIBBON J H and TEMPLETON J Y III The diagnosis of lung cancer *Surg Clin North America* 32 1657 1952
- 2 ANKIN A Differential diagnosis of chronic cough in the aged *N Clin North America* 40 79 1956
- 3 BALDWIN E DEF COURNAUD A and RICHARDS D W JR Pulmonary insufficiency, physiological classification, clinical methods of analysis, standard values in normal subjects *Medicine* 27 243 1948
- 4 BALDWIN F DEF COURNAUD A and RICHARDS D W JR Pulmonary insufficiency. III. A study of 122 cases of chronic pulmonary emphysema *Medicine* 28 201 1949
- 5 BALDWIN E DEF et al Pulmonary insufficiency, a study of 16 cases of large pulmonary air cysts or bullae *Medicine* 29 169 1950



- 6 BARACHI A L and BRICK G J Exsufflation with negative pressure physiologic and clinical studies in poliomyelitis bronchial asthma, pulmonary emphysema and bronchiectasis *AMA Arch Int Med* 93 825 1954
- 7 BARACHI A L and BICKERMAN H A *Pulmonary Emphysema* Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Company 1956
- 8 BARBER, J M and GRANT A P Friedlander's pneumonia *Brit M J* 2 752 1952
- 9 BATES D V, and CHRISTIE R V Effects of Ageing on Respiratory Function in Man in Ciba Foundation *Colloquia on Ageing* Vol 1 p 58 *General Aspects* G F W WOLSTENHOLME and M F CAMERON (eds) Boston Little Brown & Co 1955
- 10 BEAVER P W Analysis of tuberculous infection from birth to old age its relationship to clinical tuberculosis and deaths from tuberculosis *Dis Chest* 17 280 1950
- 11 BICKERMAN, H A "The Respiratory System in the Aged" Chapter 22 in Cowdry's *Problems of Ageing* A I LANSING (ed) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1952
- 12 BOWERS R F Venous ligation Advantages vs disadvantages *Am Surgeon* 22 359 1956
- 13 BROCK R C *Lung Abscess* Oxford England Blackwell Scientific Publications 1946
- 14 CLOUGH P W The irritative effect of smoking on the respiratory mucous membranes *Ann Int Med* 45 1235 1956
- 15 COHLN S S Chemotherapy for pulmonary tuberculosis in older adults *Geriatrics* 11 1036 1956
- 16 COMROE J H JR *The Lung, Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests* (Based on the 1954 Beumont Lecture) Chicago Year Book Publishers 1955
- 17 COUNNARD A BALDWIN E DEE DARLING R C and RICHARDS D W JR Studies on intrapulmonary mixture of gases IV Significance of pulmonary emptying rate and simplified open circuit measurement of residual air *J Clin Invest* 20 681 1941
- 18 DAYMAN H Mechanics of air flow in health and in emphysema *J Clin Invest* 30 1175 1951
- 19 DELAUGHTER G O and ANLYAN W G A clinical study of pulmonary embolism *Surg Gynec & Obst* 103 695 1956
- 20 DERBES V J and KERR A JR *Cough Syncope* Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1955
- 21 EBERT R V Pulmonary emphysema *Ann Rev Med* 7 123 1956
- 22 FARBER S M *Lung Cancer* Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1954
- 23 FARBER S M ROSENTHAL M ALSTON E F BENCOFF M A and McGROTH A K JR *Cytologic Diagnosis of Lung Cancer* Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1950
- 24 FITZPATRICK M J KITTLE C F LIN T K and DOWELL J C Some

- physiologic changes associated with surgical excision of emphysematous bullae *Am J Med* 22 534 1957
- 2) FORMAN J BLATT H Bacterial allergy as a cause of so-called intrinsic asthma in the elderly patient *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 2 662 1954
- 98 FOWLER E F and BALLINGER J A Pulmonary infarction clinical study of 97 fatal cases *Surgery* 36 650 1954
- 97 FRANK N R MFAD J and FERRIS B G JR The mechanical behavior of the lungs in healthy elderly persons *J Clin Invest* 36 1680 1957
- 23 FRY D L EBERT R V STEAD W W and BROWN C C Mechanics of pulmonary ventilation in normal subjects and in patients with emphysema *Am J Med* 16 80 1954
- 99 GARROD J P Actinomycosis of the lung aetiology diagnosis and chemotherapy *Tubercle* 33 258 1952
- 90 GREIFENSTEIN I E FINE R M LATCH S S and COMBES J H JR Pulmonary function studies in healthy men and women 50 years and older *J Applied Physiol* 4 641 1952
- 31 HAMMOND E C and MACHLE W Environmental and Occupational Factors in the Development of Lung Cancer Chapter 3 in *Pulmonary Carcinoma* E MAYER and H C MAIER (eds) Philadelphia Lippincott Company 1956
- 32 HARVEY R M FERRER M I and COURNAND A The treatment of chronic cor pulmonale *Circulation* 7 932 1953
- 33 HARVEY R M RICHARDS D W JR and COURNAND A The influence of chronic pulmonary disease on the heart and circulation *Am J Med* 10 719 1951
- 34 HEFFRON R *Pneumonia* New York The Commonwealth Fund 1939
- 35 HICKAM J B BLAIR E and FRAISER R An open circuit helium method for measuring functional residual capacity and defective intrapulmonary gas mixing *J Clin Invest* 33 1277 1954
- 96 HICKAM J B SIEKER H O PRYOR W W and RYAN J M Carbon dioxide retention during oxygen therapy *North Carolina M J* 13 33 1952
- 37 HOMANS J *Circulatory Diseases of the Extremities* New York The Macmillan Company 1939
- 28 HUNTER R B Pulmonary embolism *Brit M J* 1 1924 1955
- 39 KALLQVIST I Thoracoplasty in middle aged and elderly patients *Acta tuberc scandinav* 31 1 1955
- 40 KALLQVIST I Pulmonary resection in middle-aged and elderly patients *Am Rev Tuberc* 73 40 1956
- 41 KALTREIDER N L FRAY H W and HYDE H V Z The effect of age on the total pulmonary capacity and its subdivisions *Am Rev Tuberc* 37 662 1938
- 42 KERS R A Allergy in the aged *Ann Int Med* 33 315 1951
- 43 LUCMAN A M Are fungous infections increasing as a result of antibiotic therapy? *J A.M.A* 149 979 1952

- 6 BARACH A L, and BECK G J Exsufflation with negative pressure physiologic and clinical studies in poliomyelitis bronchial asthma pulmonary emphysema and bronchiectasis *AMA Arch Int Med* 93 825 1954
- 7 BARACH A L and BICKERMAN H A *Pulmonary Emphysema* Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1956
- 8 BARBER J M and GRANT A P Friedliners pneumonia *Brit M J* 1 752 1952
- 9 BATLS D V and CHRISTIE R V Effects of Ageing on Respiratory Function in Man in Ciba Foundation Colloquia on Ageing Vol 1 p 58 *General Aspects* G F W WOLSTENHOLME and M F CANNON (eds) Boston Little Brown & Co 1955
- 10 BEAVER P W Analysis of tuberculous infection from birth to old age its relationship to clinical tuberculosis and deaths from tuberculosis *Dis Chest* 17 280 1950
- 11 BICKERMAN H A "The Respiratory System in the Aged" Chapter 22 in *Cowdry's Problems of Ageing* A I LANSING (ed) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1952
- 12 BOWERS R F Venous ligation Advantages and disadvantages *Am Surgeon* 22 359 1956
- 13 BROCK R C *Lung Abscess* Oxford England Blackwell Scientific Publications 1948
- 14 CLOUGH P W The irritative effect of smoking on the respiratory mucous membranes *Ann Int Med* 45 1235 1956
- 15 COHEN S S Chemotherapy for pulmonary tuberculosis in older adults *Geriatrics* 11 1036 1956
- 16 COMPTON J H JR *The Lung Clinical Physiology and Pulmonary Function Tests* (Based on the 1954 Beaumont Lecture) Chicago Year Book Publishers 1955
- 17 COUNNAND A BALDWIN E DEFT DARLING R C and RICHARDS D W JR Studies on intrapulmonary mixture of gases IV Significance of pulmonary emptying rate and simplified open circuit measurement of residual air *J Clin Invest* 20 681 1941
- 18 DAYMAN H Mechanics of air flow in health and in emphysema *J Clin Invest* 30 1175 1951
- 19 DELAUGHTER G O and ANLIAN W G A clinical study of pulmonary embolism *Surg Gynec & Obst* 103 695 1956
- 20 DERBES V J and KERR A JR *Cough Syncope* Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1955
- 21 EBERT R V Pulmonary emphysema *Ann Rev Med* 7 123 1956
- 22 FARDER S M *Lung Cancer* Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1954
- 23 FARDER S M ROSENTHAL M ALSTON E F BENCOFF M A and McGROTH A K JR *Cytologic Diagnosis of Lung Cancer* Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1950
- 24 FITZPATRICK M J KITTLE C F LIN T K and DOWELL J C Some

- 65 ROACH H D and LAUFMAN H Relationship between pulmonary embolism and pulmonary infarction an experimental study *Ann Surg* 142 82 1955
- 66 ROGERS D F Conference on Staphylococcal Infections *Ann New York Acad Sc* 60 55 1956
- 67 ROWE A H and ROWE A JR Bronchial asthma in patients over age 55 years *Ann Allergy* 5 509 1947
- 68 RUBIN I H and LUBLINER R The Hamman Rich syndrome review of the literature and analysis of 15 cases *Medicine* 36 397 1957
- 69 SAXTON J A JR BARNES L L and SPERLING G Pathogenesis of chronic pulmonary disease (bronchiectasis) of old rats *J Gerontol* 1 165 1946
- 70 SEGAL M S and DULFONO M J *Chronic Pulmonary Emphysema* New York Grune & Stratton Inc 1953
- 71 SHELTON J H *The Social Medicine of Old Age* The Nuffield Foundation London Oxford University Press 1948
- 72 SHELTON J M LOVELL R C and MATTHEWS K P Management of bronchial asthma in the aged *Geriatrics* 9 193 1954
- 73 SHORT D S A radiological study of pulmonary infarction *Quart J Med* 20 233 1951
- 74 SHORT D S Thrombosis early diagnosis and abortive treatment A survey of pulmonary embolism in a general hospital *Brit M J* 1 790 1952
- 75 SIEKER H O and HICKAM J B Carbon dioxide intoxication the clinical syndrome its etiology and management with particular reference to the use of mechanical respirators *Medicine* 35 389 1956
- 76 SIEKER H O Pulmonary diseases of allergic origin *M Clin North America* 43 127 1959
- 77 SMITH J G HARRIS J I COVANT N F and SMITH D T An epidemic of North American blastomycosis *JAMA* 159 641 1953
- 78 SOLCHERMAN P H and O'LOUGHLIN B J Cavitation within bland pulmonary infarcts *Dis Chest* 24 180 1953
- 79 SLINK W W Staphylococcal infections and the problem of antibiotic resistant staphylococci *AMA Arch Int Med* 94 167 1954
- 80 TEMPLE A D and TEMPLE E F Pulmonary tuberculosis in older groups *Canad MAJ* 62 565 1950
- 81 TUCKER W B and LIVINGS D G Isoniazid streptomycin and para-aminosalicylic acid compared as two-drug regimens in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis among previously untreated patients account of cooperative investigation of Veterans Administration Army and Navy *Am Rev Tuberc* 72 736 1955
- 82 VOEL A BLUMENFELD S and CUTNER L B Diagnostic significance of pulmonary hypertrophic osteoarthropathy *Am J Med* 18 51 1955
- 83 WATERMAN D H DOSIM S E and ROGERS W K Lung abscess—medico-surgical problem *Am J Surg* 89 995 1955

- 44 KOUNTZ W B, and ALLANER A L *Emphysema Medicine* 15<sup>2</sup> 1931
- 45 KRAUSE S, and SILVERBLATT M Pulmonary embolism a review with special emphasis on clinical and electrocardiographic diagnosis *AMA Arch Int Med* 96 19, 1955
- 46 LEICHT E L Problems presented by pulmonary tuberculosis in patients over 50 *Ann Int Med* 33 321 1950
- 47 LITTMAN M L, and ZIMMERMAN L E *Cryptococcosis (Torulosis)* New York Crane & Stratton Inc 1956
- 48 LOWENBERG R I Early diagnosis of phlebothrombosis with aid of new clinical test (sphygmomanometer cuff pump) *JAMA* 155 1566 1951
- 49 MADDIN J L Venous thrombosis and thromboembolism *Am J Surg* 87 909 1954
- 50 MAHER H C Surgical Treatment Chapter 12 p 298 in *Pulmonary Carcinoma* E MAIER and H C MAIER (eds) Philadelphia J B Lippincott Company 1956
- 51 MARKS J, THURSCOTT B M, and WITTINGHAME J F R Pulmonary embolism review of 1135 cases *Lancet* 2 787 1954
- 52 MEAD J, LINDGREN I, and GARFINKLER E A The mechanical properties of the lung in emphysema *J Clin Invest* 34 1505 1955
- 53 MILLER R E, and HENDERSON B Undiagnosed pulmonary tuberculosis in elderly persons *Am Rev Tuberc* 46 139 1942
- 54 MYERS J A Tuberculosis among persons over 50 years of age *Geriatrics* 1 27 1946
- 55 MYERS J A Control of tuberculosis in the elderly *Geriatrics* 10 552 1955
- 56 MYERS J A Chest shadows in the aging *Geriatrics* 11 51 1956
- 57 OLWIN J H, ARSCOTT P M, and KOPPEL J L Choice and control of anticoagulant drugs *Geriatrics* 13 773 1958
- 58 PARKER R M, and SMITH J R Pulmonary embolism and infarction A review of the physiological consequences of pulmonary arterial obstruction *Am J Med* 24 402 1958
- 59 PERLA D, and MARMONSTON J *Natural Resistance and Clinical Medicine* Chapter 13 Boston Little Brown & Co 1941
- 60 PITTMAN H S Management of bronchiectasis in the older patient *Am J Surg* 89 974 1955
- 61 READ J The pathogenesis of the Hamman Rich syndrome A review from the standpoint of possible allergic etiology *Am Rev Tuberc* 78 353 1958
- 62 REIMANN H A *The Pneumonias* Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1954
- 63 RHODES P S Symposium on medical problems of the aged pneumonia in the aged *M Clin North America* 10 89 1956
- 64 RICHARDS W D The aging lung *Bull New York Acad Med* 32 408 1956

- 65 ROACH H D and LAUFMAN H Relationship between pulmonary embolism and pulmonary infarction in experimental study *Ann Surg* 142 82 1955
- 66 ROGERS D F Conference on Staphylococcal Infections *Ann New York Acad Sc* 65 55 1956
- 67 ROWE A H and ROWE A Jr Bronchial asthma in patients over age 50 years *Ann Allergy* 5 509 1947
- 68 RUBIN F H and LUBLINER R The Hamman Rich syndrome review of the literature and analysis of 15 cases *Medicine* 36 397 1957
- 69 SAXTON J A JR BARNES L L and SPERLING G Pathogenesis of chronic pulmonary disease (bronchiectasis) of old rats *J Gerontol* 1 165 1946
- 70 SEGAL M S and DULFONO M J *Chronic Pulmonary Emphysema* New York Grune & Stratton Inc 1953
- 71 SHELTON J H *The Social Medicine of Old Age* The Nuffield Foundation London Oxford University Press 1948
- 72 SHELTON J M LOVELL R G and MATTHEWS A P Management of bronchial asthma in the aged *Geriatrics* 9 193 1954
- 73 SHORT D S A radiological study of pulmonary infarction *Quart J Med* 20 233 1951
- 74 SHORT D S Thrombosis early diagnosis and abortive treatment A survey of pulmonary embolism in a general hospital *Brit M J* 1 790 1952
- 75 SIEKER H O and HICKAM J B Carbon dioxide intoxication the clinical syndrome its etiology and management with particular reference to the use of mechanical respirators *Medicine* 35 389 1956
- 76 SIEKER H O Pulmonary diseases of allergic origin *M Clin North America* 43 127 1959
- 77 SMITH J C HARRIS J I CONANT N F and SMITH D T An epidemic of North American blastomycosis *JAMA* 153 641 1955
- 78 SOLCHERAY P H and O'LOUGHLIN B J Cavitation within bland pulmonary infarcts *Ds Chest* 24 180 1953
- 79 SPINK W W Staphylococcal infections and the problem of antibiotic resistant staphylococci *AMA Arch Int Med* 94 167 1954
- 80 TENNILE A D and TEMPLE E F Pulmonary tuberculosis in older groups *Canad MAJ* 62 565 1950
- 81 TUCKER W B and LIVINGS D G Isoniazid streptomycin and para-aminosalicylic acid compared as two-drug regimens in the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis among previously untreated patients account of cooperative investigation of Veterans Administration Army and Navy *Am Rev Tuberc* 72 756 1955
- 82 VOGL A BLUMENFELD S and GUTNER L B Diagnostic significance of pulmonary hypertrophic osteoarthropathy *Am J Med* 18 51 1955
- 83 WATERMAN D H DONIN S E and ROGERS W A Lung abscess—medico-surgical problem *Am J Surg* 69 995 1955

- 84 WEISS W, EISENBERG G M, ALEXANDER J D, and FLIPPIN H F  
Klebsiella pulmonary disease *Am J M Sc* 228 148 1954
- 85 WILCH K J and KINNEY T D The effect of patent ductus arteriosus  
and of interauricular and intraventricular septal defects on the develop-  
ment of pulmonary vascular lesions *Am J Path* 29 729 1948
- 86 WEST, J R, BALDWIN E DEE, COUNNAND A, and RICHARDS D W JR  
Physiopathologic aspects of chronic pulmonary emphysema *Am J Med*  
10 481 1951
- 87 WOLFF L Pulmonary embolism *Circulation* 6 768 1952
- 88 WRIGHT, F T, GRAHAM J H, NEWCOMER V D, and STEINBERG T H  
The use of nystatin in the treatment of moniliasis *Antibiotic Annual*  
New York 1955-56 Medical Encyclopedia
- 89 WRIGHT G W and FILLEY G F Pulmonary fibrosis and respiratory  
function *Am J Med* 10 642, 1951
- 90 WRIGHT I S, and FOLEY W T Pulmonary embolism and infarction  
diagnosis and management *Am J Surg* 90 440 1955
- 91 ZEMAN F D and WALLACH K Pneumonia in the aged analysis of 166  
cases of its occurrence in patients 60 years old and over *Arch Int*  
*Med* 77 678 1946

## CHAPTER 17

# Disorders of the Gastrointestinal Tract and Digestive Organs

DAVID CAYER

### THE ESOPHAGUS

The rhythmic uninterrupted passage of food through the esophagus may be disturbed by diseases such as cancer and scleroderma as well as by emotional factors. Disorders of the central nervous system can affect the esophageal innervation involve the myenteric plexus and produce muscular changes.

#### Achalasia

Although achalasia usually begins in early life a Mayo Clinic report on 55 patients requiring surgery for this condition indicated that 19 were over the age of 50. In achalasia the cells of the myenteric plexus undergo degeneration. The result is inadequate and ineffective esophageal muscular contraction and associated failure of the lower esophagus to relax when swallowing is initiated. As a result the lower part of the esophagus becomes narrowed while the upper portion is dilated by the increasing difficulty of forcing its contents through the contracted sphincter.

**Diagnosis** The most frequent symptom is dysphagia aggravated by solid foods and excessively cold liquids. Regurgitation is frequent and may occur hours after eating. In severe instances the absence of acid allows fermentation to occur giving the material a characteristic appearance. Esophagitis and ulceration may develop



when food remains in the esophagus for long periods. Weight loss is common, but pain and hemorrhage are infrequent. The diagnosis is made from the clinical features, roentgen examination, endoscopy, or with the aid of balloon studies of esophageal motility.

Roentgen studies with barium reveal the characteristic dilatation of the upper portion of the esophagus and disturbed motility. When Mecholyl is administered as a diagnostic test, the characteristic pressure response produces such marked contraction that the esophagus frequently evacuates its contents. Endoscopy is valuable in ruling out complications or associated diseases such as carcinoma. Malignancies originating in the fundus of the stomach and extending into the lower esophageal segment may produce a roentgen appearance similar to that of achalasia. In uncomplicated achalasia the esophagoscope can be introduced into the stomach and no constriction is demonstrable.

**TREATMENT** There is no medical treatment that restores the normal tone of the esophagus and at the same time provides relaxation at the esophagogastric junction. Hydrostatic dilatation will afford marked and permanent relief in as many as 60 per cent of the patients. Even when symptoms recur, dilatation sufficient to overcome the resistance of the inferior esophageal muscle fibers usually provides relief for as long as 6 months. In more severe cases a high incidence of satisfactory results has been reported following extra-mucosal esophagocardiomyotomy. Surgery should be considered for patients who fail to respond to repeated adequate dilatations.

### **Hiatal Hernia (Diaphragmatic Hernia)**

Most cases of hiatal hernia occur in patients beyond the age of 50 (Fig. 17-1). Etiologic factors include increased intra-abdominal pressure, obesity, ascites, and trauma. Forty per cent of the patients are at least 10 per cent overweight. Traumatic hiatal hernias most commonly follow stab wounds or crushing injuries such as automobile accidents often inflict.

Gold and Burnrud (1957) divide hiatal hernias into four types: (1) congenital short esophagus, (2) sliding hernia, (3) paraesophageal hernia, and (4) combined sliding and paraesophageal hernia. The types of hernias usually cannot be distinguished

clinically. The most common and clinically important type is the sliding hiatal hernia produced by incompetence of the hiatus secondary to muscle weakness and increasing abdominal pressure



FIG. 17.1 Hiatal hernia and duodenal ulcer. The patient was a 76-year-old man with a large portion of his stomach in a hiatal hernial sac. The pylorus is seen approximately at the level of the normal diaphragmatic hiatus. The duodenal bulb is elongated and shows a large duodenal ulcer (arrow.)

The cardiac end of the stomach is involved most frequently, although occasionally a large part of the stomach or even of the omentum may be included in the hernial sac. In this type the stomach becomes herniated into the chest. This herniation occurs more frequently on the left since the right side is protected by the dome

of the right lobe of the liver. The hernia usually extends into the posterior mediastinum. Recurring esophagitis with resulting fibrosis or nervous irritability results in contraction and acquired shortening of the esophagus. Many of the clinical manifestations are related to this secondary esophagitis.

In rare cases hiatal hernia results from congenital shortening of the esophagus with development of the stomach in the thorax. In patients with a congenital short esophagus the thoracic stomach is supplied by branches of the thoracic aorta, in patients with the acquired type of esophageal shortening the circulation is derived from the left gastric artery.

In the paraesophageal hernia the lower end of the esophagus remains in its normal position, and the cardia of the stomach herniates laterally through the opening into the thorax.

**DIAGNOSIS** The clinical picture is variable. One patient in ten will have pain, usually beneath the sternum or high in the epigastrium which is apt to be worse after heavy meals. It is aggravated by reclining, stooping or bending and is occasionally relieved by resuming the upright position or stretching. The pain may come on at rest frequently at night when gastric acidity is high and the patient is reclining. The pain and sensation of pressure occasionally radiate into the left side of the chest and down into the shoulder and arm simulating angina. In such cases one must rule out coronary insufficiency and myocardial infarction. Occasionally hiatus hernia seems to precipitate a true anginal attack. Other symptoms frequently produced by hiatal hernia are fullness, belching and dysphagia with associated regurgitation. Occasionally anemia may occur without hematemesis or melena; in such cases occult blood can be demonstrated in the stool.

The symptoms of esophageal hernia may mimic carcinoma of the stomach or coronary artery disease and in fact the condition may be complicated by one of these diseases. The differential diagnosis may be difficult when a concomitant electrocardiographic abnormality or disease elsewhere in the digestive tract is demonstrated. When the differential diagnosis lies between esophageal hernia and cardiac disease a balloon may be introduced under fluoroscopy into the lower part of the esophagus and distended with 60 cc of air. If the patient's symptoms are reproduced by this maneuver, it may

be assumed that they are gastrointestinal in origin. Pain radiating into both shoulders or jaws is invariably cardiac.

It is important to recognize that in about 20 per cent of the cases hiatal hernias are asymptomatic and are discovered by accident on routine barium examinations of the upper digestive tract. Such hernias require no therapy. Another 20 per cent of the cases are associated with cholecystitis, peptic ulcer, or diverticulosis of the colon.

Other esophageal abnormalities such as diverticula, cardiospasm, and carcinoma usually can be differentiated by careful roentgen studies which may often be facilitated by the use of the Trendelenburg position and other procedures that increase abdominal pressure. All patients having esophageal symptoms and negative roentgenograms should have an esophagoscopy study. This procedure is also of value in demonstrating the presence or absence of esophagitis in cases of hiatus hernia.

**TREATMENT** Medical treatment is directed principally toward decreasing abdominal pressure. Patients who are overweight should be put on a reduction diet. Tight abdominal binders or clothing should be eliminated and lifting and straining should be avoided. The patient should be instructed to masticate carefully and eat more slowly, to remain upright for one to two hours after meals, and in some cases to elevate the head of the bed on 4 inch blocks or to sleep on several pillows. A modified peptic ulcer regimen, including antacids between meals, avoidance of stimulants, and the use of antispasmodics and sedatives may be helpful. When esophagitis is present, inflammation may progress to actual ulcer formation with subsequent fibrosis, stenosis, and shortening. In such cases mechanical esophageal dilatation may be required. Other possible complications of esophagitis are hemorrhage and perforation. When ulceration of the esophagus persists in spite of medical management, simple phrenic crush may provide enough symptomatic improvement to make additional operative treatment unnecessary. More drastic surgery is rarely required except in cases of meaturation or hemorrhage that cannot be controlled by other means. Occasionally, however, reduction of the hernia and reinforcement of the hiatal skin may be necessary to restore the competence of the extrinsic and intrinsic sphincter mechanisms.

## Benign Tumors

Benign tumors of the esophagus are rare. The most common are leiomyomas and polyps. They tend to develop in the lower third of the esophagus, and produce symptoms of obstruction and dysphagia. The extraluminal tumors may not involve the mucosa and may be missed on esophagoscopic examination. While benign tumors may not produce symptoms sufficient to justify extensive surgery, their removal may be necessary for a definitive diagnosis. The mortality is not high in cases where a simple excision can be performed.

## Cancer

Cancer of the esophagus (Fig. 17.2) is responsible for approximately 2 per cent of all deaths from cancer. It is relatively uncommon before the age of 50, but constitutes a major problem in geriatric medicine because of its high incidence in the seventh and eighth decades. It occurs five times as frequently in men as in women.

Esophageal carcinomas are predominantly squamous cell or epidermoid. The epidermoid carcinoma of the middle and upper portions of the esophagus usually grows and disseminates more rapidly. Lesions in the distal third may be adenocarcinomas which in this location usually grow more slowly than do epidermoid carcinomas. Esophageal cancers of all types may be associated with ulceration, direct extension into surrounding structures, stenosis, stricture, and even fistulous communications with bronchi.

**DIAGNOSIS** The earliest symptom produced by lesions in the upper third of the esophagus is usually hoarseness or cough. Dysphagia, substernal oppression, symptoms of obstruction, and weight loss soon follow, irrespective of the area involved, bringing the patient to the physician some five to seven months after the onset of symptoms. The disease is usually advanced before symptoms appear.

Most esophageal cancers can be defined by barium studies, although certain benign lesions of the esophagus may simulate carcinoma and mislead experienced radiologists and surgeons. Similar symptoms and findings may also be produced by diverticula of the



FIG. 1-2 Esophageal cancer. (Top) Squamous cell carcinoma (arrow) of the middle third of the esophagus in a 67-year-old woman. (Bottom) A fluoroscopic made after resection of the lesion and esophagogastric anastomosis at the level of the left clavicle. The patient remained comfortable and maintained her weight until her death three years later of metastatic tumor.

### Benign Tumors

Benign tumors of the esophagus are rare. The most common are leiomyomas and polyps. They tend to develop in the lower third of the esophagus, and produce symptoms of obstruction and dysphagia. The extraluminal tumors may not involve the mucosa and may be missed on esophagoscopic examination. While benign tumors may not produce symptoms sufficient to justify extensive surgery, their removal may be necessary for a definitive diagnosis. The mortality is not high in cases where a simple excision can be performed.

### Cancer

Cancer of the esophagus (Fig. 17.2) is responsible for approximately 2 per cent of all deaths from cancer. It is relatively uncommon before the age of 50, but constitutes a major problem in geriatric medicine because of its high incidence in the seventh and eighth decades. It occurs five times as frequently in men as in women.

Esophageal carcinomas are predominantly squamous cell or epidermoid. The epidermoid carcinoma of the middle and upper portions of the esophagus usually grows and disseminates more rapidly. Lesions in the distal third may be adenocarcinomas, which in this location usually grow more slowly than do epidermoid carcinomas. Esophageal cancers of all types may be associated with ulceration, direct extension into surrounding structures, stenosis, stricture, and even fistulous communications with bronchi.

**DIAGNOSIS** The earliest symptom produced by lesions in the upper third of the esophagus is usually hoarseness or cough. Dysphagia, substernal oppression, symptoms of obstruction, and weight loss soon follow, irrespective of the area involved, bringing the patient to the physician some five to seven months after the onset of symptoms. The disease is usually advanced before symptoms appear.

Most esophageal cancers can be defined by barium studies, although certain benign lesions of the esophagus may simulate carcinoma and mislead experienced radiologists and surgeons. Similar symptoms and findings may also be produced by diverticuli of the



FIG 172 Esophageal cancer (Top) Squamous cell carcinoma (arrow) of the middle third of the esophagus in a 87 year-old woman (Bottom) A roentgenogram made after resection of the lesion and esophago-gastric anastomosis at the level of the left clavicle. The patient remained comfortable and maintained her weight until her death three years later of metastatic tumor



## Benign Tumors

Benign tumors of the esophagus are rare. The most common are leiomyomas and polyps. They tend to develop in the lower third of the esophagus, and produce symptoms of obstruction and dysphagia. The extraluminal tumors may not involve the mucosa and may be missed on esophagoscopic examination. While benign tumors may not produce symptoms sufficient to justify extensive surgery, their removal may be necessary for a definitive diagnosis. The mortality is not high in cases where a simple excision can be performed.

## Cancer

Cancer of the esophagus (Fig. 17-2) is responsible for approximately 2 per cent of all deaths from cancer. It is relatively uncommon before the age of 50, but constitutes a major problem in geriatric medicine because of its high incidence in the seventh and eighth decades. It occurs five times as frequently in men as in women.

Esophageal carcinomas are predominantly squamous cell or epidermoid. The epidermoid carcinoma of the middle and upper portions of the esophagus usually grows and disseminates more rapidly. Lesions in the distal third may be adenocarcinomas which, in this location, usually grow more slowly than do epidermoid carcinomas. Esophageal cancers of all types may be associated with ulceration, direct extension into surrounding structures, stenosis, stricture, and even fistulous communications with bronchi.

**DIAGNOSIS** The earliest symptom produced by lesions in the upper third of the esophagus is usually hoarseness or cough. Dysphagia, substernal oppression, symptoms of obstruction, and weight loss soon follow, irrespective of the area involved, bringing the patient to the physician some five to seven months after the onset of symptoms. The disease is usually advanced before symptoms appear.

Most esophageal cancers can be defined by barium studies, although certain benign lesions of the esophagus may simulate carcinoma and mislead experienced radiologists and surgeons. Similar symptoms and findings may also be produced by diverticula of the



FIG 17.2 Esophageal cancer (Top) Squamous cell carcinoma (arrow) of the middle third of the esophagus in a 67 year old woman (Bottom) A roentgenogram made after resection of the lesion and esophagogastric anastomosis at the level of the left clavicle. The patient remained comfortable and maintained her weight until her death three years later of metastatic tumor.

esophagus, cardiospasm, extrinsic pressure, benign tumors non specific esophagitis with stricture formation, or simple esophageal spasm. With cardiospasm, marked dilatation of the esophagus occurs and the obstruction is at the esophagogastric junction. The differential diagnosis of this condition can usually be made by the characteristic findings on roentgen and esophagoscopy examination and by the response to dilatation. Occasionally carcinoma and cardiospasm occur simultaneously. With strictures following peptic ulcer or esophagitis, dilatation is less pronounced and the contractile activity of the esophagus is not lost. Re examination and esophagoscopy after the patient has been kept at rest, given sedatives and limited to a fortified liquid diet for three to five days may be of additional help in delineating the problem.

**TREATMENT** The usual surgical procedure in cases of esophageal cancer is resection and esophagogastrostomy. Because of the inaccessibility of the lesions and the magnitude of the operation the mortality in elderly patients is excessively high. The nutritional disturbances frequently found in patients of this advanced age add to the operative risk. Postoperative pulmonary complications and postprandial symptoms are common, and ulceration of the remaining esophagus, followed by stricture formation and recurring malignancy with obstruction may occur. Cure is rare even when the condition of the patient and the appearance of the lesion justify extensive surgery. Advances made in thoracic surgery during the past decade however offer some hope of cure for localized lesions favorably situated.

Where cure is not possible palliation can often be provided by roentgen therapy and less radical procedures designed to prevent obstruction. Occasionally mechanical dilatation of the esophagus may give symptomatic relief for months. In patients who have dysphagia and obstruction before the lumen has been completely obliterated a polyethylene tube carefully passed into the stomach may permit maintenance of nutrition and prolonged physical usefulness.

### **Esophageal Varices (See Cirrhosis)**

Esophageal varices are most common in the lower third of the esophagus and are usually the result of cirrhosis. Occasionally they

may be secondary to extrahepatic lesions such as obliterative disease of the portal vein or veins of the portal system. They produce few symptoms and the principal danger is that of hemorrhage.

If the varicosities are large enough and the roentgenologist uses barium of the proper consistency and specialized techniques (including measures designed to increase intra-abdominal pressure), the diagnosis may be made by roentgen study in 50 to 65 per cent of the cases.

### Esophageal Diverticula

The symptoms produced by esophageal diverticula are related to the areas in which they occur. Diverticula in the lower portion when they become large enough to retain food may compress the esophagus and produce obstructive symptoms similar to those caused by other lower esophageal lesions. Many esophageal diverticula are asymptomatic and do not cause obstruction interfere with nutrition or produce weight loss. In such cases no treatment is required. Most patients, however, will have to be careful to avoid foods that are coarse or improperly chewed. Many patients learn to empty the diverticulum themselves by drinking liquids reclining or lowering the head.

## THE STOMACH AND DUODENUM

### Gastritis

Gastritis or inflammation of the stomach may be acute or chronic. It is usually due to infections or to irritants, the most common being condiments, alcohol, drugs such as salicylates and digitalis and corrosive substances ingested inadvertently or with suicidal intent. Emotional disturbances by altering the circulation or increasing gastric secretion may also predispose to the development of gastritis.

Gastritis is usually classified according to the gastroscopic findings into superficial, atrophic and hypertrophic types. The superficial form is characterized by hyperemia, edema, erosions and scattered patches of adherent mucus. Atrophic gastritis is a chronic inflammatory disorder leading to destruction of gastric glands. On

esophagus, cardiospasm, extrinsic pressure, benign tumors non specific esophagitis with stricture formation, or simple esophageal spasm. With cardiospasm, marked dilatation of the esophagus occurs and the obstruction is at the esophagogastric junction. The differential diagnosis of this condition can usually be made by the characteristic findings on roentgen and esophagoscopy examination, and by the response to dilatation. Occasionally carcinoma and cardiospasm occur simultaneously. With strictures following peptic ulcer or esophagitis, dilatation is less pronounced and the contractile activity of the esophagus is not lost. Re examination and esophagoscopy after the patient has been kept at rest given sedatives, and limited to a fortified liquid diet for three to five days may be of additional help in delineating the problem.

**TREATMENT** The usual surgical procedure in cases of esophageal cancer is resection and esophagogastrostomy. Because of the inaccessibility of the lesions and the magnitude of the operation the mortality in elderly patients is excessively high. The nutritional disturbances frequently found in patients of this advanced age add to the operative risk. Postoperative pulmonary complications and postprandial symptoms are common and ulceration of the remaining esophagus followed by stricture formation and recurring malignancy with obstruction may occur. Cure is rare even when the condition of the patient and the appearance of the lesion justify extensive surgery. Advances made in thoracic surgery during the past decade however offer some hope of cure for localized lesions favorably situated.

Where cure is not possible palliation can often be provided by roentgen therapy and less radical procedures designed to prevent obstruction. Occasionally mechanical dilatation of the esophagus may give symptomatic relief for months. In patients who have dysphagia and obstruction before the lumen has been completely obliterated a polyethylene tube carefully passed into the stomach may permit maintenance of nutrition and prolonged physical usefulness.

### **Esophageal Varices (See Cirrhosis)**

Esophageal varices are most common in the lower third of the esophagus, and are usually the result of cirrhosis. Occasionally they

The symptoms vary according to the individual threshold for pain and the intensity of the precipitating factor. As a rule the symptoms are nonspecific and consist of epigastric burning, fullness, nausea, and vomiting. Occasionally they simulate peptic ulcer. Nausea and pain before breakfast are said to be characteristic of



FIG 17-4 Atrophic gastritis. In this 69 year old woman with achlorhydria the stomach is decreased in size and peristalsis is almost completely absent. The rugal folds appear thinned out and obliterated in areas.

alcoholic gastritis. The symptoms are frequently precipitated or aggravated by the ingestion of condiments, fried foods, alcohol, coffee, or fruit juices, and are often worse during periods of emotional stress. Hemorrhage of varying severity may occur in all types of gastritis. Diarrhea, or alternating diarrhea and constipation, is probably more frequent with the atrophic type.

gastroscopy, the mucous membrane appears thin and pale green, branching vessels are visible throughout the mucosa. The atrophic gastritis of pernicious anemia has few of the inflammatory features noted in other forms of gastritis. In chronic *hypertrophic* gastritis



FIG. 17-3 Hypertrophic gastritis. The gastric rugae appear markedly widened and irregular. The pyloric canal is elongated and umbilication at the base of the duodenal bulb has been produced by protrusion of gastric mucosa.

(Fig. 17-3) gastroscopy shows hyperplastic erythematous folds and thickening of the mucous membrane which has a "cobblestone," nodular or velvety appearance. Occasionally hemorrhages or small ulcerations may be seen.

The symptoms vary according to the individual threshold for pain and the intensity of the precipitating factor. As a rule the symptoms are nonspecific and consist of epigastric burning, fullness, nausea, and vomiting. Occasionally they simulate peptic ulcer. Nausea and pain before breakfast are said to be characteristic of



FIG 17-4 Atrophic gastritis. In this 69-year-old woman with achlorhydria the stomach is decreased in size and peristalsis is almost completely absent. The rugal folds appear thinned out and obliterated in areas.

alcoholic gastritis. The symptoms are frequently precipitated or aggravated by the ingestion of condiments, fried foods, alcohol, coffee, or fruit juices and are often worse during periods of emotional stress. Hemorrhage of varying severity may occur in all types of gastritis. Diarrhea or alternating diarrhea and constipation is probably more frequent with the atrophic type.



**DIAGNOSIS** An accurate and definitive diagnosis can be made only by gastroscopic observation. Physical findings are usually absent, or limited to mild or moderate epigastric tenderness. In the superficial or hypertrophic type of gastritis gastric analysis usually reveals hyperchlorhydria. In the atrophic variety (Fig 17-4) there is hypochlorhydria or achlorhydria.

Roentgen studies of the upper digestive tract should always precede gastroscopy, although the findings are usually negative or nonspecific. Prominent gastric folds will occasionally be noted in the hypertrophic type. In the atrophic variety the mucosal pattern is often smooth. Irritability and irregularities may be seen. Ulcerations, even though they may bleed severely and produce pain, are too superficial to retain barium and hence are not visualized.

**TREATMENT** Therapy consists in eliminating all irritating agents and prescribing a regimen similar to that used in the management of peptic ulcer. Treatment may produce symptomatic relief without altering the gastroscopic picture. Atrophic gastritis, even when it is associated with pernicious anemia, does not respond to liver or vitamin therapy.

### **Gastric Atrophy**

Gastric atrophy is usually considered as the end result of atrophic gastritis, and the gastroscopic appearance of the mucosa is similar in the two conditions. The signs and symptoms of gastric atrophy are also similar to those of gastritis, with the addition of anorexia, weight loss, pallor, and anemia.

The tendency to gastric atrophy appears to be hereditary, and perhaps conditioned by nutritional deficiencies or metabolic disturbances. The majority of patients have achlorhydria. Gastric ulcer is frequently associated with atrophic lesions in the mucosa. Polyposis also is closely related to gastric atrophy, and often follows it.

Roentgen examination in cases of gastric atrophy shows smoothing out of the gastric rugae, which is suggestive of the diagnosis. For a more accurate diagnosis, gastroscopy and biopsy of the gastric mucosa are necessary.

In some stages gastric atrophy may be arrested or reversed. Treatment is generally the same as that advised for uncomplicated

**peptic ulcer** When the diagnosis of pernicious anemia is made by appropriate studies specific therapy for this condition is indicated even though it will not cause reversion of the associated gastric atrophy

### Peptic Ulcer

The magnitude of the ulcer problem is indicated in some measure by the estimate that 10 per cent of the population of this country will at some time have an active peptic ulcer. Duodenal ulcer occurs approximately four times as often in men as in women; for gastric ulcer the ratio is about three males to one female. Collected data indicate that more than 10 per cent of the patients with peptic ulcer are over 60 years of age. One fourth to one half of these had their first symptoms after the age of 50.

**ETIOLOGY** Peptic ulcer (Fig. 17-5) results from the inability of the mucosa to withstand the corrosive action of acid gastric juice. It develops only in those areas of the gastrointestinal tract exposed to such acid. Gastric ulcers are usually associated with normal or low gastric acidity; duodenal ulcers with hyperacidity, which is probably related to vagal hyperactivity. The pathogenetic factors leading to decreased tissue resistance remain unknown. Factors of mucosal protection, integrity, and healing undoubtedly play a part.

Numerous drugs have been shown experimentally to be ulcerogenic and demonstrated clinically to have deleterious effects in ulcer-prone patients. These preparations include histamine, caffeine, reserpine, salicylates, Butazolidin, quinidine, and anticoagulants. Apparently they stimulate the secretion of hydrochloric acid by direct irritative and corrosive phenomena or in some cases by hormonal mechanisms and other means not well understood. Numerous documented reports in the literature also indicate that the administration of corticotropin and cortisone may produce ulcers in some susceptible individuals and reactivate quiescent ulcers in others. The incidence of ulcer formation in patients receiving short-term or long-term therapy with adrenal hormones has been reported as 1 to 5 per cent. Such lesions respond symptomatically to routine ulcer management. A history of pre-existing ulcer is not a contraindication to the administration of steroids where a

**DIAGNOSIS** An accurate and definitive diagnosis can be made only by gastroscopic observation. Physical findings are usually absent, or limited to mild or moderate epigastric tenderness. In the superficial or hypertrophic type of gastritis gastric analysis usually reveals hyperchlorhydria. In the atrophic variety (Fig 17-4) there is hypochlorhydria or achlorhydria.

Roentgen studies of the upper digestive tract should always precede gastroscopy, although the findings are usually negative or nonspecific. Prominent gastric folds will occasionally be noted in the hypertrophic type. In the atrophic variety the mucosal pattern is often smooth. Irritability and irregularities may be seen. Ulcerations, even though they may bleed severely and produce pain are too superficial to retain barium and hence are not visualized.

**TREATMENT** Therapy consists in eliminating all irritating agents and prescribing a regimen similar to that used in the management of peptic ulcer. Treatment may produce symptomatic relief without altering the gastroscopic picture. Atrophic gastritis, even when it is associated with pernicious anemia, does not respond to liver or vitamin therapy.

### **Gastric Atrophy**

Gastric atrophy is usually considered as the end result of atrophic gastritis, and the gastroscopic appearance of the mucosa is similar in the two conditions. The signs and symptoms of gastric atrophy are also similar to those of gastritis with the addition of morbid weight loss, pallor, and anemia.

The tendency to gastric atrophy appears to be hereditary and perhaps conditioned by nutritional deficiencies or metabolic disturbances. The majority of patients have achlorhydria. Gastric ulcer is frequently associated with atrophic lesions in the mucosa. Polyposis also is closely related to gastric atrophy and often follows it.

Roentgen examination in cases of gastric atrophy shows smoothing out of the gastric rugae which is suggestive of the diagnosis. For a more accurate diagnosis gastroscopy and biopsy of the gastric mucosa are necessary.

In some stages gastric atrophy may be arrested or reversed. Treatment is generally the same as that advised for uncomplicated

definite need exists, although antilucer therapy should be given concomitantly to patients with such a history

#### TREATMENT

**Diet** There is no evidence that an inadequate diet precipitates the development of ulcer or that any special dietary regimen will provide a permanent cure. In the absence of complications such as obstruction or postresection feeding problems special dietary factors such as accessory vitamins or minerals are rarely necessary. Patients with uncomplicated ulcer can obtain symptomatic relief with relatively simple dietary measures. A bland nonstimulating diet containing no mechanical or chemical irritants and designed to neutralize and buffer the gastric contents is required (Table 17-1). Stimulants such as coffee should be avoided as should spices, alcohol, carbonated beverages and raw vegetables or those that cannot be pureed. The diet should provide adequate calories and nutrients. It should include milk, eggs, cooked cereal, enriched bread, fish or meat that is well cooked (broiled, boiled or roasted), pureed vegetables and simple desserts.

Initially six small feedings during the day with milk and an antacid at bedtime and once or twice during the night may be necessary to relieve pain. As soon as discomfort has subsided the patient may have his diet in three meals with milk and an antacid between meals and at bedtime. Foods must be well cooked and well chewed. Citrus fruit and fruit juices are poorly tolerated by approximately half the patients with ulcer. Accessory vitamins are rarely indicated since response to therapy is usually rapid, allowing the patient to take a full and adequate diet within a relatively brief time.

**Rest** Psychic and physical rest is an important part of an ulcer regimen. Hospitalization while preferable is not always mandatory or feasible. The importance of a change in environment at the beginning of therapy is well recognized and an initial period of hospitalization provides this change as well as an opportunity for indoctrination and supervision at this critical period. Many patients do equally well with a vacation, however, and a few become more unhappy, uncomfortable and anxious when they are not permitted to carry on some of their routine activities. The home environment and the individual's financial and occupational circum-



FIG 17.5 Multiple benign peptic ulcers (*Top*) Spot film showing a clover leaf deformity of the duodenal bulb (*Bottom*) In the same patient a benign penetrating ulcer on the lesser curvature. The gastric lesion healed with medical treatment

is particularly important in patients with cerebral arteriosclerosis. Tranquilizers add to the expense of therapy and are rarely indicated.

The increased secretion of hydrochloric acid and gastric motility that may follow anxiety, tension or excess physical fatigue emphasize the need for regulating the individual's daily routine within his physical and emotional limitations. Although the effect of emotion on gastric circulation, motility and secretion has been noted by many and can be measured objectively, intensive psychotherapy is rarely necessary or justified. Most patients with ulcers are best treated by an understanding sympathetic internist or family physician.

*Antacids* Since benign peptic ulcer does not occur in patients with permanent achlorhydria and since most patients with peptic ulcers have normal or hyperacid gastric secretions, the relation between ulcer and acid appears to be a real one. Although no definite correlation has been demonstrated between the degree of acidity and the amount of pain or the recurrence of ulcer symptoms, the symptomatic relief provided by antacids has made them a cornerstone in the management of active peptic ulcer. It is best to give antacid preparations at the time in the digestive cycle when pain habitually occurs, usually one to two hours after meals at bedtime and with night feedings when necessary. The buffering effect of food can usually be relied upon in the interval.

Although a pH of 5 is necessary for complete inactivation of pepsin, peptic activity is most pronounced at pH 1.5 to 2.5. Rapid neutralization of the gastric secretion to a pH of 3.5 relieves ulcer pain and this level is generally considered optimal for antacid therapy. In most instances liquid medication is more effective than the tablet form. A possible exception is dihydroxy aluminum amino acetate which rapidly forms a satisfactory colloidal suspension. The chief advantage of tablets is the ease with which they can be carried about and taken.

Antacids and antacid mixtures in variety in both tablet and liquid form are available and are successful to varying degrees in relieving discomfort. Calcium carbonate in doses of 0.5 to 1.0 Gm. is potent and effective but calcium salts tend to precipitate and produce constipation. Magnesium oxide 0.25 Gm. is a widely used

stances must be considered particularly in elderly patients. Ambulatory treatment may be permitted if conditions are satisfactory and the general regimen can be followed.

Most patients with ulcer manifest apprehension and tension and appear to be benefited by mild sedation. Unless the patient is hospitalized, the dosage should not be large enough to produce drowsiness or interfere with efficiency. Avoidance of oversedation

TABLE 17-1 BLAND DIET

<i>Beverages</i>	Milk, milk and cream, buttermilk, strained fruit juices, Postum, decaffeinated coffee.
<i>Bread</i>	White bread, toasted, soda crackers, thin, well-baked biscuits, Zwieback.
<i>Butter or margarine</i>	As desired.
<i>Cereal</i>	Any refined cereal or strained cereal such as Cream of Wheat, Farina, strained oatmeal, or any of the following prepared cereals: Post Toasties, Cornflakes, Rice Toasties, Rice Krispie, Puffed Rice, Cheerios, Hot macaroni, spaghetti, noodles, rice, and grits.
<i>Cheese</i>	Cottage cheese, cream cheese, or mild yellow cheese if used in a sauce or in cooking.
<i>Desserts</i>	Baked or boiled custard, tapioca pudding, rice pudding, plum Jello or Jello made with any of the fruit allowed, fruit whip, vanilla ice cream, sponge cake, angel food cake, or plain white cake. Cake may have a plain icing. Vanilla wafers or vanilla cookies that contain no nut, raisin, coconut, or candied fruits.
<i>Eggs</i>	Prepared any way except fried.
<i>Fruits</i>	Any strained fruit or tolerated fruit juice, canned peaches, pears, apricots without skins, apple juice, plums, prunes, rhubarb, Royal Anne cherries, ripe raw bananas, baked bananas, baked apples without skins.
<i>Meats and fish</i>	Crisp bacon, very tender, well-cooked beef, veal, lamb, liver, or chicken, baked or creamed white fish, salmon, tuna, and oysters, stewed or creamed. Meat should be boiled, baked, or stewed. DO NOT FRY.
<i>Soups</i>	Creamed soups as desired, strained.
<i>Vegetables</i>	Any of the following tender, well-cooked vegetables, seasoned with butter, milk, or cream: asparagus tips, immature English peas, very tender green beans, squash, carrots, baby lima bean, immature beet, sweet and Irish potatoes.
<i>Liquid</i>	Cabbage, onions, peppers, radishes, and turnips, meat soups and gravy, corned beef, frankfurter, smoked meat, or smoked fish, and sausage, hot bread, pie, nuts, and olives.
<i>Special instructions</i>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Salt may be used in moderation. All other condiments should be avoided.</li> <li>2. Fruit juice is best taken after a meal.</li> <li>3. Avoid all fried foods, gravies, chocolate, alcohol, and soft drink.</li> <li>4. Take time eat slowly and chew well. Do not wash food down.</li> <li>5. Coffee, tea, and cigarettes according to doctor's orders.</li> </ol>

is particularly important in patients with cerebral arteriosclerosis. Tranquilizers add to the expense of therapy and are rarely indicated.

The increased secretion of hydrochloric acid and gastric motility that may follow anxiety, tension or excess physical fatigue emphasize the need for regulating the individual's daily routine within his physical and emotional limitations. Although the effect of emotion on gastric circulation, motility and secretion has been noted by many and can be measured objectively, intensive psychotherapy is rarely necessary or justified. Most patients with ulcers are best treated by an understanding sympathetic internist or family physician.

**Antacids** Since benign peptic ulcer does not occur in patients with permanent achlorhydria and since most patients with peptic ulcers have normal or hyperacid gastric secretions, the relation between ulcer and acid appears to be a real one. Although no definite correlation has been demonstrated between the degree of acidity and the amount of pain or the recurrence of ulcer symptoms, the symptomatic relief provided by antacids has made them a corner stone in the management of active peptic ulcer. It is best to give antacid preparations at the time in the digestive cycle when pain habitually occurs, usually one to two hours after meals at bedtime and with night feedings when necessary. The buffering effect of food can usually be relied upon in the intervals.

Although a pH of 5 is necessary for complete inactivation of pepsin, peptic activity is most pronounced at pH 1.5 to 2.5. Rapid neutralization of the gastric secretion to a pH of 3.5 relieves ulcer pain and this level is generally considered optimal for antacid therapy. In most instances liquid medication is more effective than the tablet form. A possible exception is dihydroxy aluminum amine acetate which rapidly forms a satisfactory colloidal suspension. The chief advantage of tablets is the ease with which they can be carried about and taken.

Antacids and antacid mixtures in variety in both tablet and liquid form are available and are successful to varying degrees in relieving discomfort. Calcium carbonate in doses of 0.5 to 1.0 Gm is potent and effective but calcium salts tend to precipitate and produce constipation. Magnesium oxide 0.25 Gm is a widely used



nonsystemic antacid. In some patients its continued use produces diarrhea. The antacid properties of magnesium carbonate and magnesium oxide are similar. Combinations of calcium carbonate and magnesium carbonate or magnesium carbonate and magnesium oxide tend to have a laxative effect. Aluminum hydroxide in liquid form has an astringent action and causes some constipation. A combination of aluminum hydroxide and magnesium trisilicate, given in doses of 8 to 16 cc, is effective and less constipating. Mixtures of colloidal aluminum hydroxide and calcium carbonate or magnesium trisilicate are efficient in raising the gastric pH and relieving ulcer pain, the dosage is 1 to 2 teaspoons or 1 to 2 tablets between meals and at bedtime. Sodium bicarbonate has a pronounced and rapid antacid effect, but because of the possibility of alkalosis and acid rebound it is rarely used except for short intervals in patients who are bleeding.

When acidity cannot be controlled by simple measures, a constant intragastric drip utilizing milk and antacid mixtures according to the desired protein and fat content may be used throughout the day and night. Up to 3 000 cc of milk mixed with 100 to 200 cc of antacid mixtures may be given over a 24 hour period. Patients under moderate sedation usually do not complain of discomfort or lose sleep because of the nasal catheter.

It should be emphasized that antacids may produce certain undesirable effects such as nausea and constipation, and occasionally may delay gastric emptying or produce alkalosis. Some patients object to the chalky or flavored taste.

**Anticholinergic Drugs.** The neural control of gastric secretion is mediated primarily through the autonomic nervous system. Anticholinergic drugs by inhibiting vagal activity decrease gastric motility and the secretion of acid. Their effect on motility is greater, however. Untoward side effects may make it impossible to give the effective dose, but such effects are less frequent and less severe with the newer preparations. These drugs, by delaying gastric emptying, may have the added value of providing longer neutralization of acid by ingested food and concomitant antacid therapy.

In patients hospitalized because of pain the parenteral administration of anticholinergic compounds may be extremely effective.

affording rest and relief of discomfort and permitting a more rapid symptomatic response. It is doubtful that the usual therapeutic doses can mask the manifestations of failure to heal or other serious complications. Anticholinergic drugs can, however, cause headache, blurred vision, dryness of the mouth, constipation, tachycardia, and urinary hesitancy. They should not be used in patients with a history suggestive of cardiospasm, pyloric obstruction, glaucoma, or prostatism.

**General Measures.** Resistance to ulcer is not increased by the administration of vitamins to patients manifesting no signs or symptoms of vitamin deficiency, and as a rule can be improved only by sufficient rest, an adequate diet, and the elimination of gastric irritants.

Limited smoking, particularly after eating, is probably not harmful. Excessive smoking usually mirrors an increase in nervous tension, and since it is often associated with a decreased food intake, should be discouraged. The patient may be allowed to take a mixed drink immediately before dinner, provided it contains no more than 1 or 1½ ounces of whisky. The increase in appetite, relaxation, and sense of well-being is probably sufficient to offset any harmful effects from the increased secretion of hydrochloric acid.

#### COMPLICATIONS

**Hemorrhage.** The most common cause of melena is bleeding from a duodenal ulcer. The prognosis is graver in patients over 45 particularly when melena is associated with hematemesis, pain, or additional complicating diseases such as generalized arteriosclerosis, hypertension, or diabetes. All bleeding patients must be hospitalized and kept at complete bed rest. A surgical consultant should be called immediately, and adequate supplies of blood made available. Adequate sedation may be provided with short acting barbiturates.

If the patient is vomiting, food should be temporarily withheld. Intravenous isotonic saline or Ringer's solution may be given for a period of several hours until vomiting ceases and a diet can be given. If the patient is not vomiting, he should have hourly feedings of milk, cream, precooked cereals, gelatin, or custard during the day. Such feedings may be alternated with milk and noncon-

stripting antacids given every other hour. If bleeding ceases the feedings may be amplified gradually to the routine ulcer regimen.

The condition of most patients can be accurately and easily followed by determinations of the blood pressure and pulse every half hour until vital signs are normal. Unless hemorrhage is continuous and massive, mild evidence of shock will usually subside promptly with the slow intravenous administration of 1,000 cc of hypertonic glucose. Immediate transfusion is usually not necessary unless the hemoglobin is below 50 per cent (7.5 Gm) or the patient shows clinical signs indicating air hunger or angina. When evidence of persistent bleeding is present, transfusions of 500 cc of whole blood should be given. Failure of the circulation to stabilize on the above measures within a period of 48 to 72 hours—manifested by persistent or recurring tachycardia and hypotension—indicates uncontrolled bleeding. In the majority of such instances the risk of surgery is less than that of medical management.

A drop in systolic pressure below 100 or elevation of the pulse rate above 120 with or without hematemesis or additional large soft tarry stools is indicative of further hemorrhage. When a patient whose bleeding has apparently been controlled for several days under adequate medical management has clinical evidence of another large hemorrhage surgery should be performed as soon as shock can be controlled.

Hemorrhage recurs months or years following surgery in 10 to 15 per cent of the patients. The incidence of recurrence is still higher in patients who have had a hemorrhage managed by medical means alone.

*Acute Perforation* Perforation of a peptic ulcer can usually be diagnosed without difficulty. In most cases a past history of ulcer symptoms can be obtained. Marked signs of peritoneal irritation develop, and free air beneath the diaphragm can be demonstrated by x ray. When the diagnosis is made within one to four hours after the onset of symptoms and the patient is in good condition gastric resection rather than simple closure of the perforation should be performed. When the diagnosis is questionable or adequate surgical facilities are not available or when the diagnosis is delayed longer than 8 to 12 hours, treatment with constant gastric aspiration, antibiotics and the parenteral administration of fluids glu-

cose and electrolytes together with general supportive measures, usually results in highly satisfactory closure and healing.

**Gastric Retention** Gastric retention is frequently produced by the edema and spasm associated with ulcer activity. It often responds satisfactorily to 7 to 10 days of an adequate medical regimen. After a one day interval of limiting the diet to small amounts of milk or other acid neutralizing liquids, the degree of retention and its response to treatment can be evaluated by aspirating and measuring the gastric contents following a period of 2 to 6 hours without food or liquids (depending upon the degree of discomfort produced by fasting). A persistent gastric residue of more than 150 cc after the patient has had nothing by mouth for 6 hours indicates obstruction.

Constant gastric suction through a nasal tube is useful for patients having a high degree of gastric retention or severe ulcer pain. When this procedure produces a demonstrable decrease in retention over a 72 hour period with disappearance of succussion splash and visible or palpable evidence of gastric dilatation one may assume that the obstruction is due in part to edema associated with inflammation and often with atony which follows unsuccessful efforts of the stomach to evacuate itself through the narrowed opening. In most such instances marked improvement follows when the gastric content are constantly neutralized or removed by suction and the stomach is lavaged nightly with sodium bicarbonate in warm saline solution (1 tablespoon per liter). With decreased inflammation and increased gastric tone evacuation of the stomach becomes satisfactory in 5 to 7 days and normal physiologic gastric emptying can be demonstrated. The diet can then be increased accordingly.

When the residual gastric contents are not reduced by lavage liquid feedings medication to relieve pylorospasm and rest it may be assumed that permanent organic obstruction exists and surgery is indicated.

**Unsatisfactory Response to Treatment** Failure to show a prompt and satisfactory response to treatment may indicate (1) erroneous or multiple diagnosis (for example associated gallbladder disease irritable bowel diverticulosis of the colon or hiatal hernia) (2) a large chronic ulcer (3) a walled off perforation (4) pyloric ob-

struction, (5) associated gastritis, (6) an inadequate medical regimen or (7) lack of co operation. The patient should be hospitalized for re evaluation and careful individualization of treatment.

**PREVENTION OF RECURRENCES** The major problem in treating the ulcer patient is to prevent recurrences. The likelihood of success depends to some degree on the willingness and ability of the patient to adhere to a routine of life minimizing psychic trauma, frustration, and uncontrolled extremes in emotion. Long term therapy should also include (1) a nonstimulating diet without excessive intervals between feedings, (2) routine seasonal counseling with re evaluation of the patient and renewed emphasis on the principles of therapy, (3) education of the patient regarding (a) the known factors influencing the pathogenesis of ulcer and (b) living within his physical and emotional limitations, (4) prompt treatment of recurrences.

It must be emphasized that many factors influencing mucosal integrity are not understood or controllable at the present time and that the disease may recur in spite of excellent co operation on the part of the patient. While simple uncomplicated ulcer responds to treatment in a gratifying manner, recurrences and complications are not prevented by diet and the constant or prolonged administration of antacids and anticholinergic drugs.

**GASTRIC ULCER** The differential diagnosis of gastric ulcer and gastric cancer is discussed in the next section. If all diagnostic facilities are available, it is highly accurate. In general it may be stated that the majority of patients with gastric ulcers should receive medical therapy at the onset, since malignant degeneration of benign ulcers is uncommon and intensive medical therapy will produce satisfactory results in a high percentage of cases. One may anticipate that approximately half the patients with benign gastric ulcers treated medically will be symptom free for as long as five years, and another 20 per cent will be markedly improved. The failure of a co operative patient to obtain relief from symptoms within a period of 5 to 7 days while hospitalized on an intensive regimen indicates (1) a complication of the ulcer, (2) the possibility that it is not benign, or (3) the presence of an unrecognized complicating disease.

The belief of some surgeons and clinicians that operation is indi-

cated in all cases of gastric ulcer is unjustified. The operative mortality associated with gastric resection is now only 1 to 2 per cent but the sequelae of gastric resection—namely persistent vomiting, nutritional disturbances and diarrhea—present difficult problems in about 10 per cent of the patients. Occasionally ulcer recurs after gastric resection. The results of adequate medical therapy for benign gastric ulcer are sufficiently good to justify a trial on medical management particularly in elderly patients for whom the risk of surgery is increased.

### Gastric Cancer

Cancer of the stomach (Fig. 17.6) is a leading cause of death among all types of malignant diseases. According to the Bureau of Vital Statistics, 63.3 per cent of the deaths from gastric cancer in 1954 occurred in men. Cancer of the stomach is most frequent in



FIG. 17.6 Carcinoma of the stomach in a patient with a deformed duodenal bulb. In this unusual case the roentgenogram reveals the presence of a deformed duodenal bulb (bottom arrow). At the time of operation the gastric lesion (top arrow) was found to be an ulcerating carcinoma.

struction (5) associated gastritis (6) an inadequate medical regimen, or (7) lack of co operation. The patient should be hospitalized for re evaluation and careful individualization of treatment.

**PREVENTION OF RECURRENCES** The major problem in treating the ulcer patient is to prevent recurrences. The likelihood of success depends to some degree on the willingness and ability of the patient to adhere to a routine of life minimizing psychic trauma, frustration, and uncontrolled extremes in emotion. Long term therapy should also include (1) a nonstimulating diet without excessive intervals between feedings, (2) routine seasonal counseling with re evaluation of the patient and renewed emphasis on the principles of therapy, (3) education of the patient regarding (a) the known factors influencing the pathogenesis of ulcer and (b) living within his physical and emotional limitations, (4) prompt treatment of recurrences.

It must be emphasized that many factors influencing mucosal integrity are not understood or controllable at the present time and that the disease may recur in spite of excellent co operation on the part of the patient. While simple uncomplicated ulcer responds to treatment in a gratifying manner, recurrences and complications are not prevented by diet and the constant or prolonged administration of antacids and anticholinergic drugs.

**GASTRIC ULCER** The differential diagnosis of gastric ulcer and gastric cancer is discussed in the next section. If all diagnostic facilities are available, it is highly accurate. In general it may be stated that the majority of patients with gastric ulcers should receive medical therapy at the onset, since malignant degeneration of benign ulcers is uncommon, and intensive medical therapy will produce satisfactory results in a high percentage of cases. One may anticipate that approximately half the patients with benign gastric ulcers treated medically will be symptom free for as long as five years and another 20 per cent will be markedly improved. The failure of a co operative patient to obtain relief from symptoms within a period of 5 to 7 days while hospitalized on an intensive regimen indicates (1) a complication of the ulcer, (2) the possibility that it is not benign, or (3) the presence of an unrecognized complicating disease.

The belief of some surgeons and clinicians that operation is indi-

insidious and the symptoms rarely appear urgent to the patient or his doctor. The patient and physician alike are apt to temporize with prolonged periods of symptomatic treatment before proper diagnostic studies are initiated. The result is a diagnostic delay of almost six months in 50 per cent of the cases of gastric cancer. The relationship between the duration of symptoms and the incidence of cure is a rough one, however. A good opportunity for cure may exist in patients with a long history of symptoms, while symptoms of short duration are not uncommonly associated with rapidly growing and widely disseminating tumors.

Approximately one third of the patients with gastric cancer give a fairly typical ulcer history. For the small gastric malignancy tends to simulate benign gastric ulcer clinically. Unfortunately a considerable group of patients undoubtedly have gastric cancer without early symptoms, and another large group who have had digestive symptoms for many years have no marked change in symptomatology with the development of carcinoma.

The earliest symptoms of gastric cancer in order of frequency are epigastric pain, anorexia, vomiting, weakness, and nausea. Other early symptoms include an intolerance for meats, vague discomfort after meals, loss of appetite, and weight increased fatigability, and unexplained anemia. Any of these complaints should cause the physician to suspect gastric malignancy.

Because physical findings are usually negative in the curable stage of a gastric malignancy, the diagnosis must depend chiefly on laboratory studies, gastroscopy, and roentgen examination.

Laboratory procedures should include complete blood studies, gastric analysis, and examination of the stools for occult blood. Anemia, variable in type, is a frequent finding in patients with gastric cancer. Although achlorhydria is more common in patients with cancer, normal amounts of acid or hyperacidity may be found. When no acid or less than 30 degrees of free acid is present following an injection of 0.5 mg. of histamine hydrochloride, the likelihood of malignancy is increased. The repeated demonstration of occult blood in the stool of a patient on a meat free diet is also significant.

Gastroscopy is valuable in demonstrating gastric atrophy or mucosal infiltration by tumor, and in permitting visual confirmation of abnormalities found by roentgen study. Although gastroscopy



the sixth and seventh decades, and more than 90 per cent of the cases occur in patients beyond the age of 50. The mean age is 55 to 56 years.

Data collected by Ivy (1955) indicate that the incidence of gastric carcinoma is influenced by environment. Ivy concluded that malignant change is incited in cells by nonspecific irritants acting for example in the margin of a gastric ulcer, or by specific carcinogens acting on the cells of the normal mucosa. Low grade carcinogens may be produced by overheated fats or may be present in food dyes, flavors, and preservatives. At present there is no demonstrable relationship between the development of gastric cancer and the ingestion of alcohol, hot foods, or excessively hot beverages.

Genetic factors may be responsible for increased susceptibility, and both chronic gastritis and gastric ulcer may contribute to the genesis of gastric cancer. The incidence of gastric cancer is significantly higher in patients having gastric polyps, heterotopic tissue in the stomach, achlorhydria or hypochlorhydria, and atrophy of the gastric mucosa. Since neither gastric polyps nor heterotopic tissue is common, these conditions are not of great statistical significance as etiologic factors. Hitchcock (1957) however has emphasized the high degree of correlation between gastric cancer and gastric mucosal atrophy in patients with pernicious anemia. He stated that the incidence of gastric cancer in a group of patients with pernicious anemia was 21.9 times as great as that in the general population. In patients with achlorhydria or hypochlorhydria it was 4.5 times as great. Other writers however give the incidence of gastric malignancy in patients with pernicious anemia as only 3 to 9 times greater than that in similar age groups in the general population. Hitchcock feels that the greatest number of asymptomatic cancers can be detected by roentgen examination of patients beyond the age of 50 who have achlorhydria or hypochlorhydria.

Although it would appear that adequate treatment of gastritis and benign gastric ulcer should decrease the incidence of gastric carcinoma, the therapeutic response produced by vitamin B<sub>12</sub> or liver extract in patients with pernicious anemia does not remove the risk of polypoid change and carcinoma of the stomach.

**DIAGNOSIS** Because pain is not an early or pronounced symptom in gastric cancer, early diagnosis is difficult. The onset is usually

- (1) malignant degeneration may occur in initially benign ulcers
- (2) it is sometimes difficult to differentiate benign from malignant lesions

The incidence of carcinomatous degeneration in previously benign ulcers is given by Brown (1953) as only 1.5 per cent and the generally accepted figure is less than 5 per cent. Mortality statistics furthermore indicate that resection of all gastric ulcers will not solve the problem of gastric cancer.

Carcinomas of the stomach frequently ulcerate and are mistaken for benign ulcers. While no completely accurate differentiation can be made in all instances except by detailed microscopic study, the diagnostic error in 1 000 cases reviewed by Smith and his co-workers (1955) was less than 9 per cent. The problem of differentiating the benign from the malignant ulcer is particularly difficult in elderly patients; however, gastric ulcers are common in older age groups and symptoms may be atypical. Occasionally the first indication of trouble is hemorrhage. Because elderly patients frequently describe dyspepsia or indigestion of long duration, a malignant lesion is often assumed to be benign.

Several points may be of help in the differential diagnosis:

- 1 Anorexia and weight loss are more frequent in patients with malignant ulceration.
- 2 Gastric lesions must be considered malignant when gastric analysis reveals achlorhydria following the injection of histamine.
- 3 A high percentage of ulcers distal to the incisura and involving the antrum are malignant and ulcers on the greater curvature are rarely benign. Because ulcerations along the lesser curvature above the incisura are usually benign, lesions in this area can be followed by biweekly roentgen examinations and gastroscopy for a period of 4 to 6 weeks while the patient is treated medically.
- 4 Lack of peristaltic activity is suggestive of malignancy, as is the presence of a filling defect around the ulcer or a halo about the base. Spasm or edema surrounding a benign ulcer occasionally produces a similar roentgen appearance.
- 5 Under ideal conditions, cytologic study will reduce the percentage of error.

While prolonged medical and dietary management of gastric ulcer is not advisable, immediate surgery is seldom justified unless the evidence strongly indicates malignancy. Patients under treat-

does not always differentiate benign lesions from malignant ones, it complements the other diagnostic studies and increases the overall diagnostic accuracy.

Cytologic examination of gastric fluid by the Papanicolaou technique may be helpful. The accuracy of the procedure depends upon the clinician's ability to obtain satisfactory specimens and upon the skill of the cytologist. Present studies indicate that vigorous lavage with physiologic saline solution is as effective as the brush or chymotrypsin lavage in obtaining fluid for the cytologic diagnosis of gastric cancer. Unequivocal demonstration of malignant cells is diagnostic, but failure to identify tumor cells does not rule out malignancy, since submucosal or intraluminal tumors will occasionally fail to yield diagnostic cellular debris.

Roentgen examination of the stomach is the most accurate method of diagnosis, even though ulcerating and polypoid lesions are sometimes overlooked by experienced radiologists and early infiltrating lesions may fail to produce alterations in the gastric mucosal pattern. The demonstration of a filling defect surrounding induration and loss of gastric pliability is highly indicative of malignancy. With careful and, if necessary, repeated roentgenologic study, the diagnosis can be made correctly in as many as 90 per cent of the cases at the time of the initial examination. Additional abnormalities found at the time of roentgen examination—for example, gallstones or a deformed duodenal bulb—should not be allowed to divert attention from the more serious condition.

In cases where the diagnosis is still in doubt after blood studies, gastric analysis, gastroscopy, cytologic study and roentgen examination, it may be necessary to repeat these studies after a brief period of therapy. By such means an accurate preoperative diagnosis can be made in 90 to 95 per cent of all cases. In the remaining small group, careful pathologic study is required for absolute diagnosis.

A regular yearly gastrointestinal survey utilizing all the above procedures should be performed in patients with pernicious anemia, hypochromic anemia, gastric atrophy, or histamine fast achlorhydria, and in cases where roentgen examination has demonstrated gastric polyps or loss of gastric rugae.

*Differentiation of Benign Gastric Ulcer and Gastric Cancer.* The ulcerating gastric lesion presents special problems for two reasons.

- (1) malignant degeneration may occur in initially benign ulcers,
- (2) it is sometimes difficult to differentiate benign from malignant lesions

The incidence of carcinomatous degeneration in previously benign ulcers is given by Brown (1953) as only 1.5 per cent and the generally accepted figure is less than 5 per cent. Mortality statistics furthermore indicate that resection of all gastric ulcers will not solve the problem of gastric cancer.

Carcinomas of the stomach frequently ulcerate and are mistaken for benign ulcers. While no completely accurate differentiation can be made in all instances except by detailed microscopic study, the diagnostic error in 1 000 cases reviewed by Smith and his co-workers (1933) was less than 9 per cent. The problem of differentiating the benign from the malignant ulcer is particularly difficult in elderly patients; however, gastric ulcers are common in older age groups and symptoms may be atypical. Occasionally the first indication of trouble is hemorrhage. Because elderly patients frequently describe dyspepsia or indigestion of long duration, a malignant lesion is often assumed to be benign.

Several points may be of help in the differential diagnosis.

- 1 Anorexia and weight loss are more frequent in patients with malignant ulceration.
- 2 Gastric lesions must be considered malignant when gastric analysis reveals achlorhydria following the injection of histamine.
- 3 A high percentage of ulcers distal to the incisura and involving the antrum are malignant and ulcers on the greater curvature are rarely benign. Because ulcerations along the lesser curvature above the incisura are usually benign, lesions in this area can be followed by biweekly roentgen examinations and gastroscopy for a period of 4 to 6 weeks while the patient is treated medically.
- 4 Lack of peristaltic activity is suggestive of malignancy, as is the presence of a filling defect around the ulcer or a halo about the base. Spasm or edema surrounding a benign ulcer occasionally produces a similar roentgen appearance.
- 5 Under ideal conditions cytologic study will reduce the percentage of error.

While prolonged medical and dietary management of gastric ulcer is not advisable, immediate surgery is seldom justified unless the evidence strongly indicates malignancy. Patients under treat-

ment for benign ulcer should become asymptomatic in 7 to 10 days and the ulcer should decrease in size by 50 per cent in 3 or 4 weeks. Ulcers greater than 2.5 cm. in diameter are more likely to recur, and may fail to heal because of fibrosis. Where progressive and complete healing does not occur, the lesion must be considered malignant and surgery should be advised. Since malignant lesions may occasionally re-epithelialize, recurrence of ulcer within an interval of months may be an indication for surgery.

By means of these diagnostic criteria and limited periods of medical therapy, while the patient is kept under careful observation, the percentage of diagnostic error can be kept low and extensive resection of innocent stomachs can be avoided.

**TREATMENT** At the present time surgical resection offers the only possible cure for gastric cancer. As a result of advances in surgical techniques, the number of cases suitable for gastric resection has shown a steady increase although the time interval between the onset of symptoms and hospital admission has been decreased but little. Partial gastrectomy is usually the procedure of choice since total gastrectomy has added little to the salvage rate and is associated with a much higher mortality and greater incidence of postoperative complications. Marshall (1958) reported a mortality of 3.2 per cent for partial gastrectomy and 7 per cent for total gastrectomy at the Lahey Clinic between the years 1950 and 1954.

In general the likelihood of curing gastric cancer decreases with advancing age. The rate of resection is lower in older patients because of the magnitude of surgery and the presence of complicating factors such as cardiovascular and renal disease, malnutrition, diabetes, and cerebral changes. Where an operable malignancy is believed to exist, however, elderly patients should not be deprived of the hope offered by resection. Except in the presence of distant disseminated metastases, surgical exploration is often justifiable even where cure is not possible. The surgeon may be able to provide some relief of pain or delay the development of obstruction.

The operability of a gastric cancer cannot always be determined by clinical or accessory laboratory studies. Routine liver function tests, however, often make it possible to suspect metastasis to the liver. If metastatic tumor can then be demonstrated by needle

aspiration biopsy of the liver unnecessary surgery can be avoided

The care of patients having incurable gastric cancer requires great compassion and understanding. The physician rarely justifies his position more. In the majority of such patients pain is controllable. The major problem is usually the emotional disturbance produced by an awareness of deterioration. As the patient's anxiety and depression increase the physician's interest and assistance must be increased.

The psychologic management is simplified by maintaining the patient in familiar surroundings when possible. Even where little or nothing can be done from the standpoint of cure a great deal of comfort can be afforded the patient. Providing pain free periods of usefulness gives a great boost to the patient's morale. Analgesics should be given in sufficient doses to control pain and varied according to the patient's needs. Addiction may be prevented by utilizing a variety of narcotic agents. Control of discomfort should be begun with simple analgesics such as acetylsalicylic acid and codeine progressing to Demerol, morphine or Dilaudid as needed. Careful observation will be required to determine the quantity and frequency of administration.

The simultaneous use of sedatives, antispasmodics or tranquilizing drugs may often decrease the quantity of analgesics required. Occasionally nerve root section or chordotomy may be indicated. Palliative abdominal surgery should not be denied the patient whose pain is due to tumor growth or compression of sensitive tissues. When surgery is not advisable roentgen therapy should be considered even though the histologic appearance of the tumor does not justify any great hope of response. Occasionally high doses delivered to localized areas are relatively effective in relieving temporarily the discomfort of pressure or obstruction. In selected cases the use of steroids appears to decrease the inflammatory reaction often associated with malignant growth as well as to produce an increase in appetite and a sense of well being.

## THE SMALL INTESTINE

### Malignant Tumors

Approximately 3 per cent of all gastrointestinal malignancies occur in the small intestine and one third of these are in the

ment for benign ulcer should become asymptomatic in 7 to 10 days and the ulcer should decrease in size by 50 per cent in 3 or 4 weeks. Ulcers greater than 2.5 cm in diameter are more likely to recur, and may fail to heal because of fibrosis. Where progressive and complete healing does not occur, the lesion must be considered malignant and surgery should be advised. Since malignant lesions may occasionally re-epithelialize, recurrence of ulcer within an interval of months may be an indication for surgery.

By means of these diagnostic criteria and limited periods of medical therapy while the patient is kept under careful observation the percentage of diagnostic error can be kept low, and extensive resection of 'innocent' stomachs can be avoided.

**TREATMENT** At the present time surgical resection offers the only possible cure for gastric cancer. As a result of advances in surgical techniques, the number of cases suitable for gastric resection has shown a steady increase although the time interval between the onset of symptoms and hospital admission has been decreased but little. Partial gastrectomy is usually the procedure of choice since total gastrectomy has added little to the salvage rate and is associated with a much higher mortality and greater incidence of postoperative complications. Marshall (1958) reported a mortality of 3.2 per cent for partial gastrectomy and 7 per cent for total gastrectomy at the Lahey Clinic between the years 1950 and 1954.

In general the likelihood of curing gastric cancer decreases with advancing age. The rate of resection is lower in older patients because of the magnitude of surgery and the presence of complicating factors such as cardiovascular and renal disease, malnutrition, diabetes and cerebral changes. Where an operable malignancy is believed to exist however elderly patients should not be deprived of the hope offered by resection. Except in the presence of distant disseminated metastases surgical exploration is often justifiable even where cure is not possible. The surgeon may be able to provide some relief of pain or delay the development of obstruction.

The operability of a gastric cancer cannot always be determined by clinical or accessory laboratory studies. Routine liver function tests however often make it possible to suspect metastasis to the liver. If metastatic tumor can then be demonstrated by needle

aspiration biopsy of the liver unnecessary surgery can be avoided

The care of patients having incurable gastric cancer requires great compassion and understanding. The physician rarely justifies his position more. In the majority of such patients pain is controllable. The major problem is usually the emotional disturbance produced by an awareness of deterioration. As the patient's anxiety and depression increase the physician's interest and assistance must be increased.

The psychologic management is simplified by maintaining the patient in familiar surroundings when possible. Even where little or nothing can be done from the standpoint of cure a great deal of comfort can be afforded the patient. Providing pain free periods of usefulness gives a great boost to the patient's morale. Analgesics should be given in sufficient doses to control pain and varied according to the patient's needs. Addiction may be prevented by utilizing a variety of narcotic agents. Control of discomfort should be begun with simple analgesics such as acetylsalicylic acid and codeine progressing to Demerol morphine or Dilaudid as needed. Careful observation will be required to determine the quantity and frequency of administration.

The simultaneous use of sedatives antispasmodics or tranquilizing drugs may often decrease the quantity of analgesics required. Occasionally nerve root section or chordotomy may be indicated. Palliative abdominal surgery should not be denied the patient whose pain is due to tumor growth or compression of sensitive tissues. When surgery is not advisable roentgen therapy should be considered, even though the histologic appearance of the tumor does not justify any great hope of response. Occasionally high doses delivered to localized areas are relatively effective in relieving temporarily the discomfort of pressure or obstruction. In selected cases the use of steroids appears to decrease the inflammatory reaction often associated with malignant growth as well as to produce an increase in appetite and a sense of well being.

## THE SMALL INTESTINE

### Malignant Tumors

Approximately 3 per cent of all gastrointestinal malignancies occur in the small intestine and one third of these are in the



duodenum (Fig 17-7) The majority of duodenal tumors are found in the first and second portions of the duodenum and tend to be ulcerating or polypoid Adenocarcinoma is the most common type of duodenal malignancy and sarcoma is next



FIG 17-7 Duodenal ulcer (top arrow) duodenal invasion by gallbladder cancer and leiomyoma (bottom arrow) In this patient a 79 year old man the roentgenogram shows an ulcer on the posterior wall of the duodenum and an irregularity of the second portion of the duodenum caused by extrinsic pressure secondary to invasion from an infiltrating gallbladder cancer There is also a benign submucosal leiomyoma of the duodenum

The outstanding symptoms and signs of small bowel malignancy include dull cramping and abdominal pain weight loss vomiting anemia weakness an abdominal mass intestinal obstruction melena and diarrhea The symptoms may be vague and occasional patients give a history suggestive (though not typical) of ulcer Early diagnosis is difficult

The diagnosis is based largely on roentgen studies which may show constricting lesions filling defects evidence of obstruction or mucosal distortion and ulceration Early diagnosis is jeopardized by inadequate technique overlying barium or failure to obtain



FIG 178 Leiomyosarcoma of the jejunum A leiomyosarcoma of the jejunum (arrow) is displacing the ligament of Treitz in the third portion of the duodenum and jejunum medially with destruction and distortion of the lateral jejunal wall and polypoid filling defects within the lumen One year after initial surgery there was a local recurrence of tumor which was resected Since then the patient has remained asymptomatic for a period of three years

films at proper intervals Constricting lesions may be mistaken for peristaltic contractions Unexplained dilatation is a suspicious finding and indicates the need for additional examinations Special techniques may be of help The patient may be given a saline

solution of ice water following the barium meal to provide a single rapidly moving column of barium, or the barium solution may be suspended with methyl cellulose.

Lymphosarcoma of the small intestine, a relatively rare type of malignancy, most frequently involves the ileum. The most common roentgen findings are dilated loops of small bowel that tend to retain barium, and an increase in the diameter of the lumen at the site of the lesion. Large areas may show considerable mucosal alteration without narrowing.

The treatment of malignant tumors in any part of the bowel is surgical removal. The survival rate is related to the location, type, and grade of the neoplasm and to the presence or absence of metastases. The prognosis is better with adenocarcinoma than with lymphosarcoma and is better if the neoplasm is located in the jejunum or ileum rather than in the duodenum (Fig 17-8). Roentgen therapy following surgery apparently does not prolong life.

### Chronic Enteritis

Chronic recurring granulomatous disease of the small intestine is most frequent in young adults, although 5 to 10 per cent of the cases develop after the age of 50. Men are somewhat more susceptible than women.

The terminal ileum is the site most frequently involved; hence the term regional enteritis or more commonly ileitis (Fig 17-9). Lesions may occur throughout the ileum, however, or may be present in scattered areas in the ileocejunum. In rare cases involvement of the duodenum may be primary, or the lesion may pass beyond the ileocecal valve or be associated with inflammatory disease in the colon. Ulcerative lesions are prominent in the acute phase. When the disease becomes chronic, scarring, intestinal obstruction, and fistulas may occur.

**DIAGNOSIS** The disease is characterized clinically by abdominal pain, diarrhea, fever, weight loss, intestinal bleeding (indicated by streaking or profuse red blood in the stools, occasional tarry stools, and anemia), and by the presence of an abdominal mass and perianal abscesses and fistulas. In approximately 10 per cent of the patients obstructive symptoms occur at some time during the course.

of the disease. Other complications include fistulas communicating with the anterior abdominal wall, fistulas between loops of bowel and adjacent viscera, fistulas about the rectum and intra abdominal abscesses. The incidence of fistulization is as high as 40 per cent in patients with long standing disease but free perforation with peritonitis is rare. Systemic complications which occur infrequently include arthritis, evidence of vitamin deficiency, erythema nodosum and iritis.



Fig. 17-9 Regional enteritis. Evidence of diffuse enteritis in this roentgen study of the small intestine includes dilated segments, narrowed areas and loss of the mucosal pattern.

Leukocytosis with white cell counts in the range of 9 000 to 12 000 is frequent. Anemia is usually moderate but may be severe.

When chronic enteritis is suspected the patient should have a sigmoidoscopic examination, stool cultures, agglutinations for dysentery organisms, examination of warm stools for parasites, roentgen examination of the chest to exclude tuberculosis and a flat plate of the abdomen. The roentgen findings following the introduction of barium are said by Marshak and Wolfe (1953) to be diagnostic. Barium examination of the colon should precede a roentgen study

of the small intestine since it will often reveal the diseased area and thus eliminate the risk of obstruction associated with the introduction of barium by mouth. Barium studies of the small bowel may show changes beginning with loss of the normal mucosal pattern in the terminal ileum and progressing to the narrowed "string" sign which is diagnostic. In addition to narrowing and mucosal changes roentgen studies may show dilatation proximal to the narrowed area, definite obstruction, fistulous tracts between loops of bowel and occasionally filling defects. In some instances multiple areas of narrowing may be demonstrated.

Among the conditions that may produce similar roentgen findings are sprue and lymphosarcoma. Sprue is characterized by segmentation, flocculation of barium, abnormalities in motility and dilatation of loops—findings that indicate disturbed function rather than inflammatory stenosing disease. Occasionally lymphosarcoma may involve long segments of the small intestine producing a roentgen picture of alternating narrowing and dilatation with mucosal destruction and fistula formation.

**TREATMENT** The results with medical management may be considered as fair to good in about 75 per cent of the cases. Medical therapy includes restriction of the patient's activity within his physical and emotional limitations. Moderate physical activity may be allowed as long as the patient has no fever or complications and is able to maintain his weight. A bland diet low in fat and residue and high in protein, carbohydrate and vitamins should be given. Accessory protein in the form of powdered supplements may be prescribed where necessary. If clinical evidence of malabsorption exists, vitamin concentrates may be administered orally or intramuscular injections of crude liver or vitamin B complex may be used when active diarrhea is present. Occasional transfusions of whole blood or blood products may be indicated for protein replacement or for the treatment of anemia that fails to respond to the above measures. Vitamin K (5 to 50 mg intramuscularly or orally once a day) is indicated when bleeding is present and a prothrombin deficiency is demonstrable.

Sedation adequate to provide needed rest and antispasmodic or anticholinergic drugs to decrease excessive intestinal motility may

be useful. The use of an insoluble sulfonamide (Sulfathiazidine or Sulfasuxidine) in dosages of 6 to 10 Gm per day over a period of 10 to 14 days may be of value in decreasing secondary bacterial invasion or contamination of ulcerating lesions. Chloromycetin, 250 mg three times daily has also been advocated as useful in the acute stage. Penicillin, streptomycin, Aureomycin and Terramycin are used only in the presence of complications or prior to operation. In the acute ulcerative phase a favorable response may follow roentgen therapy. Unfortunately, however, results are not consistently good.

Hydrocortone or prednisone in doses of 15 to 30 mg daily has been associated with some symptomatic improvement although it does not appear to alter the course of the disease. Occasionally corticotropin (20 mg in 500 cubic centimeters of water given intravenously over an 8 hour interval or 20 to 30 mg of the gel given by intramuscular injection) is also helpful in producing remission of symptoms. The results with corticotropin are more striking than those following cortisone. When either drug is used an antibiotic (preferably Chloromycetin) should be given concomitantly.

Surgery is required for the management of complications. Operative interference is usually contraindicated early in the disease when the disturbance is acute or is demonstrably diffuse involving extensive portions of the ileum or jejunum. The indications for surgery are (1) chronic localized disease with fistulas communicating to the anterior abdominal wall or with physical findings of a mass and systemic manifestations of fever and anemia (2) the presence of perirectal abscesses (which rarely heal spontaneously and require some surgical procedure to remove the diseased portion of the bowel) (3) persistent bleeding (4) intestinal obstruction (5) free or walled off perforation with peritonitis.

In most instances the best surgical results follow excision rather than a sidetracking procedure with exclusion. As many as 65 per cent of the patients will have a recurrence at the site of resection or anastomosis several years after operation. Medical treatment of recurring disease or where indicated additional surgery will often provide another period of relief from symptoms. Death owing to the disease itself is fortunately uncommon. The majority of fatalities are due to surgical treatment of the complications.

## THE COLON AND RECTUM

## Diverticulosis and Diverticulitis of the Colon

Diverticulosis and diverticulitis (Fig 17-10) become increasingly frequent with advancing age. Among patients beyond the age of 40 as many as one out of 5 may have diverticuli. Two thirds of the

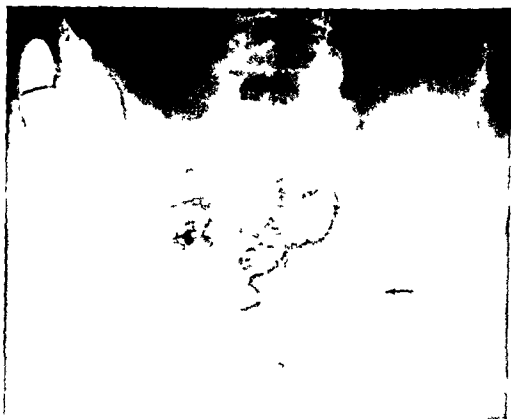


FIG 17-10 Diverticulosis and diverticulitis of the sigmoid colon with perforation and an inflammatory mass. In this patient the lesion resolved completely on medical management. Arrow indicates area of diverticulitis.

patients with diverticulitis are beyond the age of 60. It has been estimated that one fifth of all patients with diverticulosis ultimately have symptoms, and as many as 5 per cent may eventually require surgery. The incidence of colonic diverticuli is usually somewhat higher in males and in sedentary individuals who are overweight and have a long history of constipation.

Diverticuli develop at areas of potential weakness in the wall of the colon, where blood vessels pass through. In some areas the vis-

cular association is undoubtedly the cause of occasional extensive hemorrhage with or without inflammation. Symptoms occur when the narrow mouthed diverticula become clogged with fecal material, producing irritation, edema and inflammation, which spread to the surrounding wall and cause obstruction. In occasional cases the process leads to perforation to abscess and peridiverticulitis, or to the development of fistula with abscess formation and stricture.

**DIAGNOSIS** The most common symptoms of diverticulitis are pain in both lower quadrants (more frequently on the left) constipation sometimes alternating with diarrhea and nausea and vomiting. Many patients are awakened at night by abdominal pain particularly if they have taken an enema at bedtime.

The most frequent clinical findings are abdominal tenderness, low grade fever, leukocytosis (15 000 to 20 000), a palpable mass, and signs of peritoneal irritation.

The diagnosis can be made only by barium examination of the colon. The sigmoid alone will be involved in fully half of the cases and the sigmoid and descending colon in an additional 25 per cent. Generalized involvement of the colon occurs in only one out of five patients.

**TREATMENT** Once the diagnosis of diverticulitis is made therapy should be directed toward the prevention of serious complications. The frequency of attacks can usually be minimized by careful regulation of the diet and bowel habits. The diet should be low in residue and the fluid intake should be adequate. The establishment of regular bowel habits is important and can often be facilitated by the use of a bulk laxative to compensate for the lack of residue in the diet. On such a regimen many patients who have had diverticulitis can go for years with only an occasional mild recurrence.

If an acute inflammatory process develops a brief period of absolute bed rest is indicated and the diet should be limited to liquids or low residue foods. If fever is present the use of one of the insoluble sulfonamides (Sulfathalidine or Sulfasuxidine 6 to 8 Gm per day) is of value. A retention enema of 2 ounces of liquid petrolatum may be helpful if the patient is constipated. In the absence of contraindications such as glaucoma and prostatism antispasmodics are of help; the ones most commonly used are bella



donna, 15 drops of the tincture three to four times per day, and synthetic anticholinergics. On this regimen symptoms often subside within 24 to 48 hours even when inflammatory masses are present.

Patients with clinical signs of obstruction should have a flat plate of the abdomen to rule out the presence of free air or peritonitis. Obstruction owing to edema and inflammation will usually respond to conservative therapy, including suction with a Miller Abbott tube.

Perforation of an inflamed diverticulum usually produces all the signs of acute spreading peritonitis and is often associated with demonstrable evidence of free air below the diaphragm. The most common cause of left sided subphrenic abscess is a ruptured diverticulum of the colon. It is not uncommon, however, to find small extravasations of barium outside the colon on roentgen films made after an acute attack of diverticulitis when the patient is improving and will ultimately go on to complete recovery. Hence careful and repeated evaluations of the patient's clinical status are important. Unless improvement is prompt and progressive, surgical intervention may be necessary.

Other indications for surgery include the demonstration of a free perforation, the development of abscess and signs of sepsis, the occurrence of fistulas or obstruction not relieved promptly by the usual measures, and frequent recurrences leading to the development of stenosis and obstruction. In some cases inflamed diverticula become adherent to adjacent structures producing walled-off perforations and fistulas. Vesicosigmoidal fistulas are common and may cause urinary symptoms that can be managed only by surgical intervention.

Hemorrhage may be a major complication of diverticulitis and diverticulosis. Severe exsanguinating hemorrhage, however, is not common. Severe bleeding which cannot be controlled calls for laparotomy with ligation of vessels or resection of a portion of the colon.

### **Association of Diverticulosis and Cancer of the Colon**

The patient who has diverticula of the colon and a carcinoma (Fig. 17-11) may present a complicated diagnostic problem. Since



FIG 17-11 Carcinoma of the colon and diverticulosis. An annular constricting mucinous adenocarcinoma (arrow) has produced partial obstruction 10 cm distal to the hepatic flexure. Scattered diverticula are seen in the colon.

donna, 15 drops of the tincture, three to four times per day and synthetic anticholinergics. On this regimen symptoms often subside within 24 to 48 hours, even when inflammatory masses are present.

Patients with clinical signs of obstruction should have a flat plate of the abdomen to rule out the presence of free air or peritonitis. Obstruction owing to edema and inflammation will usually respond to conservative therapy, including suction with a Miller Abbott tube.

Perforation of an inflamed diverticulum usually produces all the signs of acute spreading peritonitis and is often associated with demonstrable evidence of free air below the diaphragm. The most common cause of left sided subphrenic abscess is a ruptured diverticulum of the colon. It is not uncommon, however, to find small extravasations of barium outside the colon on roentgen films made after an acute attack of diverticulitis, when the patient is improving and will ultimately go on to complete recovery. Hence, careful and repeated evaluations of the patient's clinical status are important. Unless improvement is prompt and progressive surgical intervention may be necessary.

Other indications for surgery include the demonstration of a free perforation, the development of abscess and signs of sepsis, the occurrence of fistulas or obstruction not relieved promptly by the usual measures, and frequent recurrences leading to the development of stenosis and obstruction. In some cases inflamed diverticula become adherent to adjacent structures, producing walled off perforations and fistulas. Vesicovesigmoidal fistulas are common, and may cause urinary symptoms that can be managed only by surgical intervention.

Hemorrhage may be a major complication of diverticulitis and diverticulosis. Severe exsanguinating hemorrhage, however, is not common. Severe bleeding which cannot be controlled calls for laparotomy with ligation of vessels or resection of a portion of the colon.

### **Association of Diverticulosis and Cancer of the Colon**

The patient who has diverticula of the colon and a carcinoma (Fig. 17-11) may present a complicated diagnostic problem. Since

colon and rectum interfere with function by producing irritation, ulceration and obstruction and manifest themselves by changes in bowel habits pain and anemia Carcinoma of the bowel should be suspected in patients having ill defined and persistent abdominal discomfort a change in bowel habits or blood in or on the stool Rectal lesions may cause tenesmus and the sensation of incomplete evacuation

Lesions in the left side of the colon invade the colon wall rapidly and spread early They often produce a decrease in the caliber of the stool and obstructive phenomena Marked distention of the abdomen may occur when a high degree of distal obstruction is present and the ileocecal valve is competent In such cases intubation is usually ineffective and surgical decompression should be carried out

Lesions in the right side of the colon tend to grow into the lumen ulcerate and produce pain and anemia Occasionally a palpable mass is present Obstruction is uncommon The development of cachexia weight loss enlargement of the liver, and jaundice usually indicates advanced disease

The diagnostic procedures are simple well established and highly accurate The majority of bowel lesions are within reach of the examining finger or sigmoidoscope The presence of a rectal shelf on digital rectal examination may indicate involvement of the rectovesical or recto-uterine pouch Most patients can be examined successfully by sigmoidoscopy without any preparation provided they have had an evacuation that morning In this way the edema erythema and occasional trauma produced by laxatives or enemas can be avoided If no lesion is demonstrable on sigmoidoscopy barium examination of the colon should be performed this method affords a high degree of accuracy in the diagnosis of lesions of the colon

When studies are negative but signs and symptoms persist examination should be repeated at intervals of 4 to 6 weeks The stool should be examined carefully for pathogenic bacilli and amebas When urinary symptoms are present in patients with cancer of the rectum or lower sigmoid cystoscopic examination should be done prior to operation Except under unusual conditions resection of the colon should be postponed until a biopsy specimen has been examined and reported positive for malignancy

both diseases occur with increasing frequency in advancing years and are most common in the fifth and sixth decades they can be expected to occur simultaneously in some patients, even though there is no indication of a causal relationship between them. Both lesions occur most frequently in the sigmoid and descending colon, and occasionally both may occur in the same segment. In a review of the literature up to May, 1950, Rowe and Kollmar (1952) found only 62 cases of carcinoma and diverticulitis occurring simultaneously in the large bowel.

The roentgen findings in diverticulitis are narrowing and irregularity in a 10 to 20 cm. segment of bowel, with intact mucosa and varying degrees of irritability. In carcinoma the segment is usually smaller, the change is abrupt and often annular in character, the narrowing is more rigid and constant, and mucosal destruction may be present. The demonstration of diverticula in association with a questionable lesion of the colon indicates that the lesion is probably benign but does not eliminate the need for continued observation and careful evaluation and re-evaluation. The response of the lesion to a brief period of conservative treatment usually permits accurate diagnosis. If the lesion can be reached with a sigmoidoscope, a specimen should be removed for biopsy, and a smear should be taken for cytologic studies by the Papanicolaou technique.

### **Cancer of the Colon and Rectum**

The colon and rectum rank third as the most frequent sites of malignant neoplasms in both sexes. The most common malignant lesion of the colon is adenocarcinoma. Squamous cell carcinomas occur at the anus. Less common lesions include lymphosarcomas, leiomyosarcomas and carcinoids. Cancer of the colon is responsible for approximately 15 per cent of all deaths from cancer. Because these lesions are more accessible for study and surgical removal than many malignancies elsewhere, however, a 5 year survival rate of over 50 per cent is possible.

**DIAGNOSIS** Cancers in the colon and rectum tend to produce symptoms early, and as a result of educational programs that have focused attention on these symptoms patients now report to the physician more promptly than was once the case. Lesions of the

colon and rectum interfere with function by producing irritation, ulceration and obstruction and manifest themselves by changes in bowel habits pain and anemia. Carcinoma of the bowel should be suspected in patients having ill defined and persistent abdominal discomfort, a change in bowel habits or blood in or on the stool. Rectal lesion may cause tenesmus and the sensation of incomplete evacuation.

Lesions in the left side of the colon invade the colon wall rapidly and spread early. They often produce a decrease in the caliber of the stool and obstructive phenomena. Marked distention of the abdomen may occur when a high degree of distal obstruction is present and the ileocecal valve is competent. In such cases intubation is usually ineffective and surgical decompression should be carried out.

Lesions in the right side of the colon tend to grow into the lumen, ulcerate and produce pain and anemia. Occasionally a palpable mass is present. Obstruction is uncommon. The development of cachexia, weight loss, enlargement of the liver and jaundice usually indicates advanced disease.

The diagnostic procedures are simple, well established and highly accurate. The majority of bowel lesions are within reach of the examining finger or sigmoidoscope. The presence of a rectal shelf on digital rectal examination may indicate involvement of the rectovesical or recto-uterine pouch. Most patients can be examined successfully by sigmoidoscopy without any preparation provided they have had an evacuation that morning. In this way the edema, erythema and occasional trauma produced by laxatives or enemas can be avoided. If no lesion is demonstrable on sigmoidoscopy, barium examination of the colon should be performed; this method affords a high degree of accuracy in the diagnosis of lesions of the colon.

When studies are negative but signs and symptoms persist, examination should be repeated at intervals of 4 to 6 weeks. The stool should be examined carefully for pathogenic bacilli and amebae. When urinary symptoms are present in patients with cancer of the rectum or lower sigmoid, cystoscopic examination should be done prior to operation. Except under unusual conditions, resection of the colon should be postponed until a biopsy specimen has been examined and reported positive for malignancy.

both diseases occur with increasing frequency in advancing years and are most common in the fifth and sixth decades, they can be expected to occur simultaneously in some patients, even though there is no indication of a causal relationship between them. Both lesions occur most frequently in the sigmoid and descending colon and occasionally both may occur in the same segment. In a review of the literature up to May, 1950, Rowe and Kollmar (1952) found only 62 cases of carcinoma and diverticulitis occurring simultaneously in the large bowel.

The roentgen findings in diverticulitis are narrowing and irregularity in a 10 to 20 cm. segment of bowel, with intact mucosa and varying degrees of irritability. In carcinoma the segment is usually smaller, the change is abrupt and often annular in character, the narrowing is more rigid and constant and mucosal destruction may be present. The demonstration of diverticula in association with a questionable lesion of the colon indicates that the lesion is probably benign, but does not eliminate the need for continued observation and careful evaluation and re-evaluation. The response of the lesion to a brief period of conservative treatment usually permits accurate diagnosis. If the lesion can be reached with a sigmoidoscope, a specimen should be removed for biopsy, and a smear should be taken for cytologic studies by the Papanicolaou technique.

### **Cancer of the Colon and Rectum**

The colon and rectum rank third as the most frequent sites of malignant neoplasms in both sexes. The most common malignant lesion of the colon is adenocarcinoma. Squamous cell carcinomas occur at the anus. Less common lesions include lymphosarcomas, leiomyosarcomas and carcinoids. Cancer of the colon is responsible for approximately 15 per cent of all deaths from cancer. Because these lesions are more accessible for study and surgical removal than many malignancies elsewhere, however, a 5 year survival rate of over 50 per cent is possible.

**DIAGNOSIS** Cancers in the colon and rectum tend to produce symptoms early, and as a result of educational programs that have focused attention on these symptoms, patients now report to the physician more promptly than was once the case. Lesions of the



FIG. 17-12 Adenomatous polyps and cancer of the colon. A polypoid mucinous adenocarcinoma (upper arrow) is seen in the upper portion of the ascending colon (proximal to the hepatic flexure). An adenomatous polyp (lower arrow) situated just above the ileocecal valve was found to contain a focus of well-differentiated adenocarcinoma.

tion. At the time of surgery the entire colon should be examined carefully, since multiple carcinomatous lesions are not uncommon and additional polyps are frequently found. Patients who have had polyps or cancers removed from the colon or rectum should have repeated sigmoidoscopic and roentgen examinations at intervals of 3 to 6 months, since carcinomas of the colon occur more frequently in patients who have had a previous resection.



A chronic, nonspecific inflammatory disease that appears related to ulcerative colitis occasionally produces localized lesions that may be confused with carcinoma. The entity differs from the usual form of ulcerative colitis in its location (the distal sigmoid and rectum are not involved) and in the fact that it is most frequent in the older age group. It is characterized by diarrhea, bleeding, pain, weight loss, anemia, and occasionally a palpable tumor. Roentgen study reveals narrowing, spasm, and loss of haustrations in the involved section of the colon. Even at operation it may be difficult to differentiate between such an inflammatory mass and a malignant growth.

### **Relationship of Intestinal Polyps to Cancer**

Most physicians now believe that a high percentage of cancers of the colon originate in glandular polyps (Fig 17-12). These lesions, which are multiple in about 20 per cent of the cases, are apparently the result of an inherent abnormality rather than chronic inflammation. They occur slightly more often in men, and become increasingly frequent with age. The incidence of adenomatous polyps of the colon has been estimated at approximately 5 per cent of the adult population, and as high as 20 or 25 per cent in patients beyond the age of 70. Collier (1956) estimates that 15 to 30 per cent of such polyps ultimately become malignant.

The lesions are often localized and grow slowly. They are usually asymptomatic until they reach sufficient size to produce changes in bowel functions, or until they ulcerate and bleed, or become malignant. Since small benign polyps do not cause symptoms as a rule, the importance of routine sigmoidoscopic examinations in elderly patients cannot be overemphasized.

Because of the high incidence of malignant degeneration, all intestinal polyps should be removed or destroyed, even though biopsy may fail to disclose evidence of cancer. Small lesions in the rectum or rectosigmoid may be destroyed by fulguration, removed with the biopsy forceps, or excised with a base clamp and ligature, as necessary. Lesions higher in the colon will require for diagnosis roentgen studies and occasionally double contrast studies with air insufflation, and must be removed by laparotomy with segmental resec-

there is sufficient time to perform a complete and satisfactory medical evaluation

**DIAGNOSIS** Patients should be hospitalized immediately when the diagnosis is suspected. Laboratory procedures that should be ordered include a urinalysis, with examination for urine urobilinogen, determinations of serum lipase, amylase and sugar, white blood cell and differential cell counts, determinations of serum bilirubin, serum albumin and globulin and serum alkaline phosphatase and a cephalin flocculation test. An elevated serum alkaline phosphatase provides the best evidence of extrahepatic obstruction. It is well recognized that older patients do not exhibit the degree of leukocytosis and tenderness seen in younger persons as a response to acute inflammation. Baseline electrocardiograms should be taken since nonspecific changes secondary to cholecystitis or pancreatitis may occur.

Flat plates of the abdomen and chest may reveal opacities in the gallbladder region, evidence of ileus or the presence of free air in the biliary tree. They are also helpful in excluding other diseases within the abdomen or chest.

Patients with acute cholecystitis should be seen by a surgical consultant as early as possible since the attack may not resolve spontaneously and examination at the onset may permit a more critical evaluation of the course during the first 24 to 48 hours.

**TREATMENT** As soon as the diagnosis of acute cholecystitis seems reasonably certain, the patient should be put to bed and gastric suction and decompression instituted to alleviate nausea, vomiting and distention. Opiates and antispasmodics such as meperidine 50 to 100 mg and atropine 0.4 mg given subcutaneously may be used as necessary to control pain. Where fever and evidence of sepsis are present, the patient should receive tetracycline 250 mg by mouth every 6 hours day and night or 0.5 to 1.0 Gm administered intravenously in two equal doses at 12-hour intervals. If necessary, penicillin may also be used either in the aqueous solution or in the repository form; the daily dose should be 300,000 to 600,000 units divided into equal portions and given subcutaneously or intramuscularly at intervals of 4 to 12 hours depending upon the clinical course.

### Preparation for Surgery

Advanced age in the patient is itself no contraindication to radical surgery. Older patients who have been properly selected and evaluated and given adequate preoperative treatment are well able to tolerate major resections of the colon. Preparation should include a period of hospitalization adequate to permit correction of anemia and hypoproteinemia, restoration of blood volume, and sterilization of the bowel with an insoluble sulfonamide given orally in a dosage of 6 to 8 Gm per day for 4 to 5 days or an antibiotic given for 24 to 48 hours. B complex vitamins and vitamin K should be given parenterally during the period when preoperative medication suppresses bacterial growth and vitamin synthesis. Because intestinal obstruction may produce major electrolyte disturbances with depletion of sodium, potassium and chlorides, preoperative determinations of the serum sodium, potassium, chlorides, carbon dioxide combining power, and nonprotein nitrogen should be done as a guide to replacement therapy with intravenous infusions of hypertonic glucose in water, normal saline, or Ringer's solution with potassium chloride.

Because neoplastic growth is slower the lymphatic circulation diminished, and the circulatory system less active in older patients the prognosis following surgery for cancer of the colon may be more favorable than in earlier life. Even if cure is not possible, considerable palliation can usually be provided by surgical means.

## THE GALLBLADDER

### Acute Cholecystitis

Acute cholecystitis is the commonest complication of cholelithiasis. It is usually due to biliary duct obstruction which produces characteristic symptoms focusing attention on the biliary tract. Pain is the most frequent symptom, and is commonly located in the right upper quadrant. Nausea, vomiting, fever, localized tenderness, and mild jaundice are frequent findings. The patient is usually acutely ill. A tender, palpable gallbladder is often an early finding. Circumstances may limit study and management to a consideration of the biliary pathology itself. In most cases, however,

likely explanation is impaction obstruction gangrene and perforation of the gallbladder into the first or second portion of the duodenum. Roentgen examination will provide confirmatory evidence of small bowel obstruction, and occasionally air will outline the biliary tree indicating a cholecystenteric fistula. Calcium stones



FIG. 17-13. Fistulous communication between the biliary tree and the small intestine. Barium studies of the upper gastrointestinal tract show extravasation of barium into biliary ducts (arrow).

may be visualized in the bowel lumen. Complete obstruction that does not respond to medical management is an indication for surgical intervention. Occasionally stones will be passed from the bowel and decompression can be obtained by intubation and suction. Complications such as pancreatitis and hepatitis or hepatic coma are more frequent in older age groups. Surgery must be approached

The patient should be kept under careful observation including charting and analysis of the temperature, pulse and respirations every two hours. The abdomen should be examined frequently to determine any increase or decrease in the signs of peritoneal irritation, and the presence or absence of abdominal masses. Determinations of the leukocyte and differential cell counts should be made at intervals of 2 to 4 hours and where necessary determinations of the serum bilirubin, serum amylase, blood urea nitrogen, and blood sugar should be done once or twice daily.

During the period of observation associated disturbances such as congestive failure, diabetes, prostatism or electrolyte imbalance should be corrected as far as possible. Disturbances of sodium and potassium levels and water balance may be treated by the use of a 5 per cent solution of glucose in distilled water or isotonic saline with 20 to 40 mEq of potassium depending on the initial determination added to each 1 000 cubic centimeters.

Seventy five per cent of the patients will improve sufficiently within 24 to 72 hours so that more careful study can be carried out to establish a primary diagnosis and eliminate the possibility of other complicating diseases such as pancreatitis. Gradual increase in activity, the oral intake of fluids (fruit juice, milk, gelatin and broth) and gradual return to a full diet may be permitted when signs and symptoms subside.

**COMPLICATIONS** Complications are more frequent in older patients who have a long history of biliary tract disease. Surgery is indicated when the temperature remains elevated, the leukocyte count increases, signs of peritoneal irritation develop or an abdominal mass appears. Ten to 15 per cent of the patients will require early surgical intervention because of failure to respond to medical management.

Possible complications include acute perforation leading to bile peritonitis. A more frequent complication is localized liver abscess. In rare cases fistulous communication with the intestine develops producing gallstone ileus (Figs. 17-13, 17-14). Approximately 1 per cent of the cases of intestinal obstruction are said to be due to gallstones. When symptoms of acute obstructive cholecystitis are followed by evidence of simple mechanical obstruction of the bowel (pain, nausea, vomiting, distention and obstipation) the most

likely explanation is impaction obstruction gangrene and perforation of the gallbladder into the first or second portion of the duodenum. Roentgen examination will provide confirmatory evidence of small bowel obstruction and occasionally air will outline the biliary tree indicating a cholecystenteric fistula. Calcium stones



FIG 17-13. Fistulous communication between the biliary tree and the small intestine. Barium studies of the upper gastrointestinal tract show extravasation of barium into biliary ducts (arrow).

may be visualized in the bowel lumen. Complete obstruction that does not respond to medical management is an indication for surgical intervention. Occasionally stones will be passed from the bowel and decompression can be obtained by intubation and suction.

Complications such as pancreatitis and hepatitis or hepatic coma are more frequent in older age groups. Surgery must be approached

The patient should be kept under careful observation including charting and analysis of the temperature, pulse and respirations every two hours. The abdomen should be examined frequently to determine any increase or decrease in the signs of peritoneal irritation, and the presence or absence of abdominal masses. Determinations of the leukocyte and differential cell counts should be made at intervals of 2 to 4 hours and, where necessary, determinations of the serum bilirubin, serum amylase, blood urea nitrogen, and blood sugar should be done once or twice daily.

During the period of observation associated disturbances such as congestive failure, diabetes, prostaticism or electrolyte imbalance should be corrected as far as possible. Disturbances of sodium and potassium levels and water balance may be treated by the use of a 5 per cent solution of glucose in distilled water or isotonic saline with 20 to 40 mEq of potassium depending on the initial determination added to each 1 000 cubic centimeters.

Seventy five per cent of the patients will improve sufficiently within 24 to 72 hours so that more careful study can be carried out to establish a primary diagnosis and eliminate the possibility of other complicating diseases such as pancreatitis. Gradual increase in activity, the oral intake of fluids (fruit juice, milk, gelatin and broth) and gradual return to a full diet may be permitted when signs and symptoms subside.

**COMPLICATIONS** Complications are more frequent in older patients who have a long history of biliary tract disease. Surgery is indicated when the temperature remains elevated, the leukocyte count increases, signs of peritoneal irritation develop or an abdominal mass appears. Ten to 15 per cent of the patients will require early surgical intervention because of failure to respond to medical management.

Possible complications include acute perforation leading to bile peritonitis. A more frequent complication is localized liver abscess. In rare cases fistulous communication with the intestine develops producing gallstone ileus (Figs 17-13, 17-14). Approximately 1 per cent of the cases of intestinal obstruction are said to be due to gallstones. When symptoms of acute obstructive cholecystitis are followed by evidence of simple mechanical obstruction of the bowel (pain, nausea, vomiting, distention and obstipation) the most

of nonspecific symptoms including epigastric pressure fullness nausea, heartburn or intolerance to fatty foods. Some patients will have many of the above symptoms in combination.

It must be emphasized that chronic gallbladder disease is often associated with vague nonspecific complaints similar to those found in association with gastrointestinal malignancies. The frequency of biliary disease in older people makes it likely that stones or abnormal gallbladder function may be demonstrated by cholecystography in some instances where the gallbladder has nothing to do with the presenting complaints. The possibility that gallstones may coexist with a neoplasm elsewhere in the digestive tract must not be overlooked. It is only by careful and complete study that the lesion (or lesions) responsible for the patient's symptoms will be revealed and proper treatment can be instituted. Such a study should include blood counts, endoscopy, cholecystography and complete barium studies of the digestive tract, duodenal drainage and examination of bile for the presence of cholesterol and calcium oxalate crystals, examination of stools for ova, parasites and blood and determinations of liver function.

**TREATMENT** The time to treat cholecystic disease is when definite symptoms appear usually in early middle age. Dietary management is often of help. If one considers stasis a factor in etiology and symptomatology it would seem logical to give adequate fat to stimulate the gallbladder to empty. It is generally inadvisable however to increase the fat intake in this age group and diets containing normal or excessive amounts of fat often produce severe symptoms in such patients. Contraction of the gallbladder may force stones into smaller ducts producing hydrops, obstruction and colic. Patients generally do better on a bland non-irritating diet similar to that used in peptic ulcer.

In some cases where there is no evidence of obstruction or bile extract tablets 0.2 to 0.3 Gm. or dehydrocholic acid (Decholin), 0.25 Gm. may be given three times a day after meals and may provide some symptomatic relief. Other measures that may produce varying degrees of symptomatic relief include limitation of activity, reduction in weight for obese patients, smaller feedings, the ingestion before breakfast of a glass of hot water containing one half teaspoon of table salt and a tablespoon of lemon juice or 5 to 7 Gm.





FIG 17-14 Gallstone ileus. A P film of the abdomen in a 75 year old woman showing dilated intestinal loops and a density in the left lower quadrant (arrow) that represents a gallstone

cautiously in patients with physical or laboratory findings indicative of hepatic cellular damage or impairment of liver function. Where possible, operation should be postponed until reevaluation can be carried out and prophylactic measures instituted.

### **Chronic Gallbladder Disease**

Chronic gallbladder disease appears to be the result of bile stasis, infection, and certain endocrine and metabolic factors, the most important of which are obesity, hypercholesterolemia, and pregnancy. The symptoms are varied. Some patients present only with attacks of biliary colic involving the right upper quadrant with radiation to the epigastrium or back. At times the attacks may simulate acute pancreatitis or angina or may be associated with one of these conditions. An additional group of patients have a variety

is strongly suggestive of common duct distention. The pain may radiate around to the right subscapular region and less frequently to other quadrants of the abdomen. Patients may give a history of recurring episodes of jaundice and intermittent pain, chills and fever when an incomplete ball valve type of obstruction occurs.

Complications are indicated by persistent pain, jaundice, fever, leukocytosis and elevation of the sedimentation rate. Infection and obstructive cholecystitis may result in empyema. The frequency with which stones are found in the ductal passages of patients with cholelithiasis varies with the clinical incidence of common duct obstruction and operative cholangiography. The reported incidence has varied from 5 to 35 per cent. Stones small enough to pass through the cystic duct may remain in the common duct for long periods of time producing symptoms only when they increase in size. The presence of stones in the extrahepatic ducts ultimately may produce dilatation, thickening, fibrosis and even ulceration when the stones become impacted.

**TREATMENT** The mortality in elderly patients undergoing cholecystectomy for acute cholelithiasis or choledocholithiasis may be as high as 5 to 8 per cent and is as much as 8 times the mortality associated with elective biliary tract surgery in this group. When conditions or complications arise that necessitate immediate surgical intervention, however, the well prepared elderly patient is usually able to tolerate cholecystectomy, which is the procedure of choice.

Cholecystostomy may be done under local anesthesia when the patient's condition is critical, when stones impacted in the common duct have caused severe illness of long standing, when the presence of peritonitis or inflammation in and about the biliary tree makes identification of structures difficult or when the patient has a life expectancy so short that the probability of death from an other primary disease is greater than that of recurring biliary tract disease. Under ordinary circumstances elective cholecystectomy is indicated following an emergency cholecystostomy. If cholecystostomy is done and the postoperative course is satisfactory, an attempt should be made to visualize the biliary tree prior to the patient's discharge from the hospital. It is important to recognize that

of magnesium sulfate, and saline catharsis with magnesium citrate 200 cc, or sodium phosphate 10 mg, two to three times a week

### **Cholelithiasis and Gallstone Colic**

There is a close relationship between gallstones and gallbladder disease. Bockus (1946) has stated that 80 per cent of patients with symptoms severe enough to require surgery for a diseased gallbladder will have gallstones. Other writers give figures nearer 90 per cent. The reported incidence of gallstones in the adult population varies from 2 to 30 per cent depending upon the source of material and the age group studied. In persons over the age of 50 the incidence of gallstones found at autopsy ranges from 5 to 15, high as 30 per cent in the ninth decade. Biliary calculi are much more common in women.

**DIAGNOSIS** When cholecystographic studies are interpreted carefully and repeated if necessary, the findings are extremely reliable. Since stones have been reported to form within a period of two to three months, it may be necessary to repeat cholecystographic studies at frequent intervals in order to rule out cholelithiasis as the cause of complaints. The roentgen diagnosis of cholelithiasis is most accurate and the diagnosis of cholecystitis least accurate when the gallbladder's ability to concentrate the dye is least impaired. Repeated failure to demonstrate a gallbladder shadow after administration of the dye is a highly reliable indication of disease and is presumptive evidence of stones. In as many as 90 per cent of such cases nonopaque calculi will be found at the time of operation.

The symptoms of gallstone colic are determined to a large degree by the patient's reactivity, the location of the stones, the presence or absence of infection, and the presence of other pathologic conditions. Gallstone colic usually begins as epigastric pain that often increases in severity, simulating bowel cramps. Typical attacks require opiates for the relief of pain, which may actually be accentuated by small doses of analgesics. When infection and associated peritoneal irritation develop, the pain will shift to the right upper quadrant. Vomiting may be a side effect of the analgesic, but

is too great to make surgery advisable for such a large group, (3) asymptomatic and nonfunctioning gallbladders may not contain stones (4) a mortality of 0.5 to 1 per cent is associated with elective cholecystectomy and (5) dyskinesia or stricture developing after operation may cause complaints referable to the biliary tree in patients who were previously asymptomatic.

In my opinion surgery should be reserved for patients having demonstrable stones and symptoms referable to the biliary system.

**PREPARATION OF PATIENTS FOR GALLBLADDER SURGERY** Because of the high incidence of associated abnormalities such as hypertension, diminished cardiac reserve and renal or hepatic impairment, careful and complete preoperative evaluation is particularly important in elderly patients undergoing elective surgery. The result will be a more benign postoperative course. Coronary artery disease is not a contraindication to surgery. In the obese patient a reduction in weight prior to elective surgery should be encouraged.

Liver function studies should be done routinely before gallbladder surgery and should include determinations of the prothrombin time, total serum proteins, serum albumin and globulin and alkaline phosphatase, a cephalin flocculation test and in the absence of jaundice a bromsulfalein test. In jaundiced patients the determination of urinary urobilinogen may be helpful. In patients with abnormal prothrombin times the response to a test dose of vitamin K also provides helpful information. Often marked preoperative improvement will result from parenteral injections of vitamin K together with a diet adequate in protein and carbohydrate and other nutritional substances.

Cardiac and renal function should be evaluated by clinical and laboratory procedures and in males the condition of the prostate should be investigated. Blood levels of sugar and nonprotein nitrogen should be determined and the digestive tract should be studied by sigmoidoscopy and barium examinations of the upper and lower tract. The presence of additional diseases such as hernia, peptic ulcer or diverticulosis often complicates diagnosis and management.

Preoperative medication should be light and should not include morphine. Atropine may be preferable to scopolamine. A prolonged general anesthetic is not well tolerated in this age group.

jaundice is common in acute cholecystitis and may encourage unnecessary exploration of the common duct, with a considerable increase in the mortality rate

**MANAGEMENT OF ASYMPTOMATIC GALLSTONES** In many patients with gastrointestinal complaints, 'complete study' reveals evidence of cholelithiasis which, in the opinion of the physician, may not be related to the presenting complaints. The Mayo Clinic has followed 112 patients with asymptomatic gallstones for 10 to 20 years (Comfort *et al*, 1948). Colic ultimately developed in 20 cases, jaundice in 5. Twenty-four had cholecystectomies and 3 died following surgery. The experience of many physicians has been similar to that reported by the Mayo Clinic, namely, that half the patients found to have gallstones after the age of 50 will remain relatively asymptomatic. The other half will have varying degrees of discomfort. Obviously, it is impossible to predict which patients will have symptoms related to the presence of gallstones.

Surgeons and clinicians are not in complete agreement as to the status of "prophylactic" cholecystectomy in patients with asymptomatic cholelithiasis. Those in favor of surgery point out that (1) the mortality of the procedure in an otherwise well patient is less than 1 per cent, (2) the surgical mortality increases to 3 to 8 per cent in patients who have symptoms or complications resulting from attacks of acute cholecystitis or other unrelated degenerative diseases, (3) complications may arise that will necessitate surgical intervention under unfavorable circumstances. (4) the high mortality associated with biliary surgery in persons over 65 is due to complications of pancreatitis and other conditions associated with obstructive cholecystitis, (5) extensive inflammatory disease may be present in the absence of symptoms. (6) small stones may already be passing into the common duct and (7) there is a probability of increasing stone formation, progressive gallbladder disease and the ultimate risk of cancer.

The arguments of those not in agreement with this philosophy are as follows. (1) since most patients with an initial attack of acute obstructive cholecystitis respond favorably to medical management, simple cholecystectomy can usually be performed as an elective procedure in those patients who have symptoms. (2) the number of patients past 60 who harbor asymptomatic gallstones

is too great to make surgery advisable for such a large group, (3) asymptomatic and nonfunctioning gallbladders may not contain stones (4) a mortality of 0.5 to 1 per cent is associated with elective cholecystectomy and (5) dyskinesia or stricture developing after operation may cause complaints referable to the biliary tree in patients who were previously asymptomatic.

In my opinion surgery should be reserved for patients having demonstrable stones and symptoms referable to the biliary system.

**PREPARATION OF PATIENTS FOR GALLBLADDER SURGERY** Because of the high incidence of associated abnormalities such as hypertension, diminished cardiac reserve, and renal or hepatic impairment, careful and complete preoperative evaluation is particularly important in elderly patients undergoing elective surgery. The result will be a more benign postoperative course. Coronary artery disease is not a contraindication to surgery. In the obese patient a reduction in weight prior to elective surgery should be encouraged.

Liver function studies should be done routinely before gallbladder surgery and should include determinations of the prothrombin time, total serum proteins, serum albumin and globulin, and alkaline phosphatase, a cephalin flocculation test, and in the absence of jaundice, a bromsulfalein test. In jaundiced patients the determination of urinary urobilinogen may be helpful. In patients with abnormal prothrombin times, the response to a test dose of vitamin K also provides helpful information. Often marked preoperative improvement will result from parenteral injections of vitamin K, together with a diet adequate in protein and carbohydrate and other nutritional substances.

Cardiac and renal function should be evaluated by clinical and laboratory procedures, and in males the condition of the prostate should be investigated. Blood levels of sugar and nonprotein nitrogen should be determined, and the digestive tract should be studied by sigmoidoscopy and barium examinations of the upper and lower tract. The presence of additional diseases such as hernia, peptic ulcer, or diverticulosis often complicates diagnosis and management.

Preoperative medication should be light and should not include morphine. Atropine may be preferable to scopolamine. A prolonged general anesthetic is not well tolerated in this age group.

Postoperative care should include early ambulation when no contraindications are present and passive exercises. Prolonged stay in bed is necessary.

### Postcholecystectomy Syndrome

Complaints simulating chronic cholecystitis with chills sometimes persist after cholecystectomy has been performed. Such cases require painstaking evaluation. The most common causes are residual stones, pancreatitis, postoperative sphincter spasm and common duct distention, a persistent remnant of the cystic duct, unrecognized carcinoma, preoperative stricture, and abnormality. Careful exploration and operative cholangiograms at the time of cholecystectomy will usually reveal any calculi present elsewhere in the biliary tree. In patients who have had prolonged drainage with a T tube, cholangiography should be performed prior to removal of the tube.

Persistence of an external biliary fistula following cholecystectomy is strongly suggestive of residual stones in the common duct. In the absence of demonstrable jaundice, persistent elevation of the alkaline phosphatase and retention of bromsulphalein is also strong evidence of residual obstruction.

In patients who have had a cholecystectomy, intravenous cholangiography utilizing new contrast media has been moderately successful in providing visualization of the bile ducts. The method may also be utilized in patients who have not had previous gall bladder surgery when oral cholangiography fails to show the gall bladder or when pyloric obstruction or other disturbances interfere with the absorption of the dye. Its greatest usefulness, however, lies in making it possible to visualize the biliary ducts in patients who have undergone cholecystectomy. Occasionally cystic duct remnants, anomalies, strictures, tumors, or residual stones (Fig. 17-15) may be demonstrated by intravenous cholangiography. Unexplained dilatation, retention of the contrast medium, and delay in evacuation of bile may suggest dyskinesia. Since the contrast medium must be picked up and excreted by the liver, this technique also serves as a measure of hepatic function. Visualization of the hepatic ducts is usually unsatisfactory when associated hepatic insufficiency is present. Intravenous cholangiography also gives

poor opacification of the biliary tree in patients with obstructive jaundice

The management of the postcholecystectomy syndrome is dependent upon the cause. The use of nitroglycerin, a bland diet, antispasmodics and "medical duodenal drainage" two to three



FIG 17-15 Cystic duct remnant and residual ductal stones. Oral cholangiogram showing the cystic duct remnant (top arrow) and multiple filling defects (bottom arrows) representing nonopaque calculi in the dilated common duct.

times a week may be of help. If these measures are not effective, sphincterotomy will usually relieve symptoms. Obviously, the demonstration of residual stones, stricture, or cystic duct remnants requires additional surgery.

After taking 10 to 15 Gm of magnesium sulfate followed by a light breakfast, the patient reclines on his right side for 30 to 60 minutes.



Postoperative care should include early ambulation where no contraindications are present, and passive exercises if prolonged stay in bed is necessary.

### **Postcholecystectomy Syndrome**

Complaints simulating chronic cholecystitis with cholelithiasis sometimes persist after cholecystectomy has been performed. Such cases require painstaking evaluation. The most common causes are residual stones, pancreatitis, postoperative sphincter spasm and common duct distention, a persistent remnant of the cystic duct, unrecognized carcinoma, postoperative stricture, and neuroma. Careful exploration and operative cholangiograms at the time of cholecystectomy will usually reveal any calculi present elsewhere in the biliary tree. In patients who have had prolonged drainage with a T tube, cholangiography should be performed prior to removal of the tube.

Persistence of an external biliary fistula following cholecystectomy is strongly suggestive of residual stones in the common duct. In the absence of demonstrable jaundice, persistent elevation of the alkaline phosphatase and retention of bromsulfalein is also strong evidence of residual obstruction.

In patients who have had a cholecystectomy, intravenous cholangiography utilizing new contrast media has been moderately successful in providing visualization of the bile ducts. This method may also be utilized in patients who have not had previous gall bladder surgery when oral cholecystography fails to show the gall bladder or when pyloric obstruction or other disturbances interfere with the absorption of the dye. Its greatest usefulness, however, lies in making it possible to visualize the biliary ducts in patients who have undergone cholecystectomy. Occasionally cystic duct remnants, anomalies, strictures, tumors or residual stones (Fig 17-15) may be demonstrated by intravenous cholangiography. Unexplained dilatation, retention of the contrast medium and delay in evacuation of bile may suggest dyskinesia. Since the contrast medium must be picked up and excreted by the liver, this technique also serves as a measure of hepatic function. Visualization of the hepatic ducts is usually unsatisfactory when associated hepatic insufficiency is present. Intravenous cholangiography also gives

poor opacification of the biliary tree in patients with obstructive jaundice

The management of the postcholecystectomy syndrome is dependent upon the cause. The use of nitroglycerin, a bland diet, antispasmodics and medical duodenal drainage \* two to three



FIG. 17-15 Cystic duct remnant and residual ductal stones. Oral cholangiogram showing the cystic duct remnant (top arrow) and multiple filling defects (bottom arrows) representing nonopaque calculi in the dilated common duct.

times a week may be of help. If these measures are not effective, sphincterotomy will usually relieve symptoms. Obviously, the demonstration of residual stones, stricture, or cystic duct remnants requires additional surgery.

After taking 10 to 15 Gm of magnesium sulfate followed by a light breakfast, the patient reclines on his right side for 30 to 60 minutes.

## Cancer

Cancer of the gallbladder is most common in the seventh and eighth decades, but occurs only in patients having cholelithiasis. It is found in about 1 per cent of all gallbladders removed at operation and comprises 3 to 4 per cent of all malignancies. The most frequent symptoms are pain, jaundice, weight loss, nausea and vomiting. The prognosis is uniformly poor except in those cases diagnosed following cholecystectomy. The fact that the development of cancer precedes by many months the onset of symptoms limits the number of resectable cases and has been a potent argument for surgery in the asymptomatic patient with cholelithiasis.

## THE PANCREAS

### Pancreatitis

Pancreatitis is probably best considered as a physiologic disturbance in patients having an anatomic predisposition, namely a common passageway above the papilla of Vater for the common bile duct and the duct of Wirsung. When the papilla is occluded by sphincter spasm or mechanical agents, bile is regurgitated into the pancreas, producing necrosis and causing the release of proteolytic enzymes. Metaplasia of ductal epithelium, by producing obstruction and rupture of arteriosclerotic vessels in the pancreas may also lead to inflammatory changes.

The frequent finding of pancreatitis in patients without demonstrable biliary tract disease and in patients having separate bile and pancreatic ducts, the demonstration of secretory pressures in the pancreas higher than those in the biliary tract and the failure of diversionary operations on the biliary tract all serve to emphasize the presence of multiple etiologic factors to account for the variation in symptoms and response to therapy. Other contributing causes include large meals, excessive alcoholic intake, abdominal trauma, peptic ulcer and infections.

Factors affecting pancreatic secretions include (1) parasympathetic stimulation by way of the vagus nerve, which produces a high concentration of enzymes; (2) the hormone secretin elaborated by the duodenal mucosa through the action of hydrochloric

acid which results in a high volume of secretion poor in enzymes, and (3) other nutritional and chemical stimuli not too well understood. Excessive alcohol intake prior to attacks has been estimated to be a predisposing factor in 20 to 68 per cent of the cases. Alcohol not only increases gastric acidity thus stimulating the production of secretion, it also has a nonspecific irritating effect that produces duodenitis, edema and sphincter spasm.

The reported incidence of pancreatitis varies from 0.009 per cent in a series of 5,000 hospital admissions to 0.3 per cent when a routine determination of the serum amylase was done in all patients having abdominal complaints.

**DIAGNOSIS** The clinical picture of acute pancreatitis is not consistent and may suggest biliary tract disease, cholecystitis, cholelithiasis, myocardial infarction, acute perforation of an abdominal viscus, diverticulitis, intestinal obstruction, mesenteric thrombosis, pneumonia of the left lower lobe or alcoholic gastritis. The diagnosis should be suspected in patients with abdominal colic who have pain and shock out of proportion to the physical findings and who fail to respond to moderate amounts of opiates. A history of excessive alcohol intake or of gallbladder disease is often obtained.

Pain is the chief symptom but it varies from "indigestion" to severe colic with shock. As a rule the degree of pain is out of proportion to the abdominal findings unless associated disease of the biliary tract is present. The pain of uncomplicated pancreatitis is usually located in the epigastrium radiating into the back or left upper quadrant. Radiation to the right may occur when there is associated disease of the biliary tract.\*

Distention of the abdomen is frequent and adynamic ileus is not uncommon. In rare cases discoloration over the flanks (Grey-Turner's sign) is noted. Icterus is present in 10 to 15 per cent of the cases and a palpable epigastric mass in 10 per cent. Evidence of pneumonia or even fluid at the left lung base may occur and is difficult to interpret. A low grade fever may be present. The total white blood cell count, the degree of icterus and elevation of the serum alkaline phosphatase are related to the severity of the attack. The serum calcium may fall in severe instances where pancreatic

In 5 to 10 per cent of the cases acute cholecystitis will be associated with the pancreatitis.

enzymes spread into the peritoneal cavity and produce liquefaction, necrosis, and calcification

The most helpful diagnostic laboratory procedure is the serum amylase determination, which is significantly elevated for 48 hours or longer after onset of the attack. Determination of the serum lipase takes longer to perform, this value may rise after 48 hours and remain elevated for 5 to 7 days. A serum amylase level 3 to 5 times the normal laboratory value invariably indicates primary pancreatitis. Perforating peptic ulcer, peritonitis resulting from other causes, and disturbances of the salivary glands may also produce elevated levels of amylase, but rarely to the degree caused by primary pancreatic involvement. In susceptible patients the administration of morphine sulfate will also be followed by elevated amylase; hence it is important to draw blood for determinations of the enzyme levels before administering opiates.

A flat plate of the abdomen is useful in ruling out the presence of free air, calcification in the biliary tree or pancreas, and evidence of localized ileus.

**MANAGEMENT OF ACUTE PANCREATITIS** It is generally agreed that in the absence of complications treatment should be medical. The first consideration is usually the relief of pain. This can be accomplished in most cases by tablets of nitroglycerin (0.3 to 0.4 mg used sublingually), meperidine hydrochloride (Demerol) in doses of 50 to 100 mg given intramuscularly every 3 to 4 hours as needed, methanthelene bromide (Banthine) 25 mg given intramuscularly every 6 hours or Pethicon (tridihexethyl) 20 mg every 6 hours. Barbiturates may be used judiciously and occasional patients will require a left paravertebral block of dorsal nerve roots 8 to 10. The use of morphine is contraindicated. If shock is present fluid balance should be restored by the slow intravenous administration of a 5 per cent solution of glucose. The use of blood or blood products is rarely necessary although in severe cases serum albumin given intravenously in doses of 100 to 500 ml daily for 3 to 5 days may have some value.

The use of intubation and gastric suction during the acute episode to minimize distention, remove acid, and decrease pancreatic stimulation by inhibiting the production of secretin is of extreme importance. Insulin may be required to control transient diabetes.

The intravenous administration of calcium gluconate 1 Gm 2 to 3 times daily, may be needed to control tetany. Patients showing persistent abdominal pain fever leukocytosis or the development of an abdominal mass should be given antibiotic therapy with tetracycline (chlortetracycline hydrochloride oxytetracycline hydrochloride or tetracycline hydrochloride) 0.5 to 1 Gm intravenously 100 mg every 6 hours by deep intramuscular injection or 250 mg every 6 hours orally. Surgery during the acute phase should be avoided if possible. It is indicated only if other serious intra abdominal pathology such as perforation of a viscus infection rupture of the gallbladder or perforation of a peptic ulcer cannot be satisfactorily excluded.

The prognosis during the acute episode of pancreatitis obviously depends upon the cause the degree of obstruction the history of previous attacks or antecedent injury and the ultimate fate of the pancreatic blood supply. It has been estimated that 85 per cent of the cases of pancreatitis are primarily edematous. In this group a mortality of not more than 5 per cent may be anticipated. In the remaining 15 per cent necrosis develops and the mortality rate may be as high as 50 per cent. A palpable mass ultimately develops in about 10 per cent of the patients with pancreatic necrosis. Recurrences may be anticipated in as many as a third of the patients who have an acute attack of pancreatitis.

Additional studies indicated after the acute attack subsides include a glucose tolerance test cholecystogram and barium examination of the upper digestive tract. Failure to visualize the gallbladder is common during the acute and convalescent phases of pancreatitis and should not be interpreted as pathognomonic of cholecystitis or cholelithiasis until roentgen studies have been repeated during an asymptomatic interval. Interval x-ray study is also helpful in that it may demonstrate a wide duodenal loop anterior displacement of overlying viscera or other diseases of the digestive tract such as an active peptic ulcer. Cholecystectomy and exploration of the common duct are indicated in cases where gallbladder disease and stones are demonstrated.

**MANAGEMENT OF CHRONIC RECURRING PANCREATITIS** The medical management of chronic pancreatitis is not satisfactory. Pancreatic insufficiency may be improved by large doses of pancreatin

enzymes spread into the peritoneal cavity and produce liquefaction, necrosis and calcification

The most helpful diagnostic laboratory procedure is the serum amylase determination, which is significantly elevated for 48 hours or longer after onset of the attack. Determination of the serum lipase takes longer to perform, this value may rise after 48 hours and remain elevated for 5 to 7 days. A serum amylase level 3 to 5 times the normal laboratory value invariably indicates primary pancreatitis. Perforating peptic ulcer, peritonitis resulting from other causes, and disturbances of the salivary glands may also produce elevated levels of amylase, but rarely to the degree caused by primary pancreatic involvement. In susceptible patients the administration of morphine sulfate will also be followed by elevated amylase, hence it is important to draw blood for determinations of the enzyme levels before administering opiates.

A flat plate of the abdomen is useful in ruling out the presence of free air, calcification in the biliary tree or pancreas and evidence of localized ileus.

**MANAGEMENT OF ACUTE PANCREATITIS** It is generally agreed that in the absence of complications treatment should be medical. The first consideration is usually the relief of pain. This can be accomplished in most cases by tablets of nitroglycerin (0.3 to 0.4 mg used sublingually), meperidine hydrochloride (Demerol) in doses of 50 to 100 mg given intramuscularly every 3 to 4 hours as needed, methantheline bromide (Banthine) 25 mg given intramuscularly every 6 hours or Pethicon (tridihexethyl) 20 mg every 6 hours. Barbiturates may be used judiciously and occasional patients will require a left paravertebral block of dorsal nerve roots 8 to 10. The use of morphine is contraindicated. If shock is present fluid balance should be restored by the slow intravenous administration of a 5 per cent solution of glucose. The use of blood or blood products is rarely necessary although in severe cases serum albumin given intravenously in doses of 100 to 500 ml daily for 3 to 5 days may have some value.

The use of intubation and gastric suction during the acute episode to minimize distention, remove acid and decrease pancreatic stimulation by inhibiting the production of secretin is of extreme importance. Insulin may be required to control transient diabetes.



FIG 17 16 Carcinoma of the head and body of the pancreas. A 57 year old woman with a past history of diabetes and cholelithiasis complained of nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. Roentgen studies reveal a large hiatal hernia (top arrow), diverticula of the third portion of the duodenum (bottom arrow), a nonfunctioning gallbladder, and lateral displacement of the stomach (middle arrow). At celiotomy an inoperable carcinoma involving the head and body of the pancreas was found.



(0.5 to 1 Gm) with meals, and minor symptoms may be controlled by the methods utilized in treating acute pancreatitis. If recurrences are numerous and severe, however, operative intervention may be necessary. Best results may be anticipated in those patients who have remediable biliary tract disease. Such patients should be treated surgically after careful preoperative preparation.

It is becoming increasingly apparent that many instances of chronic recurring pancreatitis are due to obstruction of an intra-glandular duct. Duval (1954) has performed pancreaticojejunostomy with cranial decompression of the gland on patients who have clinical evidence of ductal block, elevated serum enzymes, undigested fecal fat on a measured dietary intake, and diminished output of pancreatic enzymes following stimulation with secretin and Urechole. At the time of operation, an attempt is made to confirm the diagnosis by ductal visualization with radiopaque material. Further and more complete evaluation may indicate this procedure to be of real value in selected cases.

In some cases of chronic pancreatitis calcification within the gland may be revealed by roentgen studies. Calcific pancreatitis that causes pain, steatorrhea or diabetes with or without associated narcotic addiction, alcoholism or complications such as pancreatic cyst and intraductal calculi requires special investigation and evaluation of possible therapeutic procedures. Occasionally, sphincterectomy, partial pancreatic resection, or sphincterotomy may be of value. In other cases it may be necessary to alter the biliary drainage so as to prevent reflux into the pancreas, carry out measures to reduce gastric acidity, or perform pancreaticolithotomy or even total pancreatectomy. The diabetes associated with chronic calcific pancreatitis is not worsened by pancreatectomy.

### **Cancer of the Pancreas**

**DIAGNOSIS** Pancreatic cancer makes up 1 to 2 per cent of all malignant lesions. The most common manifestations in order of frequency are jaundice, pain, weight loss, change in bowel habits, nausea, vomiting, insomnia, anorexia, and the presence of a mass. In 70 to 80 per cent of the cases the head of the pancreas (Figs 17-16, 17-17) is involved and jaundice is an early symptom. Most cases are diagnosed only after the development of jaundice, which



FIG 17 16 Carcinoma of the head and body of the pancreas. A 57 year old woman with a past history of diabetes and cholelithiasis complained of nausea vomiting and abdominal pain. Roentgen studies reveal a large hiatal hernia (top arrow), distention of the third portion of the duodenum (bottom arrow), a nonfunctioning gallbladder and lateral displacement of the stomach (middle arrow). At celiotomy an inoperable carcinoma involving the head and body of the pancreas was found.

(0.5 to 1 Gm) with meals, and minor symptoms may be controlled by the methods utilized in treating acute pancreatitis. If recurrences are numerous and severe, however, operative intervention may be necessary. Best results may be anticipated in those patients who have remediable biliary tract disease. Such patients should be treated surgically after careful preoperative preparation.

It is becoming increasingly apparent that many instances of chronic recurring pancreatitis are due to obstruction of an intrapancreatic glandular duct. Duval (1954) has performed pancreaticojejunostomy with cranial decompression of the gland on patients who have clinical evidence of ductal block, elevated serum enzymes, undigested fecal fat on a measured dietary intake, and diminished output of pancreatic enzymes following stimulation with secretin and Urecholine. At the time of operation, an attempt is made to confirm the diagnosis by ductal visualization with radiopaque material. Further and more complete evaluation may indicate the procedure to be of real value in selected cases.

In some cases of chronic pancreatitis calcification within the gland may be revealed by roentgen studies. Calcific pancreatitis that causes pain, steatorrhea or diabetes, with or without associated narcotic addiction, alcoholism or complications such as pancreatic cyst and intraductal calculi, requires special investigation and evaluation of possible therapeutic procedures. Occasionally splenectomy, partial pancreatic resection or sphincterotomy may be of value. In other cases it may be necessary to alter the biliary drainage so as to prevent reflux into the pancreas, carry out measures to reduce gastric acidity, or perform pancreaticolithotomy or even total pancreatectomy. The diabetes associated with chronic calcific pancreatitis is not worsened by pancreatectomy.

### **Cancer of the Pancreas**

**DIAGNOSIS** Pancreatic cancer makes up 1 to 2 per cent of all malignant lesions. The most common manifestations, in order of frequency, are jaundice, pain, weight loss, change in bowel habits, nausea, vomiting, insomnia, anorexia, and the presence of a mass. In 70 to 80 per cent of the cases the head of the pancreas (Fig. 17-16, 17-17) is involved and jaundice is an early symptom. Most patients are first seen only after the development of jaundice which

diagnosed as psychiatric problems. The difficulty which these patients often have in convincing the physician that their discomfort is significant is enough to precipitate a disturbance of behavior.

A paucity of physical findings is characteristic. Evidence of weight loss will be noted in approximately one third of the patients. Hepatomegaly may be found but is often unassociated with the pancreatic disease. The gallbladder is palpable in 40 to 60 per cent of the patients (Courvoisier's sign). A palpable mass present in 10 to 15 per cent is an indication of far advanced disease. Venous thromboses are often associated with malignant tumors of epithelial origin, particularly those of the body and tail of the pancreas. Such unexplained findings in patients with abdominal pain should suggest the possibility of pancreatic cancer.

The routine laboratory examinations are generally of little value. The blood findings are usually normal. Anemia is infrequent although mild leukocytosis (10 000 to 12 000) will be found in about one third of the patients and elevation of the sedimentation rate in about half. Glycosuria occurs in 10 to 15 per cent. Glucose tolerance tests however are frequently abnormal and may show the high curve typical of diabetes. Steatorrhea is more likely to occur when obstructive jaundice is present or when extensive destruction of the gland has already occurred. The blood levels of amylase and lipase are variable and difficult to interpret; they tend to be altered only late in the disease. The persistent finding of occult blood in the stool without demonstrable source may serve to emphasize the significance of other findings. Tumor cells may be noted in a histologic study of the duodenal drainage.

Röntgen studies of the upper gastrointestinal tract are diagnostic in as high as 50 per cent of the cases depending upon the location and extent of the disease. Careful study of the stomach and duodenal loop may reveal elevation or widening of the duodenal loop, pressure defects on the duodenum or stomach, displacement of adjacent viscera, occasionally ulceration of the second portion of the duodenum or even evidence of pyloric or duodenal obstruction. A characteristic "inverted three" sign may be present. Fifteen to 20 per cent of the patients who are jaundiced mildly or not at all will fail to show concentration of the dye on cholecystographic study.

is produced by obstruction of the common bile duct. Although the early symptoms may be variable, the disease late in its course presents a characteristic syndrome of weight loss, abdominal pain, and bowel changes in patients whose laboratory studies and physical findings are essentially normal.

Pain occurs at some time in 50 to 80 per cent of all cases. The pain varies in quality and intensity from a dull aching or boring



FIG. 17-17. Carcinoma of the pancreas. The descending and transverse portions of the duodenum show changes in the mucosal pattern and constriction of the lumen with a characteristic inverted 3 deformity (arrow).

sensation to colic. It is frequently lessened by leaning forward or by other measures that relieve pressure on retroperitoneal tissues. It is made worse by lying on the back and hence produces more discomfort at night, interfering with rest. It is often aggravated by eating or by ambulation. Many patients insist that eructation or enemas may give relief.

The average interval between the initial symptoms and diagnosis is 6 to 9 months. By this time 40 per cent of the patients will have noted weight loss. In the absence of jaundice many such patients with insomnia, weight loss, and digestive complaints have been

50 Any of these conditions however, may cause jaundice in patients over 60

In a large general hospital the cases of jaundice are almost equally divided between the extrahepatic and intrahepatic types. Diagnosis is dependent upon careful evaluation and weighing of numerous variables in the history (Table 17-2) physical examination (Table 17-3) and selected accessory studies including liver function tests analysis of duodenal contents and roentgenograms (Table 17-4). By such means the correct diagnosis can be ascertained preoperatively in approximately 85 per cent of jaundiced patients.

TABLE 17-2 VARIABLES IN HISTORIES OF PATIENTS WITH CAUSATIONS  
(GALLSTONES, HEPATITIS, CIRRHOSIS)

History	Stone or Cancer		Hepatitis or Cirrhosis	
Occupation			+	+
Previous operation	+	+	+	
Injections			+	
Diet	+			+
Alcohol		15%	25%	60%+
Gold arsenic cinchophen methyl testosterone chlorpromazine chem- ical poisons			+	+
Diarrhea			+	+
Fever	50%		20%	30%
Pain	+	75%	+	25%
Weight loss	absent or slow		Rapid	Slow
Tenitus	+		+	

+ = specific points in history of possible significance

% Percentages represent frequency of occurrence based on consensus of the literature and the author's experience

When the diagnosis is still doubtful after these studies, needle aspiration biopsy of the liver will often lead to an accurate pathologic or even etiologic diagnosis. In selected patients the mortality associated with this procedure is considerably less than 1 per cent. The few fatalities have usually followed the intercostal approach and have occurred in patients whose clotting time was prolonged or was not measured. In cases where diffuse parenchymatous disease is present or where the needle can be inserted into a palpable liver nodule, needle biopsy of the liver has a high degree of diagnostic

**TREATMENT** The incidence of resectable tumors is not high. All patients in whom the diagnosis is suspected, however, should be subjected to laparotomy, since it may not be possible otherwise to ascertain the cause of obstructive jaundice, and cholecystojejunostomy may afford considerable relief from icterus, pruritus, bilirubinuria, stercoraceous, and other digestive disturbances. Carcinoma and pancreatitis are often associated, and may be difficult to differentiate even after the examination of frozen sections removed at operation. Radical pancreaticoduodenectomy is such a serious procedure, however, that it should not be carried out until a positive report has been obtained on a biopsy specimen. Ravdin has reported 8 cases in which 5 year survivals followed pancreaticoduodenal resection for carcinoma of the head of the pancreas (Kaufman and Wilson, 1955). The operative mortality associated with this procedure has varied from 11 to 50 per cent.

Only a constant awareness of the possibility of pancreatic carcinoma will lead to an increase in the number of early diagnoses and resectable lesions.

## THE LIVER

### Differential Diagnosis of the Causes of Jaundice

In the older age group where there is a high incidence of complicating disease, previous surgery, injections and transfusions antedating the development of jaundice, clinical differentiation of the etiologic factors is difficult. The chief *intrahepatic* causes of jaundice are viral hepatitis, cirrhosis, and the dystrophies. These cases are managed medically. *Extrahepatic* jaundice is usually caused by gallstones or carcinoma and the treatment is surgical.

It cannot be emphasized too strongly that the prolonged absence of bile from the gastrointestinal tract is well tolerated. While it is true that a delay in performing needed surgery may carry some increased risk for elderly patients, it is best to temporize when the cause of jaundice is in doubt. Most errors made in the differential diagnosis of jaundice are due to inadequate intervals of evaluation and failure to repeat studies and compare findings. The incidence of gallstones and cancer is greatest in the decade between 50 and 60, while hepatitis and cirrhosis are most common between 40 and

## Hepatitis

Most cases of acute hepatitis are due to the virus of infectious or homologous serum hepatitis. Since the treatment of viral hepatitis is largely supportive, it is extremely important to rule out other causes of hepatitis such as amebiasis for which specific therapy is available.

**DIAGNOSIS** The symptoms of discomfort, pain, and anorexia are due largely to hepatic swelling and vascular congestion. The liver and spleen are generally enlarged and often tender. Many of these patients give a history of injections, transfusions, or alcoholism. Early in the disease the serum bilirubin will be elevated, the urine bilirubin and urobilinogen increased, and abnormalities found in the thymol turbidity or cephalin flocculation test.

**TREATMENT** Bed rest is most important. Restriction of activities should depend upon the presence or absence of jaundice, fever, or anorexia, and the progress of the patient. In mild cases the patient may be allowed to get up for meals and permitted bathroom privileges. Persons in attendance should observe strict cleanliness of the hands, as well as syringe and needle sterilization.

No attempt should be made to force feed patients with hepatitis. Since the disease is usually mild and of short duration, there is no evidence that accessory vitamins or lipotropic factors are of value, although intravenous glucose and accessory vitamins may be given when patients are unable to eat. When a partial diet can be taken, sweetened orange juice or mixtures of milk, gelatin, and sherbert, or sweetened milk supplement may be of help. Fat is not contraindicated unless the caloric intake is excessive; the amount included in the diet should be governed by the patient's tolerance. As jaundice and fever subside, malaise decreases, and appetite returns, a simple, well-balanced, unrestricted diet may be given.

As the serum bilirubin falls toward normal levels and the patient's general condition improves, activity may be increased to a point short of fatigue. If ambulation is hurried, relapses are more frequent, and the patient is apt to have persistent fatigability, together with enlargement and tenderness of the liver. It is wise to keep patients under observation until all symptoms have dis-



TABLE 17-3      PHYSICAL FINDINGS PATIENTS WITH GALLSTONE  
CANCER   HEPATITIS   CIRRHOSIS

<i>Physical findings</i>	<i>Stone or cancer</i>				<i>Hepatitis or cirrhosis</i>	
	<i>29% M</i>	<i>71% F</i>	<i>72% M</i>	<i>28% F</i>	<i>66% M</i>	<i>34% F</i>
Enlarged liver			27%			73%†
Enlarged spleen			26%			74%
Gallbladder	11%			89%		
Tender liver					+	+
Angiomas					12%	88%
Ascites		9%			15%	76%
Collateral circulation		9%			9%	60%
Phlebothrombosis			+			
Edema			+		+	+
Deficiency state						+
Palmar erythema					7%	93%
Fetor hepaticus					+	+

\* + = findings of possible significance

† Percent ages represent relation of finding when present to specific disease entity

TABLE 17-4      ACCESSORY STUDIES IN PATIENTS WITH GALLSTONES  
CANCER   HEPATITIS   CIRRHOSIS

<i>Laboratory procedures</i>	<i>Stone</i>	<i>Cancer</i>	<i>Hepatitis</i>	<i>Cirrhosis</i>
Cephalin flocculation	0	0	+	+
Thymol turbidity	0	0	+	+
Serum albumin	N	N (75%) - (20%)	N	-(75%)
Cholesterol esters	N	N	N or -	-
Alkaline phosphatase	+	+	N	N
Urobilinogen	N	N to 0	+	+
Blood sugar	N	N or +	N or -	N or -
Response to vitamin K	N	N (89%)	N or -	-(94%)
Duodenal drainage	Crystals	Blood	N	N
Röntgenogram	Stone	Duodenal loop defect (50%)	N	Varices (15-50%)
Biopsy		Obstruction		Cellular involvement

N = normal

+ = increased

- = decreased

0 = absent

accuracy. The procedure is of particular value when more than one disease involving the liver is present. In my own experience the needle aspiration biopsy has made possible an accurate preoperative diagnosis in about 95 per cent of the cases of jaundice associated with liver enlargement.

## Hepatitis

Most cases of acute hepatitis are due to the virus of infectious or homologous serum hepatitis. Since the treatment of viral hepatitis is largely supportive it is extremely important to rule out other causes of hepatitis such as amebiasis for which specific therapy is available.

**DIAGNOSIS** The symptoms of discomfort, pain, and anorexia are due largely to hepatic swelling and vascular congestion. The liver and spleen are generally enlarged and often tender. Many of these patients give a history of injections, transfusions, or alcoholism. Early in the disease the serum bilirubin will be elevated, the urine bilirubin and urobilinogen increased, and abnormalities found in the thymol turbidity or cephalin flocculation test.

**TREATMENT** Bed rest is most important. Restriction of activities should depend upon the presence or absence of jaundice, fever, or anorexia, and the progress of the patient. In mild cases the patient may be allowed to get up for meals and permitted bathroom privileges. Persons in attendance should observe strict cleanliness of the hands as well as syringe and needle sterilization.

No attempt should be made to force feed patients with hepatitis. Since the disease is usually mild and of short duration there is no evidence that accessory vitamins or lipotropic factors are of value, although intravenous glucose and accessory vitamins may be given when patients are unable to eat. When a partial diet can be taken, sweetened orange juice or mixtures of milk, gelatin, and sherbert or sweetened milk supplement may be of help. Fat is not contraindicated unless the caloric intake is excessive; the amount included in the diet should be governed by the patient's tolerance. As jaundice and fever subside, malaise decreases, and appetite returns, a simple, well-balanced, unrestricted diet may be given.

As the serum bilirubin falls toward normal levels and the patient's general condition improves, activity may be increased to a point short of fatigue. If ambulation is hurried, relapses are more frequent and the patient is apt to have persistent fatigability, together with enlargement and tenderness of the liver. It is wise to keep patients under observation until all symptoms have dis-

appeared and the liver function tests have become normal, so that diet and activities may be regulated. The physician must be careful, however, not to overemphasize persistence of abnormal liver function tests or insist on strict bed rest until all tests revert to normal. By so doing he may add to the patient's concern and retard his symptomatic recovery. Abnormalities in the liver function tests may be demonstrable long after complete clinical recovery has occurred.

In the more severe cases of hepatitis, increasing hepatic insufficiency is manifested by deepening jaundice, mental confusion, anorexia and loss of interest in personal hygiene. At such times it is particularly important not to confuse the issue by sedatives that might produce similar symptoms. Occasionally a hemorrhagic tendency and a rapid decrease in the size of the liver may be noted as hepatic insufficiency increases.

In general antibiotics are not considered of value in hepatitis. Where progressive signs of hepatic insufficiency are present, however, chlortetracycline hydrochloride, 250 mg orally every 6 hours day and night may help to decrease the amount of ammonia produced by intestinal bacteria. The doses should be given with meals, milk or antacids not containing aluminum hydroxide or silicate (which interferes with absorption). When the illness is critical the tetracyclines can be injected intravenously in doses of 0.25 to 0.5 Gm at 12 hour intervals. Neomycin in doses of 4 to 6 Gm per day for 3 to 5 days is also effective in depressing the production of ammonia by intestinal bacteria. Prolonged oral administration of antibiotics can result in the overgrowth of non-susceptible organisms in the intestine and continued therapy must be evaluated on the basis of the severity and course of the illness. The colon should be kept cleaned by saline laxatives or enemas of tap water or saline solution.

When anorexia is severe or vomiting is present, 1 000 to 3 000 cc of a 5 per cent solution of dextrose with maintenance doses of the B complex, vitamin K and ascorbic acid should be given daily by vein. Immune globulin (gamma globulin) is of questionable value. The recommended dosage is 0.02 cc per kilogram of body weight.

Steroids are not indicated in the mild cases. They may produce some improvement in appetite and decrease in icterus but they increase the risk of gastrointestinal hemorrhage, mental disturbance, and activation of other infections. When patients fail to improve

and coma supervenes cortisone 100 mg three times daily or prednisone 25 mg three times daily should be used in an attempt to lessen the inflammatory disturbance in the liver. Corticotropin in doses of 100 to 300 mg per day for as long as 10 days has also been reported helpful in instances of severe progressive hepatitis. Antacids should be given concomitantly to combat the tendency to ulcer formation. Attempts to lower the ammonia levels in the blood with intravenous arginine or sodium glutamate (25 to 50 Gm of either in 1 000 cc of a 10 per cent solution of dextrose in distilled water) have failed to produce consistent results. Where hypoalbuminemia and hypotension complicate the disease salt poor human serum albumin in doses of 100 to 200 Gm may be given daily for 5 to 7 days.

One patient in 300 may show evidence of chronic or recurrent hepatitis following what is thought to be an initial viral infection. In rare instances patients with viral hepatitis have a progressive downhill course with tissue necrosis and increasing fibrosis. Needle aspiration biopsy should be considered when enlargement of the liver and spleen persists or when a cholangiohectic type of jaundice is present with abnormal liver function tests indicative of extrahepatic obstruction. A rigid program of rest maintenance of the dietary regimen and the addition of vitamin supplements are indicated for such patients. Occasionally steroid therapy seems to be of value.

### Hepatic Coma

Hepatic coma may be precipitated in patients with hepatitis or liver damage by the injudicious administration of narcotics or excessive sedation with long acting hypnotic drugs alcohol ammonium chloride acetazolamide (Diamox) too vigorous diuresis paracentesis hemorrhage or superimposed infections. The prognosis is best in cases with a demonstrable precipitating factor that can be controlled. The outlook is poor in cases of coma associated with progressive hepatic insufficiency per se.

The prime factor in the development of hepatic coma appears to be inability of the damaged liver to handle potentially toxic protein products arising in the colon as a result of bacterial decomposition. In advanced hepatic disease the liver does not adequately clear the

appeared and the liver function tests have become normal, so that diet and activities may be regulated. The physician must be careful, however, not to overemphasize persistence of abnormal liver function tests or insist on strict bed rest until all tests revert to normal. By so doing he may add to the patient's concern and retard his symptomatic recovery. Abnormalities in the liver function tests may be demonstrable long after complete clinical recovery has occurred.

In the more severe cases of hepatitis, increasing hepatic insufficiency is manifested by deepening jaundice, mental confusion, anorexia, and loss of interest in personal hygiene. At such times it is particularly important not to confuse the issue by sedatives that might produce similar symptoms. Occasionally a hemorrhagic tendency and a rapid decrease in the size of the liver may be noted as hepatic insufficiency increases.

In general, antibiotics are not considered of value in hepatitis. Where progressive signs of hepatic insufficiency are present, however, chlortetracycline hydrochloride 250 mg orally every 6 hours day and night may help to decrease the amount of ammonia produced by intestinal bacteria. The doses should be given with meals, milk or antacids not containing aluminum hydroxide or silicate (which interferes with absorption). When the illness is critical, the tetracyclines can be injected intravenously in doses of 0.25 to 0.5 Gm at 12 hour intervals. Neomycin in doses of 4 to 6 Gm per day for 3 to 5 days is also effective in depressing the production of ammonia by intestinal bacteria. Prolonged oral administration of antibiotics can result in the overgrowth of non-susceptible organisms in the intestine and continued therapy must be evaluated on the basis of the severity and course of the illness. The colon should be kept cleared by saline laxatives or enemas of tap water or saline solution.

When anorexia is severe or vomiting is present 1 000 to 3 000 cc of a 5 per cent solution of dextrose with maintenance doses of the B complex, vitamin K, and ascorbic acid should be given daily by vein. Immune globulin (gamma globulin) is of questionable value. The recommended dosage is 0.02 cc per kilogram of body weight.

Steroids are not indicated in the mild cases. They may produce some improvement in appetite and decrease in icterus, but they increase the risk of gastrointestinal hemorrhage, mental disturbance, and activation of other infections. When patients fail to improve

and coma supervenes cortisone 100 mg three times daily, or prednisone 25 mg three times daily should be used in an attempt to lessen the inflammatory disturbance in the liver. Corticotropin in doses of 100 to 300 mg per day for as long as 10 days has also been reported helpful in instances of severe progressive hepatitis. Antacids should be given concomitantly to combat the tendency to ulcer formation. Attempts to lower the ammonia levels in the blood with intravenous arginine or sodium glutamate (25 to 50 Gm of either in 1 000 cc of a 10 per cent solution of dextrose in distilled water) have failed to produce consistent results. Where hypoalbuminemia and hypotension complicate the disease salt poor human serum albumin in doses of 100 to 200 Gm may be given daily for 5 to 7 days.

One patient in 300 may show evidence of chronic or recurrent hepatitis following what is thought to be an initial viral infection. In rare instances patients with viral hepatitis have a progressive downhill course with tissue necrosis and increasing fibrosis. Needle aspiration biopsy should be considered when enlargement of the liver and spleen persists or when a cholangiolitic type of jaundice is present with abnormal liver function tests indicative of extra hepatic obstruction. A rigid program of rest maintenance of the dietary regimen and the addition of vitamin supplements are indicated for such patients. Occasionally steroid therapy seems to be of value.

### Hepatic Coma

Hepatic coma may be precipitated in patients with hepatitis or liver damage by the injudicious administration of narcotics excessive sedation with long acting hypnotic drugs alcohol ammonium chloride acetazolamide (Diamox) too vigorous diuresis paracentesis hemorrhage or superimposed infections. The prognosis is best in cases with a demonstrable precipitating factor that can be controlled. The outlook is poor in cases of coma associated with progressive hepatic insufficiency *per se*.

The prime factor in the development of hepatic coma appears to be inability of the damaged liver to handle potentially toxic protein products arising in the colon as a result of bacterial decomposition. In advanced hepatic disease the liver does not adequately clear the

blood of ammonia. The neurologic status of the patient and the degree of coma correspond in rough fashion with the elevation of arterial ammonia. It is apparent, however, that other still unrecognized substances play a significant role in hepatic coma since the concentration of ammonia may fall under therapy without associated improvement in the clinical state. Nitrogenous factors in the diet apparently provide metabolites that are involved in the pathogenesis of hepatic coma. It is of interest that patients receiving methionine acquire an odor indistinguishable from fetor hepaticus.

The stages of coma, as outlined by McDermott and Adam (1954), are as follows:

- Grade 1 Flapping tremor, lethargy, slurred speech, inability to perform problems, disorderly habits, but no disorientation.
- Grade 2 The addition of disorientation and confusion but with sphincter control.
- Grade 3 Incontinence and stupor from which the patient can be roused.
- Grade 4 Coma.

**TREATMENT** At the first sign of disturbed consciousness, untidy habits or undue somnolence, the following measures should be instituted: (1) dietary restriction of protein to 20 Gm or less; (2) adequate evacuation of the contents of the colon, particularly if there has been bleeding from the digestive tract; (3) the administration of antibiotics to prevent the formation of ammonia by intestinal bacteria; (4) maintenance of the circulating blood volume with intravenous infusions of 5 to 10 per cent glucose; (5) the parenteral administration of maintenance doses of vitamins; (6) transfusions as required to maintain blood counts within the normal range; (7) oxygen; (8) avoidance of all unnecessary sedation. If restlessness is a problem, chloral hydrate may be given rectally or soluble barbiturates hypodermically. When the patient is in coma, oral medications may be introduced into the stomach through a simple plastic tube. A Blackmore tube may be used if bleeding has occurred.

Silen (1955) and Pheir and Ruebner (1956) have indicated

that the most active ammonia producers among intestinal organisms are *Aerobacter aerogenes* and *Proteus morganii* and *mirabilis*. Drugs reported to have the greatest effect on these organisms are neomycin (2 to 4 Gm daily) and chlortetracycline (3 Gm daily).

The administration of intravenous fluids should be based on the amount of fluid lost usually between 2 500 and 3 000 cubic centimeters. The glucose provides a source of glycogen for liver protection and partially satisfies caloric needs. In the absence of edema salt should be given in quantities sufficient to replace loss. Serum potassium is usually low in patients with coma, particularly when some degree of ascites is present. Hypopotassemia may be responsible for many of the symptoms associated with hepatic coma. In addition there is experimental evidence to suggest that regeneration of plasma protein will not occur in the absence of an adequate source of potassium. The daily administration of 40 to 80 mEq of potassium chloride may be necessary to maintain normal levels. The administration of blood to replace blood loss and combat anoxia is also essential.

Where the situation is obviously desperate massive therapy with steroids may be tried although the results are apparently not as effective in cirrhosis as in hepatitis.

Recovery is dependent upon the extent of hepatic damage and to some degree upon whether coma is precipitated by exogenous or endogenous causes. Current figures indicate a recovery rate as high as 50 per cent.

### Cirrhosis

Cirrhosis of the liver ranks fourth among the leading causes of death in patients beyond the age of 50. Despite newer diagnostic techniques many cases remain unrecognized until they are far advanced. Among the factors responsible for this delay are the inherent latency of this disorder and a continued low index of suspicion among physicians. Too often the clinical findings of apathy confusion malnutrition and peripheral neuritis are attributed to generalized arteriosclerosis or degenerative phenomena until the full picture of wasting ascites edema jaundice enlargement of the liver and spleen and evidence of collateral circulation appears.



**PORTAL CIRRHOSIS** Portal cirrhosis seems to be the result of a dietary deficiency either a lack of specific essentials or a dietary imbalance complicated in some instances by infection or hepatotoxins. Alcohol probably does its damage by producing a chemical gastroenteritis with associated reduction in food intake, or by altering the requirements for certain dietary essentials.

The clinical manifestations and demonstrable degree of dysfunction depend upon the cellular damage, the activity of the cirrhotic process, and the degree of cellular regeneration. Liver enlargement usually indicates fatty metamorphosis, nodular regeneration, or hepatic neoplasm. The prognosis is poor in patients with advanced liver disease who have small or shrinking livers. An excess of circulating estrogen, present in many cirrhotic patients as a result of hepatic insufficiency, is responsible for alopecia, pruritus, erythema, spider nevi, and in males testicular atrophy and gynecomastia. Enlargement of the spleen may be associated with leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, anemia, and hemolytic tendencies.

The remarkable regenerative powers of the liver often make it difficult to recognize the presence of functional insufficiency until extensive damage has occurred. Liver function tests, however, will show a high incidence of abnormal findings. Although the tests of liver function commonly employed measure only a few of the numerous vital functions and do not indicate specifically the type of liver damage, they do denote the presence of inflammatory or degenerative changes, interpreted in the light of other findings they can be of tremendous value in diagnosis and prognosis. The cephalin flocculation test and measurement of the bromsulphalein excretion serve as valuable screening procedures in nonjaundiced patients. While these tests will uniformly reveal evidence of moderate to advanced functional impairment they do not have the same prognostic value as procedures that test more primitive functions of the liver such as the ability to synthesize albumin and to convert vitamin K to prothrombin. The prognosis in the jaundiced patient with hypoprothrombinemia is poor if vitamin K given parenterally does not restore the blood prothrombin to normal levels. The serum albumin level also bears a direct relationship to the severity of functional impairment. In general there is no absolute correlation between the histologic findings and liver function tests.

Clinical signs and symptoms may also be unreliable as a guide to the severity and extent of hepatic damage in a given case. The presence of an enlarged liver however may be regarded as a favorable prognostic sign since hepatomegaly is frequently associated with fatty infiltration a reversible abnormality. In 10 per cent of the patients with enlargement of the liver needle aspiration biopsies will reveal fatty infiltration. Splenomegaly is of little prognostic significance. While a completely accurate prognosis is not always provided by an analysis of the physical findings and laboratory data the most significant and serious findings are ascites prolongation of the prothrombin time hypoalbuminemia and a small liver. Derangement of liver function tests are next in importance. The degree of jaundice bears a rough relationship to prognosis. The prognosis becomes increasingly poor when blood loss and anoxia are superimposed as a result of hemorrhage or surgery.

Prior to 1940 approximately one fourth of the patients with cirrhosis died as a result of hepatic insufficiency and an equal number from infection or bleeding esophageal varices. The remaining deaths were due to a variety of causes some related to the cirrhosis (primary carcinoma of the liver for example) and some unrelated. Since 1940 as a result of the availability of antibiotics and the development of surgical measures to control hemorrhage there has been a marked decrease in the number of deaths owing to infection and bleeding varices and an increase in the number of deaths owing to hepatic insufficiency.

**POSTNECROTIC CIRRHOSIS** Postnecrotic cirrhosis is usually a sequel of viral hepatitis or chemical poisoning that causes massive collapse of liver tissue and condensation of stroma producing a coarsely nodular liver. It is more frequent during epidemics of viral hepatitis and is particularly apt to strike women in the postmenopausal period. Clinical symptoms may be severe and associated with rapid progression of hepatic insufficiency.

**BILIARY CIRRHOSIS** Biliary cirrhosis is the result of prolonged intrahepatic stasis resulting from a disturbance within the liver or obstruction in the extrahepatic biliary passages. Inflammatory or metabolic disease common duct stone postoperative bile duct stricture and carcinoma are common cause. Intermittent chills fever leukocytosis and enlargement of the liver and spleen occur when

the obstruction is incomplete, as in common duct stricture or cholelithiasis complicated by bacterial infection. Recurring infection may ultimately result in multiple liver abscesses and death.

**TREATMENT** Patients are benefited by diets adequate in all nutritional factors and containing 1 Gm of protein per kilogram of body weight, provided this amount can be tolerated. Patients at bed rest or on limited activity may be maintained in positive nitrogen balance with as little as 40 Gm of protein per day. High or even normal quantities of protein may be dangerous when extensive liver disease is present. When coma seems imminent, protein may be reduced to 20 Gm or less. A carbohydrate intake of 250 to 350 Gm per day, depending upon appetite and true body weight, is indicated. Fats are limited only by the caloric intake desired and the tolerance of the patient. It has been satisfactorily demonstrated that fatty infiltration of the liver will disappear when patients are taking an adequate diet containing normal amounts of fat.

Patients who are unable to eat solids may be given a liquid diet using milk as a base and containing 2 to 4 raw eggs, 4 tablespoons of lactose, and 5 to 10 tablespoons of protein hydrolysate or concentrate and flavored to taste with vanilla or chocolate. It may be helpful to divide the daily caloric intake into 6 or 8 small feedings. When patients are unable to eat, a 5 to 10 per cent solution of glucose in distilled water with added maintenance doses of water soluble vitamins may be given intravenously. Choline (15 to 30 Gm daily), methionine (1 Gm daily), or Metluschol (3 capsules three times daily or 1 tablespoon three times daily) may help to bring about a remission.

The long range therapeutic program should include abstinence from alcohol and careful avoidance of potentially hepatotoxic substances such as acetylsalicylic acid, sodium salicylate, methyltestosterone, and chlorpromazine. A multiple vitamin preparation containing no more than the requirements recommended by the National Research Council may be given once or twice daily. Accessory vitamins and lipotropic agents are of no value when patients are able to eat adequate diets. The salt intake should be decreased to 3 to 4 Gm per day provided the low salt diet does not interfere with the patient's appetite. Salt substitutes containing potassium gluconate, potassium chloride, and choline chloride may be used.

The development and persistence of jaundice anorexia, mental changes, or evidence of hemolysis or hypersplenism may be considered an indication for steroid therapy. In prescribing such treatment the potential hazards of fluid retention and gastrointestinal hemorrhage must be considered. The adrenocortical preparations with minimal salt retaining effect—prednisone methyl prednisone or triamcinolone—are preferred. The prophylactic administration of anticholinergic drugs and antacids together with between meal and bedtime feedings may prevent steroid induced ulceration and bleeding. The simultaneous use of tetracycline (250 mg orally every 6 hours day and night) to prevent infection and decrease ammonia formation in the bowel is also of value at such times.

Adrenocortical steroid therapy may be of value in instances of nonalcoholic cirrhosis of the posthepatic or cholangiolitic variety. Such therapy often brings about an increase in appetite decrease in jaundice and improvement in the liver function tests. Unfortunately remissions may not be sustained even under treatment.

Oral or parenteral vitamin K or  $K_1$  should be administered daily when bleeding is present or the prothrombin time is abnormally prolonged. Vitamin K (menadione) may be given orally or intramuscularly in doses of 1 or 2 mg once a day or the water soluble form (Hykinone or Synkayvite) may be given in daily doses of 5 to 10 mg subcutaneously intramuscularly or intravenously. If menadione is given orally the dose should be accompanied by 1 to 2 Gm of bile salts. Vitamin  $K_1$  (Mephyton) may be given in a dose of 5 to 10 mg repeated in 12 to 48 hours as necessary. If surgery becomes necessary 50 mg of Mephyton may be given by mouth 24 hours before operation or by vein (in glucose) 12 hours preoperatively. When Mephyton is given intravenously the rate of infusion should not exceed 10 mg per minute.

Where jaundice is present 20 or more milligrams of vitamin K should be given daily with bile salts. In most instances the ability to synthesize prothrombin is determined by the residual degree of liver function and serves as a valuable aid in prognosis.

#### COMPLICATIONS

**Ascites** The uniformly poor prognosis for cirrhotic patients after ascites appears has been noted in many excellent studies on the natural history of this disease. In a series of 150 patients seen at

the Mayo Clinic between 1930 and 1938, 68.8 per cent of those having ascites failed to survive for as long as a year. Ratnoff and Patek (1942) reporting on a series of 386 patients, also found that more than 60 per cent died within a year after the first symptoms of ascites.

Ascites is the end result of a combination of circumstances relating to hepatic injury with diminished hepatic function. Once ascites develops, protein is lost into the abdomen as a result of the exchange between the fluid in the peritoneal cavity and the blood plasma, the consequent reduction in plasma volume may stimulate secretion of the salt retaining hormone, aldosterone. Repeated paracentesis may thus aggravate the situation, and is to be avoided whenever possible.

Ascites should be managed conservatively. Therapy is directed toward improving liver function and thereby lowering portal hypertension and toward combating the hypoproteinemias by diet, restriction of salt and procedures designed to increase the excretion of salt. Mild ascites may respond to a medical regimen that includes diet and bed rest. The most immediately helpful procedure in the management of ascites is a diet containing if possible not more than 0.5 to 0.2 Gm of sodium per day. Mercurial diuretics in doses of 1 to 2 cc given 2 or 3 times a week are also beneficial. Some of the newer compounds such as chlorothalidide (Diuril) also appear helpful but should be used with care.

When the diuretic effect of mercurials becomes limited by the development of hypochloremia it may be restored by the administration of 10 Gm of calcium chloride and 50 to 60 mEq of potassium chloride once a day for 5 days. As long as the patient is under careful observation and the hazard of precipitating coma is understood acidifying salts such as ammonium chloride may be tried in doses of 0.6 Gm 3 times a day in courses of 3 days, with rest periods of similar duration. The hyperchloremic acidosis thus induced potentiates diuresis.

When low sodium levels cause symptoms of drowsiness weakness, loss of appetite, cramps, decreased urine volume and elevated nonprotein nitrogen, 1,000 cc of a 3 to 5 per cent solution of sodium chloride should be administered intravenously. Large amounts of potassium may be lost both as a result of muscle wasting and

following diuresis. The marked weakness and lassitude of the cirrhotic patient is often due to hypokalemia.

Salt poor albumin administered intravenously in doses of 50 to 100 Gm daily for 5 to 7 days may be of value in tiding a patient over a critical period. The albumin rapidly enters the abdominal cavity, however, and the rise in osmotic pressure is neither sustained nor adequate. Recent evidence indicates that the nonsalt retaining adrenal steroids may also be of value. The presence of cirrhosis permits the accumulation of antidiuretic substances probably because of failure to inactivate aldosterone. It is possible that the beneficial effects of the adrenal hormones lie in their depressing effect on cortical activity and aldosterone formation. At this time the status of adrenalectomy is uncertain.

Except when the abdominal fluid interferes with respiration or eating, paracentesis is to be avoided since it may remove badly needed protein, lower the blood volume and blood pressure abruptly and decrease circulation throughout the body. Coma may be precipitated by the combination of paracentesis and the pre-operative administration of narcotics. The intravenous injection of 1 or 1.5 liters of a 5 to 10 per cent solution of dextrose in water prior to paracentesis and again afterward may be of help in minimizing these complications.

Since the development of cirrhosis is slow and progressive it is not to be expected that recovery will occur rapidly. Therapeutic programs should be outlined for their long range effect. It is not unusual, however, to see marked improvement within 4 to 6 weeks.

Occasionally, ascites is complicated by hernia. Such patients tolerate surgery so poorly, however, that no elective procedures should be performed.

**Hemorrhage** Hemorrhage occurs in approximately one fourth of the patients with cirrhosis and may be the direct or precipitating cause of death in as many as 50 per cent of the cases. Death may result from acute blood loss, shock, or hepatic coma precipitated by the introduction of large amounts of protein into the digestive tract. It must be emphasized that the source of bleeding is not always demonstrable. A review of the literature indicates that in approximately 80 per cent of the cases bleeding in known cirrhotic patients

the Mayo Clinic between 1930 and 1938, 68.8 per cent of those having ascites failed to survive for as long as a year. Rutnoff and Patek (1942), reporting on a series of 386 patients, also found that more than 60 per cent died within a year after the first symptoms of ascites.

Ascites is the end result of a combination of circumstances relating to hepatic injury with diminished hepatic function. Once ascites develops, protein is lost into the abdomen as a result of the exchange between the fluid in the peritoneal cavity and the blood plasma; the consequent reduction in plasma volume may stimulate secretion of the salt retaining hormone, aldosterone. Repeated paracentesis may thus aggravate the situation, and is to be avoided whenever possible.

Ascites should be managed conservatively. Therapy is directed toward improving liver function and thereby lowering portal hypertension and toward combating the hypoproteinemias by diet, restriction of salt and procedures designed to increase the excretion of salt. Mild ascites may respond to a medical regimen that includes diet and bed rest. The most immediately helpful procedure in the management of ascites is a diet containing if possible not more than 0.5 to 0.2 Gm of sodium per day. Mercurial diuretics in doses of 1 to 2 cc given 2 or 3 times a week are also beneficial. Some of the newer compounds such as chlorothalidzide (Diuril) also appear helpful but should be used with care.

When the diuretic effect of mercurials becomes limited by the development of hypochloremia it may be restored by the administration of 10 Gm of calcium chloride and 50 to 60 mEq of potassium chloride once a day for 5 days. As long as the patient is under careful observation and the hazard of precipitating coma is understood acidifying salts such as ammonium chloride may be tried in doses of 0.6 Gm 3 times a day in courses of 3 days with rest periods of similar duration. The hyperchloremic acidosis thus induced potentiates diuresis.

When low sodium levels cause symptoms of drowsiness, weakness, loss of appetite, cramps, decreased urine volume and elevated nonprotein nitrogen, 1000 cc of a 3 to 5 per cent solution of sodium chloride should be administered intravenously. Large amounts of potassium may be lost both as a result of muscle wasting and

even make it possible to select patients for prophylactic shunts when the risk of hemorrhage is demonstrably high. Despite the high mortality associated with the first hemorrhage, however, prophylactic shunting cannot be recommended in the light of our present knowledge. In 10 to 15 per cent of the patients varices will subside completely on an effective medical regimen and probably no more than a third of the patients with varices ever bleed.

### **Hemochromatosis**

Most cases of hemochromatosis occur in males past the age of 50 who present the classical signs of cirrhosis, ascites, spider angiomas, and esophageal varices. The condition appears to be primary, although reports of hemochromatosis following numerous blood transfusions appear well documented. The possibility of homologous serum hepatitis in such patients cannot be ruled out.

The diagnosis of hemochromatosis is not difficult when cirrhotic patients have associated diabetes and pigmentation of the skin. The earliest presenting symptoms are weakness, fatigue, and occasionally abdominal discomfort. In some cases the finding of glycosuria or hepatomegaly on routine examination may give the first indication of trouble. In others, hemorrhage from esophageal varices may be the first manifestation. In spite of the similarity to cirrhosis and the obvious stigmas of liver disease, the diagnosis may be suspected when jaundice and anemia are absent or minimal and liver function tests are comparatively normal in spite of obvious clinical evidence of hepatic damage. The best method of diagnosis in the early stages is by needle aspiration biopsy, which shows large amounts of hemosiderin associated with nodular hyperplasia of the liver.

The success of repeated phlebotomy is sufficiently encouraging to stimulate attempts at early diagnosis. Blood may be withdrawn at weekly intervals and replaced by plasma to prevent protein depletion. Hemoglobin levels should be maintained between 12 and 13 Gm. As the excess stores of iron are gradually depleted, clinical improvement and a decrease in liver size may be noted.

Cardiac failure due to excessive deposition of iron in the myocardium may complicate the disease. Hepatoma has also been reported as a complication in 5 to 10 per cent of the cases, a somewhat higher incidence than in portal cirrhosis.



can be demonstrated to have its origin in varices. As many as 70 per cent of patients with advanced cirrhosis will have esophageal or gastric varices. The mortality associated with the first hemorrhage has been estimated to be as high as 30 to 35 per cent. Other sources of hemorrhage in cirrhotic patients include peptic ulcers and gastric erosions. The incidence of concomitant peptic ulceration in patients with cirrhosis is as high as it is in similar age groups in the general population or possibly higher.

While it is important, for therapeutic and prognostic purposes to ascertain the bleeding site, the immediate problem is hemostasis. Esophageal tamponade with the Blakemore Sengstaken bag may be lifesaving when bleeding is from esophageal varices. Its use permits the removal of gastric contents and the introduction of medications and liquid foods while providing compression of the distal third of the esophagus and the cardia of the stomach. Other emergency measures include replacement of blood and general supportive therapy to prevent shock and anoxia, neutralization of the gastric contents and the administration of mild saline purges or enemas to clear the digestive tract of blood. If the patient continues to bleed in spite of such measures, direct surgical ligation of the varices must be considered as an emergency procedure. When there is persistent bleeding distal to the tube, the possibility of gastric ulceration, varices elsewhere in the stomach or bleeding unrelated to cirrhosis must be considered and attempts made to delineate the cause. Regardless of the source of hemorrhage, therapy should include the conventional measures employed in the treatment of peptic ulcer.

Findings that indicate a poor prognosis include hypoalbuminemia, hypoprothrombinemia which does not respond to the administration of vitamin K, any manifestations of encephalopathy and the presence of a small liver. The outlook is also poor for patients who have failed to show any response to medical management including diet, accessory vitamins, correction of fluid and electrolyte imbalance, transfusions, diuretics and a low salt intake. Such patients will in all probability fail to survive surgery.

If the patient survives the first hemorrhage, a venous shunt should be considered as an interval elective procedure when his condition permits. Recent studies on the relationship of portal pressure and demonstrable varices to the frequency of hemorrhage may

cal examination evaluation of the diet, blood urine and stool analyses studies of gastric secretory function liver function tests roentgen examination of the entire digestive tract, sigmoidoscopy, and where necessary other endoscopic procedures

When one can be reasonably certain that symptoms are related to a disturbance of function rather than to active organic disease, regimentation of the patient's daily activity with provision for adequate rest or relaxation is indicated Other measures that may give relief from functional digestive symptoms include the use of a bland diet divided into small feedings the avoidance of excessively hot or cold foods and symptomatic therapy such as antispasmodics, accessory vitamins sedation and hormones in cases where hypothyroidism or other clinically demonstrable deficiencies exist

### **Constipation**

Constipation is a frequent complaint of elderly patients Some use the term as denoting failure to have a bowel movement every 24 hours and in others it may indicate bowel consciousness to the point of concern over the volume caliber or consistency of the stool The frequent association of general muscular atony with aging has led to the supposition that functional constipation in the aged is due to decreased tone of the colon Roentgen examination in such patients however indicates good tone and peristalsis as a rule

The digestive residue ordinarily reaches the sigmoid colon about 24 hours following the ingestion of food Water is reabsorbed in the colon The accumulation of feces in the lower sigmoid and rectum stimulates reflexly the process of evacuation Since the gastrocolic reflex reinforces this stimulus the after breakfast interval is a favorable one for habitual bowel movement If the stimulus is ignored the anal muscles contract the fecal mass is retained additional moisture is absorbed and the remaining material becomes increasingly dry and impacted In many patients mild degrees of bowel dysfunction are due to changes in dietary habits and activity in adequate fluid intake poor bowel habits resulting from the neglect of stimuli the development of hemorrhoids and too much reliance on laxatives

Most cathartics produce lavation by irritating the bowel Although evacuation results from the abnormal intestinal activity pro

### Primary Carcinoma

Primary carcinoma of the liver is most common in dark skinned and Oriental races. It is associated with cirrhosis in 75 per cent of the cases, and has the same sex distribution as cirrhosis affecting men three times more often than women. Autopsy statistics indicate that the incidence of primary carcinoma of the liver is 0.5 per cent.

The symptoms are weakness, weight loss, abdominal pain, fever, nausea, vomiting, and change in bowel habits. Enlargement of the liver is almost always present. The spleen is enlarged only if the patient has cirrhosis. The elevated alkaline phosphatase and, in the absence of jaundice, the abnormal bromsulfalein test are most helpful in suggesting the diagnosis. Rapid enlargement of the liver, progressive jaundice, and pronounced physical deterioration in a patient known to have cirrhosis are also strongly suggestive signs. Liver biopsy is usually required for diagnosis.

The prognosis is extremely poor, although surgical removal of the lesion by partial hepatectomy may be successful. Occasional patients live as long as one to three years without treatment.

### FUNCTIONAL DIGESTIVE COMPLAINTS

An adequately functioning digestive system depends upon coordination between the autonomic nervous system and the muscular and glandular endowment of the digestive tract. It may be said that the digestive tract outlives the body. Contrary to general belief, the tone, motility, and contractile power of the intestine and colon appear to be individual characteristics related to the individual's habitus rather than to his age.

The relation of clinical symptoms to the recognized change associated with aging—gradual diminution in secretory activity as manifested by hypochlorhydria, achlorhydria, and loss of pancreatic digestive ferments—is difficult to establish. The older patient often has complicating factors such as loss of abdominal tone, a tendency to gain weight, and associated developmental abnormalities such as diverticula and hernias.

Every effort to eliminate the possibility of active organic disease must be made in elderly patients with digestive complaints. Thorough diagnostic studies should include a careful history and physi-

cal examination evaluation of the diet blood urine and stool analyses studies of gastric secretory function liver function tests roentgen examination of the entire digestive tract sigmoidoscopy and where necessary other endoscopic procedures

When one can be reasonably certain that symptoms are related to a disturbance of function rather than to active organic disease regimentation of the patient's daily activity with provision for adequate rest or relaxation is indicated Other measures that may give relief from functional digestive symptoms include the use of a bland diet divided into small feedings the avoidance of excessively hot or cold foods and symptomatic therapy such as antispasmodics accessory vitamins sedation and hormones in cases where hypothyroidism or other clinically demonstrable deficiencies exist

### Constipation

Constipation is a frequent complaint of elderly patients Some use the term as denoting failure to have a bowel movement every 24 hours and in others it may indicate bowel consciousness to the point of concern over the volume, caliber or consistency of the stool The frequent association of general muscular atony with aging has led to the supposition that functional constipation in the aged is due to decreased tone of the colon Roentgen examination in such patients however indicates good tone and peristalsis as a rule

The digestive residue ordinarily reaches the sigmoid colon about 24 hours following the ingestion of food Water is reabsorbed in the colon The accumulation of feces in the lower sigmoid and rectum stimulates reflexly the process of evacuation Since the gastrocolic reflex reinforces this stimulus the after breakfast interval is a favorable one for habitual bowel movement If the stimulus is ignored the anal muscles contract the fecal mass is retained additional moisture is absorbed and the remaining material becomes increasingly dry and impacted In many patients mild degrees of bowel dysfunction are due to changes in dietary habits and activity in adequate fluid intake poor bowel habits resulting from the neglect of stimuli the development of hemorrhoids and too much reliance on laxatives

Most cathartics produce laxation by irritating the bowel Although evacuation results from the abnormal intestinal activity pro

duced by the bowels attempt to expel the cathartic, normal functional activity and regular habits are disturbed. In addition, the normal 24 hour passage from mouth to rectum is disrupted. The irritated overstimulated bowel then becomes less responsive to subsequent irritation, and the condition is aggravated.

Constipation in the elderly can usually be relieved by simple measures to correct the causes of bowel dysfunction: the addition of adequate amounts of fruit and vegetables to the diet including six to eight cooked prunes with breakfast, instruction regarding the importance of eating regular meals and having regular times for evacuation, and a fluid intake of two to three liters per day. Generalized muscle weakness can often be improved by walking and taking simple exercises. Attempts should be made to evacuate the bowel after a meal, preferably breakfast, in order to take advantage of the gastrocolic reflex. Patients should be instructed regarding the constituents of an adequate diet including fruit or fruit juice and a hot beverage for breakfast and vegetables as a source of bulk at each of the other two meals. It should be emphasized that constipation is most often the result of faulty habits rather than disease, and is complicated by the omission of proper foods from the diet.

Careful instruction, emphasis and persuasion will be needed for the elderly patient with constipation of long standing. At the onset the use of small tap water enemas or oil retention enemas at bedtime may help retrain the bowel to function properly. When adequate bulk cannot be included in the diet commercial forms of methyl cellulose taken in a full glass of water at bedtime and again before breakfast if necessary, may be used.

## REFERENCES

- 1 ALLISON P. R. Reflux esophagitis sliding hiatal hernia and the anatomy of repair. *Surg Gynec & Obst* 92 119 1951
- 2 BOCKUS H. L. *Gastroenterology* Philadelphia W. B. Saunders Company 1916 Vol 3 p 589
- 3 BROWN C. H. Benign ulcer and carcinoma of the stomach. *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 1 177 1953
- 4 BURDITT W. J. Carcinoma of the gallbladder. *Ann Surg* 115 532 1957
- 5 CAYER D. Prolonged anticholinergic therapy of duodenal ulcer. *Am J Digest Dis* 1 301 1956
- 6 CAYER D. and CODY S. The nutritional state of patients with peptic

- ulcer as measured by vitamin levels in the blood and urine *Gastroenterology* 9:31 1947
- \* CAYER D and CONNATZER, W F The use of hypotrophic factors in the treatment of liver disease *Gastroenterology* 20:365 1952
- 5 CAYER D and HENRY O Jr The diagnosis of fundice: an evaluation of the procedures commonly utilized in differential diagnosis *Cancer* 11:191 1956
- 9 CAYER D and SOHMER M F Surgery in patients with cirrhosis *AMA Arch Surg* 71:828 1955
- 10 COLLIER F A *Cancer of the Colon and Rectum* New York American Cancer Society 1956
- 11 COMFORT M W et al Small gastric cancer *AMA Arch Int Med* 94:513 1954
- 12 COMFORT M W GRAY H K and WILSON J M The silent gallstone: a ten to twenty year follow up study of 112 cases *Ann Surg* 125:931 1948
- 13 CROHN B B and YARVIS H *Regional Enteritis* ed 2 New York Crane & Stratton Inc 1958
- 14 DAFNER, J E and BROWN C M Regional enteritis I Clinical aspects and diagnosis in 100 patients *Ann Int Med* 49:540 1958
- 15 DEVAL M K Jr Caudal pancreatico-jejunostomy for chronic relapsing pancreatitis *Ann Surg* 140:775 1954
- 16 ELLIS F H JR OLSEN A M HOLMAN C B and CORR C I Surgical treatment of cardiospasm (achalasia of the esophagus): considerations of aspects of esophagomyotomy *JAMA* 166:29 1953
- 17 GORDON D M and BARNHART H J Changing concepts in the structure function and disease of the lower esophagus *Am J Med Sc* 233:551 1957
- 18 HAYES M A Biliary tract surgery in patients past 60 years of age *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 3:146 1955
- 19 HITCHCOCK C R MacLEAY L D and SULLIVAN W A The secretory and clinical aspects of achlorhydria and gastric atrophy as precursors of gastric cancer *J Nat Cancer Inst* 18:795 1957
- 20 HUNT W H II BRODERS A C JR and HIGGINTOWN N C Primary neoplasms of the small bowel: a report of 61 cases *South M J* 51:182 1958
- 21 JARVIS J L and CAYER D Oral cholecystography with Priodax: correlation with pathologic findings *Gastroenterology* 8:161 1947
- 22 ILY A C Experimental observations on the etiology of gastric carcinoma *Gastroenterology* 28:325 1955
- 23 KAUFMAN L W and WILSON G S Carcinoma of the head of the pancreas and peripapillary region *Am J Med Sc* 230:200 1955
- 24 MARSHALL R H and WOLFF D S Chronic ulcerative granulomatous pyenteritis and ileopyenteritis *Am J Roentgenol* 70:93 1953
- 25 MARSHALL S F Treatment of cancer of the stomach and result *Gastroenterology* 34:31 1958

duced by the bowels attempt to expel the cathartic, normal functional activity and regular habits are disturbed. In addition, the normal 24 hour passage from mouth to rectum is disrupted. The irritated, overstimulated bowel then becomes less responsive to subsequent irritation, and the condition is aggravated.

Constipation in the elderly can usually be relieved by simple measures to correct the causes of bowel dysfunction: the addition of adequate amounts of fruit and vegetables to the diet, including six to eight cooked prunes with breakfast, instruction regarding the importance of eating regular meals and having regular times for evacuation, and a fluid intake of two to three liters per day. Generalized muscle weakness can often be improved by walking and taking simple exercises. Attempts should be made to evacuate the bowel after a meal, preferably breakfast, in order to take advantage of the gastrocolic reflex. Patients should be instructed regarding the constituents of an adequate diet including fruit or fruit juice and a hot beverage for breakfast and vegetables as a source of bulk at each of the other two meals. It should be emphasized that constipation is most often the result of faulty habits rather than disease, and is complicated by the omission of proper foods from the diet.

Careful instruction, emphasis and persuasion will be needed for the elderly patient with constipation of long standing. At the onset the use of small tap water enemas or oil retention enemas at bed time may help retrain the bowel to function properly. When adequate bulk cannot be included in the diet, commercial forms of methyl cellulose taken in a full glass of water at bedtime and again before breakfast if necessary, may be used.

## REFERENCES

- 1 ALLISON P. R. Reflux esophagitis, sliding hiatal hernia and the anatomy of repair. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 92:419, 1951.
- 2 BOCAUS H. L. *Gastroenterology*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1946. Vol. 3, p. 589.
- 3 BROWN C. H. Benign ulcer and carcinoma of the stomach. *J. Am. Geriatrics Soc.* 1:177, 1953.
- 4 BURDITT W. J. Carcinoma of the gallbladder. *Ann. Surg.* 145:532, 1957.
- 5 CAYE D. Prolonged anticholinergic therapy of duodenal ulcer. *Am. J. Digest. Dis.* 1:301, 1956.
- 6 CAYE D. and CODY S. The nutritional state of patients with peptic

## CHAPTER 18

# Diseases of the Genitourinary Organs in the Male and the Urinary Organs in the Female

IRED A. GARVEY

### DISEASES OF THE KIDNEY

#### Pyelonephritis

In the aged primary pyelonephritis is rather unusual but pyelonephritis as a secondary or intercurrent disease is fairly common. It may be a serious complication in diseases of the lower urinary tract. Arteriosclerotic kidney disease along with obstructive uropathy may lead to renal insufficiency and infection a sequent often seen in patients with prostatism. Injudicious instrumentation of the lower urinary tract may touch off pyelonephritis probably because a break in the mucosa allows organisms present in the urethra to get into the blood stream. The resultant bacteremia often initiates acute pyelonephritis or reactivates a latent chronic form of the disease.

Acute pyelonephritis is an occasional complication of acute infections elsewhere in the body in the respiratory tract prostate seminal vesicles or intestinal tract for example. In most cases of this type if there is no complicating lesion elsewhere in the urinary tract and treatment is adequate healing takes place with very little damage to the kidneys.

There are two principal types of renal infections. One is a diffuse inflammatory process of the whole kidney and is more common due to the Gram negative bacillary organisms. The other is a



- 26 McDERMOTT W V, JR and ADAM R D Episodic stupor associated with an Eck fistula in the human with particular reference to the metabolism of ammonia *J Clin Invest* 33 1 1954
- 27 PHEAR E A and RUEBNER B The *in vitro* production of ammonium and imines by intestinal bacteria in relation to nitrogen toxicity as a factor in hepatic coma *Brit J Exper Path* 37 253 1956
- 28 PRIEST R J BRUSH B E, and GILGORY L J Medical and surgical management of diverticulitis in geriatric patients *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 3 55, 1955
- 29 RATNOFF O D and PATEK A J The natural history of Laennec's cirrhosis of the liver *Medicine* 21 207 1942
- 30 RHODES J E Malignancy of the colon and rectum *Veterans Administration Technical Bulletin Series* 10 v 6 TD 10 82 p 1 1952
- 31 RICLER L B and KAPLAN H S Pernicious anemia and tumors of the stomach *J Nat Cancer Inst* 7 327 1947
- 32 ROWE R J and KOLLMAR G H Diverticulitis of the colon complicated by carcinoma *Internat Abstr Surg* 94 1 1952
- 33 RUBIN C E GOLDGRABER M B and SMITH C An improved gastric biopsy tube—its manufacture use and investigative value *Gastroenterology* 25 31 1953
- 34 SCHEIN C J HURWITZ E S and ROSENBLATT M A The significance of calculus size in determining the indication for elective cholecystectomy *Gastroenterology* 29 377 1955
- 35 SILLW W *et al* Effect of antibacterial agents on ammonia production within the intestine *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 88 135 1955
- 36 SMITH F H BOLES R S JR and JORDAN S M Problem of the gastric ulcer reviewed study of one thousand cases *JAMA* 153 1505 1953
- 37 SOMMER M F and CAFFER D Cancer of the pancreas without jaundice *South M J* 48 919 1955
- 38 SWINTON N W and CRAVES J W The significance of periodic sigmoidoscopic examinations *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 2 601 1954
- 39 TIGER M P and CAFFER D The differential diagnosis of jaundice the relative value of the clinical impression laboratory tests and aspiration liver biopsy *Gastroenterology* 24 63 1953
- 40 VANDERKLOOT A Esophageal hiatus hernia *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 1 135 1953
- 41 ZAMCHECK A *et al* The cytologic method in the diagnosis and investigation of gastric lesions *Gastroenterology* 29 588 1955

vention by intense treatment of acute pyelonephritis and meticulous follow up is of utmost importance

In chronic infections of the kidney, it is important to eliminate if possible such complicating factors as stones obstructions and anatomic anomalies. The infection should be treated diligently first with antibiotics and then by small doses of sulfonamide drugs until the infection is completely eradicated if possible. Chemotherapy may have to be continued over a period of months and it is important to make frequent appraisals of the results during this time

### Hydronephrosis and Hydroureter

In the aged hydronephrosis and hydroureter usually result from obstructive lesions distal to the kidney. Intravesical obstruction from prostatism vesical neck contracture or urethral stricture may produce hydronephrosis and finally renal insufficiency. Upper urinary dilatations resulting from lower urinary tract obstruction are usually bilateral but may be unilateral. When infection complicates the picture there is considerable loss of renal function along with general malaise, weight loss of appetite and frequently cardiovascular complications.

**DIAGNOSIS** A history of difficulty in urination and dull costolumbar pain with or without febrile attacks should suggest upper urinary tract involvement. There may be polyuria and thirst and the urine may have a low specific gravity. If infection is present varying amounts of protein pus and bacteria may be found in the urine. Presumptive evidence of hydronephrosis is usually afforded by renal function studies as well as by chemical blood tests for nitrogenous retention. Intravenous urography should be definitive. Cystoscopy should not be done unless the diagnosis cannot be made by intravenous urography.

**TREATMENT** The bladder should be decompressed by urethral catheter or suprapubic cystostomy as soon as possible. At the same time the patient should be protected against a flare up of pyelonephritis by antibiotic therapy or chemotherapy. Fluids should be forced and the patient's need for electrolytes (as determined by chemical studies) should be supplied by infusions. Anemia should be treated by transfusion followed by iron and vitamins as indicated. Decompression of the bladder should be continued until

case, the renal cortex. It is more commonly found in the renal medulla and is caused by Gram-negative bacterial organisms. Early type of infection may not be considered life-threatening.

**Diagnosis** The symptoms of acute pyelonephritis include a typical type of fever, pain in the costovertebral angle and a leukocytosis. Pyuria is generally present in chronic pyelonephritis and in critical infections it may be either absent or scant. Systemic tenderness are usually present in the costovertebral angle and there is tenderness along the course of the ureters. When pyuria occurs, the bladder symptoms may be predominant.

The combination of fever, pyuria, leukocytosis and tenderness in the costovertebral angle would lead to a clinical diagnosis of pyelonephritis. A high leukocyte count tends to confirm the diagnosis and identification of the causative organism by culture and sensitivity makes it possible. For purposes of therapy, the organism is sensitive to various chemotherapeutic and antibiotic agents should be determined.

Nature of therapy for the acute infection should be one during the acute stage as various procedures may be of no value and a transformation would actually be dangerous.

**Treatment** General therapeutic measures are as yet in use and a rigid fluid intake. After the uric acid concentration has been stabilized and the patient's studies completed, the selected antibiotic could be administered in large enough doses to sterilize the urine as possible. As a rule, violent acute infections of the kidney should first be treated by the antibiotic to which the organism is most sensitive while less violent infections may be treated with chemotherapeutic agents which would have a broader spectrum than the antibiotics. An ounce of these is given four times a day in the following dosage: ampicillin 0.5 Gm. 4 times, ampicillin 0.5 Gm. 4 times, Furazolidone 50 mg. The rest is as in the Furazolidone case as Gentamicin, Erythromycin and Tetracycline are safer than the older but less potent penicillins and are equally effective.

After the acute stage is passed, a careful evaluation of the urinary tract should be done and any complications or predisposing factors should be corrected. The goal in acute pyelonephritis is to eradicate the infection completely in order to prevent the dire consequences of chronic pyelonephritis. Because chronic pyelonephritis is a more important cause of hypertension than glomerulonephritis, a pro-

vention by intense treatment of acute pyelonephritis and meticulous follow up is of utmost importance

In chronic infections of the kidney it is important to eliminate if possible such complicating factors as stones obstructions and anatomic anomalies. The infection should be treated diligently first with antibiotics and then by small doses of sulfonamide drugs until the infection is completely eradicated if possible. Chemotherapy may have to be continued over a period of months and it is important to make frequent appraisals of the results during this time.

### Hydronephrosis and Hydroureter

In the aged hydronephrosis and hydroureter usually result from obstructive lesions distal to the kidney. Intravesical obstruction from prostatism vesical neck contracture or urethral stricture may produce hydronephrosis and finally renal insufficiency. Upper urinary dilatations resulting from lower urinary tract obstruction are usually bilateral but may be unilateral. When infection complicates the picture there is considerable loss of renal function along with general malaise anorexia loss of appetite and frequently cardiovascular complications.

**DIAGNOSIS** A history of difficulty in urination and dull costovertebral pain with or without febrile attacks should suggest upper urinary tract involvement. There may be polyuria and thirst and the urine may have a low specific gravity. If infection is present varying amounts of protein pus and bacteria may be found in the urine. Presumptive evidence of hydronephrosis is usually afforded by renal function studies as well as by chemical blood tests for nitrogenous retention. Intravenous urography should be definitive. Cystoscopy should not be done unless the diagnosis cannot be made by intravenous urography.

**TREATMENT** The bladder should be decompressed by urethral catheter or suprapubic cystostomy as soon as possible. At the same time the patient should be protected against a flare up of pyelonephritis by antibiotic therapy or chemotherapy. Fluids should be forced and the patient's need for electrolytes (as determined by chemical studies) should be supplied by infusions. Anemia should be treated by transfusion followed by iron and vitamins as indicated. Decompression of the bladder should be continued until

chiefly the renal cortex. It is more commonly hematogenous in origin and caused by Gram positive coccal organisms. Either type of infection may involve one or both kidneys.

**DIAGNOSIS** The symptoms of acute pyelonephritis include a spiking type of fever, pain in the costovertebral angle and vesical irritation. Pyuria is generally present in diffuse pyelonephritis but in cortical infections it may be either absent or scanty. Spasm and tenderness are usually present in the costovertebral angle, and there is tenderness along the course of the ureters. When pyuria occurs the bladder symptoms may be predominant.

The combination of fever, pyuria, backache, and tenderness in the costovertebral angle should lead to a clinical diagnosis of pyelonephritis. A high leukocyte count helps to confirm the diagnosis and identification of the causative organism by smears and cultures makes it positive. For purposes of therapy the organism's sensitivity to various chemotherapeutic and antibiotic agents should be determined.

Neither cystoscopy nor intravenous urography should be done during the acute stage, as neither procedure would be very informative and instrumentation would actually be dangerous.

**TREATMENT** General therapeutic measures include rest in bed and a high fluid intake. After the invading organism has been identified and the sensitivity studies completed, the selected drug should be administered in large enough doses to sterilize the kidney, if possible. As a rule violent acute infections of the kidney should first be treated by the antibiotic to which the organism is most sensitive, while less violent infections may be treated by chemotherapeutic agents which usually have a broader spectrum than the antibiotics. Any one of these is given four times a day, in the following dosage: antibiotics, 0.25 Gm; sulfonamides 0.5 Gm; Furadantin, 50 mg. The newer soluble sulfonamides such as Gantrisin, Elkosin, and Thiosulfil are safer than the older less soluble preparations and are equally effective.

After the acute stage is passed a careful evaluation of the urinary tract should be done and any complications or predisposing factors should be corrected. The goal in acute pyelonephritis is to eradicate the infection completely in order to prevent the dire consequences of chronic pyelonephritis. Because chronic pyelonephritis is a more important cause of hypertension than glomerulonephritis, its pre-

loss, anemia and general weakness—symptoms of advanced malignant disease—and whenever metastatic lesions appear with no obvious primary site. Pyelographic studies are warranted in such cases.

An accurate diagnosis is possible in the great majority of renal neoplasms. Roentgen examination with visualization of the renal pelvis and calices usually reveals the characteristic distortion of one or more calices. An intravenous pyelogram may give presumptive evidence of a new growth but in most cases it must be followed by retrograde pyelography. In patients with gross hematuria cystoscopy should first be done to determine whether the bleeding is from the ureter or bladder. Catheterization of the ureter may then be performed if it is indicated.

Roentgenograms of the chest must be done routinely on all patients with renal tumors since the lung is the most common site of metastasis.

**TREATMENT** The only cure for malignant renal neoplasms is removal of the affected kidney before metastasis has occurred. Nephrectomy is often justified even after the tumor has metastasized particularly in patients with persistent pain or prolonged or recurrent massive hemorrhage.

Except in rare instances roentgen therapy offers little aid. In inoperable cases it may reduce the size of massive lesions and aid in the control of hemorrhage.

Chemotherapy with nitrogen mustard or its derivatives is now being tried in conjunction with surgery and alone in cases where metastasis is far advanced. So far there is little evidence of its therapeutic value.

## Urinary Calculi

Stone formation may be a primary disease or a complication of any of several diseases. Its etiology is as yet unknown but primary stone formation is thought to be the result of some change or defect in body metabolism. Multiple myeloma, renal tubular acidosis, acute osteoporosis, hypervitaminosis D, Paget's disease and sarcoidosis all have some relationship to calcium and phosphorus metabolism and may be complicated by stone formation. Renal calculi are formed in about 60 to 70 per cent of the cases of hyper-

maximum improvement in the patient's general condition has been attained. Then the primary cause of the hydronephrosis or hydroureter should be removed. In cases where marked bilateral nephrosis is present, nephrostomies may occasionally be necessary because of the ureterovesical obstruction produced by bladder hypertrophy. Indwelling ureteral catheters are, more often than not, a hindrance to the patient's recovery.

## Tumors

The renal tumor most commonly found in the older age group is carcinoma. The average age of occurrence is around 50. Ninety per cent of the renal tumors are parenchymal and are adenocarcinomas, the most common of these being the so-called hypernephroma or clear cell carcinoma. About 10 per cent of renal carcinomas arise in the pelvis of the kidney, later invading the renal substance or advancing along the ureteral lumen toward the bladder.

Because of the late appearance of symptoms the prognosis is poor in malignant renal tumors of any type. The cure rate for parenchymal tumors is 15 to 20 per cent, that for pelvic carcinoma much less. Metastases from hypernephromas are most commonly found in the lungs. Renal pelvic and ureteral carcinomas spread directly to adjacent organs by way of the lymphatics and to remote parts of the body by the hematogenous and lymphatic routes.

**DIAGNOSIS.** An unfortunate feature of renal tumors is their frequent failure to produce symptoms until the tumor mass has attained considerable size and in some cases metastasized to another organ. Painless hematuria is the earliest and most common sign occurring in 60 to 70 per cent of the cases. It is caused by invasion of the renal pelvis or by a vascular accident within the kidney, either of which indicates that the growth has existed for some time. Pain is the next most common symptom of renal tumors, being present in about 50 per cent of the cases. It is usually dull in character unless ureteral clots produce colic. In about 10 per cent of the cases the presence of a mass is the first complaint, although a careful history will usually bring out evidence of some previous pain or bleeding of short duration.

Renal neoplasm should be considered in patients with weight

loss anemia and general weakness—symptoms of advanced malignant disease—and whenever metastatic lesions appear with no obvious primary site. Pyelographic studies are warranted in such cases.

An accurate diagnosis is possible in the great majority of renal neoplasms. Roentgen examination with visualization of the renal pelvis and calices usually reveals the characteristic distortion of one or more calices. An intravenous pyelogram may give presumptive evidence of a new growth but in most cases it must be followed by retrograde pyelography. In patients with gross hematuria cystoscopy should first be done to determine whether the bleeding is from the ureter or bladder. Catheterization of the ureter may then be performed if it is indicated.

Roentgenograms of the chest must be done routinely on all patients with renal tumors since the lung is the most common site of metastasis.

**TREATMENT** The only cure for malignant renal neoplasms is removal of the affected kidney before metastasis has occurred. Nephrectomy is often justified even after the tumor has metastasized particularly in patients with persistent pain or prolonged or recurrent massive hemorrhage.

Except in rare instances roentgen therapy offers little aid. In inoperable cases it may reduce the size of massive lesions and aid in the control of hemorrhage.

Chemotherapy with nitrogen mustard or its derivatives is now being tried in conjunction with surgery and alone in cases where metastasis is far advanced. So far there is little evidence of its therapeutic value.

### Urinary Calculi

Stone formation may be a primary disease or a complication of any of several diseases. Its etiology is as yet unknown but primary stone formation is thought to be the result of some change or defect in body metabolism. Multiple myeloma, renal tubular acidosis, acute osteoporosis, hypervitaminosis D, Paget's disease, and sarcoidosis all have some relationship to calcium and phosphorus metabolism and may be complicated by stone formation. Renal calculi are formed in about 60 to 70 per cent of the cases of hyper-



parathyroidism, a condition that occurs occasionally in the aged. Where this factor can be proved and the parathyroid adenoma removed, the patient will probably have no more trouble with urinary calculi. The milk alkali (Burnett) syndrome has many features in common with hyperparathyroidism. It results from the prolonged intake of milk and an absorbable alkali and is characterized by hypercalcemia, hypercalciuria and hyperphosphatemia. Mild alkalosis, renal insufficiency, and calcinosis or nephrolithiasis may eventually develop.

Stone formation is most common between the ages of 21 and 50 years. In elderly patients stones of the upper urinary tract are usually the large staghorn type that have been present for many years. They may produce no symptoms except loss of renal function and an accompanying pyuria.

Stones may be secondary to other pathologic conditions of the urinary tract that produce stasis and infection, particularly infection with urea splitting organisms. The higher incidence of bladder stone in elderly patients may be attributed to the more frequent occurrence of prostatism, bladder diverticula and bladder atony in this age group. Small stones that pass from the kidney by way of the ureter into the bladder can normally be passed without difficulty through the urethra. Hence bladder stones are seldom found without some evidence of infravesical obstruction.

Ureteral stones may occur at any age. Primary ureteral stones are rare. Those originating in the kidney occasionally lodge in the ureter and may grow extensively, producing dilatation and loss of renal function.

**DIAGNOSIS** The large staghorn calculi seen most frequently in the aged may produce no symptoms other than a dull ache in the costovertebral region accompanied by intractable pyuria. The diagnosis is made by roentgen visualization of the kidneys, ureters and bladder region by an anteroposterior view of the abdomen. This usually shows the stone shadow and tends to localize it. Then it is often possible by intravenous pyelography to determine the effects of the stone so that a decision can be made as to whether or not it should be removed. In the case of ureteral and vesical stones, cystoscopy and cystography should be employed in an effort to determine the cause and management.

**TREATMENT** In persons beyond the age of 55 unilateral and

painless renal stones without accompanying infection are usually left alone. Where both kidneys are involved and are definitely losing function at least one should be relieved of the stone, and any cause of urinary stasis should be removed to prevent recurrence. When renal function is in jeopardy, age is no contraindication to surgery. Lower ureteral and bladder stones may be removed either by transurethral instrumentation or by open surgery.

## DISEASES OF THE BLADDER

Because of its situation between the kidney and the prostate the bladder is exposed to diseases of both organs. In addition to serving as a reservoir for urine the bladder acts as a cushion protecting the upper urinary tract in cases of urethral obstruction and prostatic enlargement or contracture. As a result, it often becomes diseased. The bladder also acts as a sentinel and by exhibiting early and marked symptoms serves as a warning of disease in the neighboring genitourinary organs. Vesical irritability is usually the earliest symptom produced by inflammation of the kidney or prostate gland in the male or of the posterior urethra in the female.

Diseases of the bladder include malformations, infections, calculus formation, neoplasms, and neurogenic dysfunction. Diverticulum is probably the most important developmental abnormality found in the aged.

### Diverticulum

Although diverticulum is associated with obstruction of the vesical neck in more than 80 per cent of the cases and is usually classified as acquired, definite evidence of congenital origin can be found in many cases where no obstruction exists. Even in the acquired cases weak areas in the bladder wall probably contribute a congenital factor to the formation of diverticula.

**DIAGNOSIS** Uncomplicated vesical diverticula produce no symptoms. When symptoms occur they are due to infection or bladder neck obstruction. In cases of infected diverticula the urine is purulent and may be thick and foul depending on the location of the sac and its ability to empty. The diagnosis is made by cystoscopic inspection of the bladder lumen or by cystography using a contrast medium such as sodium iodide.

**TREATMENT** In cases of small diverticula with a comparatively large neck, simple removal of the obstruction at the vesical neck is usually all that is necessary for relief. If the sac is large and infected, it must be removed along with the bladder neck obstruction.

### **Nonspecific Infectious Cystitis**

Primary cystitis is rare, since the normal bladder is highly resistant to infection. In bladders that are diseased, injured, or unable to empty completely because of some associated lesion, however, infection may readily take place. In the majority of cases cystitis is only a symptom and demands a thorough search for the underlying pathology. Diabetes mellitus, by lowering the resistance to bacterial invasion, predisposes to urinary infection. Cord lesions that produce neurogenic bladder changes often cause cystitis, particularly when there is incomplete emptying of the bladder on voiding.

In women cystitis is commonly the result of urethritis that extends to the trigone and the vesical neck. Such infections often start with the beginning of sexual activity or with childbirth and smolder throughout life, with exacerbations at varying intervals. Cystourethritis is probably one of the most common ailments of elderly women that can be explained on an anatomic basis. The short length of the female urethra and its proximity to bacteria-laden areas plus the occurrence of innumerable small glands in the urethra and vesical neck make an ideal situation for infection. Sexual activity reactivates low grade infection involving these glands which cannot completely recover between attacks. Repeated attacks over a period of years may produce fibrosis and contracture of the bladder neck, resulting in urinary difficulty comparable to prostatism in the male. Other possible causes of cystitis in women include cystocele (when the residual urine becomes infected), urethral diverticulum, neoplasm, stone, and pelvic inflammatory disease.

Cystitis is less common in the male than in the female. In men as well as women the condition is usually secondary and indicates the presence of a pathologic condition in the upper urinary tract or the posterior urethra. Obstructive factors such as prostatism or

some intravesical lesion—diverticulum neoplasm or calculus—is the most likely cause

The organisms most commonly associated with cystitis are the coliform group. Infections with the urea splitting organisms *Bacillus proteus* and *Bacillus pseudomonas* produce a strongly alkaline urine that causes marked irritation, excoriation and occasionally encrustation of the bladder mucosa.

**DIAGNOSIS** The patient with acute cystitis is exceedingly uncomfortable with marked frequency and dysuria. The latter is due to spasm resulting from attempts to empty the bladder completely. Terminal hematuria is common. Suprapubic pain or pressure is a frequent complaint in both acute and chronic cystourethritis. Pyuria always occurs soon after the onset but fever is not characteristic of cystitis.

The diagnosis is usually evident from the symptoms but the underlying cause is not as readily apparent. After the acute phase has passed, cystoscopy and urography should be carried out in an effort to determine the etiology of the infection.

**TREATMENT** The acute stage should be treated by chemotherapy, rest and antispasmodics. Unless the infection is due to one of the urea splitting organisms, alkalis should be given to relieve the burning. After the acute symptoms have subsided, a diligent search should be made for the underlying cause and treatment given accordingly. Such conditions as neoplasms, cysts, polyps and contractures of the bladder neck must be treated surgically.

### Interstitial Cystitis

Interstitial cystitis is a long standing chronic lesion of the bladder occurring most frequently in women from 40 to 60 years of age. It is rare in men. The disease which is of unknown etiology is characterized by chronic inflammation of the bladder with spasm, contracture and thickening of its wall. The lesion occurs most commonly in the roof and involves mainly the submucous layer which shows infiltration, lymphedema and increased vascularity with final fibrosis and loss of elasticity. The mucosa becomes thin and breaks easily producing ulcerations known as Hunner ulcers. Pyuria is uncommon.

**DIAGNOSIS** The distressing day and night frequency, the oc-

**TREATMENT** In cases of small diverticula with a comparatively large neck, simple removal of the obstruction at the vesical neck is usually all that is necessary for relief. If the sac is large and infected, it must be removed along with the bladder neck obstruction.

### **Nonspecific Infectious Cystitis**

Primary cystitis is rare, since the normal bladder is highly resistant to infection. In bladders that are diseased, injured, or unable to empty completely because of some associated lesion, however, infection may readily take place. In the majority of cases cystitis is only a symptom and demands a thorough search for the underlying pathology. Diabetes mellitus, by lowering the resistance to bacterial invasion, predisposes to urinary infection. Cord lesions that produce neurogenic bladder changes often cause cystitis, particularly when there is incomplete emptying of the bladder on voiding.

In women cystitis is commonly the result of urethritis that extends to the trigone and the vesical neck. Such infections often start with the beginning of sexual activity or with childbirth and smolder throughout life, with exacerbations at varying intervals. Cystourethritis is probably one of the most common ailments of elderly women that can be explained on an anatomic basis. The short length of the female urethra and its proximity to bacteria laden areas plus the occurrence of innumerable small glands in the urethra and vesical neck make an ideal situation for infection. Sexual activity reactivates low grade infection involving these glands which cannot completely recover between attacks. Repeated attacks over a period of years may produce fibrosis and contracture of the bladder neck resulting in urinary difficulty comparable to prostatism in the male. Other possible causes of cystitis in women include cystocele (when the residual urine becomes infected), urethral diverticulum, neoplasm, stone, and pelvic inflammatory disease.

Cystitis is less common in the male than in the female. In men as well as women the condition is usually secondary and indicates the presence of a pathologic condition in the upper urinary tract or the posterior urethra. Obstructive factors such as prostatism or

epithelium most tumors are of the transitional cell type. About 5 per cent may be squamous or epidermoid in character while adenocarcinoma rarely occurs. Benign tumors of mesothelial origin are also rare in the bladder.

Most transitional cell carcinomas are papillary growths that vary histologically from relatively benign well-differentiated types to highly malignant infiltrating masses that metastasize widely. Because of their tendency to recur at the original site or elsewhere all papillomas of the bladder are considered malignant regardless of the pathologist's report. Nevertheless the histologic characteristics are of great importance from the standpoint of management and prognosis. The less malignant the tumor the less likelihood there is of rapid growth and invasion.

With one exception the etiology of bladder tumors is as obscure as the cause of cancer in other parts of the body. The exception is those tumors that occur in workers who handle aniline dyes. It is believed that the aromatic amines such as aniline and benzidine are definite carcinogenic agents that enter the body mainly through the lungs and cause cancer of the bladder in a high percentage of workers exposed over a long period. These growths are histologically identical with other epithelial tumors of the bladder.

Metastasis from carcinoma of the bladder occurs by way of the lymphatics and blood stream. The tumor usually spreads first to the regional lymph nodes then to the liver, lungs and bony pelvis in that order.

**DIAGNOSIS** The typical manifestation of bladder carcinoma is painless hematuria. Since the hematuria is usually neither excessive nor continuous its occurrence without other symptoms does not sufficiently impress the patient nor too often the physician. Such complacency frequently leads to fatal delay in diagnosis and treatment. The average duration of symptoms prior to the diagnosis of cancer of the bladder is one to three years. Were it not for the bladder irritability which results from sloughing and infection in about 20 per cent of the cases the delay might be much longer.

Pain is an uncommon feature of bladder tumors except in the presence of an extensive growth, necrosis or a complicating infection with encrustation of urinary salts. Loss of weight, anemia and anorexia are symptoms that occur late and indicate extensive metastasis. Massive growths involving the base of the bladder may

currence of suprapubic pain when the bladder is filled and the absence of pyuria will almost make the diagnosis which can be confirmed by cystoscopy. The bladder capacity is markedly diminished, and pain and spasm occur when the bladder is filled. Distention of the bladder causes breaks in the mucosa, with bleeding from the site of the lesion.

**TREATMENT** There are many different means of treating submucous cystitis, few of which produce a cure. They include irrigation with various chemicals, bladder stretching, hormonal therapy, fulguration, segmental resection, and in extreme cases urinary diversion. Antispasmodic drugs such as Banthine and belladonna are of value. Cortisone occasionally is effective. A recent chemical Clorproctin, which is used as an irrigating solution, is the most promising agent at this time.

### **Tuberculous Cystitis**

This condition is more common in younger individuals though it does occur in the aged. It is always secondary to renal tuberculosis and its treatment depends wholly on curing the disease in the upper urinary tract. Like interstitial cystitis, it should be suspected whenever a bladder infection does not respond to the usual methods of therapy used for nonspecific infectious cystitis.

**DIAGNOSIS** The symptoms are marked urinary frequency with dysuria and pyuria. Urine cultures are negative. The diagnosis is based on the cystoscopic finding of tuberculous lesions in the bladder, the demonstration of tubercle bacilli in the urine, and the pyelographic evidence of renal tuberculosis.

**TREATMENT** The renal involvement should first be treated by chemotherapy, nephrectomy, or both. Bladder lesions then heal promptly under treatment with streptomycin, para-aminosalicylic acid, and isoniazid.

### **Neoplasms**

Next to prostatic hyperplasia, tumors of the bladder are the most common neoplasms of the genitourinary tract. They are more common in the male, and occur usually after the age of 50. Ninety-five per cent are malignant growths, and of these 95 per cent are epithelial in origin. Since the bladder is lined with transitional

## DISEASES OF THE PROSTATE GLAND

The prostate gland is subject to infection benign hyperplasia calculous disease and cancer The tendency to hyperplasia and cancer in later life makes this organ one of considerable importance in geniatric practice

## Acute Prostatitis

Inflammation of the prostate may occur at any age Acute prostatitis is more common between 30 and 50 but it may occur in older men either alone or in association with benign hyperplasia and infections of the urinary tract Bacteria can invade the prostate by way of the blood stream or the lymphatics or by direct extension along the urethra The hematogenous route is most common Acute prostatitis begins as an acute inflammatory process involving the prostatic acini ducts and interstitial tissue It is most commonly a diffuse involvement but it may localize or progress to abscess formation

**DIAGNOSIS** The first urinary symptoms noted are burning on urination and increased frequency the usual symptoms of cystitis There may be rectal or perineal pain progressive difficulty in voiding and within 48 hours pyuria and occasionally terminal hematuria General muscular aching chills and fever of  $102^{\circ}$  to  $103^{\circ}$  F usually precede by two or three days the local urinary symptoms This sequence accounts for the mistaken diagnosis of influenza often made in the early stage

In a patient with the above history who has no tenderness in the flanks or costovertebral angles the finding of a swollen hot tender prostate on rectal palpation usually makes the diagnosis evident The two glass test of urine reveals gross pus in the first glass with less or none in the second It is important to make stained smears or cultures from the first specimen of voided urine so that a definitive diagnosis can be made and the proper drug selected for therapy

**TREATMENT** By meticulous and conservative management of the acute stage of prostatitis it is usually possible to prevent complications such as pyelonephritis seminal vesiculitis and epididymitis Overenthusiastic diagnostic procedures such as massage instru-



obstruct the ureters and produce gradual renal insufficiency, with resulting anemia

The necessity of performing a cystoscopy in *every* case of hematuria is worth the emphasis of repetition. When cystoscopic examination reveals a tumor, it is important to appraise its size, location and extent, and its relation to the ureteral orifices, trigone and vesical neck. Bimanual palpation of the bladder base through the vagina or rectum will reveal any thickening that might indicate extravesical tumefaction. Often the grade of malignancy can be judged roughly by cystoscopic inspection alone, but it is important to take a specimen for biopsy (through the transurethral approach) in order to determine the histologic grade of malignancy. The bite should be made deep into the musculature, since the depth of invasion is an important consideration in deciding on the proper therapeutic approach.

Intravenous pyelography should be performed in order to rule out the upper urinary tract as the source of neoplasm and to reveal any pathologic changes that might have been produced by obstruction of the lower ureter. When the tumor is large, the cystogram is very helpful in estimating its size.

Cytologic examination of the urinary sediment is rarely of value, most tumors are obvious on cystoscopy.

**TREATMENT** The complete and permanent removal of bladder tumors is the aim of treatment. The therapeutic approach depends on the type of carcinoma and its extent, degree of malignancy and accessibility. When the growths are small, few, and relatively benign on histologic examination, fulguration is adequate if there is no evidence of infiltration. Larger growths confined to one area of the bladder should be removed by segmental resection. Extensive involvement of the bladder without deep infiltration necessitates complete cystectomy with transplantation of the ureters. Where a highly malignant growth involves a large portion of the bladder and has extended through the bladder wall, some form of irradiation is indicated as a palliative measure.

Unfortunately the treatment of bladder cancer has not been too successful in general. After an apparent cure has been obtained follow up cystoscopic examinations must be done at frequent intervals over a period of years so that any recurrence may be treated early.

nence may result. Intermittent hemorrhage related to episodes of congestion in the hyperplastic lobes may be brought on by chilling, exposure, alcoholic excess or sexual overindulgence. Sudden acute retention may be produced by the same factors.

When an overdistended bladder is found in a patient with a history of marked frequency and difficulty in voiding over a period of weeks, chronic retention with a loss of renal function is to be suspected. In such cases catheterization should be done only in the hospital where meticulous attention can be given to the cardiovascular and renal systems and every effort made to avoid the hazards of pyelonephritis with urinary suppression and renal failure. Infection is usually present at this stage in prostaticism and the least manipulation may precipitate renal insufficiency or an exacerbation of infection. Instrumentation should *never* be attempted in such cases.

#### Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia

Hyperplasia of the prostate gland (so called "hypertrophy") is the pathologic growth of fibromuscular as well as adenomatous tissue that begins in the periurethral portion of the gland. Because of its anatomic location the growth produces progressive urinary obstruction leading gradually to back pressure in the bladder, ureters and kidneys. The end results of this process, particularly if it is complicated by infection, are marked urinary dysfunction and renal insufficiency.

The cause of this condition, which occurs in 34 to 40 per cent of men after the age of 50, is *unknown*. There is undoubtedly some hormonal imbalance, most likely involving the pituitary and testicular hormones. This disease usually has an insidious onset and progresses slowly, sometimes imperceptibly, so that serious damage may be done before its existence is recognized. Aging people have a tendency to accept mild difficulty in voiding, discomfort and even pain as inevitable results of senescence and they often allow marked changes in the micturition pattern to occur before they complain. Thus the problem may not be recognized until irreversible changes have taken place in the bladder or renal insufficiency has ensued.

Bladder dysfunction is not necessarily related to the size of the hyperplasia. Complete retention may be produced by a small

mentation, or endoscopy must be avoided until the acute and subacute periods have passed. The patient should have bed rest, copious amounts of fluid and sedatives. Antibiotics or chemotherapeutic agents such as Furadantin or sulfonamides should be started even before the results of culture and sensitivity studies are obtained. If abscess formation occurs, perineal prostatotomy is indicated. After the febrile stage has passed, warm sitz baths relieve the discomfort associated with voiding and promote more rapid resolution of the inflammatory process.

### **Chronic Prostatitis**

Chronic prostatitis is a very common disease, especially in men of middle age and beyond. It almost universally accompanies benign hypertrophy. Fortunately, only a small percentage of the cases of chronic prostatitis cause noticeable symptoms or seriously endanger the patient's health. The most common symptoms are burning and frequency of urination and suprapubic and low back pain. Usually pyuria is absent. Impotence and premature ejaculation are frequently related to chronic prostatitis.

**TREATMENT** Of all the various forms of therapy, prostatic massage judiciously and conservatively administered is still the best treatment for the symptoms of chronic prostatitis. The empiric use of sounds still has its advocates and occasionally seems to be effective.

### **Prostatism**

Prostatism refers to the clinical condition that results when urination is obstructed by disease of the prostate gland. It is a condition almost entirely limited to men beyond the age of 50. The most frequent causes are (1) hyperplasia, (2) fibrous contracture of the vesical neck (bar formation) and (3) carcinoma of the prostate.

In general the symptoms of all obstructive conditions are similar. They consist of diminution in the force and caliber of the urinary stream, increased frequency and hesitancy in starting the flow of urine. There may also be dribbling at the end of the act. When the frequency has increased to the point that the patient urinates every few minutes, a distended bladder is to be suspected. When the bladder is distended beyond its normal capacity, overflow inconti-

of the bladder. Since chronic infection must exist for many years before it leads to fibrosis, symptoms usually do not occur until after the age of 50.

In patients with neurogenic disorders, muscular hypertrophy resulting from bladder dysfunction may lead to bar formation. This condition is often produced by spinal cord lesions resulting from multiple sclerosis, tabes dorsalis, or trauma.

**DIAGNOSIS** The diagnosis of median bar is somewhat more difficult than that of prostatic hyperplasia, since rectal palpation may reveal only presumptive evidence, and endoscopy is necessary for a definitive diagnosis. Endoscopic inspection reveals a rigid, narrowed vesical neck with a definite elevation in its floor and the usual bladder changes associated with any infravesical obstruction of long standing: hypertrophy of the trigone and ureteral ridges and general coarse trabeculations.

**TREATMENT** Median bar can be relieved only by transurethral resection. Either the punch operation or endoscopic resection using the high frequency current will give complete relief. The condition is not amenable to enucleation, as is benign hypertrophy.

## Carcinoma of the Prostate

Carcinoma of the prostate is the most common malignancy in the male. It occurs in the same age group as benign hyperplasia and is frequently associated with it, although the two conditions have no etiologic relationship. It is rarely seen before the age of 60, but increases in frequency thereafter, affecting probably 25 per cent of men in the seventh and eighth decades.

The cause of prostatic carcinoma is not known, but its growth is definitely influenced by sex hormones. Androgen increases the rate of growth, and the acid phosphatase level in the blood serum, while estrogen therapy or orchiectomy slows the neoplastic growth and causes the acid phosphatase to fall to a normal level.

Most carcinomas of the prostate originate in the posterior lobe, although an occasional one is found in the new growth of hyperplasia. The latter type is frequently cured by enucleation.

The initial lesion begins as a small, firm nodule on the posterior surface of the gland that can readily be felt by rectal palpation. It gradually spreads within the capsule, invading the other lobes and

median lobe growing into the bladder, which cannot be felt by rectal palpation. On the other hand, very large subvesical lateral lobes may exist without causing marked changes in the pattern of voiding or noticeable amounts of residual urine.

**DIAGNOSIS** The diagnosis of prostatic hyperplasia can usually be made on the basis of the patient's history and age, together with the findings on rectal palpation and a careful estimate of residual urine. Urography, particularly a cystogram or cystourethrogram, will usually substantiate the diagnosis. Cystoscopy is often hazardous, particularly where the urine is infected, and should be avoided if possible.

**TREATMENT** Once the prostate has begun to enlarge, there is no known therapy to retard the growth. The rate of hyperplasia varies considerably with different individuals and some may never need operative relief. If the growth progresses to the point that serious local and remote changes are impending, surgery is indicated. Newer methods and better facilities have so greatly reduced the mortality associated with prostatic surgery that few patients should be denied the benefits of a needed prostatic resection.

Before operation, it is necessary to determine the patient's general physical status, and then to use every means possible to restore him to a state of well being. Decompression by means of a catheter or suprapubic cystostomy should be followed by restoration of the electrolyte balance, proper hydration, improvement of renal function, control of infection, and relief of cardiac embarrassment. After all possible improvement has been brought about in the patient's condition, the mechanical obstruction may be relieved by one of many methods depending on the size and location of the hyperplasia. About 70 per cent of prostatic enlargements are amenable to transurethral resection, a method that has a slightly lower morbidity rate, and appeals more to the patient. The method of operative approach is relatively unimportant in comparison with the preoperative preparation and postoperative management.

#### **Vesical Neck Contracture (Bar)**

Median bar is a form of prostatism that may occur at any age. True median bar results from long standing infection of the prostate and vesical neck, with subsequent fibrosis and contracture. The resultant mechanical obstruction interferes with proper emptying

well as from hemorrhage and infection. The roentgen findings in advanced carcinoma are those of metastasis to the hilar nodes of the lungs or typical osteoblastic lesions in the pelvic bones, lumbar spine and heads of the femurs.

As long as the growth remains confined to the prostatic capsule, the serum acid phosphatase is usually within normal limits. As the carcinoma spreads beyond the prostatic capsule the acid phosphatase level is usually increased in proportion to the amount of cancerous tissue present. The normal serum acid phosphatase is 0.5 to 1 Shinnar unit, or 1 to 5 King Armstrong units. In about 85 per cent of patients with advanced carcinoma of the prostate the serum acid phosphatase is elevated and this finding is pathognomonic of advanced disease even when metastasis cannot be demonstrated.

The serum alkaline phosphatase is a non-specific reaction to osteogenic activity in the body and hence is elevated in cases where bony metastasis has occurred. Both the acid and the alkaline phosphatase tend to return to normal under estrogenic therapy or following castration.

In early lesions where the only sign is an indurated nodule on the posterior surface of the prostate a surgical biopsy by perineal exposure is necessary for a diagnosis. In more advanced cases the diagnosis can be made by transurethral resection of the obstructing tissue for examination by the pathologist.

**TREATMENT** Carcinoma of the prostate is curable if diagnosed early enough for radical surgery. In 50 per cent of the patients who have prostatic carcinoma apparently confined to the prostatic capsule a permanent cure can be expected from radical prostatectomy. Unfortunately less than 10 per cent of the patients who come to urologists with this condition have lesions amenable to cure by radical surgery. This lamentable fact emphasizes the necessity for careful palpation of the prostate gland in all men over 50 years of age. When the clinician feels an indurated nodule in the prostate, he should suspect an early malignancy and refer the patient to a urologist for a definitive diagnosis. This may require perineal exposure and examination of a frozen section. If the nodule is found to be cancerous the entire prostate (including its capsule), the seminal vesicles and a portion of the bladder neck must be removed while the patient is still on the operating table. This procedure can be performed either perineally or retropublically.

the hyperplastic enlargement. These nodules are very slow growing and usually remain localized within the true prostate for two or three years before metastasis begins. Later the tumor may extend into the seminal vesicles by way of the ejaculatory ducts, and may involve the pelvic lymph nodes by way of the perineural lymphatics. Metastasis by way of the periprostatic veins, which drain into the vertebrals, explains the predilection of this tumor for the pelvic bones, heads of the femurs, and lower lumbar spine. Later other bones of the body and also the viscera, particularly the lungs and liver, become involved by metastases.

**DIAGNOSIS** Because early carcinoma of the prostate produces no symptoms, probably 85 to 90 per cent of the cases are not diagnosed until the flow of urine becomes obstructed and metastasis has occurred. In advanced carcinoma of the prostate the obstructive symptoms are similar to those of benign prostatic enlargement. Symptoms resulting from metastasis include pain in the lumbosacral region, in the hips or down the legs, anemia and weight loss, and hematuria late in the course of the disease when the urethra is invaded. Edema of one or both lower extremities is not uncommon when the pelvic lymph nodes have become greatly enlarged.

Rectal examination is the most important procedure in the diagnosis of cancer of the prostate. Papunicolou tests are worthless in the early stages and unnecessary in the later stages. If all men past the age of 50 had rectal examinations at least once a year the cure rate for prostatic carcinoma could be greatly increased. The lesion can be felt early, but must be differentiated from tuberculosis, chronic infection with fibrosis, and prostatic calculi. In many cases an expert can make the differentiation on the basis of palpation alone, but other lesions require biopsy for a definite diagnosis. A roentgenogram showing the presence of prostatic stones does not rule out carcinoma, since the two conditions may coexist.

In more advanced cases the lesion is usually stony hard, the gland is fixed in the pelvic sling, and may be fixed to the rectum. The seminal vesicles may be indurated and raised, and feel stony hard. Less important signs that may be found in advanced cases include an enlarged nodular liver, pathologic fracture, and occasionally an enlarged supraclavicular node. Anemia is often present, resulting from the replacement of bone marrow by tumor as

well as from hemorrhage and infection. The roentgen findings in advanced carcinoma are those of metastasis to the hilar nodes of the lungs or typical osteoblastic lesions in the pelvic bones, lumbar spine and heads of the femurs.

As long as the growth remains confined to the prostatic capsule the serum acid phosphatase is usually within normal limits. As the carcinoma spreads beyond the prostatic capsule, the acid phosphatase level is usually increased in proportion to the amount of cancerous tissue present. The normal serum acid phosphatase is 0.5 to 1 Shinowara unit, or 1 to 5 King Armstrong units. In about 85 per cent of patients with advanced carcinoma of the prostate the serum acid phosphatase is elevated and this finding is pathognomonic of advanced disease even when metastasis cannot be demonstrated.

The serum alkaline phosphatase is a nonspecific reaction to osteogenic activity in the body and hence is elevated in cases where bony metastasis has occurred. Both the acid and the alkaline phosphatase tend to return to normal under estrogenic therapy or following castration.

In early lesions where the only sign is an indurated nodule on the posterior surface of the prostate a surgical biopsy by perineal exposure is necessary for a diagnosis. In more advanced cases the diagnosis can be made by transurethral resection of the obstructing tissue for examination by the pathologist.

**TREATMENT** Carcinoma of the prostate is curable if diagnosed early enough for radical surgery. In 50 per cent of the patients who have prostatic carcinoma apparently confined to the prostatic capsule a permanent cure can be expected from radical prostatectomy. Unfortunately less than 10 per cent of the patients who come to urologists with this condition have lesions amenable to cure by radical surgery. This lamentable fact emphasizes the necessity for careful palpation of the prostate gland in all men over 50 years of age. When the clinician feels an indurated nodule in the prostate he should suspect an early malignancy and refer the patient to a urologist for a definitive diagnosis. This may require perineal exposure and examination of a frozen section. If the nodule is found to be cancerous the entire prostate (including its capsule), the seminal vesicles and a portion of the bladder neck must be removed while the patient is still on the operating table. This procedure can be performed either perineally or retropubically.



Occasionally early carcinomas may be found in men so old or so debilitated that their life expectancy would not warrant the radical operation. In such cases, and in cases where the lesion is extensive, the prostate fixed, and the serum acid phosphatase elevated, or where there is roentgen evidence of metastasis palliative antiandrogen therapy is indicated. If obstruction is present, it should be relieved by transurethral resection. In about 85 per cent of the cases the androgens may be neutralized by either estrogen therapy or castration. The latter has the advantage of being more positive in its effects and obviating the uncertainty of oral medication, since patients who do not tolerate estrogens well will sometimes decide to discontinue the drug. Many of the estrogens are effective, but diethylstilbestrol 5 mg daily, is the one most commonly given. It is also the least expensive.

Antiandrogenic therapy relieves pain within a few days causes a definite regression of the primary growth within a few weeks and in many instances brings about regression of the metastatic lesions in various parts of the body. Patients usually gain weight and strength and become less anemic. The side effects of antiandrogenic therapy include impotence, gynecomastia and occasionally edema of the lower extremities.

Although this type of therapy is not curative it affords marked relief of symptoms, improves the patient's general health and well being and usually doubles his remaining life span. Occasionally life is prolonged for 10 to 12 years. As a general rule, however, the effect of castration or estrogen therapy is limited to only a few years before the carcinoma becomes hormone independent. This development is thought to be due to secondary androgens elaborated by the adrenals and in such cases surgical adrenalectomy has brought definite remissions of varying duration. The results, however, have not warranted the routine use of such a radical procedure. Medical adrenalectomy can be accomplished by the oral administration of cortisone 50 to 100 mg per day in divided doses. Salt must be restricted and potassium added to the diet in order to maintain the electrolyte balance.

Some tumors are androgen independent from the start and in such cases antiandrogen therapy is ineffective. Where bony metastasis has produced severe pain in the back and hips radiation affords some temporary relief.

## Prostatic Calculi

Stone formation is not infrequent in the prostate. Most prostatic calculi are asymptomatic and are found incidentally on routine examination of the gland. Stones usually occur in association with benign hyperplasia but are sometimes found in younger men who have chronic prostatitis. Their etiology is not known.

**DIAGNOSIS** The diagnosis is usually suspected when the rectal examination discloses stony hard discrete nodules within the substance of the gland. Calculi must be differentiated from the lesions of tuberculosis, cancer and chronic fibrous prostatitis. A definite diagnosis can be made by cystoscopy, x ray or biopsy of the nodule. If the process is not too far advanced the stones can be removed by transurethral resection. Where there is massive calcification accompanied by marked urinary symptoms, perineal prostaticotomy or subtotal prostatectomy is indicated.

## DISEASES OF THE URETHRA

The urethra is subject to many pathologic conditions, some of which are serious and difficult to correct. In men the urethra in addition to controlling and conveying the urine plays an important part in sexual function. The lesions most often affecting the male urethra in the older patient are inflammatory conditions, calculous disease, diverticula and injuries.

### Inflammations

Inflammations are the most common and important diseases of the urethra in both sexes. The nature of the inflammation depends on the infecting agent. In the past the gonococcus led the field but recently nonspecific infections have become more common. These include not only infections with the ordinary pyogenic organisms but also *Trichomonas* infestations and such poorly understood inflammatory conditions as Reiter's syndrome, infection with *L.* organism and amicrobial pyuria. Tuberculous urethritis occurs rarely but only when involvement of the kidney and bladder are so far advanced that the urethral infection is of relatively minor importance.

*Gonorrheal urethritis*, though less common than in the past, is still seen in adult patients of all ages. In its early and uncomplicated stages 96 to 98 per cent of the cases can be cured promptly. Fortunately the gonococcus is unable to develop resistance to penicillin as many other organisms do. Streptomycin and many other antibiotics are effective when penicillin is contraindicated. The criteria for cure are absence of discharge, a clear urine free of pus cells, and a negative culture from the urethral secretion.

*Nonspecific urethritis in the male* is most commonly caused by the *Staphylococcus albus* and the nonhemolytic streptococcus. Most cases probably are secondary to infection of the prostate gland, although primary urethral infection with a nonspecific organism does occur.

Both gonorrhea and nonspecific urethritis cause itching burning on urination and varying amounts of discharge. The two glass urine specimen shows pus in the first glass while the second glass is essentially clear. Smears examined with Gram stains will usually make the diagnosis evident.

Nonspecific urethritis in the majority of cases, is resistant to all antibiotics and sulfonamides. Where the infection is coming from the prostate treatment should be directed toward the gland. Although most cases run a short course and subside spontaneously some are persistent and require local instillations of such an antiseptic as acriflavine or colloidal silver salts or the empiric use of sounds.

Urethritis owing to the *Trichomonas vaginalis* may occur at any age but is less common after 50. There is no specific treatment for it. The urethral instillation of antiseptics together with oral chlor tetracycline will usually relieve the condition unless the prostate is involved. In such cases massage is helpful.

Reiter's syndrome, L. organism infection and amicrobial pyuria are diseases limited almost entirely to young adults and will not be discussed.

#### **Nonspecific Urethritis In the Female**

The proximity of the female urethra to the vagina exposes it to trauma in childbirth and coitus with the subsequent danger of infection. Organisms from the vagina and rectum are responsible for the frequent occurrence of nonspecific urethritis in women.

The female urethra is homologous to the posterior urethra and prostate in the male. About 80 per cent of women have persistent periurethral glands. These may not function but if once infected they may perpetuate a smoldering low grade infection that often becomes activated from time to time throughout the patient's life.

In the woman frequency and dysuria are the outstanding symptoms of urethritis. Pain in the suprapubic and low back regions is another common symptom. At the onset or with acute exacerbations there may be terminal hematuria. The urine may or may not contain pus depending on the severity of the lesion. The diagnosis is based on the history, the absence of fever and the findings on urinalysis and endoscopy.

Chemotherapy and bladder sedatives are necessary in the acute and subacute stages. A favorite prescription in our clinic contains potassium citrate 30 Gm (1 ounce) tincture of hyoscyamus 30 cc (1 ounce) elixir of phenobarbital 60 cc (2 ounces) with enough water to make 180 cc (6 ounces). The patient is to take 1 or 2 teaspoonfuls in water every 4 hours.

The chronic stage is treated by urethral instillations and dilations and in some cases by electrocoagulation of certain secondary pathologic changes such as cysts, polyps and granulations.

### Injuries of the Male Urethra

Traumatic lesions of the male urethra must always be considered serious. Minor injuries may heal without difficulty or complications but extensive injuries are surgical emergencies requiring prompt attention.

Trauma to the urethra usually results from straddle injuries, fractures of the pelvic bone or injudicious instrumentation. Ruptures of the urethra vary from minor lacerations to complete tears with separation of the two ends. Injuries of the posterior urethra may cause extravasation of urine and blood into the perineum, scrotum and perivesical spaces, often leading to shock, sepsis and death. Wide incision and drainage is an emergency procedure to prevent death from sepsis and toxemia. Prompt and thorough drainage of the extravasation will usually prevent stricture of the urethra, a complication that is serious and difficult to manage.

## Malignant Neoplasms

Malignant neoplasms of the urethra are rare in both sexes. Those occurring in the male are usually squamous cell carcinomas arising from strictures of long standing. In the female malignant growths are somewhat more common, and include both epidermoid carcinomas and adenocarcinomas. The former result from chronic infection and stricture formation while the latter arise from Skene's glands near the meatus. Urethral cancers tend to grow along the urethral lumen and spread by lymphatic metastasis, involving both the inguinal and the pelvic lymph nodes.

**DIAGNOSIS** Urethral carcinomas produce no characteristic symptoms in the early stages. Hemorrhage and urinary obstruction usually occur late in the disease depending on the size of the tumor and the amount of secondary infection present.

**TREATMENT** In most cases nothing short of radical surgery is curative. Complete urethrectomy with dissection of the inguinal glands is warranted in all but the very early cases. This type of tumor is highly resistant to radiation.

## Benign Tumors

Benign urethral papillom is occasionally occur in both sexes. This lesion is most common in the anterior urethra and seems to be associated with moisture from a chronic discharge. Intermittent bleeding may be the only evidence of this disease.

**TREATMENT** Electrodesiccation usually cures simple papillomas. The underlying cause should be treated to prevent recurrence.

## Caruncle

A urethral caruncle is a small, red, polypoid mass that arises in the meatus of the female urethra. It rarely occurs before the age of 50 and apparently has some relation to the menopause. Further evidence of its endocrine origin is the frequency with which it is accompanied by senile vulvovaginitis. The lesion is benign. Histologically it is composed of epithelium, blood vessels and inflammation.

**DIAGNOSIS** The common symptoms are bleeding and tenderness.

occasionally associated with frequency and dysuria. The only means of making a definite diagnosis is by biopsy. It is important to differentiate the lesion from carcinoma, polyp, condyloma, and prolapse of the urethral mucosa.

**TREATMENT** Surgical removal by excision or electrodesiccation is indicated. Because of the association of urethral caruncle with genital changes, estrogens should probably be administered after its removal to prevent recurrence.

## DISEASES OF THE PENIS

The most common diseases of the penis seen in men beyond the age of 50 are inflammatory lesions. Peyronie's disease and neoplasm. Inflammations include not only the venereal lesions such as chancre, chancroid, lymphogranuloma venereum, and granuloma inguinale, but also the nonvenereal lesions: balanitis, balanoposthitis, and herpes genitalis.

### Venereal Lesions

*Chancre* should be diagnosed only by dark field examination. It needs no local treatment, and if it is recognized before the serologic test becomes positive, it can usually be cured by the intramuscular administration of 600,000 units of penicillin G daily for 8 days. If the serologic test is positive, bismuth subsalicylate should be administered once a week for 12 doses, in addition to penicillin.

*Chancroid* begins as a vesicopustule 3 to 5 days after exposure. After it breaks down, a painful ulcer is left. There is very early involvement of the inguinal lymph nodes with painful swelling and occasional suppuration. The offending organism is *Ducrey's bacillus*, which can be readily recognized by direct smear or culture. Chancroid responds fairly well to either oral or local sulfonamide therapy, although streptomycin and tetracycline are probably more effective.

*Lymphogranuloma venereum* begins as a small, relatively innocuous appearing lesion on the penis, which may disappear unnoticed. Lymphangitis and lymphadenitis soon follow, producing marked induration of the inguinal nodes and perilymphadenitis. The diagnosis is made by the Frei test. The condition can be cured



origin and may be infectious. They vary from small single warts to multiple branching cauliflower growths. In most cases they can be cured by the application of podophyllin powder (25 per cent) in oil. Electrodesiccation gives relief more rapidly.

Cancer of the penis occurs only in uncircumcised men and usually after the age of 50. Chronic irritation by the smegma is apparently a factor in its origin. Cancer of the penis starts as a small open sore that later ulcerates or as a papillary mass involving either the glans or the foreskin. The growth is slow and painless unless complicated by infection. The inguinal lymph nodes eventually become involved both by malignant invasion and by infection.

**DIAGNOSIS** Any penile lesion that gradually progresses despite antiseptic care should be examined by biopsy. If any enlarged inguinal nodes are present they should also be removed for biopsy.

**TREATMENT** If the lesion is early and there is no evidence of lymphatic involvement simple amputation of the penis is sufficient. If lymphatic invasion is suspected radical amputation with dissection of the inguinal and femoral nodes must be done. The prognosis is good in early lesions but after the lymph nodes become involved 5 year cures are the exceptions.

## DISEASES OF THE SCROTUM AND ITS CONTENTS

Diseases of the scrotum itself are rare. Tumors of the skin chiefly epitheliomas may arise from occupational exposure to various carcinogens such as soot, tars, creosote, and petroleum products. They metastasize to the superficial or deep inguinal lymph nodes. The diagnosis is made by biopsy and treatment consists in wide excision of the tumor and dissection of the inguinal nodes.

Diseases of the testicle and epididymis are fairly frequent in men past 50. They include infections, hydrocele, spermatocele, injuries and tumors.

### Infections

Infections of the testicle are not common. Those that occur may be blood borne but are more commonly extensions from an acute epididymitis. In severe pyogenic orchitis the testicle is destroyed.



by long term therapy with sulfonamides or antibiotics although strictures of the rectum and other types of scar formation may require surgery

*Granuloma inguinale*, although principally a disease of the tropics, is being seen with gradually increasing frequency in this country, chiefly among the colored race. It is not a systemic disease, but consists of granulomatous lesions invading the skin of the genitalia and groins. The diagnosis is made by finding the Donovan organisms in scrapings from the lesions. Many of the antibiotics are effective against this disease but cures are slow.

### **Nonspecific Infections**

Nonspecific infections of the penis are limited almost entirely to balanitis and posthitis. Phimosis and uncleanness are the common causes. Infection may be due to many types of bacteria, some of which are very virulent and necessitate intense chemotherapy. Antibiotic therapy is effective in all types of nonspecific infections of the foreskin and glans penis.

### **Peyronie's Disease**

This disease consists of single or multiple fibrous plaques on the shaft of the penis usually on the dorsum lying beneath Buck's fascia. It is seen only in patients beyond the age of 50 and the etiology is unknown. The disease is often accompanied by Dupuytren's contracture.

**DIAGNOSIS** The first symptom is painful erection. Later erection is associated with a crooked deformity or chordee that may preclude sexual intercourse.

**TREATMENT** Various types of therapy including diathermy, radiation, vitamin E, and cortisone have been used. None is highly satisfactory. In an occasional case surgical excision may give relief. For palliation x-ray therapy is probably the most effective method available.

### **Neoplasms**

Except for venereal warts, benign tumors of the penis are extremely rare. Venereal warts or condylomas are probably viral in

### Spermatocele

A spermatocele is a painless cystic mass containing sperm and lying above and behind the testicle. It arises when there is malunion of the rete tubules and the epididymis. Spermatoceles may be multiple and sometimes become large. They are often confused by the casual observer with hydrocele. Their position behind the testicle helps in making the differential diagnosis since hydroceles form in front of the testicle. Spermatoceles produce no symptoms except when they are large and heavy. In such cases there is dull dragging pain and pressure within the scrotum.

Surgical excision is the proper treatment.

### Tumors of the Testicle

Tumors of the testicle are almost without exception malignant. They are of three types: seminoma, embryonal carcinoma, and teratoma. Except when testicular tumors are complicated by hemorrhage and necrosis or when metastasis has occurred, a painless tumor is the only symptom. Metastasis occurs primarily by way of the pelvic and abdominal lymph nodes. Certain rapidly developing embryonal tumors may invade the blood stream early with fatal results.

*Seminoma*, which comprises about 35 to 40 per cent of testicular tumors, arises from the germ cells. It is homogeneous in structure and is the least malignant of all testicular tumors. It is highly sensitive to radiation, and the cure rate following simple orchiectomy and radiation is 70 to 80 per cent.

*Embryonal carcinoma* has a variable histologic pattern ranging from a glandular arrangement to trophoblastic tissue with chorionic epithelium. It is highly malignant, metastasizes early, and is resistant to radiation. It must be treated by radical orchiectomy with dissection of the retroperitoneal node, followed by massive radiation. The expected survival rate is about 15 to 20 per cent.

*Teratomas* may contain numerous types of immature and mature mesenchymal and epithelial structure, any of which may become malignant. Occasionally a partially formed embryo is found within the testicle, and in such cases the growth remains benign. Tera-

and suppurates necessitating orchiectomy. Mumps orchitis produces pressure necrosis and atrophy, without suppuration.

Infections of the epididymis reach that organ by the bloodstream or lymphatics or by direct extension along the vas deferens from the prostate or seminal vesicles. Nonspecific organisms in variety are common offenders, and they produce both local and systemic reactions.

**DIAGNOSIS** Fever, pain, swelling and localized tenderness are the common presenting symptoms. In aged patients toxemia is common and is sometimes overwhelming unless early relief is afforded.

**TREATMENT** In the aged orchidoepididymectomy is indicated. In younger men the disease can usually be managed by conservative measures such as elevation of the scrotum, analgesics and antibiotics.

## Hydrocele

A hydrocele consists of a collection of fluid within the tunica vaginalis of the testicle. Except when it is associated with acute testicular lesions, its onset is gradual and painless and its cause unknown. Hydrocele is common in the newborn and in aging men.

**DIAGNOSIS** Hydrocele appears insidiously as a painless rounded cystic mass surrounding the testicle. It transilluminates. A tense hydrocele may suggest tumor of the testicle while large hydroceles high in the scrotum are sometimes mistaken for inguinal hernias.

Hydrocele sometimes accompanies chronic nonspecific epididymitis, tuberculous epididymitis, syphilis and tumor of the testicle, and all these conditions must be considered in cases of hydrocele. Aspiration of fluid allows better palpation of the testicle and epididymis and may be necessary for a more accurate diagnosis of the underlying pathology.

**TREATMENT** Idiopathic hydrocele can be cured only by excision of the parietal tunica vaginalis. Palliation by repeated tapping and aspiration is often preferred by the patient although it is associated with the hazard of hemorrhage or infection. The injection of sclerosing solutions is painful and unsatisfactory.

## CHAPTER 19

# Geriatric Gynecology

FRANK R. LOCK

Every gynecologist spends a considerable portion of his time dealing with problems of aging and aged women. If the gynecologic problems arising in the postmenopausal period receive prompt and skillful attention, this should be a time in which the woman has complete comfort and normal function. It is in geriatric patients that the most gratifying results may be obtained by appropriate gynecologic treatment.

An understanding of the normal involutional processes in the woman is essential to recognition of abnormal changes. The endocrine changes associated with aging are discussed by Grollman in Chapter 20. While diminished ovarian function results in cessation of ovulation and menstruation, in the normal menopause estrogen continues to be excreted in significant quantities over a period of years. For this reason, dramatic symptoms and anatomic changes are limited almost exclusively to women suddenly deprived of ovarian function by operation or irradiation. In most women, objective evidence of active estrogen secretion for many years after the menopause is provided by the preservation of the labia minora, fullness of the labia majora, and elasticity, succulence, and cornification of the vaginal epithelium. The uterus may maintain its usual functional size for a year or more after menstruation has stopped. Other secondary sexual characteristics continue to show evidence of estrogen effect over a longer period of time. Regression of the breasts, for example, and changes in the quality of the skin and hair are usually delayed for many years.

Elderly patients frequently consult a doctor only when they are concerned about symptoms resulting from some chronic constitu-

tomas should be treated by a combination of orchiectomy and irradiation. The survival rate in patients so treated is about 60 to 65 per cent.

### **Tumors of the Epididymis**

Primary tumors of the epididymis are the least common neoplasms within the scrotum. About 60 per cent are malignant growths and these are about equally divided between carcinomas and sarcomas. Unlike tumors of the testicle, malignant epididymal tumors commonly give pain. They are usually small but can be detected on routine examination. The condition must be differentiated from epididymitis.

Orchidoepididymectomy, followed by irradiation, is the proper treatment. The prognosis is slightly better than in other intrascrotal tumors.

periods of cyclic administration should be separated as widely as possible

Atrophic changes in the genital tissues occur in a gradual and progressive manner. The normal changes include loss of most of the pubic hair and a decrease in the pigmentation and elasticity of the skin which assumes a texture and appearance comparable to that on the rest of the body. The labia majora become flattened losing the rounded fat pad present in the functional years. The labia minora gradually regress and in advanced age may be only a few millimeters in length immediately adjacent to the clitoris. The degree of contraction of the vaginal orifice is determined by changes related to childbirth and by sexual activity. The perineum and vaginal walls become somewhat inelastic. The vaginal epithelium losing its rugae becomes smooth and thinned so that it has a soft red appearance. Smears reveal lack of cornification in the surface epithelial cells. The normal uterine size is approximately 5 by 3 by 2 cm. The ovaries cannot usually be felt in the postmenopausal individual since they also undergo involutional changes and are only 2 by 1 by 0.5 cm in size.

Psychologic and sexual problems of the involutional years should seriously concern the physician. For most married women the postmenopausal years coincide with those in which their children become adults and establish families and businesses of their own. The mother's feeling of being needed and of making a major contribution to the welfare of her family may disappear. At the same time the aging process in her husband may cause him to become inattentive and to cease demonstrative evidences of affection. Insecurity and loneliness are two of many factors that contribute to emotional imbalance in women past the menopause.

The sexual performance of women in the postmenopausal period is largely governed by their experiences in the functional years. Women who have never enjoyed the sexual relationship may use the menopause as an excuse to discontinue coitus. On the other hand those who have been happy and well adjusted in their marital relations may continue to have a happy and satisfactory sexual life into the eighth and ninth decades. Sexual response and libido may actually be enhanced in women who have feared pregnancy and in those who have had some distaste for contraceptive practices. (Contraception may be safely discontinued one year

tional disease. Because the physician's attention is focused on the patient's complaints, it is not unusual for years to pass without the performance of a general physical examination. Good medical care requires a general examination of the areas most susceptible to carcinoma at intervals of six months, even though the patient has no symptoms referable to these areas. The breasts, pelvis, rectum and skin should be watched carefully.

### DISEASES OF THE BREASTS

Any mass or inflammatory change in the breast of the postmenopausal patient *should be considered due to cancer until proved otherwise*. The benign functional diseases of the breast such as chronic cystic mastitis which may be so troublesome in younger women invariably disappear after the menopause. Hypertrophy of the breasts sometimes follows the administration of estrogens, causing marked discomfort to the patient, this is an indication to discontinue the hormone. Acute mastitis is a rare complication of viral diseases in elderly women and subsides spontaneously.

### FUNCTIONAL CONDITIONS AND PSYCHOLOGIC PROBLEMS ASSOCIATED WITH THE MENOPAUSE

The menopausal syndrome is a self-limited condition. It is generally accepted that vasomotor phenomena usually described as hot flashes are frequently associated with the climacteric. Although many additional bizarre and nonspecific symptoms are attributed to the menopause they occur with equal frequency in association with emotional instability and tension states at all ages.

In the normal course of events symptoms related to the climacteric follow a course of exacerbations and remissions. In the normal untreated individual the periods of remission gradually increase in length and the symptoms disappear within eighteen months. While it is difficult to evaluate persistent symptoms in women of advanced age who have received estrogens regularly over a period of years it is very doubtful that vasomotor symptoms in women more than 5 years past the menopause are based on endocrine imbalance. Most gynecologists agree that estrogens should rarely be administered for periods of more than 3 weeks, and that the

rectovaginal as well as a bimanual vaginal examination. No examination of such a patient is complete until a uterine sound or probe has been passed through the cervix to determine its patency and to learn whether or not fragile tissues in the cervical canal or uterus will bleed following withdrawal of the instrument. The escape of bright blood from the cervix or uterine canal following this procedure (Clark's sign) is highly suggestive of a malignant lesion.

The value of Papanicolaou smears is directly dependent upon the accuracy of the laboratory available to the physician. Although improved techniques and increasing numbers of expert cytologists have enhanced the value of this test, it cannot yet be considered a valid criterion for proving or ruling out the presence of pelvic malignancy. The Papanicolaou technique is of limited value in the diagnosis of carcinoma of the endometrium, fallopian tube, and ovary lesions that are common causes of postmenopausal bleeding.

Unless the history or physical examination discloses some definite explanation for postmenopausal bleeding, dilatation and curettage should invariably be carried out in combination with adequate biopsy of the cervix. The fact that a patient has received estrogens or that atrophic vaginitis is present must not lull the physician into a false sense of security. While definitive diagnostic procedures such as dilatation and curettage may occasionally be briefly deferred in such cases, the patient should be kept under careful observation until the absence of malignant disease is definitely established.

### Carcinoma of the Vulva

Squamous cell carcinoma is the most common malignant lesion of the vulva. Basal cell carcinoma, malignant melanoma, and carcinoma of Bartholin's gland occur infrequently. The most frequent presenting symptom in carcinoma of the vulva, as in many benign vulvar lesions, is pruritus.

Malignancy of the vulva is often related to chronic vulvar lesions that may have been present for years. Every chronic lesion of the vulva should be examined by biopsy and examined repeatedly if superficial ulceration is observed. When chronic lesions fail to respond to conservative measures, malignant change should be suspected.



after menstruation has ceased ) Whenever gynecologic surgery for a benign condition is being considered in a patient past the menopause, one should first determine whether or not she still has an active sexual life

Dyspareunia rarely develops in patients who continue a normal sexual life Prolonged abstinence, however, will permit progressive constriction of the introitus so that the patient experiences dyspareunia when sexual activity is resumed This problem can be overcome within two weeks by the daily insertion of one vaginal suppository containing 0.5 mg of stilbestrol

## MALIGNANT DISEASES

### Evaluation of Postmenopausal Bleeding

Postmenopausal bleeding is defined as any bleeding from the vagina that occurs a year or more after menstruation has ceased The seriousness of this symptom is indicated by studies which have shown that malignant pelvic lesions exist in 25 to 50 per cent of the patients with this complaint Although the higher figure represents TeLinde's experience in 1940 prior to the widespread injudicious use of estrogens the 25 per cent incidence of pelvic malignancy was discovered by Brewer and his associates (1954) in current medical practice

A patient who presents herself with the complaint of slight vaginal spotting should always have a thorough evaluation If this reveals no objective cause for the bleeding it should be repeated after a short interval

The first step in such an evaluation is a thorough pelvic and rectal examination Gynecologists begin their examination with careful inspection of the external genitalia, including the anus and urethral orifice as well as the vulva and introitus A speculum is then introduced, and with the aid of a bright light the entire vagina and cervix are thoroughly inspected Care should be taken to expose the anterior and posterior vaginal walls by turning the speculum, or to observe them carefully as the open speculum is slowly withdrawn from the vagina Because a lesion in the cul de sac ovaries or uterosacral ligaments is often obscured by the melastic walls of the vagina or by obesity, it is important to perform a

rectovaginal as well as a bimanual vaginal examination. No examination of such a patient is complete until a uterine sound or probe has been passed through the cervix to determine its patency, and to learn whether or not fragile tissues in the cervical canal or uterus will bleed following withdrawal of the instrument. The escape of bright blood from the cervix or uterine canal following this procedure (Clark's sign) is highly suggestive of a malignant lesion.

The value of Papanicolaou smears is directly dependent upon the accuracy of the laboratory available to the physician. Although improved techniques and increasing numbers of expert cytologists have enhanced the value of this test, it cannot yet be considered a valid criterion for proving or ruling out the presence of pelvic malignancy. The Papanicolaou technique is of limited value in the diagnosis of carcinoma of the endometrium, fallopian tube, and ovary lesions that are common causes of postmenopausal bleeding.

Unless the history or physical examination discloses some definite explanation for postmenopausal bleeding, dilatation and curettage should invariably be carried out in combination with adequate biopsy of the cervix. The fact that a patient has received estrogens or that atrophic vaginitis is present must not lull the physician into a false sense of security. While definitive diagnostic procedures such as dilatation and curettage may occasionally be briefly deferred in such cases, the patient should be kept under careful observation until the absence of malignant disease is definitely established.

### Carcinoma of the Vulva

Squamous cell carcinoma is the most common malignant lesion of the vulva. Basal cell carcinoma, malignant melanoma, and carcinoma of Bartholin's gland occur infrequently. The most frequent presenting symptom in carcinoma of the vulva, as in many benign vulvar lesions, is pruritus.

Malignancy of the vulva is often related to chronic vulvar lesions that may have been present for years. Every chronic lesion of the vulva should be examined by biopsy and examined repeatedly if superficial ulceration is observed. When chronic lesions fail to respond to conservative measures, malignant change should be suspected.

after menstruation has ceased.) Whenever gynecologic surgery for a benign condition is being considered in a patient past the menopause, one should first determine whether or not she still has an active sexual life.

Dyspareunia rarely develops in patients who continue a normal sexual life. Prolonged abstinence, however, will permit progressive constriction of the introitus so that the patient experiences dyspareunia when sexual activity is resumed. This problem can be overcome within two weeks by the daily insertion of one vaginal suppository containing 0.5 mg. of stilbestrol.

## MALIGNANT DISEASES

### Evaluation of Postmenopausal Bleeding

Postmenopausal bleeding is defined as any bleeding from the vagina that occurs a year or more after menstruation has ceased. The seriousness of this symptom is indicated by studies which have shown that malignant pelvic lesions exist in 25 to 50 per cent of the patients with this complaint. Although the higher figure represents TeLinde's experience in 1940 prior to the widespread injudicious use of estrogens, the 25 per cent incidence of pelvic malignancy was discovered by Brewer and his associates (1954) in current medical practice.

A patient who presents herself with the complaint of slight vaginal spotting should always have a thorough evaluation. If this reveals no objective cause for the bleeding, it should be repeated after a short interval.

The first step in such an evaluation is a thorough pelvic and rectal examination. Gynecologists begin their examination with careful inspection of the external genitalia, including the anus and urethral orifice as well as the vulva and introitus. A speculum is then introduced and with the aid of a bright light the entire vagina and cervix are thoroughly inspected. Care should be taken to expose the anterior and posterior vaginal walls by turning the speculum, or to observe them carefully as the open speculum is slowly withdrawn from the vagina. Because a lesion in the cul de sac, ovaries, or uterosacral ligaments is often obscured by the melastotic walls of the vagina or by obesity, it is important to perform a

In 1955 and 1956, 94 per cent of the patients admitted to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital for treatment of carcinomas of the cervix had early lesions. League of Nations Stage II or less. It is now common practice to perform a biopsy of the cervix when there is the slightest discoloration or ulceration. The common use of the Papanicolaou smear has also led to the diagnosis of many preclinical carcinomas of the cervix before any visible lesion was present. Although carcinoma of the cervix is predominantly a disease of late middle life—the average age for its occurrence being 46 years—it persists as the most frequent malignant lesion encountered in women of all ages.

Intraepithelial (preinvasive) carcinoma of the cervix may be treated by total hysterectomy with salpingo oophorectomy provided that a wide segment of the adjacent vagina is also removed and the presence of invasive carcinoma is ruled out by serial block study of a wide cone of cervical tissue. In debilitated patients treatment by a wide conization of the cervix followed by careful observation is justified. Intensive irradiation represents excessive and dangerous treatment for intraepithelial carcinoma in any patient.

Invasive carcinoma of the cervix is an indication for treatment with a combination of intrauterine and interstitial irradiation with external roentgen therapy to the lateral pelvic tissues. Good judgment may be required to determine the proper amount of roentgen treatment in elderly individuals. There is no place for limited operative treatment in invasive carcinoma of the cervix. Elderly patients are rarely, if ever, candidates for the radical Wertheim hysterectomy with regional lymphadenectomy, which is now used in some areas as primary treatment for carcinoma of the cervix.

### Carcinoma of the Endometrium

Adenocarcinoma of the endometrium is the most common malignancy of the uterine body. It should be strongly suspected when postmenopausal vaginal bleeding occurs and its frequency justifies the recommendation of dilatation and curettage for every woman who has postmenopausal bleeding that is not adequately explained. Prolonged estrogen therapy has often been indicted as an etiologic factor in endometrial carcinoma. While this charge has not been

Carcinoma of the vulva should be treated by radical vulvectomy and block removal of the regional lymph glands. In reasonably early cases the prognosis for cure is excellent. Irradiation is seldom indicated in the treatment of these lesions. The ability of elderly and even somewhat debilitated patients to withstand this extensive operation is amazing. In our experience it has been performed successfully, usually as a two stage procedure, in a considerable number of patients 75 to 85 years of age. Even in advanced cases with extensive ulcerative carcinoma of the vulva radical vulvectomy is frequently justified as a palliative measure. Patients are often pathetically grateful for the elimination of a foul and painful ulcerative lesion.

### **Carcinoma of the Vagina**

Primary carcinoma of the vagina is rare, and is invariably squamous cell in type. Metastatic lesions from carcinomas of the cervix and endometrium are relatively common in the vagina, however, and the vaginal vault is the most frequent site of recurrence after cervical or endometrial carcinoma has been treated surgically. In patients who have been treated for pelvic malignancy any slight vaginal lesion should be examined by biopsy since the opportunity for successful treatment of a recurrence by surgery or irradiation depends upon the extent of the lesion when a diagnosis is made. Such patients should continue to have regular follow up examinations as long as they live. Recurrence of carcinoma in the vaginal vault has been observed in our clinic as late as fourteen years after treatment of the primary malignancy.

Although there is no reasonable anatomic explanation metastases to the vagina may occur from malignant lesions in distant sites such as the small bowel. A small focus of adenocarcinoma in the vagina should lead to an intensive search for the site of the primary lesion even though the prognosis is poor.

### **Carcinoma of the Cervix**

More than 90 per cent of the primary malignancies of the cervix are squamous cell carcinomas. An alert profession has completely reversed the ratio of early and late lesions at the time of diagnosis.

In 1955 and 1956 94 per cent of the patients admitted to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital for treatment of carcinomas of the cervix had early lesions League of Nations Stage II or less. It is now common practice to perform a biopsy of the cervix when there is the slightest discoloration or ulceration. The common use of the Papanicolaou smear has also led to the diagnosis of many preclinical carcinomas of the cervix before any visible lesion was present. Although carcinoma of the cervix is predominantly a disease of late middle life—the average age for its occurrence being 46 years—it persists as the most frequent malignant lesion encountered in women of all ages.

Intraepithelial (preinvasive) carcinoma of the cervix may be treated by total hysterectomy with salpingo oophorectomy provided that a wide segment of the adjacent vagina is also removed and the presence of invasive carcinoma is ruled out by serial block study of a wide cone of cervical tissue. In debilitated patients treatment by a wide conization of the cervix followed by careful observation is justified. Intensive irradiation represents excessive and dangerous treatment for intraepithelial carcinoma in any patient.

Invasive carcinoma of the cervix is an indication for treatment with a combination of intrauterine and interstitial irradiation with external roentgen therapy to the lateral pelvic tissues. Keen judgment may be required to determine the proper amount of roentgen treatment in elderly individuals. There is no place for limited operative treatment in invasive carcinoma of the cervix. Elderly patients are rarely, if ever, candidates for the radical Wertheim hysterectomy with regional lymphadenectomy, which is now used in some areas as primary treatment for carcinoma of the cervix.

### Carcinoma of the Endometrium

Adenocarcinoma of the endometrium is the most common malignancy of the uterine body. It should be strongly suspected when postmenopausal vaginal bleeding occurs, and its frequency justifies the recommendation of dilatation and curettage for every woman who has postmenopausal bleeding that is not adequately explained. Prolonged estrogen therapy has often been indicted as an etiologic factor in endometrial carcinoma. While this charge has not been

Carcinoma of the vulva should be treated by radical vulvectomy and block removal of the regional lymph glands. In reasonably early cases the prognosis for cure is excellent. Irradiation is seldom indicated in the treatment of these lesions. The ability of elderly and even somewhat debilitated patients to withstand this extensive operation is amazing. In our experience it has been performed successfully, usually as a two stage procedure, in a considerable number of patients 75 to 85 years of age. Even in advanced cases with extensive ulcerative carcinoma of the vulva, radical vulvectomy is frequently justified as a palliative measure. Patients are often physically grateful for the elimination of a foul and painful ulcerative lesion.

### **Carcinoma of the Vagina**

Primary carcinoma of the vagina is rare, and is invariably squamous cell in type. Metastatic lesions from carcinomas of the cervix and endometrium are relatively common in the vagina, however, and the vaginal vault is the most frequent site of recurrence after cervical or endometrial carcinoma has been treated surgically. In patients who have been treated for pelvic malignancy, any slight vaginal lesion should be examined by biopsy, since the opportunity for successful treatment of a recurrence by surgery or irradiation depends upon the extent of the lesion when a diagnosis is made. Such patients should continue to have regular follow up examinations as long as they live. Recurrence of carcinoma in the vaginal vault has been observed in our clinic as late as fourteen years after treatment of the primary malignancy.

Although there is no reasonable anatomic explanation, metastasis to the vagina may occur from malignant lesions in distant sites such as the small bowel. A small focus of adenocarcinoma in the vagina should lead to an intensive search for the site of the primary lesion, even though the prognosis is poor.

### **Carcinoma of the Cervix**

More than 90 per cent of the primary malignancies of the cervix are squamous cell carcinomas. An alert profession has completely reversed the ratio of early and late lesions at the time of diagnosis.

Although there is increasing evidence of the desirability of removing the regional lymph glands at the time of operation in patients with endometrial carcinoma many elderly patients cannot tolerate such extensive surgical procedures. The vaginal approach may permit removal of the uterus, tubes and ovaries in patients who could not withstand an abdominal procedure. It is recognized that vaginal operations are a compromise that allows treatment of women who are poor risks because of extreme obesity or constitutional disease.

### Carcinoma of the Ovary

Carcinoma of the ovary is an insidious disease and the patient often has extensive ascites before she seeks medical attention. Early diagnosis of this condition is made so infrequently that only 15 per cent of the patients survive for 5 years or more. If the mortality from ovarian carcinoma is to be lowered a careful pelvic examination must be a part of the general physical examination of every woman regardless of her age and prompt operative removal of the pelvic organs must be urged when an enlarged ovary is found. There is no place for conservative observation of a postmenopausal patient with enlargement of one or both ovaries.

Although uniform agreement about the use of irradiation does not exist, total abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy is the treatment of choice whenever an operation for ovarian disease is performed in a postmenopausal woman. If fluid is present in the peritoneum a sample should be submitted for Papanicolaou studies. When no free fluid is found peritoneal washings can be studied by the Papanicolaou technique. The presence of cancer cells is an indication for irradiation even though the malignant lesion seems to have been removed intact. Under these circumstances many clinics employ the intraperitoneal introduction of radioactive colloidal gold ( $\text{Au}^{199}$ ) and this technique has also been helpful in the control of ascites resulting from peritoneal carcinomatosis. Chemotherapeutic approaches to the management of ovarian carcinoma have been somewhat disappointing but the administration of nitrogen mustard and other new agents may at times prove palliative.



fully substantiated, the history of many years of continuous estrogen therapy is frequently associated with this lesion. For this reason dilatation and curettage should not be long delayed, even though the physician is under the impression that the bleeding is due to estrogen therapy.

Papanicolaou smears are unreliable for the diagnosis of endometrial carcinoma, although their accuracy is improved when smears are obtained directly from the endometrial cavity by aspiration or biopsy. Nevertheless, in present practice these techniques are primarily research tools, and standard diagnostic procedures must still be employed.

When an early diagnosis is made, the prognosis for cure of endometrial carcinoma is excellent. Miller's good results (1940) were obtained in a group of patients who had had symptoms over an average period of eleven months. The pelvic findings, particularly the size of the uterus, afford the best index of the extent to which the lesion has progressed. When the uterus is no larger than that normally encountered during the functional years of a woman's life, the prognosis is usually excellent. Further important information is obtained at the time the diagnostic curettage is performed when the surgeon should determine the extent and location of the lesion by first gently exploring the endocervix and lower uterine segment and then proceeding to each wall of the uterus individually. Extension of the tumor to the endocervix and cervix is an unfavorable prognostic sign, because of the heavy lymphatic drainage from these tissues. Cavitation of the uterine wall indicates infiltration by the malignancy and a less favorable prognosis.

Although there has been a recent controversy concerning the use of irradiation in the treatment of endometrial carcinomas, the accumulated literature shows a consistent improvement in results where irradiation and operative treatment are combined. Total hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo oophorectomy should be employed in the treatment of every patient with endometrial carcinoma unless her condition absolutely contraindicates operative treatment. Most of the experts in the treatment of malignant pelvic disease agree that intrauterine radium prior to operation is the treatment of choice. External roentgen therapy is usually reserved for the treatment of metastatic lesions found at operation.

Although there is increasing evidence of the desirability of removing the regional lymph glands at the time of operation in patients with endometrial carcinoma many elderly patients cannot tolerate such extensive surgical procedures. The vaginal approach may permit removal of the uterus, tubes, and ovaries in patients who could not withstand an abdominal procedure. It is recognized that vaginal operations are a compromise that allows treatment of women who are poor risks because of extreme obesity or constitutional disease.

### Carcinoma of the Ovary

Carcinoma of the ovary is an insidious disease and the patient often has extensive ascites before she seeks medical attention. Early diagnosis of this condition is made so infrequently that only 15 per cent of the patients survive for 5 years or more. If the mortality from ovarian carcinoma is to be lowered, a careful pelvic examination must be a part of the general physical examination of every woman regardless of her age, and prompt operative removal of the pelvic organs must be urged when an enlarged ovary is found. There is no place for conservative observation of a postmenopausal patient with enlargement of one or both ovaries.

Although uniform agreement about the use of irradiation does not exist, total abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy is the treatment of choice whenever an operation for ovarian disease is performed in a postmenopausal woman. If fluid is present in the peritoneum, a sample should be submitted for Papanicolaou studies. When no free fluid is found, peritoneal washings can be studied by the Papanicolaou technique. The presence of cancer cells is an indication for irradiation, even though the malignant lesion seems to have been removed intact. Under these circumstances many clinics employ the intraperitoneal introduction of radioactive colloidal gold ( $\text{Au}^{198}$ ) and this technique has also been helpful in the control of ascites resulting from peritoneal carcinomatosis. Chemotherapeutic approaches to the management of ovarian carcinoma have been somewhat disappointing, but the administration of nitrogen mustard and other new agents may at times prove palliative.

## BENIGN NEOPLASMS

The benign neoplasms most frequently encountered in geriatric gynecology are uterine fibroids and ovarian cysts. The involutional changes in pelvic organs that occur in the postmenopausal period bring about a resting state of the uterus and ovaries. Normal postmenopausal organs have been described above and are much smaller than the same organs during the functional years of a woman's life. This regressive change applies to benign uterine fibroids which are composed of uterine muscle as well as fibrous tissue. One does not expect growth of a benign tumor under these circumstances. The possibility of cyst formation in the ovary on the basis of abnormal follicular function or failure of a retrogression of a corpus luteum is eliminated by the absence of hormonal stimuli present in the childbearing years and by a comparatively unresponsive state of the ovary related to the aging processes.

### Uterine Fibroids

Uterine fibroids occur in 30 per cent of women at the menopausal age and cause irregularity of the shape of the uterus in a relatively large number of older women. Moderately large uterine fibroids observed at or near the menopause may be followed provided the physician is certain of his diagnosis with the expectation that they will become much smaller as the years go by. On the other hand definite growth of a uterine fibroid in a postmenopausal woman is an absolute indication for its operative removal. The incidence of sarcoma in uterine fibroids is relatively low but sarcomatous change can occur at any age and must be suspected when growth of a uterine tumor occurs in the older patient.

### Ovarian Disease

The cystic neoplasms of the ovary most commonly observed in elderly women are pseudomucinous cystadenomas and serous cystadenomas. Solid tumors of the ovary in older patients are almost invariably malignant.

Since simple cysts do not occur in the postmenopausal patient, there is no place for medical treatment; the presence of a significant

cystic enlargement of the ovary is a clear cut indication for operation. There is no reliable method for differentiating benign and malignant conditions of the ovary.

Pseudomucinous and serous cystadenomas are often multilocular and the septa that separate the compartments may cause their surfaces to be somewhat irregular. It may be difficult at times to differentiate between a very large ovarian cyst and extensive ascites. Resonance at the flanks can often be demonstrated in patients with ovarian cysts while in cases of ascites a flat plate of the abdomen with the patient in erect position may demonstrate fluid in the abdomen.

Paracentesis is absolutely contraindicated in the presence of an ovarian cyst as it may cause the implantation of malignant cells in the peritoneal cavity. In cases where doubt persists in spite of all diagnostic studies a small abdominal incision performed under local anesthesia will permit an accurate diagnosis. Whenever a period of preparation and observation is necessary prior to major surgery this procedure provides extremely important information with less risk to the patient than a paracentesis.

Since ovarian lesions are frequently bilateral bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy must always be performed. Hysterectomy will add little risk in the hands of an experienced surgeon and should also constitute a part of the treatment of these lesions.

## BENIGN VULVAR DISEASES

Chronic vulvar lesions are common in postmenopausal patients. Many of these women do not consult a doctor before the lesion has been present over a period of many years and has progressed until the skin of the entire vulvar and perianal area is involved and symptoms are almost intolerable. The principal symptom is pruritus vulvae and an. Scratching and excoriation of the tissue by rubbing often leads to marked hypertrophy of all the skin of the vulva.

### Infections and Allergic Reactions

Acute and intermittent pruritus is often the result of infection or allergy. The vulvar infection encountered most frequently in elderly women is monilial vulvovaginitis. The severe grades of this

## BENIGN NEOPLASMS

The benign neoplasms most frequently encountered in gynecology are uterine fibroids and ovarian cysts. The involutional changes in pelvic organs that occur in the postmenopausal period bring about a resting state of the uterus and ovaries. Normal postmenopausal organs have been described above and are much smaller than the same organs during the functional years of a woman's life. This regressive change applies to benign uterine fibroids which are composed of uterine muscle as well as fibrous tissue. One does not expect growth of a benign tumor under these circumstances. The possibility of cyst formation in the ovary on the basis of abnormal follicular function or failure of a retrogression of a corpus luteum is eliminated by the absence of hormonal stimuli present in the childbearing years and by a comparatively unresponsive state of the ovary related to the aging processes.

### Uterine Fibroids

Uterine fibroids occur in 30 per cent of women at the menopausal age and cause irregularity of the shape of the uterus in a relatively large number of older women. Moderately large uterine fibroids observed at or near the menopause may be followed provided the physician is certain of his diagnosis, with the expectation that they will become much smaller as the years go by. On the other hand definite growth of a uterine fibroid in a postmenopausal woman is an absolute indication for its operative removal. The incidence of sarcoma in uterine fibroids is relatively low but sarcomatous change can occur at any age and must be suspected when growth of a uterine tumor occurs in the older patient.

### Ovarian Disease

The cystic neoplasms of the ovary most commonly observed in elderly women are pseudomucinous cystadenomas and serous cyst adenomas. Solid tumors of the ovary in older patients are almost invariably malignant.

Since simple cysts do not occur in the postmenopausal patient there is no place for medical treatment, the presence of a significant

is made to re establish sexual function after a period of abstinence. The management of such cases has already been described.

*Chronic hypertrophic vulvitis* is characterized by diffuse thickening of the skin in the involved areas together with a loss of elasticity, a slight loss of pigment and mild edema of the subcutaneous tissues. The margins are not sharply delineated and the appearance of the involved skin differs little in other respects from that of the adjacent tissues. Superficial excoriation is commonly present, but ulceration does not occur.

*Leukoplakia* is characterized by bilateral symmetry of the lesion. It is often described as a butterfly lesion and the lateral limits may extend to the medial surface of the thighs. In early lesions the skin is reddened and soft in appearance. In older lesions the skin becomes white and hypertrophied and in the advanced stage atrophic changes lead to thinning of the tissues.

*Kraurosis* according to many descriptions is a nondescript lesion of the vulva. This term along with leukoplakia is commonly applied to all types of vulvar disease. In my experience kraurosis is characterized by atrophy and shrinking of the skin of the vulvar and perianal region. The tissues become fragile and lose all pigmentation. Numerous areas of linear excoriation may be present but this is not a consistent finding. The principal characteristic is a sharp linear demarcation of the involved skin from the adjacent normal skin.

*Lichen sclerosus et atrophicus* is a diagnosis that can be made only by microscopic examination of a biopsy specimen.

*Involitional anal stricture* is an extremely common lesion in women beyond the age of 50. In this condition the anus will not admit an examining finger without extreme discomfort to the patient. The stools are small in caliber and the patient usually has to take laxatives regularly. This condition sometimes develops spontaneously though it often follows anal operations such as hemorrhoidectomy or the regular use of cathartics.

## Treatment

Definitive treatment of any benign disease of the vulva must be based upon an accurate diagnosis. Measures designed to allow the lesion to return to a baseline condition however should be

condition are associated with diabetes, and the principal therapeutic approach is through control of the diabetes. Although there are available numerous agents that are considered specific for moniliasis, these invariably fail to control the infection if the diabetic condition is poorly regulated. The application of gentian violet is associated with the danger of a secondary dermatitis medicamentosa since sensitivity to this agent is very common. Almost equally good results can be obtained by meticulous hygiene and the local application of salts of propionic acid or Mycostatin.

Allergic vulvitis or lesions secondary to drug reactions usually complicate the picture in chronic vulvar lesions. Sensitivity to nylon and other synthetic fabrics is common, and may cause extensive ulceration of the vulva. In such cases spontaneous healing occurs when cotton underclothing is substituted for nylon. Before any vulvar lesion can be accurately appraised, all possible sensitizing contacts must be eliminated and all medication discontinued long enough to allow the primary disease to reach a baseline condition.

### Diagnosis of Chronic Vulvar Lesions

It is often difficult or impossible to make a specific diagnosis of vulvar lesions, even with the assistance of extensive clinical and laboratory examinations including pathologic study of the tissue. The following simple classification of the benign vulvar lesions however offers a helpful approach to the problem. It should be emphasized that biopsy of the vulva is indicated in the differential diagnosis of vulvar lesions in general and that biopsy should be done on *every* ulcerative lesion in order to confirm or rule out carcinomatous change.

#### *Benign Vulvar Lesions*

- 1 Simple atrophy
- 2 Chronic hypertrophic vulvitis
- 3 Leukoplakia
- 4 Kraurosis
- 5 *Lichen sclerosus et atrophicus*
- 6 Involutional anal stricture

*Simple atrophy of the vulva* is a physiologic condition and does not produce symptoms except in those instances where an attempt

## RELAXATION, PROLAPSE, RECTOCELE, CYSTOCELE, AND ENTEROCELE

These pathologic conditions are sequelae of lacerations and relaxation of the muscular and fibrous supports of the pelvic viscera. Although these conditions may progress gradually after the menopause as involutional changes produce a loss of strength and tone, it is not unusual for an acute condition to develop more or less suddenly. Involutional changes are responsible for the appearance of these lesions in nulliparas and in parous women 20 to 30 years after delivery. It is significant that these lesions often occur in women who have reduced their physical activities to a minimum, with the result that retrogressive changes occur in the fibrous tissues and musculature of the entire body.

**DIAGNOSIS** The symptoms produced by these lesions fall into three general categories:

1 The actual protrusion of pelvic tissues through the introitus is very unpleasant and uncomfortable and few women will tolerate this anatomic abnormality unless they believe that nothing can be done to correct it.

2 The principal *subjective* symptoms are pelvic pressure and a sensation that all the organs are falling out. Back pain is usually related to primary disease of the spine or to postural changes rather than to the pelvic lesion. In patients with moderate degrees of relaxation and prolapse the subjective symptoms are completely relieved by lying down and are aggravated by standing for prolonged periods of time.

3 These conditions often affect the functions of the bladder and rectum. With complete prolapse or a large cystocele difficulty in voiding or urinary retention is more common than incontinence of urine. Many patients must lie down or reduce the cystocele manually in order to void. Incomplete emptying of the bladder may lead to urinary frequency and nocturia. When urinary incontinence is associated with moderate degrees of pelvic relaxation a careful study of the urinary tract should be made to rule out intrinsic pathology there.

Although rectocele often contributes to difficulty in defecation other possible causes for constipation must be considered before



instituted immediately. These include the use of cotton underclothing, discontinuance of all medication, the avoidance of trauma to the vulva, the intermittent application of dry heat, and the use of olive or mineral oil on cotton rather than soap and water, for cleansing the involved areas. Patients should be urged to dry the vulvar area by patting it rather than rubbing it with a towel. Mild sedation, particularly at night, should be employed during this period of treatment. In a large number of patients this program will produce such dramatic improvement that specific therapy is unnecessary.

The use of roentgen therapy for pruritus vulvae is absolutely contraindicated. Although transient improvement may result, the permanent changes secondary to irradiation will lead to further progress of the lesion and may ultimately make surgical treatment essential.

Hormones, besides being expensive, rarely give good results in vulvar lesions. Hydrocortisone ointment (1 per cent) can be applied for a short time, and may help to control secondary reactions. The use of estrogens parenterally or locally rarely produces significant effect and should not be continued over long periods.

Every effort should be made to control the symptoms of leukoplakia of the vulva without resort to surgery, for the incidence of recurrence following vulvectomy is exceedingly high. Mering (1956) reports satisfactory results from his operation which employs subcutaneous dissection of the involved areas, but experience with this procedure elsewhere is too limited to allow an accurate appraisal of its value.

Good results are obtained from the use of simple vulvectomy for kraurosis vulvae. This lesion is sharply delineated and there is great probability of success. The operation is not mutilating and when properly performed does not destroy normal sexual function.

Involuntary stricture of the anus responds very satisfactorily to dilatation under anesthesia. For this reason it is wise to determine the adequacy of the anus whenever any operative procedure is undertaken on an elderly patient. Dilatation can also be satisfactorily performed by the patient employing Young's rectal dilators or other simple aids. In some cases remarkable relief from constipation may be obtained by either method of dilatation.

if necessary. Complete or nearly complete excision of the vagina assures uniformly good results. With rare exceptions, abdominal procedures have no place in the treatment of prolapse and relaxation.

Few patients in gynecologic practice are more grateful than the woman who has been given relief by reconstruction of the vaginal passages after months or years of discomfort and limitation of physical activity.

## REFERENCES

- 1 BREWER J I and MILLER W H Postmenopausal uterine bleeding *Am J Obst & Gynec* 67 998 1954
- 2 MERRING J H Further observations on wide skin undercutting for intractable pruritus vulvae *Am J Obst & Gynec* 71 386 1956
- 3 MILLER N F Carcinoma of the body of the uterus *Am J Obst & Gynec* 40 731 1940
- 4 TELINDE R W Causes of postmenopausal bleeding *Am J Surg* 48 289 1940

it is indicted as the primary cause. Only when the physician obtains a history that the patient has to give manual support to the rectal wall in order to empty the bowel can he be certain of the relationship between rectocele and constipation.

Although the diagnosis of relaxation and prolapse is usually obvious on pelvic examination, examination of the patient in the lithotomy position with the bladder and bowel empty may be misleading. In this position, the patient must strain down firmly to demonstrate lesions that are readily apparent when she is examined in the standing position, with one foot on a stool or chair.

The exact differentiation of cystocele, rectocele, and enterocele is of great importance to the gynecologist who will undertake to correct the problem surgically but is less important to the general practitioner who needs to decide only whether or not referral or treatment is indicated.

**TREATMENT** Pessaries of various types have a limited place in the treatment of relaxation and prolapse although much symptomatic relief can be provided by the continuous use of a properly fitting pessary. Doughnut and ring type pessaries are the ones most frequently employed. The advent of plastic materials has decreased the amount of tissue reaction resulting from the use of pessaries, but they still produce annoying and malodorous discharges that require unusual hygiene. As a rule simple cleansing douches two or three times a week will suffice. Pessaries must be removed and the vaginal walls inspected for evidence of infection or ulceration at intervals not exceeding four to six weeks. Unless the patient is a very poor surgical risk there is little excuse for subjecting her to the nuisance of wearing a pessary for the remainder of her life.

Advances in the vaginal approach to these lesions, improvements in anesthetic techniques (including wider use of local anesthetics) and the advent of antibiotic and chemotherapeutic drugs for the control of infections have made corrective surgical procedures safe for women of advanced age even those with little cardiovascular or metabolic reserve. Fortunately ambulation within a period of 24 hours does not jeopardize the success of operation.

Vaginal hysterectomy with anatomic reconstruction of the anterior and posterior vaginal walls is the treatment of choice for these conditions. The surgeon must ascertain whether or not the patient has an active sexual life so that he can preserve the vaginal canal

data would indicate that there is no specific relationship between endocrine failure and the aging process, and that endocrine deficiencies in the aged represent disturbances of specific organs. Such deficiencies must be treated by replacement therapy in the same manner as deficiencies occurring at earlier ages except when complications of age necessitate altering the therapeutic approach (Starr 1957).

Although the hormones may stimulate development in youth, there is no evidence that their administration retards the tendency to senescence. The hope of earlier workers that a knowledge of the endocrine function and the availability of hormones would furnish the "fountain of perpetual youth" has not materialized. Although the endocrine organs age as do the other organs and tissues, there is no evidence that a particular tendency for these to deteriorate is associated with the aging process. Hence such measures as giving small doses of thyroid to the aged because the basal metabolic rate is subnormal have no rational or practical basis. Those who advocate raising the level of endocrine function without stimulating the end organs are oblivious of a basic principle of endocrinology, namely, that the administration of a hormone depresses the function of the normal tissue elaborating this hormone and hence induces no physiologic effect (Grollman 1947).

Because of the altered conditions attending senescence, the recognition and treatment of endocrine disturbances like those of other organ systems require special consideration in the aged individual. It is these alterations of aging that will receive special consideration here. For the sake of convenience, each tissue will be considered separately. Since diabetes and disturbances of reproductive function are considered elsewhere, these will be discussed only briefly in this chapter.

### PITUITARY GLAND

The hypophysis decreases in size with age. This involution involves primarily the anterior lobe or adenohypophysis and is reflected in a decreased production of the gonadotrophic and thyrotrophic hormones and presumably also of the other trophic hormones elaborated by the gland. This loss of function is probably not primary, but reflects the diminished need for these hormones

## Disorders of the Endocrine System

ARTHUR GROLLMAN

In the search for some specific disturbance as the primary cause of the aging process deterioration of the endocrine organs has often been held responsible for the changes observed in senility. The early history of endocrinology is replete with claims of the rejuvenating effects of replacement therapy for postulated endocrine deficiencies. Particular attention was given to the gonads, since failure of these organs is related chronologically to the aging process. The earliest attempts at rejuvenation by Brown Sequard and later by Steinach and Voronoff are well known.

The availability of adequate replacement therapy has shown the error of these earlier views, and the need for differentiating between the secondary effects of primary endocrine deficiency and the similar but unrelated changes that occur in tissues as a result of the aging process (Grollman 1947; Thewlis 1942). Now that we have available exact procedures for evaluating the degree of endocrine deficiency and potent agents capable of replacing the hormonal requirements of the tissues, one need no longer indulge in the wild speculation that characterized the work of earlier years in endocrinology. By applying rigid scientific criteria one can determine exactly what role the aging process plays in inducing the changes observed in the endocrine organs as well as the effects of these changes on the organism as a whole (Grollman 1947).

Like other tissues the endocrine organs gradually undergo retrogressive changes in old age. To what extent are such changes incidental to a diminished requirement for the hormones on the part of other tissues and to what extent are they primary—a result of senescence of the endocrine organ itself? The presently available

data would indicate that there is no specific relationship between endocrine failure and the aging process and that endocrine deficiencies in the aged represent disturbances of specific organs. Such deficiencies must be treated by replacement therapy in the same manner as deficiencies occurring at earlier ages except when complications of age necessitate altering the therapeutic approach (Starr 1957).

Although the hormones may stimulate development in youth there is no evidence that their administration retards the tendency to senescence. The hope of earlier workers that a knowledge of the endocrine function and the availability of hormones would furnish the "fountain of perpetual youth" has not materialized. Although the endocrine organs age as do the other organs and tissues there is no evidence that a particular tendency for these to deteriorate is associated with the aging process. Hence such measures as giving small doses of thyroid to the aged because the basal metabolic rate is subnormal have no rational or practical basis. Those who advocate raising the level of endocrine function without stimulating the end organs are oblivious of a basic principle of endocrinology, namely, that the administration of a hormone depresses the function of the normal tissue elaborating this hormone and hence induces no physiologic effect (Collman 1947).

Because of the altered conditions attending senescence the recognition and treatment of endocrine disturbances like those of other organ systems require special consideration in the aged individual. It is these alterations of aging that will receive special consideration here. For the sake of convenience each tissue will be considered separately. Since diabetes and disturbances of reproductive function are considered elsewhere these will be discussed only briefly in this chapter.

### PITUITARY GLAND

The hypophysis decreases in size with age. This involution involves primarily the anterior lobe or adenohypophysis and is reflected in a decreased production of the gonadotrophic and thyrotrophic hormones and presumably also of the other trophic hormones elaborated by the gland. This loss of function is probably not primary but reflects the diminished need for these various

## CHAPTER 20

# Disorders of the Endocrine System

ARTHUR GROLLMAN

In the search for some specific disturbance as the primary cause of the aging process deterioration of the endocrine organs has often been held responsible for the changes observed in senility. The early history of endocrinology is replete with claims of the rejuvenating effects of replacement therapy for postulated endocrine deficiencies. Particular attention was given to the gonads, since failure of these organs is related chronologically to the aging process. The earliest attempts at rejuvenation by Brown Sequard and later by Steinach and Voronoff are well known.

The availability of adequate replacement therapy has shown the error of these earlier views and the need for differentiating between the secondary effects of primary endocrine deficiency and the similar but unrelated changes that occur in tissues as a result of the aging process (Grollman 1947, Thewlis 1942). Now that we have available exact procedures for evaluating the degree of endocrine deficiency and potent agents capable of replacing the hormonal requirements of the tissues one need no longer indulge in the wild speculation that characterized the work of earlier years in endocrinology. By applying rigid scientific criteria one can determine exactly what role the aging process plays in inducing the changes observed in the endocrine organs, as well as the effects of these changes on the organism as a whole (Grollman 1947).

Like other tissues the endocrine organs gradually undergo regressive changes in old age. To what extent are such changes incidental to a diminished requirement for the hormones on the part of other tissues, and to what extent are they primary—a result of senescence of the endocrine organ itself? The presently available

data would indicate that there is no specific relationship between endocrine failure and the aging process and that endocrine deficiencies in the aged represent disturbances of specific organs. Such deficiencies must be treated by replacement therapy in the same manner as deficiencies occurring at earlier ages except when complications of age necessitate altering the therapeutic approach (Starr 1957).

Although the hormones may stimulate development in youth there is no evidence that their administration retards the tendency to senescence. The hope of earlier workers that a knowledge of the endocrine function and the availability of hormones would furnish the "fountain of perpetual youth" has not materialized. Although the endocrine organs age as do the other organs and tissues there is no evidence that a particular tendency for these to deteriorate is associated with the aging process. Hence such measures as giving small doses of thyroid to the aged because the basal metabolic rate is subnormal have no rational or practical basis. Those who advocate raising the level of endocrine function without stimulating the end organs are oblivious of a basic principle of endocrinology, namely, that the administration of a hormone depresses the function of the normal tissue elaborating this hormone and hence induces no physiologic effect (Grollman 1947).

Because of the altered conditions attending senescence the recognition and treatment of endocrine disturbances like those of other organ systems require special consideration in the aged individual. It is these alterations of aging that will receive special consideration here. For the sake of convenience each tissue will be considered separately. Since diabetes and disturbances of reproductive function are considered elsewhere these will be discussed only briefly in this chapter.

### PITUITARY GLAND

The hypophysis decreases in size with age. This involution involves primarily the anterior lobe or adenohypophysis and is reflected in a decreased production of the gonadotrophic and thyrotrophic hormones and presumably also of the other trophic hormones elaborated by the gland. This loss of function is probably not primary but reflects the diminished need for these various



hormones that is consequent upon the reduced activity of the aging target organs

Hypophyseal insufficiency is most commonly observed in Sheehan's syndrome, which appears usually *post partum*, and hence is of little geriatric significance. Instances of pituitary insufficiency observed in the aged are usually secondary to destruction of the gland by metastases. Diabetes insipidus results occasionally from metastases of carcinoma of the mammary glands. This condition as well as insufficiency of the anterior lobe, should receive the same treatment in aging patients that it does in younger individuals. Tumors of the hypophysis which are rare also present no special problems in the aged as compared to the younger group. Craniopharyngioma, an important intracranial lesion affecting pituitary and hypothalamic function is congenital in origin and makes its appearance earlier in life—usually in youth or middle age (Crollman, 1947)

### PINEAL GLAND

The function of the pineal gland is unknown and it is generally considered to be a vestigial organ that has no functional significance in the human being. Involutionary changes in the gland appear during childhood the epithelial cells being replaced by a ceroid (brain sand) and corpora arenacea. The retention of what appears to be functional tissue however may sometimes be observed in aged individuals (Grollman 1947). Tumors of the pineal gland occur in children and need not be discussed further here.

### THYROID GLAND

The possible role of the thyroid in the genesis of some of the manifestations of senescence has been a subject of speculation since many of the features of this state such as dryness of the skin, reduced motor function, intolerance to cold, dystrophy of the hair and other ectodermal tissues are also characteristic of hypothyroidism. On the basis of this similarity the administration of thyroid has been recommended for aging patients. In a critical review of the subject however Carlson (1952) could find no convincing evidence that thyroid secretion decreases with advancing

age. More recent studies on rats indicate that there is indeed a reduced rate of secretion per unit of body weight in senescent as compared to young animals although the concentration of circulating protein bound iodine is not significantly different in the two age groups (Wilansky et al 1957). The available evidence indicates that this diminished rate of thyroid secretion does not reflect the existence of hypothyroidism, but represents either a homeostatic adaptation to the increased responsiveness of the target tissues or a result of impaired inactivation or excretion of thyroid hormone (Starr 1957).

Rice (1938) has studied the anatomy of the thyroid from birth to 80 years of age and has found that it decreases in weight from about 30 Gm in the young adult to about 20 Gm at the age of 80. Histologically too the thyroid of elderly people is altered in appearance resembling that of the infant: its small, round follicles are lined by cuboidal epithelium. The incidence of thyroid nodules increases with old age—a reflection of the periodic stimulus to overactivity to which the gland is subjected.

After puberty the basal metabolic rate decreases at an average rate of 3 to 5 per cent per decade. The protein bound iodine however manifests a normal spread that is independent of age and there is no reason to believe that the thyroid becomes deficient with the aging process (Wilansky et al 1957). The decrease in basal metabolic rate reflects the gradual decrease in metabolic activity characteristic of aging tissues generally (Starr 1957).

As might be anticipated the symptoms observed in elderly patients with thyroid disease differ from those seen in younger individuals. These differences in the older age group result from two factors: (1) the greater incidence of adenoma of the thyroid as compared to Graves disease as a cause of hyperthyroidism in the aged and (2) reduction in the capacity of the tissues to respond to the effects of hyperthyroidism. As a result, for example of the decrease in cardiac reserve myocardial insufficiency is often an early symptom of hyperthyroidism in the aged individual. In the elderly patient with hyperthyroidism the superimposed effects and requirements of hypermetabolism precipitate cardiac insufficiency manifested by frank congestive heart failure. Arrhythmias particularly auricular fibrillation are common in patients of the older age groups who harbor a solitary thyroid adenoma. When the

hormones that is consequent upon the reduced activity of the aging target organs

Hypophyseal insufficiency is most commonly observed in Sheehan's syndrome, which appears usually *post partum*, and hence is of little geriatric significance. Instances of pituitary insufficiency observed in the aged are usually secondary to destruction of the gland by metastases. Diabetes insipidus results occasionally from metastases of carcinoma of the mammary glands. This condition as well as insufficiency of the anterior lobe, should receive the same treatment in aging patients that it does in younger individuals. Tumors of the hypophysis, which are rare, also present no special problems in the aged as compared to the younger group. Craniopharyngioma, an important intracranial lesion affecting pituitary and hypothalamic function, is congenital in origin and makes its appearance earlier in life—usually in youth or middle age (Grollman, 1947).

### PINEAL GLAND

The function of the pineal gland is unknown, and it is generally considered to be a vestigial organ that has no functional significance in the human being. Involutionary changes in the gland appear during childhood, the epithelial cells being replaced by acervulus (brain sand) and corpora arenacea. The retention of what appears to be functional tissue, however, may sometimes be observed in aged individuals (Grollman, 1947). Tumors of the pineal gland occur in children and need not be discussed further here.

### THYROID GLAND

The possible role of the thyroid in the genesis of some of the manifestations of senescence has been a subject of speculation since many of the features of this state, such as dryness of the skin, reduced motor function, intolerance to cold, dystrophy of the hair and other ectodermal tissues, are also characteristic of hypothyroidism. On the basis of this similarity, the administration of thyroid has been recommended for aging patients. In a critical review of the subject, however, Carlson (1952) could find no convincing evidence that thyroid secretion decreases with advancing

this basis therapy with gonadal hormones has been advocated and is frequently used. A survey of the available data however shows that this relationship between osteoporosis and gonadal insufficiency has not been proved nor are the details of therapy established with any degree of certainty. There remains a distinct possibility that so called postmenopausal osteoporosis is merely a form of senile osteoporosis that happens to coincide with the menopause. The marked variation from patient to patient in the response to hormonal therapy and the frequent failure of patients to respond to this form of therapy suggest that improved nutrition and increased stress on the bones may be responsible for such beneficial effects as have been attributed to treatment with the androgens (Whedon 1956).

The 11 17 hydroxysteroids when injected or produced in excess endogenously (as in Cushing's disease) also give rise to osteoporosis. For this reason it has been suggested that a relative overproduction of these hormones as compared to the other hormones of the adrenal may be responsible for senile osteoporosis—but there is nothing to substantiate this theory. The relative immobility of the aging patient, the tendency to poor nutrition and a decreasing application of stress to the skeleton may combine with the inadequate formation of osteoid tissue resulting from the involutional changes of age to give rise to so called postmenopausal osteoporosis. Some patients show improvement in their calcium balance merely with the addition of calcium salts to the diet whereas others despite a strong positive nitrogen balance and without any hormone therapy show only a slightly positive calcium balance. There is thus a marked discrepancy between the nitrogen and the calcium balances during treatment.

As has been pointed out by Whedon (1956) who has critically examined the available data there is some question regarding the effectiveness of the smaller doses of hormones and of oral therapy. He recommends the use of a high protein diet including 15 Gm of calcium daily with an equivalent amount of phosphate 10,000 to 50,000 units of vitamin D 1.7 Gm of strontium triphosphate and at least 25 mg of testosterone propionate and 3,000 to 10,000 rat units of injectable estrogen daily in order to promote mineral storage.

effects of hyperthyroidism are superimposed on the arteriosclerotic changes of the aged individual, the results include changes in the cerebral activity, easy fatigability, and manifestations of failure of other organ systems.

As one would expect thyroid nodules are more often malignant in aged individuals than in the younger group, although such malignant growths of the thyroid are not uncommon in youth. In a group of 135 patients ranging in age from 4 to 16 years only 4 had metastases with evidence of cancer in the thyroid whereas 32 out of 147 patients in the group 47 to 82 years of age manifested this finding (Slom 1954).

### PARATHYROID GLANDS AND CALCIUM METABOLISM

Disorders of parathyroid glands are less rare than was formerly believed to be the case, and are being encountered with increasing frequency. Disturbances in the function of these organs either in hyperparathyroidism (a result usually of adenoma rarely of carcinoma) or in hypoparathyroidism give rise to long periods of morbidity and symptoms that may be erroneously attributed to other causes. In addition to its well known effects on the skeletal and renal excretory systems hyperparathyroidism may be associated with chronic dysfunction and ulceration of the gastrointestinal tract, chronic pancreatitis, anemia, or mental disturbances while hypoparathyroidism may give rise to disturbances of the neuromuscular system and psychiatric manifestations mistaken usually for psychoneurosis. The occurrence of these disturbances in parathyroid function should always be kept in mind for their recognition and correction will prevent a long period of debility and the ultimate development of irreversible and potentially fatal changes. The diagnosis and treatment of parathyroid disorders are the same in the aged as in younger patients.

The integrity of the skeletal system is maintained not only by the normal activity of the parathyroid glands but also by the manifold activities concerned in the regulation of normal calcium and phosphate metabolism. One of the striking disorders observed in the aging female is osteoporosis a condition that has been attributed to gonadal deficiency resulting from the aging process. On

this basis therapy with gonadal hormones has been advocated and is frequently used. A survey of the available data however shows that this relationship between osteoporosis and gonadal insufficiency has not been proved nor are the details of therapy established with any degree of certainty. There remains a distinct possibility that so called postmenopausal osteoporosis is merely a form of senile osteoporosis that happens to coincide with the menopause. The marked variation from patient to patient in the response to hormonal therapy and the frequent failure of patients to respond to this form of therapy suggest that improved nutrition and increased stress on the bones may be responsible for such beneficial effects as have been attributed to treatment with the androgens (Whedon 1956).

The 11 17 hydroxysteroids when injected or produced in excess endogenously (as in Cushing's disease) also give rise to osteoporosis. For this reason it has been suggested that a relative overproduction of these hormones as compared to the other hormones of the adrenal may be responsible for senile osteoporosis—but there is nothing to substantiate this theory. The relative immobility of the aging patient, the tendency to poor nutrition and a decreasing application of stress to the skeleton may combine with the inadequate formation of osteoid tissue resulting from the involutional changes of age to give rise to so called postmenopausal osteoporosis. Some patients show improvement in their calcium balance merely with the addition of calcium salts to the diet whereas others despite a strong positive nitrogen balance and without any hormone therapy show only a slightly positive calcium balance. There is thus a marked discrepancy between the nitrogen and the calcium balances during treatment.

As has been pointed out by Whedon (1956) who has critically examined the available data there is some question regarding the effectiveness of the smaller doses of hormones and of oral therapy. He recommends the use of a high protein diet including 15 Gm of calcium daily with an equivalent amount of phosphate 10 000 to 50 000 units of vitamin D 17 Gm of strontium triphosphate, and at least 25 mg of testosterone propionate and 3 000 to 10 000 cat units of injectable estrogen daily in order to promote mineral storage.

## ISLETS OF THE PANCREAS

Diabetes the most common of all endocrine disturbances is discussed in Chapter 21. Its increasing incidence in the aged is to be expected, in view of the increased tendency to vascular and other degenerative diseases of the pancreas with age, and the resultant deficiency in the production of insulin (Brauer 1956). As Jessop (1956) has shown, the reduced carbohydrate tolerance in persons past 50 is the result of age.

## ADRENAL GLAND

Disorders of the adrenal gland present no special characteristics in the aged that differ from those in younger individuals. The excretion of neutral nonketonic steroids which originate in the adrenal diminishes significantly with age as it does from chronic stress (Engle and Pincus 1956). This finding has suggested the existence of an adrenopause comparable to the menopause of the gonads but little evidence exists to support such an assumption. The level of the 17 hydroxycorticosteroids of the blood which is a better reflection of adrenal cortical function is not reduced materially with age.

## GONADS

Cessation of reproductive activity is one of the most striking effects of the aging process. In the female cessation of ovarian function is relatively abrupt producing a definite menopause although the ovary continues to secrete estrogen. In the male on the other hand the cessation of reproductive activity is more gradual and may not be complete until a very advanced age (Thewlis 1942). Since problems associated with the reproductive system are primarily of urologic and gynecologic interest they are considered elsewhere in this volume. There remain for consideration here only such general hormonal aspects of the subject as are not covered in other chapters.

Alterations in activity of the gonads that occur with age are reflected by changes in the rate of excretion of the steroids and gonadotrophins in the urine. Only some of these alterations in

steroid metabolism, however, are associated with changes in the reproductive system others are related to more general alterations in other organs and tissues. The urinary excretion of the neutral reducing precursors of certain steroids and of the estrogens changes slightly or not at all with increasing age. Other hormones are produced at a diminishing rate with increasing age. Some such as the neutral ketosteroid precursors in both sexes and the estrogens in women decline markedly, others at a less precipitous rate.

The pituitary reflects the alterations in gonadal function. With the cessation of ovarian function the urinary gonadotrophin increases reaching its peak about 15 to 19 years after the menopause, then it falls progressively until the end of life. In men the production of this hormone also increases slightly with age, but not to the extent seen in the female.

### Reproductive Activity in the Male

In contrast to the atrophy of the ovary and secondary sex organs in the female the testis undergoes a more gradual retrogression and spermatogenesis may persist until late in life. The pattern of hormonal excretion and testicular histology in aging has been studied by Segal, Nelson and Flocks (1957) who determined the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins, estrogens and 17 ketosteroids in more than 100 men ranging in age from 17 to 96 years. The patterns of hormonal excretion were correlated not only with the chronologic age but also with the morphologic appearance of the testes. These authors demonstrated that age per se cannot be used as a primary criterion for establishing normal values. Individuals even of the oldest age groups whose testes did not manifest the changes of the aging process continued to have hormone excretion levels within the normal range for young reproductive adults.

The average value of the 17 ketosteroid excretion gradually declined from 8.0 mg per gram of urinary creatinine for men 20 to 30 years of age to an average of 4.0 mg per gram of creatinine for those 60 to 90 years of age. Even among the octogenarians however some individuals had values approaching the 8 mg range. The age group averages for urinary estrogens and gonadotrophins also fit no particular pattern. With advancing age the gonadotrophins tended to deviate from the normal of 4 to 24 mouse units



## ISLETS OF THE PANCREAS

Diabetes, the most common of all endocrine disturbances is discussed in Chapter 21. Its increasing incidence in the aged is to be expected, in view of the increased tendency to vascular and other degenerative diseases of the pancreas with age, and the resultant deficiency in the production of insulin (Bauer 1956). As Jessop (1956) has shown the reduced carbohydrate tolerance in persons past 50 is the result of age.

## ADRENAL GLAND

Disorders of the adrenal gland present no special characteristics in the aged that differ from those in younger individuals. The excretion of neutral nonketonic steroids, which originate in the adrenal, diminishes significantly with age as it does from chronic stress (Engle and Pincus 1956). This finding has suggested the existence of an adrenopause comparable to the menopause of the gonads, but little evidence exists to support such an assumption. The level of the 17 hydroxycorticosteroids of the blood, which is a better reflection of adrenal cortical function, is not reduced materially with age.

## GONADS

Cessation of reproductive activity is one of the most striking effects of the aging process. In the female cessation of ovarian function is relatively abrupt, producing a definite menopause, although the ovary continues to secrete estrogen. In the male, on the other hand, the cessation of reproductive activity is more gradual and may not be complete until a very advanced age (Thewlis 1912). Since problems associated with the reproductive system are primarily of urologic and gynecologic interest, they are considered elsewhere in this volume. There remain for consideration here only such general hormonal aspects of the subject as are not covered in other chapters.

Alterations in activity of the gonads that occur with age are reflected by changes in the rate of excretion of the steroids and gonadotrophins in the urine. Only some of these alterations in

steroid metabolism however are associated with changes in the reproductive system others are related to more general alterations in other organs and tissues. The urinary excretion of the neutral reducing precursors of certain steroids and of the estrogens changes slightly or not at all with increasing age. Other hormones are produced at a diminishing rate with increasing age. Some such as the neutral ketosteroid precursors in both sexes and the estrogens in women decline markedly others at a less precipitous rate.

The pituitary reflects the alterations in gonadal function. With the cessation of ovarian function the urinary gonadotrophin increases reaching its peak about 15 to 19 years after the menopause, then it falls progressively until the end of life. In men the production of this hormone also increases slightly with age but not to the extent seen in the female.

### **Reproductive Activity in the Male**

In contrast to the atrophy of the ovary and secondary sex organs in the female the testis undergoes a more gradual retrogression, and spermatogenesis may persist until late in life. The pattern of hormonal excretion and testicular histology in aging has been studied by Segal, Nelson and Flocks (1957) who determined the urinary excretion of gonadotrophins, estrogens and 17 ketosteroids in more than 100 men ranging in age from 17 to 96 years. The patterns of hormonal excretion were correlated not only with the chronologic age but also with the morphologic appearance of the testes. These authors demonstrated that age per se cannot be used as a primary criterion for establishing normal values. Individuals even of the oldest age groups whose testes did not manifest the changes of the aging process continued to have hormone excretion levels within the normal range for young reproductive adults.

The average value of the 17 ketosteroid excretion gradually declined from 8.0 mg per gram of urinary creatinine for men 20 to 30 years of age to an average of 4.0 mg per gram of creatinine for those 80 to 90 years of age. Even among the octogenarians however some individuals had values approaching the 8 mg range. The age group averages for urinary estrogens and gonadotrophins also fit no particular pattern. With advancing age the gonadotrophins tended to deviate from the normal of 4 to 24 mouse units

to a range in excess of 48 mouse units, but even among the oldest patients the excretion of urinary gonadotrophins was within normal limits in more than half the cases. In all age groups there was a correlation between the histologic appearance of the testes and the urinary hormone patterns (Segal, *et al* 1957).

It must be concluded that the testicular activity, as determined both histologically and by the hormonal excretion pattern varies widely from one person to another, and is not related simply to chronologic age.

### **Therapeutic Use of Sex Hormones**

During senescence the endocrine glands share with practically all other organs and tissues anatomic changes characterized by hypoplasia, dehydration and fibrosis, and a metabolic disturbance characterized by loss of protein from the tissues (Thewlis 1942). A question of importance concerns the possible value of administering hormones—such as androgen, which has a protein anabolic effect—in an effort to overcome some of the deleterious effects of the aging process. The administration of estrogens in the climacteric, as described elsewhere in this volume, is well established and useful in those patients with symptoms characteristic of the so-called menopausal syndrome. On the other hand the use of either the male or the female sex hormone to treat indefinite symptoms of simple aging is to be deprecated. The use of estrogens in the female and of androgens in the male is accompanied by the potential danger of stimulating neoplasia. Prostatic carcinoma, which is common in a benign form in men over 50, may be activated by androgen therapy. Attempts have been made to synthesize compounds without the androgenic effect that will still have potent anabolic effects, but the value of these compounds in the treatment of aging has not been established.

The anabolic effect of certain androgens is manifested by their capacity to increase the retention of nitrogen (without an increase in the blood nitrogen levels) and of sodium potassium phosphorus and sulfur in the proportions present in protein. This seems to offer a means of restoring the tissues normally lost in the aging process. There is some question as to what extent this reversal of certain phases of tissue catabolism is desirable, and whether or not the

claims for improved vigor and well being in individuals so treated reflect the efficacy of the therapy or the result of suggestion and attention. The same questions may be raised concerning the use of hormonal combinations.

The use of the sex hormones as therapeutic measures in extra genital conditions has also attracted considerable attention. The estrogens have been used on the skin in attempts to overcome the normal atrophy observed with age. The use of androgens has been recommended for senile dermatoses and ano-genital pruritus in men. Better established is the use of estrogens to overcome the involutionary changes of the genital tract in women after the menopause. In senile vaginitis or vulvovaginitis pruritus vulvae or anal and perineal pruritus the administration of estrogen by causing regeneration of the atrophic epithelium and diminution of leukocytic infiltration may have an ameliorative effect (Grollman 1947).

The sex hormones have also been used to overcome certain effects of aging in the cardiovascular system. The use of these agents to prevent the transitory vasodilatation of the skin resulting from vasomotor instability in the hot flashes of the menopausal syndrome is well established. Their use in such peripheral vascular diseases as angina pectoris and hypertension however has been discarded as without value. In fact the undesirable effects of these agents on blood pressure and sodium retention would serve as a contraindication to their use.

The use of the sex hormones in a variety of other conditions encountered in the older patient is to be discouraged. In mental and emotional disturbances for example they are generally useless except in the presence of vasomotor instability during the menopause. On the basis that the administration of hormones overcomes genital atrophy they have been given for such urologic symptoms as frequency, urgency, disuria and incontinence. They have been tried for diabetes precipitated or aggravated by the menopause and for hyperthyroidism. Their value in all these conditions is doubtful (Grollman 1947).

Certain precautions and contraindications must be observed in the use of the sex hormones. The use of estrogens will often precipitate vaginal bleeding in women well past the menopause usually necessitating curettage to exclude the presence of malignancy. The use of androgens in women may produce masculinization with

hypertrophy of the clitoris, hirsutism, acne, and deepening of the voice, side effects that are too undesirable to warrant the use of these hormones in conditions where their efficacy is doubtful. In the male the use of testosterone and other androgens may stimulate prostatic carcinoma. In both sexes the male hormone may over stimulate the libido. Because of their property of increasing electrolyte and water retention the use of sex hormones is hazardous in cardiac patients with a tendency to congestive failure.

### REFERENCES

- 1 BAUER H. Carbohydrate metabolism in senility. *Experientia* Suppl 1 p 150 1956
- 2 CARLSON A J. in COWDERY E V. *Problems of Aging* (ed 3) Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins Company, 1952
- 3 LANGE E T. and PINCUS C. *Hormones and the Aging Process*. New York: Academic Press Inc. 1956
- 4 CROLLMAN A. *Essentials of Endocrinology* (ed 2) Philadelphia: J B Lippincott Company, 1947
- 5 JESSOP W J E. The effect of aging on carbohydrate metabolism. *Experientia* Suppl 4 p 145 1956
- 6 RICE C O. Histologic structure of normal thyroid gland: variations and their significance in interpretation of pathologic conditions of thyroid gland. *Arch Surg* 36:96 1938
- 7 SELIGER S J, NELSON W O. and FLOCKS R H. Patterns of hormonal excretion and testicular histology in ageing. *Proc Endocrinological Soc* 1957
- 8 SLOAN L W. Of the origin, characteristics and behavior of thyroid cancer. *Trans Am Goutier Assoc* 1951 p 150
- 9 STARR P. The Thyroid. in CROLLMAN A. *Clinical Physiology: The Functional Pathology of Disease*. New York: McGraw Hill Book Co. 1957
- 10 THURWELL M W. *The Care of the Aged (Geriatrics)* (ed 1). St. Louis: C V Mosby Company, 1942
- 11 WHITTON C D. "Steroid Hormones in Osteoporosis" in LANGE E T. and PINCUS C. *Hormones and the Aging Process*. New York: Academic Press Inc. 1956
- 12 WHANNEY D I, NEWSHAM I G S. and HOFFMAN M M. The influence of senescence on thyroid function: functional changes evaluated with I<sup>131</sup>. *Endocrinology* 61:327 1957

## CHAPTER 21

# Metabolic Diseases

ERNEST YOUNT

### DIABETES MELLITUS

Diabetes mellitus has become one of our most important geriatric problems. The onset of the disease occurs characteristically in middle life, occasionally in the seventies and rarely in the eighties. Because of the increasing longevity of diabetic patients, however—the result of improvements in therapy and in the management of complications—the incidence of diabetes is highest in the geriatric age group. Prior to the discovery of insulin, the life expectancy of patients with diabetes was 5 years; prior to antibiotic therapy it was 10 years; now it is approximately 20 years.

**DIAGNOSIS** More than 1 per cent of the population in this country are known diabetics, and probably an equal number of individuals have undiagnosed diabetes. In elderly patients, particularly, it is easy to overlook the disease since the dramatic symptoms of thirst, weight loss, and polyuria may be missing. Other clinical clues that may lead to the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus in older patients include weakness, increasing fatigability, pruritus vulvae, cataracts, and vascular disease of the lower extremities. Any elderly patient with a chronic ulcer on the leg or foot should be carefully examined for diabetes.

Routine urine examinations will disclose frank diabetes, but may miss borderline cases. Conversely, certain medications frequently taken by elderly patients, including salicylates and chloral hydrate, may cause false positive reactions when the urine is tested for glycosuria.

In attempting to establish a diagnosis of diabetes, one must be

hypertrophy of the clitoris, hirsutism, acne, and deepening of the voice, side effects that are too undesirable to warrant the use of these hormones in conditions where their efficacy is doubtful. In the male the use of testosterone and other androgens may stimulate prostatic carcinoma. In both sexes the male hormone may over stimulate the libido. Because of their property of increasing electrolyte and water retention the use of sex hormones is hazardous in cardiac patients with a tendency to congestive failure.

### REFERENCES

- 1 BAUER H. Carbohydrate metabolism in senility. *Experientia* Suppl. 4 p 150 1956
- 2 CARLSON A J in COWDERY E V *Problems of Ageing* (ed. 3) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1952
- 3 ENGLE E T and PINCUS G *Hormones and the Aging Process* New York, Academic Press Inc 1956
- 4 GROLLMAN A *Essentials of Endocrinology* (ed. 2) Philadelphia J B Lippincott Company 1947
- 5 JESSOP W J E. The effect of aging on carbohydrate metabolism. *Experientia* Suppl. 4 p 145 1956
- 6 RICE C O. Histologic structure of normal thyroid gland variations and their significance in interpretation of pathologic conditions of thyroid gland. *Arch Surg* 36:96 1938
- 7 SEGAL S J, NELSON W O and FLOCKS R H. Patterns of hormonal excretion and testicular histology in ageing. *Proc Endocrinological Soc* 1957
- 8 SLOAN L W. Of the origin characteristics and behavior of thyroid cancer. *Trans Am Gaster Assoc* 1954 p 450
- 9 STARR, P. "The Thyroid," in GROLLMAN A. *Clinical Physiology The Functional Pathology of Disease* New York, McGraw Hill Book Co 1957
- 10 THEWLIS M W. *The Care of the Aged (Geriatrics)* (ed. 4) St. Louis C V Mosby Company 1942
- 11 WHEDON G D. "Steroid Hormones in Osteoporosis" in ENGLE E T and PINCUS G. *Hormones and the Aging Process* New York, Academic Press Inc 1956
- 12 WILANSKY D L, NEWSHAM L G S and HOFFMAN M M. The influence of senescence on thyroid function functional changes evaluated with I<sup>131</sup>. *Endocrinology* 61:327 1957

this reason the daily diet should include at least 0.5 Gm of protein per pound of ideal body weight. The remainder of the calories may be distributed by allowing 40 to 50 per cent for carbohydrates and 50 to 60 per cent for fats. Any further reduction in the carbohydrate intake might lead to ketosis. Vitamins should be provided, and the patient should be encouraged to drink milk in order to prevent decalcification. The use of *Mcal Planning with Exchange Lists*<sup>1</sup> is strongly recommended.

TABLE 21.1 CALCULATION OF A DIABETIC DIET

---

Actual weight	180 lbs	Ideal weight	160 lbs
Total calories per day	$150 \times 10 = 1500$		
Protein	$0.5 \times 150 = 75$ Gm		
	$75 \times 4$ (calories/Gm) = 300 calories		
Carbohydrate and fat	$1500 - 300 = 1200$ calories		
Carbohydrate			
	$1200 \times 40\% = 480$ calories		
	$480 \div 4$ (calories/Gm) = 120 Gm of carbohydrate		
Fat			
	$1200 \times 60\% = 720$ calories		
	$720 \div 9$ (calories/Gm) = 80 Gm of fat		

---

After 10 to 20 days on such a diet the patient's nutritional and diabetic status should be progressing satisfactorily. If the glycosuria has been corrected it is probable that insulin will not be required; however, it is well to remember that many elderly diabetic patients have a high renal threshold for sugar. The Clinitest method for testing the urine is both simple and accurate, and if individually sealed tablets are obtained deterioration does not occur.

If dietary measures alone are not sufficient and insulin or an oral antidiabetic preparation is to be used, the diet may be calculated in the same manner shown in Table 21.1 except that the calories remaining after the protein requirement has been provided should be equally divided between carbohydrates and fat. Provision should be made for a bedtime snack to prevent nocturnal insulin reactions.

The serious effects of insulin reactions upon the cardiovascular system of geriatric patients should be emphasized. Cerebral vascular accidents may result from hypoglycemic shock, and angina pectoris may become more severe. In patients with known angina pectoris, insulin therapy should be employed with extreme caution.



familiar with the method employed by the laboratory to determine the blood sugar level. Certain laboratories utilize the determination of nonfermentable reducing substances, which have a normal range of 80–120 mg per 100 cc of blood while others employ true methods (Nelson-Somogyi), in which the normal range is 60 to 80 mg of glucose per 100 cc.

A fasting blood specimen is less likely to indicate the presence of mild diabetes than a specimen obtained one to two hours after eating. If a single blood sugar determination gives equivocal results a glucose tolerance test should be performed after the patient has been on a diet adequate in carbohydrates for at least two days. Most practitioners are familiar with the oral test, in which the significant determinations are those on the fasting specimen and on the sample obtained three hours after the ingestion of glucose. In the absence of diabetes the blood sugar level should be normal two to three hours after the stimulating dose of carbohydrate has been given.

**TREATMENT** The aims of diabetic management are to provide comfort, maintain normal nutrition and prevent complications of the disease. Whether one attempts to control the disease rigidly or loosely is dependent upon his concept concerning the relationship of diabetic complications to glycosuria and hyperglycemia. The following suggestions for management represent a middle of the road compromise that should adequately fulfill the aims of treatment.

In many elderly diabetics, particularly if they are obese, dietary regulation alone may adequately control the disease. Asymptomatic patients who are not overweight, who are maintaining good nutrition and whose postprandial blood sugars do not exceed 180 mg per 100 cc may be managed with no alteration of the diet except the substitution of fruit for the usual desserts.

The majority of patients, however, will need the discipline of a diet that may be easily calculated (Table 21-1). Ten calories per pound of body weight provide the basal caloric requirements and the total caloric intake is based on the *ideal* weight\*. For obese patients a 25 per cent reduction in calories may be necessary to bring the weight within normal limits. An adequate protein intake is extremely important for the maintenance of good health, and for

\* Ideal body weights for patients of different heights and builds are shown in Table 21-2 on page 440.

- 2 Avoid injuries
- 3 Wear well fitting shoes
- 4 Cut the toenails straight across with scissors
- 5 Report fungus infections promptly to your doctor
- 6 Seek medical help for the management of calluses and corns

Despite the occlusive nature of vascular impairment the use of vasodilating agents (nicotinic acid Iludal Priscoline Arlidin) may be extremely helpful. Caution is necessary if thiamine chloride is being prescribed simultaneously since this may potentiate the effect of the vasodilating drugs and produce hypotensive reactions. Mild activity is recommended and the patient is given instructions regarding Buerger's exercises. In carefully selected cases sympathectomy may relieve pain especially the pain of claudication.

In the presence of inflammation with exudation it is best to determine the causative organisms and their sensitivities to specific antibiotics. If these laboratory procedures are not feasible a broad spectrum antibiotic ointment may be used. Elevation of the leg and the application of saline compresses may be most beneficial.

If gangrene or an extensive infection especially one associated with osteomyelitis develops and does not respond to conservative therapy surgery may become necessary. Amputation of a toe may be sufficient for circumscribed lesions. For more extensive involvement the transmetatarsal approach has often been employed in recent years to obviate higher amputations. If a higher approach is necessary consideration should be given to amputation below the knee. Patients who have had this operation are able to adapt to a prosthesis more successfully than patients whose legs have been amputated at the thigh.

The neurologic complications of diabetes are most troublesome in geriatric patients and are often attributed erroneously to disturbances in the circulation. The differential diagnosis can usually be made by a careful history and physical examination. The onset of neurologic difficulties is usually gradual and associated with weight loss and poor control of the diabetes. The symptoms described variously as burning numbness tingling and shooting pains are exaggerated at night and are intensified by cold. Mild neuropathies are usually not rapidly progressive and respond well when the diabetes is brought under control and the patient is given intramuscu-

and *gradual* control should be the goal. Some elderly diabetics feel better with postprandial blood sugars closer to 180 than 120 mg per 100 cc. In such patients no strenuous effort should be made to keep the blood sugar strictly within normal limits.

In the overwhelming majority of diabetics requiring insulin the disease can be controlled with one injection of NPH or Lente insulin daily. Ten units of either is usually sufficient for an initial dose and the amount can be increased by 5 units every 4 days until the desired control is achieved. The patient should be informed that the insulin requirement may be increased by concurrent illness and decreased by the ingestion of aspirin.

Practical points that should be called to the patient's attention are the use of small caliber (No. 26 or 27) needles of stainless steel, and such aids as alcohol receptacles to save the trouble of boiling syringes and needles. Magnifying glasses may be attached to the syringes to aid those patients with poor visual acuity. If the patient's eyesight is extremely impaired and he lives alone, 4 or 5 syringes may be filled by relatives or friends and kept in the refrigerator until needed.

The sulfonylureas have been employed in this country since 1955 for the management of diabetes. It appears that mild diabetes mellitus that has its onset in adult life may be adequately controlled by these oral preparations, with little risk of toxic reactions. Wide clinical adoption of these agents, however, should await further studies.

**COMPLICATIONS** Although diabetes in the elderly patient produces only mild symptoms and is easy to control, the disease may cause extensive damage. Approximately 50 per cent of the geriatric diabetic patients have arteriosclerotic heart disease, 50 per cent have occlusive peripheral vascular disease, 50 per cent, hypertension, and 25 per cent, retinitis. Renal disease is also common but more difficult to assess.

Because of the disabling complications associated with circulatory disturbances in the legs and feet, the patient should be carefully instructed regarding foot care, as follows:

1. Wash the feet with warm water and soap daily. Dry them without rubbing (giving special attention to the skin between the toes) and massage them with cacao butter.

- 2 Avoid injuries
- 3 Wear well fitting shoes
- 4 Cut the toenails straight across with scissors
- 5 Report fungus infections promptly to your doctor
- 6 Seek medical help for the management of calluses and corns

Despite the occlusive nature of vascular impairment the use of vasodilating agents (nicotinic acid Ildar Priscoline Arlidin) may be extremely helpful. Caution is necessary if thiamine chloride is being prescribed simultaneously since this may potentiate the effect of the vasodilating drugs and produce hypotensive reactions. Mild activity is recommended and the patient is given instructions regarding Buerger's exercises. In carefully selected cases sympathectomy may relieve pain especially the pain of claudication.

In the presence of inflammation with exudation it is best to determine the causative organisms and their sensitivities to specific antibiotics. If these laboratory procedures are not feasible a broad spectrum antibiotic ointment may be used. Elevation of the leg and the application of saline compresses may be most beneficial.

If gangrene or an extensive infection especially one associated with osteomyelitis develops and does not respond to conservative therapy surgery may become necessary. Amputation of a toe may be sufficient for circumscribed lesions. For more extensive involvement the transmetatarsal approach has often been employed in recent years to obviate higher amputations. If a higher approach is necessary consideration should be given to amputation below the knee. Patients who have had this operation are able to adapt to a prosthesis more successfully than patients whose legs have been amputated at the thigh.

The neurologic complications of diabetes are most troublesome in geriatric patients and are often attributed erroneously to disturbances in the circulation. The differential diagnosis can usually be made by a careful history and physical examination. The onset of neurologic difficulties is usually gradual and associated with weight loss and poor control of the diabetes. The symptoms described variously as burning numbness tingling and shooting pains are exaggerated at night and are intensified by cold. Mild neuropathies are usually not rapidly progressive and respond well when the diabetes is brought under control and the patient is given intramuscu-

lar injections of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, 30  $\mu$ g daily for one week and weekly thereafter. More severe neurologic changes may produce nocturnal diarrhea, obstipation, impotence, bladder disturbances, and syncope.

In view of the serious nature of the associated vascular complications, it is fortunate that diabetic coma is an unusual occurrence in geriatric practice. The treatment is the same as in the younger patient.

## OBESITY

The belief of both doctors and laymen that obesity is deleterious to health is well supported by life insurance statistics. For persons who are 5 to 14 per cent overweight the mortality rate is 22 per cent above normal, for those 15 to 24 per cent overweight, 44 per cent above normal, and for those 25 per cent or more overweight 74 per cent. Obesity is a hazard to the aged as well as the young. In the age group from 57 to 62 years the actual death rate expressed as a percentage of the expected death rate is 112 per cent for those 20 to 40 pounds overweight and 130 per cent for those 50 to 80 pounds overweight.

Obesity not only predisposes to the development of certain diseases but also increases their severity, the likelihood of complications, and the seriousness of symptoms. Obese persons are particularly vulnerable to the cardiovascular renal diseases such as coronary thrombosis, cerebral hemorrhage, heart failure, and renal insufficiency. Other diseases adversely influenced by obesity include diabetes mellitus, hypertension, cirrhosis, degenerative arthritis, pulmonary emphysema, and gallbladder disease. Surgical procedures ordinarily tolerated well by the geriatric patient become hazardous if gross obesity exists.

In spite of arguments to the contrary, a person who is becoming obese is eating more calories than he needs for the maintenance of energy and for the growth and repair of tissues. As a corollary, if he consumes fewer calories than he needs for these processes, weight loss must occur. It has been demonstrated in the experimental animal that food drive is under the influence of the hypothalamus and that stimulation of this area results in increased food intake, while its destruction causes rejection of food. There is no scientific basis, however, for assuming that any aberration of food

absorption transport or metabolism is responsible for obesity in human beings. Endocrine disturbances are vastly overrated as a cause of obesity in the geriatric patient. Thyroid deficiency is a relatively unimportant etiologic factor and Cushing's disease being characterized by the peculiar excess of fat deposition in the face, cervical hump and abdomen should not be confused with simple exogenous obesity.

Limitation of caloric intake is the only way to correct obesity. Whether reduction should be drastic or gradual depends upon the severity of symptoms and the patient's attitude. Some patients receive great encouragement if they can note quick results while others become depressed and irritable if drastic dietary measures are instituted. It should be borne in mind that an elderly inactive person may not lose weight on a 1000 calorie diet, and that a diet containing only 600 to 800 calories may be necessary. Such a diet should be high in protein since there is suggestive evidence that the appetite is determined largely by the protein content of the diet and that less hunger is experienced if the intake of this constituent is adequate. Any diet provided should allow at least one egg, one glass of skim milk, one portion of fruit and one portion of lean meat every day. A vitamin supplement is necessary to insure an adequate intake and there is no necessity for restricting salt or water. It is not unusual to find that obese patients eat a small breakfast and lunch but a large dinner. A reduction diet is often enhanced by a more normal distribution of food.

Once the ideal weight has been established the patient should be allowed to eat anything he desires after the basic requirements are met provided he maintains his weight at the ideal level (Table 21-2). As a rule fats, concentrated carbohydrates and mealy vegetables will have to be used sparingly.

As the patient begins to lose weight his co-operation is usually encouraged by gratifying relief from symptoms such as breathlessness, eructations and distention, headaches and dizziness, insomnia, joint pains (especially in the weight bearing joints) and intertriginous lesions. Fears that weight reduction by removing fat support from varicose veins or hernial sacs would prove detrimental have been shown to be unfounded and constipation often a troublesome feature of reduction diets for elderly patients can be corrected by the use of bulk laxatives.

TABLE 21-2 IDEAL WEIGHTS\*

Height (with shoes on)		Men Weight (pounds) ordinarily dressed			Height (with shoes on)		Women Weight (pounds) ordinarily dressed		
		Small frame	Medium frame	Large frame			Small frame	Medium frame	Large frame
1 inch heels					2 inch heels				
Feet	Inches				Feet	Inches			
5	2	116-125	124-133	131-142	4	11	104-111	110-118	117-124
5	3	119-128	127-136	133-144	5	0	105-113	112-120	119-129
5	4	122-132	130-140	137-149	5	1	107-115	114-122	121-131
5	5	126-136	134-144	141-153	5	2	110-118	117-125	124-135
5	6	129-139	137-147	145-157	5	3	113-121	120-128	127-138
5	7	133-143	141-151	149-162	5	4	116-125	124-132	131-141
5	8	136-147	145-156	153-166	5	5	119-128	127-135	133-145
5	9	140-151	149-160	157-170	5	6	123-132	130-140	138-150
5	10	144-155	153-164	161-175	5	7	126-136	134-144	142-154
5	11	148-159	157-168	165-180	5	8	129-139	137-147	145-158
6	0	152-164	161-173	169-185	5	9	133-143	141-151	149-162
6	1	157-169	166-178	174-190	5	10	136-147	145-155	153-166
6	2	163-175	171-184	179-196	5	11	139-150	148-158	156-169
6	3	168-180	176-189	184-202					

\* These figures are based on numerous medicosactuarial studies of hundreds of thousands of insured men and women and are reproduced by courtesy of the Metropolitan Life Insurance Company from its pamphlet *How to Control Your Weight* published in 1958

The use of appetite depressing drugs and thyroid substance in conjunction with a reducing diet has proved no more satisfactory than diet alone and their use suggests to the patient that he can lose weight by methods other than a reduction in his food intake.

Certain patients whose motivation is not strong enough or whose mental adjustment is inadequate are made worse by a reducing program. In such cases the attempt at dieting should be discontinued. The vast majority of patients will do well, provided their cases are individualized and the physician is willing to provide the necessary encouragement and reassurance and to discuss thoroughly underlying conflicts besetting the compulsive eater.

## GOUT

Gout is a hereditary constitutional disease occurring predominantly in males. Although the pre-eminent clinical features, arthritis, tophi, renal involvement, and cardiovascular manifestations generally appear in middle life, the metabolic derangement has

usually existed for years prior to this time. Since the life span of gouty patients is shortened by only 5 years, the disease is important in geriatric practice and is frequently seen by physicians who maintain a constant awareness of the clinical picture.

**Diagnosis** The pathologic manifestations of gout are dependent upon the deposition of sodium urate in body tissues, with resultant inflammatory and degenerative changes. There is a tendency for urates to be deposited in avascular areas such as the cartilaginous structures of the joints, ears, and nose, with little subsequent inflammatory reaction. When deposits occur in soft tissues, severe inflammation usually develops. Deposition of urate in the joints is responsible for the most common clinical manifestation of the disease, and 50 per cent of gouty patients at one time or another will present themselves with involvement of the great toe. Other joints affected in order of frequency are the feet, ankles, hands, and wrists. The knees, hips, shoulders, and elbows are less commonly involved, and it is unusual to observe deposits in the articulations of the spine and jaw.

Urate deposits frequently occur in the kidney and provoke inflammatory changes described as gouty or interstitial nephritis. A history of renal calculi is obtained in 10 to 20 per cent of the cases, and it is of interest that gouty patients have a higher than normal incidence of opaque calcium stones as well as of nonopaque uric acid stones. Vascular sclerosis is often noted in gouty patients, and generalized vascular disease with extensive involvement of the coronary and cerebral arteries and degenerative changes in the aorta is fairly common.

Hyperuricemia is found in more than 90 per cent of untreated gouty patients. Whether this condition is due to overproduction or decreased destruction of uric acid remains a debatable issue; however, there is little evidence to suggest that a decreased renal excretion of urates is a major factor. The upper limit of normal for serum uric acid is 6.5 mg per 100 cc in males and 5.5 mg in females. If the patients have received uricosuric agents such as salicylates or probenecid, the levels of uric acid in the serum will be decreased, and the test may prove misleading.

In the first or subclinical phase of the disease, seldom encountered in geriatric practice, the sole finding is an elevated blood uric acid. The acute arthritic phase characteristically develops abruptly,



in a patient who has had no previous signs of joint disease and the pain may be mild to excruciating. In 1882 a physician named Morris Longstreth wrote "Screw up the vise as tightly as possible and you have rheumatism. Give it another turn and that is gout." The acute episodes are usually monoarticular, and may be associated with fever, leukocytosis, and elevation of the sedimentation rate. Without treatment the episode usually subsides within a few days, often leaving no residual manifestations whatsoever.

These acute episodes often follow trauma, surgery, or alcoholic indiscretion. Certain therapeutic measures commonly used for elderly patients have also been considered as provocative agents. These include liver extract, mercurial diuretics, testosterone propionate, and thiamine chloride. The exact pathogenesis of the acute episode is poorly understood, but does not seem to be related to either hyperuricemia or urate deposition per se.

In contrast to the acute phase, the chronic stage of gout is attributable to urate deposits in the tissues of the joints. This stage is commonly observed in geriatric practice, and is described as chronic gouty arthritis. As a rule tophaceous deposits and deformities are present. Acute episodes are often polyarticular and there is a tendency to incomplete recovery. Persistent albuminuria, casts, and uremia may indicate the existence of gouty nephritis. In this chronic phase, if the tophaceous deposits are not a prominent feature, the disease may be confused with traumatic arthritis, cellulitis, or bursitis.

**TREATMENT** The treatment of gouty arthritis varies with the nature of the attack and the stage of the disease. Acute episodes can often be prevented or aborted. Colchicine has been used in the treatment of gout for 1400 years and is extremely effective when given orally in doses of 0.6 mg every hour until nausea, vomiting, or diarrhea develops. After the acute episode has subsided 0.6 mg of colchicine may be given twice a day for one week. If oral therapy cannot be tolerated, the intravenous administration of 2 mg of colchicine in 20 cc of normal saline is usually effective and can be repeated once in 6 hours if necessary.

Phenylbutazone (Butazolidin) may terminate an acute attack within 24 hours. An effective oral dosage schedule consists of an initial dose of 400 mg followed in 4 hours by 100 mg every hour.

for 4 doses. This method of administration produces few side effects or toxic symptoms.

Less desirable in elderly patients but suitable for refractory cases is the intramuscular injection of 100 mg of aqueous corticotropin followed by smaller doses (60 to 80 mg) daily for 4 days. Cortisone and related steroid preparations are not too effective.

The efficacy of the above drugs in the management of gout obviates the necessity of administering such a potentially hazardous agent as cinchophen.

Chronic gouty arthritis may be adequately treated by the administration of uricosuric agents such as probenecid (Benemid) 0.5 Gm one to four times daily. This drug inhibits the tubular reabsorption of urates and consequently reduces urate deposits in the tissues. These tophaceous deposits may decrease in size or disappear entirely. Acute episodes of joint pain may disappear or become less frequent although an acute flare up of gout immediately following the institution of probenecid therapy is not unusual. This may be prevented by the simultaneous administration of colchicine 0.5 mg twice a day for an indefinite period. In the presence of severe renal disease full benefit may not be obtained from uricosuric agents. Salicylates have a uricosuric effect probably less pronounced than that of probenecid since the two agents are antagonistic it is not desirable to use them simultaneously.

Patients who have a tendency to form uric acid stones will be benefited by the administration of 8 Gm of sodium citrate daily.

Since it has been shown that urates can be synthesized from carbohydrates, fats and purine free proteins as well as from purines, there has been little enthusiasm for rigid dietary measures in the treatment of gout. The important considerations are a well balanced diet and because gout frequently leads to circulatory complications the rigid prevention or control of obesity. If purine restriction is desired this may be easily accomplished by the avoidance of sweetbreads, anchovies, sardines, liver, kidney and brains.

Elderly gouty patients should be encouraged to have their male offspring obtain a uric acid determination. The detection of hyperuricemia at an early age and subsequent treatment with a uricosuric agent may prevent the development of manifestations of gout in the joints and blood vessels.

Lazy Tom with jacket blue  
 Stole his father's gouty shoe  
 The worst of harm that Dan can wish him  
 Is that his gouty shoe may fit him

## HYPOGLYCEMIA

Spontaneous hypoglycemia, a condition in which the depression of the blood sugar is sufficient to produce symptoms referable to the autonomic and central nervous systems, presents no special characteristics in the aged. While this condition may result from adrenal insufficiency, pituitary hypofunction, severe congestive heart failure, diffuse liver disease, or islet cell tumors of the pancreas, it occurs most often without demonstrable cause. The primary diagnostic problem lies in differentiating between hypoglycemia that is a manifestation of hyperinsulinism resulting from an islet cell tumor and functional hypoglycemia, in which no definite pathologic factor can be demonstrated.

The episodes of hypoglycemia may last from minutes to hours. The symptoms differ from patient to patient, and vary in severity in the same patient. The vegetative disturbances include tachycardia, pallor, sweating, nausea, hunger, and syncope. Central nervous manifestations may consist of ocular palsies, spasticity, muscle weakness, and convulsive seizures. Mental aberrations are not unusual.

Islet cell adenomas of the pancreas have been reported in patients in their eighties as well as in infants. Islet cell carcinomas are fortunately much less common, though I have seen one such case in a 79-year-old woman. Attacks resulting from islet cell tumors, whether benign or malignant, usually occur during the fasting state, and the onset of seizures or coma during the early morning hours is common. In some cases fasting must be continued for 48 hours to provoke an attack. A blood sugar obtained during or immediately following the episode will be less than 50 mg per 100 cc. The attack should be relieved promptly by the administration of food or intravenous glucose. In the presence of this diagnostic triad—that is, attacks (1) precipitated by fasting, (2) associated with a blood sugar of less than 50 mg per 100 cc, and (3) im-

mediately responding to carbohydrate administration—surgical exploration is justified

The symptoms of functional hypoglycemia are less severe than those resulting from insulin producing pancreatic tumors. Attacks do not occur during prolonged fasting but are apt to develop just before meals. A glucose tolerance test, which is of no value in diagnosing true hyperinsulinism may be normal flat or diabetic in character during the first 2 hours but shows a characteristic drop below 50 mg per 100 cc 3 to 5 hours after the administration of glucose. Treatment consists in prescribing a high protein low carbohydrate diet to avoid the stimulating effect of carbohydrates. The patient should be instructed to carry an emergency ration with him to ward off impending episodes of hypoglycemia.

Functional hypoglycemia is often associated with psychoneurotic symptoms. Whether it is a cause or an effect is a debatable question but at least psychotherapy is often helpful in addition to dietary measures.

Lazy Tom with jacket blue  
 Stole his father's gouty shoe  
 The worst of harm that Dan can wish him  
 Is that his gouty shoe may fit him

## HYPOGLYCEMIA

Spontaneous hypoglycemia, a condition in which the depression of the blood sugar is sufficient to produce symptoms referable to the autonomic and central nervous systems, presents no special characteristics in the aged. While this condition may result from adrenal insufficiency, pituitary hypofunction, severe congestive heart failure, diffuse liver disease or islet cell tumors of the pancreas, it occurs most often without demonstrable cause. The primary diagnostic problem lies in differentiating between hypoglycemia that is a manifestation of hyperinsulinism resulting from an islet cell tumor and functional hypoglycemia, in which no definite pathologic factor can be demonstrated.

The episodes of hypoglycemia may last from minutes to hours. The symptoms differ from patient to patient, and vary in severity in the same patient. The vegetative disturbances include tachycardia, pallor, sweating, nausea, hunger, and syncope. Central nervous manifestations may consist of ocular palsies, spasticity, muscle weakness, and convulsive seizures. Mental aberrations are not unusual.

Islet cell adenomas of the pancreas have been reported in patients in their eighties as well as in infants. Islet cell carcinomas are fortunately much less common, though I have seen one such case in a 79 year old woman. Attacks resulting from islet cell tumors, whether benign or malignant, usually occur during the fasting state, and the onset of seizures or coma during the early morning hours is common. In some cases fasting must be continued for 48 hours to provoke an attack. A blood sugar obtained during or immediately following the episode will be less than 50 mg per 100 cc. The attack should be relieved promptly by the administration of food or intravenous glucose. In the presence of this diagnostic triad—that is, attacks (1) precipitated by fasting (2) associated with a blood sugar of less than 50 mg per 100 cc and (3) im-

not cause disability until fairly well established and the need for separating degenerative states from acute illness or neoplastic change. Laboratory and radiologic studies may often make it possible to recognize and treat basic illness instead of offering only confused symptomatic treatment of vague complaints.

## HEMATOLOGIC FINDINGS IN GERIATRIC PATIENTS

In order to determine the significance of hematologic findings in older individuals a series of patients beyond the age of 60 years have been studied with the following questions in mind (1) How frequently are abnormal hematologic findings encountered? (2) What are the most common causes of the abnormalities?

The records of all patients 60 years old or more who were admitted to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital from January 1, 1936 through June 30, 1937 were collected for a survey of the hematologic data. All charts with one or more abnormal hematologic determinations were isolated for more intensive study. Of the total of 2749 records examined only 639 (23.2 per cent) displayed hematologic findings outside the following normal limits:

- Hemoglobin 11.5 to 17 Gm per 100 cc
- Red blood cells 3,800,000 to 5,800,000 per cubic millimeter
- White blood cells 4,000 to 15,000 per cubic millimeter
- Prothrombin time Greater than 13.8 seconds

Because the number of records showing the erythrocyte count and prothrombin time was too small to be statistically significant only the 621 cases with abnormal hemoglobin levels or leukocyte counts were included in the final evaluation of results (Table 22.1). At least one determination of the hemoglobin content and one white blood cell count were performed on every patient included in the study.

The abnormality most commonly found was a decreased hemoglobin. In 402 of the 621 patients the level was below 11.5 Gm per 100 cc. Only 28 patients (4.5 per cent) had hemoglobin values above 17 Gm. Fifty-nine patients (9.5 per cent) had both anemia and abnormal numbers of leukocytes.

From this study it would appear that three fourths of hospitalized patients over 60 years of age have normal hemoglobins and

In this hospital 15.4 Gm = 100 per cent.

## CHAPTER 22

# Contributions of Hematology to Diagnosis and Treatment in Geriatrics

LUCILE W HUTAFF

In an appraisal of the physical status of the older patient, the medical history loses some of its value. The past experience of an individual 60 years old is broad and varied. Work, childbearing, infectious diseases, obesity, and dietary patterns in addition to the stress of emotional, financial, and social vicissitudes have left their mark. The patient's memory constitutes the only means of recapturing these experiences, and frequently all that are recalled are the illnesses that have impressed themselves because of pain or severe inconvenience, or have resulted in loss of earning power. The physical state of the elderly patient, furthermore, is frequently too precarious to permit the reconstruction of an orderly picture of the illness that brings him to the physician, and members of the family are often unable to supply information helpful in determining the rate of decline from health or the duration of the illness. All too often the early signs and symptoms of a serious disorder have been dismissed by the patient or his relatives as just old age.

For these reasons the physical examination assumes greater significance in elderly patients, and the physician needs all his skill in inspection, palpation, percussion, and auscultation as well as patience and persistence to obtain the needed information. By the same token, well-chosen laboratory procedures are of greater import in geriatric practice, especially when one is aware of the common degenerative diseases, the fact that certain disorders may

not cause disability until fairly well established and the need for separating degenerative states from acute illness or neoplastic change. Laboratory and radiologic studies may often make it possible to recognize and treat basic illness instead of offering only confused symptomatic treatment of vague complaints.

## HEMATOLOGIC FINDINGS IN GERIATRIC PATIENTS

In order to determine the significance of hematologic findings in older individuals a series of patients beyond the age of 60 years have been studied with the following questions in mind: (1) How frequently are abnormal hematologic findings encountered? (2) What are the most common causes of the abnormalities?

The records of all patients 60 years old or more who were admitted to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital from January 1, 1956 through June 30, 1957 were collected for a survey of the hematologic data. All charts with one or more abnormal hematologic determinations were isolated for more intensive study. Of the total of 2749 records examined, only 639 (23.2 per cent) displayed hematologic findings outside the following normal limits:

Hemoglobin 11.5 to 17 Gm per 100 cc \*  
 Red blood cells 3,800,000 to 5,800,000 per cubic millimeter  
 White blood cells 4,000 to 15,000 per cubic millimeter  
 Prothrombin time Greater than 13.8 seconds

Because the number of records showing the erythrocyte count and prothrombin time was too small to be statistically significant, only the 621 cases with abnormal hemoglobin levels or leukocyte counts were included in the final evaluation of results (Table 22.1). At least one determination of the hemoglobin content and one white blood cell count were performed on every patient included in the study.

The abnormality most commonly found was a decreased hemoglobin. In 402 of the 621 patients the level was below 11.5 Gm per 100 cc. Only 28 patients (4.5 per cent) had hemoglobin values above 17 Gm. Fifty-nine patients (9.5 per cent) had both anemia and abnormal numbers of leukocytes.

From this study, it would appear that three fourths of hospitalized patients over 60 years of age have normal hemoglobins and

In this hospital 15.4 Gm = 100 per cent.



leukocyte counts By carrying out further studies in the remaining 25 per cent of the patients it should be possible in many cases to differentiate between temporary or physiologic conditions responsible for the deviation and more serious disorders in which definitive therapy might be applied While it is true that many patients with

TABLE 22-1 HEMATOLOGIC FINDINGS IN 621 PATIENTS OVER 60 YEARS OF AGE WITH ABNORMALITIES OF THE HEMOGLOBIN OR LEUKOCYTE COUNT

	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Decreased hemoglobin			402	64.7
Alone	235	37.9		
With decreased RBC*	108	17.3		
With decreased WBC	10	1.6		
With increased WBC	49	7.9		
Increased hemoglobin			28	4.5
Increased WBC alone			176	28.4
Decreased WBC alone			15	2.4

\* In approximately one third of the patients with hemoglobin levels below 11 g/cm erythrocyte counts were available also

normal hemograms have the same diseases as those with abnormal hemitologic determinations it is also true that unexplained anemia or persistently depressed leukocyte values may sometimes be the only indication that a disorder is present or the only clue to the cause underlying a patient's failure to respond to treatment

## NONHEMATOLOGIC DISEASES ASSOCIATED WITH ABNORMAL HEMATOLOGIC FINDINGS (Table 22-2)

### Cardiovascular Disease

Anemia occurring in patients with heart disease is most often attributable to renal disease or to a chronic infection such as subacute bacterial endocarditis In our series only 3 of the 31 anemic patients with cardiovascular disease had subacute bacterial endocarditis although 27 patients with cardiovascular disease had azotemia\* in addition to abnormal hemitologic findings (Table 22-3)

\* We accept the definition of azotemia given by Cullen and Limarzi (1950) as a nonprotein nitrogen level above 40 mg per 100 cc of blood or a urea nitrogen level above 25 mg per 100 cc

Since the two most common causes of anemia in heart disease accounted for only 30 of the 58 cases, it seems likely that additional efforts to find the cause of the anemia would have been rewarding.

**Case 1** A 70 year old housewife was admitted for repair of a urethral prolapse. There was a past history of dysuria and renal lithiasis of 10 years duration. The positive findings on physical examination included a blood pressure of 160 systolic 90 diastolic tenderness on palpation in the left upper quadrant and left costovertebral angle and a 1 cm prolapse of the urethral mucosa. The blood count was as follows: hemoglobin 11.1 Gm white blood cells 6,200 with a normal differential count. The urinalysis showed a specific gravity of 1.010 no albumin or sugar and 6 to 8 white blood cells per high power field.

**COMMENT** The history of recurrent renal stones and dysuria, together with the finding of anemia and a low specific gravity of the urine indicates a need for determining the functional status of the kidneys. A blood urea nitrogen determination would have been of value. Although the patient was classed as having a cardiovascular disease the anemia seems more likely to have been of renal origin.

**Case 2** An 86-year old woman was admitted for the treatment of congestive failure. There was a past history of hypertension and of gradual cardiac decompensation during a period of weeks. Examination revealed obvious signs of congestive failure: dyspnea, enlargement of the heart, rales at both lung bases and moderate to marked pitting edema of the legs. The blood count showed 11.2 Gm of hemoglobin 4,100,000 red blood cells and 14,000 white blood cells. The blood urea nitrogen was 13 mg per 100 cc.

The patient was treated with diuretics, digitalis and a salt poor diet. She showed marked improvement and lost 11 pounds in the next eight days.

**COMMENT** Further studies should have been done to ascertain the nature of the anemia.

The occurrence of thrombosis in patients with abnormally high hemoglobin levels should always suggest the possibility of polycythemia.

**Case 3** A retired white man 73 years old was admitted one day following a stroke. He was known to have had hypertension for 10 years.

leukocyte counts By carrying out further studies in the remaining 25 per cent of the patients it should be possible in many cases to differentiate between temporary or physiologic conditions responsible for the deviation and more serious disorders in which definitive therapy might be applied While it is true that many patients with

TABLE 22-1 HEMATOLOGIC FINDINGS IN 621 PATIENTS OVER 60 YEARS OF AGE WITH ABNORMALITIES OF THE HEMOGLOBIN OR LEUKOCYTE COUNT

	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Decreased hemoglobin			402	64.7
Alone	235	37.9		
With decreased RBC*	108	17.3		
With decreased WBC	10	1.6		
With increased WBC	49	7.9		
Increased hemoglobin			28	4.5
Increased WBC alone			176	28.4
Decreased WBC alone			15	2.4

\* In approximately one third of the patients with hemoglobin levels below 11.5 G erythrocyte counts were available also

normal hemograms have the same diseases as those with abnormal hematologic determinations it is also true that unexplained anemia or persistently depressed leukocyte values may sometimes be the only indication that a disorder is present or the only clue to the cause underlying a patient's failure to respond to treatment

## NONHEMATOLOGIC DISEASES ASSOCIATED WITH ABNORMAL HEMATOLOGIC FINDINGS (Table 22-2)

### Cardiovascular Disease

Anemia occurring in patients with heart disease is most often attributable to renal disease or to a chronic infection such as subacute bacterial endocarditis In our series only 3 of the 31 anemic patients with cardiovascular disease had subacute bacterial endocarditis although 27 patients with cardiovascular disease had azotemia\* in addition to abnormal hematologic findings (Table 22-3)

\* We accept the definition of azotemia given by Callen and Limarzi (1950) as a nonprotein nitrogen level above 40 mg per 100 cc of blood or a urea nitrogen level above 25 mg per 100 cc

Since the two most common causes of anemia in heart disease accounted for only 30 of the 58 cases it seems likely that additional efforts to find the cause of the anemia would have been rewarding.

*Case 1* A 70-year old housewife was admitted for repair of a urethral prolapse. There was a past history of dysuria and renal lithiasis of 10 years duration. The positive findings on physical examination included a blood pressure of 160 systolic 90 diastolic, tenderness on palpation in the left upper quadrant and left costovertebral angle and a 1 cm prolapse of the urethral mucosa. The blood count was as follows: hemoglobin 11.1 Gm, white blood cells 6,200 with a normal differential count. The urinalysis showed a specific gravity of 1.010, no albumin or sugar and 6 to 8 white blood cells per high power field.

**COMMENT** The history of recurrent renal stones and dysuria together with the findings of anemia and a low specific gravity of the urine indicates a need for determining the functional status of the kidneys. A blood urea nitrogen determination would have been of value. Although the patient was classed as having a cardiovascular disease, the anemia seems more likely to have been of renal origin.

*Case 2* An 86-year-old woman was admitted for the treatment of congestive failure. There was a past history of hypertension and of gradual cardiac decompensation during a period of weeks. Examination revealed obvious signs of congestive failure: dyspnea, enlargement of the heart, rales at both lung bases and moderate to marked pitting edema of the legs. The blood count showed 11.2 Gm of hemoglobin, 4,100,000 red blood cells and 14,000 white blood cells. The blood urea nitrogen was 13 mg per 100 cc.

The patient was treated with diuretics, digitalis and a salt poor diet; she showed marked improvement and lost 11 pounds in the next eight days.

**COMMENT** Further studies should have been done to ascertain the nature of the anemia.

The occurrence of thrombosis in patients with abnormally high hemoglobin levels should always suggest the possibility of polycythemia.

*Case 3* A retired white man, 73 years old, was admitted one day following a stroke. He was known to have had hypertension for 10 years.

TABLE 22.2 TYPES OF DISORDERS ENCOUNTERED IN GERIATRIC PATIENTS WITH HEMATOLOGIC ABERRATIONS

	<i>Gm per 100 cc</i>						
	<i>Hgb</i> <11.5	<i>Hgb</i> >17	<i>Hgb</i> ↓ <i>WBC</i> ↓	<i>Hgb</i> ↓ <i>WBC</i> ↑	<i>WBC</i> ↑ only	<i>WBC</i> ↓ only	Total
<b>Cardiovascular</b>							
Myocardial infarction	3	1			12		16
Congestive failure	7				7	1	15
Heart disease no failure	7					2	9
Misc heart disease	4				4		8
Arteriosclerosis generalized	5				1		6
Cerebrovascular accident	2	2			7		11
Thrombosis thrombo- phlebitis	3	1			5		9
Total	31	4			36	3	74
<b>Pulmonary</b>							
Emphysema and fibrosis		5			6		11
Asthma					2		2
Infection	7			1	11	2	21
Carcinoma	4				-		11
Total	11	5		1	26	2	45
<b>Gastrointestinal</b>							
Carcinoma tongue and esophagus	2						2
Esophageal varices	4						4
Hiatus hernia	7			1			8
Peptic ulcer	27	1		4	1		33
Gastric carcinoma	6			2			8
Hepatic disease	2			1	1		4
Hepatic carcinoma	1						1
Acute pancreatitis					2		2
Chronic pancreatitis					1		1
Incretic carcinoma	1						1
Cholecystitis and cholelithiasis				2		1	3
Small intestine benign lesions	3			1			4
Ileus	2	2					11
Large intestinal infection	1			3	13		17
Colon benign lesions	4			1			5
Colon carcinoma	10		1	2			13
Rectum benign lesions	8					1	9
Rectum carcinoma	4						4
Bleeding site undetermined	7				1		13
Total	89	3	1	22	31	2	145

TABLE 22.2 TYPES OF DISORDERS ENCOUNTERED IN GERIATRIC PATIENTS WITH HEMATOLOGIC ABERRATIONS (Continued)

	Gm per 100 cc						
	Hgb <11.5	Hgb >17	Hgb↓ WBC↓	Hgb↓ WBC↑	WBC↑ only	WBC↓ only	Total
Urologic							
Infection	2				6	1	9
Stricture ureteral and renal	3			1	6		10
Prostatic dysfunction	3						3
Bladder carcinoma	7						7
Prostate benign enlargement	5				6		11
Prostate carcinoma	13		2	2	6		23
Kidney carcinoma	3			1			4
Cancer carcinoma	1						1
Total	37		2	4	24	1	68
Gynecologic							
Miscellaneous benign lesions	3						3
Cervix carcinoma	1			1	1		3
Ovary carcinoma	3						3
Vulva carcinoma	1						1
Uterus carcinoma						1	1
Breast carcinoma	3						3
Total	11			1	1	1	14
Endocrine							
Diabetes mellitus	4				4		8
Myxedema	4						4
Parathyroid disease		1					1
Hypoparathyroidism	1						1
Total	9	1			4		14
Skeletal							
Fractures multiple	4	1		3	2		10
Fractures single	12	1			13		26
Fracture and osteoporosis	4						4
Osteitis	6						6
Miscellaneous	4						4
Total	30	2		3	15		50
Malignant sites							
Basal cell carcinoma	2						2
Melanoma	1						1
Squamous cell carcinoma	1	1		2	1		5
Basal cell carcinoma	1				1		2
Generalized lymphoma	5						5
Unknown				1			1
Total	13	1		3	2		19

TABLE 22.2 TYPES OF DISORDERS ENCOUNTERED IN GERIATRIC PATIENTS WITH HEMATOLOGIC ABERRATIONS

	<i>Gm per 100 cc</i>						
	<i>Hgb</i> <i>&lt;11.5</i>	<i>Hgb</i> <i>&gt;17</i>	<i>Hgb</i> ↓ WBC↓	<i>Hgb</i> ↓ WBC↑	WBC↑ <i>only</i>	WBC↓ <i>only</i>	<i>Total</i>
<b>Cardiovascular</b>							
Myocardial infarction	3	1			12		16
Congestive failure	7				7	1	15
Heart disease no failure	7					2	9
Misc heart disease	4				4		8
Arteriosclerosis generalized	5				1		6
Cerebrovascular accident	2	2			7		11
Thrombosis thrombo phlebitis	3	1			5		9
Total	31	4			36	3	74
<b>Pulmonary</b>							
Emphysema and fibrosis		5			6		11
Asthma					2		2
Infection	7			1	11	2	21
Carcinoma	4				7		11
Total	11	5		1	26	2	45
<b>Gastrointestinal</b>							
Carcinoma tongue and esophagus	2						2
Esophageal varices	4						4
Hiatus hernia	7			1			8
Peptic ulcer	27	1		4	1		33
Gastric carcinoma	6			2			8
Hepatic disease	2			1	1		4
Hepatic carcinoma	1						1
Acute pancreatitis					2		2
Pancreatic pseudocyst					1		1
Pancreatic carcinoma	1						1
Cholecystitis and cholelithiasis				2	5	1	8
Small intestine benign lesions	3			1			4
Ileus	2	2					11
Large intestinal infection	1			3	13		17
Colon benign lesions	4			1			5
Colon carcinoma	10		1	2			13
Rectum benign lesions	8					1	9
Rectum carcinoma	4						4
Bleeding site undetermined	7				1		13
Total	89	3	1	22	31	2	148

TABLE 222 TYPES OF DISORDERS ENCOUNTERED IN GERIATRIC PATIENTS WITH HEMATOLOGIC ABERRATIONS (Continued)

	Cm per 100 cc						
	Hgb <11.5	Hgb >17	Hgb↓ WBC↓	Hgb↓ WBC↑	WBC↑ only	WBC↓ only	Total
Urologic							
Infection	2				6	1	9
Stone ureteral and renal	3			1	6		10
Bladder dysfunction	3						3
Bladder carcinoma	7						7
Prostate benign enlargement	5				6		11
Prostate carcinoma	13		2	2	6		23
Kidney carcinoma	3			1			4
Ureter carcinoma	1						1
Total	37		2	4	24	1	68
Gynecologic							
Miscellaneous benign lesions	3						3
Cervix carcinoma	1			1	1		3
Ovary carcinoma	3						3
Vulva carcinoma	1						1
Uterus carcinoma						1	1
Breast carcinoma	3						3
Total	11			1	1	1	14
Endocrine							
Diabetes mellitus	4				4		8
Myxedema	4						4
Goiter nontoxic		1					1
Hyperparathyroidism	1						1
Total	9	1			4		14
Skeletal							
Fractures multiple	4	1		3	2		10
Fractures single	12	1			13		26
Fracture and osteoporosis	4						4
Osteoporosis	6						6
Miscellaneous	4						4
Total	30	2		3	15		50
Malignancy other sites							
Blastic cell carcinoma	2						2
Mesothelioma	1						1
Squamous cell carcinoma	1	1		2	1		5
Brain tumor	2				1		3
Reticulum cell sarcoma	2						2
Metastatic primary site unknown	2			1			3
Total	13	1		3	2		19



TABLE 22.2 TYPES OF DISORDERS ENCOUNTERED IN GERIATRIC PATIENTS WITH HEMATOLOGIC ABERRATIONS (Continued)

	<i>Gm per 100 cc</i>						<i>Total</i>
	<i>Hgb</i> <i>&lt;11 g</i>	<i>Hgb</i> <i>&gt;17</i>	<i>Hgb</i> ↓ <i>WBC</i> ↓	<i>Hgb</i> ↓ <i>WBC</i> ↑	<i>WBC</i> ↑ <i>only</i>	<i>WBC</i> ↓ <i>only</i>	
Miscellaneous							
Burns					2		2
Gunshot wounds no fracture					4		4
Dehydration		2					2
Elevated blood urea nitrogen	61	1	1	7	6		76
Postoperative bleeding	1				1		2
Psychiatric neurologic	2	2			3	1	8
Dermatologic (nonmalignant)	3				1		4
Arthritis	5				1		6
Multiple abscesses	2				3		5
Cause not found	13	3			1		17
Total	90	8	1	7	22	1	129
Hematologic							
Leukemia acute	1						1
Leukemia chronic lymphatic	3	1		2	9	1	16
Leukemia chronic granulocytic				2	2		4
Polycythemia vera		2			1		3
Lymphoma	3	1			2	1	7
Multiple myeloma	5		1		1	1	8
Pernicious anemia	5						5
Hemolytic anemia	1			1			2
Hereditary telangiectasia	1						1
Pancytopenia and myelofibrosis	2		4				6
Toxic reaction to medication			1			2	3
Unexplainable	4						4
Total	25	4	6	5	15	5	50

TABLE 22.3 CHIEF SYSTEM AFFECTED IN PATIENTS WITH ELEVATED BLOOD UREA NITROGEN AND ABNORMAL HEMATOLOGIC FINDINGS

<i>System</i>	<i>Blood urea nitrogen (mg in 100 cc)</i>					<i>Total</i>
	<i>23-29</i>	<i>30-39</i>	<i>40-49</i>	<i>50-59</i>	<i>100</i>	
Cardiovascular	9	7	4	4	3	27
Pulmonary	1	1	1		2	5
Gastrointestinal		1	2	5	1	9
Urologic	5	4	2	9	6	26
Endocrine	1			2	2	5
Skeletal	1	1	1			3
Malignancy other sites					1	1
Total	17	14	10	20	15	76

Physical examination disclosed an elevated blood pressure (225 systolic 125 diastolic) right hemiparesis dysarthria and cardiac enlargement. Chest films showed tortuosity of the thoracic aorta and increased peribronchial markings in the medial portions of both lobes. Laboratory data were as follows: Hemoglobin 17.2 Gm, white blood cells 8,000 with 79 per cent neutrophils, blood urea nitrogen 16 mg per 100 cc, specific gravity of the urine 1.022 with no albuminuria or glycosuria. The patient showed early signs of recovery and after intensive physical therapy was discharged considerably improved on the eighteenth day. Medication for hypertension produced a favorable decline in blood pressure which was recorded as 160 systolic 80 diastolic six weeks after discharge. At this time the patient was walking with a crutch.

**COMMENT** The combination of hypertension, vascular occlusion, increased pulmonary markings and elevated hemoglobin suggests the possibility of primary or secondary polycythemia. Further laboratory studies (hemoglobin, hematocrit, volume indexes, reticulocyte count, marrow study) would be helpful in planning for this patient's future care.

The leukocyte count was elevated in 36 of the 74 patients with cardiovascular disease. As would be expected, this finding was accounted for by infection or tissue necrosis. In 3 cases the leukocytes were found to be below 4,000 per cubic millimeter. A hypotensive drug was suspected in 2 patients; the third case is described.

**Case 4** A 63-year-old housewife was hospitalized elsewhere in 1955 because of congestive failure associated with thyrotoxicosis. At this time she was given medication for "goiter" and she had continued to take this. Two months before admission to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital she sustained a minor injury to her right leg; it became swollen and bruised and the referring physician found that her "white blood cells were low." Physical examination showed a conspicuous nodular enlargement of the thyroid, enlargement of the heart to the left and an encrusted lesion measuring 2 by 4 cm above the lateral malleolus on the right. Pigmented areas were found on both lower extremities.

A blood count showed 11.5 Gm of hemoglobin and 2,600 white blood cells with 22 per cent polymorphonuclears, 53 per cent bands, 4 per cent metamyelocytes, 1 per cent eosinophils, 18 per cent lymphocytes and 2 per cent monocytes; the platelet count was 172,000 per cubic millimeter. The protein-bound iodine level was 9.3  $\mu$ g per 100 cc and the radioactive iodine uptake was increased. Study of aspirated bone

marrow revealed an increase in neutrophils particularly the promyelocytes, with some reduction in platelet formation by the megakaryocytes

**COMMENT** The patient was treated with radioactive iodine, and soon began to improve, the leukocyte level rose to 6 600 but the proportion of immature neutrophils remained elevated. It was thought that the leukopenia might be the result of therapy with propylthiouracil, even though granulocytopenia was never present.

### **Pulmonary Disease**

Malignancy and infection accounted for anemia and leukocytosis in about two thirds of the 45 cases in this category. Emphysema and pulmonary fibrosis were accompanied by an increase in the hemoglobin or leukocyte count, or both. Leukopenia was noted in 2 patients with virus infections of the lung. Pulmonary disease however is not infrequently associated with hematologic diseases as is illustrated by the following case.

**Case 5** A 63 year old lawyer was admitted because of cough of six weeks duration and abnormalities in the roentgenogram of the chest. On physical examination the blood pressure was found to be 180 systolic 95 diastolic the pharynx appeared reddened and there were scattered wheezes over the lung bases bilaterally with impairment of resonance over the left base. Radiographic examination of the chest showed slight enlargement of the left hilar shadow and a general increase in density of the interstitial pattern. Under positive pressure (Valsalva maneuver) there was radiographic evidence of diminution in the size of the left hilar shadow a finding which suggested that the enlargement was of vascular origin. The hemoglobin was 17.6 Gm the hematocrit 53 volumes per cent and the white blood cells 7 000 with 52 per cent neutrophils 44 per cent lymphocytes and 4 per cent monocytes.

**COMMENT** Appropriate treatment could be instituted if it were determined that this patient had primary or secondary polycythemia.

### **Gastrointestinal Disease**

Anemia is so commonly associated with gastrointestinal disease that the occurrence of hypochromic microcytic (iron deficiency)

anemia in the adult requires a detailed and exhaustive study of the entire intestinal tract to rule out the presence of benign or malignant lesions. Such a search should begin with *repeated* examination of the feces for occult blood. The search for benign lesions (hiatus hernia, diverticulosis and polyps) is particularly important in older patients because of the increasing incidence of these lesions in the geriatric age group. Many of these lesions can be removed surgically, and others are amenable to rational measures for the control of symptoms. Subsequent periodic examinations of patients with such benign gastrointestinal diseases should include radiologic or visual examination of the lesion, particularly when the likelihood of malignant degeneration is great.

Leukocytosis alone with gastrointestinal complaints usually indicates infection, localized or generalized. Persistent elevation of the leukocyte count is often associated with malignant disease of the liver or pancreas. Intestinal ileus, whether of functional (adynamic ileus) or mechanical etiology, is another cause of leukocytosis.

The following cases serve to illustrate the fact that a classical history of gastrointestinal disease is often absent in patients with organic lesions.

**Case 6** A 62-year-old woman was referred to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital because of anemia. She had noted increasing fatigue and weakness for one month and had been having tarry stools for six weeks. She had had no abdominal pain, nausea or vomiting. Positive physical findings included obesity and a blood pressure of 200 systolic/100 diastolic; no masses or tenderness was noted. Stool examinations were negative for occult blood, but there was radiographic evidence of a small ulcer in the prepyloric region. The hemoglobin was 10.5 Gm, the red blood cells 3,800,000, the hematocrit 30 volumes per cent, the mean corpuscular volume 83 cu  $\mu$ , the mean corpuscular hemoglobin content 36 per cent, and the reticulocyte count 3 per cent.

**COMMENT** This patient's history was misleading until marked signs of blood loss appeared.

**Case 7** A 79-year-old retired feed dealer was admitted in October 1953 for transurethral resection of the prostate. At that time the hemoglobin was 12 Gm, the red blood cells 4,200,000. The patient recovered from the operation uneventfully, but in February 1956 he returned complaining of abdominal pain. At that time a history of diges-

tive difficulty dating back to May, 1955 was obtained. The first symptom was dull aching epigastric pain sometimes relieved by eating. Following the urologic operation the abdominal pain became more severe. While on a Florida vacation the patient suddenly lost consciousness and was admitted to a hospital. Transfusions were given there before he was transferred to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital. Physical examination on this second admission revealed slight abdominal tenderness; the hemoglobin was 11 Gm. Radiographic examination of the stomach showed a large filling defect arising from the greater curvature. Gastrectomy was performed and microscopic examination confirmed the diagnosis of adenocarcinoma of the stomach.

**COMMENT** Within the space of three months this advanced malignant lesion made its presence known in a dramatic fashion. On the first admission no history of gastric distress was noted!

### Urogenital Diseases

Blood loss resulting from excessive uterine bleeding is common. In postmenopausal women, however, severe bleeding is seldom associated with benign lesions of the genital tract. Since functional disorders are also infrequent in the postmenopausal period, malignant change should be suspected in every case of vaginal bleeding until it is disproved by the most precise measures.

In the male, obstructive lesions of the urogenital tract are common, and bring about a series of biochemical changes which may result from temporary malfunction of the excretory system. Diagnosis is frequently complicated by diseases in other systems (atherosclerosis and diabetes for example) as well as those in the kidney itself. Except for those cases of anemia related to azotemia, the most likely cause of anemia of urogenital origin in the male is carcinoma of the prostate.

**Case 8** A 76 year old retired farmer admitted in January, 1957 complained of "rheumatism" of six weeks duration in the left hip and back. Shortly after its onset he noted swelling in the left groin. Two weeks prior to admission biopsy of the left inguinal region at another hospital disclosed a malignant neoplasm. On physical examination the liver was felt 3 cm. below the right costal margin and the prostate was enlarged, firm and rubbery. The hemoglobin was 11.2 Gm., the white blood cells 5500 with a normal differential count. The urea nitrogen was 16 mg.

per 100 cc alkaline phosphatase 182 Bodansky units and phosphatase 47 Shumway units serum calcium 10.9 mg per 100 cc serum phosphorus 3.1 mg per 100 cc Roentgenograms disclosed osteoblastic changes in the left acetabulum and left ileum Transurethral resection of the prostate was performed and the pathologic report confirmed the clinical diagnosis of adenocarcinoma of the prostate

**COMMENT** The somewhat abrupt onset of rheumatism is often the only symptom leading to the correct diagnosis of a neoplasm metastatic to bone

### Endocrine Disturbances

Anemia associated with myxedema is the most common finding in endocrine disorders. An example is described

**Case 9** A 69-year-old woman with a long history of increasing weakness was admitted in April 1956 for diagnostic studies. She had been walking with the aid of a cane for four years. She was known to have been anemic for 2 to 5 years and had recently become "hoarse." Physical examination disclosed an obese woman who responded slowly to questions. The skin of the face was puffy, the hair was thin and the eyebrows were sparse. There was moderate edema of the lower extremities and reflexes were hypoactive. Blood studies were as follows: hemoglobin 10.4 Gm, red blood cells 2,800,000, hematocrit 32, volumes per cent, mean corpuscular volume 115 cu  $\mu$ , mean corpuscular hemoglobin content 33 per cent, white blood cells 6,700 with a normal differential count. macrocytosis of the erythrocytes was present. The blood cholesterol was 342 mg per 100 cc, protein bound iodine 2.6  $\mu$ g per 100 cc. Radioactive iodine uptake was 1 per cent in 24 hours.

Four weeks after thyroid therapy was started the hemoglobin was 11.3 Gm, red blood cells 3,200,000. The mean corpuscular hemoglobin content was 103 cu  $\mu$ .

**COMMENT** On thyroid therapy alone the hemoglobin increased and the patient was much improved.

### Skeletal Disorders

The aging process particularly in women is associated with osteoporosis and susceptibility to fractures following minimal trauma. Too often this state of affairs is blamed on age alone and

little effort is made to explain the occurrence of anemia in patients with fractures or with the radiographic picture of osteoporosis. Myelomatosis is often associated with generalized rarefaction of bone rather than involvement of a single local area. When either finding is coupled with anemia further studies should be carried out. As Albright and Reifenstein (1948) have pointed out senile osteoporosis can usually be differentiated from osteomalacia by determinations of the serum calcium, phosphorus, protein and alkaline phosphatase. Senile osteoporosis is characterized by a low or normal serum calcium, a normal or slightly elevated serum phosphorus and normal levels of alkaline phosphatase. In the cases presented below, bone disease other than senile osteoporosis should have been considered.

*Case 10* A 71 year old man was admitted in February 1956 for confirmation of the diagnosis of hyperparathyroidism. Complaints of dull aching in the lumbosacral area had begun 6 years previously. For the past 6 months he had noted marked weakness and progressive loss of weight. At another hospital the serum calcium was reported as 17 mg per 100 cc, the phosphorus as 3 mg per 100 cc. Physical examination disclosed scoliosis of the dorsal spine to the left, the prostate was not enlarged. A blood count showed 10.5 Gm of hemoglobin, 4,000,000 red blood cells and 6,400 white blood cells with 48 per cent polymorpho-nuclears, 44 per cent lymphocytes, 6 per cent monocytes and 2 per cent basophils. The blood urea nitrogen was 15 mg per 100 cc, the serum proteins 6.5 Gm (serum albumin 3.3 Gm, globulin 3.2 Gm). Laboratory studies on two occasions showed the serum calcium to be 11 and 10.9 mg per 100 cc, the phosphorus 3.7 and 2.9 mg per 100 cc and the alkaline phosphatase 4.1 and 4.6 Bodinsky units. Acid phosphatase was 0.2 Shumway units. Radiologic examination disclosed demineralization of the bones of the thorax, lumbosacral spine, pelvis, hands and skull together with bilateral nephrolithiasis.

The patient was discharged on androgen-estrogen therapy but did not improve. He was not seen between July 1956 and September 1957 when he was readmitted after sustaining a fracture of the right femur and right humerus. The only change on physical examination was swelling and tenderness of the right shoulder and pain on movement of the right leg. The hemoglobin was 10 Gm, the blood urea nitrogen 17 mg per 100 cc, serum calcium 10.8 mg per 100 cc, serum phosphorus 3.3 mg, alkaline phosphatase 13.4 Bodinsky units. Marked osteoporosis was again noted on the radiographic films. The patient was

given transfusions and the fractures were treated in the usual fashion. Improvement was noted and he was discharged on the twelfth day.

**COMMENT** According to Bartter (1957) demineralization of the bones of the skull as well as other bones and elevation of the alkaline phosphatase point toward osteomalacia rather than osteoporosis. In the case just described the slow course of the disease and the duration of anemia are suggestive of myelomatosis. Although few of the chemical analyses are compatible with this impression, aspiration of bone marrow might have been diagnostic.

**Case 11** A 71 year old woman was admitted for investigation of the cause of a severe headache that had begun suddenly 12 days previously. Nausea and vomiting accompanied the pain in the head and the neck became stiff. On physical examination there was some mental confusion, some stiffness of the neck and a positive plantar response on the left. An electroencephalogram and lumbar puncture confirmed the impression of subarachnoid hemorrhage into the left temporal lobe. Radiographic examination revealed disseminated demineralization of the bones of the skull and thorax. The blood count showed 11 Gm of hemoglobin, a hematocrit of 34 volumes per cent and 6 000 white blood cells with 73 per cent polymorphonuclears, 16 per cent lymphocytes, 6 per cent eosinophils and 5 per cent monocytes. The blood urea nitrogen was 20 mg. per 100 cc. total serum proteins 7.4 Gm (serum albumin 2.9 Gm, serum globulin 4.5 Gm), serum alkaline phosphatase 4.1 Bodansky units.

**COMMENT** Demineralization of the skull is not usually associated with senile osteoporosis; this finding together with the mild anemia and elevated serum globulin suggests the possibility of myeloma.

It is of interest to note that fractures, particularly single fractures, are frequently accompanied by an elevation in the leukocyte count. It would be of further interest to know how long this elevation persists and whether immature forms of the leukocytes are present in the peripheral blood.

### Malignancies and Miscellaneous Conditions

The first category includes malignant neoplasms of sites other than those already discussed and cases of carcinomatosis. The effect of chronic infection on the hemoglobin is noted in patients



with arthritis, dermatologic conditions, and multiple abscesses. Cases in which the blood urea nitrogen was elevated are placed in this category, since it is sometimes difficult to locate the causes of this disturbance. In 17 cases the data were insufficient to allow classification.

## Diseases of the Blood

The etiologic basis for hematologic aberrations in this study was attributed to disease of the hematopoietic system *per se* in only 9.7 per cent of the cases. The inference is clear that all physicians should be aware of the hematologic implications of conditions that they commonly encounter, for in the great majority of cases the etiology of anemia or leukocytosis will be found in systems other than the blood-forming organs.

Leukemia, the lymphomas, and multiple myeloma accounted for 36 of the 60 cases of blood disorders encountered. While therapy of myelomatosis is still unsatisfactory, recent advances in the treatment of leukemia and the lymphomas offer hope for the maintenance of some of these patients in comfort and physical strength rather than in invalidism.\*

Special attention is directed to two hematologic conditions commonly found in the elderly patient: the recognition and treatment of which may not only prolong life but may add immeasurably to physical comfort, useful employment, and meaningful participation in community and family life. The first of these conditions, *polycthemia vera*, has already been discussed in a previous section (cardiovascular disease). The second disorder, *pernicious anemia*, is frequently missed because of the similarity of some of the signs and symptoms to degenerative states accompanying senescence.

The diagnosis of *pernicious anemia* was made in five cases in this series, but the sometimes brief record in other instances would suggest that at least eleven additional patients should have been studied for *megaloblastic anemia*. The following cases illustrate the various symptoms which are common in this disease.

**Case 12.** A 62-year-old grocery store owner was admitted complaining of "jerking spells" across his chest and shoulders for a year without loss

\* Excellent texts by Wintrobe (1956) and by Whitby and Britton (1953) discuss in detail the diagnosis and treatment of these diseases.

of consciousness or loss of sphincter control. Physical examination showed a thin apprehensive man in no distress. The tongue was smooth at the edges; there were no enlarged organs and reflexes were equal and active. Laboratory urine not remarkable. red blood cells 2 000 000 hemoglobin 7.8 Gm hematocrit 22 volumes per cent mean corpuscular volume 110 cu  $\mu$  mean corpuscular hemoglobin content 35 per cent white blood cells 5 000 with 52 per cent granulocytes 1 per cent bands 40 per cent lymphocytes 3 per cent eosinophils 3 per cent monocytes and 1 per cent basophils. The blood platelets appeared adequate but there was anisocytosis and poikilocytosis of the erythrocytes. Gastric analysis revealed achlorhydria after histamine stimulation. Before further studies could be done the patient left the hospital against advice.

**Case 13** A 62-year-old realtor who was referred because of difficulty in swallowing. He also complained of frequent attacks of indigestion increasing weakness for 2 years and chronic sinus pain. On examination the patient was verbose but cooperative. The skin was not remarkable; the liver was felt 2 cm below the right costal margin on deep inspiration. Tendon reflexes were active and equal. Laboratory data included a blood urea nitrogen of 13 mg per 100 cc, a fasting blood sugar of 76 mg per 100 cc, and normal urinary findings. The hemoglobin was 13.9 Gm hematocrit 41 volumes per cent mean corpuscular hemoglobin content 34 per cent, white blood cells 3 000 with an essentially normal differential. A second leukocyte count was 4 600. There was radiologic evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy, elongation of the aorta and clouding of the left maxillary sinus. The patient was discharged with the diagnosis of possible esophageal diverticulum and psychoneurosis.

**COMMENT** Bizarre psychic behavior is often characteristic of patients with pernicious anemia although usually there is ample evidence of anemia. Case 12 is typical of certain elderly people but the low blood levels suggest pernicious anemia. Hypochondriasis as displayed by Case 13 is frequently encountered in pernicious anemia. Elevated mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration and leukopenia should have indicated the possibility of megaloblastic changes.

**Case 14** This 66-year-old housewife had been admitted to the North Carolina Baptist Hospital for the first time at the age of 54 when she was treated for cystitis. The only abnormal laboratory finding at that time was pyuria. She was admitted again in October 1958 complaining of intermittent nausea and vomiting of undigested food. She was known

to have had anemia for four months and had been taking vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and iron by mouth without effect. The positive physical findings were pallor, diminished hearing and a coated tongue. Hematologic findings including color indexes were not remarkable, the serum albumin was 2.3 Gm per 100 cc, and the total serum proteins were 4.5 Gm per 100 cc. Radiographic studies of the upper gastrointestinal tract were not remarkable. Gastric analysis showed no free hydrochloric acid after histamine stimulation. The patient was given insulin and Amytal therapy, she improved, gained 10 pounds and was discharged on a high protein, high vitamin diet.

The third admission occurred two months later because of the continuation of periodic nausea and vomiting and pitting edema of the ankles. Except for the edema physical examination was unchanged. At this time the hemoglobin was 10.4 Gm, red blood cells 4,900,000, white blood cells 7,000 and serum proteins 5.3 Gm. The patient was discharged after receiving two units of whole blood by transfusion.

She returned for the fourth admission in December 1957, never having been completely free of periods of nausea and vomiting. Physical examination was again unchanged but the hemoglobin was only 9.3 Gm and the red blood cells 3,900,000, the white cell count was 7,200 with a normal differential count. In addition to an enriched diet the patient was given daily injections of crude liver extract. On the thirteenth hospital day the reticulocyte count was 4 per cent and the hemoglobin had risen to 10.5 Gm.

**COMMENT** The diagnosis of pernicious anemia was not entertained in this case, although there was apparent response to crude liver extract. If the diagnosis had been confirmed instructions for continuous therapy would have been given, the therapeutic agent would have been changed to a more potent preparation and future complications could have been avoided.

In most instances the diagnosis of pernicious anemia can be substantiated with blood and bone marrow studies and determination of the presence or absence of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric contents. In some cases the use of Schilling test (1953, 1955) will be of great value in determining the etiology of the anemia.

The final category of blood diseases is familiar to all hematologists: unexplainable crises of anemia in which all efforts to find the cause meet with failure. In this situation the anemia must be treated while observation is continued in the hope that the picture will eventually become clear.

Case 13 A 70-year old widow was first seen on March 6 1957 complaining of weakness and loss of appetite for a year A known diabetic for 35 years the patient had been taking 15 units of protamine zinc insulin daily and maintaining a fairly strict diet She had no digestive disturbance but complained of pain in the left shoulder and had noted some numbness and tingling of the extremities Anemia was known to have been present for six years and three transfusions had been given by her local physician three months prior to admission

On physical examination there was moderate pallor of the skin and the liver was felt 1 cm below the right costal margin the left shoulder was markedly limited in all motions of flexion extension and rotation Tendon reflexes were diminished while position sense was preserved The blood count was as follows hemoglobin 10.4 Gm hematocrit 31 volumes per cent mean corpuscular hemoglobin content 30 per cent white blood cells 3600 with 65 per cent polymorphonuclears 3 per cent bands 1 per cent metamyelocytes 22 per cent lymphocytes 2 per cent eosinophils 7 per cent monocytes and 0.9 per cent reticulocytes A blood smear showed macrocytosis and anisocytosis of the erythrocytes but no macrophocytes platelets appeared to be plentiful Gastric analysis revealed free hydrochloric acid without histamine stimulation One stool examination was reported as being positive for occult blood The sternal marrow appeared cellular and some elements of megaloblastosis were described Radiographic studies showed possible achalasia diffuse osteoporosis of bones in the spine and more marked osteoporosis in the region of the left shoulder A barium enema examination was unsatisfactory

The patient was given 40  $\mu$ g of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> daily by injection and after 5 days the reticulocyte count had risen to 4.2 per cent She was then returned to her physician for continued care The anemia recurred, however and was not alleviated by the addition of small amounts of pteroylglutamic acid by mouth Repeated transfusions were required to keep the level of hemoglobin above 8 Gm and the patient returned for further study on July 20 1957 Examination was essentially the same as before except that the liver was not felt The hemoglobin was 9.7 Gm the hematocrit 30 volumes per cent the mean corpuscular hemoglobin content 31 per cent the white blood cells 7000 The differential count was not remarkable but nucleated erythrocytes were noted on the smear and the reticulocyte count was 2.7 per cent The Coombs test was negative and two tests for osmotic fragility of the erythrocytes were normal The serum proteins at this time were 7.4 Gm per 100 cc serum albumin 3.8 Gm serum globulin 3.7 Gm the alkaline phosphatase was 62 Bodansky units serum calcium 9.4 mg per 100

to have had anemia for four months and had been taking vitamin B<sub>12</sub> and iron by mouth without effect. The positive physical findings were pallor, diminished hearing and a coated tongue. Hematologic findings including color indexes were not remarkable; the serum albumin was 2.3 Gm per 100 cc and the total serum proteins were 4.5 Gm per 100 cc. Radiographic studies of the upper gastrointestinal tract were not remarkable. Gastric analysis showed no free hydrochloric acid after histamine stimulation. The patient was given insulin and Amytal therapy; she improved, gained 10 pounds and was discharged on a high protein, high vitamin diet.

The third admission occurred two months later because of the continuation of periodic nausea and vomiting and pitting edema of the ankles. Except for the edema, physical examination was unchanged. At this time the hemoglobin was 10.4 Gm, red blood cells 4,900,000, white blood cells 7,000 and serum proteins 5.3 Gm. The patient was discharged after receiving two units of whole blood by transfusion.

She returned for the fourth admission in December, 1957, never having been completely free of periods of nausea and vomiting. Physical examination was again unchanged, but the hemoglobin was only 9.3 Gm and the red blood cells 3,900,000; the white cell count was 7,200 with a normal differential count. In addition to an enriched diet, the patient was given daily injections of crude liver extract. On the thirteenth hospital day the reticulocyte count was 4 per cent and the hemoglobin had risen to 10.5 Gm.

**COMMENT** The diagnosis of pernicious anemia was not entered in this case although there was apparent response to crude liver extract. If the diagnosis had been confirmed, instructions for continuous therapy would have been given, the therapeutic agent would have been changed to a more potent preparation and future complications could have been avoided.

In most instances the diagnosis of pernicious anemia can be substantiated with blood and bone marrow studies and determination of the presence or absence of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric contents. In some cases the use of Schilling test (1953, 1955) will be of great value in determining the etiology of the anemia.

The final category of blood diseases is familiar to all hematologists: unexplainable cases of anemia in which all efforts to find the cause meet with failure. In this situation the anemia must be treated while observation is continued in the hope that the picture will eventually become clear.

(Bastter 1957) The psychiatric quirks expected in the elderly patient must not be confused with the mental changes associated with pernicious anemia. The finding of bleeding hemorrhoids should not lead one to overlook an early carcinoma of the colon. Since anemia is often related to renal disorders, determination of the blood urea nitrogen should be done in many cases.

It is important to remember that unusually high values for the hemoglobin and erythrocytes are as significant in the elderly as those below the normal level. polycythemia is commonly recognized as a disease of the later years.

The treatment of hematologic aberrations is intimately bound with the diagnosis and when the cause is determined proper therapy becomes evident. In iron deficiency anemia, elimination of the condition responsible for iron loss and some form of therapy with iron will usually bring gratifying results. Many patients with polycythemia show marked improvement under therapy with radioactive phosphorus. In megaloblastic anemia, treatment with cyanocobalamin (vitamin B<sub>12</sub>) if given before irreversible changes occur results in a most favorable response.

Lest, fortunate are those patients whose hematologic aberrations are due to malignant disease or renal disease for the treatment for these conditions is not satisfactory. As a rule, however, chronic leukemia in elderly patients is of a comparatively benign nature. judicious use of the newer chemotherapeutic drugs (chlorambucil, 6-mercaptopurine, busulfan) and the intravenous nitrogen mustard in conjunction with the corticosteroids can help the patient to have a comfortable existence and reduce the periods of real illness for significant intervals.

Even in myelomatosis for which therapy is as yet most unsatisfactory, a few patients can be given some relief by careful treatment with Urethane, the corticosteroids, irradiation or a combination of these measures.

In many of the chronic conditions so often encountered in elderly patients, repeated hematologic determinations will afford a measure of the patient's response to treatment and will be profitable in evaluating the different types of therapy and the complications that may arise. Not only does the elderly patient profit by such conscientious follow-up but the physician gains a sense of confidence in handling the patient during his illness.

cc, and serum phosphorus 4.0 mg per 100 cc. The serum lactodehydrogenase (LDH) was 97 units, a value that was considered normal and not compatible with hemolysis. A second examination of the bone marrow showed no essential change from the original specimen.

At this point the patient requested that no further diagnostic studies be made. It was decided to conduct a therapeutic trial of steroids under careful supervision and at the same time to give injections of a repository androgen-estrogen preparation in an effort to improve the osteoporosis. During this period of treatment additional insulin was necessary, but no transfusions were given. Three months later the patient returned stating that she felt much better and "more alive." The blood picture, however, was essentially unchanged: hemoglobin 8.8 Gm, white blood cells 3,300, reticulocytes 3.6 per cent. Several examinations of the stools were negative for occult blood.

**COMMENT** The cause of anemia in this case remains an enigma in spite of all reasonable attempts at diagnosis. Difficulties in transportation have made it impossible to exclude hemolytic anemia by studying the survival time of the erythrocytes with radioactive chromium.

## DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT OF HEMATOLOGIC DISORDERS

The finding of abnormal hematologic values in elderly patients indicates an unhealthy state and should not be considered a part of normal senescence.

When the hemoglobin is outside the expected limits, the test should be repeated and additional data concerning the hematocrit and levels of erythrocytes and leukocytes should be obtained. Careful study of the stained smear may confirm the blood indexes; the presence or absence of macrocytes, micropolyocytes, nucleated erythrocytes, polychromatophils, and decreased platelets will serve to direct further studies. Examination of the bone marrow is frequently of invaluable assistance.

One must remain constantly aware that the older patient is subject to certain diseases in addition to the degenerative effects of age. Osteoporosis must be distinguished from other bone disease; rheumatism should not camouflage bony metastasis. Determinations of the serum proteins, calcium, phosphorus, alkaline and acid phosphatase should be ordered more frequently; roentgen studies of the skull, teeth, and pelvis may be of special significance.

## CHAPTER 23

# Diseases of the Nervous System in the Aged Patient

Arranged by Common Presenting Symptoms

MARTIN G. NETSKY

### INTRODUCTION

Neurologic diagnosis is at times more difficult in the person over 60 than in the younger adult. The neurologic examination especially the sensory portion is not as easy to perform or to interpret. Many findings are abnormal in younger persons but are frequently found in normal people past 60. These are discussed in detail in The Neurologic Examination below. Furthermore the incidence of diseases of the nervous system varies considerably at different ages although few diseases occur exclusively within a limited age group.

Most congenital malformations are apparent early in life but craniopharyngiomas may first cause symptoms after 60. Multiple sclerosis progressive muscular dystrophy Wilson's disease polio myelitis and petit mal seizures are examples of diseases usually occurring earlier in life but occasionally having their onset after 60. By contrast cerebrovascular accidents progressive muscular atrophies paralysis agitans and trigeminal neuralgia are more common in older people although they may occur at any age. Temporal arteritis is a rare disorder and until now has been described only in older patients. Brain tumors are found at all ages and are frequent in the older population but the incidence of specific types differs according to age.

The older person often reacts differently to disease. Infections



## REFERENCES

- 1 ALBRIGHT F and REIFENSTEIN E C Jr *The Parathyroid Glands and Metabolic Bone Disease* Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1948 pp 144-197
- 2 BARTTER F C Osteoporosis *Am J Med* 22 797 1957
- 3 CALLEN I R and LIMAIZI L R Blood and bone marrow studies in renal disease *Am J Clin Path* 20 3, 1950
- 4 SCHILLING R F Intrinsic factor studies II The effect of gastric juice on the urinary excretion of radioactivity after the oral administration of radioactive B<sub>12</sub> *J Lab & Clin Med* 42 860 1953 SCHILLING R F CLATANOFF D V and KORST D R Intrinsic factor studies III Further observations utilizing the urinary radioactivity test in subjects with achlorhydria pernicious anemia or a total gastrectomy *J Lab & Clin Med* 45 926 1955
- 5 WHITBY L E H and BRITTON C J C *Disorders of the Blood* (ed 7) New York Grune & Stratton Inc 1953
- 6 WINTROBE M M *Clinical Hematology* (ed 4) Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1956

TABLE 23-1 NEUROLOGIC LOSSES WITH AGE

Age in decades	Percentage of normal individuals showing loss of listed functions*			
	51-60	61-70	71-80	81-90
<b>Sensation</b>				
Vibration decreased at ankles	5	10	20	30
Vibration decreased at wrists	0	0	0	0
<b>Motor functions</b>				
General power poor	0	0	5	15
Position of forearm poor	0	0	15	30
Finger-to-nose to foot poor	0	10	20	30
<b>Reflexes absent</b>				
Ankle	20	33	70	90
Knee	0	10	1	60
Triceps	0	0	20	60
Biceps	0	0	15	30
Abdominal skin	0	33	40	60
Absence of normal plantar response	0	0	0	5
<b>Cranial nerves</b>				
Absent pupillary reaction to light	0	0	40	66
Absent pupillary reaction to convergence	0	0	40	80
Absent pupillary reaction to light and convergence	0	10	20	50

\* Data compiled from Howell (1949), Smith (1956) and personal findings

sensory tests early in the examination before the patient tires and to check the findings again at a later time. Vibratory sensation may be lost at the toes, ankles and knees after 50 and is absent in approximately half the individuals over 80. Vibratory sense seldom disappears, however, in the upper extremities. Sense of position of the fingers and wrists is almost always maintained. Light touch sensation is mildly impaired. The ability to recognize double simultaneous touch stimuli diminishes with increasing age (Green and Bender, 1953). In 25 per cent of 200 healthy old men studied by Howell (1949), pain or temperature sensation or both were impaired in the extremities. The inner aspects of the shins and forearms were the sites most often affected and the sensory loss was in irregular patches, never in the entire distribution of roots or peripheral nerves.

### Motor Functions and Co-ordination

The older person moves slowly with small steps. His facial expressions and spontaneous movements of his body are diminished.

may cause little fever or leukocytosis, meningeal irritation may not produce the usual meningeal signs, papilledema is less frequent in old patients with brain tumors, painful disorders may be far less painful in old age, but despite this, pain is a common complaint, and the complications of herpes zoster may be more distressing than in the younger patient.

The unreliability of the history when memory is affected or when other mental disturbances are present is another factor making diagnosis more difficult in old people. Laboratory tests must be interpreted according to the age of the patient. Achlorhydria is frequent, the electroencephalogram is often slow and resembles the childhood record, but occasionally a fast record is obtained, roentgenograms may show demineralization of the bones. Finally, multiple disorders are frequently encountered.

The disorders of the nervous system to be discussed in this chapter are arranged by common presenting signs and symptoms rather than by diseases. An attempt is made to deal with principles of diagnosis and treatment rather than to offer minute details and rare possibilities. Psychiatric symptoms such as irritability, memory disturbance, dementia and depression are dealt with elsewhere, although they may be related to organic neurologic diseases.

## THE NEUROLOGIC EXAMINATION OF THE AGED PATIENT

The age of the patient must be considered in interpreting the neurologic examination. Some findings indicative of organic disorder in persons under 60 may be found in older people without neurologic disease. A knowledge of changes normal for the patient's age is therefore important to avoid incorrect diagnoses and unnecessary studies. The differences from the younger adult become more frequent as age increases (Table 23-1). Despite this examination of old people may on occasion reveal findings similar to those found in the younger person.

### Sensory Changes

The sensory examination is usually the most difficult especially when communication with the patient is impaired by deafness, defects of speech, or mental disturbance. It is best to perform the

TABLE 23 1 NEUROLOGIC LOSSES WITH AGE

Age in decades	Percentage of normal individuals showing loss of listed functions*			
	51-60	61-70	71-80	81-90
<b>Sensory</b>				
Vibration decreased at ankles	5	15	25	50
Vibration decreased at wrists	0	0	0	0
<b>Motor functions</b>				
General power poor	0	0	5	15
Rotation of forearm poor	0	0	15	35
Finger-to-nose test poor	0	10	20	30
<b>Reflexes absent</b>				
Ankle	20	33	70	90
Knee	0	10	15	60
Triceps	0	0	20	50
Biceps	0	0	15	30
Abdominal skin	0	33	40	60
Absence of normal plantar response	0	0	5	5
<b>Cranial nerves</b>				
Absent pupillary reaction to light	0	30	40	66
Absent pupillary reaction to convergence	0	30	40	80
Absent pupillary reaction to light and convergence	0	10	20	30

\* Data compiled from Howell (1949) Smith (1956) and personal findings

sensory tests early in the examination before the patient tires and to check the findings again at a later time. Vibratory sensation may be lost at the toes, ankles and knees after 50 and is absent in approximately half the individuals over 80. Vibratory sense seldom disappears however in the upper extremities. Sense of position of the fingers and wrists is almost always maintained. Light touch sensation is mildly impaired. The ability to recognize double simultaneous touch stimuli diminishes with increasing age (Green and Bender 1953). In 25 per cent of 200 healthy old men studied by Howell (1949) pain or temperature sensation or both, were impaired in the extremities. The inner aspects of the shins and forearms were the sites most often affected and the sensory loss was in irregular patches never in the entire distribution of roots or peripheral nerves.

### Motor Functions and Co-ordination

The older person moves slowly with small steps. His facial expressions and spontaneous movements of his body are diminished.

He stands in a flexed position. Normal associated movements such as the swing of the arms in walking are decreased. Muscle power generally diminishes with age, but exceptions are encountered. Old people tire easily, and their reaction time is increased. The paucity and slowness of movement, the decrease in associated movements, and the flexed posture suggest Parkinsonism, but these signs are encountered in people who do not become tremulous and rigid. These signs should be considered, therefore, as evidence of normal aging in some persons.

Generalized mild wasting of muscles is common, especially in the hands. In patients with arthritic disease, focal atrophy occurs around the involved joints. Neurologic disease should be suspected when focal and asymmetric wasting is found in the absence of arthritis. Fasciculations do not usually occur.

Old people have increasing difficulty in rapidly rotating the forearms. This probably is evidence of incoordination rather than muscular weakness. Difficulty in the finger-to-nose test is most often on the same basis. Cerebellar disorders may be suspected when ataxia is present in a patient with normal muscular strength (see Ataxia below).

## Reflexes

With increasing age the deep (tendon) reflexes first become sluggish and then disappear completely. The ankle jerks are first and most severely affected. The loss begins at 50 years of age in some persons, and few people over 80 still have this reflex. The knee jerk is present in most people in the sixties, but is obtained in less than half of those past 80. The arm reflexes (supinator biceps, triceps) are normal in all healthy people under 70, but are present in only 50 per cent of individuals in the late eighties. The reflex loss associated with normal aging is almost always symmetric. Asymmetric loss of reflexes should be further investigated. The decrease or loss of reflexes may be related to changes in sensory fibers or to fibrosis of the tendons and muscles.

Abdominal cutaneous reflexes are obtained less frequently as age advances. They are present in most people in the fifties except when the abdominal wall is flabby, but then tend to disappear.

Babinski's sign has been found in 5 per cent of people past 70 without obvious neurologic disease (Howell 1949)

### **Cranial Nerves**

Ability to smell is decreased bilaterally. Presbyopia is an inevitable consequence of aging. The pupillary reactions to light and convergence are progressively altered with age and may be lost separately or together. The aged pupil thus may simulate the Argyll Robertson pupil (a miotic pupil fixed to light, but reacting in convergence) but is seldom as miotic as the Argyll Robertson pupil. Half the individuals over 85 have completely inactive pupils which are usually small but may be dilated.

The ability to converge the eyes is lost in old age and there may be impairment of upward gaze. The range of ocular motion is frequently limited in all directions. Old people do not normally have nystagmus with quick and slow components.

Taste sensation is generally decreased. Deafness is common resulting from deterioration of the eighth cranial nerve, or of the nerve and cochlea. The hearing impairment is greater for high pitched sounds than for low tones.

### **Sphincteric Functions**

Increased frequency of urination is common. This is most often related to prostatic enlargement in men and is generally associated with muscular weakness rather than neurologic disorder. Constipation in the aged patient may be related to decreased secretion of mucus or to inactive musculature in the colon. The tone of the sphincters is often diminished but incontinence on this basis occurs only in women with cystoceles and stress incontinence.

## **WEAKNESS AND PARALYSIS**

### **General Considerations**

Weakness is diminution of muscular strength. Paralysis indicates the loss of ability to contract muscles voluntarily. Paresis signifies

He stands in a flexed position. Normal associated movements, such as the swing of the arms in walking, are decreased. Muscle power generally diminishes with age, but exceptions are encountered. Old people tire easily, and their reaction time is increased. The paucity and slowness of movement, the decrease in associated movements, and the flexed posture suggest Parkinsonism, but these signs are encountered in people who do not become tremulous and rigid. These signs should be considered, therefore, as evidence of normal aging in some persons.

Generalized mild wasting of muscles is common, especially in the hands. In patients with arthritic disease, focal atrophy occurs around the involved joints. Neurologic disease should be suspected when focal and asymmetric wasting is found in the absence of arthritis. Fasciculations do not usually occur.

Old people have increasing difficulty in rapidly rotating the forearms. This probably is evidence of incoordination rather than muscular weakness. Difficulty in the finger to nose test is most often on the same basis. Cerebellar disorders may be suspected when ataxia is present in a patient with normal muscular strength (see Ataxia below).

## Reflexes

With increasing age the deep (tendon) reflexes first become sluggish and then disappear completely. The ankle jerks are first and most severely affected. The loss begins at 50 years of age in some persons and few people over 80 still have this reflex. The knee jerk is present in most people in the sixties but is obtained in less than half of those past 80. The arm reflexes (supinator biceps, triceps) are normal in all healthy people under 70 but are present in only 50 per cent of individuals in the late eighties. The reflex loss associated with normal aging is almost always symmetric. Asymmetric loss of reflexes should be further investigated. The decrease or loss of reflexes may be related to changes in sensory fibers, or to fibrosis of the tendons and muscles.

Abdominal cutaneous reflexes are obtained less frequently as age advances. They are present in most people in the fifties except when the abdominal wall is flabby, but then tend to disappear.

Babinski's sign has been found in 5 per cent of people past 70 without obvious neurologic disease (Howell 1949)

### **Cranial Nerves**

Ability to smell is decreased bilaterally. Presbyopia is an inevitable consequence of aging. The pupillary reactions to light and convergence are progressively altered with age and may be lost separately or together. The aged pupil thus may simulate the Argyll Robertson pupil (a miotic pupil fixed to light but reacting in convergence) but is seldom as miotic as the Argyll Robertson pupil. Half the individuals over 85 have completely inactive pupils which are usually small but may be dilated.

The ability to converge the eyes is lost in old age and there may be impairment of upward gaze. The range of ocular motion is frequently limited in all directions. Old people do not normally have nystagmus with quick and slow components.

Taste sensation is generally decreased. Deafness is common resulting from deterioration of the eighth cranial nerve or of the nerve and cochlea. The hearing impairment is greater for high pitched sounds than for low tones.

### **Sphincteric Functions**

Increased frequency of urination is common. This is most often related to prostatic enlargement in men and is generally associated with muscular weakness rather than neurologic disorder. Constipation in the aged patient may be related to decreased secretion of mucus or to inactive musculature in the colon. The tone of the sphincters is often diminished but incontinence on this basis occurs only in women with cystoceles and stress incontinence.

## **WEAKNESS AND PARALYSIS**

### **General Considerations**

Weakness is diminution of muscular strength. Paralysis indicates the loss of ability to contract muscles voluntarily. Paresis signifies



**incomplete paralysis** Organic paralysis results from interruption of the motor pathways anywhere from the cerebral cortex to the muscle. The suffix *plegia* originally meant stroke, but is now used to signify paralysis. **Hemiplegia** means paresis or paralysis of the face, arm, and leg on the same side of the body, or of the arm and leg only. **Diplegia** is paralysis affecting similar parts on both sides of the body, thus, bilateral paralysis of the face is a facial diplegia. **Paraplegia** is a form of diplegia involving the lower extremities. **Tetraplegia** is paralysis of all four extremities. **Monoplegia** means paralysis of a single extremity.

In analyzing paralysis, the first problem is to rule out nonneurologic causes of weakness. These are pain and consequent reluctance to move, fixation of joints, lassitude, and psychogenic disorders. Pain and fixation of joints are easily determined factors. Lassitude is lack of energy with preservation of muscular strength, such as occurs in generalized infections or depression; it is diagnosed by finding normal strength when the patient is strongly urged to perform particular movements.

Patients suffering psychologic disorders often have bizarre sensory changes, not corresponding to anatomic distributions. The deep reflexes may be absent, normal or hyperactive, but are always symmetric in the patient without organic disease. Incontinence of bowel or bladder is rare in psychologic disorders. Electrical stimulation never reveals the reaction of degeneration. The presence of psychopathologic factors does not exclude an organic disorder. Many individuals will be found to have such factors if the inquiry is sufficiently thorough. It is equally true that almost all patients with organic weakness have some psychogenic disorder because of their illness and perhaps because of their pre-existing mental status. Hysteria is uncommon in old age unless it began earlier in life.

The paralysis of organic origin has reasonably specific patterns such as the weakness of specific muscles resulting from interruption of the median nerve or the characteristic posture in a hemiplegic patient with flexion of the arm and circumduction of the leg. Pathologic associated movements,\* reflex asymmetry, Babinski's sign

\* Examples of these movements are flexion of the thumb when the fingers are passively flexed; any movement of a paralyzed limb when the opposite normal side is moved; and dorsiflexion of the foot when the knee is flexed.

atrophy with fasciculations and the pattern of paralysis form the basis for diagnosis of organic disorder. In psychologic disorders one may encounter contractures, atrophies, symmetric hyporeflexia and hyperreflexia, Hoffmann's sign bilaterally and clonus. Older persons may have symmetric loss of deep reflexes without organic disease.

If pain, mechanical difficulties, lassitude and psychogenic disorders have been excluded in the study of paralysis the physician then should establish anatomic and etiologic diagnoses. Where is the lesion or lesions? What is the nature of the lesion?

For clinical purposes one should consider motion as a response of muscle innervated by (1) a lower motor neuron with cells originating in the anterior horns of the spinal cord and in the brain stem and (2) an upper motor neuron or suprasegmental system with cells originating above the spinal cord. The suprasegmental system conventionally is divided into two parts: the pyramidal or corticospinal and the extrapyramidal. Lesions of the extrapyramidal system rarely cause paralysis although rigidity may cause slowing of motion and the patient may complain of weakness. The consideration of paralysis in this discussion therefore deals with the upper motor neuron (here used synonymously with the corticospinal tract) with the lower motor neuron consisting of the anterior horn cell and peripheral nerve and finally with muscle. The list of these types of paralysis although not arising because of a lesion in the nervous system often simulates the lower motor neuron syndrome and is therefore considered in this discussion.

Paralysis caused by disease of the upper motor neuron results in spasticity of the involved muscles. Babinski's sign, hyperreflexia and clonus and frequently pathologic associated movements. Reactions to electrical stimulation of muscle and nerve are qualitatively normal. Paralysis primarily involves the extensor muscles in the upper limb and the flexors in the lower limb. This predilection type of paralysis is reflected in the hemiplegic posture and allows these patients to learn to walk. Spasticity usually is not accompanied by atrophy. In this form of paralysis especially if sudden in onset flaccidity may be present at first but is replaced by spasticity in a few days or weeks. Paralysis is rarely complete and a muscle may be paralyzed in one movement but not in another. For example a hemiplegic patient who is not able to extend the wrist on command may do so when he closes his fist.

A lesion of the lower motor neuron results in flaccid paralysis with muscular atrophy, loss of deep reflexes, the absence of Babinski's sign and of pathologic associated movements, and the presence of electrical reaction of degeneration. Flaccidity is maintained as long as weakness is present, unless contractures supervene. To make an anatomic diagnosis, one must know the specific muscles made weak. A lesion of an individual peripheral nerve, for instance, causes weakness of the muscles supplied by that nerve. Lesions of a nerve root may be diagnosed in this manner by knowledge of the muscles supplied by the various roots. Lesions of the anterior horn cell usually cause weakness distributed more haphazardly. The presence of fasciculations aids in the diagnosis of the chronic types of anterior horn cell disease especially amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Paralysis is often complete in these conditions and the muscles are weak in any movement.

### **Hemiplegia**

This is weakness of the arm and leg on one side of the body with or without involvement of the face. It is rare although theoretically possible for the lesion producing hemiplegia to involve only the cerebral cortex. The area on the cortical surface innervating the opposite half of the body is so large that it is not often altered completely. The corticospinal fibers are closely united in the internal capsule however and hemiplegia is frequently caused by a small subcortical lesion. The weakness is on the side opposite the lesion. The fibers remain together in the midbrain, are slightly more separated in the pons and are gathered together again in the pyramid of the medulla oblongata. Hemiplegia may be produced by lesions in these locations although it is more frequently caused by lesions in the internal capsule. A lesion in the brain stem is diagnosed by the presence of cranial nerve signs on one side combined with hemiplegia on the opposite side ("crossed hemiplegia"). The lesion is then in the brain stem on the side of the cranial nerve palsy and at the level of the nuclei of the paralyzed nerves. The least frequent location of a lesion causing hemiplegia is in the spinal cord below the medulla and above the fifth cervical segment. In this instance only the paresis is on the same side as the lesion.

Hemiplegias may be sudden or gradual in onset and may be

transient or permanent. Those of sudden onset occur within minutes or hours, up to an arbitrary limit of 48 hours. Those continuing to progress for more than 48 hours are considered here as gradual in onset.

### Sudden Hemiplegia

Rapid onset of hemiplegia most commonly indicates occlusion, rupture or insufficiency of cerebral blood vessels. Occlusion may be by thrombus or embolus. Emboli occur in patients with the history and findings of rheumatic heart disease and its endocarditic sequelae. In older people emboli are more often related to atrial fibrillation or to myocardial infarcts on the left side of the heart resulting in mural thrombi that are dislodged. Evidence of atrial fibrillation or myocardial infarction is usually apparent.

The differentiation of cerebral thrombus from hemorrhage is sometimes difficult and is of more than theoretic interest. Some hemorrhages may be removed surgically. Furthermore if anti-coagulant therapy is to be used for the treatment of some forms of thrombosis as has been suggested by Millikan and his co-workers (1958) it is imperative that this condition be differentiated from hemorrhage (Table 23-2). The age of onset, the previous history, the onset with coma and convulsions and the level of the blood pressure are of no differential diagnostic value. It is often stated that the patient with elevated blood pressure is more likely to have a cerebral hemorrhage but analysis of the figures offered by Aring and Merritt (1935) as well as personal data shows slight difference in systolic pressure in the two conditions and no significant statistical difference when the diastolic pressure is considered. Hemorrhage or thrombosis may occur with or without systemic hypertension. The nature of the onset is of some value in diagnosis if this history is obtainable. The patient with a cerebral hemorrhage more often has a very rapid onset associated with headache and vomiting and this may occur at a time of activity or stress. Cerebral thrombosis may be sudden or gradual in onset but seldom is preceded by headache and vomiting. It often occurs during sleep. Coma and convulsions may occur at onset in both conditions and although they are more frequent in hemorrhage the difference in incidence is too slight to be of value in an individual case.

A lesion of the lower motor neuron results in flaccid paralysis with muscular atrophy, loss of deep reflexes, the absence of Babinski's sign and of pathologic associated movements and the presence of electrical reaction of degeneration. Flaccidity is maintained as long as weakness is present, unless contractures supervene. To make an anatomic diagnosis one must know the specific muscles made weak. A lesion of an individual peripheral nerve, for instance, causes weakness of the muscles supplied by that nerve. Lesions of a nerve root may be diagnosed in this manner by knowledge of the muscles supplied by the various roots. Lesions of the anterior horn cell usually cause weakness distributed more haphazardly. The presence of fasciculations aids in the diagnosis of the chronic types of anterior horn cell disease, especially amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Paralysis is often complete in these conditions and the muscles are weak in any movement.

### Hemiplegia

This is weakness of the arm and leg on one side of the body with or without involvement of the face. It is rare although theoretically possible for the lesion producing hemiplegia to involve only the cerebral cortex. The area on the cortical surface innervating the opposite half of the body is so large that it is not often altered completely. The corticospinal fibers are closely united in the internal capsule, however, and hemiplegia is frequently caused by a small subcortical lesion. The weakness is on the side opposite the lesion. The fibers remain together in the midbrain, are slightly more separated in the pons, and are gathered together again in the pyramid of the medulla oblongata. Hemiplegia may be produced by lesions in these locations, although it is more frequently caused by lesions in the internal capsule. A lesion in the brain stem is diagnosed by the presence of cranial nerve signs on one side combined with hemiplegia on the opposite side ("crossed hemiplegia"). The lesion is then in the brain stem on the side of the cranial nerve palsy and at the level of the nuclei of the paralyzed nerves. The least frequent location of a lesion causing hemiplegia is in the spinal cord below the medulla and above the fifth cervical segment. In this instance only the paresis is on the same side as the lesion.

Hemiplegias may be sudden or gradual in onset and may be

transient or permanent Those of sudden onset occur within minutes or hours, up to an arbitrary limit of 48 hours Those continuing to progress for more than 48 hours are considered here as gradual in onset

### Sudden Hemiplegia

Rapid onset of hemiplegia most commonly indicates occlusion, rupture or insufficiency of cerebral blood vessels Occlusion may be by thrombus or embolus Emboli occur in patients with the history and findings of rheumatic heart disease and its endocarditic sequelae In older people emboli are more often related to atrial fibrillation or to myocardial infarcts on the left side of the heart resulting in mural thrombi that are dislodged Evidence of atrial fibrillation or myocardial infarction is usually apparent

The differentiation of cerebral thrombus from hemorrhage is sometimes difficult and is of more than theoretic interest Some hemorrhages may be removed surgically Furthermore if anti-coagulant therapy is to be used for the treatment of some forms of thrombosis as has been suggested by Millikan and his co-workers (1958) it is imperative that this condition be differentiated from hemorrhage (Table 23.2) The age of onset, the previous history, the onset with coma and convulsions and the level of the blood pressure are of no differential diagnostic value It is often stated that a patient with elevated blood pressure is more likely to have a cerebral hemorrhage but analysis of the figures offered by Aring and Merritt (1935) as well as personal data shows slight difference in systolic pressure in the two conditions and no significant statistical difference when the diastolic pressure is considered Hemorrhage or thrombosis may occur with or without systemic hypertension The nature of the onset is of some value in diagnosis if this history is obtainable The patient with a cerebral hemorrhage more often has a very rapid onset associated with headache and vomiting and this may occur at a time of activity or stress Cerebral thrombosis may be sudden or gradual in onset but seldom is preceded by headache and vomiting It often occurs during sleep Coma and convulsions may occur at onset in both conditions and although they are more frequent in hemorrhage the difference in incidence is too slight to be of value in an individual case

Some blood in the cerebrospinal fluid is present in 74 per cent of patients with cerebral hemorrhage, and this finding is the only pathognomonic sign. If blood is not found in the cerebrospinal fluid, a contained cerebral hemorrhage may be present, but thrombosis or vascular insufficiency is more likely. Other factors in favor of hemorrhage are a cerebrospinal fluid pressure greater than 400 mm of water, xanthochromia, stiffness of the neck and Kernig's sign, and leukocytosis. Pure blood and these signs also suggest subarachnoid hemorrhage and occasionally a tumor may bleed.

TABLE 23-2. DIFFERENTIATION OF CEREBRAL THROMBOSIS AND HEMORRHAGE

	<i>Cerebral thrombosis</i>	<i>Cerebral hemorrhage</i>
Incidence (clinical)†	80%	1%
Age	Greater than 40	Greater than 40
Blood pressure	Systolic over 200 in 20% Diastolic over 100 in 52% Diastolic over 140 in 10%	Systolic over 200 in 40% Diastolic over 100 in 60% Diastolic over 140 in 11%
Other diseases	Arteriosclerosis, diabetes	Arteriosclerosis, diabetes
Onset	Sudden or gradual. Headache in 1%, vomiting in 1%, Often in sleep	Usually sudden. Headache in 63%, vomiting in 51%, Often in time of activity or stress
Coma	In 33% at onset, in 88% at time of admission	In 80% at onset, in 68% at time of admission
Convulsion	In 7% at onset	In 15% at onset
Stiff neck	In 7%	In 33%
Cerebrospinal fluid		
Pressure	Normal in 75%, never more than 400 mm. water	Increased in 60%, may be more than 400 mm. water
Blood	In 15%	In 74%
Color	None	Xanthochromia
Protein	Normal or slight elevation	Elevated
Leukocytosis	In 10%	In 33%

\* Based on an autopsy-proved series of 116 hemorrhages and 106 thromboses reported by Aring and Merritt (1936).

† Cerebral embolism is up to the remaining 1 per cent.

Bleeding into the cerebrospinal fluid must be distinguished from a "bloody tap" (traumatic tap) in which passage of the needle through paravertebral blood vessels causes blood to appear in the cerebrospinal fluid. The most reliable method of distinction is by the color of the supernatant fluid after prompt centrifuging. In the bloody tap the supernatant fluid is clear, but when there has been

bleeding into the cerebrospinal fluid xanthochromia occurs within four hours and increases thereafter. If any doubt arises about the color the test tube containing the fluid should be compared with a similar tube of tap water. It is also helpful to collect the fluid in three successive tubes. If the fluid clears as the cerebrospinal fluid flows a bloody tap is suspected. Blood from intracranial hemorrhage into the spinal fluid results in a uniformly colored fluid and each of the three tubes will have a similar appearance and red cell count. Bloody taps occasionally cause clotting of the spinal fluid but this apparently does not occur unless the red cell count exceeds 200,000. When the blood in the cerebrospinal fluid is the result of a cerebrovascular hemorrhage the fluid does not clot in the test tube because the fibrin has already been removed. Crenation of red blood cells is not of value in this differentiation.

The pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid often is increased in cerebral hemorrhage and may be more than 400 mm. of water. The pressure in thrombosis is usually normal and is never above 400. A greatly elevated pressure therefore suggests hemorrhage (or some other mass lesion) rather than thrombosis.

It should be emphasized that the above data taken from Aring and Merritt (1935) are based on an autopsy proved series. This circumstance undoubtedly weights the data in the direction of the more severe cases. It is obvious that small nonfatal hemorrhages or thromboses would not be represented. Many of the differential points indicate only the greater severity of the hemorrhagic process. The differential diagnosis is much easier from a table than it is when one is confronted with the individual patient and more valid in a large series than in a single patient.

Hemiplegia also may be caused by thrombosis of the internal carotid artery. This results in hemiplegia with or without aphasia and may be sudden or gradual in onset or recurrent. The internal carotid artery may be occluded at any level in its course but the most frequent site of thrombosis is the carotid sinus in the neck. Ophthalmologic symptoms do not usually accompany this condition but when present they aid in establishing the diagnosis clinically. These are complaint of either transient blindness, unilateral blindness or homonymous hemianopia, and pain in the eye. The most characteristic combination is blindness in one eye and hemiplegia on the other side. The ophthalmodynamometer also may be of



Some blood in the cerebrospinal fluid is present in 74 per cent of patients with cerebral hemorrhage, and this finding is the only pathognomonic sign. If blood is not found in the cerebrospinal fluid, a continued cerebral hemorrhage may be present, but thrombosis or vascular insufficiency is more likely. Other factors in favor of hemorrhage are a cerebrospinal fluid pressure greater than 400 mm of water, anisochromia, stiffness of the neck and Kernig's sign and leukocytosis. Pure blood and these signs also suggest subarachnoid hemorrhage, and occasionally a tumor may bleed.

TABLE 23.2 DIFFERENTIATION OF CEREBRAL THROMBOSIS AND HEMORRHAGE\*

	<i>Cerebral thrombus</i>	<i>Cerebral hemorrhage</i>
Incidence (clinical)†	80%	15%
Age	Greater than 40	Greater than 40
Blood pressure	Systolic over 200 in 26% Diastolic over 100 in 52% Diastolic over 140 in 10%	Systolic over 200 in 40% Diastolic over 100 in 65% Diastolic over 140 in 11%
Other diseases	Arteriosclerosis diabetes	Arteriosclerosis diabetes
Onset	Sudden or gradual Headache in 5% vomiting in 6% Often in sleep	Usually sudden Headache in 63% vomiting in 51% Often in time of activity or stress
Coma	In 33% at onset in 38% at time of admission	In 50% at onset in 68% at time of admission
Convulsions	In 7% at onset	In 15% at onset
Stiff neck	In 7%	In 50%
Cerebrospinal fluid		
Pressure	Normal in 75% never more than 400 mm water	Increased in 60% may be more than 400 mm water
Blood	In 15%	In 74%
Color	None	Anisochromic
Etiology	Normal or slight elevation	Elevated
Leukocytosis	In 10%	In 50%

\* Based on an autopsy proved series of 116 hemorrhages and 106 thromboses reported by Aring and Merritt (1933)

† Cerebral emboli make up the remaining 20 per cent

Bleeding into the cerebrospinal fluid must be distinguished from a bloody tap (traumatic tap) in which passage of the needle through paravertebral blood vessels causes blood to appear in the cerebrospinal fluid. The most reliable method of distinction is by the color of the supernatant fluid after prompt centrifuging. In the bloody tap, the supernatant fluid is clear, but when there has been

pairment of blood flow most commonly is caused by atherosclerosis but a defective circle of Willis may play a role. Polycythemia may cause hemorrhage as well as thrombosis.

Diagnostic studies in hemiplegia of sudden onset should include a history and physical examination, blood count, analysis of the urine, determination of the blood sugar and urea nitrogen, roentgenograms of the skull and chest, electroencephalogram and electrocardiogram. If papilledema is not present, lumbar puncture should be performed to determine the presence or absence of white or red blood cells, the height of the pressure, the protein content, and the reaction to tests for syphilis.

Prognosis is determined by a combination of factors. The state of consciousness after the first few hours offers a guide. Continued coma is associated with a high mortality (Rankin, 1957). Other unfavorable findings are pupils fixed to light, whether dilated or constricted, papilledema, fever, hypertension, bloody cerebrospinal fluid, and Cheyne Stokes respirations. Favorable signs are maintained or restored consciousness, clear cerebrospinal fluid, and normal pupillary reactions.

The general care of the patient with hemiplegia is important. An open airway must be maintained. It is best to place the patient in the semiprone, head down position to allow drainage of secretions. He should be turned every two hours. Repeated suctioning of the upper respiratory tract is irritating and should be avoided. Tracheotomy may be required in the event that cyanosis is present and is not relieved by clearing the air passages or administering oxygen. Respiration may be depressed by oxygen administration when carbon dioxide retention is high, because oxygen then blocks the stimulus to respiration. The level of carbon dioxide in the blood is measured by direct determination, but retention may be suspected clinically when the blood pressure rises rapidly.

Fluid balance is maintained by intravenous administration of approximately 2000 cc of fluids each day, distributed equally between a 5 per cent solution of glucose in distilled water and a 5 per cent solution of glucose in physiologic salt solution. Strongly hypertonic solutions are not tolerated well by older patients. If the patient has not returned to consciousness after two days, additional nourishment should be supplied through a polyethylene gastric feeding tube. Because of the danger of gastric dilatation

value if the occlusion is below the point of origin of the ophthalmic artery (Heyman, *et al*, 1957) Pressure in the retinal artery is then reduced on the side of the occlusion The pulsation of the carotid may be decreased in the neck or mouth Angiography of the vessels in the neck is the most certain method of diagnosis, but may cause further thrombosis, and therefore is not always indicated

Less common causes of hemiplegia of rapid onset include cerebral neoplasm or abscess trauma, subdural hematoma, general paresis and systemic disorders Hemiplegia owing to mass lesions is usually gradual in onset, but may be rapid, *whether the tumor is benign or malignant* (Netsky and Watson, 1956) Displacement of the pineal gland may occur with cerebrovascular occlusion, and should not be taken as proof of a mass lesion (Droni *et al*, 1957) For these reasons each person with a 'stroke' should be studied carefully and even when improvement occurs should be re examined at regular intervals

Except for subdural hematoma the usual types of trauma causing hemiplegia will be apparent from the history or examination Surgical removal of subdural hematomas is relatively simple and it is unfortunate that they are often overlooked by physicians who dismiss the difficulty as a stroke or cerebrovascular accident Suspicion of subdural hematoma should be aroused (1) when a stroke fails to improve (2) when neurologic findings such as hemiplegia but especially the state of consciousness fluctuate from hour to hour, (3) when increased intracranial pressure is found without localizing signs, (4) when a patient with neurologic signs has a history of alcoholism or of trauma with even momentary loss of consciousness (5) when the patient with a stroke has a dilated, nonreacting pupil Further detailed study is then warranted, and multiple trephinations or craniotomy may be necessary

General paresis is usually associated with intellectual deterioration perioral tremor and Argyll Robertson or irregular pupils characteristic changes in the cerebrospinal fluid are always found in the untreated patient

It should not be forgotten that systemic disorders may result in sudden hemiplegia These include myocardial infarction uremia diabetic coma or hyperinsulinism, and polycythemia Hemiplegia may result when these conditions are superimposed on a cerebral circulation impaired by decreased blood flow on one side Im

produce generalized vasodilatation with a drop in systemic blood pressure and may actually cause harm by decreasing the cerebral blood flow.

Similarly the value of cortisone in reducing cerebral edema is questionable (Dyken and White 1956).

More enthusiastic claims have been made for anticoagulant drugs (Mullikan et al., 1958) although their value is sharply limited in cerebral thrombosis. The carotid does not have a thrombus nor can they restore infarcted cerebral tissue. The use of these drugs is associated with many potential dangers. The patient may have had a cerebral hemorrhage rather than a thrombus or the infarct may be hemorrhagic; in such cases anticoagulants may promote bleeding. The treatment may produce hemorrhages elsewhere in the body and the patient is subject to the constant threat of hemorrhage from trauma. The prothrombin time must be checked often and sometimes the desired limits are exceeded (double the prothrombin time of the control). A decision has not been reached as to how long anticoagulant therapy should be continued, but presumably it would be for life inasmuch as atherosclerotic plaques do not regress. In cerebral thrombosis the value of anticoagulants if it exists would be in preventing extension of the thrombus and the occurrence of additional thromboses. Anticoagulant therapy may possibly prevent sludging of blood (Meyer 1958). More controlled data are needed before a final conclusion is reached.

Massive intracerebral hemorrhage is usually fatal. If the hemorrhage is minor the patient will recover spontaneously. In recent years, attempts have been made to decide which patients fall between these two extremes since such cases may respond to evacuation of the blood. Treatment is otherwise as outlined for the care of the hemiplegic patient.

The treatment of embolic infarction is also similar to that of thrombotic occlusion except for the management of auricular fibrillation or myocardial infarction.

#### Gradual Hemiplegia

Hemiplegia of gradual onset is most often related to growth of a cerebral neoplasm. This diagnosis should be considered in any patient with progressive neurologic dysfunction. It should be con-

about 200 cc of formula should be given every two hours rather than larger amounts at infrequent intervals

Excessive restlessness is controlled by applying mittens to the hands and securing the hands to the bed rails. Barbiturates, as well as other sedatives and narcotics, should be kept to a minimum because they may further depress the central nervous system. Convulsions are treated with Dilantin, and barbiturates should be used only to control repeated seizures.

Infections are treated as they arise, but not prophylactically. It is best not to insert an indwelling catheter if it can possibly be avoided. External drainage should be used for the incontinent male patient. If an indwelling catheter is inserted, tidal drainage to allow emptying every three hours should be used to prevent a contracted bladder. An enema should be given every two days.

Physiotherapy is instituted promptly after two days, beginning with passive exercise of each joint through a full range of motion then encouraging active exercises as soon as feasible. The patient or his family may be taught the methods of physiotherapy. Speech therapy is of uncertain value for the aphasic patient except to enable him to give some expression of his wishes even though his speech remains agrammatical.

Aside from general supportive care, specific treatment of the patient with a cerebral thrombus has in the past consisted largely of attempts to produce cerebral vasodilatation. More recently the use of anticoagulant drugs or cortisone has been advocated. In a few instances of thrombosis of the internal carotid artery the occluding material has been removed, but with little effect unless the thrombectomy was done before cerebral infarction had occurred (Gass and Smathers 1957).

Vasodilators were given on the assumption that a central zone of fully destroyed cerebral tissue was surrounded by a zone of partially damaged tissue. The vasodilating agents used in the past included histamine, nicotinic acid, carbon dioxide, papaverine and block or removal of the stellate ganglion. Although occasional good results have been reported with these methods it is doubtful whether such experiments have been well controlled. There is at present no certain evidence that these methods are of value and it is probable that, without therapy, the vessels surrounding the infarct react to the insult by dilatation. Agents such as histamine

The relative incidence of brain tumors in the aged is considerably different from that in the general population (Table 23-3). The neoplasm most frequently encountered in old people is the highly malignant glioblastoma multiforme and this tumor is more common than in younger patients. Metastatic deposits also are encountered often but meningiomas and acoustic neuromas are surprisingly common in later life. These four neoplasms comprise more than 90 per cent of those occurring in older people. Surgical intervention is always warranted when the condition of the patient permits because the histologic diagnosis can be established *only* in this way and because of the possibility of finding a benign tumor.

Slowly progressive hemiplegias rarely may be caused by general paresis or viral encephalitides. The use of complement fixation tests on the cerebrospinal fluid and blood will help to establish the diagnosis. Recently it has been demonstrated that slowly progressive hemiplegia may be related to slow progressive occlusion of the internal carotid artery (see Sudden Hemiplegia above).

### Transient Hemiplegia

Transient and recurrent hemiplegia is a problem that has aroused increased interest in recent years. It is obvious that the usual large thrombosis or hemorrhage cannot be the cause of paralysis lasting a few minutes or hours or recurring hourly or daily. In the past the concept of vascular spasm was invoked frequently to explain such short lasting paralyses. This concept remains to be proved and is based largely on inferential evidence. Transient hemiplegia may be caused by small thrombi producing small infarcts with rapid restoration of function by collateral circulation. Transient hemiplegia may follow a seizure (Todd's paralysis).

More recently it has been suggested that transient drops in the systemic blood pressure may cause hemiparesis and this condition has been designated cerebrovascular insufficiency. Hypotension reduces the cerebral blood flow and when atherosclerosis is present may cause damage to the region supplied by an incompletely occluded vessel. Such falls in blood pressure may be spontaneous or may result from drug therapy or may follow a myocardial infarct.

The diagnosis of insufficiency of the internal carotid artery is suggested when there is a history of recurrent hemiplegia with or without aphasia. The diagnosis of insufficiency of the vertebral and

sidered also if convulsive seizures begin in an adult. If the patient suffers a cerebrovascular accident of sudden onset, but fails to improve within 48 hours or if apparent vascular insults occur repeatedly with the same signs and symptoms, the suspicion of a mass lesion is increased. It is clear that signs of increased intracranial pressure, such as papilledema, roentgenographic evidence of erosion of the sella turcica or shift of the pineal gland, headache, nausea, and vomiting all suggest the possibility of a brain tumor. Other factors arousing suspicion include mental symptoms, especially when they are associated with focal neurologic signs, progressive deterioration of vision as an indication of papilledema (although this symptom may be related to glaucoma, optic atrophy, or retinal degeneration), and progressive defects in the visual fields.

Roentgenograms of the skull and chest should be performed on all patients suspected of harboring a brain tumor. The electroencephalogram may indicate focal slow wave activity suggestive of neoplasm. Arteriography or visualization of the cerebral ventricular system may be necessary for definitive diagnosis. Recently the use of radioactive isotopes has been advocated for localization.

TABLE 23-3 RELATIVE FREQUENCY OF DIFFERENT TYPES OF BRAIN TUMOR

<i>New Haven Hospital* Per (758 patients of all ages) cent</i>		<i>Mayo Clinic† Per (100 patients over 60) cent</i>		<i>Montefiore Hospital‡ Per (100 patients over 60) cent</i>	
Glioblastoma multiforme	21	Glioblastoma m	30	Glioblastoma m	31
Metastatic tumor	13	Meningioma	25	Meningioma	30
Astrocytoma	11	Acoustic neuroma	22	Metastatic tumor	19
Meningioma	11	Metastatic tumor	11	Acoustic neuroma	8
Abscess	9	Pituitary tumor	3	Craniopharyngioma	3
Pituitary tumor	4	Astrocytoma	1	Pituitary tumor	2
Medulloblastoma	4	Oligodendroglioma	1	Hemangioblastoma	2
Acoustic neuroma	3	Hemangioblastoma	1	Astrocytoma	1
Hemangioma	3	Craniopharyngioma	1	Astroblastoma	1
Craniopharyngioma	2		100		100
Oligodendroglioma	2				
Unclassified glioma	2				
Others	15				
	100				

\* Reported by Zimmerman *et al* (1956)

† Reported by Moersch *et al* (1941)

‡ Personal data

The relative incidence of brain tumors in the aged is considerably different from that in the general population (Table 23-3). The neoplasm most frequently encountered in old people is the highly malignant glioblastoma multiforme and this tumor is more common than in younger patients. Metastatic deposits also are encountered often but meningiomas and acoustic neuromas are surprisingly common in later life. These four neoplasms comprise more than 90 per cent of those occurring in older people. Surgical intervention is always warranted when the condition of the patient permits because the histologic diagnosis can be established *only* in this way and because of the possibility of finding a benign tumor.

Slowly progressive hemiplegias rarely may be caused by general paresis or viral encephalitides. The use of complement fixation tests on the cerebrospinal fluid and blood will help to establish the diagnosis. Recently it has been demonstrated that slowly progressive hemiplegia may be related to slow progressive occlusion of the internal carotid artery (see Sudden Hemiplegia above).

### **Transient Hemiplegia**

Transient and recurrent hemiplegia is a problem that has aroused increased interest in recent years. It is obvious that the usual large thrombosis or hemorrhage cannot be the cause of paralysis lasting a few minutes or hours or recurring hourly or daily. In the past the concept of vascular spasm was invoked frequently to explain such short lasting paralyzes. This concept remains to be proved and is based largely on inferential evidence. Transient hemiplegia may be caused by small thrombi producing small infarcts with rapid restoration of function by collateral circulation. Transient hemiplegia may follow a seizure (Todd's paralysis).

More recently it has been suggested that transient drops in the systemic blood pressure may cause hemiparesis and this condition has been designated cerebrovascular insufficiency. Hypotension reduces the cerebral blood flow and when atherosclerosis is present may cause damage to the region supplied by an incompletely occluded vessel. Such falls in blood pressure may be spontaneous or may result from drug therapy or may follow a myocardial infarct.

The diagnosis of insufficiency of the internal carotid artery is suggested when there is a history of recurrent hemiplegia with or without aphasia. The diagnosis of insufficiency of the vertebral and



basilar artery system is made by the combination of recurrent hemiplegia, often shifting from one side to the other, with signs of involvement of the cranial nerves, and cortical blindness. Permanent paralysis may occur at any time in the course of the disorder.

Anticoagulant therapy probably has its greatest value in the insufficiency states (Millikan, *et al*, 1958). Too little time has elapsed to judge the value of this treatment, however, inasmuch as the natural history of these diseases indicates that spontaneous recovery may occur. When the blood pressure falls, mild vasopressor drugs such as ephedrine may be given to maintain the systemic blood pressure and hence the cerebral blood flow.

### Paraplegia

Paraplegia is complete weakness of both lower extremities. The term paraparesis is used for partial degrees of paraplegia. "Senile paraplegia" is not a single entity but is caused by many different disorders. The most common location of a lesion causing paraplegia is in the spinal cord below the cervical region down to and including the cauda equina. Less frequently the lesion may be in the cerebral cortex or subcortex, or in the peripheral nerves or the muscles. The first decision to be made is whether the upper or lower motor neuron is affected. Lesions of the spinal cord, cortex or subcortex may produce weakness of the upper motor neuron type. Within the spinal cord lesions above the level of the twelfth thoracic vertebra or the fourth lumbar segment of the spinal cord are associated with this type of weakness. Most of the corticospinal fibers do not descend into the sacral region.

Paraplegia related to a lesion of the upper motor neuron is the more frequent type and may be rapid or gradual in onset. Rapid onset occurs within hours, or up to one or two days. The cause most often is sudden compression by tumor of the spinal cord or its blood vessels. Tumors may compress the cord or its blood vessels or may affect the spinal cord by causing collapse of vertebral bodies. The destructive lesions include metastatic carcinoma, retroperitoneal sarcoma and lymphoma. Malignant tumors of this variety generally lie outside the dura. By contrast, the benign meningioma and neuroma are almost always subdural.

Compression may be made by an epidural abscess. This type of

abscess will be suspected when decubiti or furuncles are present on the back, but may be unsuspected when it is metastatic from other sources. Direct trauma may cause sudden paraplegia, but the history of an accident usually makes this clear. Thrombosis of the anterior spinal artery, hematomyelia, or the pressure of an aortic aneurysm may cause sudden paraplegia. In rare cases sudden cortical paraplegia may follow occlusion of both anterior cerebral arteries.

Sudden compression of the spinal cord results in an immediate flaccid paralysis with a sensory level affecting all types of sensation and paralysis of both sphincters. Reflexes are lost in the first days or weeks. When this catastrophe occurs the possibility of immediate surgical intervention should be considered. If lumbar puncture reveals a high protein content or block in the Queckenstedt test or if roentgenograms demonstrate vertebral collapse, erosion of pedicles or myelographic abnormalities, laminectomy should be done to reveal the nature of the tumor and afford a decompression. Speed is necessary because function rarely returns if sudden paraplegia is allowed to progress for more than two days. Decompression is warranted even in instances of malignant tumors because it may prevent or delay loss of sphincter control.

Gradual onset of paraplegia often is caused by slow growth of the tumors already discussed or by degenerative disorders.

The clinical picture of gradual compression of the spinal cord by tumor is a progressive spastic paraplegia. Progression may occur over a period of weeks or months. Pain of nerve root distribution is the most frequent initial symptom. This occurs at the level of compression and is made worse by coughing, straining, or sneezing. Paresthesias are often described by the patient as numbness or tingling. Function of the urinary bladder is disturbed early or late in the course; this dysfunction may be manifested as difficulty in initiating flow or as incontinence. Examination reveals increased reflexes in the lower extremities and Babinski's sign. The arms are not involved if the lesion is below the cervical segments of the spinal cord. A sensory level is often present, usually affecting pain and temperature sensation but also involving touch and posterior column sensibility.

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis may begin in the lower extremities but widespread fasciculations and atrophy together with involvement of the upper extremities soon occur (see Tetraplegia).

basilar artery system is made by the combination of recurrent hemiplegia, often shifting from one side to the other, with signs of involvement of the cranial nerves, and cortical blindness. Permanent paralysis may occur at any time in the course of the disorder.

Anticoagulant therapy probably has its greatest value in the insufficiency states (Mullikan, *et al*, 1958). Too little time has elapsed to judge the value of this treatment, however, inasmuch as the natural history of these diseases indicates that spontaneous recovery may occur. When the blood pressure falls, mild vasopressor drugs such as ephedrine may be given to maintain the systemic blood pressure and hence the cerebral blood flow.

### Paraplegia

Paraplegia is complete weakness of both lower extremities. The term paraparesis is used for partial degrees of paraplegia. "Senile paraplegia" is not a single entity, but is caused by many different disorders. The most common location of a lesion causing paraplegia is in the spinal cord below the cervical region, down to and including the cauda equina. Less frequently the lesion may be in the cerebral cortex or subcortex, or in the peripheral nerves or the muscles. The first decision to be made is whether the upper or lower motor neuron is affected. Lesions of the spinal cord, cortex, or subcortex may produce weakness of the upper motor neuron type. Within the spinal cord, lesions above the level of the twelfth thoracic vertebra or the fourth lumbar segment of the spinal cord are associated with this type of weakness. Most of the corticospinal fibers do not descend into the sacral region.

Paraplegia related to a lesion of the upper motor neuron is the more frequent type, and may be rapid or gradual in onset. Rapid onset occurs within hours or up to one or two days. The cause most often is sudden compression by tumor of the spinal cord or its blood vessels. Tumors may compress the cord or its blood vessels or may affect the spinal cord by causing collapse of vertebral bodies. The destructive lesions include metastatic carcinoma, retroperitoneal sarcoma, and lymphoma. Malignant tumors of this variety generally lie outside the dura. By contrast the benign meningioma and neuroma are almost always subdural.

Compression may be made by an epidural abscess. This type of

of involvement of the posterior columns ataxia lightning pains, and occasional visceral crises

Finally senile myopathy in which reflexes may be diminished may mimic the lower motor neuron type of paraplegia but significant sensory changes are lacking. The muscles are firm on palpation. Wasting of muscles is common in old people but seldom causes major weakness. Contractures from disuse may immobilize the patient but these are readily apparent.

Senile changes of joints also may cause weakness and secondary focal atrophy but clinical and radiographic evidence of arthritic disease is present, and significant neurologic signs are not found.

### Monoplegia

This term denotes paralysis of one extremity. Monoplegia most often is caused by a lesion arising in the direct innervation of the extremity. Involvement of the brachial or lumbosacral plexus or the peripheral nerves of the extremity is common. Lesions affecting the anterior horn cells unilaterally are rare in old people except as a residual of old poliomyelitis. A plexus lesion produces a lower motor neuron type of paralysis and is diagnosed by the distribution of the sensory changes and the specific muscles weakened. The plexuses are most often damaged by trauma but aneurysm or infiltration by primary or metastatic neoplasms may be the causative agent.

The peripheral nerves most frequently affected are the median ulnar and common peroneal. Involvement of the sciatic nerve causes pain more often than muscular weakness (see Pain in Extremities below). The median nerve may be damaged by trauma but in older people especially women it is more often compressed in the carpal tunnel (Kremer *et al.* 1953). If the lesion is at the wrist weakness will be found in the short abductor of the thumb, the short flexor of the thumb and the opponens pollicis. When the damage is above the forearm the additional muscles weakened are pronator teres flexor carpi radialis palmaris longus flexor digitorum sublimis flexor pollicis longus and flexor digitorum profundus I and II. The sensory loss is on the radial side of the hand on the palmar surface and on the dorsum of the thumb and first two or three fingers.

Syringomyelia may come on late in life, and is diagnosed by the dissociated sensory changes (loss of pain and temperature sensation and preservation of touch) as well as by the presence of atrophy, fasciculations, and trophic changes. Subacute combined system disease is suspected when there is a macrocytic anemia, and when posterior as well as lateral column signs are demonstrated. If the patient has been treated with vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, it may be necessary to determine the absorbability of the radioactive form of the vitamin (Krevans *et al*, 1956). In cases of pernicious anemia this vitamin is not absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract. A parasagittal cerebral lesion must be considered in cases of paraplegia where typical sensory levels and pain are absent, and when investigation fails to disclose a lesion in the spinal cord or vertebral column. The areas in the cerebral cortex that control the legs lie on either side near the mid line and may be damaged by tumor or subdural hematoma.

Critchley (1956) has described subcortical paraplegia of gradual onset in which a hemiplegic patient becomes paraplegic. In these instances, the patient remains immobile after onset of the hemiplegia and with disuse the normal leg bends to assume the same position as the paralyzed limb. Ultimately the two legs fit tightly against one another. Signs of upper motor neuron involvement are found only on the hemiplegic side.

Paraplegia secondary to lesions of the lower motor neuron may be acute in onset but usually is gradual. If the onset is rapid the most likely diagnosis is a polyneuritis or metabolic alteration. These are discussed more fully under Tetraplegia (below) because such disorders most often affect the hands as well.

Paraplegia of gradual onset may also be related to polyneuritis. In these cases, the weakness and sensory loss are in the distal parts of the legs. Paresthesias are common. Neoplasms in the cauda equina or compression of these nerves by diseases of the vertebral column causes gradual loss of function because of the large space in which the nerves are contained. These neoplasms may be diagnosed by the clinical picture of pains in the legs, sensory changes in root distribution (rather than complete loss up to a given level), and paralysis of sphincters. The ataxia of tabes may resemble paraplegia but the hands are always involved to some extent, thus diagnosis is made by the finding of pupillary abnormalities, signs

of involvement of the posterior columns with lightning pains and occasional visceral crises

Finally senile myopathy, in which reflexes may be diminished may mimic the lower motor neuron type of paraplegia but significant sensory changes are lacking. The muscles are firm on palpation. Wasting of muscles is common in old people but seldom causes major weakness. Contractures from disease may immobilize the patient but these are readily apparent.

Senile changes of joints also may cause weakness and secondary focal atrophy but clinical and radiographic evidence of arthritic disease is present and significant neurologic signs are not found.

### Monoplegia

This term denotes paralysis of one extremity. Monoplegia most often is caused by a lesion arising in the direct innervation of the extremity. Involvement of the brachial or lumbosacral plexus or the peripheral nerves of the extremity is common. Lesions affecting the anterior horn cells unilaterally are rare in old people except as a residual of old poliomyelitis. A plexus lesion produces a lower motor neuron type of paralysis and is diagnosed by the distribution of the sensory changes and the specific muscles weakened. The plexuses are most often damaged by trauma but aneurysm or infiltration by primary or metastatic neoplasms may be the causative agent.

The peripheral nerves most frequently affected are the median ulnar and common peroneal. Involvement of the sciatic nerve causes pain more often than muscular weakness (see Pain in Extremities below). The median nerve may be damaged by trauma but in older people especially women it is more often compressed in the carpal tunnel (Kremer *et al.* 1953). If the lesion is at the wrist weakness will be found in the short abductor of the thumb the short flexor of the thumb and the opponens pollicis. When the damage is above the forearm the additional muscles weakened are pronator teres flexor carpi radialis palmaris longus flexor digitorum sublimis flexor pollicis longus and flexor digitorum profundus I and II. The sensory loss is on the radial side of the hand on the palmar surface and on the dorsum of the thumb and first two or three fingers.

Compression of the ulnar nerve most often occurs at the elbow, resulting in weakness of the flexor carpi ulnaris, flexor digitorum profundus III and IV, abductor minimi digiti, and adductor pollicis. The sensory loss is on the ulnar side of the hand is usually similar on palmar and dorsal surfaces, and implicates the little finger, or the ring and little fingers up to the wrist. The radial edge of the sensory loss often is in the middle of the ring finger. Characteristic clawing of the hand often permits diagnosis by direct observation.

The common peroneal nerve probably is the single nerve most frequently affected in older people. Its position near the head of the fibula allows compression by crossing the legs or by a hard mattress during sleep. The muscles affected are the anterior tibial, the extensors of the toes, and the peroneal muscles. These move the foot up and out. Weakness of the anterior tibial muscle causes a foot drop and a characteristic steppage gait. The sensory loss is on the outer aspect of the leg and the dorsal surface of the foot.

Any older individual with a single nerve lesion not obviously related to trauma, compression, or a neoplastic or inflammatory infiltration should be investigated for diabetes mellitus. In diabetes mononeuritis is less common than polyneuritis (Martin 1953), but unsuspected diabetes may be first manifested by signs of affection of the peripheral nerves.

If weakness is of the upper motor neuron type and affects the leg only, a disturbance in the region supplied by the anterior cerebral artery should be suspected. Lesions affecting only the arm are of the cerebral cortex are uncommon but suggest local neoplastic infiltration or thrombosis of a portion of the middle cerebral artery. Degenerative diseases such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis usually are widespread but in the early stages may affect a single extremity. Progression of the disease soon makes the diagnosis apparent.

### **Tetraplegia**

This is paralysis of all four extremities. The lesions causing tetraplegia may be distributed bilaterally in the cerebral hemispheres or in the brain stem down to and including the upper cervical region of the spinal cord. Tetraplegia may also result from wide

pread involvement of the spinal cord or of nerves, as in polyneuritis from disorder at the myoneural junction or from wide spread disease of muscle. Generalized paralysis may also be related to metabolic alterations such as uremia, diabetic coma, or a rise or fall in the level of serum potassium.

The diseases most commonly causing weakness in all four extremities include bilateral cerebrovascular accidents, insufficiency or thrombosis of the basilar artery, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, subacute combined degeneration, syringomyelia, and compression of the brain stem or cervical cord by extramedullary or intramedullary neoplasms. All these produce the upper motor neuron type of weakness, although signs of lower motor disorder may also be present. A combination of upper and lower motor neuron signs without sensory changes is suggestive of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis and is diagnostic when widespread atrophy and fasciculations are combined with hyperreflexia and Babinski's sign bilaterally. This is a clinical diagnosis; the various laboratory tests simply rule out other diseases. Examination of the cerebrospinal fluid is within normal limits and roentgenographic examination is usually unrevealing. Myelography to rule out tumor should be done if the diagnosis is not clear and there are no cranial nerve signs.

The most common cause of tetraplegia of the pure lower motor neuron type is polyneuropathy. This disorder may be caused by deficiency diseases, infections, or toxic agents. The clinical picture is a diffuse distal flaccid weakness with pain and paresthesias, often with stocking and glove forms of sensory loss. Mild and uncontrolled diabetes mellitus is often a cause (Martin 1953). Elderly individuals who have a poor diet, who drink alcohol excessively, or who have absorptive defects may suffer from thiamin deficiency. Many acute or chronic infections are associated with polyneuritis, but these usually are made apparent by the associated fever, leukocytosis, and systemic manifestations. Lead, arsenic, and thallium are among the toxins to be investigated in polyneuropathy of obscure nature.

Metastatic neoplasms may directly invade brachial and lumbosacral plexuses. In addition, polyneuropathy associated with malignant neoplasms but not caused by direct invasion has been described (Henson *et al.* 1954). The neoplasms may arise at any site but most often are in the lung. In these rare cases the first mani-



Compression of the ulnar nerve most often occurs at the elbow, resulting in weakness of the flexor carpi ulnaris, flexor digitorum profundus III and IV, abductor minimi digiti and adductor pollicis. The sensory loss is on the ulnar side of the hand, is usually similar on palmar and dorsal surfaces, and implicates the little finger, or the ring and little fingers up to the wrist. The radial edge of the sensory loss often is in the middle of the ring finger. Characteristic clawing of the hand often permits diagnosis by direct observation.

The common peroneal nerve probably is the single nerve most frequently affected in older people. Its position near the head of the fibula allows compression by crossing the legs or by a hard mattress during sleep. The muscles affected are the anterior tibial—the extensors of the toes, and the peroneal muscles. These move the foot up and out. Weakness of the anterior tibial muscle causes a foot drop and a characteristic steppage gait. The sensory loss is on the outer aspect of the leg and the dorsal surface of the foot.

Any older individual with a single nerve lesion not obviously related to trauma, compression or a neoplastic or inflammatory infiltration should be investigated for diabetes mellitus. In diabetes mononeuritis is less common than polyneuritis (Martin, 1953), but unsuspected diabetes may be first manifested by signs of affection of the peripheral nerves.

If weakness is of the upper motor neuron type and affects the leg only, a disturbance in the region supplied by the anterior cerebral artery should be suspected. Lesions affecting only the arm area of the cerebral cortex are uncommon but suggest local neoplastic infiltration or thrombosis of a portion of the middle cerebral artery. Degenerative diseases such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis usually are widespread but in the early stages may affect a single extremity. Progression of the disease soon makes the diagnosis apparent.

### **Tetraplegia**

This is paralysis of all four extremities. The lesions causing tetraplegia may be distributed bilaterally in the cerebral hemispheres or in the brain stem down to and including the upper cervical region of the spinal cord. Tetraplegia may also result from wide

extending from an otitis media herpes zoster aneurysm and non specific inflammation

The facial nerve leaves the skull through the stylomastoid foramen Involvement distal to the foramen is most common and results in weakness of muscles innervated by the facial nerve without other neurologic signs The nerve in this distal portion may be damaged by trauma exposure to cold parotitis or most commonly by unknown factors

Bells palsy should be treated conservatively if thorough investigation does not reveal a remediable cause The eye is protected with a drop of methyl cellulose each morning by glasses or if desired by an eye patch Suturing the eyelid is necessary only in severe or protracted cases Regular upward massage of the face prevents sagging of muscles Study of the reaction of degeneration after two weeks is helpful for prognosis Nerve anastomosis while rarely necessary for Bells palsy is indicated if recovery does not take place within nine months to a year

The central or upper motor neuron type of facial paralysis is diagnosed when movements of the upper part of the face are preserved Action of the frontalis muscle is normal but the orbicularis oculi is partially affected The lower part of the face is weak or paralyzed in voluntary movement but may move fully with emotional stimuli The weakness may be related to a lesion anywhere in the path from the facial area in the cerebral cortex through the posterior limb of the internal capsule down through the midbrain and pons The nucleus of the facial nerve is in the midportion of the pons and the supranuclear fibers decussate just above the nucleus If the face alone is involved the lesion must be small enough not to implicate the fibers for the arm and leg thus causing hemiplegia A central type of facial paralysis may be the first sign of a progressive hemiplegia If facial weakness occurs alone it is most often caused by a small thrombus or hemorrhage A neoplasm or degenerative disease must be considered when the facial or bodily weakness is progressive

Bilateral facial palsy (facial diplegia) may occur in infectious polyneuritis in true bulbar palsy (a type of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis) and in pseudobulbar palsy better called supranuclear palsy Infectious polyneuritis is not common in the aged and is accompanied by other evidences of polyneuropathy in the extremities

festation of malignancy may be a polyneuropathy. The cause is not known. The existence of a primary tumor soon becomes manifest. Thorough investigation of the chest is indicated in any case of polyneuropathy for which the cause is not apparent.

Muscular dystrophy is uncommon, but not unheard of, in the elderly patient. Polymyositis is more common, and may be diagnosed from the leukocytosis, increased sedimentation rate, painful muscles, associated dermatologic findings, and systemic manifestations. The patient may improve with steroid medication.

Myasthenia gravis, although it is most frequent in young people, may occur in persons past 60. This disorder may weaken muscles generally, but most often affects the eyelids, the muscles of ocular motion, and the facial and pharyngeal muscles. Weakness increases through the day, is relieved by rest, and the diagnosis is confirmed when strength returns after an intravenous injection of Tensilon. Tensilon is for diagnostic purposes only, Prostigmin, Metylase, and Mestinon are used for therapy.

### Facial Weakness

This form of paralysis is divided into central and peripheral types. In the central type the muscles of the upper part of the face are spared. If the entire side of the face is involved including the frontalis and orbicularis oculi muscles, the weakness is of the peripheral or lower motor neuron type and is called Bell's palsy. The paralysis may be due to a lesion in the pons, in the posterior fossa between the pons and the internal auditory meatus within the temporal bone, or in the facial nerve after its exit from the skull. The suspicion of a lesion in the pons is raised if there is associated weakness of the sixth cranial nerve, motor or sensory loss in the distribution of the fifth cranial nerve, affection of other cranial nerve nuclei, or hemiplegia. Pontic disease may be caused by hemorrhage or thrombosis, neoplasms, or syringobulbia.

If the lesion is in the posterior fossa, unilateral deafness usually is present also. Lesions within the temporal bone will cause loss of taste in the anterior two thirds of the tongue and increased auditory acuity if the seventh nerve is affected above the branch to the stapedius muscle. The common disorders of the posterior fossa and temporal bone are tumors of the cerebellopontine angle, infection

severe enough to awaken him or to keep him from sleeping and how it is relieved or made worse.

This discussion will be limited to the common painful neurologic syndromes occurring in the aged and will be divided according to the affected regions of the body.

### Facial Pain and Headache

When pain in the face is the complaint an attempt should be made first to discover any obvious local disease such as glaucoma, foreign bodies in the eye conjunctivitis sinusitis superficial tumors, or herpes zoster. The location of the pain may be of value in diagnosis. If pain is in the region of the mandibular joint the cause might be arthritis of the temporomandibular joint poorly fitting dentures or malocclusion of the jaws. Roentgenograms will reveal the degree of arthritic changes. Diseased teeth may be the cause of pain referred into the face.

Herpes zoster is most common in the first division of the fifth cranial nerve and usually leaves scars or vesicles. In addition other cranial nerves frequently are involved. Older persons are especially liable to postherpetic pain. This complication is extremely difficult to control. If the usual analgesics are of no value Protamide or Thorazine may be tried and finally section of the appropriate sensory root.

When the pain is in the distribution of one of the branches of the trigeminal nerve some involvement of this nerve is obviously suggested. The fifth nerve may be compressed by metastatic or primary tumors at the base of the brain or by aneurysms but in these instances signs of sensory or motor involvement of the trigeminal nerve are usually found. The signs include loss of sensation in the face loss of the corneal reflex weakness of masseter temporalis, and pterygoid muscles and unilateral loss or excess of lacrimation or salivation.

A common painful syndrome occurring in older people is trigeminal neuralgia (tic douloureux). This pain is most often paroxysmal and characteristically is in the second or third division of the fifth cranial nerve. First division pain is found in only 5 per cent of all cases. The pain of tic douloureux may be almost continual but usually remissions last weeks or months. It is often sharp but may

True bulbar palsy results in wasting and fasciculations of the tongue and other affected muscles, in addition, other parts of the body may be involved. Supranuclear palsy results in similar evidence of bulbar (medullary) involvement—dysarthria, dysphagia, and weakness of the tongue, but atrophy and fasciculations are lacking and the jaw reflex is hyperactive. There is usually a history of mild strokes, and uncontrollable and inappropriate (pathological) laughing or crying may be present.

## PAIN

Pain in the present discussion is related to diseases of the peripheral or central nervous system. Pain fibers originate as naked nerve endings or other receptors distributed unevenly in the skin and are then situated in the peripheral nerves, entering the posterior root to synapse in the posterior horn. The fibers of the second relay cross the mid line of the spinal cord and form the lateral spinothalamic tract. They enter the lateral nuclei of the thalamus in the posteroventral group. Most pain fibers then ascend in the posterior limb of the internal capsule to the postcentral gyrus in the parietal lobe, although this last projection is not known with certainty. Other pathways for pain must exist, because analgesic areas may still be painful.

It is important to distinguish between pain and the response to pain (see Chapter 6). Pain itself does not have a uniformly acceptable definition and is difficult to measure. The clinician deals with responses to pain that differ with each individual. The same painful stimulus in one patient may cause no response in another—a short cry—and in still another repeated visits to the physician. It is generally stated that the appreciation of pain is dulled in old age disorders such as coronary thrombosis are extremely painful in younger persons but may occur without pain in an older individual. Despite this, the complaint of pain is common in the aged. The presence of pain is determined by the history. The intricateness of the usual pathway for pain is studied by sticking the skin with a pin. The reaction of the patient to pain may be judged by applying deep pressure or other painful stimuli. The patient should be asked where the pain is, where it radiates, when it occurs in relation to time, emotion and meals, whether it is sharp or dull, whether it is

severe enough to awaken him or to keep him from sleeping and how it is relieved or made worse

This discussion will be limited to the common painful neurologic syndromes occurring in the aged and will be divided according to the affected regions of the body

### Facial Pain and Headache

When pain in the face is the complaint an attempt should be made first to discover any obvious local disease such as glaucoma, foreign bodies in the eye conjunctivitis sinusitis, superficial tumors, or herpes zoster. The location of the pain may be of value in diagnosis. If pain is in the region of the mandibular joint the cause might be arthritis of the temporomandibular joint, poorly fitting dentures, or malocclusion of the jaws. Roentgenograms will reveal the degree of arthritic changes. Diseased teeth may be the cause of pain referred into the face.

Herpes zoster is most common in the first division of the fifth cranial nerve and usually leaves scars or vesicles. In addition other cranial nerves frequently are involved. Older persons are especially liable to postherpetic pain. This complication is extremely difficult to control. If the usual analgesics are of no value Protamide or Thorazine may be tried and finally section of the appropriate sensory root.

When the pain is in the distribution of one of the branches of the trigeminal nerve some involvement of this nerve is obviously suggested. The fifth nerve may be compressed by metastatic or primary tumors at the base of the brain or by aneurysms but in these instances signs of sensory or motor involvement of the trigeminal nerve are usually found. The signs include loss of sensation in the face, loss of the corneal reflex, weakness of masseter temporalis and pterygoid muscles and unilateral loss or excess of lacrimation or salivation.

A common painful syndrome occurring in older people is trigeminal neuralgia (*tic douloureux*). This pain is most often paroxysmal and characteristically is in the second or third division of the fifth cranial nerve. First division pain is found in only 5 per cent of all cases. The pain of *tic douloureux* may be almost continual, but usually remissions last weeks or months. It is often sharp but may

be dull in the aged patient. The pain is usually unilateral, runs parallel to the jaw, and is precipitated by trigger mechanisms such as facial movements, drinking cold liquids, or touching specific regions of the face. Neurologic examination fails to disclose any significant abnormality except the trigger zones. Medical therapy is of little value in this condition, and some form of surgical intervention is necessary if the pain is severe and is not relieved by analgesics. Injection of alcohol into the involved segment of the nerve, compression of the sensory root, and section of the nerve are alternative surgical methods.

Headache coming on for the first time in an older person or headache undergoing a complete change in character is suggestive of organic disease. The headaches of migraine and muscular tension so common in the younger person, do not often begin in late adult life. Migraine usually but not always disappears soon after the climacteric.

As with facial pain, it is necessary first to rule out local disease causing referred pain called headache by the patient. Systemic disease associated with meningeal hypertension or hypertensive encephalopathy may result in headache; the underlying condition is readily diagnosed. Temporal or cranial arteritis is peculiar to the senium (Meneely and Bigelow, 1953). The involved artery is painful, distended, and extremely tender. Thrombosis of the retinal artery causes visual impairment. Fever, leukocytosis, and elevation of the sedimentation rate may be present.

Headache is common in subdural hematoma (see Sudden Hemiplegia, above). The headache of subarachnoid hemorrhage secondary to rupture of a cerebral aneurysm is sudden in onset, severe, and often followed by unconsciousness. Unruptured cerebral aneurysm and vascular anomalies may also cause headache, but the former is often associated with weakness of the third cranial nerve. The headache of brain tumor is a dull, steady, deep ache, often intermittent. It occurred as an early symptom in 23 per cent of patients with brain tumors (Moersch *et al.*, 1941), but is more frequent in tumors below the tentorium than in those above. Evidence of progressive neurologic involvement, indications of increased intracranial pressure, and focal electroencephalographic changes help to establish the diagnosis (see Gradual Hemiplegia, above).

Headache is the initial symptom in most patients with cerebral

hemorrhage and in some instances of cerebral thrombosis (Table 23 2) It may be the first manifestation of depression as in involutional melancholia Intoxication with bromide or other drugs may also be a cause of headache in elderly people (Garland 1935)

### Pain in Extremities

Painful sensations in the extremities are a common complaint in the aged and require careful investigation When the cause is vascular insufficiency the pains are made worse by exercise palpation reveals decreased or absent pulses Neuropathy owing to nutritional deficiency is a frequent cause this is diagnosed by weakness of the distal portions of the extremities sensory changes in the stocking or glove distribution and the location of the pain (see Tetraplegia above) Loss of reflexes is of less significance in the aged (Table 23 1) Neoplasms infiltrating nerves nerve roots or plexuses may cause pain but these are soon diagnosed

Acroparesthesia is a painful tingling sensation in the hands and fingers usually without objective neurologic findings It frequently occurs in slight persons with drooped shoulders They often wake up at night complaining of pain and are relieved by moving about A narrow thoracic outlet may be responsible The radial pulses should be checked with the head forward and then turned far to the sides with the arm abducted at the elbow with the arm over head and with the shoulders brought back If these maneuvers cause disappearance of the pulse a narrow thoracic outlet compressing the subclavian artery or brachial plexus may be suspected Strengthening the shoulder elevators may give relief

Median nerve compression may cause pain in the fingers on the radial side of the hand (see Monoplegia above) The characteristic sensory and motor changes make the diagnosis Ulnar nerve lesions cause pain in the last two fingers The sensory loss may affect the little finger and part of or all the ring finger and may even extend to the middle finger Subacute combined degeneration related to pernicious anemia often begins with paresthesias in the extremities This disease is detected by the presence of posterior and lateral column signs a macrocytic anemia and in obscure cases by inability to absorb radioactive vitamin B<sub>12</sub> from the gastrointestinal tract (Krevans *et al* 1956)



Spinal cord tumors have been discussed (see Paraplegia, above)

Pain in the extremities may be caused by osteoarthritis with or without herniation of the nucleus pulposus. These conditions are discussed in the chapter on the musculoskeletal system. Osteoarthritis may be diagnosed by roentgenography, but its role in causing symptoms cannot be determined with certainty except by myelography. Protrusions of the intervertebral discs are most common in the lumbar region, where the favored sites are the inter spaces below the fourth and the fifth lumbar vertebrae, 95 per cent of all ruptured lumbar discs will be found in one of these two inter spaces. The protrusion causes pain in the lower part of the back radiating down the posterior portion of the leg. The pain is increased when the intracranial pressure is raised by coughing, sneezing or straining. Straight leg raising is restricted on the painful side. Muscular weakness usually is not prominent. Diminution of pain and touch sensation is present in the fifth lumbar or first sacral dermatomes. The ankle jerk is often absent on the involved side.

Herniation of discs in the cervical region occur most often between the fifth and sixth vertebrae or between the sixth and seventh. They cause pain in the neck and shoulder with radiation into the arm and hand. Sensory diminution is found in the distribution of the sixth or seventh cervical nerve roots. Weakness may be minimal. The biceps or triceps reflex is decreased.

The diagnosis of protruded or herniated intervertebral disc is confirmed by myelography. Conservative treatment is best (Ecklin 1949), unless there is evidence of compression of the spinal cord or the pain is not bearable. Surgical treatment is indicated also when adequate conservative therapy has failed.

Herpes zoster is diagnosed easily as a painful affliction of extremities in a spinal nerve root distribution manifested by a vesicular eruption. In older persons it may be the first evidence of leukemia or other systemic diseases and it may be followed by pain, even after the eruption has disappeared. Postherpetic neuralgia is extraordinarily difficult to treat with success.

### Trunk Pain

Pain on one side of the body may occur after the onset of hemiplegia. This is extremely difficult to treat as it does not respond

well to the usual analgesics. Inasmuch as it may be related to peripheral vasospasm the use of vasodilators or block of the sympathetic nerve fibers has been suggested as a therapeutic measure. Thorazine may also be of value.

Thalamic pain occurs in older people as a result of vascular damage to the nuclei of the thalamus. The patient suffers a transient hemiparesis; thereafter examination reveals loss of position sense and an elevated threshold to pin prick, but an exaggerated reaction to stimuli when they are perceived. The pain is deep, burning and severe and is difficult to alleviate. Large doses of Thorazine and electroshock therapy have been used.

Herpes zoster is most frequent in the thoracic region and is almost always unilateral. Treatment is symptomatic and is required chiefly for pain, especially after the eruption has subsided (see also Facial Pain and Pain in Extremities above).

## INVOLUNTARY MOVEMENTS

### Tremor

Tremor is a rhythmic movement at a joint brought about by alternating contractions of antagonistic muscles. It is evidence of abnormal activity in the nervous system. Destructive lesions alone therefore cannot explain tremor. Irritative processes probably do not result in long continued involuntary movements, although tumors, scars and inflammations may be the cause of transient tremor. For these reasons sustained tremor is best interpreted as a release of viable neurons secondary to destruction of other nerve cells or fiber tracts. Tremor as well as most other involuntary movements usually disappears in sleep or when the extremity is paralyzed. Lesions in the globus pallidus, the substantia nigra, the red nucleus and the superior cerebellar peduncle may allow the release of activity of other neural structures with resulting tremor. The final impact of release phenomena is on the anterior horn cell.

Clinical classification of tremor is difficult because the speed of movement has many gradations in various diseases. Tremor is called fine or rapid when the oscillations are about 10 times per second. Slow or coarse tremor is at the rate of 3 to 5 movements per second.

The tremor seen most often in elderly people is associated with

paralysis agitans (Parkinson's disease) This commonly affects the thumb and fingers of the hands, resulting in a slow pill rolling movement at the rate of 3 to 5 times per second. The tremor is rhythmic, but from time to time changes in direction and amplitude. Similar movements may be seen in the head and jaw, and in the lower extremities. The movement is present at rest, is decreased or absent with motion, disappears in sleep, and characteristically is made worse by emotional stress and fatigue. The tremor at first may be on one side only, but it usually spreads to the opposite hand and ultimately to all extremities.

Paralysis agitans is associated with the increased muscle-tone known as rigidity. Rigidity involves the distal portions of the limbs and is distributed uniformly in the flexors and extensors (lead pipe rigidity). The increased tone may decrease momentarily as it is being tested (cogwheel rigidity). In the early stages, rigidity may be detected more delicately by having the patient contract the opposite extremity. This maneuver is performed best by having the patient place one hand on the examiner's arm while the examiner tests tone in the patient's opposite hand by slow passive flexion and extension at the wrist or metacarpophalangeal joints. The patient is then asked to contract his hand on the examiner's arm. The examiner is able to detect the degree of volitional effort by the pressure exerted. When the parkinsonian patient contracts his hand tone in the opposite side increases. This is a sensitive indication of increased tone in the early stages. Rigidity of facial muscles decreases expressiveness and eye blinking, producing a reptilian stare. Paradoxically, blepharospasm frequently occurs when the forehead is tapped.

Associated movements such as swinging of the arms while walking are decreased. The patient takes little steps, movements are slow, and the posture is flexed. He may gather increasing speed when walking. Oculogyric crises are rare in the older patient and occur only in the postencephalitic type.

The cause of paralysis agitans usually is unknown, hence the term idiopathic. The role of atherosclerosis in the production of this syndrome is at present in debate. Parkinsonism on occasion may be related to carbon monoxide or manganese poisoning or to viral encephalitis. An epidemic of the von Economo type of encephalitis occurred in 1919 and sporadic cases were recorded as late as 1926.

patients who were exposed during these times may suffer post encephalitic parkinsonism. Other types of viral infections rarely may be followed by the parkinsonian syndrome.

Treatment is similar regardless of the origin of the condition. The available drugs include the solanaceous alkaloids, the newer synthetic parasympatholytic drugs, and antihistaminics. Some of these medicaments are listed in Table 23-4. They should be given

TABLE 23-4 DRUGS USED IN THE TREATMENT OF PARKINSON'S DISEASE

Drug	Singl' dose	Chemical name	Value for	
			Tremor	Rigidity
<i>Solanaceous alkaloids</i>				
Hyoscine Tincture	0.3 mg	Scopolamine-hydrobromide	+++	+
belladonna salts (Eli Lilly)	1 tablet	Mixture of alkaloids	++	+
		Mixture of alkaloids	++	+
<i>Synthetic parasympatholytics</i>				
Artane	2 & 5 mg	Trihexyphenidyl	+	++
Cogentin	1 mg	Benztropine methanesulfonate	+	+++
Amantadine	5 mg	Procyclidine hydrochloric acid	+	++
Levodopa	1% & 2.5 mg	Cyrimine-hydrochloric acid	+	++
Levodopa	50 & 100 mg	Ethopropazine hydrochloric acid	++	+
<i>Antihistaminics</i>				
Benadryl	20 & 50 mg	Diphenhydramine		
Phenargine	1.5 & 2.5 mg	Promethazine		

in small doses at first, then the dose cautiously increased until therapeutic or toxic effects are obtained. Toxicity is indicated by a dry mouth, blurred vision, flushing, skin rash, vertigo, nausea, mental symptoms, and urinary retention. If a therapeutic effect is obtained before the toxic level is reached, the patient is maintained on this dose. When both toxic and therapeutic effects are noted, the dose is reduced below the toxic level.

The belladonna derivatives generally are more effective for the treatment of tremor, and the synthetic drugs for rigidity. The antihistaminics are useful for insomnia. Individual exceptions, however, are common. The use of these drugs therefore must be based on a series of trials to determine the most effective combination. I generally use scopolamine first, then give Artane in combination with the determined dose of scopolamine, and then add Benadryl. This combination may be effective for many weeks or months, and then

paralysis agitans (Parkinson's disease) This commonly affects the thumb and fingers of the hands resulting in a slow "pill rolling" movement at the rate of 3 to 5 times per second. The tremor is rhythmic but from time to time changes in direction and amplitude. Similar movements may be seen in the head and jaw, and in the lower extremities. The movement is present at rest, is decreased or absent with motion, disappears in sleep, and characteristically is made worse by emotional stress and fatigue. The tremor at first may be on one side only, but it usually spreads to the opposite hand and ultimately to all extremities.

Paralysis agitans is associated with the increased muscle-tone known as rigidity. Rigidity involves the distal portions of the limbs, and is distributed uniformly in the flexors and extensors (lead pipe rigidity). The increased tone may decrease momentarily as it is being tested (cogwheel rigidity). In the early stages, rigidity may be detected more delicately by having the patient contract the opposite extremity. This maneuver is performed best by having the patient place one hand on the examiner's arm, while the examiner tests tone in the patient's opposite hand by slow passive flexion and extension at the wrist or metacarpophalangeal joints. The patient is then asked to contract his hand on the examiner's arm. The examiner is able to detect the degree of volitional effort by the pressure exerted. When the parkinsonian patient contracts his hand tone in the opposite side increases. This is a sensitive indication of increased tone in the early stages. Rigidity of facial muscles decreases expressiveness and eye blinking producing a reptilian stare. Paradoxically blepharospasm frequently occurs when the forehead is tapped.

Associated movements such as swinging of the arms while walking are decreased. The patient takes little steps, movements are slow, and the posture is flexed. He may gather increasing speed when walking. Oculogyric crises are rare in the older patient and occur only in the postencephalitic type.

The cause of paralysis agitans usually is unknown, hence the term idiopathic. The role of atherosclerosis in the production of this syndrome is at present in debate. Parkinsonism on occasion may be related to carbon monoxide or manganese poisoning or to viral encephalitis. An epidemic of the von Economo type of encephalitis occurred in 1919 and sporadic cases were recorded as late as 1926,

patients who were exposed during these times may suffer post encephalitic parkinsonism. Other types of viral infections rarely may be followed by the parkinsonian syndrome.

Treatment is similar regardless of the origin of the condition. The available drugs include the solanaceous alkaloids, the newer synthetic parasympatholytic drugs, and antihistaminics. Some of these medicaments are listed in Table 23-4. They should be given

TABLE 23-4 DRUGS USED IN THE TREATMENT OF PARKINSON'S DISEASE

Drug	Single dose	Chemical name	Value for	
			Tremor	Rigidity
<i>Solanaceous alkaloids</i>				
Hyoscyamine Tincture	0.3 mg	Scopolamine hydrobromide	+++	+
Belladonna Rubellon	1 tablet	Mixture of alkaloids	++	+
		Mixture of alkaloids	++	+
<i>Synthetic parasympatholytics</i>				
Artane	2 & 5 mg	Trihexyphenidyl	+	++
Cogentin	2 mg	Benztropine methanesulfonate	+	+++
Kemadrin	5 mg	Procyclidine-hydrochloric acid	+	++
Paralane	1 to 2.5 mg	Oxeridine hydrochloric acid	+	++
Paral 1	50 & 100 mg	Ethopropazine hydrochloric acid	++	+
<i>Antihistaminics</i>				
Benadryl	25 & 50 mg	Diphenhydramine		
Phenoxan	10.5 & 20 mg	Promethazine		

in small doses at first, then the dose cautiously increased until therapeutic or toxic effects are obtained. Toxicity is indicated by a dry mouth, blurred vision, flushing, skin rash, vertigo, nausea, mental symptoms, and urinary retention. If a therapeutic effect is obtained before the toxic level is reached, the patient is maintained on this dose. When both toxic and therapeutic effects are noted, the dose is reduced below the toxic level.

The belladonna derivatives generally are more effective for the treatment of tremor, and the synthetic drugs for rigidity; the antihistaminics are useful for insomnia. Individual exceptions, however, are common. The use of these drugs therefore must be based on a series of trials to determine the most effective combination. I generally use scopolamine first, then give Artane in combination with the determined dose of scopolamine, and then add Benadryl. This combination may be effective for many weeks or months, and then

may lose its value. In this event new drugs should be tried, and the older combinations reserved for use again at a later date. Patients with glaucoma or urinary tract obstruction should be given these drugs with special caution, but these conditions do not contraindicate their use.

Surgical procedures, chiefly chemopallidectomy, should be considered only after extensive trials of medical therapy and if the patient is badly disabled. Chemopallidectomy is of greatest value in patients with unilateral involvement, and also in younger persons (Bertrand, 1958). Older individuals can withstand bilateral intracranial procedures, but are subject to higher morbidity and mortality rates.

Heredofamilial tremor (essential tremor) may occur at any age, including the senium. A history of a similar condition in other members of the family is helpful. The disorder is not associated with rigidity or weakness. The tremor may be fine or coarse, is usually absent at rest (as contrasted with the parkinsonian tremor) and is brought on by motion or mental upsets. Tremor affects the hand, neck, head, and face. Treatment with antiparkinsonian drugs is ineffective. Reassurance and explanation are the only treatment.

Senile tremor should be distinguished from parkinsonian tremor. The senile type often is fine and rapid, but may be slow, thus resembling parkinsonism. Senile tremor usually is not associated with increased rigidity and hence rarely results in postural flexion, decreased associated movements, or slowness of movement. The tremor affects the head first but later may involve the extremities. When the hands are affected, the tremor may be made worse by motion. It disappears in sleep. The head may move affirmatively or negatively, and mandibular movements give the appearance of chewing. The disorder has been attributed to atherosclerosis, but has been reported in patients without anatomic evidence of vascular disease. Critchley (1956) believes senile tremors are a late form of heredofamilial tremor, but this connection is difficult to establish when a positive family history is lacking. These tremors are of little significance aside from their distressing effect upon the patient and his handwriting or fine manipulations. Progression is slow. As with essential tremor, there is no effective treatment.

Individuals of any age are subject to fine tremor when they overuse alcohol, bromides, coffee, tea or tobacco. Some older people

are sensitive to these drugs. Investigation of tremor, therefore should include inquiry into the use of these agents. Tremor related to psychoneurosis begins earlier in life. Hyperthyroidism is discussed in another chapter in this book.

General paresis may cause tremor and can occur in the senium but it is recognized by the evidence of syphilitic infection in the blood and cerebrospinal fluid. Elderly patients without syphilis may have pupillary abnormalities, sometimes resembling the Argyll Robertson type as an accompaniment of age (see Cranial Nerves, above).

### Chorea

This term is used for rapid involuntary movements occurring spontaneously and irregularly and appearing purposeless. The choreic movements may interfere with voluntary motion giving the appearance of ataxia. Choreic movements may occur in any striated muscle but not in involuntary muscle. They may be widespread or limited to one side of the body to one extremity or to the face. The muscles of articulation may be affected but ocular movements are almost never involved. The movements on occasion may occur during sleep. They are often accompanied by muscular hypotonia rather than the hypertonia associated with most diseases of the basal ganglions.

There is no single anatomic locus for chorea. Postmortem examination in some instances has shown normal basal ganglions abnormal basal ganglions or widespread disease of the cerebral cortex. Chorea is a positive symptom and therefore cannot be caused by the destruction of cells alone. It is necessary to assume that some cells perhaps cortical are released from inhibition after destruction of other cells. Chorea and athetosis frequently occur together hence the term choreoathetosis. It is difficult to distinguish a slow choreic from a quick athetotic movement. The two conditions are usually differentiated by the speed of movement, athetosis being slow and writhing.

Senile chorea comes on in late middle life or in the senium with out evidence of mental deterioration. Onset and progression are gradual, and the movements are generalized. The diagnosis of Huntington's chorea should be considered if mental changes are also



may lose its value. In this event new drugs should be tried, and the older combinations reserved for use again at a later date. Patients with glaucoma or urinary tract obstruction should be given these drugs with special caution, but these conditions do not contraindicate their use.

Surgical procedures, chiefly chemopallidectomy, should be considered only after extensive trials of medical therapy and if the patient is badly disabled. Chemopallidectomy is of greatest value in patients with unilateral involvement, and also in younger persons (Bertrand, 1958). Older individuals can withstand bilateral intracranial procedures, but are subject to higher morbidity and mortality rates.

Heredofamilial tremor (essential tremor) may occur at any age, including the senium. A history of a similar condition in other members of the family is helpful. The disorder is not associated with rigidity or weakness. The tremor may be fine or coarse, is usually absent at rest (as contrasted with the parkinsonian tremor) and is brought on by motion or mental upsets. Tremor affects the hand, neck, head, and face. Treatment with antiparkinsonian drugs is ineffective. Reassurance and explanation are the only treatment.

Senile tremor should be distinguished from parkinsonian tremor. The senile type often is fine and rapid, but may be slow, thus resembling parkinsonism. Senile tremor usually is not associated with increased rigidity, and hence rarely results in postural flexion, decreased associated movements, or slowness of movement. The tremor affects the head first but later may involve the extremities. When the hands are affected, the tremor may be made worse by motion. It disappears in sleep. The head may move affirmatively or negatively, and mandibular movements give the appearance of chewing. The disorder has been attributed to atherosclerosis, but has been reported in patients without anatomic evidence of vascular disease. Critchley (1956) believes senile tremors are a late form of heredofamilial tremor, but this connection is difficult to establish when a positive family history is lacking. These tremors are of little significance aside from their distressing effect upon the patient and his handwriting or fine manipulations. Progression is slow. As with essential tremor, there is no effective treatment.

Individuals of any age are subject to fine tremor when they overuse alcohol, bromides, coffee, tea or tobacco. Some older people

are sensitive to these drugs. Investigation of tremor therefore should include inquiry into the use of these agents. Tremor related to psychoneurosis begins earlier in life. Hyperthyroidism is discussed in another chapter in this book.

General paresis may cause tremor and can occur in the senium but it is recognized by the evidence of syphilitic infection in the blood and cerebrospinal fluid. Elderly patients without syphilis may have pupillary abnormalities sometimes resembling the Argyll Robertson type as an accompaniment of age (see Cranial Nerves above).

### Chorea

This term is used for rapid involuntary movements occurring spontaneously and irregularly and appearing purposeless. The choreic movements may interfere with voluntary motion giving the appearance of ataxia. Choreic movements may occur in any striated muscle but not in involuntary muscle. They may be widespread or limited to one side of the body to one extremity or to the face. The muscles of articulation may be affected but ocular movements are almost never involved. The movements on occasion may occur during sleep. They are often accompanied by muscular hypotonia rather than the hypertonia associated with most diseases of the basal ganglia.

There is no single anatomic locus for chorea. Postmortem examination in some instances has shown normal basal ganglia, abnormal basal ganglia or widespread disease of the cerebral cortex. Chorea is a positive symptom and therefore cannot be caused by the destruction of cells alone. It is necessary to assume that some cells perhaps cortical are released from inhibition after destruction of other cells. Chorea and athetosis frequently occur together hence the term choreoathetosis. It is difficult to distinguish a slow choreic from a quick athetotic movement. The two conditions are usually differentiated by the speed of movement, athetosis being slow and writhing.

Senile chorea comes on in late middle life or in the senium without evidence of mental deterioration. Onset and progression are gradual and the movements are generalized. The diagnosis of Huntington's chorea should be considered if mental changes are also

present Huntington's chorea usually begins in middle life, but may occur after 60. It may be diagnosed readily when there is a history of a similar disorder in other members of the family. These patients ultimately require institutional care. There is no specific treatment for the movements of senile chorea or for Huntington's chorea.

Individuals with hemiplegia occasionally may suffer from choreic movements in the paralyzed limbs.

Hemiballism, sometimes called hemichorea, is a continuous flinging movement related to a lesion in the opposite subthalamic body. The lesion is usually vascular in origin (Whittier, 1947). Treatment is ineffective and death soon occurs after the patient is exhausted by the ceaseless movements. Some patients, however, may spontaneously recover.

## ATAXIA

Ataxia is incoordination of muscles. As used here, this definition includes the motor phenomena associated with cerebellar deficiency: dysmetria, inability to perform rapid alternating movements (adiadokokinesia), decomposition of movement and tremor in action. Ataxia is difficult to distinguish from weakness when the latter is present. Cerebellar disease does not cause weakness except in the acute stages. If weakness is present, diagnosis may be considered by the principles given in Weakness and Paralysis. Tremor or chorea may prevent smooth movements and give the appearance of ataxia, but should be diagnosed readily because of the involuntary movements (see Involuntary Movements above).

Ataxia without weakness may be sensory or motor in origin. The ataxia caused by sensory loss is the result of a lesion in the posterior columns or peripheral nerves causing loss of position sense. A lesion in the cerebellum or its upward projections causes a motor type of incoordination.

The senses of position and of passive movement are decreased in sensory ataxia. The ataxia is worse when the eyes are closed. There is usually no defect of speech, nystagmus often is not seen and deep reflexes are lost. If the lesion is in the peripheral nerves, other forms of sensation are lost either in stocking and glove style or in the distribution of specific nerves or nerve roots.

Cerebellar or motor ataxia does not cause loss of sensation. Speech and posture are altered, nystagmus may be present, the deep reflexes are present and pendular, and the ataxia is usually similar with eyes open or closed. The motor fibers of the cerebellum are distributed ipsilaterally; hence a lesion in one cerebellar hemisphere results in ataxia on the same side. If the damage to the cerebellum is widespread, the legs usually are more ataxic than the arms.

Sensory ataxia in the older patient may be caused by the neurologic sequelae of pernicious anemia (subacute combined degeneration), tabes dorsalis, compression of the spinal cord, late forms of hereditary familial ataxia (Friedreich's ataxia), and polyneuropathy. Subacute combined degeneration is diagnosed by the presence of posterior and lateral column signs, normal cerebrospinal fluid, macrocytic anemia, and defective absorption of radioactive vitamin B<sub>12</sub> (Krevans *et al.* 1956). The presence of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice rules out this diagnosis, but achlorhydria is common in older people and is therefore not of diagnostic value.

Tabes dorsalis is differentiated by the finding of posterior column signs, complaints of lightning pains or visceral crises, irregular or Argyll Robertson pupils, and abnormalities of the cerebrospinal fluid. The loss of deep reflexes in the legs is common in old age, especially in the lower extremities (see Table 23-1), and therefore is not a reliable sign of tabes. Compression of the spinal cord by tumor or vertebral collapse is considered in Paraplegia above. In Friedreich's ataxia of late onset, a family history of similar disorder is usually obtained, nystagmus, high arched foot, and kyphoscoliosis are found, as well as signs of posterior and lateral column involvement. Peripheral neuropathy is usually evidenced by the distal weakness and sensory loss (see Tetraplegia above).

The following diagnoses should be considered when motor ataxia is found: alcoholic intoxication, cerebellar neoplasm, frontal lobe neoplasm, senile cerebellar atrophy, hemorrhage or thrombosis of cerebellar blood vessels, and carcinomatous subacute cerebellar degeneration. Ingestion of alcohol is usually determined easily, but special inquiry may be required. The tumors in the posterior fossa most common in the aged patient are metastases, acoustic neuromas, and meningiomas. Glioblastoma multiforme rarely is found in the posterior fossa. The intracranial manifestations of meningiomas

and metastatic tumors may be similar. If a primary neoplasm is known, metastasis will be suspected, but the intracranial tumor may be the first manifestation. The lung and breast are by far the most common primary sources (Lesse and Netsky, 1954). Ataxia and headache are the principal complaints. Nystagmus, vertigo and cranial nerve signs also may occur. When these findings are progressive, a neoplasm is suspected. Any evidence of increased intracranial pressure would of course heighten this suspicion (see also *Gradual Hemiplegia*, above).

Acoustic neuroma often presents a characteristic clinical picture. Tinnitus is followed by deafness then by ataxia, vertigo, and signs of cranial nerve involvement. The latter include facial pain, diminished corneal reflex and paralysis of the sixth, seventh and eighth nerves. The cerebrospinal fluid protein is elevated, often to levels above 200 mg per 100 cc, and the affected side does not respond when the ear is douched with cold water.

Symptoms of tumors of the frontal lobe occasionally may begin with ataxia. The old diagnostic problem of differentiating tumor of the right frontal lobe from tumor of the left cerebellar hemisphere continues to be difficult clinically, but it can be resolved by our studies or arteriography. Ataxia associated with a frontal lobe mass may be caused by damage to the frontal pontocerebellar fibers, by herniation of cerebellar tonsils by compression of cerebellar peduncles or by apraxia. Ataxia associated with changes in personality, focal motor seizures or aphasia is more likely to be frontal than cerebellar in origin. The electroencephalogram may reveal focal changes in the frontal lobe, and a pneumoencephalogram or arteriogram is necessary for further localization.

Simple cerebellar atrophy may be considered as a variant of parenchymatous cerebellar atrophy, a degenerative disease affecting the cells of Purkinje. The onset is slow and the patient notices progressive bilateral incoordination, worse in the legs. Speech is affected but mentation usually is intact. Nystagmus and other cranial nerve signs are not present. The slow progression, absence of signs of increased intracranial pressure, and lack of involvement of cranial nerves help distinguish this disease from neoplasms in the posterior fossa.

Cerebellar hemorrhage is sudden in onset, is associated with signs of meningeal irritation such as headache and stiffness of the

neck and is followed by cerebellar dysfunction and blood in the cerebrospinal fluid

Thrombosis of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery is easily diagnosed. An older person has a sudden onset of vertigo, nausea, dysphagia and pain in the face without loss of consciousness. Examination reveals involvement of the eighth, ninth and tenth cranial nerves and occasionally of the seventh. Horner's syndrome, cerebellar ataxia and decreased pain sensation in the face on the side of the lesion and loss of pain sensation on the opposite side of the body. There are no pyramidal tract signs and no loss of touch or position sense. These findings are explained by the infarct on the lateral aspect of the medulla. Treatment is symptomatic and prognosis for life is good. Syphilis may be the cause but atherosclerosis is the most common pathogenetic factor.

Subacute cortical cerebellar degeneration has been described in association with carcinoma elsewhere in the body (Brain *et al* 1951). It will be recalled that an unexplained neuropathy may have a similar association (see Tetraplegia above). Unsteadiness of gait, diplopia or skew deviation of the eyes is the presenting symptom. Mental deterioration also may occur early in the course. Death supervenes in less than a year.

## SYNCOPE AND CONVULSIONS

Syncope or fainting is a sudden brief loss of consciousness and muscular tone causing the patient to fall. It is differentiated from vertigo in which the patient has a sensation of movement and does not lose consciousness. Some types of seizures may produce the appearance of a faint but the convulsive disorders are most often distinguished easily by the presence of tonic or clonic movements or abnormal behavior during the attack. Elderly individuals may have a transient loss of consciousness because of a fall in arterial blood pressure. This type of vasodepressor syncope is probably the most common cause of fainting in old age. Fainting usually occurs when the systolic pressure falls to 80 mm of mercury. If unconsciousness lasts longer than 15 or 20 seconds convulsions may ensue because of cerebral hypoxia. Elderly individuals are also subject to orthostatic hypotension in which fainting occurs when the erect posture is assumed.

Changes in cardiac rhythm—cardiac standstill paroxysmal tachycardia, or fibrillation—may cause syncope. Carotid sinus sensitivity accounts for some episodes of syncope. This should be tested with extreme caution in older persons, and the test should never be done bilaterally at the same time. Emphysematous persons may retain carbon dioxide, and periodic decreases in respiration may cause carbon dioxide narcosis and recurrent fainting. This phenomenon also may occur in fat people and has been described by Burwell and his co-workers (1956) as alveolar hypoventilation or the Pickwickian syndrome. Hypoglycemia is a cause of unconsciousness that may be suspected when the attacks occur hours after meals, and are relieved by feeding. Recurrent episodes of thrombosis of small blood vessels may cause bouts of syncope, but these usually leave neurologic signs and result in mental deterioration.

Convulsions are an important problem in the aged. The most common cause in people over sixty is scarring secondary to vascular occlusion. Next in frequency is a neoplasm or other mass lesion. Additional possibilities include cardiac disease resulting in hypoxia, prolonged periods of cardiac arrhythmia, trauma, subdural hematoma, cerebral atrophic processes, uremia, and poisons.

A detailed study is warranted whenever an unexplained convulsion occurs in an elderly individual. This should include the history and physical examination, neurologic examination, roentgenograms of the skull and chest, electroencephalogram, and lumbar puncture if papilledema is not present. In instances of convulsion secondary to vascular disease, the past history often reveals an episode of sudden weakness with gradual recovery. There is usually no evidence of progressive neurologic dysfunction. The electroencephalogram may be normal or focally abnormal. The cerebrospinal fluid pressure is not elevated and its constituents are normal, although occasionally the protein content may rise above 100 mg per 100 cc.

Neoplasms on the other hand are most often associated with progressive neurologic dysfunction, although occasionally a rapid onset may be followed by temporary recovery. The diagnosis of a brain tumor should not be abandoned because the patient improves (Netsky and Watson 1956). Focal neurologic signs are most often present. Evidence of increased intracranial pressure such as headache, nausea and vomiting, papilledema, and increased

pressure on lumbar puncture may be obtained. Elderly persons however are less likely to have papilledema. In a series of 100 older patients with brain tumor (Moersch *et al*, 1941) choked disc was present in only one third of the cases. Absence of papilledema therefore does not rule out a brain tumor. The cerebrospinal fluid protein often is elevated above 100 mg per 100 cc. The electroencephalogram frequently reveals focal abnormalities especially slow waves (see also Gradual Hemiplegia above).

Despite these considerations it may be difficult on occasion to be certain of the diagnosis. If physical and neurologic examinations are unrevealing and the roentgenograms, electroencephalogram and cerebrospinal fluid studies are all normal it is probable that the patient had a vascular insult rather than a neoplasm. All such patients however should be re-examined from time to time (White, Bailey and Bickford 1953).

If the decision is made that the disorder is not caused by a mass lesion, anticonvulsive medication should be given to prevent additional seizure. It is best to begin with 0.1 Gm of Dilantin three times daily and 0.1 Gm of phenobarbital at night. If control of seizures is not achieved Dilantin is increased to a dose just short of toxicity and then if necessary Mysoline is added gradually until seizures are completely prevented. Petit mal almost never begins in the elderly patient, but a drug such as Celontin or Tridione may be needed for seizures continuing from earlier in life.

Neoplasms must be treated surgically and age is no contraindication to surgical intervention. The prognosis for patients with cerebral tumors is not as poor as is usually assumed because resectable tumors such as meningioma often are encountered (see Table 23-3).

Subdural hematoma may be associated with convulsions. Because this condition is surgically remediable awareness of the diagnosis is important. Subdural hematoma may be associated with focal neurologic signs and alterations of consciousness. Characteristically the patient goes in and out of consciousness. Roentgenograms of the skull may reveal displacement of the pineal gland although a shift may not be present when subdural hematoma is bilateral. A history of trauma with or without loss of consciousness is helpful but this history frequently is lacking. Subdural hematoma should be considered when the patient does not improve after the



onset of convulsions and continues to complain of headache, drowsiness, and mental changes (see also Sudden Hemiplegia, above) Under these circumstances the patient should be studied further, and exploratory trephination performed

Occasionally convulsive seizures may be caused by degenerative processes resulting in cerebral atrophy. Mental disturbance may be a prominent associated symptom, as in Pick's or Alzheimer's disease. Seizures with or without other neurologic findings may occur without mental changes in the presence of atrophy of the brain. This condition is diagnosed as "cerebral atrophy of unknown origin." Pneumoencephalography, the only certain method of demonstrating atrophy, reveals enlarged subarachnoid spaces, enlarged cerebral ventricles, or both. There is no specific treatment for the underlying disorder, but the seizures may be treated by the method already described.

Uremic convulsions are diagnosed by finding abnormalities in the urine and elevation of the urea nitrogen in the blood and cerebrospinal fluid. Convulsions of cardiac origin are diagnosed by demonstration of the cardiac arrhythmia.

Intoxication with alcohol may result in seizures usually 3 or 4 days after indulgence. The history reveals this factor but these patients should undergo investigation, because ingestion of alcohol does not rule out a brain tumor and subdural hematomas are common in patients with such a history. Sudden withdrawal of long continued doses of phenobarbital may also cause seizures.

## VERTIGO

Vertigo or dizziness is experienced as a sensation of movement of the environment (objective vertigo) or of the person (subjective vertigo). The more severe forms of vertigo are often associated with a sensation of movement of the environment. The use of the term dizziness by the patient must be clarified by specific questions about a sense of rotation. Patients may use this word for light-headedness or unsteadiness rather than true vertigo with a sense of movement. Vertigo may be accompanied by other symptoms such as staggering, falling, pallor and sweating, nausea and vomiting, and diarrhea. Nystagmus may be present. Consciousness usually is maintained.

The senses of orientation in space and of equilibrium are derived from many sources. For neurologic purposes the important regions are the labyrinth and the vestibular portion of the eighth cranial nerve. Other sources include the retinas, the proprioceptors of the ocular muscles, the joints and the muscles of the neck and of the extremities and trunk. Vertigo occurs whenever the information received from the different receptors is discordant. For instance, the proprioceptors of the leg muscles may be stimulated when a normal person steps from a hard surface onto an extremely soft surface giving a sensation of falling. The retina then gives proper information and vertigo results from the discrepancy.

It is useful to distinguish between peripheral and central sources of vertigo. Peripheral vertigo arises in the acoustic nerve or ear; central vertigo, in the brain stem, cerebellum or cerebrum. Peripheral vertigo is often associated with loss of hearing and almost always with nystagmus; it is frequently paroxysmal. Central vertigo is likely to be continuous and hearing is not usually altered. In addition, there are other signs of disease of the central nervous system. Acute lesions such as vascular occlusions produce vertigo more often than slowly developing tumors (Levy and O'Leary 1947).

### Peripheral Vertigo

This is usually associated with loss of hearing. The external middle or inner ear or the eighth cranial nerve may be affected. Meniere's syndrome is rare in the elderly patient. Function of the labyrinth may be disturbed by such factors as wax in the external meatus, blockage of the eustachian tube, otosclerosis, the use of drugs such as quinine, Dilantin, excessive tobacco or alcohol, trauma and decreased blood supply due to anemia, hypotension, atherosclerosis or increased intracranial pressure. Labyrinthine vertigo is usually paroxysmal. Tumors of the eighth nerve especially the acoustic neuroma cause mild vertigo. The acoustic neuroma is characterized by deafness, decreased corneal reflex ipsilaterally, nystagmus, ataxia, failure of the labyrinth to respond to stimulation by cold water and elevation of the protein in the cerebrospinal fluid. The eighth nerve may be compressed by meningiomas, atherosclerotic vessels, aneurysm or arachnoiditis.

onset of convulsions and continues to complain of headache, drowsiness, and mental changes (see also Sudden Hemiplegia, above) Under these circumstances the patient should be studied further, and exploratory trephination performed

Occasionally convulsive seizures may be caused by degenerative processes resulting in cerebral atrophy. Mental disturbance may be a prominent associated symptom, as in Pick's or Alzheimer's disease. Seizures with or without other neurologic findings may occur without mental changes in the presence of atrophy of the brain. This condition is diagnosed as 'cerebral atrophy of unknown origin'. Pneumoencephalography, the only certain method of demonstrating atrophy, reveals enlarged subarachnoid spaces, enlarged cerebral ventricles, or both. There is no specific treatment for the underlying disorder, but the seizures may be treated by the method already described.

Uremic convulsions are diagnosed by finding abnormalities in the urine and elevation of the urea nitrogen in the blood and cerebrospinal fluid. Convulsions of cardiac origin are diagnosed by demonstration of the cardiac arrhythmia.

Intoxication with alcohol may result in seizures, usually 3 or 4 days after indulgence. The history reveals this factor, but these patients should undergo investigation, because ingestion of alcohol does not rule out a brain tumor, and subdural hematomas are common in patients with such a history. Sudden withdrawal of long continued doses of phenobarbital may also cause seizures.

## VERTIGO

Vertigo or dizziness is experienced as a sensation of movement of the environment (objective vertigo) or of the person (subjective vertigo). The more severe forms of vertigo are often associated with a sensation of movement of the environment. The use of the term dizziness by the patient must be clarified by specific questions about a sense of rotation. Patients may use this word for light-headedness or unsteadiness rather than true vertigo with a sense of movement. Vertigo may be accompanied by other symptoms such as staggering, falling, pallor and sweating, nausea and vomiting and diarrhea. Nystagmus may be present. Consciousness usually is maintained.

The senses of orientation in space and of equilibrium are derived from many sources. For neurologic purposes, the important regions are the labyrinth and the vestibular portion of the eighth cranial nerve. Other sources include the retina, the proprioceptors of the ocular muscles, the joints, and the muscles of the neck and of the extremities and trunk. Vertigo occurs whenever the information received from the different receptors is discordant. For instance, the proprioceptors of the leg muscles may be stimulated when a normal person steps from a hard surface onto an extremely soft surface, giving a sensation of falling. The retina then gives proper information and vertigo results from the discrepancy.

It is useful to distinguish between peripheral and central sources of vertigo. Peripheral vertigo arises in the acoustic nerve or ear; central vertigo in the brain stem, cerebellum, or cerebrum. Peripheral vertigo is often associated with loss of hearing and almost always with nystagmus; it is frequently paroxysmal. Central vertigo is likely to be continuous and hearing is not usually altered. In addition, there are other signs of disease of the central nervous system. Acute lesions such as vascular occlusions produce vertigo more often than slowly developing tumors (Levy and O'Leary, 1947).

### Peripheral Vertigo

This is usually associated with loss of hearing. The external or middle ear or the eighth cranial nerve may be affected. Meniere's syndrome is rare in the elderly patient. Function of the labyrinth may be disturbed by such factors as wax in the external meatus, blockage of the eustachian tube, otosclerosis, the use of drugs such as quinine, Dilantin, excessive tobacco or alcohol, trauma, and decreased blood supply due to anemia, hypotension, atherosclerosis, or increased intracranial pressure. Labyrinthine vertigo is usually paroxysmal. Tumors of the eighth nerve, especially the acoustic neuroma, cause mild vertigo. The acoustic neuroma is characterized by deafness, decreased corneal reflex ipsilaterally, nystagmus, ataxia, failure of the labyrinth to respond to stimulation by cold water, and elevation of the protein in the cerebrospinal fluid. The eighth nerve may be compressed by meningiomas, atherosclerotic vessels, aneurysm, or arachnoiditis.

onset of convulsions and continues to complain of headache, drowsiness, and mental changes (see also Sudden Hemiplegia, above) Under these circumstances the patient should be studied further, and exploratory trephination performed

Occasionally convulsive seizures may be caused by degenerative processes resulting in cerebral atrophy. Mental disturbance may be a prominent associated symptom, as in Pick's or Alzheimer's disease. Seizures with or without other neurologic findings may occur without mental changes in the presence of atrophy of the brain. This condition is diagnosed as cerebral atrophy of unknown origin. Pneumoencephalography, the only certain method of demonstrating atrophy, reveals enlarged subarachnoid spaces, enlarged cerebral ventricles or both. There is no specific treatment for the underlying disorder but the seizures may be treated by the method already described.

Uremic convulsions are diagnosed by finding abnormalities in the urine and elevation of the urea nitrogen in the blood and cerebrospinal fluid. Convulsions of cardiac origin are diagnosed by demonstration of the cardiac arrhythmia.

Intoxication with alcohol may result in seizures usually 3 or 4 days after indulgence. The history reveals this factor but these patients should undergo investigation, because ingestion of alcohol does not rule out a brain tumor, and subdural hematomas are common in patients with such a history. Sudden withdrawal of long continued doses of phenobarbital may also cause seizures.

## VERTIGO

Vertigo or dizziness is experienced as a sensation of movement of the environment (objective vertigo) or of the person (subjective vertigo). The more severe forms of vertigo are often associated with a sensation of movement of the environment. The use of the term dizziness by the patient must be clarified by specific questions about a sense of rotation. Patients may use this word for light-headedness or unsteadiness rather than true vertigo with a sense of movement. Vertigo may be accompanied by other symptoms such as staggering, falling, pallor and sweating, nausea and vomiting and diarrhea. Nystagmus may be present. Consciousness usually is maintained.

vessels Inhalation of carbon dioxide is the most potent cerebral vasodilator and may be used if this effect is desired

# REFERENCES

- 1 ARNO C and MERRITT H H Differential diagnosis between cerebral hemorrhage and cerebral thrombosis A clinical and pathologic study of 43 cases *Arch Int Med* 56 435 1935
- 2 BERTRAND C A pneumotaxic technique for producing localized cerebral lesions and its use in the treatment of Parkinson's disease *J Neurosurg* 15 231 1955
- 3 BRAN W R DANIEL P M and GREENFIELD J G Subacute cortical cerebellar degeneration and its relation to carcinoma *J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat* 14 59 1951
- 4 BUPWELL C S ROBIN E D WHALEY R D and BUCKERMAN A C Extreme obesity associated with alveolar hypoventilation—a Pickwickian syndrome *Am J Med* 21 811 1956
- 5 CRITCHLEY M The neurology of old age *Lancet* 1 1119 1221 1331 1931
- 6 CRITCHLEY M Neurologic changes in the aged *J Chronic Dis* 3 459 1956
- 7 DORR J B TARTAKOFF S and LEMAY M J Pineal gland displacement in acute cerebrovascular occlusion *AMA Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 78 228 1957
- 8 DYSEN M and WHITE P T Evaluation of cortisone in the treatment of cerebral infarction *JAMA* 162 1531 1956
- 9 ECHLIN F A "Herniation and Protrusion of Intervertebral Disc Tissue" in BROCK, S *Injuries of the Brain and Spinal Cord and Their Correlates* Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1949 ed 2 pp 581-633
- 10 GARLAND H Neurological disturbances in the elderly *Practitioner* 171 544 1955
- 11 CASS H H and SMITHERS H M Carotid artery insufficiency corrected by internal carotid thrombectomy *Neurology* 7 670 1957
- 12 GREEN M A and BENDER M B Cutaneous perception in the aged *AMA Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 69 577 1953
- 13 HENSON R A RUSSELL D S and WILKINSON M Carcinomatous neuropathy and myopathy a clinical and pathological study *Brain* 77 82 1954
- 14 HETMAN A KARP H R and BLOOR B M Determination of retinal artery pressures in diagnosis of carotid artery occlusion *Neurology* 7 97 1957
- 15 HOWELL T H Senile deterioration of the central nervous system *Brit M J* 156 1949
- 16 KREMER M GILLIOTT R W GOLDING J S R and WILSON T G Acroparesthesiae in the carpal tunnel syndrome *Lancet* 2 590 1953

When vertigo is paroxysmal or severe, disease of the ear rather than the eighth cranial nerve should be considered

### Central Vertigo

Central vertigo most often arises in the brain stem or cerebellum and less frequently from the cerebrum. The diagnosis is made by the accompanying neurologic signs and symptoms. Vertigo may result from brain stem involvement if the vestibular connections are affected. Neoplasms, hemorrhage, or thrombosis, encephalitis and degenerative diseases such as syringobulbia may be causative agents. Such disorders inevitably are accompanied by other brain stem signs. These signs include dysfunction of the third to the twelfth cranial nerves on one or both sides, and evidence of damage to the corticospinal tract or the cerebellar pathways.

Cerebellar disease produces vertigo if the vestibulocerebellar pathways are involved. This may be the result of thrombosis of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery (see *Ataxia* above), of multiple small thromboses, or of neoplasms. Vertigo usually does not occur in degenerative diseases of the cerebellum.

Vertigo of cerebral origin may occur in older people when they stand up, probably because of mild cerebral circulatory insufficiency. Alterations of systemic blood pressure may cause vertigo on the same basis. High or low blood pressure may affect the cerebral blood flow, but do not cause vertigo as long as the pressure is maintained. A drop in blood pressure may be caused by anti-hypertensive drugs or by cardiac dysfunction. The heart therefore should be investigated carefully in patients complaining of vertigo. The older person should be protected as much as possible against alterations in blood pressure. Recurrent small cerebral thromboses may cause vertigo, but the downhill course and appearance of neurologic signs soon make the diagnosis apparent. Vertigo may precede cerebral thrombosis or hemorrhage or may be the aura of a seizure, but again the major manifestation is soon appreciated.

If the cause cannot be found or if discovered cannot be relieved, most types of vertigo may be treated symptomatically with Dramamine, Bonamine, or Marezine. Vasodilators are usually unsatisfactory, because most of them have little effect on the cerebral

vessels Inhalation of carbon dioxide is the most potent cerebral vasodilator and may be used if this effect is desired

# REFERENCES

- 1 ARING C and MERRITT H H Differential diagnosis between cerebral hemorrhage and cerebral thrombosis A clinical and pathologic study of 245 cases *Arch Int Med* 56 435 1935
- 2 BERTRAND C A pneumotonic technique for producing localized cerebral lesions and its use in the treatment of Parkinson's disease *J Neurosurg* 10 251 1953
- 3 BRAIN W R DANIEL P M and GREENFIELD J G Subacute cortical cerebellar degeneration and its relation to carcinoma *J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat* 14 59 1951
- 4 BOWELL C S ROBIN E D WHALEY R D and BICKERMAN A G Extreme obesity associated with alveolar hypoventilation—a Pickwickian syndrome *Am J Med* 21 811 1956
- 5 CRITCHLEY M The neurology of old age *Lancet* 1 1119 1221 1331 1931
- 6 CRITCHLEY M Neurologic changes in the aged *J Chronic Dis* 3 459 1956
- 7 DROMI J B TARTAKOFF S and LEMAY M J Pituitary gland displacement in acute cerebrovascular occlusion *A.M.A. Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 78 228 1957
- 8 DYER M and WHITE P T Evaluation of cortisone in the treatment of cerebral infarction *J A.M.A.* 162 1531 1956
- 9 ECHLIN F A "Herniation and Protrusion of Intervertebral Disc Tissue" in BRUCE S *Injuries of the Brain and Spinal Cord and Their Correction* Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1949 ed 2 pp 581-603
- 10 GARLAND H Neurological disturbances in the elderly *Practitioner* 174 544 1955
- 11 GAST H H and SMATHERS H M Carotid artery insufficiency corrected by internal carotid thrombectomy *Neurology* 7 670 1957
- 12 GREEN M A and BENDER M B Cutaneous perception in the aged *A.M.A. Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 69 577 1953
- 13 HENSON R A RUSSELL D S and WILKINSON M Carcinomatous neuropathy and myopathy a clinical and pathological study *Brain* 77 82 1954
- 14 HEYMAN A KARP H R and BLOOR B M Determination of retinal artery pressures in diagnosis of carotid artery occlusion *Neurology* 7 97 1957
- 15 HOWELL T H Senile deterioration of the central nervous system *Brit M J* 1 56 1949
- 16 KREMER M GILLIOTT R W GOLDING J S R and WILSON T G Acroparesthesia in the carpal tunnel syndrome *Lancet* 2 590 1953



- 17 KREVANS J R CONLEY, C L and SACHS, M V Radioactive tracer tests for the recognition and identification of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency states *J Chronic Dis* 3 234 1956
- 18 LESSE, S, and NETSKY M G Metastasis of neoplasms to the central nervous system and meninges *AMA Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 72 133, 1954
- 19 LEVY I and O'LEARY J L Incidence of vertigo in neurological conditions *Ann Otol Rhin & Laryng* 56 557 1947
- 20 MARTIN M M Diabetic neuropathy A clinical study of 150 cases *Brain* 76 594 1953
- 21 McNEEL J K and BIGELOW N H Temporal arteritis A critical evaluation of this disorder and a report of 3 cases *Am J Med* 14 46 1953
- 22 MEYER J S Localized changes in properties of the blood and effects of anticoagulant drugs in experimental cerebral infarction *New England J Med* 258 151, 1958
- 23 MILLIKAN C H SIEKERT R G and WHISNANT J P Anticoagulant therapy in cerebral vascular disease—current status *JAMA* 166 587 1958
- 24 MOERSCH F P CRAIG W M and KERNOHAN J W Tumors of the brain in aged persons *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 45 235 1941
- 25 NETSKY M G and WATSON J M The natural history of intracranial neoplasms *Ann Int Med* 45 275 1956
- 26 RANKIN J Cerebral vascular accidents in patients over the age of 60 II Prognosis *Scot M J* 2 200-215 1957
- 27 SMITH R C F The elicitation and incidence of neurological signs in the aged *Practitioner* 177 59 1956
- 28 WHITE P T BAILEY A A and BICKFORD R G Epileptic disorders in the aged *Neurology* 3 674 1953
- 29 WHITTIER J R Ballism and the subthalamic nucleus (nucleus hypothalamicus corpus Luysi) Review of the literature and study of 30 cases *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 58 672 1947
- 30 ZIMMERMAN H M NETSKY M G and DAVIDOFF L M *Atlas of Tumors of the Nervous System* Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1956

## CHAPTER 24

# Mental Disorders of the Aging

EWALD W. BUSSE

The mental disorders of the aging constitute a very serious and ever increasing medical and socioeconomic problem. The real magnitude of the problem, however, can be stated only as an educated guess based primarily upon statistics obtained from mental hospitals. According to the 1957 report of the National Committee Against Mental Illness, 38 per cent of all new patients admitted to mental institutions are past 60. Of all new patients admitted to public mental hospitals, 27 per cent have psychoses attributable to cerebral arteriosclerosis or other circulatory disturbances and senile disease. Patients with senile psychoses make up 13 per cent of the resident population of all mental hospitals.

The prevalence of disabling psychoneurotic reactions in elderly persons is difficult to determine statistically. If such statistics were based upon the number of elderly psychoneurotics receiving psychiatric help, the information would be misleading because the medical profession as a whole has held a certain pessimism regarding the response of this age group to treatment (Hollingshead and Redlich, 1956). Fortunately, this attitude is undergoing a rapid change as it is being demonstrated that psychotherapy as well as appropriate medications can produce gratifying results.

All individuals experience periods in their lives when their psychologic functioning is seriously impaired. At what point can a physician justifiably make a diagnosis of an emotional or mental disease? Obviously, there is no strict line of separation between normal functioning and mental disorder. Stress can produce a transitional zone that will merge into a definite disease when the

suffering individual recognizes his impaired function or discomfort and seeks relief. Also it is possible for society to decree that an individual is sick by indicating that his behavior is no longer acceptable and insisting that he receive medical attention. The role of society in determining the existence or nonexistence of sickness is particularly important with relation to elderly patients. Some segments of our society are perfectly willing to accept the individual who is showing changes of age and to continue to make a place for him in the community. Other segments are intolerant, and reject the elderly person at the first obvious evidence of decline in function.

This paradox brings us face to face with the concept of multiple etiology of mental disorders. Environmental stress is more apt to produce a mental disorder when it is acting upon reduced physiologic reserve. For a number of years investigators have known that some individuals with neuropathologic changes within the brain prior to death have exhibited few or no obvious mental abnormalities (Rothschild, 1937 and 1942, Critchley, 1929). Our own studies utilizing the electroencephalogram have demonstrated that some individuals who have severe brain wave disturbances consistent with organic changes can maintain a satisfactory adjustment within the community. This adjustment, however, can be maintained only as long as their tenuous physiologic balance is not tipped by additional organic disease or environmental pressures.

Although from a therapeutic standpoint it is well to recognize the concept of multiple etiology of mental disease, it must be stated that in many cases a single specific factor such as arteriosclerosis plays the major role in producing mental illness. Preventive measures and treatments must be aimed at the major etiologic agent, but all therapeutic regimens will take into consideration organic, psychologic, and environmental approaches.

## CHANGES IN THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM OF ELDERLY PEOPLE

### *Anatomic and Physiologic Changes*

A number of distinct neuroanatomic changes are usually associated with advancing age. The brain decreases in size and

weight, and there is a compensatory increase in the amount of cerebrospinal fluid (Crichtley, 1942 O'Leary, 1952) The dura mater is thickened and may contain small deposits of calcium It is claimed that there is a decrease in the number of nerve cells within the brain and that this loss of neurons is accompanied by gliosis (Brody 1953 Gardner 1940) The brains of elderly people who have shown normal mental functioning until the time of death often contain senile plaques similar to those found in patients with so-called senile dementia Although there is some correlation between the number of plaques and the degree of mental impairment the correlation is far from consistent (Rothschild 1937 and 1942 Crichtley 1929)

Microscopically one sees neurofibrillar thickening and contortion and the deposition of argentophil material of unknown origin The characteristic accumulation of lipofuscin a pigmented substance composed of lipid and protein does not seem to interfere with neuronal functioning and its significance and origin are unknown Lipofuscin may be derived from mitochondria Andrew (1941) observed other histologic alterations such as hypochromatic staining of the Nissl substance nuclear basophilia, and vacuolization When any of these changes are found to be far advanced there is usually evidence of functional deterioration but further investigation is required before any definite behavioral correlates can be made

Surprisingly little is known about the physiologic changes associated with the aging nervous system Obrist (1954) and Busse and co-workers (1956) have focused attention on brain wave changes The slowing of the alpha rhythm normally found in elderly subjects becomes accentuated to an abnormal degree in association with psychologic decline Busse and his colleagues (Busse *et al* 1956 Barnes *et al* 1956 Silverman *et al* 1955) have demonstrated that a peculiar focal disturbance appears in "normal subjects" over the age of 60 as well as in subjects suffering from organic brain disease Eighty per cent of the dysrhythmias are found in the left temporal area and 74 per cent of these in the anterior temporal region This finding must be kept in mind when an electroencephalogram is being evaluated for diagnostic and clinical purposes as this focal disturbance can be misinterpreted to be evidence of a cerebrovascular accident or an expanding lesion

suffering individual recognizes his impaired function or discomfort and seeks relief. Also it is possible for society to declare that an individual is sick by indicating that his behavior is no longer acceptable and insisting that he receive medical attention. The role of society in determining the existence or nonexistence of sickness is particularly important with relation to elderly patients. Some segments of our society are perfectly willing to accept the individual who is showing changes of age and to continue to make a place for him in the community. Other segments are intolerant, and reject the elderly person at the first obvious evidence of decline in function.

This paradox brings us face to face with the concept of multiple etiology of mental disorders. Environmental stress is more apt to produce a mental disorder when it is acting upon reduced physiologic reserve. For a number of years investigators have known that some individuals with neuropathologic changes within the brain prior to death have exhibited few or no obvious mental abnormalities (Rothschild, 1937 and 1942, Critchley, 1929). Our own studies utilizing the electroencephalogram have demonstrated that some individuals who have severe brain wave disturbances consistent with organic changes can maintain a satisfactory adjustment within the community. This adjustment, however, can be maintained only as long as their tenuous physiologic balance is not tipped by additional organic disease or environmental pressures.

Although from a therapeutic standpoint it is well to recognize the concept of multiple etiology of mental disease, it must be stated that in many cases a single specific factor such as arteriosclerosis plays the major role in producing mental illness. Preventive measures and treatments must be aimed at the major etiologic agent but all therapeutic regimens will take into consideration organic, psychologic, and environmental approaches.

## CHANGES IN THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM OF ELDERLY PEOPLE

### *Anatomic and Physiologic Changes*

A number of distinct neuroanatomic changes are usually associated with advancing age. The brain decreases in size and

sory function are limited to the minimum energy required to stimulate or whether the whole range of discrimination has been affected. Coppinger (1955) measured flicker fusion thresholds at three different brightness levels in young and elderly subjects. He found in the older group a much smaller absolute increase in threshold as brightness was increased. This finding indicates that increasing the magnitude of a weak stimulus will effect greater improvement in the judgment of an elderly subject than would be obtained in the judgment of a younger one.

Visual changes include a decline in color matching ability (Cilbert 1977). The decline after 20 years of age is a gradual one so that the differences between adjacent decades are statistically very small. After the age of 60 however there is a great variability in color matching.

The normal adult over 65 has been demonstrated to have *cutaneous* perception changes. The threshold to pain is increased and the elderly subject makes many perceptual errors when utilizing a double simultaneous tactile test (Green and Bender 1953).

### Psychomotor Skills

Speed of perception and psychomotor skills are the beginning and end of a process that is fundamental in life adaptation. In a young adult speed of psychomotor reaction may be influenced to a large degree by motivation or by other personality factors. Reaction times are definitely slowed for the elderly—or more precisely, the time interval between the stimulus and the motor response is lengthened. This is referred to as response latency. This slowing is independent of motivation and the lengthening of the time interval is due to changes within the central nervous system rather than in the afferent or efferent peripheral nerves (Birren 1955). Elderly subjects not only respond slowly to a specific stimulus but if the task is made more difficult they have more trouble than young subjects.

### Intelligence Testing

The problem of measuring intelligence in elderly subjects is a complex one. To begin with there is no universal agreement re-

Other manifestations of change in the central nervous system include sensory loss and the absence or reduction of tendon reflexes (Critchley 1942, O'Leary, 1952). Synaptic transmission has received some attention, but deserves considerably more investigation. Reaction times slow down with advancing years. Birren and Wall (1956), having demonstrated that the electrophysiologic characteristics of the peripheral nerves are normal, have concluded that the slow response to stimuli can be explained on the basis of alterations in central synaptic and neurointegrative mechanisms.

Generally speaking, an old brain is more vulnerable to vascular insufficiency—a vulnerability that may be related to a narrowing of the safety margin as the cerebral blood flow diminishes with age. This alteration in cerebral blood flow parallels the decline in cerebral metabolic rate (Fitzekas, *et al*, 1952 and 1953, Freyhan, *et al* 1951, Kety 1955).

Chemical changes that have been reported within the brain include increases in sodium, lipid, calcium and iron and decreases in ascorbic acid, potassium and of course water content.

### Perception

The human body might be considered as a very complex communication system that must receive stimuli and convert them into activity. In such a complex system breakdowns can occur at many points. The first to be considered is perception. Clinical experience confirms the research conclusion that the ability to perceive certain stimuli alters with advancing age. McFarland (1956) working with commercial air transport pilots has clearly demonstrated that after the age of 60 there is a sharp decline in the recognition of high frequency sounds. Sounds of 4 000 cycles per second at 30 decibels can no longer be heard by the average subject over the age of 40. There results the peculiar phenomenon that older pilots can hear better in a noisy aircraft just as elderly people can often hear better in a noisy room.

In a somewhat similar manner the vision of older persons is much more impaired at low levels of illumination than that of younger individuals. Szafran (1955) found that older persons benefit relatively more than younger ones from increased illumination. This finding raises the question as to whether age changes in sen-

sory function are limited to the minimum energy required to stimulate or whether the whole range of discrimination has been affected. Coppinger (1955) measured flicker fusion thresholds at three different brightness levels in young and elderly subjects. He found in the older group a much smaller absolute increase in threshold as brightness was increased. This finding indicates that increasing the magnitude of a weak stimulus will effect greater improvement in the judgment of an elderly subject than would be obtained in the judgment of a younger one.

Visual changes include a decline in color matching ability (Gilbert, 1957). The decline after 20 years of age is a gradual one so that the differences between adjacent decades are statistically very small. After the age of 60 however there is a great variability in color matching.

The normal adult over 65 has been demonstrated to have cutaneous perception changes. The threshold to pain is increased and the elderly subject makes many perceptual errors when utilizing a double simultaneous tactile test (Green and Bender, 1953).

### Psychomotor Skills

Speed of perception and psychomotor skills are the beginning and end of a process that is fundamental in life adaptation. In a young adult speed of psychomotor reaction may be influenced to a large degree by motivation or by other personality factors. Reaction times are definitely slowed for the elderly—or more precisely the time interval between the stimulus and the motor response is lengthened. This is referred to as response latency. This slowing is independent of motivation and the lengthening of the time interval is due to changes within the central nervous system rather than in the afferent or efferent peripheral nerves (Birren, 1955). Elderly subjects not only respond slowly to a specific stimulus but if the test is made *more* difficult they have more trouble than young subjects.

### Intelligence Testing

The problem of measuring intelligence in elderly subjects is a complex one. To begin with there is no universal agreement re-



garding the definition of intelligence. Secondly, intelligence tests include a variety of components that are weighted differently in scoring. Components of mental tests include vocabulary, memory, learning, judgment, concept formation, imagination and so forth. Speed of responses is often measured and heavily weighted. All intelligence tests are based upon memory and learning, and memory ability clearly affects all spheres of psychic functioning. Intelligence tests, generally speaking, have been standardized on young people and specifically designed for young people. Application of such tests to older persons is certainly not wholly valid. Even tests standardized on elderly subjects must be used with caution until further work has been done. This fact has been clearly demonstrated by the work of Eisdorfer, Busse, Cohen and Greenberg (1957).

### CLINICAL ENTITIES

The following presentation does not include all the diagnostic categories that can be found in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (1954), but will be restricted to those disorders that are more frequent in the advanced years, have an etiologic relationship to the aging process, or present unique problems because of their serious impact upon an elderly person.

#### **Disorders Caused by or Associated with Impairment of Brain Tissue Function**

Diffuse impairment of physiologic functioning of the brain regardless of the cause produces certain characteristic symptoms. Defects are found in comprehension, calculation, problem solving, learning, and judgment. Orientation is faulty and memory is spotty. Emotional reactions are excessive and outbursts are easily precipitated. Interestingly, the symptoms are not always directly proportional to the extent of the physiologic disturbance, being over-determined by previous personality traits and the particular status of the individual at the time of onset of the organic pathologic process.

Organic brain disorders are separated for diagnostic purposes into two categories: acute and chronic. The term "acute" is not used

to indicate a sudden onset of symptoms, but is meant to imply a reversible process

### Acute Brain Disorders

Since by definition acute disease processes are reversible the patient can be expected to recover normal physiologic brain functioning. Acute brain disorders may be associated with infection (intracranial or systemic) intoxication (drug or poison), trauma, circulatory disturbances, convulsive disorders, metabolic changes and nutritional deficiencies or intracranial neoplasms.

There is great similarity in the reactions associated with infection and intoxication. Elderly persons, particularly those with cardio-respiratory disorders who are receiving medication are particularly vulnerable to toxic agents. The onset of symptoms may be insidious or rapid, and the first symptoms likely to appear are fluctuations in memory with impairment of retention. Shortly thereafter, the level of alertness often becomes variable ranging from mild confusion to complete stupor. Hallucinations of all kinds can develop and because of their bizarre quality they are often very frightening to the patient. Anxiety is great as these patients are often aware of the mental disturbance which they cannot control. For this reason they weep easily and their mood is dominated by fear and apprehension. Since the patient easily misinterprets what is going on around him, paranoid symptoms frequently develop. In addition to the mental disturbances the patient appears to be physically ill. Vasomotor instability manifested by flushing, sweating or rapid and fluctuating pulse is often present. Moderate leukocytosis and fever are common. Lucid intervals occasionally punctuate the mental confusion. During such an interval the patient will express fear of a return of symptoms and complain of headache and general weakness.

The treatment depends upon identification of the causative agent. A careful history is often of more value than the physical examination and will indicate what laboratory procedures are necessary for diagnosis. General supportive measures must be instituted quickly to prevent intensification of the physiologic disturbance. Intravenous fluids and tube feedings may be necessary to maintain adequate fluid, vitamin and caloric intake. Delirium is often helped by oxygen inhalation.

garding the definition of intelligence. Secondly, intelligence tests include a variety of components that are weighted differently in scoring. Components of mental tests include vocabulary, memory, learning, judgment, concept formation, imagination, and so forth. Speed of responses is often measured and heavily weighted. All intelligence tests are based upon memory and learning, and memory ability clearly affects all spheres of psychic functioning. Intelligence tests generally speaking have been standardized on young people and specifically designed for young people. Application of such tests to older persons is certainly not wholly valid. Even tests standardized on elderly subjects must be used with caution until further work has been done. This fact has been clearly demonstrated by the work of Eisdorfer, Busse, Cohen, and Greenberg (1957).

### CLINICAL ENTITIES

The following presentation does not include all the diagnostic categories that can be found in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (1954) but will be restricted to those disorders that are more frequent in the advanced years, have an etiologic relationship to the aging process, or present unique problems because of their serious impact upon an elderly person.

#### **Disorders Caused by or Associated with Impairment of Brain Tissue Function**

Diffuse impairment of physiologic functioning of the brain regardless of the cause produces certain characteristic symptoms. Defects are found in comprehension, calculation, problem solving, learning, and judgment. Orientation is faulty, and memory is spotty. Emotional reactions are excessive and outbursts are easily precipitated. Interestingly, the symptoms are not always directly proportional to the extent of the physiologic disturbance, being also determined by previous personality traits and the particular status of the individual at the time of onset of the organic pathologic process.

Organic brain disorders are separated for diagnostic purposes into two categories, acute and chronic. The term "acute" is not used

to indicate a sudden onset of symptoms but is meant to imply a reversible process

#### Acute Brain Disorders

Since by definition acute disease processes are reversible, the patient can be expected to recover normal physiologic brain functioning. Acute brain disorders may be associated with infection (intracranial or systemic) intoxication (drug or poison) trauma circulatory disturbances convulsive disorders metabolic changes and nutritional deficiencies or intracranial neoplasms.

There is great similarity in the reactions associated with infection and intoxication. Elderly persons, particularly those with cardiorespiratory disorders who are receiving medication, are particularly vulnerable to toxic agents. The onset of symptoms may be insidious or rapid and the first symptoms likely to appear are fluctuations in memory with impairment of retention. Shortly thereafter the level of alertness often becomes variable, ranging from mild confusion to complete stupor. Hallucinations of all kinds can develop and because of their bizarre quality they are often very frightening to the patient. Anxiety is great as these patients are often aware of the mental disturbance which they cannot control; for this reason they weep easily and their mood is dominated by fear and apprehension. Since the patient easily misinterprets what is going on around him, paranoid symptoms frequently develop. In addition to the mental disturbances, the patient appears to be physically ill. Vasomotor instability, manifested by flushing, sweating or rapid and fluctuating pulse, is often present. Moderate leukocytosis and fever are common. Lucid intervals occasionally punctuate the mental confusion. During such an interval the patient will express fear of a return of symptoms and complain of headache and general weakness.

The treatment depends upon identification of the causative agent. A careful history is often of more value than the physical examination and will indicate what laboratory procedures are necessary for diagnosis. General supportive measures must be instituted quickly to prevent intensification of the physiologic disturbance. Intravenous fluids and tube feedings may be necessary to maintain adequate fluid, vitamin and caloric intake. Delirium is often helped by oxygen inhalation.

The physician must remember his patient's apprehensive state, and see that all procedures are carefully and repeatedly explained. Repeated explanations are necessary because the patient is very fearful of his environment and is unable to retain information that is given him. It is desirable for such patients to have a single room, which should be as well lighted as possible in order to minimize misinterpretation of shadows and activity within the room. If it can be avoided, the patient should not be left unattended. His anxiety can be reduced by the presence of a trusted member of the family who is capable of explaining what is going on. Sedative drugs may complicate the picture, and for this reason they are avoided during the day, but adequate doses should be used at night to ensure needed rest.

Unfortunately the possibility that an acute brain disorder may have a prolonged deleterious effect upon the psychological functioning of the patient is often overlooked. The patient often realizes that he expressed certain bizarre thoughts and behaved in a very peculiar manner during the period of illness. He feels guilty about what has transpired but is too embarrassed to discuss his concern openly. For this reason the physician should review with the patient his behavior and verbalizations and assure him that they were recognized as a product of the organic illness.

Elderly patients who suffer an acute psychic disturbance as a result of trauma frequently have an amnesia for the head injury. External evidence of such an injury may be minimal or absent as the force of a blow necessary to produce such a reaction is considerably less in an older person than in a young adult. For this reason elderly persons are sometimes accused of alcoholic indulgence when their disturbance in thinking is actually the result of a head injury. When there is doubt chemical tests for intoxication should be made and serial electroencephalograms obtained if possible. Treatment is conservative utilizing general supportive measures. Such patients should be carefully followed so that a subdural hematoma will not be overlooked.

Cardiorespiratory failure by impairing circulation to the brain can produce a delirium. In such cases the patient appears very ill and orthopnea is present. The signs and symptoms of circulatory failure are the primary basis for the diagnosis and treatment is aimed at correcting the failure.

Diabetes and uremia are the most common metabolic disorders in elderly individuals, and should be considered whenever an acute mental reaction develops in an older person without obvious explanation.

### Chronic Brain Disorders

Since it is possible for the same patient to have both permanent and reversible impairment of cerebral tissue function, it is not surprising that improvement in the reversible changes should reduce the severity of symptoms during the course of a chronic brain disease. Strictly speaking improvement beyond a certain level is not possible in chronic brain disorders but rehabilitation and retraining can do much to compensate for losses. The course of a patient with chronic brain disease is marked by frequent fluctuations in brain functioning. These fluctuations are the result of many influences which include intercurrent infectious diseases as well as psychologic and sociologic determinants. Hence, psychogenic disturbances are not infrequently superimposed upon a chronic brain syndrome (Rothschild 1942). Like the acute brain disorders chronic disorders are classified according to cause. A number of the diagnostic categories are identical with those which subdivide the acute brain syndrome. The differentiation rests upon the persistence of brain damage.

Since organic brain disease is often an insidious process history often reveals that the patient has been showing gradual mental changes for some time. These include capricious defects in memory, behavioral changes, errors in judgment and deterioration of personal habits. It is not unusual for an elderly person who is in a place of considerable authority to remain in such a position in spite of obvious mental changes until he makes some very unfortunate error in judgment. Members of the medical profession are frequently asked for help in removing such a person from his place of authority. The physician certainly has an obligation when called upon to evaluate such an individual but it is society's obligation to provide the mechanisms that will prevent such persons from being kept in positions where crucial judgments must be made.

Of the infections associated with chronic brain disorders syphilis continues to be important. Sir Walter Bram (1954) reported that in patients over the age of 60 males are affected four times more

frequently than females. Out of 200 patients over the age of 60 who were admitted to his service, 95 per cent were diagnosed as having neurosyphilis. Of clinical interest is the fact that no other chronic infectious brain disease seems to be as greatly influenced by previous personality as does that of syphilitic origin. The mental symptoms are definitely colored by the patient's previous patterns of social adjustment, occupation, and education. Because the treatment of neurosyphilis by penicillin is well established, it is important for the possibility of syphilitic brain disease to be kept in mind by every physician.

Posttraumatic personality disorders are observed in patients of all ages. For obvious reasons, psychogenic symptoms frequently confuse the picture following a head injury. In elderly persons the medicolegal aspects are complicated by the fact that trauma may aggravate a latent senile or arteriosclerotic brain disorder. Unfortunately, there is no way that this effect can be proved, and it is important to remember that a large number of apparently normal elderly people have temporal lobe disturbances on their electroencephalograms which could be attributed erroneously to trauma. This problem has been more fully discussed in an earlier portion of this chapter (Busse *et al*, 1956; Barnes, *et al*, 1956; Silverman, *et al*, 1955).

### Cerebral Arteriosclerosis

While brain symptoms consistent with circulatory disease appear at the average age of 66 years, the disease may become manifest as early as 45. Strangely enough, symptoms are usually reported as having an abrupt onset. In such cases it is probable that the patient had had a very low physiologic reserve for some time and that some intercurrent stress, often an upper respiratory infection, precipitated the sudden appearance of symptoms.

Cerebral arteriosclerosis is thought to be three times as common in the male as in the female. It is generally believed that hereditary factors play a significant role in atherosclerosis and therefore in cerebral arteriosclerosis.

Some clinicians believe that in more than 50 per cent of the cases of cerebral arteriosclerosis there develops initially a delirious picture manifested by confusion, incoherence and restlessness and not infrequently accompanied by hallucinations. The delirium sub

sides leaving the patient at a considerably reduced level of functioning. From this point there is a gradual decline, first involving memory and judgment. Impaired judgment eventually affects many spheres including moral standards. With the loss of emotional control the patients become irritable, aggressive, and quarrelsome. Not infrequently they realize that they are losing some of their intellectual ability. Depressions then complicate the picture, and suicidal attempts may produce a serious problem for the patient's family and physician.

From a diagnostic viewpoint cerebral arteriosclerosis is difficult to distinguish from senile brain changes. Both pathologic processes may exist simultaneously in the same patient. Simon and Mahmud, on the basis of autopsy findings, reported that almost two thirds of cases diagnosed as senile psychosis should have been classified as cerebral arteriosclerosis. This error is probably attributable to the fact that the diagnosis of cerebral arteriosclerosis is based primarily on the history of a cerebral vascular occlusion. As a rule patients with cerebral arteriosclerosis do not show the profound physical and mental decay of the senile patient. Unlike the latter they often have some insight into their loss of mental ability. They are less likely to sustain fractures of the bone and are more likely to complain of headache, dizziness, and fainting attacks. They often suffer emotional outbursts and convulsive seizures. The memory defect in a senile patient is more apt to be diffuse, while in the arteriosclerotic it is spotty and fluctuates. Both types of patients fabricate in order to make up for deficiencies. The patient with senile psychosis is more apt to become involved in sexual indiscretions.

Occasionally cerebral arteriosclerosis must be distinguished from Alzheimer's or Pick's disease. Both of these diseases, however, have a much earlier onset and manifest a very gradual decline. Alzheimer's disease does not show periodic periods of improvement.

Many therapeutic approaches to the problem of cerebral arteriosclerosis have been attempted and a large number of these have attained some success. Brain stimulants such as Metrazol and Veratran have been employed (Barrabee *et al.* 1956; Klemeier *et al.* 1956). Attempts have been made to step up brain metabolism by using L-Glutavite (Katz and Kowalczyko 1956). Tranquilizers including Trilafon, chlorpromazine, and Promazine have been reported as useful (Ayd 1957; Smith *et al.* 1957). Supplementary



frequently than females. Out of 200 patients over the age of 50 who were admitted to his service, 95 per cent were diagnosed as having neurosyphilis. Of clinical interest is the fact that no other chronic infectious brain disease seems to be as greatly influenced by previous personality as does that of syphilitic origin. The mental symptoms are definitely colored by the patient's previous pattern of social adjustment, occupation and education. Because the treatment of neurosyphilis by penicillin is well established, it is important for the possibility of syphilitic brain disease to be kept in mind by every physician.

Posttraumatic personality disorders are observed in patients of all ages. For obvious reasons, psychogenic symptoms frequently confuse the picture following a head injury. In elderly persons the medicolegal aspects are complicated by the fact that trauma may aggravate a latent senile or arteriosclerotic brain disorder. Unfortunately, there is no way that this effect can be proved, and it is important to remember that a large number of apparently normal elderly people have temporal lobe disturbances on their electroencephalograms which could be attributed erroneously to trauma. This problem has been more fully discussed in an earlier portion of this chapter (Busse, *et al* 1956; Barnes, *et al*, 1956; Silverman *et al* 1955).

### Cerebral Arteriosclerosis

While brain symptoms consistent with circulatory disease appear at the average age of 66 years, the disease may become manifest as early as 45. Strangely enough, symptoms are usually reported as having an abrupt onset. In such cases it is probable that the patient had had a very low physiologic reserve for some time and that some intercurrent stress, often an upper respiratory infection, precipitated the sudden appearance of symptoms.

Cerebral arteriosclerosis is thought to be three times as common in the male as in the female. It is generally believed that hereditary factors play a significant role in atherosclerosis, and therefore in cerebral arteriosclerosis.

Some clinicians believe that in more than 50 per cent of the cases of cerebral arteriosclerosis there develops initially a delirious picture manifested by confusion, incoherence and restlessness, and not infrequently accompanied by hallucinations. The delirium sub-

disease In contrast to cerebral arteriosclerosis, senile dementia is more common in women Approximately 50 per cent of patients with senile psychosis show only a gradual mental deterioration over a period of years In 15 to 25 per cent however, paranoid symptoms develop In such cases the patient's suspiciousness and its effects on his behavior are very disturbing to his family and associates Such patients often change their wills because of paranoid delusions

In the section devoted to cerebral arteriosclerosis attention was given to the differential diagnosis between these two disorders For an excellent review of the differential diagnosis of organic dementias and affective disorders in aged patients the reader is referred to the publication by Ehrentreich (1957)

The anatomic changes characteristic of senile psychosis are adequately described in many textbooks of pathology and in other publications Unfortunately the cause of these changes is unknown at this time and no method for preventing or reducing them is available Therefore treatment is concerned with the maintenance of adequate nutrition and the provision of an environment that is consistent accepting, and stimulating within the limits of the patient's abilities A limited type of psychotherapy can frequently prove useful and permit the patient to make a reasonably happy adjustment

Cameron (1958) has reported the use of desoxyribonucleic (DNA) and ribonucleic (RNA) acids in 23 aged patients with memory impairment All 23 patients showed a favorable response, and in 50 per cent the results were considered good The best results were obtained in patients having severe memory deficits and marked confusion The side effects were minimum

*Alzheimer's disease* probably the most common of so called pre senile dementias was found in 4 per cent of patients examined at autopsy in a psychiatric institution (Rothschild and Kasanin 1936) Although Alzheimer's disease is classified as a presenile dementia there is considerable doubt that the pathologic process is related to the phenomenon of aging or that there is a hereditary predisposition as has been reported (Lowenberg and Waggoner 1934 Mc Nemey et al 1939) It is probable that this disease has a multiple etiology (Lowenberg and Rothschild 1931) Of all the organic disorders Alzheimer's disease is most likely to be accompanied by a distressing awareness of mental deterioration which may persist

vitamins alone are reported to have some success (Barrabee *et al* 1956). Psychotherapeutically, a variety of approaches have been profitably employed, including individual psychotherapy, group psychotherapy, and attitude therapy (Goldfarb and Sheps, 1954; Allen and Clow, 1952; Wolff, 1957; Ginzberg 1955).

Aged patients who are agitated and disturbed can often be helped by tranquilizers. As this is written, Trilafon seems to be the drug of choice, but only a therapeutic trial can determine whether an individual will respond to a particular medication. When the disturbed episode subsides, the dose of tranquilizer should be reduced and, if possible, eventually eliminated. Continued administration will build up a tolerance for the drug so that an increased amount will be necessary if agitation reappears.

Patients with cerebral arteriosclerosis do respond to a carefully regulated pattern of life. Tasks should be assigned that are within the limits of their ability and are in some way rewarding to them. Such activity is useful in preventing the appearance of irritability outbursts of hostility, and depressive episodes with possible attempts at suicide. Alcohol and other medication with toxic qualities should be avoided.

Alvarez deserves credit for bringing to the attention of the medical profession the importance of so called little strokes—thromboses of small intracranial arteries. These little strokes do not produce any lasting aphasia or hemiplegia but are usually characterized by a dizzy spell perhaps associated with nausea and vomiting, mental confusion or a numb sensation in an extremity. They are often followed by persistent more or less abdominal discomfort, weight loss and a personality change. Cortisone has been used in some instances but Alvarez (1957) does not feel that it is worthwhile. He recommends that supportive measures be instituted and that the patient be relieved of excess stress. He thinks that iodides may help. If the patient is obese, he should be put on a reduction diet but hypertension should not be treated unless it is severe and constitutes a grave threat to the patient's life.

**SENILE DEMENTIA** The symptoms of this disorder may vary from mild to severe. Patients with mild cases merely become more self-centered, have difficulty in assimilating new experiences and show a tendency to emotional outbursts. The superimposed psychogenic disturbance may be the more prominent element of the

over a rather long period. During this time the patient requires considerable attention.

Alzheimer's disease must be distinguished from Pick's disease and from senile and arteriosclerotic brain disease. The patient appears to be overactive as compared to the one with Pick's disease, and emotional distress and agitation are more common. In many cases the final diagnosis rests upon a pneumoencephalogram, which reveals a diffuse cortical atrophy as compared to the circumscribed cortical atrophy characteristic of Pick's disease. The course of this disease is progressively downhill, and the average duration is approximately four years, though it can vary between two and ten years. No specific treatment is known.

**PICK'S DISEASE** Although Pick's disease is also classified as a presenile dementia, there is again some doubt that it can be attributed to premature aging. The only justification for calling these diseases presenile is their average age of onset—approximately 54 years for Pick's disease, although it may appear as early as the fortieth year. Pick's disease is much rarer than Alzheimer's, and is approximately twice as common in women as in men. Articles in both the European and the American literature point to a strong genetic factor (Lowenberg, *et al*, 1939, Delay, *et al*, 1945, Sanders, *et al*, 1939).

The characteristic localized cortical atrophy is most frequently found on the orbital surface at the frontal lobe. The precentral convolution is intact. The second most frequent portion of the brain involved is the anterior insular region and the corpus callosum, and bilateral temporal involvement is next. Occasionally the atrophic process affects the parietal and occipital lobes as well as the basal ganglion, but in these cases it first appears in the frontal or temporal area. The localized nature of the atrophy produces aphasia, apraxia, and agnosia. These patients are easily distracted, easily fatigued, and have a great deal of difficulty dealing with new problems and new situations. Depressive states are rare but as deterioration continues, aimless activity and talkativeness can develop. The talkativeness produces usually a meaningless jargon.

Useful diagnostic features include apathy, inattentiveness and total lack of insight. Electroencephalographic studies are inconclusive, and confirmation of the diagnosis rests upon the pneu

moencephalogram (Delay and Desclaux 1945) There is no known treatment for this disorder, and the therapeutic regimen is centered upon adequate supportive and environmental measures

## DISORDERS PRIMARILY OF PSYCHOGENIC ORIGIN

The disorders of psychogenic origin include psychotic reactions psychophysiologic reactions and psychoneurotic disorders as well as disturbances in the personality pattern Classifying these disorders as psychogenic does not rule out the very important influence of organic disease upon mental functioning of the individual Again it must be stated that the majority of mental disorders have a multiple etiology but the disorders about to be discussed are attributed primarily to faulty thinking and behavior that result from inadequate or inappropriate learning

### *Involutorial, Affective, and Psychotic Depressive Reactions*

These three types of disorders closely resemble one another and in fact at specific stages each of the diseases can present a clinical picture indistinguishable from one or both of the others Depression is common to all three and is the most common symptom found in functional disorders of the aging (Clow and Allen 1949)

#### *Involutorial Psychotic Reaction*

During the so called change of life many women have symptoms of involutorial origin that do not reach the magnitude of a psychosis A variety of complaints develop including feelings of discomfort restlessness fatigue and other somatic symptoms Crying spells and vasomotor instability are symptoms expected with the onset of the menopause The long debated issue of a male climacteric will not be entered into but it seems reasonable that mental repercussions might occur in men whose sexual function declines more rapidly than usual

Psychotic reactions of the involutorial period are more common in women than in men in a ratio of 8 to 3 This reaction tends to have a prolonged course At the outset the patient complains of inability to sleep is very worried and anxious and expresses feelings

over a rather long period. During this time considerable attention

Alzheimer's disease must be distinguished and from senile and arteriosclerotic brain. Appears to be overactive as compared to the and emotional distress and agitation are cases the final diagnosis rests upon a pneum reveals a diffuse cortical atrophy as compared cortical atrophy characteristic of Pick's disease is progressively downhill, and the proximately four years, though it can vary years. No specific treatment is known.

**PICK'S DISEASE.** Although Pick's disease presenile dementia, there is again some distributed to premature aging. The only justifiable diseases presenile is their average age of onset years for Pick's disease, although it may appear fortieth year. Pick's disease is much rarer than approximately twice as common in women as in both the European and the American literature. A genetic factor (Lowenberg, *et al.* 1939, Delay, *et al.* 1939).

The characteristic localized cortical atrophy is not found on the orbital surface at the frontal lobe. The convolution is intact. The second most frequent portion of brain involved is the anterior insular region and the cingulum, and bilateral temporal involvement is next. Occasional atrophic process affects the parietal and occipital lobes and the basal ganglion, but in these cases it first appears in the frontal or temporal area. The localized nature of the atrophy produces aphasia, apraxia, and agnosia. These patients are easily frustrated, easily fatigued, and have a great deal of difficulty dealing with new problems and new situations. Depressive states are rare but as deterioration continues, aimless activity and talkativeness can develop. The talkativeness produces usually a meaningless jargon.

Useful diagnostic features include apathy, inattentiveness, and total lack of insight. Electroencephalographic studies are inconclusive, and confirmation of the diagnosis rests upon the pneum

much poorer. An attack of excitement occurring after the age of 40 is more likely to settle into a chronic state of mania.

### **Psychotic Depressive Reactions**

This type of reaction is distinguished from those related to involuntional changes or to the manic depressive pattern. These depressions are primarily reactive in nature—a response to some particular recent life event. Elderly persons are more apt to experience reactive depressions since the latter portion of our life span is more likely to bring events that contribute to a loss of self-esteem and threaten the established satisfactory pattern of life adjustment. Reactive depressions can be considered either psychoneurotic or psychotic depending upon the extent of the depressive symptoms. The differentiation rests upon two factors: (1) the extent to which the individual withdraws from reality and his ability to test reality, and (2) the degree to which he recognizes that he is not entirely responsible for his loss of self-esteem and that all is not lost and hopeless.

The prognosis of reactive depression is poor if the depression is accompanied by severe hypochondriasis, intractable insomnia, delusional material, or suicidal ruminations. Psychotherapeutic and supportive measures are particularly effective if the patient has demonstrated a relatively stable pattern of life adjustment prior to the onset of the reactive depression. In severe cases, electroconvulsive therapy must be considered.

### **Paranoid Reactions**

Paranoid reactions in elderly persons are not infrequently combined with organic brain deficits. This diagnostic category should not include those paranoid patients who are basically schizophrenic but only patients whose intelligence is well preserved and whose paranoid symptoms are consistent with their manifest emotions and behavior. There is no denying, however, that this type of reaction is more likely to occur in a person who for some time has been sensitive and suspicious. Such a patient confronted with the inevitable changes of the later years of life fails to accept them on a realistic basis and attributes his losses or failures to the hostility of other persons. Delusions are usually well systematized and con-

of self depreciation and worthlessness. If the depression continues for an extended period of time paranoid thinking enters the picture and treatment becomes more difficult.

From a diagnostic viewpoint, differentiation rests primarily upon the existence of physiologic changes typical of the involutional period, and the absence of a previous history of manic depressive swings. The cause of involutional psychoses probably lies in the fact that the physiologic capacity of the central nervous system to adjust to endocrine changes is inadequate in some individuals. The decline in estrogen in the female makes the nervous system more responsive and vulnerable to certain stresses.

From a psychodynamic viewpoint involutional reactions are almost always linked to conflicts in the sexual sphere, which are aggravated by the woman's realization that she is losing her reproductive capacities. For a woman who has failed to satisfy her sexual needs or her maternal drive the menopausal period can be filled with regrets, doubts, and guilt. To enter into a detailed discussion of the complex psychodynamics is unwarranted, but the reader is referred to standard texts such as those by Fenichel (1945) and English and Finch (1954).

From a therapeutic viewpoint there is no single approach that will be beneficial in the majority of involutional reactions. Each patient must be individually evaluated and treated. For instance Brew and Davidoff (1940) have observed that two types of involutional psychoses responded to estrogen therapy, while the third severe type was resistant to it but responded very well to electroconvulsive therapy. In severe depressions, electroconvulsive therapy continues to be the procedure of choice, though some of the new medications are proving useful. Patients not requiring hospitalization will often respond to carefully planned environmental and psychotherapeutic approaches.

### **Affective Reactions**

Only a mention of affective reactions is justified in this presentation of mental disorders of the aging. Manic depressive reactions are characterized by severe mood swings with a tendency to remissions and recurrences. Generally the first severe episode occurs before the age of 40 years. The prognosis for patients who experience the first manic-depressive episode after the age of 40 is



much poorer. An attack of excitement occurring after the age of 40 is more likely to settle into a chronic state of mania.

#### **Psychotic Depressive Reactions**

This type of reaction is distinguished from those related to involuntional changes or to the manic-depressive pattern. These depressions are primarily reactive in nature, a response to some particular recent life event. Elderly persons are more apt to experience reactive depressions since the latter portion of our life span is more likely to bring events that contribute to a loss of self esteem and threaten the established satisfactory pattern of life adjustment. Reactive depressions can be considered either psychoneurotic or psychotic depending upon the extent of the depressive symptoms. The differentiation rests upon two factors: (1) the extent to which the individual withdraws from reality and his ability to test reality, and (2) the degree to which he recognizes that he is not entirely responsible for his loss of self esteem and that all is not lost and hopeless.

The prognosis of reactive depression is poor if the depression is accompanied by severe hypochondriasis, intractable insomnia, delusional material or suicidal ruminations. Psychotherapeutic and supportive measures are particularly effective if the patient has demonstrated a relatively stable pattern of life adjustment prior to the onset of the reactive depression. In severe cases electroconvulsive therapy must be considered.

#### **Paranoid Reactions**

Paranoid reactions in elderly persons are not infrequently combined with organic brain deficits. This diagnostic category should not include those paranoid patients who are basically schizophrenic but only patients whose intelligence is well preserved and whose paranoid symptoms are consistent with their manifest emotions and behavior. There is no denying, however, that this type of reaction is more likely to occur in a person who for some time has been sensitive and suspicious. Such a patient confronted with the inevitable changes of the later years of life fails to accept them on a realistic basis and attributes his losses or failures to the hostility of other persons. Delusions are usually well systematized and con-

cerned with such things as property, money, and relationship to neighbors. As a secondary elaboration of their feelings of persecution, such patients often invest themselves with what they feel are special or unique abilities. They conclude that the younger people around them are jealous of these skills and are putting them in a disadvantageous position in order to avoid competing with them.

Deaf people and those whose sight is failing are more apt to become paranoid than those with normal hearing and vision. Undoubtedly in elderly people the loss of hearing and visual acuity form a definite predisposition to paranoid tendencies. Since a hearing defect has a much stronger predisposing effect than visual loss, every effort should be made to provide a suitable hearing aid in appropriate cases as soon as possible. When deafness is present, there is a high likelihood that auditory hallucinations will occur.

When an elderly patient of this type is examined, he is found to be in spite of advanced years, alert, receptive, shrewd in his conversation, and quick to point out any minor inconsistencies that develop in the conversation. Treatment of this type of patient is extremely difficult and presents problems that cannot be solved solely through medical channels but require the co-operation of society. Society must provide legal measures that can serve the best interests of the patient, his family, and the community.

### **Psychophysiologic Autonomic and Visceral Disorders**

The term psychophysiologic disorders is used in preference to psychosomatic disorders because the former specifies the etiology of the disease while the latter is more aptly applied to a point of view held by the medical profession. Psychophysiologic reactions are believed to represent both the physiologic expression of an emotion and the fact that the conscious recognition of this emotion has been repressed. Consequently, patients in this category are unaware of the cause of the physiologic response that they are experiencing. The symptoms of a psychophysiologic reaction are due to a chronic exaggerated state of a normal physiologic reaction accompanying an emotion.

Unfortunately, the prevalence and treatment of psychophysiologic reactions in the aged have received very little attention. Pruritus

for example is frequently mentioned as a serious problem in aging patients, yet I know of no reliable statistics concerned with the incidence of pruritus. In our own experience the complaint of itching is practically nonexistent among so called normal well adjusted aged subjects although it is a common complaint of elderly patients in the skin clinic. While it would seem reasonable to attribute itching to the senile changes in the skin our preliminary observations suggest that this assumption is open to considerable doubt. No definite conclusions are justified at this time however but must await further investigation.

Arthritis is a very common complaint in elderly people. Of the two major types of arthritis—rheumatoid and chronic hypertrophic (osteoarthritis)—the second is believed to be related to senescence. The cause of osteoarthritis is far from clear but many physicians agree that exacerbations of joint disease can be related to the emotional state of the patient. It seems reasonable to assume that the physiologic strain produced by prolonged intense emotional reactions has its repercussions in the joints of elderly people. The next logical step is to include in any therapeutic regimen the reduction or eradication of strong emotional stress (Kutner *et al*, 1956 Weiss and English 1957).

A survey of our own clinic indicates that the diagnosis of psychophysiologic gastrointestinal reaction is relatively common among patients past 60. The combination of causal factors to be considered includes a decrease in functional efficiency of the gastrointestinal tract with advancing years and the narrowing of interests and centering of attention upon the basic functions of the body. Elderly patients can easily become preoccupied with such matters as food elimination of body wastes and general body comfort. Any change in efficiency of function will be observed and its significance exaggerated.

In this regard Busse and his co workers (1955) found that approximately 25 per cent of well adjusted elderly persons require laxatives two to four times a week and that 50 per cent of a large series of subjects over the age of 60 occasionally or habitually use laxatives. Many subjects know that constipation can be related to some particular upset in life routine. Since elderly people are more vulnerable to constipation I believe that particular attention should be given to maintaining a well regulated life pattern. Many of our

subjects noted that they became constipated when visiting in the home of an in-law where they felt unwanted, but not when visiting in a home where they felt accepted

### **Psychoneurotic Disorders**

Anxiety is basic to the development of a psychoneurosis. It is impossible in this presentation to discuss fully all the implications of the word, anxiety. We must limit ourselves to a few fundamental facts. To begin with, the manifestations of anxiety, both psychologic and somatic, are similar to those of fear, but anxiety differs from fear in that the threat or danger is partially or wholly unrecognized. A person knows what he fears, but does not know what is making him anxious. The physiologic sensation accompanying fear is recognizable to the individual as an appropriate response that prepares his body to deal with the danger. Anxiety gives a similar sensation or warning, but the patient is not consciously aware of the source of the danger and so cannot deal with it on a realistic basis.

All people have experienced such anxiety at some time in their lives, but such experiences are usually mild and transient and do not become seriously incapacitating. If they are prolonged or intense, the anxiety can interfere with the patient's ability to work. A psychoneurosis exists when anxiety interferes with efficiency of normal psychic functioning and behavior.

Obviously, the fundamental mechanism in a neurosis is repression—that is, pushing into the unconscious a recognition of the danger. The existence of the repressed material and its constant attempt to break into consciousness result in the depletion of psychic energy. The type of psychoneurotic reaction is determined by the way in which the patient attempts to handle his anxiety.

The incidence of incapacitating psychoneurotic reactions among elderly persons is unknown. The studies that have been attempted are definitely limited by a biased sample, biased criteria, or biased methods. For instance, our own studies concerned with so-called normal elderly subjects are biased by our selection process. Our subjects must be over the age of 60, relatively free of disease—particularly disease affecting the central nervous system—and apparently well adjusted and living in the community. We have

found that our subjects differ markedly from patients in a similar age group who are recruited from a clinic population—a retirement home or a mental institution. Therefore, any generalizations drawn from this type of study must be considered with utmost caution.

Another problem in the study of psychoneurosis is that the clinical picture is rarely so clear cut that it fits neatly into a specific diagnostic category. All too often the clinician has to make a diagnosis of mixed psychoneurosis with the qualification that one particular neurotic reaction pattern is dominant. Our studies indicate that a core conflict of a neurotic nature can exist within a person for many years while the manifestations of this conflict vary in response to the life situation. This means that we see a kaleidoscopic picture of a psychoneurosis. In accord with this observation, it has been demonstrated experimentally by Philip Seitz (1953) that one psychoneurotic symptom can be substituted for another. It is true of course that not all psychoneurotic symptoms are equally satisfactory as a defense against a specific anxiety.

#### Anxiety Reaction

When anxiety permeates widely the thoughts and behavior of a patient it is referred to as diffuse. When it is unattached—that is, unrelated to any experience or event but more or less constantly present—it is called “free floating.” This type of anxiety makes it impossible for the patient ever to feel secure or relaxed. He is constantly trying to find an outlet for his anxiety and moves quickly to and away from contact with people and various activities. Anxiety is not limited to the daytime hours and frequently produces disturbed sleep patterns or nightmares.

The physiologic manifestations of anxiety include hyperventilation, profuse sweating, anorexia, nausea, and diarrhea. When an older person becomes acutely anxious he tries to find some tangible explanation for this anxiety and therefore concludes that he is seriously ill. In a state of panic he seeks medical help. When anxiety continues for an extended period of time the somatic manifestations take on increasing import and it is very easy for the free floating anxiety to shift to concern with bodily functioning. This is one of the psychodynamic explanations of the origin of hypochondriasis. Further attention will be given to the chronic complainer in a subsequent section of this chapter.

subjects noted that they became constipated when visiting in the home of an in-law where they felt unwanted, but not when visiting in a home where they felt accepted

### **Psychoneurotic Disorders**

Anxiety is basic to the development of a psychoneurosis. It is impossible in this presentation to discuss fully all the implications of the word, anxiety. We must limit ourselves to a few fundamental facts. To begin with, the manifestations of anxiety, both psychologic and somatic, are similar to those of fear, but anxiety differs from fear in that the threat or danger is partially or wholly unrecognized. A person knows what he fears, but does not know what is making him anxious. The physiologic sensation accompanying fear is recognizable to the individual as an appropriate response that prepares his body to deal with the danger. Anxiety gives a similar sensation or warning, but the patient is not consciously aware of the source of the danger and so cannot deal with it on a realistic basis.

All people have experienced such anxiety at some time in their lives, but such experiences are usually mild and transient and do not become seriously incapacitating. If they are prolonged or intense, the anxiety can interfere with the patient's ability to work. A psychoneurosis exists when anxiety interferes with efficiency of normal psychic functioning and behavior.

Obviously, the fundamental mechanism in a neurosis is repression—that is, pushing into the unconscious a recognition of the danger. The existence of the repressed material and its constant attempt to break into consciousness result in the depletion of psychic energy. The type of psychoneurotic reaction is determined by the way in which the patient attempts to handle his anxiety.

The incidence of incapacitating psychoneurotic reactions among elderly persons is unknown. The studies that have been attempted are definitely limited by a biased sample, biased criteria, or biased methods. For instance, our own studies concerned with so-called normal elderly subjects are biased by our selection process. Our subjects must be over the age of 60, relatively free of disease—particularly disease affecting the central nervous system—and apparently well adjusted and living in the community. We have

found that our subjects differ markedly from patients in a similar age group who are recruited from a clinic population—a retirement home or a mental institution. Therefore, any generalizations drawn from this type of study must be considered with utmost caution.

Another problem in the study of psychoneurosis is that the clinical picture is rarely so clear cut that it fits neatly into a specific diagnostic category. All too often the clinician has to make a diagnosis of mixed psychoneurosis with the qualification that one particular neurotic reaction pattern is dominant. Our studies indicate that a core conflict of a neurotic nature can exist within a person for many years while the manifestations of this conflict vary in response to the life situation. This means that we see a kaleidoscopic picture of a psychoneurosis. In accord with this observation it has been demonstrated experimentally by Philip Seitz (1953) that one psychoneurotic symptom can be substituted for another. It is true, of course, that not all psychoneurotic symptoms are equally satisfactory as a defense against a specific anxiety.

#### *Anxiety Reaction*

When anxiety permeates widely the thoughts and behavior of a patient, it is referred to as diffuse. When it is unattached—that is, unrelated to any experience or event but more or less constantly present—it is called “free floating.” This type of anxiety makes it impossible for the patient ever to feel secure or relaxed. He is constantly trying to find an outlet for his anxiety and moves quickly to and away from contact with people and various activities. Anxiety is not limited to the daytime hours and frequently produces disturbed sleep patterns or nightmares.

The physiologic manifestations of anxiety include hyperventilation, profuse sweating, anorexia, nausea, and diarrhea. When an older person becomes acutely anxious, he tries to find some tangible explanation for this anxiety and therefore concludes that he is seriously ill. In a state of panic, he seeks medical help. When anxiety continues for an extended period of time, the somatic manifestations take on increasing import and it is very easy for the free floating anxiety to shift to concern with bodily functioning. This is one of the psychodynamic explanations of the origin of hypochondriasis. Further attention will be given to the chronic complainer in a subsequent section of this chapter.

subjects noted that they became constipated when visiting in the home of an in law where they felt unwanted, but not when visiting in a home where they felt accepted

### **Psychoneurotic Disorders**

Anxiety is basic to the development of a psychoneurosis. It is impossible in this presentation to discuss fully all the implications of the word, anxiety. We must limit ourselves to a few fundamental facts. To begin with, the manifestations of anxiety, both *psychologic* and *somatic*, are similar to those of fear, but anxiety differs from fear in that the threat or danger is partially or wholly *unrecognized*. A person knows what he fears but does not know what is making him anxious. The physiologic sensation accompanying fear is recognizable to the individual as an appropriate response that prepares his body to deal with the danger. Anxiety gives a similar sensation or warning but the patient is not consciously aware of the source of the danger and so cannot deal with it on a realistic basis.

All people have experienced such anxiety at some time in their lives, but such experiences are usually mild and transient and do not become seriously incapacitating. If they are prolonged or intense the anxiety can interfere with the patient's ability to work. A psychoneurosis exists when anxiety interferes with efficiency of normal psychic functioning and behavior.

Obviously, the fundamental mechanism in a neurosis is repression that is pushing into the unconscious a recognition of the danger. The existence of the repressed material and its constant attempt to break into consciousness result in the depletion of psychic energy. The type of psychoneurotic reaction is determined by the way in which the patient attempts to handle his anxiety.

The incidence of incapacitating psychoneurotic reactions among elderly persons is unknown. The studies that have been attempted are definitely limited by a biased sample, biased criteria, or biased methods. For instance, our own studies concerned with so-called normal elderly subjects are biased by our selection process. Our subjects must be over the age of 60, relatively free of disease—particularly disease affecting the central nervous system—and apparently well adjusted and living in the community. We have



depressive episodes in elderly subjects is related to their socio-economic level and state of employment. The percentage of unemployed or retired subjects who experienced depressive episodes varied from 44 to 48 per cent. The incidence dropped to 25 per cent in a series of elderly subjects who were continuing to work. One should be cautious, however, in concluding that work alone plays some vital role in preventing or decreasing the number of depressive episodes. It is possible that there is a fundamental difference which permits some persons to continue to work and also makes them relatively immune to depressive episodes. Another important defense against depression appears to be planned creative and recreational activity (Busse *et al.* 1954 and 1955). The life history of those subjects with adequate planned creative activity reveals that this is not a newly developed pattern but one that has existed for many years. Although it is possible that elderly patients can develop such patterns of living, it is unlikely that they will develop them spontaneously or without the help of persons in their environment.

The physician should urge his older patients to maintain or develop work or activity that maintains their self-esteem and as much independence as possible. Experience has shown that so-called hobbies are of little value to elderly people unless they result in something that is appreciated by others. A hobby that contributes nothing to others but merely occupies the time of an elderly person is an unsatisfactory defense against depressive episodes.

#### Suicide in Old Age

Individuals who attempt suicide do so for many reasons. Often suicide is the result of psychosis or severe psychoneurosis. In all countries where adequate figures are available, statistics show that the frequency of suicide increases in late middle or old age. A number of possible explanations for this fact are worthy of consideration. To begin with, an elderly person with an organic psychosis rarely attempts suicide. A suicidal attempt is much more likely to be related to a depressive episode that is superimposed upon a lifelong history of hardship. An elderly person who has had considerable difficulty throughout his life span seems to find the added problems of the advanced years too much to tolerate. Gruhle (1941) stated that suicide in old age can be attributed primarily

While tranquilizing drugs are useful in reducing the symptoms of acute anxiety, it is important for the physician to remember that removing the symptom does not affect the cause of the anxiety. All too often the anxiety re-emerges when the tranquilizers are discontinued. For this reason medication cannot be relied upon to the neglect of psychotherapy.

### **Depressive Reaction**

Periods of depression that are more or less incapacitating but do not require medical help develop in the lives of most people. Evidence indicates that such depressive periods increase in frequency and depth in the advanced years of life. Busse and his colleagues (1955), in a study of "normal" community volunteers over the age of 60 years, found that a significant portion of the subjects were aware that they were experiencing more frequent and more annoying depressive episodes. The subjects reported that during such episodes they felt so discouraged that they often had no desire to continue to live. Only a small number admitted entertaining suicidal ideas, but a much larger percentage stated that during such depressive periods they would welcome a painless death.

Prior to this report Busse and his co-workers (1954) had published their observation that guilt is apparently a relatively unimportant dynamic force in the psychic functioning of so-called normal elderly persons. Guilt and the turning inward of unconscious hostile impulses that are unacceptable to the ego are the common mechanisms in the depressions of younger adults. This was not the case with elderly subjects. The depressive episodes can be more readily linked with loss of so-called narcissistic supplies. The older subject becomes depressed when he cannot find ways of gratifying his needs when because of social environmental changes or the decreased efficiency of his body functions he can no longer reduce his tensions by his own volition. Approximately 85 per cent of the volunteer community subjects were able to trace the onset of most of their depressive episodes to specific stimuli. These depressive episodes, therefore, were primarily reactive depressions. The triggering stimuli were usually related to an experience associated with physical suffering, with lowered financial, professional, or social status, or with the loss of friends and relatives.

Busse and his colleagues (1955) reported that the frequency of

who is unable to keep up with society's financial and social demands. Such a person is rarely able to face the true cause of his failure but rather seeks to maintain his self respect by becoming "sick" and requesting that society provide him with financial and medical help.

This retreat into illness can be used with reasonable success for variable periods of time but eventually the patient's family and acquaintances begin to question the validity of his complaints in view of the findings of the physician, the individual's behavior when he feels he is not being observed, and his physical capacity to do the things that he "wants" to do. When friends and acquaintances recognize that the excuse of illness is physically unjustified, they feel they are being exploited and express resentment. Most people are governed by a strict conscience that will not permit them to "play sick" to get out of difficulty and this makes them resentful of the person who habitually uses illness as a defense.

**PSYCHOLOGIC FACTORS** Psychodynamically there are three major components in the development of hypochondriasis. The first is a withdrawal of the patient's interests from persons and his environment and a centering of his psychic energy upon himself and in particular upon his body and its functionings. The second is the patient's utilization of restrictions and discomforts produced by his illness as a way of punishing himself and partially atoning for his guilt feelings. These guilt feelings arise from the hostility he feels toward those close to him but which he is unable to express. The third possibility is that the patient shifts his anxiety from some specific psychic conflict to a less threatening concern with bodily disease and functioning.

It is obvious that a person in the advanced years provides fertile soil for the development of hypochondriasis. The elderly person whose energy was formerly devoted to work or other social activities now has this energy to focus upon himself. In addition he cannot risk expressing hostility because he is much more aware of his dependence upon others. Therefore he must hold his feelings in check by turning them inward and directing them against himself. Finally he finds that worry about his health is more acceptable to himself and to others than concern with his loss of social prestige or financial security.

**METHOD OF MANAGEMENT** On the basis of the social influences

to social and psychologic factors, which in turn are related to the inevitable changes that our particular culture forces upon us in advancing years. Many other factors must also be considered, however. For instance, suicidal rates are higher in urban than in rural areas, lower in Catholic than in Protestant countries, higher among the unmarried than among the married, increased in times of unemployment and economic depression and decreased during war, and they are highest in the early summer. Suicide rates among English women reach a peak between the ages of 45 and 64, while among English men the highest rate occurs beyond 64. This sex difference can be attributed to the menopause in the life of a woman and to the retirement of men at the age of 65 or thereafter.

### **Hypochondriasis**

Hypochondriasis is not a disease entity. It is a syndrome consisting of an anxious preoccupation with the body or a portion of the body which the patient believes is either diseased or not functioning properly. This bodily preoccupation can be associated with a variety of medical conditions, including neuroses, psychoses, psychophysiologic reactions and personality disturbances. Regardless of the underlying cause for his hypochondriasis, the chronic complainer tries the patience of both his medical advisers and his associates. In our study of the prevalence of hypochondriasis among the adult population of a medical clinic, we found that chronic complaining was noted much more frequently in elderly patients.

In an attempt to find a reasonable approach to therapy, we gathered the hypochondriacal patients together in a special clinic. More than half of them were past 60, and the majority were women. The therapeutic approach was based upon an understanding of the social, psychologic and medical factors that play a role in the etiology and maintenance of this syndrome.

**SOCIAL FACTORS** In most western cultures great emphasis is placed upon financial success, the attainment of a position of authority, and the maintenance of personal independence. Our society has little room for the individual who is a failure. On the other hand, however, our Christian democratic ideals require that we provide medical care and financial assistance for those who are physically ill and do not have financial resources. This social pattern provides a very usable escape mechanism for the person

## REFERENCES

- 1 ALLEN E B and CLOW H F The psychiatrist's role in the care of the aged *Geriatrics* 7 117 1952
- 2 ALVAREZ W C The management of persons with little strokes *Geriatrics* 12 421 1957
- 3 ANDREW W Cytological changes in sensory trigeminal ganglion spinal cord and brain of the mouse *J Anat London* 75 406 1941
- 4 AND F J The treatment of anxiety agitation and excitement in the aged a preliminary report on Trilafon *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 5 92 1957
- 5 BARNABEE P WINGATE J H PHILLIPS B D and GREENHART M Effects of L-Glutavite compared with Metracal and vitamins on aged female psychotic patients *Postgrad Med* 19 155 1956
- 6 BARNES R H BUSSE E W and FRIEDMAN L L The psychological functioning of aged individuals with normal and abnormal electroencephalograms II—a study of hospitalized individuals *J Nerv & Ment Dis* 124 255 1956
- 7 BIRLEN J E and BORWICK J Age changes in verbal fluency *J Gerontol* 6 3 supplement p 62 1951
- 8 BIRLEN J E "Age Changes in Speed of Simple Responses and Perception and Their Significance for Complex Behavior" in *Old Age in the Modern World* London F & S Livingstone pp 235-247 1955
- 9 BIRLEN J E and WALL P D Age changes in conduction velocity refractory period, number of fibers connective tissue spine and blood vessels in sciatic nerve of rats *J Comp Neurol* 104 11 1956
- 10 BORWICK J In Proceedings of the Duke University Council on Gerontology 68-72 May 7 1957
- 11 BRAIN W R Cerebral Lesions in Old Age" in *Old Age in the Modern World* London F & S Livingstone 1951 pp 395-401
- 12 BRAY A H and DAWSON E The involutional psychosis *Psychiatric Quar* 14 412 1940
- 13 BROWN H Age changes in human cortex *Anat Rec* 115 259 1953 (Abstract)
- 14 BUSSE E W The treatment of hypochondriasis *Tri State M J* 27 1954
- 15 BUSSE E W BARNES R H SILVERMAN A J SIN M C THALER M and FROST L L Studies of the process of aging factors that influence the psyche of elderly persons *Am J Psychiat* 110 897 1954
- 16 BUSSE E W BARNES R H SILVERMAN A J THALER M and FROST L L Studies of the process of aging V The strengths and weaknesses of psychic functioning in the aged *Am J Psychiat* 111 896 1955
- 17 BUSSE E W Treatment of the nonhospitalized emotionally disturbed elderly person *Geriatrics* 11 173 1956a
- 18 BUSSE E W Treatment of the chronic complainer *M Rec & Ann* 50 196 1956b

and psychologic mechanisms which have been discussed, a new therapeutic approach to hypochondriasis has been recommended (Busse, 1954, 1956a, 1956b). The first therapeutic principle is to avoid confronting the patient with the fact that his symptoms are 'imaginary or all in his head'. Such statements leave the patient defenseless and only serve to increase his anxiety and arouse hostility towards the doctor who he feels is accusing him of making up the symptoms. The second principle is to avoid telling the patient's child, spouse or friends that the chronic complaining is purely of psychic origin, as the person so informed will inevitably become angry with the patient and confront him with this particular knowledge. When this happens the patient feels that he cannot trust anyone and certainly not the physician.

Third, the physician should be sympathetic but must refrain from giving the patient a specific diagnosis or explanation. When he is pushed for an explanation by the patient, he should indicate that he is not certain as to the origin of the problem since the diagnostic procedures to date have not produced any definite leads but that he realizes there must be an explanation and that the patient needs help. He should assure the patient that he is willing to work with him and should demonstrate his willingness by prescribing placebo or medications that will not confuse the clinical picture for example tranquilizers. He should be firm about making definite follow up appointments and must be very careful to let the patient know exactly how long he will have allotted upon return visits. For instance the physician might say 'I would like to see you again next Friday. I will put aside twenty minutes for you and this will give us an opportunity for me to examine you as well as to review with you all your difficulties.'

These principles of therapy will help the patient to feel that the doctor is interested in him and is searching for the possible cause of his complaints. When the patient knows that he has a specific length of time for each appointment he will quickly find that he can utilize this time effectively by talking about his emotional as well as his physical difficulties. As the patient releases his repressed feelings and finds ways to deal with them the symptoms will subside. This type of therapeutic approach by preventing the hypochondriacal symptoms from becoming firmly fixed and therapeutically resistant, actually conserves the physician's time.

# REFERENCES

- 1 ALLEN E B and CLOW H L The psychiatrist's role in the care of the aging *Geriatrics* 7 117 1952
- 2 ALVAREZ, W C The management of persons with little strokes *Geriatrics* 12 421 1957
- 3 ANDREW W Cytological changes in sensory trigeminal ganglion spinal cord and brain of the mouse *J Anat* London 75 100 1911
- 4 AYD F J The treatment of anxiety agitation and excitement in the aged a preliminary report on Trilafon *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 5 92 1957
- 5 BARRABEE P WINGATE J H PHILLIPS B D and GREENBLATT M Effects of L-Glutavite " compared with Metrazol and vitamins on aged female psychotic patients *Postgrad Med* 19 185 1958
- 6 BARNES R H BUSSE E W and FRIEDMAN L L The psychological functioning of aged individuals with normal and abnormal electroencephalograms II—a study of hospitalized individuals *J Nerv & Ment Dis* 124 585 1956
- 7 BIRREN J E and BOTWINICK J Age changes in verbal fluency *J Gerontol* 6 3 supplement p 62 1951
- 8 BIRREN J E "Age Changes in Speed of Simple Responses and Perception and Their Significance for Complex Behavior" in *Old Age in the Modern World* London E & S Livingstone pp 235-247 1955
- 9 BIRREN J E and WALL P D Age changes in conduction velocity refractory period number of fibers connective tissue space and blood vessels in sciatic nerve of rats *J Comp Neurol* 104 1 1958
- 10 BOTWINICK J In *Proceedings of the Duke University Council on Gerontology* 68-72 May 7 1957
- 11 BRAIN W R "Cerebral Lesions in Old Age" in *Old Age in the Modern World* London E & S Livingstone 1954 pp 395-401
- 12 BREW A H and DAVIDOFF E The involutional psychosis *Psychiatric Quar* 14 412 1940
- 13 BRODY H Age changes in human cortex *Anat Rec* 115 289 1953 (Abstract)
- 14 BUSSE E W The treatment of hypochondriasis *Tri State M J* 2 7 1954
- 15 BUSSE E W BARNES R H SILVERMAN A J SHY M C THALER M and FROST L L Studies of the process of aging factors that influence the psyche of elderly persons *Am J Psychiat* 110 697 1954
- 16 BUSSE E W BARNES R H SILVERMAN A J THALER M and FROST L L Studies of the process of aging V The strengths and weaknesses of psychic functioning in the aged *Am J Psychiat* 111 696 1955
- 17 BUSSE E W Treatment of the nonhospitalized emotionally disturbed elderly person *Geriatrics* 11 173 1956a
- 18 BUSSE E W Treatment of the chronic complainer *M Rec & Ann* 50 196 1956b

## 540 *The Older Patient*

- 19 BUSSE E W, BARNES R H, FRIEDMAN E L and KELTA E J Psychological functioning of aged individuals with normal and abnormal electroencephalograms I A study of nonhospitalized community volunteers *J Nerv & Ment Dis* 124 135 1956
- 20 CAMERON, D E The use of nucleic acid in aged patients with memory impairment *Am J Psychiat* 114 943 1958
- 21 CLOW H E and ALLEN, E B A study of depressive states in the aging *Geriatrics* 4 11 1949
- 22 COPLINGER N W The relationship between critical flicker frequency and chronologic age for varying levels of stimulus brightness *J Gerontol* 10 48 1955
- 23 CRITCHLEY, M The nature and significance of senile plaques *J Neurol & Psychopath* 10 124 1929
- 24 CRITCHLEY M Ageing of the Nervous System in *Problems of Ageing* (ed 2) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1942 chap 19
- 25 DELAY J, DESCLAUX P, PERLIN J and BUVAT J F La maladie de Pick familiale *Rev neurol* 77 85, 1945
- 26 DELAY, J and DESCLAUX P L'encephalographie dans les demences degeneratives encéphaloses *Rev neurol* 77 212 1945
- 27 *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* Washington D C, American Psychiatric Association 1951
- 28 EHRENTHEIL O F Differential diagnosis of organic dementia and affective disorders in aged patients *Geriatrics* 12 426 1957
- 29 EISDORFER C, BUSSE E W, COHLN L D and GREENBERG F The Wisconsin performance of a Piedmont aged sample *Am Psychologist* 12 1st presented at American Psychological Assoc Sept 1957
- 30 ENGLISH O S and FRUCH S M *Introduction to Psychiatry* New York W W Norton & Co 1954 chap 16
- 31 FAZEKAS J F, ALMAN R W and BESSMAN A N Cerebral physiology of the aged *Am J M Sc* 223 245 1952
- 32 FAZEKAS J F, ALLEN J and WITKIN L Cerebral hemodynamics and metabolism in subjects over 90 years of age *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 1 836 1953
- 33 FLEINICHEL O *Psychoanalytic Theory of Neurosis* New York W W Norton & Co 1945
- 34 GREYHAN F A, WOODFORD R B and KELTY S S Cerebral blood flow and metabolism in psychoses of senility *J Ment & Nerv Dis* 113 449 1951
- 35 GARDNER E Decrease in human neurons with age *Anat Rec* 77 529 1940
- 36 GILBERT J C Age changes in color matching *J Gerontol* 12 210 1957
- 37 GINZBERG R Attitude therapy in geriatric ward psychiatry *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 3 445, 1955
- 38 GOLDFARB A I and SHEIS, J Psychotherapy of aged III *Psychosom Med* 16 209 1954



- 39 GREEN M A and BENDER, M D Cutaneous perception in the aged  
*A.M.A. Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 69 577 1953
- 40 GRIGLE H W Suicide in old age *Ztschr Altersforsch* 3 21 1911
- 41 HOLLINGSHEAD A BIDLICH F SHEPARD W P BONNETT I C LEW  
E A and MARIS H H Mental disorders in the United States *Mod  
ern Med* 24 83 1950
- 42 KAPLAN O J *Mental Disorders in Later Life* Stanford Stanford Univ  
Press ed 2 1956
- 43 KATZ, E M and KOWALICZKO Z A clinical study of the effect of L-Gluta  
mate on mental function and behavior of elderly chronically ill patients  
*Internat Rec Med* 169 396 1956
- 44 LAY H "Some Experiments on Adult Learning" in *Old Age in the Mod  
ern World* London E & S Livingstone 1955 pp 259-267
- 45 LATT S S "Changes in Cerebral Circulation and Oxygen Consumption  
Which Accompany Maturation and Aging," in WALLSCH H (ed) *Bio-  
chemistry of the Developing Nervous System* New York Academic  
Press 1955
- 46 KLEEMIER, R W RICH T A. and JUSTISS W A The effects of alpha  
(2-piperidyl) benzhydrol hydrochloride (Meratran) on psychomotor  
performance in a group of aged males *J Gerontol* 11 165 1956
- 47 KUTNER, B FANSHIEL D TOGO A M and LANGNER T S *The Hun  
dred Over Sixty* Russell Sage Foundation 1956 p 131
- 48 LOWENBERG K and ROTHSCHILD D Alzheimers disease—its occurrence  
on the basis of a variety of etiologic factors *Am J Psychiat* 88 N S  
11 269 1931
- 49 LOWENBERG K and WAGGONER R W Familial organic psychosis (Alz  
heimers type) *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 31 737 1934
- 50 LOWENBERG K BOYD D A JR and SALON D D Occurrence of  
Pick's disease in early adult years *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 41 1001  
1939
- 51 MCFARLAND R A "Functional Efficiency Skills and Employment" in  
ANDERSON J E (ed) *Psychological Aspects of Aging* Am Psycho-  
logical Assoc 1956
- 52 McMENEMY W H WORSTER DROUGHT C FLIND J and WILLIAMS  
H C Familial presenile dementia *J Neurol & Psychiat* 2 293 1939
- 53 NATIONAL COMMITTEE AGAINST MENTAL ILLNESS INC What are the  
facts about mental illness? 1957
- 54 OBRIST W D The electroencephalogram of normal aged adults *Electro  
encephalog & Clin Neurophysiol* 6 235 1954
- 55 O'LEARY J L "Ageing in the Nervous System" in COWDRY I V (ed)  
*Problems of Ageing* (ed 3) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company  
1952
- 56 ROTHSCHILD D and KASANIN J Clinicopathologic study of Alzheimers  
disease relationship to senile conditions *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 36  
293 1936

- 19 BUSSE E W, BARNES, R H, FRIDMAN E L, and KELLY E J Psychological functioning of aged individuals with normal and abnormal electroencephalograms I A study of nonhospitalized community volunteers *J Nerv & Ment Dis* 124 135 1956
- 20 CAMERON, D E The use of nucleic acid in aged patients with memory impairment *Am J Psychiat* 111 943 1958
- 21 CLOW H E and ALLEN E B A study of depressive states in the aging *Geriatrics* 4 11 1949
- 22 COPPINGER N W The relationship between critical flicker frequency and chronologic age for varying levels of stimulus brightness *J Gerontol* 10 48 1955
- 23 CRITCHLEY M The nature and significance of senile plaques *J Neurol & Psychopath* 10 124 1929
- 24 CRITCHLEY M "Ageing of the Nervous System" in *Problems of Ageing* (ed 2) Baltimore Williams & Wilkins Company 1942 chap 19
- 25 DELAY J, DESCLAUX P, PERRIN J and BUVAT J F La maladie de Pick familiale *Rev neurol* 77 85 1945
- 26 DELAY J and DESCLAUX P L'encephalographie dans les demences degeneratives encéphaloses *Rev neurol* 77 212 1945
- 27 *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* Washington D C American Psychiatric Association, 1954
- 28 EHRENTHEIL O F Differential diagnosis of organic dementias and affective disorders in aged patients *Geriatrics* 12 426 1957
- 29 EISDORFER C, BUSSE E W, COHEN, L D and GREENBLUM F The Weis performance of a Piedmont aged sample *Am Psychologist* 12 abst presented at American Psychological Assoc Sept 1957
- 30 ENGLISH O S and FINCH S M *Introduction to Psychiatry* New York W W Norton & Co 1954 chap 16
- 31 FAZLHAS J F, ALMAN R W and BESSMAN A N Cerebral physiology of the aged *Am J M Sc* 223 245 1952
- 32 FAZLHAS J F, ALLEN J and WITKIN L Cerebral hemodynamics and metabolism in subjects over 90 years of age *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 1 836 1953
- 33 FENICHEL O *Psychoanalytic Theory of Neurosis* New York W W Norton & Co 1945
- 34 FILLIHAN F A, WOODFORD R B and KELLY S S Cerebral blood flow and metabolism in psychoses of senility *J Ment & Nerv Dis* 113 449 1951
- 35 GARDNER E Decrease in human neurones with age *Anat Rec* 77 529 1940
- 36 GILBERT J G Age changes in color matching *J Gerontol* 12 210 1957
- 37 GINZBERG, R Attitude therapy in geriatric ward psychiatry *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 3 445 1955
- 38 GOLDFARB, A I and SHELES J Psychotherapy of aged III *Psychosom Med* 16 209, 1954

## CHAPTER 25

# Sociologic Aspects of Aging

BERNARD S. PHILLIPS

The complete impact of aging on any individual cannot be understood without taking into account his changing relationships to the social world around him. Many of these changes take place without regard to the pace of the individual's physiologic aging. Rules compelling retirement at a specified age, for example, do not take into account the physiologic status of the individual. If we attempted to predict the total effect of the aging process in such cases from a knowledge of biologic changes alone, we would overlook occurrences of great significance for the health status of the person concerned. Thus it is necessary to develop an awareness of the patterns of sociologic as distinct from biologic aging.

A person is sociologically old when he is so regarded and treated by the members of his society. This treatment may be relatively obvious, as in the case of compulsory retirement, or it may be extremely subtle, for example, a slightly patronizing manner of treating the older person.

Awareness of social processes does not of course supersede understanding of biologic processes but rather complements it. It is the aim of this chapter to examine some of the social processes that have an important effect on the individual's total reactions to aging, and thus to provide a more complete understanding of the impact of aging.

In this era of rapid communication and transportation we no longer have to be told by anthropologists that peoples throughout the world have greatly varying cultures or ways of life. It is not surprising therefore to find that aged populations do not receive uniform treatment in different parts of the world. Although our primary aim is to gain awareness of the American situation, it is

- 57 ROTHSCHILD, D Neuropathologic changes in arteriosclerotic psychoses and their psychiatric significance *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 48 417, 1942
- 58 ROTHSCHILD, D Pathologic changes in senile psychoses and their psychobiologic significance *Am J Psychiat* 93 757 1937
- 59 SANDERS J SCIENKA V W D and VAN VEEV, P A family with Pick's disease *Verhandl Koninkl Akad Wetenschap Sec 2* 38 1, 1939
- 60 SEITZ P F D Experiments in substitution of symptoms by hypnosis II *Psychosom Med* 15 405 1953
- 61 SILVERMAN A J BUSSE C W and BARNES, R H Studies of the processes of aging electroencephalographic findings in 400 elderly subjects *Electroencephalog & Clin Neurophysiol* 7 67 1955
- 62 SMITH J A WARNER R WOLFORD, J A and RUTHERFORD A Truquilizing medication in the aged mentally ill *Geriatrics* 12 549 1957
- 63 SZAIFRAN J Experiments on the Greater Use of Vision by Older Adults in *Old Age in the Modern World* London E & S Livingstone 1955, pp 231-235
- 64 WEISS E and ENGLISH O S *Psychosomatic Medicine* Philadelphia, W B Saunders Company 1957, p 484
- 65 WOLFF K Group psychotherapy with geriatric patients in a mental hospital *J Am Geriatrics Soc* 5 13, 1957

period of experience to turn out a really successful finished product

Sixth, the aged generally play a prominent role in the entertainment of the group. They serve as storytellers, experts on the rules for various games, comedians, singers, dancers and musicians.

Seventh, they provide a host of services that require little physical strength but furnish welcome support in such areas as hunting and fishing, agriculture, household management and care of children. The aged thus may steer boats on fishing expeditions or help in processing food.

The seven sets of functions listed above give the aged a vital role in the life of the group. The rewards that they receive, in turn, are manifold. Let us briefly examine two major types of rewards: material goods and status or prestige.

Even in societies where the physical environment is very harsh and difficult and where there is no constant source of food supply, there are customs of sharing food with the aged. Taboos that may be violated only by the aged are often placed on many choice foods. In general, the services rendered by the elders are adequately paid for, and the various types of power that they hold help to ensure that the younger members of the community do not take advantage of their diminished physical strength. Property rights are also an important source of security, especially since the aged often decide on rights of inheritance.

The prestige accorded the aged is manifested in diverse ways. The heroes of legends and stories are frequently elderly individuals. (A partial explanation may lie in the fact that the storytellers are recruited from the ranks of the aged.) In the area of religion, important deities very often are cast in the image of the aged. Underlying these specific examples, there usually exists a fundamental respect for the aged individual.

It is no accident that such societal rewards as material goods and prestige are coupled with important services that the aged perform for the group. Although the relationship of services to rewards may not be thought of consciously as a *quid pro quo* arrangement, it still exists. Without the performance of services, we may hypothesize that the rewards received would diminish considerably. One method of verifying this hypothesis is to examine the magnitude of rewards received by various individuals within a society in relation to the functions each individual performs.

well worthwhile to require some bench marks for purposes of comparison by examining the situation of the aged in preliterate societies that are, of course, markedly different from our own. What functions do the aged fulfill for these societies and, in return, what rewards do these societies accord to the aged?

### THE AGED IN PRELITERATE SOCIETIES\*

First, the aged provide an important source of accumulated knowledge in a wide variety of fields. The lack of a written language makes the memory of elders extremely important, and puts them in a position to perform many valuable services. They may be regarded as seers in such diverse fields as medicine, law, religion, general history, war making, agriculture, hunting and a wide variety of arts and crafts.

Second, the elders often function in the capacity of witch doctors or magicians. Their knowledge and long experience with religious rites and ceremonies put them in a strategic position for this role. In addition, they are frequently thought to have a special affinity with the dead, and the fear of ancestral ghosts bolsters their position considerably.

Third, the aged participate in making important decisions of policy for the group. Their function here is not just honorary but often gives them a great deal of power over the welfare of the community. The treatment of those who violate group mores, for example, often comes under their jurisdiction.

Fourth, the aged generally exercise a number of important functions for their family units. The responsibility for instruction of children including the teaching of moral precepts is often placed in their hands. In addition, they have an important voice in most key family decisions such as those concerning the management of family property. As family heads they usually play a leading role in such rituals as puberty rites, weddings and funerals.

Fifth, the aged often supervise and participate in the highly complicated techniques necessary for the industrial and decorative arts. These techniques may be so involved as to require a very long

\* The general statements about the aged in preliterate society that appear in this chapter are based on a study of seventy-one tribes by Leo W. Simmons (1915). For a comparison of preliterate societies with our own that furnishes much of the framework for this chapter, see Howard E. Jensen (1957).

entity which far from having been accumulated once and for all in some past era is continually being created. Because the scientists are in the forefront of this creation it is they rather than the aged who are looked up to as disseminators of wisdom.

2. The magical and religious functions of the aged have largely been taken over by professionally trained religious leaders. Furthermore the position of elders is not bolstered by a system of ancestor worship or a fear of ancestral ghosts.

3. The policy making function of the aged has remained intact to a considerable degree. In the political sphere elderly persons have at least an opportunity to participate in the election of officials and many individuals of advanced age hold key positions in government. The complexity of government however has increased to such an extent that the individual voter is far removed from the actual locus of decision making and therefore loses much of the feeling of power obtained when personal influence operates close at hand.

4. The role of the aged within the family has been drastically curtailed. Not only are aged parents generally separated from their children often by considerable distances but they retain little or no authority over their offspring once they have set up an independent household. In addition the task of educating grand children lies now largely in the hands of parents and professional teachers.

5. With rare exceptions the long experience and skill of the craftsman are no longer useful to society. Our present techniques of mass production depend chiefly on machinery and the highly developed skills of the true craftsman are generally no longer in demand.

6. Entertainment also has become a specialized function and the aged generally play a minor role in this sphere.

7. The aged generally play a minimal part in furnishing auxiliary services both in the household and in the economic life of the society. The functions that aged parents perform for their married children are limited by the pattern of spatial separation between parents and married offspring. Many of the auxiliary services once performed by the aged have now been given over to the very young.

This detailed comparison reveals on the one hand, a picture of

In our survey of preliterate societies it was necessary to oversimplify for purposes of brevity. I do not wish to convey the impression that the seven groups of functions listed above are performed by all aged individuals in all preliterate societies. They are present in different societies to varying degrees, and (pertinent to the hypothesis under consideration) are performed to different degrees by the individuals within a given society. As a rule, however, those individuals who are no longer able to perform services—even the easier auxiliary ones—generally receive a much smaller proportion of available rewards than their more active peers. Furthermore, even among those aged who are physically fit, the highest rewards usually go to those who have specialized in providing the services most valued by the society.

The typical pattern, then, is one in which there exists a wide variety of functions that can be fulfilled by all but the most infirm aged, and in which the aged are rewarded depending upon the values attached to their services, in terms of material goods and prestige. This does not result in a completely idyllic situation for each and every elderly person, but it generally does permit the vast majority of old people to continue living useful lives when their physical capacities diminish, and to continue receiving recognition from their compatriots.

### THE CASE OF AMERICAN SOCIETY\*

The contrast between the position of the aged in modern American society and their situation in preliterate societies is readily apparent. The full scope of this contrast, however, can be understood only by comparing the functions fulfilled and the rewards received by elderly persons in the United States and those in preliterate societies.

1. The existence of a written language emphasizes the role of human memory in passing on knowledge from one generation to the next. Furthermore, the amount and complexity of accumulated knowledge has grown to such dimensions that it would be impossible for any one individual to have complete mastery of even a small proportion of it. Finally, knowledge is regarded as a dynamic

\* For a detailed discussion of the position of the aged in literate societies other than our own, see S. N. Eisenstadt (1956).



entity which far from having been accumulated once and for all in some past era is continually being created. Because the scientists are in the forefront of this creation it is they rather than the aged who are looked up to as disseminators of wisdom.

2 The magical and religious functions of the aged have largely been taken over by professionally trained religious leaders. Furthermore the position of elders is not bolstered by a system of ancestor worship or a fear of ancestral ghosts.

3 The policy making function of the aged has remained intact to a considerable degree. In the political sphere elderly persons have at least an opportunity to participate in the election of officials and many individuals of advanced age hold key positions in government. The complexity of government however has increased to such an extent that the individual voter is far removed from the actual locus of decision making and therefore loses much of the feeling of power obtained when personal influence operates close at hand.

4 The role of the aged within the family has been drastically curtailed. Not only are aged parents generally separated from their children often by considerable distances but they retain little or no authority over their offspring once they have set up an independent household. In addition the task of educating grand children lies now largely in the hands of parents and professional teachers.

5 With rare exceptions the long experience and skill of the craftsman are no longer useful to society. Our present techniques of mass production depend chiefly on machinery and the highly developed skills of the true craftsman are generally no longer in demand.

6 Entertainment also has become a specialized function and the aged generally play a minor role in this sphere.

7 The aged generally play a minimal part in furnishing auxiliary services both in the household and in the economic life of the society. The functions that aged parents perform for their married children are limited by the pattern of spatial separation between parents and married offspring. Many of the auxiliary services once performed by the aged have now been given over to the very young.

This detailed comparison reveals on the one hand a picture of

a society where the aged fulfill a variety of important functions, and on the other a society where there exists a minimum of vital functions that the aged perform. The explanation for this dearth of functions in American society is a complex one. It must take into account the effect of the tremendous change in our economy indicated by such terms as industrial revolution, scientific revolution, mass production, bureaucratization, and specialization. Fitting into our economic system we have a system of societal values emphasizing such goals as achievement, success, activity, work, efficiency, practicability, material comfort, progress, and scientific or secular rationality (Williams, 1952). The orientation of our society tends to be the very opposite of that in a traditionalistic society, which looks back at customary ways of solving problems to derive answers for the present. We generally look to the future more than to the past and often accept a new idea or object not because of any intrinsic superiority over the old but because of its very newness.

Our brief study of preliterate societies has made it apparent that societal rewards tend to be associated with functions performed, and our own society is no exception. It would of course be unfair to make economic comparisons between the aged in our society, with its very high standard of living, and aged individuals in preliterate societies. In relative terms, however, our older citizens are generally in an economically depressed group. One factor that places a still greater burden on them is the long continued decline in the purchasing power of the dollar which decreases the real value of their savings. A burden that is perhaps harder to bear than the economic one is the low prestige our society accords them. It is the young, the strong, the beautiful who receive the nation's adulation.

Those aged individuals who continue to perform key functions are in a different situation from their more numerous peers who receive rewards commensurate with social usefulness. The former group generally receives more recognition and as a result seems to be better satisfied with life and better adjusted than the latter.

Another important factor in the impact of aging on an individual is closely related to the performance or nonperformance of functions. We have often heard the trite saying, "You are as old as you feel." Preliminary evidence indicates that regardless of his actual chronologic age, a person's general adjustment to aging is pro-

foundly affected by his feeling about his age that is whether or not he feels old (Phillips 1957) Individuals over 70 who identify themselves as "middle aged" often seem to be better adjusted than individuals between 60 and 70 who consider themselves "old" or "elderly" Similarly age identification seems to counteract the effect of certain major role changes such as those brought on by retirement or the death of a spouse Those who are retired and still identify themselves as "middle aged" for example are frequently better adjusted than employed persons who think of themselves as "old" or "elderly"

This effect of age identification on the adjustment of elderly people shows how the low status of the aged in our society operates on the individual To identify oneself as "old" is to accept a low cultural evaluation the aging person who thinks of himself as merely "middle aged" is able to a large extent to avoid the negative evaluation The self image that the senescent individual adopts can have definite consequences for his personal adjustment

### IMPLICATIONS

If the above analysis is correct then the impact of aging is harder to bear where the opportunities for performing functions valued by society are limited and easier where such opportunities are plentiful For those concerned with improving the situation of the aged in our society this is an important point on which to base either limited approaches to the problem or a general approach Much can be done without any major changes in societal structure or values while we look for more basic changes that might provide a solution

One circumscribed approach is to encourage the formation of "golden age clubs" where people of advanced years come together for social or recreational purposes In situations where the alternative would be little or no social activity for older citizens such programs provide a definite step forward Membership in such organizations however probably hastens the identification of one self as "old" a factor that seems to be closely related to maladjustment Furthermore the resultant segregation of elderly people from the rest of the community may decrease opportunities for them to perform valuable functions

An analogous argument may be advanced concerning the estab-

lishment of segregated communities for the aged. While such developments may provide the very best housing, medical, and recreational facilities, the isolation from functions normal to a mixed community may prove deleterious.

Older people are frequently advised to take up a hobby. For an individual who has retired after a life of single minded devotion to his occupation and who, as a result, has few, if any, outside interests, this advice may be difficult to follow. The value of such hobbies would probably vary with the degree to which they represent a genuine investment of the individual's interests, as well as the degree to which they are socially regarded as having some useful function.

The effectiveness of advice to postpone retirement as long as possible also would probably vary with the individual. Many who want to continue working are prevented from doing so by inflexible retirement policies and equally inflexible employment policies. Many who finally do obtain employment after being retired have to accept jobs that either are not personally satisfying or do not confer social prestige.

The increase in range of coverage and amount of benefits paid by Old Age and Survivors Insurance, as well as by private pension plans, should help reduce the economic impact of aging. It remains to be determined, however, how much this increase will be nullified by inflation.

The effectiveness of each of these limited approaches to the problem of aging can vary greatly in different situations and for this reason the proper approach for each individual would have to be determined separately.

With respect to a more general solution it is much easier to suggest goals to strive for than to devise specific means whereby such goals may be achieved. A discussion of such means would necessitate a far more detailed treatment than can be afforded in this chapter.

What seems to be needed is a social climate in which the aged are first class citizens where they perform functions that are socially valued, and where they are recognized as important to society. The opportunities for performing such functions can be increased by such techniques as doing away with compulsory retirement systems not based on ability, and providing the type of housing that inte-

grates the aged with the rest of the community. However, a complete recognition of the worth of the aged probably could not be accomplished by such methods alone.

What appears to be lacking is a sufficient emphasis on the American ideal that each individual, whatever his age, has immeasurable intrinsic worth and merit. A retired worker who by present standards is viewed as piddling away his time on some foolish hobby might be regarded on the basis of values stressing individual personality as working toward a most worthwhile societal goal: the enrichment of his own life and the lives of others by bringing some of his latent capacities to fruition. Such a change in attitude would have to involve a modification of the emphasis placed on economic achievement as the major means of gaining societal recognition and a feeling of personal usefulness.

## REFERENCES

- 1 DRAKE J. T. *The Aged in American Society*. New York: The Ronald Press Company, 1958.
- 2 EISENSTADT S. N. *From Generation to Generation*. Glencoe, Illinois: The Free Press, 1956.
- 3 JENSEN H. E. "Some Sociological Aspects of the Problem of Aging," in FRANCIS C. JEFFERS, A. HOLLIS EDENS and LUDWIG W. BUSSE (eds.), *Duke University Council on Gerontology: Proceedings of Seminars 1956-57* (mimeographed Nov. 1957), seminar of April 2, 1957.
- 4 PUTNER B., FANSHIEL D., TOGO A. M. and LANGFIER T. S. *Five Hundred Over Sixty: A Community Survey of Aging*. New York: Russell Sage Foundation, 1956.
- 5 PHILLIPS B. S. "A role theory approach to adjustment in old age," *Am. Sociological Rev.* 22: 212, 1957.
- 6 SIMMONS L. W. *The Role of the Aged in Primitive Society*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1945.
- 7 TOWNSEND P. *The Family Life of Old People: An Inquiry in East London*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1957.
- 8 WILLIAMS R. M., JR. *American Society*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1952, pp. 372-442.

ishment of segregated communities for the aged. While such developments may provide the very best housing, medical, and recreational facilities, the isolation from functions normal to a mixed community may prove deleterious.

Older people are frequently advised to take up a hobby. For an individual who has retired after a life of single minded devotion to his occupation and who, as a result, has few, if any, outside interests, this advice may be difficult to follow. The value of such hobbies would probably vary with the degree to which they represent a genuine investment of the individual's interests, as well as the degree to which they are socially regarded as having some useful function.

The effectiveness of advice to postpone retirement as long as possible also would probably vary with the individual. Many who want to continue working are prevented from doing so by inflexible retirement policies and equally inflexible employment policies. Many who finally do obtain employment after being retired have to accept jobs that either are not personally satisfying or do not confer social prestige.

The increase in range of coverage and amount of benefits paid by Old Age and Survivors Insurance, as well as by private pension plans, should help reduce the economic impact of aging. It remains to be determined, however, how much this increase will be nullified by inflation.

The effectiveness of each of these limited approaches to the problem of aging can vary greatly in different situations and for this reason the proper approach for each individual would have to be determined separately.

With respect to a more general solution, it is much easier to suggest goals to strive for than to devise specific means whereby such goals may be achieved. A discussion of such means would necessitate a far more detailed treatment than can be afforded in this chapter.

What seems to be needed is a social climate in which the aged are first class citizens, where they perform functions that are socially valued, and where they are recognized as important to society. The opportunities for performing such functions can be increased by such techniques as doing away with compulsory retirement systems not based on ability, and providing the type of housing that inc

5 By deepening the respiration it improves the function of the lungs

As Dr Grollman has pointed out in *Chapter 20* osteoporosis even after the menopause may be due more to lessened activity than to hormonal influences. The rapid demineralization of bone observed even in younger patients who are kept in bed for more than a week or two indicates that there is ground for this belief.

While there can be no quarrel with the general proposition that regular exercise is desirable for most older people, there is also no question but that individuals vary greatly in their physical fitness. Some at 70 can exercise more strenuously than others at 40. The olderster should be encouraged to exercise within his ability. While it is true that the exercise tolerance can be gradually increased, attempts to increase it too rapidly may be dangerous. A sensation of pleasant fatigue and not that of exhaustion should be the goal. It is hardly necessary to say that a careful physical examination should precede advice about the kind and amount of exercise to be taken.

Patients of any age need to be reminded that exercise should be taken regularly instead of spasmodically. Like the biblical manna in the wilderness, exercise cannot be hoarded. Thirty six holes of golf once a week cannot be as effective as comparatively brief periods of exercise taken regularly.

Doctors should encourage their patients to select a form of exercise that they will really enjoy, and to be content with an activity that suits their age and physical condition. While a doctor cannot and should not dictate to his older patients the form of exercise they should take, he may tactfully point out that sports and physical activities may be graded into categories of decreasing stress and that one should use judgment in keeping within his exercise tolerance. Patients past middle age should be warned against taking golf and other competitive sports too seriously. A professional must have a strong competitive spirit to succeed, but most players are amateurs who should make golf a game instead of a business.

People who do not enjoy walking or some other activity enough to obtain regular outdoor exercise should be encouraged to take calisthenics regularly. Dr. Walter McClellan (1957) of the University of North Carolina has said that the one exercise which he considers most beneficial is regular deep breathing. It raises shoulders and chest, improving our posture and our sense of well being.

## CHAPTER 26

# Helping the Older Patient Adjust to Age

WINGATE M JOHNSON

One of the family doctor's most important functions is to help his older patients make the necessary adjustments to age. These adjustments are at least threefold: physical, socioeconomic, and psychological. The socioeconomic adjustments have been the subject of an earlier chapter, but it is hard to separate them entirely from the physical and psychological adjustments of the older person to which this chapter is chiefly devoted. Many of the necessary physical adjustments have been discussed in previous chapters. The need for properly fitted glasses and possibly for hearing aids, the value of a balanced diet and adequate weight control, and the importance of periodic physical examinations have all been emphasized. The need for adequate exercise has been mentioned more than once, but is important enough to deserve further emphasis.

### STRESSING THE VALUE OF EXERCISE

Dr. Paul White (1957), who teaches by example as well as by precept, gives the following benefits of exercise:

1. It maintains good tone in the muscles, including the heart muscle. This, in turn, improves the circulation and helps prevent varicosities in the lower extremities.
2. It relieves nervous tension.
3. It aids the digestion by reducing nervous tension.
4. It helps control obesity.



5 By deepening the respiration it improves the function of the lungs

As Dr Grollman has pointed out in Chapter 20 osteoporosis even after the menopause may be due more to lessened activity than to hormonal influences. The rapid demineralization of bone observed even in younger patients who are kept in bed for more than a week or two indicates that there is ground for this belief.

While there can be no quarrel with the general proposition that regular exercise is desirable for most older people there is also no question but that individuals vary greatly in their physical fitness. Some at 70 can exercise more strenuously than others at 40. The olderster should be encouraged to exercise within his ability. While it is true that the exercise tolerance can be gradually increased attempts to increase it too rapidly may be dangerous. A sensation of pleasant fatigue and not that of exhaustion should be the goal. It is hardly necessary to say that a careful physical examination should precede advice about the kind and amount of exercise to be taken.

Patients of any age need to be reminded that exercise should be taken regularly instead of spasmodically. Like the biblical manna in the wilderness exercise cannot be hoarded. Thirty six holes of golf once a week cannot be as effective as comparatively brief periods of exercise taken regularly.

Doctors should encourage their patients to select a form of exercise that they will really enjoy and to be content with an activity that suits their age and physical condition. While a doctor cannot and should not dictate to his older patients the form of exercise they should take he may tactfully point out that sports and physical activities may be graded into categories of decreasing stress and that one should use judgment in keeping within his exercise tolerance. Patients past middle age should be warned against taking golf and other competitive sports too seriously. A professional must have a strong competitive spirit to succeed but most players are amateurs who should make golf a game instead of a business.

People who do not enjoy walking or some other activity enough to obtain regular outdoor exercise should be encouraged to take calisthenics regularly. Dr Walter McClellan (1957) of the University of North Carolina has said that the one exercise which he considers most beneficial is regular deep breathing. It raises shoulders and chest improving our posture and our sense of well being.

It helps to return the venous blood to the heart, fills more of the lung alveoli with air and results in improved oxygenation of the blood. This exercise can be done in any place and at any time and so has a wide applicability for many people. It therefore, has both psychologic and physiologic effects when practiced.

Some patients would like to perform their calisthenics the first thing upon arising, but find that, although the spirit is willing the flesh is weak. Dr McCloy (1957) of the State University of Iowa recommends that such people begin their exercises before getting out of bed. "One often wishes to exercise in the morning; it is convenient, he is undressed, and he does not need to go someplace to exercise later in the day or to exercise at night when he is tired before going to bed, when it might also awaken him too much. However, most people upon arising in the morning, feel extremely unwilling to exercise. After a night's sleep there is more of the blood in the general circulation and less in the brain. Exercise in bed stimulates the circulation and helps get the individual wider awake. Then when he gets out of bed he feels more like doing the rest of the exercises."

For people who enjoy the outdoors and are willing to give more time to exercise, a brisk walk in the open air combined with deep breathing is probably more valuable than calisthenics. Patients of all ages should be encouraged to walk as much as possible in the course of their day's activities, avoiding taxicabs and elevators whenever feasible. An office worker who spends most of his time at his desk—especially an executive with many problems to face—feels tired at the end of the day. His inclination is usually to lie down and rest before dinner. In most instances, however, a brisk walk or some other form of exercise will relax him more than a nap. The excess adrenalin formed in response to the stress of the day's problems is used up by exercising the voluntary muscles and the adrenalin produced tension is relieved through the mediation of the autonomic nervous system. Digestion is better and sleep sounder after exercise.

The value of exercise is greatly augmented by good posture, and habit plays an important part in posture. Patients who have cultivated the habit of standing erect, with the breast bone elevated and the pelvis properly aligned, are far less prone to backache and other "miseries" attendant upon middle age in patients with habitually poor posture.

## HELPING THE PATIENT TO FIND RECREATION

Recreation is defined by Webster as "Diversion play, relaxation" Diversion in turn is defined as "A turning aside from a course plan, and so forth (2) amusement" While exercise and recreation may often be advantageously combined there are many types of recreation that do not require physical exertion Hobbies—interests outside one's daily occupation—should be cultivated long before the retirement age is reached The doctor can be of great help to his older patients by learning what extracurricular activities they enjoy encouraging them to cultivate the best ones and possibly suggesting others that they might take up Depending on the patient's tastes and physical condition these might range from such sedentary occupations as reading writing and stamp collecting to more active pursuits such as cabinet making, gardening and raising chickens Many hobbies can be turned to profit as well as pleasure

Hobbies are more fun if shared with others Many communities have clubs whose members are bound by the common interest of a hobby or hobbies Garden clubs sewing circles bridge clubs and other such groups are truly mutual benefit organizations In many places community projects include classes in painting needlework, and other arts and crafts Not many of our patients can emulate Grandma Moses but many mature men and women have learned new skills that afford them satisfaction and often some of the recognition that means so much to old people

## MEETING THE PROBLEM OF RETIREMENT

The older person's psychologic adjustments to age may be more difficult than his physical adjustments The understanding physician can often be of great help but it is necessary for him to recognize the problems facing the old man or woman One of the greatest of these is retirement with all the psychologic and socioeconomic adjustments that it brings

Many of the most unpleasant traits of adolescence and of old age have a common basis as expressed by Stuart Chase in *The Road We Are Traveling* "Men want to *belong* to feel that they are a part of a living community that they have a place in it which other people recognize" The adolescent's desire to be recognized as having a place in society makes him "throw his weight around" and

It helps to return the venous blood to the heart, fills more of the lung alveoli with air, and results in improved oxygenation of the blood. Thus exercise can be done in any place and at any time and so has a wide applicability for many people. It, therefore, has both psychologic and physiologic effects when practiced.

Some patients would like to perform their calisthenics the first thing upon arising, but find that, although the spirit is willing the flesh is weak. Dr. McCloy (1957) of the State University of Iowa recommends that such people begin their exercises before getting out of bed. One often wishes to exercise in the morning; it is convenient, he is undressed, and he does not need to go someplace to exercise later in the day or to exercise at night when he is tired before going to bed, when it might also awaken him too much. However, most people upon arising in the morning feel extremely unwilling to exercise. After a night's sleep there is more of the blood in the general circulation and less in the brain. Exercise in bed stimulates the circulation and helps get the individual wider awake. Then when he gets out of bed he feels more like doing the rest of the exercises.

For people who enjoy the outdoors and are willing to give more time to exercise, a brisk walk in the open air, combined with deep breathing, is probably more valuable than calisthenics. Patients of all ages should be encouraged to walk as much as possible in the course of their day's activities, avoiding taxicabs and elevators whenever feasible. An office worker who spends most of his time at his desk—especially in executive with many problems to face—feels tired at the end of the day. His inclination is usually to lie down and rest before dinner. In most instances, however, a brisk walk or some other form of exercise will relax him more than a nap. The excess adrenalin formed in response to the stress of the day's problems is used up by exercising the voluntary muscles and the adrenalin produced tension is relieved through the mediation of the autonomic nervous system. Digestion is better and sleep sounder after exercise.

The value of exercise is greatly augmented by good posture and habit plays an important part in posture. Patients who have cultivated the habit of standing erect, with the breast bone elevated and the pelvis properly aligned, are far less prone to backache and other miseries attendant upon middle age in patients with habitually poor posture.

reached and that government grants to support this growing group of retired workers could not go on increasing to astronomical levels.

Some industries are modifying their retirement policies. The R. J. Reynolds Tobacco Company, for example, has recently increased its compulsory retirement age from 65 to 70 but leaves it optional with the employee to retire voluntarily at 65. The retirement benefits are the same at either age. In North Carolina the Governor's Coordinating Committee on Aging has prepared for distribution to employer groups a four page brochure entitled "A New Look at the Mature Worker." This pamphlet gives convincing arguments for employing older workers.

In spite of the increasing opposition to a rigid compulsory retirement age, however, it appears that most employees will be subject to it for some years to come. As a citizen, the doctor should use his influence to protest the arbitrary custom of requiring a man to give up his work at a fixed age regardless of his physical and mental fitness. As a physician, however, he must help his older patients meet the changes that retirement brings in their lives. While he should encourage his patients nearing the retirement age to take advantage of the preretirement counseling offered by some concerns, it is much more important for him to help his individual patients over this major crisis in their lives.

## ACCEPTANCE OF ALTERED LIVING CONDITIONS

Often associated with retirement is the necessity of living on a reduced income. Fortunately, most people who have reached the retirement age are able to lower living expenses in many ways. Their children are usually financially independent and in most cases have left the home nest and are living in their own quarters. Although it is not easy for an elderly couple to leave the home in which they have brought up their family, most older people can eventually make the adjustment to a smaller house or an apartment. Another alternative is to convert part of the family home into rooms or apartments for rent.

The adjustment to widowhood, which must be made by many aging men and women, is of course the hardest of all. In old age it usually brings not only bereavement, but a change in status and in living conditions often greater than that associated with retirement.

speaking with authority on various subjects, whether his opinion is asked for or not. The older person, on the other hand, wants to continue to belong, and consciously or subconsciously resents being pushed aside. The prevailing custom of enforcing a rigid compulsory retirement age is often responsible for bitter resentment, and may precipitate a mental depression. From the psychological as well as the socioeconomic point of view, retirement is one of the greatest problems the aging person must face. The doctor who is himself able to keep at work well past the customary retirement age should not forget that relatively few of his nonprofessional contemporaries are so fortunate.

It seems paradoxical that as the proportion of older people in the population has increased tremendously within this century, most of them have been deprived of the privilege of working after they have reached an arbitrary age limit or of securing employment after the age of 40. Yet it has been proved repeatedly that most people are quite capable of doing productive work well past the traditional retirement age of 65. The steadily increasing proportion of older people in the population means that the custom of retirement at a fixed age entails a tremendous waste of manpower. The Sun Life Insurance Company has estimated that by 1970 if the present trend continues as many of the adult population will be on pension as at work. Then every worker will have to support a nonworker directly or indirectly.

There are some encouraging signs that the folly of continuing this policy is being recognized. In the first National Conference on Aging held in Washington in August 1950 eight of the eleven sessions went on record as opposing the fixed retirement age. More recently Dr H. B. Mulholland, chairman of the American Medical Association's Committee on Aging, expressed the committee's opinion when he said: "The average age of retirement has been set at around 65 for labor industry and educational institutions. . . many individuals are perfectly capable of making an important contribution to whatever position they hold at this time of life. Indeed their wisdom and skills are oftentimes ripened into maturity. To cope with this problem there must be a realization that retirement age should be physiologic rather than chronologic." Dr Mulholland went on to say that only one in 25 employees wished to retire when the arbitrary retirement age was

American Psychological Association held in September, 1957, Dr John F. Anderson professor of psychology at the University of Minnesota stated that a poll of representative groups of older and younger people showed that at least 75 per cent of people past 65 preferred separate living quarters and that the same proportion of younger people shared this view.

If it is actually necessary for a young couple to take an elderly relative into the home it should be understood at the very beginning that he (or she) is not to be a petty tyrant. On the other hand he should not be made to feel helpless by too much attention or "bossing" but should be allowed to do for himself as much as he is able. As long as he can get about it is well to assign him some task or tasks that will give him a feeling of usefulness.

Much has been written and said recently about the need for special housing facilities for older people. "Retirement villages" a term somewhat suggestive of concentration camps seem to be especially favored. There is danger that in typical American fashion, this idea may be carried too far. Statistics show that 70 per cent of the population over 65 own their own homes, 25 per cent live with relatives or other families and only 5 per cent live in institutions (nursing homes or hospitals). Edna Nicholson in her excellent discussion of the housing needs of older people (1957), said that "At least 75 to 80 per cent of all persons 65 years of age and over in the United States are entirely able to live independently in ordinary houses and apartments throughout the community." It was her belief that too much emphasis has been placed on the need for special housing. Older people should remain independent active integral parts of normal community life as long as possible.

[They] want to choose their own living arrangements and usually they greatly prefer to remain in the homes and neighborhoods where they have been living and where they have friends, relatives and familiar surroundings. Comparatively few people have any desire to leave their own neighborhoods and move to colonies or projects inhabited exclusively by people their own age." She then made the point that "Good housing units suited to the needs of the entire population will meet the requirements of healthy people past the age of 65 along with those of everyone else."

There is however a real need for suitable nursing homes for

The understanding physician can be a great aid to the bereaved one, especially if he has for years been the family doctor and so is regarded as a sort of honorary member of the family. If the final illness was short—a massive stroke or a coronary occlusion—he can emphasize the fact that the loved one was spared the suffering of a lingering illness. On the other hand, after a long period of disability, especially if the patient suffers pain or is mentally afflicted, death may be a welcome relief.

Time is a great healer, and should be allowed to exert its soothing effect. Too many people try to keep their grief alive, watering it with tears as one would a plant. They feel disloyal to the loved one's memory if they forget the loss, even for a short time. A physician may point out that such an attitude is really selfish, that the departed mate would not want his wife (or husband) to suffer, and that the survivor owes it to his children and friends to take up his normal activities, so far as is possible.

The physician can often encourage the feeling which comes naturally to many people after the death of a life's companion that the loved one is not far away. After a couple have lived together for many years, each one knows so well what the other would do or say under given conditions that the one who is left can almost hear the other's voice.

The older person may be consoled by a reminder of his good fortune in having had so many years of marriage. And he should be able to say with the aging Cato: "I found my own consolation in the thought that the parting and separation between us was not to be for long."

The family doctor has a peculiar advantage in being able to see the viewpoints of both the older and the younger generations, and of being in a position to talk frankly to both. He can often give helpful advice about dealing with a widowed parent or grandparent, and can suggest arrangements that might be preferable to taking such an elderly relative into the home. Whenever feasible, it is usually better for older people to live apart from their children and grandchildren, either in their own homes, apartments or rooms, or in nursing homes. While in some cases the presence of an elderly parent or grandparent in the home may be a real benediction, only too often the opposite is true. At a joint conference of the American Medical Association's Committee on Aging and the



American Psychological Association held in September 1957 Dr John E. Anderson professor of psychology at the University of Minnesota stated that a poll of representative groups of older and younger people showed that at least 75 per cent of people past 65 preferred separate living quarters and that the same proportion of younger people shared this view.

If it is actually necessary for a young couple to take an elderly relative into the home it should be understood at the very beginning that he (or she) is not to be a petty tyrant. On the other hand he should not be made to feel helpless by too much attention or bossing but should be allowed to do for himself as much as he is able. As long as he can get about it is well to assign him some task or tasks that will give him a feeling of usefulness.

Much has been written and said recently about the need for special housing facilities for older people. "Retirement villages" a term somewhat suggestive of concentration camps seem to be especially favored. There is danger that in typical American fashion, this idea may be carried too far. Statistics show that 70 per cent of the population over 65 own their own homes, 25 per cent live with relatives or other families and only 5 per cent live in institutions (nursing homes or hospitals). Edna Nicholson in her excellent discussion of the housing needs of older people (1957) said that "At least 75 to 80 per cent of all persons 65 years of age and over in the United States are entirely able to live independently in ordinary houses and apartments throughout the community." It was her belief that too much emphasis has been placed on the need for special housing. "Older people should remain independent active integral parts of normal community life as long as possible."

[They] want to choose their own living arrangements and usually they greatly prefer to remain in the homes and neighborhoods where they have been living and where they have friends, relatives and familiar surroundings. Comparatively few people have any desire to leave their own neighborhoods and move to colonies or projects inhabited exclusively by people their own age. She then made the point that "Good housing units suited to the needs of the entire population will meet the requirements of healthy people past the age of 65 along with those of everyone else."

There is however a real need for suitable nursing homes for

almost a million older people. To quote Miss Nicholson again, we need homes for people who have continuing infirmities and illness, who require good care in varying amounts but do not need the highly specialized equipment, personnel and routines of general hospital wards, who are not able to maintain homes of their own, and who do not have families and friends with whom they can, and want to live and receive care.'

Many such homes are kept up by church groups, others by fraternal organizations, such as the Masons, others by private citizens, often middle aged or elderly nurses, and still others are community sponsored. Such nursing homes should be inspected by competent observers, and only the ones that meet reasonable requirements should be given permission to operate. This is a natural function of state or city welfare departments. It is desirable that such homes for the aged have access to the facilities of general hospitals for the treatment of medical or surgical emergencies, and that the services of a physician be available when needed.

When the doctor is in a position to advise younger relatives of an elderly patient who lives in his own quarters or in a nursing home, he should encourage them to make frequent visits to the home, to take the older person to church or other gatherings, and to have him for occasional meals with the family. All these attentions help to dispel loneliness and to keep the elderly relative from becoming withdrawn and egocentric.

### FACING FEARS ABOUT OLD AGE

The physician who really desires to understand the viewpoint of his older patients should read and study Cicero's classic essay on old age, *De Senectute*. This essay gives four reasons for men's dread of old age. First, that it withdraws us from active employment, second, that it enfeebles the body, third, that it deprives us of nearly all physical pleasures, fourth, that it is the next step to death. The first reason has already been discussed in the section on retirement. If Cicero were living today, he would oppose compulsory retirement for men whose jobs do not demand great physical strength. Old men retain their intellect well enough if only they keep their minds active and fully employed. The great affairs of life are not performed by physical strength or activity or number.

ness of body but by deliberation character expression of opinion Of these old age is not only not deprived but as a rule has them in a greater degree"

The second drawback of age that it enfeebles the body Cicero dismisses rather curtly with an elaboration of the thought Bodily strength is wanting in old age but neither is bodily strength demanded from old men

The third reason for dreading old age that it deprives us of nearly all physical pleasures Cicero regards as a cause for thanks giving "No more deadly curse than sensual pleasure has been inflicted on mankind by nature Intellect is the best gift of nature or God to this divine gift and endowment there is nothing so inimical as pleasure Then however the noble old Roman proceeds to prove that there are higher forms of delight left for the last years and that "old age does enjoy itself well enough

### FEAR OF DEATH

Death is not nearly as gruesome a subject to the old as it seems to the young Many older people want to talk about it and should be given the opportunity Dr Irving Lorge (1956) learned this by his experience with a group of old women whom he was counseling When the topic of death came up toward the end of a discussion period he quickly changed the subject thinking it would be too depressing for them They brought up the question again at the beginning of the next session however and asked to keep on talking about it Because many older people do want to discuss it the doctor should have some clear cut opinions about death

Old people who have an unreasonable fear of death may be reminded that they have achieved what the young can only hope for "The one wishes to live long the other has lived long (Cicero) The physician who has witnessed death again and again can often bring comfort to fearful patients by testifying that there is no reason to dread the actual process of dying Almost always death brings its own anesthetic which is usually effective for a period of time varying from a few hours to days or even months With a very few exceptions dying is like going to sleep The exceptions to this rule are almost never in old people

The physician should not be afraid to tell his patients of the

comfort he derives from his belief in another Life after the earthly one is ended. The dread of death is certainly lessened if one can believe with the pagans Plato and Cicero, in the Christian doctrine of personal immortality. Patients who cannot accept such a belief on faith alone should be encouraged to read Cicero's reasons for holding it. One of the best of his arguments is as follows: But if I am wrong in thinking the human soul immortal, I am glad to be wrong, nor will I allow the mistake which gives me so much pleasure to be wrested from me so long as I live. But if when dead as some insignificant philosophers think, I am to be without sensation I am not afraid of dead philosophers denuding my errors.

### DEVELOPING A SOUND PHILOSOPHY FOR THE LATER YEARS

In helping old people make a sound psychologic adjustment to age, the doctor has the invaluable assistance of Nature's beneficent provision that one's viewpoint changes with advancing years. Except possibly at the climacteric adjustments to increasing age levels are made so gradually as to be almost imperceptible. In Chapter 25 Dr. Phillips has given an excellent argument for encouraging our aging patients to think of themselves as being mature rather than old. A person's general adjustment to aging is profoundly affected by his feeling about his age. Individuals over 70 who identify themselves as middle aged often seem to be better adjusted than individuals between 60 and 70 who consider themselves 'old' or 'elderly'.

Some years ago I formulated for my own use seven rules of conduct for adjusting to age. I have found that some or all of them can be used to advantage in helping my older patients and friends to accept old age with a reasonable degree of complacency. These rules—or suggestions—are as follows:

1. Recognize that the mind should be at its best at 40 and should continue to be efficient to the age of 70 or more. The pathologists have shown that organic changes in the brain do not necessarily parallel mental changes. If properly trained the mind does not lose its elasticity and constant use of the brain helps keep it efficient. Stieglitz (1951) has expressed the consoling thought that wisdom depends upon experience in which time is a factor.

2. Avoid becoming an old fogey by associating frequently with young people. Prepare for occasional shocks, but try to understand their viewpoint.

3. Learn to delegate authority and to unload responsibility upon younger shoulders. There is an advantage in partnerships in which the enthusiasm of youth is balanced by the judgment of maturity.

4. Cultivate wide interests. Learn new uses for the hands and brain and exchange more strenuous amusements for others less exciting. To quote A. C. Benson (1906), "One ought to grow older in a tranquil and appropriate way to be perfectly contented with one's time of life. amusements and pursuits ought to alter naturally and easily, and not be regretfully abandoned."

5. Keep in touch with old friends and make new ones. Dr. Samuel Johnson once said, "If a man does not make new acquaintances as he advances through life, he will soon find himself alone. A man, sir, should keep his friendship in a constant repair."

6. Cultivate equanimity—the mental poise that keeps one from being unduly elated by good fortune or depressed by bad news and that teaches one to take fortune's buffets and rewards with equal thanks. This suggestion does not mean that one should become indifferent or lose enthusiasm which has been defined as the motive power of progress. It is important to keep a proper balance between emotion which furnishes the driving power for the human machine and reason which corresponds to the steering gear and the brakes. I know of no better way to acquire this balance than to adopt Osler's *Way of Life* (1940) learning to live in day tight compartments."

7. Finally cultivate the habit of looking forward rather than backward. This advice may seem to conflict with Osler's admonition to live one day at a time but it really does not. Planning for tomorrow is often part of today's task but sighing over yesterday accomplishes nothing. The greatest bore in all literature must have been Coleridge's Ancient Mariner who with his skinny hand kept a guest away from a wedding feast while he told an interminable tale of a shipwreck suffered in his youth. Even though it is difficult one should always be ready to exchange outmoded ideas for new and better ones.

Since personal experience is always more convincing than mere theorizing, aging patients may be comforted by the testimony of

two philosophers who lived centuries apart. More than 2,000 years ago Plato quoted the reply of the aged Cephalus to the question, Is life harder towards the end, or what report do you give of it?

Old age has a great sense of calm and freedom, when the passions relax their hold, then we are freed not of one mad master only but of many. He who is of a calm and happy nature will hardly feel the pressure of age, but to him who is of an opposite disposition youth and age are equally a burden.

The other philosopher is Dr. Francis M. Pottenger, who in the final chapter of his autobiography (1952) said: My 80 years do not worry me. To be sure, I would like again to have the keenness of youth. On the other hand, I would miss the mellowness of age, the store of experience which guides me in my every movement and act. I have tried not to live too much in the past but to be alert to the problems of the future. Thus I have accepted as an antidote to aging. It does not prevent the years from rolling by, but it does prevent that fear of the future which other wise might make one unhappy in the twilight of life.

## REFERENCES

1. BENSON, A. C. On Growing Older. in *From a College Window*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1906.
2. LORGE, I. in ANDERSON, J. E. (ed.) *Psychological Aspects of Aging*. Washington: American Psychological Association, 1956, p. 70.
3. MCCLILLAN, W. S. in *Preventive Geriatrics: Importance of Good Nutrition and Exercise in the Aged*. J. Michigan State M. Soc. 56: 398, 1957.
4. MCCLOY, C. H. *Ibid.*
5. MULHOLLAND, H. B. "Aging and Chronic Illness" in *Health Aspects of Aging*. Committee on Aging, American Medical Association, pp. 3-9.
6. NICHOLSON, E. L. Housing as a basic need of senior citizens. *J. A. M. A.* 165: 1058, 1957.
7. OSLER, W. *A Way of Life*. New York: Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., 1940.
8. POTTENGER, F. M. *The Fight Against Tuberculosis: An Autobiography*. New York: Henry Schuman, 1952, p. 260.
9. STIEGLITZ, E. J. "The Personal Challenge of Aging" in TIMMITS, C. (ed.) *Living Through the Older Years*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 1951, p. 57.
10. WHITE, P. D. The role of exercise in the aged. *J. A. M. A.* 165: 70, 1957.



two philosophers who lived centuries apart More than 2,000 years ago Plato quoted the reply of the aged Cephalus to the question, Is life harder towards the end, or what report do you give of it?

Old age has a great sense of calm and freedom, when the passions relax their hold, then we are freed not of one mad master only, but of many He who is of a calm and happy nature will hardly feel the pressure of age, but to him who is of an opposite disposition youth and age are equally a burden'

The other philosopher is Dr Francis M Pottenger, who in the final chapter of his autobiography (1952) said My 80 years do not worry me To be sure, I would like again to have the keenness of youth On the other hand, I would miss the mellowness of age the store of experience which guides me in my every movement and act I have tried not to live too much in the past but to be alert to the problems of the future This I have accepted as an antidote to aging It does not prevent the years from rolling by, but it does prevent that fear of the future which other wise might make one unhappy in the twilight of life

## REFERENCES

- 1 BENSON A C "On Growing Older" in *From a College Window* New York, G P Putnam's Sons 1906
- 2 LORGE I in ANDERSON J E (ed) *Psychological Aspects of Aging* Washington American Psychological Association 1958 p 70
- 3 MCCLELLAN W S in *Preventive Geriatrics Importance of Good Nutrition and Exercise in the Aged* J Michigan State M Soc 56 598 1957
- 4 McCLOY C H *Ibid*
- 5 MULHOLLAND H B *Aging and Chronic Illness* in *Health Aspects of Aging* Committee on Aging American Medical Association pp 3-9
- 6 NICHOLSON E E Housing as a basic need of senior citizens JAMA 165 1058 1957
- 7 OSLER W *A Way of Life* New York Paul B Hoeber Inc 1940
- 8 POTTENGER F M *The Fight Against Tuberculosis An Autobiography* New York Henry Schuman 1952 p 260
- 9 STIEGLITZ E J "The Personal Challenge of Aging" in FIMBITT C (ed) *Living Through the Older Years* Ann Arbor University of Michigan Press 1951 p 57
- 10 WHITL P D The role of exercise in the aged JAMA 165 70 1957



- Abdomen. *See* specific conditions
- Abscess cerebral, 482-483  
and diverticulosis 327 328  
in enteritis 322-323  
and hematologic aberrations 452 460  
liver 304  
lung, 234-236 270 283  
and prostatitis 388
- Accessory glands 25-28
- Achlorhydria, 302 314 316 370 468  
503
- Acidosis and carbon dioxide 216 378  
in congestive failure 219  
gastric 308  
in hepatitis 359  
and ulcer 307-308 310  
and urinary calculi 319
- Acroparesthesia 493
- Actinomycosis 260-261
- Adrenal glands anatomic changes 32 428  
and cholesterol concentration 193  
cortical function 428  
and functional hypoglycemia 444  
medulla hyperplasia 32  
in prostatic cancer 394
- Adrenocorticotropin *See* Hormones
- Adrenopause 448
- Albuminuria 190 442
- Alcohol, and cirrhosis 362 364  
and dietary measures 230  
and gout, acute episodes 442  
and hepatic coma 359  
intoxication 503 508  
and jaundice 355  
in myocardial infarction 404  
for pain control 79-80 90 494  
and pancreatitis 346-347  
in pneumonia 248 250  
and subdural hematoma 478  
in tetraplegia 489  
in vasospasm 227-228  
and vertigo 509
- Alimentary tract *See* Gastrointestinal tract
- Alkalosis 305 350
- Allergy 103-104 154 157-159  
asthma 260  
in diagnostic history 47  
drug reactions 103 104 416  
food and glossodynia 152  
and otitis 164  
and vestibulitis 154
- Allergy (*contd*)  
and vulva infections 415
- Alopecia 362
- Alveolus 284-285  
ventilation 276 506
- Alzheimer's disease 508 523 525-526
- Amyloidosis 217
- Analgesic drugs 71-72  
*See also* specific conditions
- Anastomosis in Bell's palsy 491  
esophagogastric 497  
intercoronary 190  
and Beck I procedure 207
- Anatomic changes 8-38  
*See also* specific conditions
- Androgen(s) 32  
in osteoporosis 427  
and prostate carcinoma 391 432  
protein anabolic effect 430  
and senescence 32 431 432
- Anemia 98  
and arthritis 169 174 460  
and azotemia 448 456  
in cardiovascular disease 216 219  
448-449 450  
and endocrine disturbances 451 452  
457  
enteritis 32-323 324  
in gastrointestinal disorders 302 303  
315 331-332 450 452 454-456  
and hematologic aberrations 448-460  
hemolytic 452  
and hiatus hernia 294  
and hyperparathyroidism 426  
hypochromic 316  
iron deficiency 465  
and kidney 377 379  
in lung disorders 255 283 450 454  
macrocytic 466 495 503  
in malignancy 483 314 392 451  
452 459-460  
megaloblastic 465  
in myelomatosis 459  
and obesity 66  
of osteoporosis 457-459  
pernicious 303 314 316 452 460-  
464 486  
and paresthesias in extremities 495  
psychic behavior 461 465  
and retinopathies 150  
and sensory ataxia 503



- Abdomen. *See* specific conditions
- Abscess cerebral 482-485  
and diverticula 327 328  
in enteritis 323-323  
and hematologic aberrations 452 460  
liver 304  
lung 254-256 210 283  
and prostatitis 388
- Accessory glands 25-28
- Achlorhydria, 302 314 316 370 468  
303
- Acidosis and carbon dioxide 276 378  
in congestive failure 219  
gastric, 308  
in hepatitis 359  
and ulcer 307-308 310  
and urinary calculi 379
- Acroparesthesia 495
- Actinomycosis 260-261
- Adrenal glands anatomic changes 32 428  
and cholesterol concentration 195  
cortical function 428  
and functional hypoglycemia 444  
medulla hyperplasia 32  
in prostatic cancer 394
- Adrenocorticotropin. *See* Hormones
- Adrenopause 428
- Albuminuria 190 442
- Alcohol and cirrhosis 362 364  
and dietary measures 250  
and gout, acute episodes 442  
and hepatic coma 359  
intoxication 503 508  
and jaundice 355  
in myocardial infarction 204  
for pain control 79-80 90 494  
and pancreatitis 346-347  
in pneumonia 248 250  
and subdural hematoma 478  
in tetraplegia 489  
in vasospasm 227-228  
and vertigo 509
- Alimentary tract. *See* Gastrointestinal tract
- Alkalosis 308 350
- Allergy 103-104 154 157-159  
asthma 368  
in diagnostic history 47  
drug reactions 103 104 416  
food and glossodynia 152  
and otitis 164  
and vestibulitis 154
- Allergy (*contd*)  
and vulva infections 415
- Alopecia 362
- Alveolus 284-285  
ventilation 276 506
- Alzheimer's disease 508 523 525-526
- Amyloidosis 217
- Analgesic drugs 71-72  
*See also* specific conditions
- Anastomosis in Bell's palsy 491  
esophagogastric 297  
intercoronary 196  
and Beck I procedure 207
- Anatomic changes 8-38  
*See also* specific conditions
- Androgen(s) 32  
in osteoporosis 427  
and prostate carcinoma 391 432  
protein anabolic effect 430  
and senescence 32 431 432
- Anemia 98  
and arthritis 169 174 460  
and azotemia 448 456  
in cardiovascular disease 216 219  
448-449 450  
and endocrine disturbances 451 452  
457  
enteritis 323-323 324  
in gastrointestinal disorders 302 303  
315 331-332 450 452 454-456  
and hematologic aberrations 448-460  
hemolytic 452  
and hiatus hernia 294  
and hyperparathyroidism 426  
hypochromic 316  
iron deficiency 465  
and kidney 377 379  
in lung disorders 255 283 450 454  
macrocytic 466 495 503  
in malignancy 283 314 392 451  
452 459-460  
megaloblastic 465  
in myelomatosis 459  
and obesity 66  
of osteoporosis 457-459  
pernicious 303 314 316 452 460-  
464 486  
and paresthesias in extremities 495  
psychic behavior 461 465  
and retinopathies 150  
and sensory ataxia 503



- Arteritis 238 494  
   temporal 149 467  
   and mandibular joint 493  
 Arthralgia 957  
 Arthritis 168-170  
   and broncho-ene carcinoma 282  
   and enteritis 323  
   focal and asymmetric wasting 470  
   gouty 447 443  
   and hematologic aberrations 452 460  
   and herniated cervical disc 178  
   hypertrophic, 14-15 173-175 531  
   and obesity 438  
   pain 74  
     shoulder 148-180  
   rheumatoid 168-173 174 531  
   and scleromalacia perforans 129-130  
   traumatic 442  
 Arteriosclerosis 230  
   and cirrhosis 356 361 365-367  
   and heart failure 217  
   and hemochromatosis 369  
   and hiatal hernias 292  
   and ovarian disorders 410 415  
   and pericarditis 213  
 Asian influenza 92  
 Aspiration 201  
   diagnostic 164 249 283 284  
   of food 28  
   in lung abscesses 204 205  
   pericardial 213  
 Asthma, 966-269  
   cardiac 267  
   and emphysema 273  
   and hematologic aberrations 450  
   and lung cancer symptoms 282  
   and penicillin reactions 104  
   and pulmonary fibrosis 269  
   in tuberculosis 257-258  
 Astrocytoma 482-483  
 Ataxia, 502-503  
   and acoustic neuroma 504 509  
   in paraplegia 487 490  
 Atelectasis 84 90 249 263  
 Atherosclerosis and anemia 406  
   and arteriosclerotic changes 196-197  
   230  
   and blood pressure 180 188  
   and embolic phenomena 230-238  
 Atletes foot 112  
 Atrial fibrillation 214 470  
   and embolic occlusion 231 481  
   and heart failure 217 221  
   and hyperthyroidism 425  
   in rheumatic heart disease 408  
 Atrium (cont'd)  
   flutter 221-222  
   septal defect 214  
 Atrophy 168-173 174 470  
   and blepharochalasis 140  
   cerebral 35 503 504 506  
   and fasciculations 473  
   gastric 314 315 316  
   genital 431  
   of lungs 28-29  
   muscular 467 473 474 485 487  
   in paraplegia 485 487  
   in Pick's disease 520  
   and psychogenic disorders 473  
   in tetraplegia 469  
   of vulva 416-417  
 Azotemia 448 456  
 Babinski's sign 471 472 474 485 489  
 Back pain 177-178 419 496  
 Basal metabolic rate 420  
   in anginal pain 207  
   in operative risk evaluation 83  
   and thyroid function inhibition 220  
   in thyrotoxic heart disease diagnosis 211  
 Bed rest 170-171  
   See also in specific conditions  
 Behavior See Personality  
 Bell's palsy 145 490-492  
 Biliary tract disorders 334-347  
   in postcholecystectomy syndrome 343  
   surgery indications 338 341 342  
   See also specific conditions  
 Biopsy cervical 409 411  
   colon 330 331  
   eyes 142 143  
   gastric mucosa 302  
   in hemochromatosis 360  
   larynx 160 161  
   liver 356 363 370  
   lung 283  
   of mouth 152 153  
   pancreas 354  
   penis 401  
   pleura 258  
   prostate 395  
   scrotum 401  
   sinuses 158  
   vagina 410  
   vulva 409 417  
 Bladder cystitis 382 383  
   and cystocele 419  
   dysfunction 381 438  
   and hematologic aberrations 451

*Aneurysm (contd.)*

- and partial cirrhosis 362
- in skeletal disorders 451 452 457-459
- and surgery 67
- unexplainable 462-464
- in urogenital disorders 392 456
- and vertigo 509
- and vitamin B<sub>1</sub> 465 486

*Anesthesia 87-89*

See also in specific conditions

*Angina pectoris 197-198*

- and coronary insufficiency 196
- in diabetes 435-436
- diagnosis 197 198 201 338-339
- and hiatus hernia 291
- and myocardial infarction 205
- pain relief 76 206-207

*Anorexia 533*

- bladder neoplasms 385
- and bronchogenic carcinoma 282
- and gastric conditions 302 315
- hepatitis 357
- and pericarditis 212 213
- in pneumonia 246 247 248-250
- in tuberculosis 257

*Antibiotic 53-54 263-265*

- in actinomycosis 261
- in chimeroid 399
- in cholecystitis 335
- in cirrhosis 365
- in conjunctivitis 131
- in dermatologic problems 107 163
- for enteritis complications 325
- in hepatic coma 360
- in hepatitis 355
- and indwelling catheters 96
- in kidney infections 377
- in lung abscess 254-256
- in myocardial infarction 204
- and otitis media 163
- and pneumonia 244-245 246 253 254

*prophylactic 99*

- in pulmonary emphysema 274
- in routine care 96
- scrotal infections 402
- sensitivity 54 97
- in sinuses 158
- staphylococcal resistance 51
- in thrombophlebitis 240
- and tracheotomy tubes 96
- in tuberculous 299
- in venereal lesions 399 400
- in ventilatory insufficiency 277

*Antibiotics (contd.)*

- and vitamins 60
- anticholinergic drugs 166 308 324 329
- See also in specific conditions
- anticoagulant drugs in heart disease 210
- and hemiplegia 450 454
- after myocardial infarction 203 204
- in thrombophlebitis 204 210
- for thrombosis 481
- and hemorrhage differentiation 475
- vasospastic response time 236-237

*Anus 330 417 418*

See also Rectum

*Anxiety reaction 533-534*

- and asthma 265
- in caecophobia 51 152
- in congestive heart failure 217
- and dermatologic problems 101
- and diarrhea 533
- and fear 560-564
- free floating 533
- and pain control 72

*Aorta 209-210*

- aneurysm 198 202 453
- changes in contour 441
- coarctation 215
- lipoid deposits 250
- stenosis 94-95 209-210

*Aphasia 480 526**Aphthous stomatitis 105-106**Appendix 25 81**Argyll Robertson pupil 471 478 501 503**Arteriosclerosis 26 22 230-238*

- altitude therapy 524
- and blood pressure 167 159 190
- cerebral 87 217 476 479 513-514 522-523
- of choroidal vessels 128
- dietary factors 65 191
- and drug reactions 87 217
- and elasticity loss 185
- endocrine factors 105
- and heart disease 192-198
- and hematologic aberrations 450 450
- in hemiparesis 453
- hereditary factors 522
- and hyperthyroidism 150
- and melena 309
- obliterans 77-78
- and pancreatitis 440
- and peripheral vascular 499
- and retinopathies 146-150
- and senile tremor 481
- types 195-198

- Arteritis 238 494  
   temporal 149 467  
   and mandibular joint 493  
 Arthralgia 257  
 Arthritis 168-175  
   and broncho-genic carcinoma 282  
   and enteritis 323  
   focal and asymmetric wasting 470  
   of eye 442 443  
   and hematologic aberrations 452 460  
   and herniated cervical disc 178  
   hypertrophic 14-15 173-175 531  
   and obesity 438  
   pain 74  
   shoulder 118-180  
   rheumatoid 168-173 174 531  
   and scleromalacia perforans 129-130  
   traumatic 442  
 Arteries 230  
   and curthosis 356 361 365-367  
   and heart failure 217  
   and hemochromatosis 369  
   and hiatal hernias 292  
   and ovarian disorders 413 415  
   and pericarditis 213  
 Asian influenza 92  
 Aspiration 251  
   diagnostic 164 249 283 284  
   of food 28  
   in lung abscess 254 255  
   pericardial 213  
 Asthma, 1966-69  
   cardiac 267  
   and emphysema 273  
   and hematologic aberrations 450  
   and lung cancer symptoms 282  
   and penicillin reactions 104  
   and pulmonary fibrosis 269  
   in tuberculosis 257-258  
 Astrocytoma 462-483  
 Ataxia 502-503  
   and acoustic neuroma 504 509  
   in paraplegia 487 496  
 Atelactasis 84 90 249 283  
 Atherosclerosis and anemia 156  
   and arterio sclerotic changes 196-197  
   200  
   and blood pressure 185 188  
   and embolic phenomena 230-238  
 Adult's foot 112  
 Atrium fibrillation 114 475  
   and embolic occlusion 231 481  
   and heart failure 217 221  
   and hyperthyroidism 125  
   in rheumatic heart disease 208  
 Atrium (cont'd)  
   flutter 221-222  
   septal defect 214  
 Atrophy 168-173 174 470  
   and blepharochalasis 140  
   cerebral 35 503 504 506  
   and fasciculations 473  
   gastric 311 315 316  
   genital 431  
   of lungs 28-29  
   muscular 467 473 474 485 487  
   in paraplegia 485 487  
   in Pick's disease 520  
   and psychogenic disorders 473  
   in tetraplegia 489  
   of vulva 416-417  
 Azotemia 448 456  
 Babinski's sign 471 472 474 485 489  
 Back pain 177-178 419 496  
 Basal metabolic rate 423  
   in anginal pain 207  
   in operative risk evaluation 83  
   and thyroid function inhibition 220  
   in thyrotoxic heart disease diagnosis 211  
 Bed rest 170-171  
   See also in specific conditions  
 Behavior See Personality  
 Bell's palsy 145 490-492  
 Biliary tract disorders 334-347  
   in postcholecystectomy syndrome 343  
   surgery indications 336 341 342  
   See also specific conditions  
 Biopsy cervical 409 411  
   colon 330 331  
   eyes 142 143  
   gastric mucosa, 302  
   in hemochromatosis 369  
   larynx 160 161  
   liver 356 363 370  
   lung 283  
   of mouth 152 153  
   pancreas 354  
   penis 401  
   pleura 258  
   prostate 393  
   scrotum 401  
   sinuses 158  
   vaginal 410  
   vulva 409 417  
 Bladder cystitis 382 383  
   and cystocele 419  
   dy function 381 438  
   and hematologic aberrations 451

*Anemia (contd)*

- and portal cirrhosis 362
- in skeletal disorders 451 452 457-459
- and surgery 67
- unexplainable 462-464
- in urogenital disorders 392 456
- and vertigo 509
- and vitamin B<sub>12</sub> 465 486

*Anesthesia 87-89*

*See also* in specific conditions

- Angina pectoris 197-198
- and coronary insufficiency 196
- in diabetes 435-436
- diagnosis 197 198 202 338-339
- and hiatus hernia 294
- and myocardial infarction 205
- pain relief 76 206-207

*Anorexia 533*

- bladder neoplasms 385
- and bronchogenic carcinoma 282
- and gastric conditions 302 315
- hepatitis 357
- and pericarditis 212 213
- in pneumonia 246 247 248-250
- in tuberculosis 257

*Antibiotic 53-54 263-265*

- in actinomycosis 261
- in chaneroid 399
- in cholecystitis 335
- in cirrhosis 365
- in conjunctivitis 131
- in dermatologic problems 107 163
- for enteritis complications 325
- in hepatic coma 360
- in hepatitis 358
- and indwelling catheters 96
- in kidney infections 377
- in lung abscess 254-258
- in myocardial infarction 204
- and otitis media 163
- and pneumonia 244-245 246 253 254
- prophylactic 99
- in pulmonary emphysema 274
- in routine care 96
- scrotal infections 402
- sensitivity 54 97
- in sinuses 158
- staphylococcal resistance 54
- in thrombophlebitis 210
- and tracheotomy tubes 96
- in tuberculosis 259
- in venereal lesions 399 400
- in ventilatory insufficiency 277

*Antibiotics (contd)*

and vitamins 60

*Anticholinergic drugs 166 308 324 3-5*

*See also* in specific conditions

- Anticoagulant drugs in heart disease 210
- and hemiplegia 450 454
- after myocardial infarction 203 204
- in thrombophlebitis 201 240
- for thrombosis 481
- and hemorrhage differentiation 475
- vasospastic response time 236-237

*Anus 330 417 418*

*See also* Rectum

*Anxiety reaction 533-534*

- and asthma 268
- in claustrophobia 51 152
- in congestive heart failure 217
- and dermatologic problems 101
- and diarrhea 533
- and fear 560-561
- free floating 533
- and pain control 72

*Aorta 209-210*

- aneurysm 198 202 485
- changes in gout 411
- correction 215
- lipoid deposits 230
- stenosis 94-95 209-210

*Aphasia 480 526**Aphthous stomatitis 105-106**Appendix 25 84**Argyll Robertson pupil 471 478 501 503**Arteriosclerosis 20 22 230-238*

- attitude therapy 524
- and blood pressure 187 188 190
- cerebral 57 217 478 479 513-514 522-523
- of choroidal vessels 128
- dietary factors 65 194
- and drug reactions 87 217
- and elasticity loss 185
- endocrine factors 195
- and heart disease 192-198
- and hematologic aberrations 450 456
- in hemiparesis 453
- hereditary factors 522
- and hyperthyroidism 450
- and melanin 309
- obliteration 77-78
- and pancreatitis 346
- and peripheral vertigo 489
- and retinopathies 146-148
- and renal tumor 400
- types 195-198



- Breast, carcinoma 143 451  
   physical examination 50  
   regression 405-406  
 Bronchiectasis 82 97 264-266 269  
 Bronchioles 97 284-285  
 Bronchitis 264-265  
   and asthma, 266  
   and pulmonary fibrosis 269  
   and smoking, 264  
   in tuberculosis 257  
 Bronchopneumonia 249-250  
 Bronchoscopy 255 256 265 268 283  
 Bronchus calcification 28  
   carcinoma 281  
   congenital abnormalities 264  
   dilation, 93  
   narrowing, 243  
   spasm 267 272  
   squamous cell tumor 281  
   tension cyst 270  
 Brucellosis 91  
 Buerger's disease 230  
 Burns 74 178-179 180 442  
 Byssinosis 269
- Calcification 29  
   of aortic valve 209-210  
   in bowel lumen 337  
   of cartilage 15  
   in gout 441  
   and pancreatitis 350  
   postcholecystectomy syndrome 344 345  
   of prostate 392 395  
   trachea 28  
   See also Gallstones Stones  
 Calcium metabolism 29  
   and parathyroid glands 380 426-428  
   and urinary calculi formation 379-391  
   in osteoporosis 458 464  
 Calories, See Nutrition  
 Cancer See specific sites  
 Cancerphobia 51 152  
 Carbohydrate 110 439-440  
   in enteritis 324  
   and hypoglycemia 445  
   and obesity 66-67  
   tolerance with age 428  
   as to synthesis from 443  
 Carbon dioxide 51  
   combining power 334  
   inhalation 511  
   retention and tetraplegia 479-480  
   in pulmonary emphysema 273  
   and syncope 506
- Carbon dioxide (cont'd)  
   tension, 244 270 271 276 378  
   in ventilatory insufficiency 276  
 Carcinoma See specific site  
 Cardiac output and blood pressure 185 186  
   and cor pulmonale 277  
 Cardiovascular disease 448-454  
   hypertensive 147 185-186 188 191  
 Carotid artery 145 222 477 483  
 Cartilage 15 18 28 173  
 Caruncle urethral 398  
 Cells anatomic changes 18 20-21 27 29 32 34 36 37  
   and nutrition 67-68  
 Cerebellum 282 470 502 503 504-505  
 Cervix, carcinoma 409-411 451  
 Chancre 399  
 Chancroid 399  
 Cheyne Stokes respiration 479  
 Cholecystectomy 341 342 344 349  
 Cholecystitis 334-338 450  
   diagnosis 202 335 336 340  
   and hiatal hernias 295  
   and pancreatitis 342  
 Cholecystojejunostomy 354  
 Cholelithiasis 340-344 351 450  
 Cholesterol 51  
   and atherosclerosis 194 195 231 234  
   and dietary fat 65 194 195 205  
   and gallbladder disease 338-339  
   and hypertension 231  
   and myocardial infarction 205  
   and nicotinic acid 205  
   and xanthelasma 140  
 Chordotomy 79-80 319  
 Chorea 208 501-502  
 Circulation, See Blood flow  
 Cirrhosis biliary 354 363-364  
   and hemochromatosis 369  
   hepatic 361-369  
   and jaundice 354-359  
   and obesity 438  
   portal 362  
   postnecrotic 363  
 Claudication 226-227 232  
   in diabetes 437  
   intermittent 232 234 235  
 Clinitest method 435  
 Cobalt therapy 160  
 Coccidioidomycosis 262  
 Crick 352  
   biliary and gallstones 338-339 340-344  
 Collagen diseases 190 266 269

- Bladder dysfunction (*contd*)  
   in paraplegia 485  
   neoplasms 384-387 451  
   symptoms, in functional constipation 376  
   and urethral infections 395  
   See also Gillbladder Urination
- Blastomycosis 261-262
- Bleeding See Hemorrhage
- Blood 18-22  
   carbon dioxide 334  
     and hemiplegia 479  
     tension 244 270 271 276 378  
   cholesterol See Cholesterol  
   cosmophils in asthma 267  
   fecal in gastrointestinal disorders 455  
   hematologic aberrations 446-466  
   lipid concentration 195  
   preoperative evaluation 68  
   and retinopathies 150  
   sedimentation rate 174 258 341  
   sugar concentration 51 434 479  
     and cholecystitis 336  
     in islet cell cancer 444  
     and vertigo 166  
   transfusions 310 324 368  
   urea nitrogen 51 190 336 452 460  
   volume 63 65 68  
     and cor pulmonale 277  
     and protein balance 67
- Blood flow 77 95  
   cerebral 220 221 478-479 510 516 517 520  
     and histamine 481  
     and spinal anesthesia 59  
   collateral 78 183  
     in cirrhosis 361  
     and claudication 234  
     and *pundice* 356  
     in occlusion 231 235 237  
     and vasodilator drugs 237  
     in visospastic disease 226-227  
   coronary 89 194-196 200-204  
   in endocarditis 215  
   and exercise 552  
   and heart failure 220 221  
   in hemiplegia 478-479 483  
   pulmonary 264 278-281  
   and vertigo 166 510 516  
   viscosity and cor pulmonale 277
- Blood pressure 185-191  
   and arteriosclerosis 185 186 188 200 497  
   and carbon dioxide retention 479
- Blood pressure (*contd*)  
   and cardiac output 186  
   in diabetes 187  
   enzyme studies 200  
   in hemiplegia 475 479 483  
   after hemorrhage in ulcer 310  
   intrapulmonary and anesthetic agents 68  
   after myocardial infarction 200  
   and nutritional status 67-68  
   and obesity 66  
   and pericardial effusion 212  
   in physical examination 48-49  
   in pulmonary emphysema 274  
   and shock in epistaxis 156  
   in visospastic disease 226-227  
   See also Hypertension Hypotension
- Blood vessels See Vascular system
- Bone 13-18  
   decalcification 14 459 468  
     and exercise 553  
   marrow 15  
     in hematologic disorders 462  
     lymphoid nodules 24  
   and muscle 11-13 168-184  
   sensory organs 33  
   and tuberculosis 257  
   See also Specific conditions
- Bowel See Gastrointestinal tract
- Bowen's disease 29 116 100
- Brun 3 4 21 34-35 516 518 529 562  
   mercurism 494 509  
   arterial occlusion 230 232  
   and arteriosclerosis 479 513-514 523  
   atrophy 35 503 504 506  
   cancer 283 478  
     frontal lobe 503 504  
   circulation 516 520  
   and hyperthyroidism 40  
   infarction diagnosis 94  
   neurofibrillary changes 469 471 493  
     and vertigo 510 515  
   size 514-515  
   and specific therapy 98  
   strokes 102 114 524  
   thrombosis 510  
   tumor 452  
     and convulsions 506-508  
     and hematologic aberrations 444 452 459-460  
   types and frequency 452  
   wave changes 514 515  
   weight 514-515  
   See also Mental disorders and specific conditions

- Breast, carcinoma 143 451  
     physical examination 50  
     regression, 405-406  
 Bronchiectasis 82, 97 264-266 269  
 Bronchioles, 97 284-285  
 Bronchus 264-265  
     and asthma, 766  
     and pulmonary fibrosis 269  
     and smoking, 264  
     in tuberculosis 257  
 Bronchopneumonia 249-250  
 Bronchoscopy 255 256 265 268 283  
 Bronchus calcification 28  
     carcinoma 281  
     congenital abnormalities 264  
     dilation, 93  
     narrowing 243  
     spasm, 267 272  
     squamous cell tumor 281  
     tension cyst 270  
 Bruccellosis 91  
 Buerger's disease 230  
 Bursitis 14 178-179 180 442  
 Byssinosis 269  
 Calcification 29  
     of aortic valve 209-210  
     in bowel lumen 337  
     of cartilage 15  
     in gout, 441  
     and pancreatitis 350  
     postcholecystectomy syndrome 344 345  
     of prostate 392 395  
     trachea 28  
     See also Gallstones Stones  
 Calcium metabolism 29  
     and parathyroid glands 350 426-428  
     and urinary calculi formation 379-381  
     in osteoporosis 458 464  
 Calories. See Nutrition  
 Cancer. See specific sites  
 Canicophobia 51 152  
 Carbohydrate 110 439-440  
     in cretinism 324  
     and hypoglycemia 445  
     and obesity 66-67  
     tolerance with 257 438  
     urate synthesis from 443  
 Carbon dioxide 251  
     combining power 334  
     inhalation 511  
     retention and hemiplegia 479-480  
     in pulmonary emphysema 273  
     and syncope 506  
 Carbon dioxide (cont'd)  
     tension 244 270 271 276 378  
     in ventilatory insufficiency 276  
 Carcinoma. See specific site  
 Cardiac output and blood pressure 185  
     186  
     and cor pulmonale 277  
 Cardiovascular disease 448-454  
     hypertensive 147 165-168 189 191  
 Carotid artery 145 222 477 483  
 Cartilage 15 18 28 173  
 Caruncle urethral 338  
 Cells anatomic changes 18 20-21 27  
     29 32 34 36 37  
     and nutrition 67-68  
 Cerebellum 282 470 502 503 504-505  
 Cervix carcinoma 409-411 451  
 Chancre 399  
 Chancroid 399  
 Cheyne Stokes respiration 479  
 Cholecystectomy 341 342 344 349  
 Cholecystitis 354-358 450  
     diagnosis 202 335 336 340  
     and hiatal hernias 295  
     and pancreatitis 342  
 Cholecystojejunostomy 354  
 Cholelithiasis 340-344 351 450  
 Cholesterol 51  
     and atherosclerosis 194 195 231 234  
     and dietary fat 65 194 195 205  
     and gallbladder disease 339-339  
     and hypertension 231  
     and myocardial infarction 205  
     and nicotinic acid 205  
     and xanthelasma 140  
 Chordotomy 79-80 319  
 Chorea 208 501-502  
 Circulation. See Blood flow  
 Cirrhosis biliary 354 363-364  
     and hemochromatosis 369  
     hepatic 361-369  
     and jaundice 354-359  
     and obesity 438  
     portal 362  
     postnecrotic 363  
 Claudication 26-27 232  
     in diabetes 437  
     intermittent 232 234 235  
 Clinitest method 435  
 Cobalt therapy 160  
 Coccidioidomycosis 262  
 Colic 352  
     biliary and gallstones 338-339 340-344  
 Collagen diseases 190 266 269

- Bladder dysfunction (*cont'd*)  
   in paraplegia 455  
   neoplasms, 354-357 451  
   symptoms in functional constipation, 356  
   and urethral infection 355  
   See also Gallbladder Urination
- Blastomycosis 261-263
- Bleeding, See Hemorrhage
- Blood, 18-22  
   carbon dioxide 334  
   and hemiplegia 479  
   tension 344 370 371 376 376  
   cholesterol, See Cholesterol  
   eosinophils, in asthma 267  
   fecal, in gastrointestinal disorders 455  
   hematologic aberrations 445-466  
   lipid concentration, 195  
   preoperative evaluation 68  
   and reticulocytes 170  
   sedimentation rate 174 255 341  
   sugar concentration 51 434 479  
   and cholelithiasis 356  
   in net cell cancer 441  
   and vertigo 166  
   transfusions 310 324 368  
   urea nitrogen 51 190 346 452 460  
   volume 83 85 85  
   and cor pulmonale 277  
   and protein balance 67
- Blood flow 77 95  
   cerebral, 220 221 475-479 510 516 517 520  
   and histamine 451  
   and renal arteries 89  
   collateral, 78 453  
   in embryos 381  
   and claudication 234  
   and pancreas 356  
   in occlusion, 231 235 237  
   and vasodilator drugs 237  
   in vasospastic disease 226-227  
   coronary 89 194-196 203-204  
   in endocarditis 215  
   and exercise 552  
   and heart failure 220 221  
   in hemiplegia, 478-479 453  
   pulmonary 264 275-281  
   and vertigo 166 510 516  
   viscosity and cor pulmonale 277
- Blood pressure, 155-191  
   and arteriosclerosis 185 186 185 220 437  
   and carbon dioxide retention, 479
- Blood pressure (*cont'd*)  
   and cardiac output 186  
   in diabetes 187  
   enzyme studies 200  
   in hemiplegia, 475 479 453  
   after hemorrhage in ulcer 310  
   intrapulmonary and anesthetic agents 68  
   after myocardial infarction, 200  
   and nutritional status 67-68  
   and obesity 66  
   and pericardial effusion, 212  
   in physical examination, 45-49  
   in pulmonary emphysema 274  
   and shock, in epinephrine 156  
   in vasospastic disease 226-227  
   See also Hypertension, Hypotension
- Blood vessels, See Vascular system
- Bone 13-18  
   de-mineralization, 14 459 460  
   and exercise 553  
   marrow 15  
   in hematologic disorders 462  
   lymphoid nodules 24  
   and muscle 11-13 165-184  
   sensory organs 33  
   and tuberculosis 257  
   See also Specific conditions
- Bowel, See Gastrointestinal tract
- Bowen's disease 29 116 120
- Brain, 3 4 21 34-35 516 515 529 562  
   aneurysm, 494 509  
   arterial occlusion 220 232  
   and arteriosclerosis 479 513-514 523  
   atrophy 35 503 504 506  
   cancer 253 478  
   frontal lobe 503 504  
   circulation 516 520  
   and hyperthyroidism, 426  
   infarction diagnosis 94  
   neurofibrillar changes 469 471 493  
   and vertigo 510 515  
   size 514-515  
   and specific therapy 50  
   strokes 102, 144 524  
   thrombosis, 510  
   tumor 462  
   and convulsions 506-508  
   and hematologic aberrations 451 452, 453-460  
   types and frequency 452  
   wave changes 514 515  
   weight, 514-515  
   See also Mental disorders and psychic conditions

- Diabetes mellitus (contd)  
   and obesity 66 438  
   and pancreas 348 350 351 428  
   retinopathy 128 149-150  
     cataracts 126 433  
   and sugar concentration 51 234 444  
     renal threshold 455  
   in tetraplegia 489  
   uncontrolled 93  
   and urinary infection 382  
   and vascular disease 187 231 238  
     455-456  
   and vestibulitis 154  
   and vulvovaginitis 415-416  
 Diagnosis 43-52  
   in hematologic aberrations 446-466  
     468  
   history taking for 45-48  
     in mental disturbances 60 468  
   neurologic examination 468-492  
   of surgical conditions 84-85  
   See also specific conditions  
 Diarrhea 458  
   and anxiety 533  
   atrophic gastritis 301  
   colon inflammatory mass 332  
   and diverticulosis 327  
   enteritis 322 324  
   and jaundice 355  
   in pneumonia 248-250  
   in tuberculosis 257  
   and vertigo 508  
   water and electrolyte loss 68  
 Diathermy 170 171 177 179 251  
 Diet 60 366 394  
   in aplous stomatitis 106  
   and atherogenesis 194 231  
   bland 65-306 324  
   in cholelithic disease 336 339  
   in cirrhosis management 364 368  
   and coronary disease 193 194  
   in diabetes 434 435  
   and duodenitis 327  
   in enteritis 324  
   in intake 65 194 195 339 439-440  
     443  
   Food and Nutrition Board of National  
     Research Council 64  
   and gall bladder disease 339  
   and gastric disturbances 60-61 301  
     311  
   in general 445  
   in hepatic coma 360  
   in hepatitis 357  
   and jaundice 355  
 Diet (contd)  
   liquid 364  
   low-carbohydrate 445  
   in myocardial infarction 203-204 205  
   nitrogen balance 63-64  
   in osteoporosis 427  
   and overweight 66-67 111 295  
   and pancreatitis 346  
   and pneumonia 250-251  
   postcholecystectomy syndrome 345  
   postoperative 56  
   and potassium depletion 220  
   proteins 62 63-64 139  
     high 65 325 445  
   and pruritus 110  
   in pulmonary tuberculosis 259  
   in rheumatoid arthritis 170 171  
   and sodium intake See Sodium  
   in tetraplegia 489  
   in ulcer management 305-306 309  
     312  
   and weight ideal 439-440  
     optimal 61  
   See also Nutrition  
 Digitalis 86 202 204 217-218 221  
     222 253 278 280  
 Diplegia 472 490-492  
 Diplopia, 144-145 505  
 Diverticula colonic 326-327  
   and cancer 328-330  
   and hiatal hernias 295  
   and digestive complaints 370 455  
   duodenal and cancer 320  
   esophageal 299  
   and gallstone management 343  
   vesical 381-382  
 Dizziness 165-167  
   See also Vertigo  
 Drugs 53-56  
   appetite depressing, 440  
   cost in choice 55 56  
   multiple for anesthetic state 87-88  
   for pain relief 71-72 76  
   preanesthetic 87-89  
   reactions 103 104 168 229 437  
   for symptomatic treatment 54-55  
     510-511  
   toxicity 88 151 452 495  
     and potassium depletion 220  
   See also specific conditions  
 Ductus arteriosus patent, 215  
 Duodenum 299-325  
   and cancer 320 322  
     of pancreas 352-353  
   diverticula 351

- Coma, diabetic 438 489  
     and hemiplegia 475 478  
     hepatic, 337 359-361 367-369  
     and islet cell carcinoma 444  
     and subdural hematoma 478  
 Complement fixation test, 262  
 Condylomas 400-401  
 Conjunctiva 123 124 142  
     inflammatory disorders 130 131  
     and facial pain 493  
 Connective tissue 9-11, 12 18 29  
 Constipation 418 471  
     after aluminum hydroxide 208  
     and vitamins 308  
     anticholinergic contraindication 309  
     atrophic gastritis 301  
     in diverticulitis 326 327  
     functional 371-372 376-377  
     morphine side effect 72  
     and rectocele 419-420  
     and reduction diets 67 439  
     vulnerability 531  
 Convulsive disorders 444 505-508  
     and brain function 517  
     and dehydration 68  
     in hemiplegia 475 482  
 Coronary artery 86 193-195 207 438  
     arteriosclerotic changes 196  
     and atherosclerosis 188 230  
     occlusion 55  
         with myocardial infarction 198  
 Cor pulmonale 216 269 276 277-278  
     280  
 Corticosteroids *See* Steroids  
 Cortisone *See* Hormones  
 Cough, 245 247 248 251 253 261 279  
     284  
     and asthma 266 267  
     bronchiectasis 264  
     bronchitis 263  
     and bronchogenic carcinoma 282  
     in congestive heart failure 217  
     and larynx cancer 161  
     in moniliasis 262  
     reflex 244 251  
     smokers 257  
     symptomatic therapy 251  
     in tuberculosis 257  
 Courvoisier's sign 353  
 Craniopharyngioma 424 467 482-483  
 Cranium 13-14  
     nerve weakness 490 494  
 Cryptococcosis 261  
 Curettage 409 411 431  
 Cushing's disease 190 439  
 Cyanosis 279  
     in asthma 267  
     in emphysema, 273  
     in lung abscess 255  
     in pericarditis 213  
     in pneumonia 245 248-250  
     in thrombophlebitis 259  
 Cystitis 352-354 387  
 Cystoceles 382 419-420 271  
 Cysts 142 270-271 275 414  
     electrocoagulation 397  
 Cytology, 51 316 330 356  
     *See also* specific conditions and sites  
 Dacryocystitis 141-142  
 Deafness, *See* Ear  
 Dehydration 67 68 243 452  
 Delirium 89 248-250 519 520 522-  
     523  
 Dementia 525-526  
 Depressive reaction 472 523 528-529,  
     534-535  
 Dermatologic disorders 101-122  
     contact and external otitis 163  
     and hematologic aberrations 452 460  
     medicamentosa 416  
     nasal vestibular 154  
     in polymyositis 490  
     therapy 74 106-107 431  
     in thrombophlebitis 240  
 Diabetes insipidus 424  
 Diabetes mellitus 433-438  
     and anemia 456  
     and angina pectoris 435-436  
     and arteriosclerosis 149-150 234  
     and atherosclerosis 231  
     bladder disturbances 438  
     and blood pressure 197  
     cerebral complications 435 476  
     in cholecystitis 336  
     and coronary artery disease 194  
     diet calculation 435  
     and cirrual disease 162 163  
     and gangrene 437  
     and hematologic aberrations 451 452  
         457  
     and hemochromatosis 369  
     insulin requirements 435-436  
     and melanin 309  
     mental reactions 521  
     and moniliasis 110-111  
     in monoplegia 457-458  
     and mouth dryness 251  
     neurologic complications 437  
     and nocturnal diarrhea 453

- Diabetes mellitus (contd)**  
 and obesity 66 438  
 and pancreas 348 350 351 428  
 retinopathy 128 149-150  
   cataracts 126 433  
 and sugar concentration 51 234 444  
   renal threshold, 435  
 in tetraplegia 489  
 uncontrolled, 93  
 and urinary infection 382  
 and vascular disease 187 231 238  
   435-436  
 and vestibulitis 154  
 and vulvovaginitis 415-416
- Diagnosis** 43-52  
 in hematologic aberrations 446-466  
   468  
 history taking for 15-48  
   in mental disturbances 80 468  
 neurologic examination 468-492  
 of surgical conditions 84-85  
*See also* specific conditions
- Diarrhea**, 438  
 and anxiety 533  
 atrophic gastritis 301  
 colon inflammatory mass 332  
 and diverticulosis 327  
 enteritis 322 324  
 and jaundice 355  
 in pneumonia 248-250  
 in tuberculosis 257  
 and vertigo 508  
 water and electrolyte loss 68
- Duodenum** 170 171 177 179 251
- Diet**, 60 366 394  
 in aphthous stomatitis 106  
 and atherosclerosis 194 231  
 bland, 305-306 324  
 in cholelithic disease 336 339  
 in cirrhosis management 364 368  
 and coronary disease 193 194  
 in diabetes 434 435  
 and diverticulitis 327  
 in enteritis 374  
 fat intake 65 194 195 339 439-440  
   443  
**Food and Nutrition Board of National**  
   Research Council 64  
 and gallbladder disease 339  
 and gastric disturbances 60-61 301  
   311  
 in gout 443  
 and hepatic coma 360  
 and hepatitis 357  
 and jaundice 355
- Diet (contd)**  
 liquid 364  
 low-carbohydrate 445  
 in myocardial infarction 203-204 205  
 nitrogen balance 63-64  
 in osteoporosis 427  
 and overweight 66-67 111 295  
 and pancreatitis 346  
 and pneumonia 250-251  
 postcholecystectomy syndrome 345  
 postoperative 56  
 and potassium depletion 220  
 proteins 62 63-64 439  
   high 65 325 445  
 and pruritus 110  
 in pulmonary tuberculosis 259  
 in rheumatoid arthritis 170 171  
 and sodium intake *See* Sodium  
 in tetraplegia 489  
 in ulcer management 305-306 309  
   312  
 and weight ideal 439-440  
   optimal 61  
*See also* Nutrition
- Digitalis** 86 202 204 217-218 221  
   222 253 278 280
- Diplegia** 472 490-492
- Diplopia** 144-145 505
- Diverticula** colonic 326-327  
   and cancer 328-330  
   and hiatal hernias 295  
 and digestive complaints 370 455  
 duodenal and cancer 320  
 esophageal 299  
 and gallstone management 343  
 vesical 381-382
- Dizziness** 165-167  
*See also* Vertigo
- Drugs** 53-56  
 appetite depressing 440  
 cost in choice 55 56  
 multiple for anesthetic state 87-88  
 for pain relief 71-72 76  
 preanesthetic 87-89  
 reactions 103 104 166 229 437  
 for symptomatic treatment 54-55  
   510-511  
 toxicity 88 151 452 495  
   and potassium depletion 220  
*See also* specific conditions
- Ductus arteriosus** patent 215
- Duodenum** 299-325  
 and cancer 320 322  
   of pancreas 352-353  
 diverticula 351

- Coma diabetic 438 489  
 and hemiplegia 475 478  
 hepatic 337 359-361 367-369  
 and islet cell carcinoma 444  
 and subdural hematoma 478
- Complement fixation test 262
- Condylomas, 400-401
- Conjunctiva 123 124 142  
 inflammatory disorders 130 131  
 and facial pain 493
- Connective tissue 9-11 12 18 29
- Constipation 418 471  
 after aluminum hydroxide 208  
 and antacids 308  
 anticholinergic contraindication 309  
 atrophic gastritis 301  
 in diverticulitis 326 327  
 functional 371-372 376-377  
 morphine side effect 72  
 and rectocele 419-420  
 and reduction diets 67 439  
 vulnerability 531
- Convulsive disorders 444 505-508  
 and brain function 517  
 and dehydration 68  
 in hemiplegia 475 482
- Coronary artery 56 193-195 207 438  
 arteriosclerotic changes 196  
 and atherosclerosis 168 230  
 occlusion 55  
 with myocardial infarction 198
- Cor pulmonale 216 269 276 277-278 280
- Corticosteroids *See* Steroids
- Cortisone *See* Hormones
- Cough 245 247 248 251 255 261 279 284  
 and asthma 266 267  
 bronchiectasis 264  
 bronchitis 263  
 and bronchogenic carcinoma 282  
 in congestive heart failure 217  
 and larynx cancer 161  
 in moniliasis 262  
 reflex 244 251  
 smokers 257  
 symptomatic therapy 251  
 in tuberculosis 257
- Courvoisier's sign 353
- Craniopharyngioma 424 467 482-483
- Cranium 13-14  
 nerve weakness 490 494
- Cryptococcosis 261
- Curettage 409 411 431
- Cushing's disease 190 439
- Cyanosis 279  
 in asthma 267  
 in emphysema 273  
 in lung abscess 255  
 in pericarditis 213  
 in pneumonia 245 248-250  
 in thrombophlebitis 239
- Cystitis 382-384 387
- Cystoceles 382 419-420 271
- Cysts 142 270-271 275 414  
 electrocoagulation 397
- Cytology 51 316 330 386  
*See also* specific conditions and sites
- Dacryocystitis 141-142
- Deafness *See* Ear
- Dehydration 67 68 243 452
- Delirium 89 248-250 519 520 522-523
- Dementia 525-526
- Depressive reaction 472 523 528-529 534-535
- Dermatologic disorders 101-122  
 contact and external otitis 163  
 and hematologic aberrations 452 460  
 medicamentosa 416  
 nasal vestibular 154  
 in polymyositis 490  
 therapy 74 106-107 431  
 in thrombophlebitis 240
- Diabetes insipidus 424
- Diabetes mellitus 433-438  
 and anemia 456  
 and angina pectoris 435-436  
 and arteriosclerosis 149-150 234  
 and atherosclerosis 231  
 bladder disturbances 438  
 and blood pressure 187  
 cerebral complications 435 476  
 in cholecystitis 336  
 and coronary artery disease 194  
 diet calculation 435  
 and ear canal disease 162 163  
 and gangrene 437  
 and hematologic aberrations 451 452 457  
 and hemochromatosis 369  
 insulin requirements 435-436  
 and melanin 309  
 mental reactions 521  
 and moniliasis 110-111  
 in monoplegia 487-488  
 and mouth dryness 151  
 neurologic complications 437  
 and nocturnal diarrhea 438



- Eriena 323-325  
 Enterocle 419-420  
 Epididymitis 401-402  
   and prostatitis 387  
 Epistaxis 155-156 208  
 Erythema, 241  
   and enteritis 323  
   and jaundice 358  
   and portal cirrhosis 362  
 Erythrocytes in hematologic disorders  
   447-448 464-466  
   in myocardial infarction 200  
   in rheumatoid arthritis 169  
 Esophagus 295  
   achalasia, 291-292  
   benign tumors 296  
   Blakemore Sengstaken tamponade 368  
   cancer 296-298 450  
   and cardiospasm 298  
   congenital shortening 294  
   diverticula 299  
   in hoarseness 161  
   leiomyomas 296  
   polyps 296  
   varices 295-299  
     and cirrhosis 363 368  
     and hemochromatosis 369  
 Estrogen 32  
   ovarian secretion, 428 429  
   in prostate carcinoma 391 393 394  
   therapy and cholesterol concentration  
     195  
   in climacteric 430  
   and endometrial cancer 411-412  
   involutional psychoses 528  
   and postmenopausal bleeding, 409  
     412 431  
   urethral caruncle 390  
   and vasomotor symptoms 406  
   and vulvar lesions 418  
 Extremities 552-554  
   in cubization prevention 261  
   filariasis 152  
   after myocardial infarction 206 208  
   nutrition and body weight 62  
   in osteoarthritis 238  
   in peripheral care 90  
   in rheumatoid arthritis 170 171  
   and shoulder-hand syndrome 160  
   and temperature of toes 228-227  
   test for cardiac nerve 197  
   tremors and acroparesthesia in 495  
   andtherosclerosis 231  
   ulcer-bellum damage in ataxia 503  
   characteristic involuntary movement, 501  
 Extremities (cont'd)  
   circulation 228-228 231 276 279  
     and gangrene 84 95 437  
     and thrombophlebitis 78 259 240  
   clubbing of digits 255 265 274 282  
   in diabetes 231 436-437  
   in diplegia 472  
   edema 213 292 394  
     and constrictive pericarditis 213  
     prostatic carcinoma 392 394  
   erythema 241  
   in gout 441  
   in hemiplegia 472 474  
   herpes zoster 496  
   in monoplegia 472 467-468  
   muscle wasting 470  
   pain 233 241 486 495 496  
   paraplegia 472 485  
   in Parkinson's disease 498  
   polyneuropathy 491  
   reflexes 49-50 469 470-471 485  
   sensory loss 469 487  
   squamous cell epithelioma 119  
   stasis dermatitis 114  
   swing of arm in walking, 469 470 498  
   tetraplegia 472 488  
   tremor 500  
   and ulnar nerve lesions 495  
   wound healing 83  
 Eyes 123-150  
   abiotrophic 123-130  
   aqueous and vitreous humors 33  
   in arteritis 238  
   in Bell's Palsy 145 491  
   blindness 134 238 477 478 484  
   carcinomas 144  
   cataract 33 126 142 433  
   conjunctiva 123 124 130 131 142  
     493  
   cornea 124-125 131 132 141  
   dacryocystitis 141  
   diplopia 144  
   examination 49  
   and facial nerve paralysis 145  
   foreign bodies 493  
   fundus 127 128 129 148-150  
   glaucoma 133-136 142 259 327 493  
   globe 123-133  
   and hemiplegia 477-478 484  
   infections 123-133  
   lens 125-126  
   lids 136-140 143 490 491  
   lymphomas 144  
   macula, 33 127 128  
   melanomas 142, 143

- Duodenum (*contd*)  
     and gallbladder 320 337  
 Dyspareunia 408  
 Dysphagia 161 263 291 294 492  
 Dyspnea 255 270 279  
     in asthma 266 267  
     and bronchiectasis 265  
     and bronchogenic carcinoma 282 285  
     in congestive heart failure 217  
     exertional 213 273  
     and larynx cancer 161  
     and obesity 66  
     and pericarditis 212 213  
     in pneumonia 245 248-250  
 Dystrophy 12  
     corneal 125  
     muscular 179 467 489  
     sympathetic 76-77  
 Ear 15 49 162-167  
     basal cell carcinoma 162  
     cochlea changes 34 167  
     deafness 34 167 468-469 471 490  
         504 509 530  
     eustachian tube blockage 164  
     external 162-163 166  
     inner tinnitus 164-165  
     middle 162 164 166  
     neuroma 482-483 504 509  
     and sensory organs 33 165-166 468-469 509-510  
     stapes bone articulation 34  
     temporomandibular joint syndrome 151  
 Eczema 102  
 Edema and bronchial congestion 267  
     in congestive heart failure 218-221  
     gastritis 299  
     in hepatic cirrhosis 361  
     inflammatory 97 99  
     and jaundice 356  
     lymph and interstitial cystitis 383  
     in pericarditis 213  
     and postoperative care 84 90  
     prostatic carcinoma 392 394  
     pulmonary 84 217-218 221 252  
     retinal 146-147  
     and vascular occlusions 148-149  
     and salt tolerance 85-86  
     testicular 402  
     and thrombophlebitis 239  
 Electroconvulsive therapy 497 528 529  
 Electrolytes and fluid disturbance 68-69  
     in asthma 267  
     in cholecystitis 335 336  
     Electrolytes (*contd*)  
         in cirrhosis 366-367 368  
         and diarrhea 68  
         after diuresis 69 219  
         in heart failure management 219 220 221  
         in hematologic aberrations 446-466 468  
         intestinal obstruction 334  
         preoperative evaluation 68  
         replacement therapy 69 85 220 334  
         and sex hormone therapy 432  
 Embolus 230-238  
     cerebral in hemiplegia 475  
     in endocarditis 215  
     of extremities 278  
     and postoperative care 84 90  
     pulmonary 202 209  
         and infarction 279  
     sudden occlusion 237  
     systemic in rheumatic heart disease 209  
 Emotional state 71 151 407 519 531  
     *See also* Anxiety Mental health  
 Emphysema 28 50 271-276 277  
     alveolar 29  
     in asthma 267 269  
     and fibrosis 270 450  
     and infections 97  
     lung volumes 272-273  
     and obesity 435  
     obstructive 93 95 242 264 271-272 273  
     in operative risk evaluation 83  
     and smoking 57  
     and syncope 506  
 Empyema  
     obstructive cholecystitis 341  
     in pneumonia 246 247 248-250  
     surgical drainage 254  
 Encephalopathy 498-499  
     in cirrhosis 368  
     hypertensive and headache 494  
     viral 498  
 Endocarditis bacterial and venous 448  
     and congestive failure 216  
     and rheumatic fever 208  
     subacute 94 215-216  
 Endocrine system 32 33 66 422-432  
     and central nervous system adjustment 528  
     and coronary disease 195  
     and hematologic aberrations 451 452 457  
 Endometrium cancer 409 411-413

- Gastrointestinal tract 291-374  
 anatomic changes 25 471  
 and anemia 331-332 462  
 cancer 313-318 319-322 328-334  
   and bowel habits 331  
 colon 336-334  
 diagnosis 47 66 198 245  
   barium examination 323-324 327  
   331  
   gastroscopy 302, 315-316  
 disorders and hematologic aberrations  
   430 432  
 fistulous communication 336 337  
 functional complaints 370-371  
 and hyperparathyroidism, 436  
 infections and vertigo 166  
 mucosa changes 25  
 muscle changes 25  
 obstruction 322 336  
 polyps 332-333  
 psychophysiologic reaction 331-332  
 rectum 326-334  
 small intestine 319-322 323 324  
   337 332 430  
 in subacute bacterial endocarditis 216  
 surgery 328 332-334  
 ulcers 303 310-311 312-313 316-  
   318  
*See also specific conditions*  
 Genitourinary tract 375-404  
 granulomatous lesions 400  
 instrumentation and bacteremia 94  
 neoplasms 378-379 384-387  
 and sex hormone therapy 430-431  
 Glands *See specific glands*  
 Glaucoma 133-136  
   anticholinergic contraindication 309  
   antispasmodics contraindications 327  
   closed angle 134  
   and facial pain 493  
   and malignant melanoma 142  
 Glioblastoma 482-483 503  
 Glomerular nephritis 190 376-377  
 Clot re administration preoperative 83  
   for shock 310  
   tolerance 434 445  
   in pancreatic cancer 333  
 Glycosuria 333 369 433  
 Gout 1 and hematologic aberrations  
   431 432 457  
   *See also* Gray's disease  
 Cell therapy 172 284 335 413  
 Calcium 438-439  
   pituitary 433-434  
   corals, 438-439
- Gout 440-444  
 Grafts 135 237  
 Granuloma inguinale 399 400  
 Graves disease 425 451 452 457  
 Grey Turner's sign 347  
 Groin granulomatous lesions 400  
 Gynecomastia 362 394
- Hair 11 405 424  
   follicles in trichiasis 138  
 Hamman Rich syndrome 269  
 Headache 55 145 181 238 249 309  
   475 476 494 504 506 508  
 Head injury 520 522  
 Heart 192-224  
   arrhythmias 201 216  
     in congestive heart 217-218 221-  
       222  
     after myocardial infarction 203 204  
   block 68 187 222  
   brain disorders 519  
   constrictive pericarditis 213  
   and coronary occlusion 199  
   decompensation 216 218  
     and asthma 469  
   examination 50  
   and exercise 552 554  
   function 83 98 510  
     and hyperthyroidism 425  
   membranes inflammation 211-213  
   murmur 212 214 215-216  
   preoperative evaluation 83 86  
   rate 197 222 247 249 279 309  
     444 506  
   size changes 18 212 213-214 274  
   spasm 298 309  
   standstill and syncope 506  
   work load 185  
     in myocardial infarction 202 203  
 Heart disease arteriosclerotic 94 192-  
   208 216  
   in constrictive pericarditis 214  
   diabetes complication 436  
   and ventricular tachycardia 222  
 congenital 214-215  
 and convulsions 508  
 coronary 195-198  
 and epistaxis 156  
 and esophageal hernia 294-295  
 hypertensive 216  
 and hypoxia, 506  
 and obesity 66  
 and postural hypotension 187  
 rheumatic 408-409 210 216  
   and hemiplegia 475

*Lycs (contd)*

- moles 142
  - neurologic problems 144-145
  - nevi 142
  - pain 145 477-478
  - proptosis 144
  - pupils 276 471 478 479 485 501 503
  - retina 33 126-129 133 148 165
  - sclera 129-130 132-133 142
  - scotoma 145
  - and sensory organs 33
  - skew deviation 505
  - tumors 123-133 142-144
  - uvea 133 142
- See also* Retinopathy Vision

*Face basal cell epitheliomas 120*

- and cerebellar thrombosis 505
- haliteresis 14
- in hemiplegia 472 474
- and intranasal tumor 159
- involuntary movements 501
- muscles 469
- in myasthenia gravis 490
- paralysis 145 472 490-492
- pain 493-494

*squamous cell epithelioma 118*

- Fallopian tube cancer 409
- Fasciculus 470 485 489 492
- Fatty acids nonesterified 194 205
- Ears 72 560-564

*Fertility 30-32*

- Ictor hepaticus 360
- and jaundice 356

*Fibroids uterine 414**Fibrosis 452*

- and gonadal function 430
- interstitial cystitis 383
- muscles 470
- myocardial 214
- prostate in median bar 390
- pulmonary 269 277 454
- and infections 97
- in operative risk evaluation 83
- tendons 470

*Fibrositis 182-183**Finger to nose test 469 470**Fistulas arteriovenous and chronic failure 219*

- biliary in postcholecystectomy syndrome 343

*cholecystenteric 337**and diverticulosis 327**in enteritis, 322-323**Fistulas (contd.)*

- perianal, 322
- rectal, 323
- vesicosemoidal, 328

*Fluid 68-69*

- abdominal, and cirrhosis 367
- administration 79 85
- cerebrospinal, 476 478, 479 459 503
- and electrolytes. *See* Electrolytes
- extracellular hypertonic 68
- intake, 61
- and cholecystitis 336
- dietary measure 230
- and functional constipation, 371
- in pneumonia, 230
- restriction and vertigo 166
- middle ear in serous otitis, 164
- pleural cavity in congestive failure 220
- in lung cancer 233
- in pneumonia 246 247
- pulmonary tuberculosis 238

*Food allergy 103**and glossodynia 152**See also* Diet Nutrition*Food and Nutrition Board of National Research Council 63 64**Fordyce's disease 105**Fracture 84 451 452 457 459**Frei test 399**Friedlander's pneumonia 95 248**Friedreich's ataxia 503**Fuchs' endothelial dystrophy 125**Fungous infections 110-113 163 233**in diabetes 110 437**pulmonary 260 263 270**Furuncles 154 465**Gallbladder 66 334-346 438**cancer 346**metastases 320 385**and cholecystitis 336 338 339**gangrene 337**and jaundice 356**and peptic ulcer 311-312**Gallstones asymptomatic 342-343**colic 338**and cholelithiasis 340-344**and jaundice 354 356-357**and surgery 82 84 341-342**Ganglion block ide 75-79**Gangrene 84 95 337 437**Gastritis 299-302**and carcinoma 314 318**and peptic ulcer 311-312*

- Gastrointestinal tract 291-374  
 anatomic changes 25 471  
 and duodenum 331-352 462  
 cancer 313-318 319-322 328-334  
 and bowel habits 331  
 colon 325-334  
 diagnosis 47 66 198 245  
 barium examination, 323-324 327  
 351  
 gastroscopy 302 315-316  
 disorders and hematologic aberrations  
 450 457  
 fistulous communication 336 337  
 functional complaints 370-371  
 and hyperparathyroidism 426  
 infections and vertigo 166  
 mucosa changes 25  
 muscle changes 25  
 obstruction 322 356  
 polyps 332-333  
 psychophysiologic reaction 531-532  
 rectum 376-377  
 small intestine 319-322 323 324  
 337 357 450  
 in subacute bacterial endocarditis 216  
 surgery 328 352-354  
 ulcers 303 310-311 312-313 316-  
 318  
 See also specific conditions  
 Genitourinary tract 375-404  
 granulomatous lesions 400  
 instrumentation and bacteremia 94  
 neoplasms 3 8-379 381-387  
 and sex hormone therapy 430-431  
 Glands See specific glands  
 Glucocorticoids 153-156  
 anticholinergic contraindication 309  
 antispasmodics contraindications 327  
 closed angle 134  
 and facial p in 193  
 and malignant melanoma 142  
 Glottitis 46-483 503  
 Glomerulonephritis 190 376-377  
 Glucocorticoids administration preoperative 85  
 for back 310  
 for eye 434 445  
 in pancreatic cancer 353  
 Glucocorticoids 353 369 433  
 Gout 11 hematologic aberrations  
 414 415 417  
 Gout 440-444  
 Grafts 125 237  
 Granuloma inguinale 399 400  
 Graves disease 425 451 452 457  
 Grey Turner's sign 347  
 Groin granulomatous lesions 400  
 Gynecomastia 362 394  
 Hair 11 405 424  
 follicles in trichiasis 138  
 Hamman Rich syndrome 269  
 Headache 55 145 181 238 249 309  
 475 476 494 504 506 508  
 Head injury 520 522  
 Heart 192-224  
 arrhythmias 201 216  
 in congestive heart 217-218 221-  
 222  
 after myocardial infarction 203 204  
 block 88 187 222  
 brain disorders 519  
 constrictive pericarditis 213  
 and coronary occlusion 199  
 decompensation 216 218  
 and asthma 269  
 examination 50  
 and exercise 552 554  
 function 83 98 510  
 and hyperthyroidism 425  
 membranes inflammation 211-213  
 murmur 212 214 215-216  
 preoperative evaluation 83 86  
 rate 197 222 247 249 279 309  
 444 506  
 size changes 18 212 213-214 274  
 spasm 298 309  
 standstill and syncope 506  
 work load 185  
 in myocardial infarction 202 203  
 Heart disease arteriosclerotic 94 192-  
 208 216  
 in constrictive pericarditis 214  
 diabetes complication 436  
 and ventricular tachycardia 222  
 congenital 214-215  
 and convulsions 508  
 coronary 195-198  
 and epistaxis 156  
 and esophageal hernia 294-295  
 hypertensive 216  
 and hypoxia 506  
 and obesity 68  
 and postural hypotension 187  
 rheumatic 208-209 210 216  
 and hemiplegia 475

**Heart disease (contd)**

- and ex hormone therapy 432
  - thyrotoxic 206 211
- Heart failure 217-221**
- in cholecystitis 336
  - complicating viral disease 93
  - congestive 207 216-221 277 280
    - and atrial septal defects 214
    - and calcific aortic stenosis 209
    - and emphysema 273 276
    - and endocarditis 216
    - and functional hypoglycemia 441
    - and hematologic aberrations 450
  - after myocardial infarction 201, 204-205
  - and rheumatic fever 209-210
  - and thyroid function 206 211
  - and ventilation 276

**diagnosis 94**

- cor pulmonale and emphysema differentiation 277-278
- and hemochromatosis 369
- and hyperthyroidism 425
- intractable 280
- and obesity 438
- and pneumonia 244-245
- and subacute bacterial endocarditis 94

**Hemangioma 462-483**

- Hematologic aberrations 446-466
  - and cerebrovascular accident 450 482
  - in congestive failure 217-218 221

**Hematom 478 486 494 506 507 520**

- Hematuria bladder carcinoma 385 386
- and glomerulonephritis 190
- painless and renal tumors 378-379
- and prostatic carcinoma 392
- terminal and renal calculi 383

**Hemiplegia 472-478 482-484 490**

- choreic movements 502
- and trunk pain 496-497

**Hemochromatosis 369****Hemophilia 156****Hemophilus influenzae 91****Hemorrhage 171**

- and bronchiectasis 265
- in bronchitis 263
- and bronchogenic carcinoma 282
- cerebellar 503 504
- cerebral 495
  - and drug therapy hazards 481
  - and obesity 438
  - surgical removal 475
  - and vertigo 510
- in cirrhosis 367-369
- in coccidioidomycosis 262

**Hemorrhage (contd)**

- colon 328 332
  - differential diagnosis 208 265, 332
  - diverticulitis 328
  - duodenal ulcer 309
  - and enteritis 322
  - esophageal varices and hemochromatosis 369
  - eyes retinal 146-147 276
    - and vascular occlusions, 148-149
  - in gastritis 301
  - and hematologic aberrations 450
  - and hepatic coma 359 360
  - and hernia sign 476
  - in lung abscess 255
  - nasal septum in epistaxis 156
  - and operative risk 83
  - postmenopausal 332 408-409 411-413 456
  - postoperative 452
  - and pulmonary embolization 279
  - renal and prothrombin time 237
  - subarachnoid 476 494
  - in tuberculosis 257
  - ulcer 310
  - urethral caruncle 398-399
  - uterine 450
  - and vertigo 510
- Hemorrhoids bleeding 465**
- and functional constipation 371
- Hepatitis 337 354-359**
- Hernia, 176-178**
- ascites complication 367
  - of cerebellar tonsils and ataxia 504
  - cervical disc 177-178
  - diaphragmatic 292
  - esophageal 294
  - and functional digestive complaints 370
  - and gallstone management 343
  - hiatus 292-295 311-312 351 450 455
  - inguinal 402
  - intervertebral disc 15 18 176-178 496
  - and muscle cramps 183
  - and obesity 66
  - sacs and weight reduction 439
  - and surgery 82 84
- Herpes zoster 131-132**
- and glossodynia 152
  - and infection 408
  - pain 493 496
  - progenitalis 399

- Hips 170  
   urate deposition in gout 441  
 Hoarseness 160-161  
 Hoffmann's sign 473  
 Homans sign 239  
 Hormones 32-33  
   and gonadal function 32 430-431  
   and osteoporosis 427  
   pituitary secretion 423-424  
   therapy in arteritis 238  
     and aspirin 172  
     for asthma 268  
     and cardiovascular system 431  
     and cerebral edema 481  
     in cirrhosis 365  
     in dermatitis 163  
     for enteritis complications 325  
     in gout 443  
     and hemiplegia 480  
     hepatitis 359  
     for iridocyclitis 133  
     in itching and inflammation 107  
     in Peyronie's disease 400  
     in prostatic cancer 394  
     in pulmonary infections 253  
     in rheumatoid arthritis 171 172  
     and serum cholesterol levels 193  
     in shoulder hand syndrome 180  
     temporomandibular joint syndrome 154  
     and ulcer proneness 303  
     in ventilatory insufficiency 277  
     vulvar lesions 418  
 Horner's syndrome 283 500  
 Huntington's chorea 501-502  
 Hydrocele 401 402  
 Hydronephrosis 190 377-378  
 Hypereapnia, 252 273 277  
 Hyperparathyroidism 428  
   and hematologic aberrations 451 452 457  
   and renal calculi 380  
 Hypertension 160-191  
   and atherosclerosis 231  
   and brain disorders 102 524  
   and coarctation of aorta 215  
   diabetic complication 149-150 436  
   and epistaxis 158  
     essential 169  
   and heart failure 191 202 231  
   in hemiplegia 434 479  
   and melasma 360  
   as neurovascular 188-189 190  
   and obesity 60 478  
 Hypertension (contd.)  
   and polycythemia 453  
   pulmonary 209 215 277  
   and pyelonephritis 376  
 Hyperthyroidism 216 425  
 Hypochondriasis 461 529 533 536-539  
 Hypoglycemia 444-445 506  
 Hypoparathyroidism 426  
 Hypophysis insufficiency 423-424  
 Hypotension 166-187  
   emphysema 274  
   in hemiparesis 483  
   and hepatitis 359  
   and operative risk 83  
   in postoperative period 89  
   postural 187 505  
   in ventilatory insufficiency 277  
   and vertigo 509  
 Hypothalamus 38 438  
   function and intracranial tumor 424  
 Hypothyroidism 187 424-425  
 Hypoxemia 273 277 280  
 Hypoxia, 89 252 278 505  
 Hysterectomy 411 412 413 420 472  
  
 Impotence 388 394 438  
 Incontinence 388-389 419 471 480 485  
 Infections 91-99  
   and anemia 448  
   antibiotic resistant 94 99 247 253  
   and arthritis 168-169  
   and asthma 268 268  
   bacterial 93 163 249-250  
   and brain disorders 519  
   and cardiac decompensation 252-253  
   and epistaxis 156  
   fungus 110-113 240  
   and hematologic aberrations 450 451 459-460  
   and hemiplegia 480  
   and hepatic coma 359  
   and leukocytosis 249 455  
   and portal cirrhosis 363  
   and renal calculi 383  
   staphylococcal 93 247 253  
   streptococcal 190 246  
   susceptibility 67 83 91-94 244  
   in tetraplegia, 489  
   therapy 53-54 96-99  
   tubercle bacilli, 257  
   and vertigo 166  
   viral 92, 164  
 Insomnia 499 529  
 Insulin 348 433 478

- Intelligence testing 517-518  
 Intestine *See* Gastrointestinal tract and specific conditions  
 Involutional psychotic reaction 495 527-528  
 Iron 61 64 369  
   deficiency 450 452 454-456  
 Irradiation cervix 411  
   endometrial 412  
   epididymis tumors 404  
   epitheliomas basal cell 143 144  
   lung cancer 284  
   mouth 151 153  
   nasopharynx 164  
   ovary 413  
   in prostate 394  
   testicle 403  
   tongue 153  
   *See also* Radiotherapy  
 Isoniazid 259  
 Jaundice 331 334 347 350-359 361 365 370  
 Jaw 492 493 498  
 Joints 18 472  
   arthritis 168-175 441 442 470  
   emotional reactions 531  
   mandibular 152 153-154 493  
   in paraplegia 472 487  
   in Parkinson's disease 498  
   temporal 152 153-154  
   tophaceous 443  
 Keratitis neuropathic 131-132  
 Keratoses 115-117 155 160-161  
 Kernig's sign 476  
 Kidneys 375-381  
   and anemia 448 449 456  
   cancer 451  
   and diabetes 436  
   and epistaxis 156  
   function 63 64 95 359  
   and hematologic aberrations 448 449 451 456 465  
   histologic changes 21 29-30  
   and hypertensive disease 189-190  
   infections 95 375-376 377 395 396  
   insufficiency 380 438  
   in subacute bacterial endocarditis 216  
   and tuberculosis 257  
   tumors 378-379  
 Kummelstiel Wilson disease 150  
 Knee 18 441 469 470-471  
 Kraurosis of vulva 417  
 Kyphoscoliosis in ataxia 503  
 Larynx 28 160-162  
   cartilage 15  
   muscle weakness 243  
 Leukemia 150 156  
   hematologic aberrations 452 460 465  
   and herpes zoster 496  
   logotherapy 58  
 Leukocytes 91 336 376  
   and hematologic aberrations 447-448 454 459 464-466  
 Leukocytosis 268  
   biliary cirrhosis 363  
   in cholecystitis 335  
   and diverticulosis 327  
   and enteritis 323  
   in gout 442  
   and headache 494  
   and hematologic aberrations 455 460 468  
   and hemorrhage 476  
   in myocardial infarction 200  
   in pneumonia 246 247 248-250  
   in polymiosis 490  
   in tetraplegia 469  
   tuberculosis 258  
 Leukopenia 246 247 362 454 461  
 Leukoplakia of mouth 104-105 153  
   of vulva 417 418  
 Libman Sacks disease 217  
 Life expectancy 3-4  
 Lip 118 119 154  
 Lipid intimal deposits *See* Atherosclerosis  
 Lipping 14-15  
 Little strokes 102  
 Liver 26-27 354-374  
   cancer 370  
   in cholecystitis 336 338  
   cirrhosis 361-369  
   logotherapy 58  
   fatty infiltration 363  
   dietary management 364  
   function 67-68 83 93 98 313 344 353 357-359 362 444  
   and hematologic aberrations 450  
   and hemochromatosis 369  
   and hormone therapy 32-33  
   nodular hyperplasia 369  
   size 331 356 361 362 363 366  
 Loeffler's syndrome 266  
 Lung 242-290  
   abscess 254-256 263  
   atrophy 28-29  
   basilar rules 217  
   cancer 143 281-284  
   cystic disease 270-271 275



- Lung (cont'd)  
   diffusion capacity 270 272-273  
   edema 243  
     in chronic failure 218-221  
   embolization 278 280  
   fibrosis 269-270  
   function 98 503  
   and hematologic aberrations 283 400  
     402, 404  
   infarction, 94 278  
   infections 93 95  
     fungous 260-263  
   residual capacity 243 272-273  
   tuberculosis 206-260  
   viral disease 97-98  
   vital capacity 243 270 272-273  
 Lupus erythematosus 217  
 Lymph glands atrophy 22-25  
   block removal 410 411  
   and hematologic aberrations 452 460  
   neck, intranasal tumor 159  
   respiratory tract, -9  
   and venereal lesions 399  
 Lymphocytes 20-21 29  
 Lymphogranuloma venereum 399  
 Lymphosarcoma 324  
  
 Marie-depressive reactions 528-529  
 Masculization 431-432  
 Masters exercise test 197-198  
 Melancholia involuntal 493 527-528  
 Memory 468 524-525  
 Meniere's disease 160 168 509  
 Meningitis 93 257 468  
 Menopause period 31 406-408 428-  
   429 527-528 538  
 Mental health 4 68 96 490  
   and cerebral function 500 518-520  
   502  
   disorders 513-512  
     delirium 50 48-200 510 520  
       502-503  
     and dementia 30 524-525  
     depression 166 507-528  
     and Huntington's chorea 501-502  
     and hyperparathyroidism 406  
     and hypothyroidism 444  
     paratoid reaction 509  
     hypotension 51 160  
   and psychiatric action 71  
   physiologic examination 468-469  
   sympathy 506  
   and tropical diseases 54-55  
 Metabolic diseases 433-440  
   and hereditary conditions
- Milk alkali syndrome 380  
 Mitral valve 209 214  
 Moles 122 143  
 Monckeberg's sclerosis 188  
 Moniliasis 110-111 262-263  
 Monoplegia 472 467-488  
 Mouth 104-106 111-112  
   cancer 153  
   dryness 151-152 309  
   malocclusion and glossodynia 152  
 Muscle 11-13 182-183  
   ataxia 502-505  
   atrophy 371  
   atrophy 25 160 243 467 474  
   bicep reflexes 469 470-471  
   cardiac pigment 12-13 19  
   of colon 25 371  
   contractions 183 371 487  
   cramps 183 233  
   electrical stimulation 473  
   extraocular 12 144-145  
   facial 12 144-145 498  
   fibrositis 182-183  
   flexors 470 471-492  
   monoplegia 487  
   movement 469-470 472 473  
     involuntary 497-502  
   in myasthenia gravis 490  
   and nervous system 467-512  
   orbicularis spasm 138  
   palms 144-145  
   paralysis 471-492  
   in paraplegia 487  
   in polymyositis 490  
   relaxants 87-68  
   and skeletal system 168-184  
   spasm 74 76 78 138 144 473-492  
     intervertebral disc syndrome 176  
     sphincter 344 346  
   tension headache 494  
   tremor 497-501  
   weakness 297 471-492  
 Myalgia 249 252 257 282  
 Myasthenia gravis 139 490  
 Myeloma multiple 93 370 460 465  
 Myocardium 18  
   infarction 150 199 400 481  
     and arteriosclerosis 196  
     and congestive heart failure 217  
     and coronary occlusion 198-208  
     after ovariectomy 190  
     and pericarditis 211-213  
     and sudden hemiplegia 475 478  
   lesions and hormone therapy 32-33

Myxedema and hematologic aberrations  
451 452 457

Nails 11 226

Narcotics 55-56 76 480  
addiction and pain perpetuation 80  
side effects 71-72  
for symptomatic treatment 56  
*See also* specific conditions

Nasopharynx 28 159 164 249

Neck 89 156 162 217 477 505

Nephritis 141 190

Nephrosclerosis 95 188-189

Nervous system 34-38 467-512  
acoustic neuroma 482-483 504 509  
central 38 71 73-76 514-518  
and vertigo 165 509-510 515-516  
and diabetes 437 444  
examination 468-471  
and muscular system 426 467-512  
and pain control 74-75 79 89 251  
319 492-497

parasympathetic 74  
peripheral 73-76 467 469 473 487-  
488 492-497 502

muscle weakness specificity 473-474  
reflexes 469 470-471

sensory changes 38 468-469

sympathetic 74 492

syphilis 505 521-522

Neuralgia trigeminal 131 467 493 496

Neurosis 66 181 206 532

Nevus 115 122 143 362

Night sweats 255 257 261 265 282

Nitrogen mustards 284 379 413 465  
and host defense mechanisms 247

Nose 154-160

allergy 157-158

ear and throat 151-167

Nutrition 4 60-69

allowances recommended by Food and  
Nutrition Board 64

avitaminosis 66 102 219 244-245

basal requirements 61 64 434 435

deficiencies 93 145 302 356 495 519  
and dermatologic disorders 102

fluid and electrolyte disturbances 68-  
69

in hemiplegia 479-480

in hepatitis 357

and obesity 65-67 438

in osteoporosis 427

and pneumonia 244-245

preoperative evaluation 67-68 84 85  
298

Nutrition (*contd*)

suggested diets 61

and will to live 85

Nystigmus and acoustic neuroma 509

and motor ataxia 503 504

vertigo 165 508 509

Obesity 65-67 438-440

and brain disorders 524

and caloric intake 434 439

and coronary artery disease 194

and diabetes 434

and exercise 552

and gallbladder disease 338-339

and gout 443

in hiatal hernias 292

in hyperostosis frontalis interna 181

and vaginal examination 408-409

Old Age and Survivors Insurance 550

Orchiectomy 391 393 403

Orchitis pyogenic 401-402

Orthopnea 217 520

Osteitis deformans 180-181

Osteoarthritis 66 173-175 262 496 531

Osteoporosis 16 427 464

and hematologic aberrations 451 452  
457 459

and parathyroid glands 426-427

and urinary calculi 379

Otitis 53 162-164

Ovary 31 407 428

carcinoma 413 451

cysts 414-415

Oxygen arterial saturation 244 270 273

consumption 251

and thyroid activity in angina 206

and digitalis 217-218 221

and hemiplegia 479

in hepatic coma 360

in hypercapnia 252

in myocardial infarction 202

in pneumonia 251 252

in pulmonary embolization 280

in ventilatory insufficiency 276 277

Paget's disease 180-181 379

Pain 70-81

back 177-178 119 196

chronic 72-73

individual threshold 73 301 517

intractable 70 79 81 203

neurologic syndrome 193-197

pathways 73-76

sites for blockade 74-75

- Pain (cont'd)  
 placental 33-3  
 psychotherapy 73  
 somatic 73-4  
 thalamic 497  
 trunk, 496-497  
 visceral, 74-75
- Palsy 144-145 444 490-492
- Pancreas, 70 20, 346-354 425  
 cancer 350-354 411 420  
 and cholecystitis 356 337 342 344  
 and hyperparathyroidism 426  
 interlobular duct metaplasia 46  
 islet cell tumors 444  
 secretion loss symptoms 370
- Papri-topocma 452
- Papanicolaou technique 31 53 316  
 330 392 409 411 412 413
- Papilledema 149-149 278 468 479  
 482, 506 507
- Paralysis 283 471-492  
 and acoustic neuroma 464  
 Babinski sign 471 4 2 474 455 459  
 and choreic movements 501-502  
 facial 145 472 490-492
- Paralysis agitans See Parkinson's disease
- Paranoid reactions 529-530
- Paraplegia 472 481-487
- Parathyroid glands 32-33 426-427
- Paresthesia 165 485 486 499 497
- Parkinson's disease 467 470 499-500
- Parotid gland 24 268
- Pelvis 414 404-416  
 cancer 408  
 cystitis 482
- Penicillin 23 53 56 32, 335  
 allergic reactions 101  
 fungous infections 113  
 prophylaxis 53 10  
 in venereal lesions 399 522  
 See also Antibiotics
- Peas 399-401
- Pericarditis 211-213 246  
 and heart failure 217 219  
 idiopathic 199 212
- Pericardium 211-214 219  
 injury in coronary disease 207  
 and tuberculosis 213 257
- Pneumonia 83 227 356 413
- Personality adjustments 98 522-561  
 and age identification 549  
 and animosity 504  
 attitude 5  
 and arteriosclerosis therapy 524  
 and brain disorders 520 521
- Personality (cont'd)  
 and diagnosis 44-45  
 and learning 4-5  
 pain threshold perception 73 301  
 517  
 play development 56-61  
 postmenstrual life 107  
 and rehabilitation 406 421  
 and relaxation 419-420  
 and retirement 550 555-557  
 sociologic aspects 47-49 513-515
- Pyromania 399 400
- Pyuria 28 152  
 muscle weakness 22 43
- Rheumatism 20-210 356
- Rheumatoid 217-218 221 279 509
- Rheumatism 404-463  
 alkaline 53 335 48 464-466  
 in hematologic disorders 4 4-159  
 464-466
- Rheumatism 455 464-466
- Physical examination 15-50 60  
 See also specific conditions
- Physiotherapy 77 150
- Pick's disease 408 43 56
- Pickwickian syndrome 406
- Pneumonia 1-18 231 240 274 509  
 407
- Pituitary gland 424 452 507
- Pituitary gland 423-424  
 cellular changes 3-  
 and gonadal function 4-1  
 and functional hypopituitarism 411  
 tumor 455-453
- Pleurisy 250 246 57 83
- Pneumonia 566 219
- Pneumonia 241-251 283 347  
 and asthma 57  
 atypical 249 250  
 bronchial 249-250  
 and cerebral vascular accidents 244-  
 245  
 complications 54 53 518 251  
 congestive 44-45  
 Friedländer's 93 219  
 interstitial 69  
 lobar 245-246  
 pneumococcal 92 95 245-246  
 postoperative 84 90 249  
 recurrent 215  
 staphylococcal 93 247-248 253  
 streptococcal 246-247  
 treatment 53 250-254  
 viral 98 248-249
- Pneumothorax 202 507

- Myxedema and hematologic aberrations 151 452 457
- Nails 11 228
- Narcotics 55-56 76 480  
addiction and pain perpetuation 80  
side effects 71-72  
for symptomatic treatment 56  
*See also* specific conditions
- Nasopharynx 28 159 161 249
- Neck 89 156 162 217 477 505
- Nephritis 141 190
- Nephrosclerosis 95 188-189
- Nervous system 34-38 467-512  
acoustic neuroma 482-483 504 509  
central 38 71 73-76 514-518  
and vertigo 165 509-510 515-516  
and diabetes 437 444  
examination 468-471  
and muscular system 426 467-512  
and pain control 74-75 79 89 251  
319 492-497  
parasympathetic 74  
peripheral 73-76 467 469 473 487-  
488 492-497 502  
muscle weakness specificity 473-474  
reflexes 469 470-471  
sensory changes 38 468-469  
sympathetic 74 492  
syphilis 505 521-522
- Neuralgia trigeminal 131 467 493 496
- Neurosis 66 181 206 532
- Nevus 115 122 143 362
- Night sweats 255 257 261 265 282
- Nitrogen mustard 284 379 413 465  
and host defense mechanisms 247
- Nose 154-160  
allergy 157-158  
ear and throat 151-167
- Nutrition 4 60-69  
allowances recommended by Food and  
Nutrition Board 64  
avitaminosis 66 102 219 244-245  
basal requirements 61 64 434 435  
deficiencies 93 145 302 356 495 519  
and dermatologic disorders 102  
fluid and electrolyte disturbances 68-  
69  
in hemiplegia 479-480  
in hepatitis 357  
and obesity 65-67 438  
in osteoporosis 427  
and pneumonia 244-245  
preoperative evaluation 67-69 84 85  
298
- Nutrition (*cont'd*)  
suggested diets 61  
and will to live 85
- Nystagmus and acoustic neuroma 509  
and motor status 503 504  
vertigo 165 508 509
- Obesity 65-67 438-440  
and brain disorders 524  
and caloric intake 434 439  
and coronary artery disease 194  
and diabetes, 434  
and exercise 552  
and gallbladder disease 338-339  
and gout 443  
in hiatal hernias 292  
in hyperostosis frontalis interna 181  
and vaginal examination 408-409
- Old Age and Survivors Insurance 550
- Orchiectomy 391 393 403
- Orchitis pyogenic 401-402
- Orthopnea 217 520
- Osteitis deformans 180-181
- Osteoarthritis 66 173-175 282 496 531
- Osteoporosis 16 427 464  
and hematologic aberrations 451 452  
457 458  
and parathyroid glands 426-427  
and urinary calculi 379
- Otitis 53 162-164
- Ovary 31 407 428  
carcinoma 413 451  
cysts 414-415
- Oxygen arterial saturation 244 270 273  
consumption 251  
and thyroid activity in angina 200  
and digitalis 217-218 221  
and hemiplegia 479  
in hepatic coma 360  
in hypercapnia 252  
in myocardial infarction 202  
in pneumonia 251 252  
in pulmonary embolization 290  
in ventilatory insufficiency 276 277
- Paget's disease 180-181 379
- Pain 70-81  
back 177-178 419 496  
chronic 72-73  
individual threshold 73 301 517  
intractable 76 79 81 203  
neurologic syndrome 493-497  
pathways 73-76  
sites for blockade 74-75

## Relieves (contd.)

- and herniated disc 496
- and pain in extremities 495
- in paraplegia 497
- in psychological disorders 472-473
- in tetraplegia 489
- and vital capacity failure - 6
- Reurgitation 31-34
- Rehabilitation 500-521
- Reiters syndrome 395-400
- Reproductive system 4-30-32
- Respiration 243-244 250-406
  - in congestive heart failure 217
  - and exercise 503
  - and oxygen therapy 35-77
  - in pneumonia 59-251-252
  - in postoperative period 59
- Respiratory tract 24-5-9-47-92-93-242-290-319
  - upper infections 53
    - and cerebral arterio sclerosis 522
    - and streptococcal pneumonia 246
    - and vertigo 166
- Retinopathy 1-7-1-8-133-146-150-165
- Retirement 550-555-557
- Rheumatic diseases 165-173-174-408-531
  - and calcific aortic stenosis 409
  - and hematologic disorders 464-466
  - and gut 442
- Rhinitis 156-157-468
- Ribonucleic acid in memory impairment 525
- Rickettsial disease 53-91
- Röntgen findings 51
  - aortic valve calcification 210
  - in asthma 267
  - bones demineralization 469
  - and brain tumor 462
  - in cancer 487-798-315-316-333-393-557
  - asymptomatic 314
  - cholelithiasis 340
  - in convulsions 506-507
  - in cryptococcosis 261
  - emphysema 275
  - enteritis 373-324
  - esophagus 292-298
  - in facial pain 493
  - gastric tone 302-315-316-321-328-330-333-337-371-455
  - in hemiplegia 479-482
  - hiatus hernia 295
  - in hoarseness 161
  - in hyperostosis frontalis interna 181

## Röntgen findings (contd.)

- in lung consolidation 255-258-270-274-553
  - in pneumonia 246-247-248-550
- in myocardial infarction 200
- osteoarthritis 496
- pancreas 353
- in paraplegia 453
- pelvis 164-165
  - in pericardial effusion 21-213
  - in pulmonary embolization 250
  - in rheumatoid arthritis 163-170
- sinuses 158-160
- skull 464-465-470-406-407
- spine in intervertebral disc syndrome 176-177
  - in tuberculosis 258
- Röntgen therapy See Radiotherapy
- Rupture See Hernia
- Salicylates 163
  - in pleuritis 171
  - avulsion in cirrhosis 364
  - in gout 441-443
  - for iridocyclitis 133
  - nodular episcleitis 132
  - in rheumatic fever 208
  - in rheumatoid arthritis 172
  - thrombophlebitis 240
  - and ulcer promoter 303
- Salivary glands 25-28-151-493
- Salpingo-ophorhormones 411-412-413
- Sarcoidosis 217-260-269-379
- Scleritis anterior syndrome 109
- Schick test 91
- Schilling test 462
- Scleroderma 121-217-228
- Scleromalacia perforans 129
- Sclerosis 168
  - amyotrophic lateral 473-474-487-488-491
  - in gout 441
  - multiple 391-467
- Serum 401-404
- Serulins 71-72
  - for symptomatic treatment 54
  - See also specific conditions
- Sensory changes 33-34
  - and ataxia 502
  - co-ordination 469-470
  - and facial pain 493
  - in monoplegia 487-488
  - and motor function 469-470
  - in paraplegia 485-486
  - smell 471

- Poliomyelitis 467  
 Polycythemia vera 449 452 460-465  
     and hemiplegia 476 479  
     in pulmonary emphysema 274  
     and retinopathies 150  
 Polyneuritis 486 489-490 491  
 Polyps 316 333 397 455  
 Postcholecystectomy syndrome 76 344-345  
 Postmenopausal syndrome 405-421  
 Postoperative care 89-90  
     *See also* specific conditions  
 Posture 182 212 479 551  
     in ataxia 503  
     hemiplegia 472 473  
     and illumination 28  
     in Parkinson's disease 496  
     and vertigo 510  
 Prednisolone *See* Hormone therapy  
 Prednisone *See* Hormone therapy  
 Preoperative care *See* specific conditions  
 Pressure 292 293 295  
     arterial 185-191  
         *See also* Blood pressure  
         on carotid sinus 187  
         cerebrospinal fluid 477 506  
         diastolic 54 186 188 476  
         intracranial 506  
         and headache 494  
         and hemiplegia 482  
         and motor ataxia 504  
         and subdural hematoma 478  
         and vertigo 509  
     ocular and glaucoma 134  
     pelvic 419  
     pulse 226-227  
         and aortic insufficiency 209 210  
         and pulmonary insufficiency 209 214  
     retroperitoneal tumors 352  
     spinal dorsal nerve roots 173  
     systolic 54 186 187 476  
 Prolapse 419-420  
 Prostate gland 31 84 387-395  
     and arteriosclerosis 375  
     carcinoma 391-394 430 451 456  
     and cystitis 362  
     enlargement 451 471  
     infections 97  
 Protein 85 324  
     concentration in hematologic disorders 464-466  
 C reactive 200 258  
     deficiency 67-68 93 99 102 220 221 430  
     Protein (*contd.*)  
         intake 64 434 435  
         and obesity 66-67  
         requirements 63 64 435  
         uric synthesis from 443  
 Prothrombin 236-237 324 362 368 447 481  
 Pruritus 107-113 355 415 418 431  
     and psychophysiological reactions 109-110 530-531  
 Psoriasis 120 121  
 Psychogenic disorders 527 530-532  
     and chronic brain syndrome 521  
     in dermatologic problems 101-102  
     gastrointestinal 531-532  
     and pain 70-71 73 80-81  
     and reflexes 172 473  
 Psychoneurosis 181 193 426 501 527 533 535  
 Psychosis 216 513 523 527 529 535  
 Psychosomatic disorders *See* Psychogenic disorders  
 Psychotherapy 181 445  
     and mental disorders 513-542  
     in pain control 73 80-91  
     in tinnitus 165  
 Pulmonary artery disease 242-290  
     insufficiency 209 214  
     and asthma 269  
     *See also* Lung  
 Purpura 150 156  
 Pyelonephritis 375-377 387  
 Pyloric obstruction 309 311-312 353  
 Pyuria 376 379 383 384 385 395 396  
  
 Radiotherapy in bursitis 179  
     in endometrial carcinoma 413  
     eyes lymphomatous infiltrates 141  
     in gastric cancer 319 322  
     larynx 161-162  
     and pulmonary fibrosis 269  
     in renal neoplasm 379  
     shoulder hand syndrome 179  
 Riles 258 263 264 265 267  
 Raynaud's disease 77  
 Reactive depression 529 534  
 Rectocle 419-420  
 Rectum 50  
     cancer 330-332 450  
     and colon 326-334  
     fistula 323  
     and prolapse 419  
 Reflexes asymmetry 19 470 472  
     corneal and facial pain 493  
     in flaccid paralysis 174

- Reflexes (cont'd)  
   and herniated disc 406  
   and pain in extremities 493  
   in paraplegia 487  
   in psychologic disorders 472, 473  
   in tetraplegia 489  
   and ventilatory failure 276  
 Remargination, 91 31  
 Rehabilitation 206 321  
 Reiter's syndrome 299 396  
 Reproductive system 4 30-32  
 Respiration 213-244 350 306  
   in congestive heart failure 217  
   and exercise 333  
   and oxygen therapy 322, 277  
   in pneumonia 59 231 322  
   in postoperative period 59  
 Respiratory tract 4 28-29 17 92-93  
   342-390 319  
   upper infections 53  
     and cerebral arterio sclerosis 522  
     and streptococcal pneumonia 246  
     and vertigo 168  
 Retinopathy 127 128 133 146-150 163  
 Retirement 330 333-337  
 Rheumatic diseases 165-173 174 308  
   331  
   and calcific aortic stenosis 309  
   and hemitologic disorders 464-466  
   and gout 442  
 Rhinitis 136 157 368  
 Ribonucleic acid in memory impairment 223  
 Rickitt's disease 33 91  
 Roentgen findings 31  
   aortic valve calcification 210  
   in asthma 367  
   bones demineralization 468  
   and brain tumor 482  
   in cancer 297 238 313 316 353  
     393 397  
   asymptomatic 314  
   cholelithiasis 340  
   in convulsions 306 307  
   in cryptococcosis 261  
   emphysema 273  
   enteritis 323-374  
   esophagus 37 393  
   in facial pain 413  
   gastric intussusception 302 313 316 321  
     328 330 332 337 341 433  
   in hemiplegia 419 462  
   hiatus hernia 233  
   in hoarseness 161  
   in hyperostosis frontalis interna 181  
 Roentgen findings (cont'd)  
   in lung emulations 235 238 270 274  
     283  
   in pneumonia 216 217 218-220  
   in myocardial infarction 200  
   oste arthritis 430  
   pancreas 333  
   in paraplegia 483  
   pelvis, 404-463  
   in pericardial effusion 212 213  
   in pulmonary embolization 330  
   in rheumatoid arthritis 163-170  
   sinuses 138 160  
   skull 464-465 479 306 307  
   pine in intervertebral disc syndrome  
     176-177  
   in tuberculosis 338  
 Roentgen therapy See Radiotherapy  
 Rupture See Hernia  
 Salicylates 163  
   atrophic arthritis 171  
   as adjunct in cirrhosis 364  
   in gout 441 443  
   for iridocyclitis 133  
   nodular episcleritis 132  
   in rheumatic fever 208  
   in rheumatoid arthritis 172  
   thrombophlebitis 440  
   and ulcer proneness 303  
 Salivary glands 23 38 151 493  
 Salpingo-ophorctomy 411 412, 413  
 Sarcoidosis 217 266 369 379  
 Scalenus anticus syndrome 198  
 Schick test 91  
 Schilling test 402  
 Scleroderma 121 217 238  
 Scleromalacia perforans 129  
 Sclerosis 168  
   amyotrophic lateral 473 474 487-488  
     491  
   in gout 441  
   multiple 391 467  
 Scrotum 401-404  
 Sedatives 71-72  
   for symptomatic treatment 54  
   See also specific conditions  
 Sensory changes 33-34  
   and ataxia 502  
   co-ordination 469-470  
   and facial pain 493  
   in paraplegia, 487-488  
   and motor function 409-470  
   in paraplegia 485-486  
   smell 471

- Poliomyelitis 467  
 Polycythemia vera 449 452 460-463  
     and hemiplegia 478 479  
     in pulmonary emphysema 274  
     and retinopathies 150  
 Polyneuritis 456 488-490 491  
 Polyps 316 333 397 455  
 Postcholecystectomy syndrome, 76 344-345  
 Postmenopausal syndrome 405-421  
 Postoperative cure 89-90  
     *See also* specific conditions  
 Posture 182 212 479 554  
     in ataxia 503  
     hemiplegia 472 473  
     and hyalination 28  
     in Parkinson's disease 498  
     and vertigo 510  
 Prednisolone *See* Hormone therapy  
 Prednisone *See* Hormone therapy  
 Preoperative cure *See* specific conditions  
 Pressure 292 293 295  
     arterial 185-191  
     *See also* Blood pressure  
     on carotid sinus 187  
     cerebrospinal fluid 477 506  
     diastolic 54 156 188 476  
     intracranial 506  
     and headache 494  
     and hemiplegia 482  
     and motor ataxia 504  
     and subdural hematoma 478  
     and vertigo 509  
     ocular and glaucoma 134  
     pelvic 419  
     pulse 226-227  
     and aortic insufficiency 209 210  
     and pulmonary insufficiency 209 214  
     retroperitoneal tissues 352  
     spinal dorsal nerve roots 173  
     systolic 54 156 187 476  
 Prolapse 419-420  
 Prostate gland 31 84 387-395  
     and arteriosclerosis 375  
     circumcision 391-394 430 451 456  
     and cystitis 392  
     enlargement 451 471  
     infections 97  
 Protein 85 324  
     concentration in hematologic disorders 464-466  
     C reactive 200 258  
     deficiencies 67-68 93 98 102 220 221 430  
     Protein (cont'd)  
         intake 64 434 435  
         and obesity 66-67  
         requirements 63 64 435  
         urate synthesis from 443  
 Prothrombin 236-237 324 362 365 447 481  
 Pruritus 107-113 355 415 418 431  
     and psychophysiologic reactions 109-110 530-531  
 Psoriasis 120 121  
 Psycho-*enic* disorders 527 530-532  
     and chronic brain syndrome 521  
     in dermatologic problems 101-102  
     gastrointestinal 531-532  
     and pain 70-71 73 80-81  
     and reflexes 472 473  
 Psychoneurosis 181 198 426 501 527 533 535  
 Psychosis 216 513 523 527 529 535  
 Psychosomatic disorders *See* Psycho-*enic* disorders  
 Psychotherapy 181 445  
     and mental disorders 513-542  
     in pain control 73 80-81  
     in tinnitus 165  
 Pulmonary artery disease 242-290  
     insufficiency 209 214  
     and asthma 269  
     *See also* Lung  
 Purpura 150 156  
 Urolithiasis 375-377 387  
 Pyloric obstruction 309 311-312 353  
 Pyuria 376 379 383 384 388 395 396  
 Radiotherapy in bursitis 179  
     in endometrial carcinoma 413  
     eyes lymphomatous infiltrates 144  
     in gastric cancer 319 322  
     larynx 161-162  
     and pulmonary fibrosis 269  
     in renal neoplasm 379  
     shoulder hand syndrome 179  
 Rules 258 263 264 265 267  
 Raynaud's disease 77  
 Reactive depression 529 534  
 Rectocele 419-420  
 Rectum 50  
     cancer 330-332 450  
     and colon 326-334  
     fistulae 323  
     and prolapse 419  
 Reflexes asymmetry 49 470 472  
     corneal and facial pain 193  
     in flaccid paralysis 471



- Stress, and autonomic disorders 4-8  
   and angina pectoris 197  
   and asthma 460  
   and cerebral arteriosclerosis 222  
   and dermatologic problems 101  
   incontinence 471  
   joint disease 531  
   and mental disorders 513-514  
   and mouth dryness 151  
   and osteoporosis 427  
   in Parkinson's disease 438  
   of vomiting, after morphine 53  
 Strokes 144  
   little, 102, 524  
 Suicide 523 524 529 535-536  
 Sulfonamides  
   allergic reactions 103 104  
   and antibiotics 54  
   in asthma 268  
   in bronchiectasis 465-468  
   in conjunctivitis 131  
   in diverticulitis 327  
   kidney infections 377  
   pneumonia 253  
   in rheumatic fever 208  
   in venereal lesions 399 400  
 Surgery 82-90  
   early ambulation 90  
   and thrombophlebitis 239  
   and nutritional status 67 84  
   postoperative care 84 89-90  
   preoperative care 67-68 85 86 87  
   for radical 334  
   risk evaluation 82-84  
   See also specific conditions  
 Sympathectomy 230 237  
   in arteriosclerosis obliterans 78  
   in coronary artery disease 207  
   intractable pain relief 80  
 Syncope 505-506  
   in bronchitis 263  
   in calcific aortic stenosis 210  
   and cerebral vascular accident 102  
   in diabetes 438 444  
   and postural hypotension 187  
   in rheumatic heart disease 209  
 Syphilis 479  
   and aortic insufficiency 409  
   and cerebellar thrombosis 505  
   and chronic brain disorders 521-522  
   and glossodynia, 152  
   and hydrocele 402  
   and optic neuritis 145  
   serologic test 51  
 Tabet dorsalis 165 503  
 Teeth, 19 152 153 464-466 443  
 Tendons 178-179 470  
 Testis 31 401-402  
   atrophy 302  
   and gonadal function 450  
 Tetraplegia 472 485-490  
 Therapy See specific condition  
 Thorax 28 291  
 Throat 51 151-165 402  
 Thromboangitis obliterans 77 250 232  
 Thrombocytopenia 502  
 Thrombophlebitis 77-78 239-241 279  
   450  
   in congestive failure 415-419  
   in lung abscess 555  
   in myocardial infarction 404  
 Thrombosis, 81 232 449 450  
   and anticoagulant therapy 251 475  
   481  
   basilar artery 459  
   cerebellar 503 505 510  
   cerebral 229 475-477 480 485  
   coronary 229  
   in facial weakness 499  
   nonparalyzing 102  
   retinal artery 494  
   small blood vessels and syncope 506  
   and vascular insufficiency 231 478  
   481  
   and vertigo 510  
 Thyroid gland 22 3-33  
 Thyroid gland 32-33 4-4-1-6  
   and basal metabolic rate 50  
   and heart disease 211 219 220-221  
   hormone secretion 423  
   and motor function 424  
   nodules 458  
   and obesity 439 440  
   therapy and functional depression 423  
   and cholesterol concentration 195  
 Tie douloureux 493  
 Tinnitus 164 165 504  
 Tissues 8-11 55  
   ectodermal dystrophy 454  
   elasticity loss 243  
 Tobacco See Smoking  
 Tongue 153 450  
   muscles in bulbar palsy 492  
   obstruction and mouth dryness 151-  
   152  
   taste loss 490  
 Tonillitis 208 246  
 Trachea 28 161 243 244

- Sensory changes (*contd*)  
 taste 33 471 490  
 to temperature 469  
 in tetraplegia 489  
 touch reactions 469
- Shivers disease 269
- Sheehan's syndrome 424
- Shock 201 202 205 280  
 in heart failure 217-218 221  
 hemorrhagic in cirrhosis 367-369  
 hypoglycemic in diabetes 435  
 after myocardial infarction 203  
 and ventilatory failure 276 277
- Shoulder 441  
 pain 76 178 179 496
- Sinuses 53 157-159  
 and chronic bronchitis 263  
 discharge 49 159 160  
 and facial pain 493  
 infected and vestibulitis 154
- Skeletal system 13-18 168-184  
 and hematologic aberrations 451 452 457  
 and parathyroid glands 426-428  
*See also* Bones Muscle
- Skin 8-11 49 50 405 407  
 abdominal 10 469 470-471  
 blanching and vascular occlusion 226-228 233-234 239  
 cancers 117-122 155 162  
 dermatologic problems 101-122  
 discoloration 240  
 dryness 424  
 in emphysema 274  
 erythema 241  
 genital and groin lesions 400  
 inflammation treatment 106 107  
 itching *See* Pruritus  
 pigmentation 369 407  
 and sex hormone therapy 431  
 thinning and external ear canal 162 163  
 tumors 115-117  
 vulva hypertrophy 415
- Skull 13-14  
 and Bell's palsy 490-492  
 demineralization 459  
 in Paget's disease 180  
 weight 15  
*See also* Brain
- Sleep 499 529  
 and tinnitus 165
- Smoking 57 159 204 236-237 238 257 264 282 309
- Sodium intake and hypertonicity 68  
 restriction in cardiac decompensation 218-219 221 253  
 in cirrhosis 364  
 in cor pulmonale 278  
 in myocardial infarction 203  
 retention in postoperative period 89
- Speech 468-469 480 503
- Spermatocele 401 403
- Sphincter 471 486  
 spasm 344 346
- Spine 14-18  
 intervertebral disc syndrome 15 18 176-178 496  
 and paraplegia 484  
 in tetraplegia 488-490
- Spleen 356 361 363  
 follicular tissue 22-24
- Sputum 161  
 in asthma 267  
 blastomycosis 261  
 in bronchiectasis 265  
 bronchitis 263 264  
 and bronchogenic carcinoma 282 285  
 in heart failure 217  
 in lung abscess 255  
 in moniliasis 262  
 in pneumonia 245 246 247 248-250  
 in tuberculosis 257
- Steroids excretion 427 428  
 and gonadal function 429-430  
 therapy 97-98  
 anti-inflammatory 99 99 130-131  
 in cancer 284 319 465  
 in gout 443  
 hepatic coma 361  
 in hepatitis 358-359  
 and host defense mechanisms 247  
 for endocytosis 133  
 myelomatosis 465  
 nodular episcleritis 132  
 and pneumonia 244-245  
 in polymyositis 490  
 pulmonary emphysema 271  
 in rheumatic fever 208  
 in rheumatoid arthritis 171 172  
 in temporal arteritis 149  
 in trichiasis 138  
 in ventilatory insufficiency 277  
 and viral infections 98
- Stomach *See* Gastrointestinal tract
- Stones 395 451  
 renal 379-383  
 and uric acid excretion 411 413  
*See also* Calcification Gall stones

- Vasodilation drug, for (cont'd)  
   in cor pulmonale 278  
   in obstructive disease 235-236  
   thrombophlebitis 40  
   in trunk pain 497  
   in vasospastic disease 37  
   in vertigo 166 510-511  
   and toes temperatures 235  
 Ventilation, "4 76-77  
   alveolar 2 6 506  
   and anxiety 533  
   in cystic lung disease, 271  
   in emphysema 274  
   nasal, and obtus medii 163  
   and postural hypotension 167  
   and sinusitis 158  
 Ventricle 214 77  
   elastic tissue 17  
   permeation 19  
   rate, and digitalization 218 222  
   septal defect 215  
 Vertigo 166-167 508-511  
 Viral diseases 53 98 406  
   pneumonitis 248-249  
 Vision 309  
   and choroidal sclerosis 128  
   and demyelinating disorders 143  
   and illumination 516-517  
   loss 134 238  
   in hemiplegia 477 478 484  
   in vascular occlusion 148-149  
   and macular degenerations 127  
   and malignant melanoma 142  
   and metastatic cancer 143  
   and neurologic disorders 144 145  
   and papilledema 482  
   and paranoid tendencies 530  
 Vitamin A, and daily dietary allowances 64  
   in leukoplakia 105  
   therapy in pruritus 108  
 B for glossodynia 153  
   and paresthetic pain 238  
 B-complex 60 145 324 334  
 B<sub>12</sub> 238  
   in anemia 465 466  
   and neuropathies in diabetes 438  
   and sensory vision 503  
 C 60  
   and cerebral arteriosclerosis 524  
   in cirrhosis 360 364 365 368  
 Vitamin (cont'd)  
   D and urinary calculi 379  
   deficiencies 99 145 323 364  
   and mouth dryness 151  
 E 12  
   in leprosy disease 400  
   in enteritis 323 324  
   and gastric disturbances 61  
   in hepatitis 358  
   A 60 324 334 365 369  
   maintenance preparation 360  
   low-calorie diets 67  
   supplement in tuberculosis 259  
 Voice alterations 160-162 283  
 Vulva 32, 415-418  
   carcinoma 409-411 451  
 Vulvovaginitis 415-416  
   and estrogen therapy 431  
   senile 398  
 Warts venereal 400-401  
 Water balance and cholecystitis 350  
   cellular deficit 68  
   and hemorrhage 470  
   loss and electrolyte balance 68-69  
   retention and sex hormone therapy 432  
 Weakness 471-492 502  
   See also paralysis  
 Weight body 440  
   and daily dietary allowances 64  
   and hospital diet 66  
   loss 565 302 315 331 332 332-333 355  
   and neurologic difficulties 437  
   and pericarditis 212 213  
   in pneumonia 248-250  
   and renal neoplasm 378-379  
   in tuberculosis 257  
   reduction in obesity 66 339  
 Wheezing, in a thina 566 567  
   bronchitis 563  
   and bronchiogenic carcinoma 262  
   and larynx cancer 181  
   pulmonary tuberculosis 258  
 Xanthelasma 140  
 Xanthochromia 476  
 X-ray 51  
   in rheumatoid arthritis 169  
   therapy See Radiotherapy

- Tracheotomy 95 251 277 479  
 Tranquilizing drugs 54-55 72 534  
   allergic reactions 104  
   side effects 54 190 303  
 Trauma 78 292 506  
   and gout 442  
   head injury 520 522  
   male urethra 397  
   pain control 74  
   and paraplegia 485  
   and subdural hematoma 478  
   temporomandibular joint syndrome 154  
   testicle 401  
   and vertigo 509  
 Tremor 478 497-501 502  
 Trigeminal neuralgia 131 467 493 496  
 Tuberculosis 91 256-260  
   and glossodynia 152  
   kidney 257 384  
   prostatic 392 395  
   pulmonary 256-260 269 270  
   and scleritis 133  
   susceptibility 93  
   urethra 395  
 Ulcers 82 118-121  
   and rehalism 291  
   and diet 305-306 309  
   duodenal 82 293 320  
   enteritis 322  
   gastric 82 302 312-313  
     and cancer 296 314 315 316-318  
   and hiatus hernia 293  
   leg and diabetes 433  
   and occlusive disc use 232 236  
   peptic 295 298 303-313 343 450  
   proneness 309  
     and drug therapy 303  
   rodent 120  
   and stasis dermatitis 113  
   and thrombophlebitis 240  
   in vasospastic disease 228  
 Uremia and cancer 356  
   and convulsions 508 508  
   in gouty nephritis 442  
   and headache 494  
   and interstitial infection 95  
   and mental reactions 521  
   and paralysis 489  
   and pericarditis 211-213  
   and sudden hemiplegia 478  
 Ureter carcinoma 451  
   stones 350  
   transplantation 356  
 Urethra 395-399  
   and cystitis 352  
 Uric acid and gout 441 443-444  
   in rheumatoid arthritis 169  
 Urinary tract 29-30 68 376-377 390  
   and cystitis 382  
   infection and pyelonephritis 376-382  
   and prostatitis 387-388  
   stones 379-383  
 Urination 190  
   frequency 471  
   and cystitis 384  
   and pelvic relaxation 419  
   in prostatitis 387 388  
   urethral caruncle 399  
   and urethritis 396 397  
 Urogenital tract 150 452 456-457  
 Uterus 84 412 414 451 456  
 Vagina 50  
   carcinoma 410  
   postmenopausal bleeding 408 409  
   senile vaginitis and estrogen therapy 431  
 Varicosities 113-115 239-241  
   esophageal 295-299 450  
   and obesity 60  
   surgical correction 82 114 240  
   and weight reduction 439  
 Vascular system 18-22  
   arteriosclerosis See Arteriosclerosis  
   atrophic changes 24  
   brachial artery 226-228 231 232  
     233-234 489  
   cerebellar motor tract 503 505  
   cerebral in hemiplegia 474-484  
   constriction 226-227  
     in sinusitis 158  
   and diabetes 433 436  
   diseases 225-241  
   elasticity 83 185  
   embolic phenomena 230-238  
   eyes 146-148  
   femoral artery 232-233  
   obliterative disease 230-233 506  
   peripheral 77 436 493-497  
     and sex hormone therapy 431  
   popliteal artery 226-227 231  
   pulmonary 243  
     and retinopathy 146-150  
   and smoking 57 230  
   spasm 77-78 225-230 237 497  
 Vasodilatation cerebral and hemiplegia 450  
   drugs for in mgms 205

